Clinical Neuroanatomy

for Medical Students

Richard S. Snell, M.D., Ph.D.

Clinical Neuroanatomy

for Medical Students

By the Same Author

Atlas of Clinical Anatomy, 1978

Gross Anatomy Dissector:
A Companion for Atlas of Clinical Anatomy, 1978

An Atlas of Normal Radiographic Anatomy
(with Alvin C. Wyman, M.D.), 1976

Clinical Embryology for Medical Students,
Second Edition, 1975

Clinical Anatomy for Medical Students, 1973

Clinical Neuroanatomy
for Medical Students

Richard S. Snell, M.D., Ph.D.
Professor and Chairman,
Department of Anatomy,
George Washington University
School of Medicine and Health Sciences,
Washington, D.C.

Little, Brown and Company
Boston

First Edition

Second Printing

Library of Congress Catalog Card No. 79-49437

ISBN 0-316-80213-1

Printed in the United States of America

KP

To my students—past, present, and future

Contents

Preface *viii*

1. Organization of the Nervous System *1*
2. The Neuron *43*
3. Neuroglia *73*
4. Nerve Fibers and Peripheral Nerves *87*
5. Receptor and Effector Endings *115*
6. Dermatomes and Muscular Activity *139*
7. The Spinal Cord *151*
8. The Medulla Oblongata *169*
9. The Pons *181*
10. The Cerebellum *189*
11. The Fourth Ventricle *205*
12. The Midbrain (Mesencephalon) *213*
13. The Cerebrum *221*
14. The Cerebral Hemispheres *233*
15. The Structure and Functional Localization of the Cerebral Cortex *257*
16. The Limbic System *275*
17. The Ventricular System and the Formation and Fate of the Cerebrospinal Fluid *283*
18. Blood-Brain and Blood-Cerebrospinal Fluid Barriers *299*
19. The Ascending Tracts of the Spinal Cord *305*
20. The Descending Tracts of the Spinal Cord and Skeletal Muscle Activity *321*
21. Connections of the Cerebellum *343*
22. The Cranial Nerve Nuclei and Their Central Connections *353*

23. The Thalamus and Its Connections *389*

24. The Hypothalamus and Its Connections *397*

25. The Autonomic Nervous System *409*

26. The Meninges of the Brain *435*

27. The Blood Supply of the Brain *449*

Answers to Clinical Problems *471*

Index *507*

Preface

Frequently physicians have expressed to the author their concern because the type of neuroanatomy taught to medical students is too detailed and often far removed from the basic neuroanatomy that one uses in clinical practice. While it is fascinating to learn about the ultramicroscopic structure of synapses and the detailed connections of the hypothalamus, it is first essential that a student understand such phenomena as the pupillary light reflex, be able to explain why a patient with cerebellar disease tends to fall to the same side as the lesion, and know the level at which the spinal cord terminates within the vertebral canal.

Too many students complain of the complexity of the terminology in neuroanatomy and the difficulty they experience in understanding the relations of the different parts of the brain to one another. Unfortunately, this is often the fault of the professor. It is not unusual in the author's experience for the lecturer to become carried away on the flowing tides of his enthusiasm, introducing detailed comparative anatomy or the detailed results of his own latest investigations, leaving the student high and dry and more confused than when the lecture began.

The purpose of this book is not to replace the larger reference textbooks of neuroanatomy, but, rather, to offer the practical aspects of neuroanatomy in a simplified manner. Clinical problems requiring a knowledge of anatomy for solution are presented at the end of each section. References to neuroanatomical literature are included so that the student can acquire a deeper knowledge of an area of interest, should he so desire. The illustrations have purposely been kept simple, and for the most part they are diagrammatic in form.

I thank the many medical students, clinical colleagues, and friends who stimulated me to write this book. I am most grateful to the following colleagues in anatomy who provided me with photographic examples of neuroanatomical material: Dr. Nikolajs Cauna, Emeritus Professor of Anatomy, University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine; Dr. Turlough M. J. Fitzgerald, Professor of Anatomy, University College, Galway, Ireland; Dr. James M. Kerns, Assistant Professor of Anatomy, George Washington University School of Medicine and Health Sciences, Washington, D.C.; and Dr. Alan Peters, Professor and Chairman of Anatomy, Boston University School of Medicine. I wish to thank the staff of the Audiovisual Services of the George Washington University School of Medicine and Health Sciences for their skill in preparing suitable photographic prints for publication, and to extend sincere thanks to my artist, Myra Feldman, for her careful interpretation of my rough sketches for the illustrations and for her patience in executing the final artwork. To the librarians of George Washington University School of Medicine and Health Sciences my thanks are due for their continued help in obtaining for me much-needed reference material. Special thanks are due to Michele Boyd and Donna Gosnell for their skill and patience in typing the manuscript. Finally, to the staff of Little, Brown and Company go my gratitude and thanks for their harmonious collaboration throughout the preparation of this book.

R. S. S.

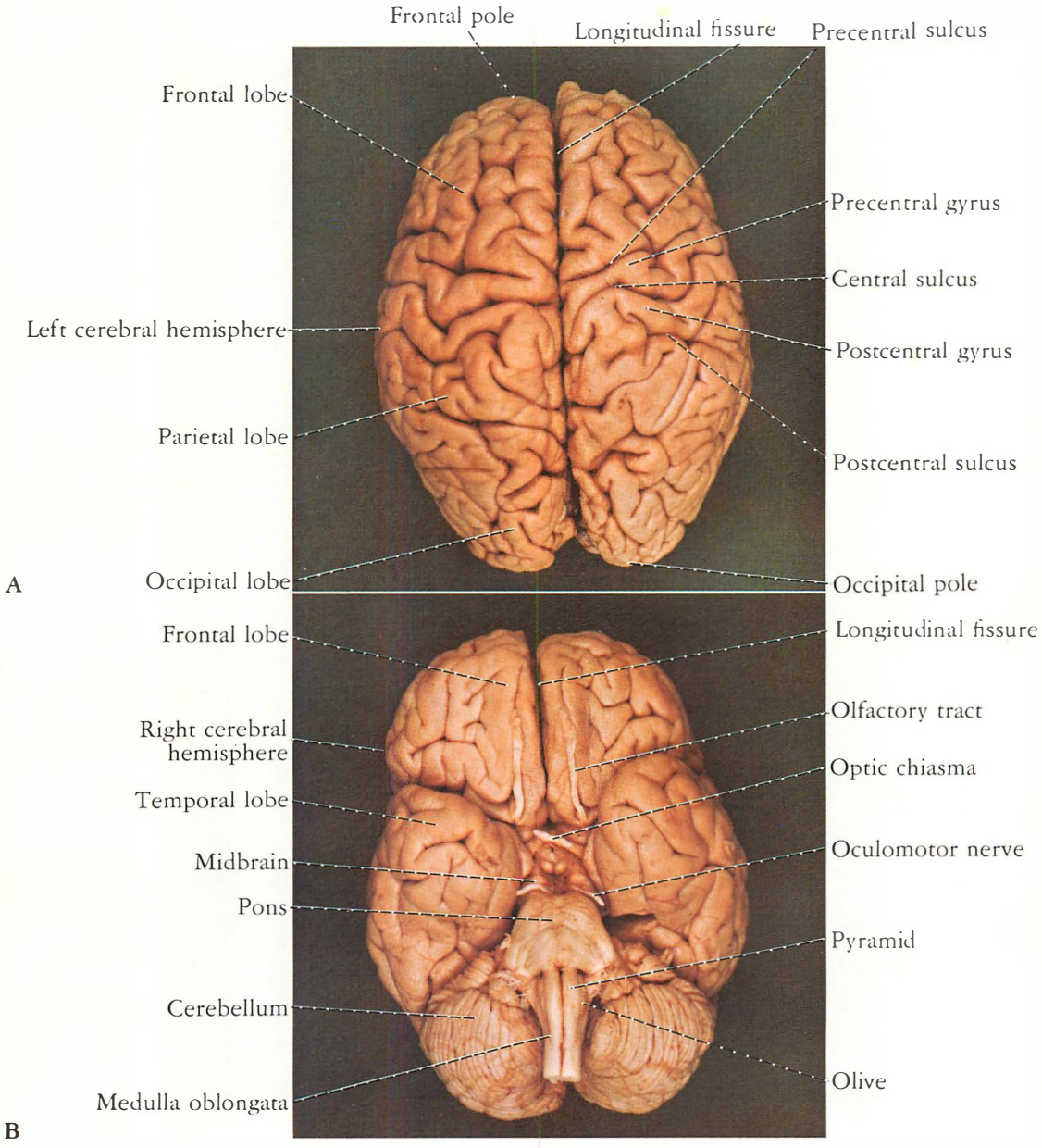


Fig. P-1. A. Superior view of the brain.
B. Inferior view of the brain.

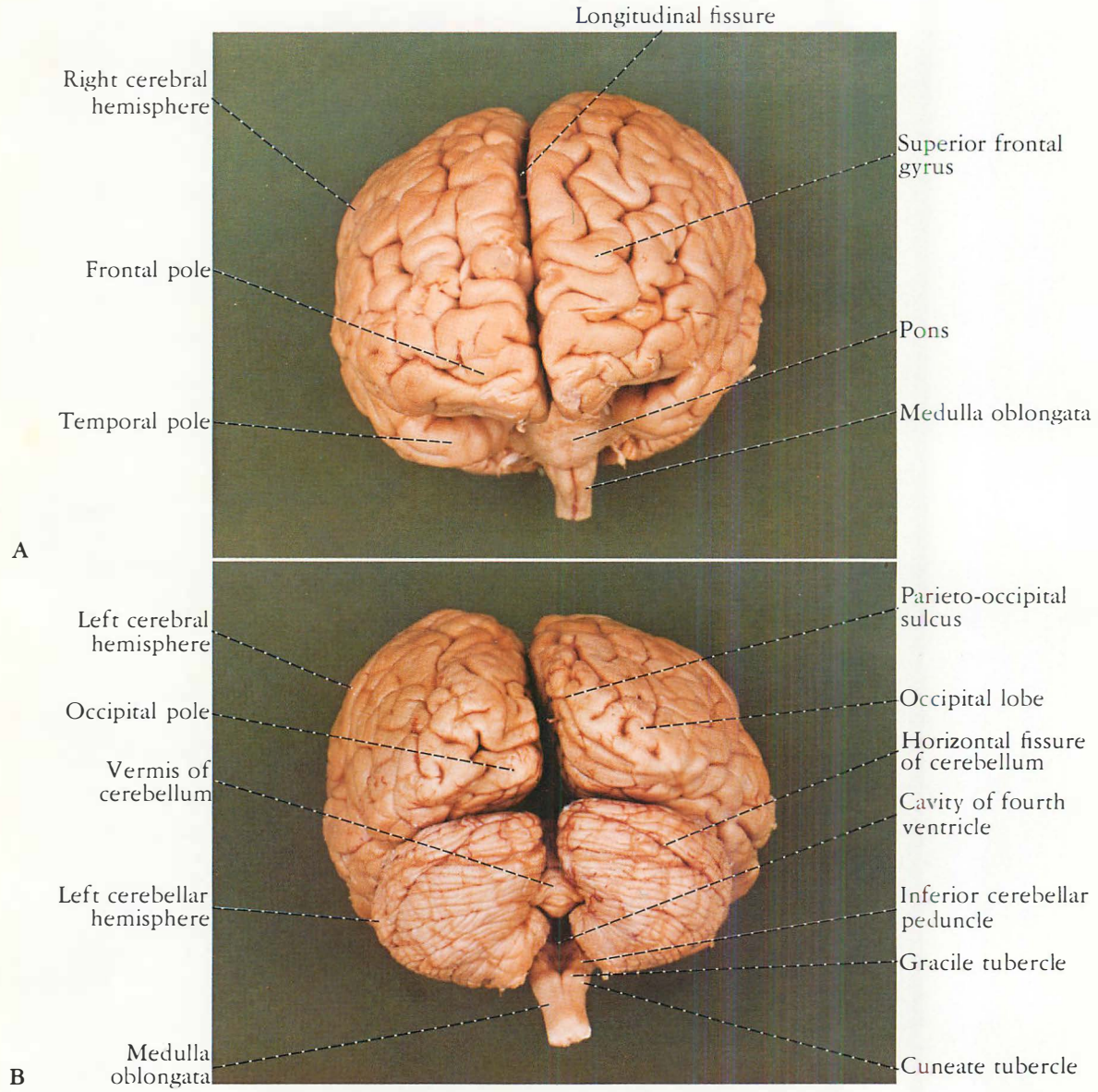


Fig. P-2. A. Anterior view of the brain.
B. Posterior view of the brain.

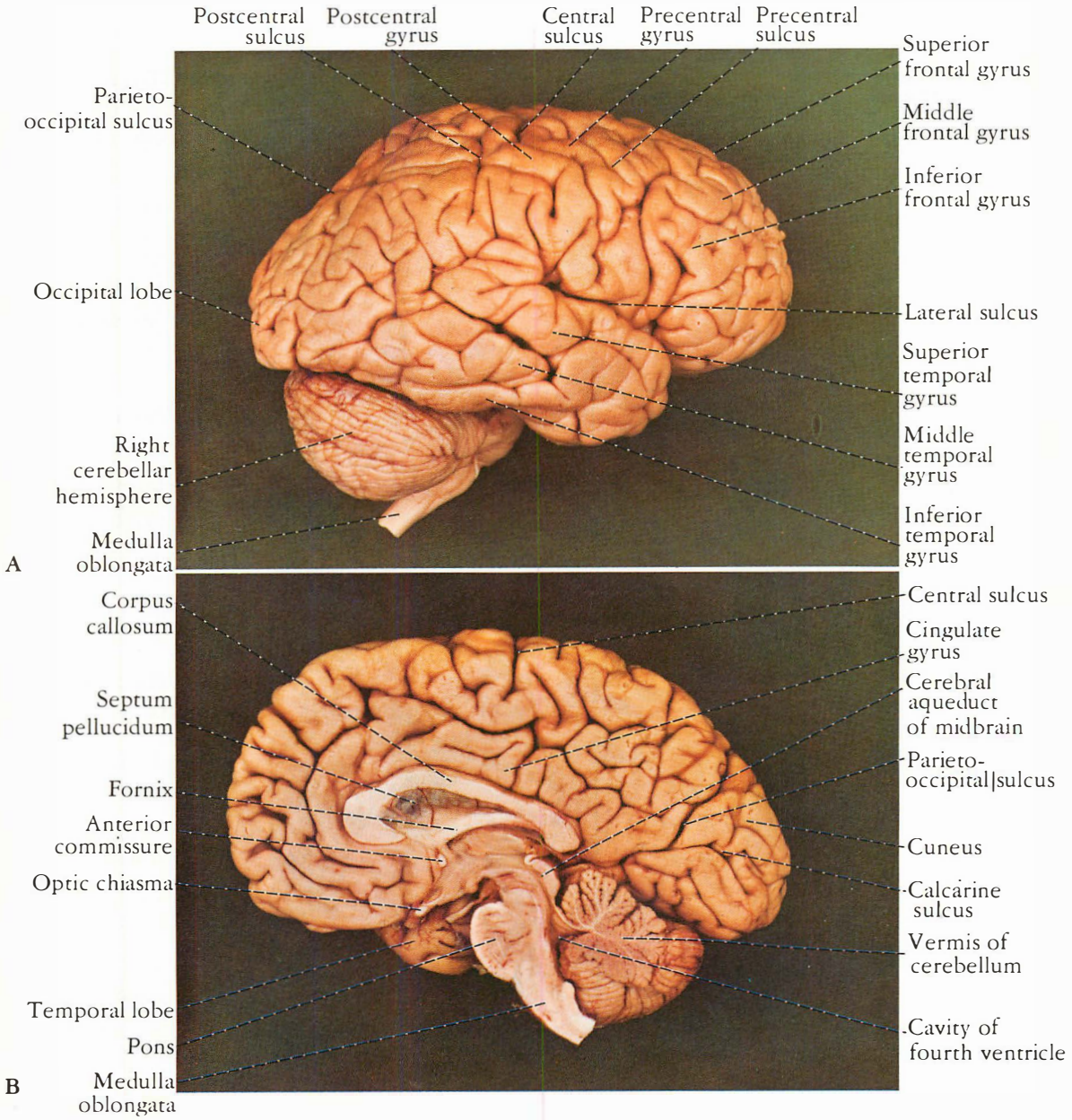


Fig. P-3. A. Right lateral view of the brain. B. Medial view of the right side of the brain following median sagittal section.

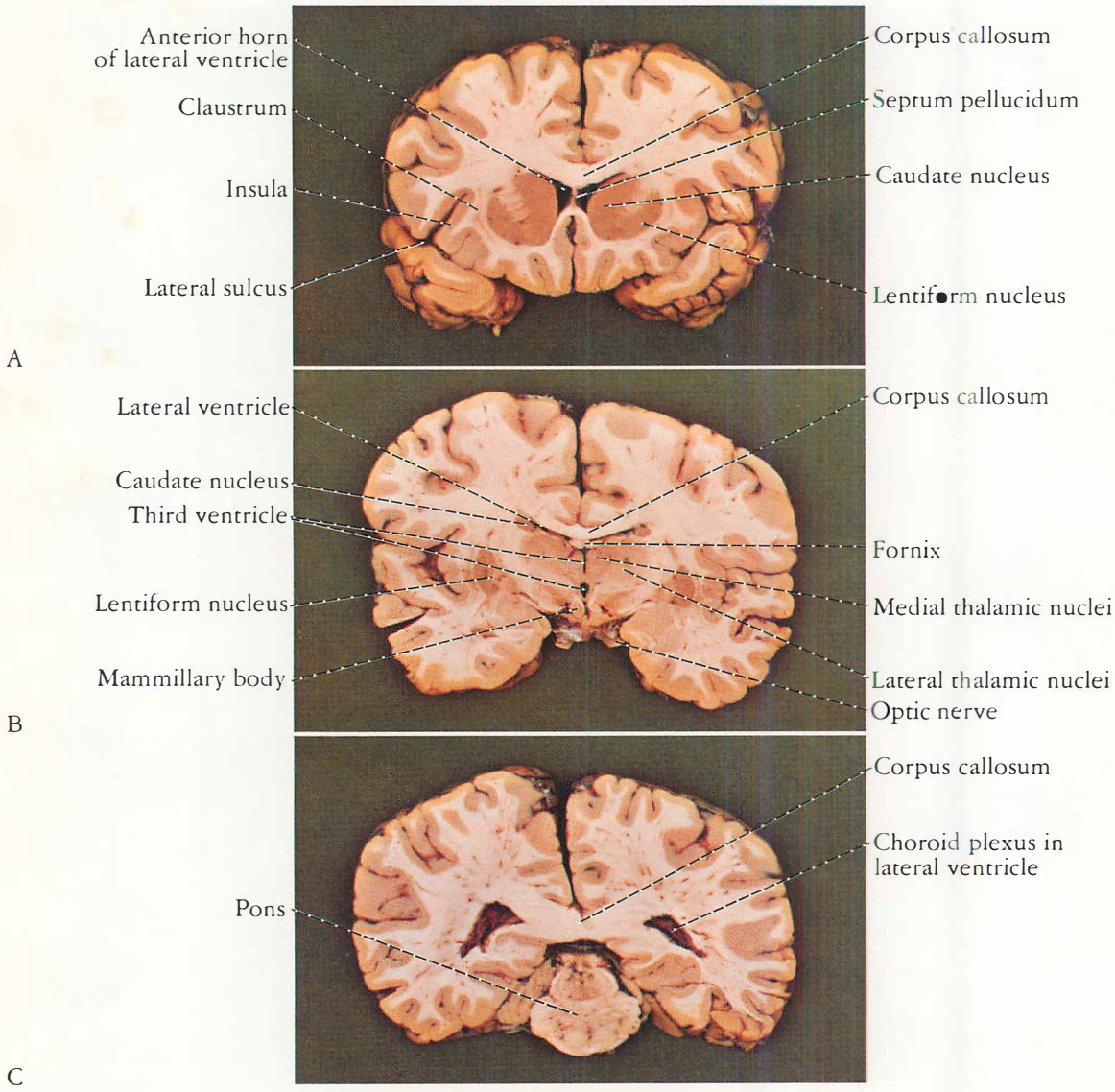


Fig. P-4. Coronal sections of the brain passing through (A) the anterior horn of the lateral ventricle, (B) the mammillary bodies, and (C) the pons.

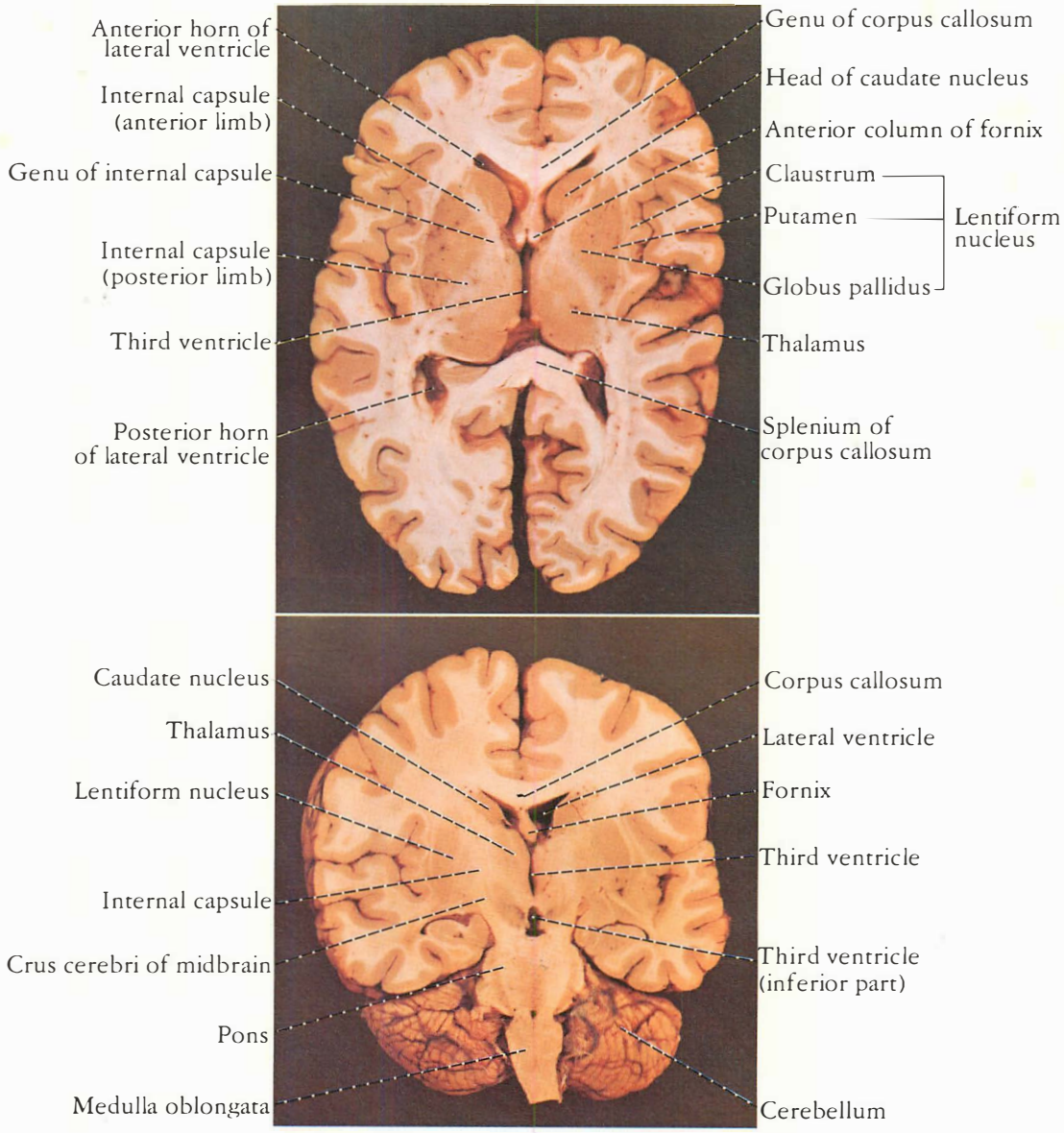
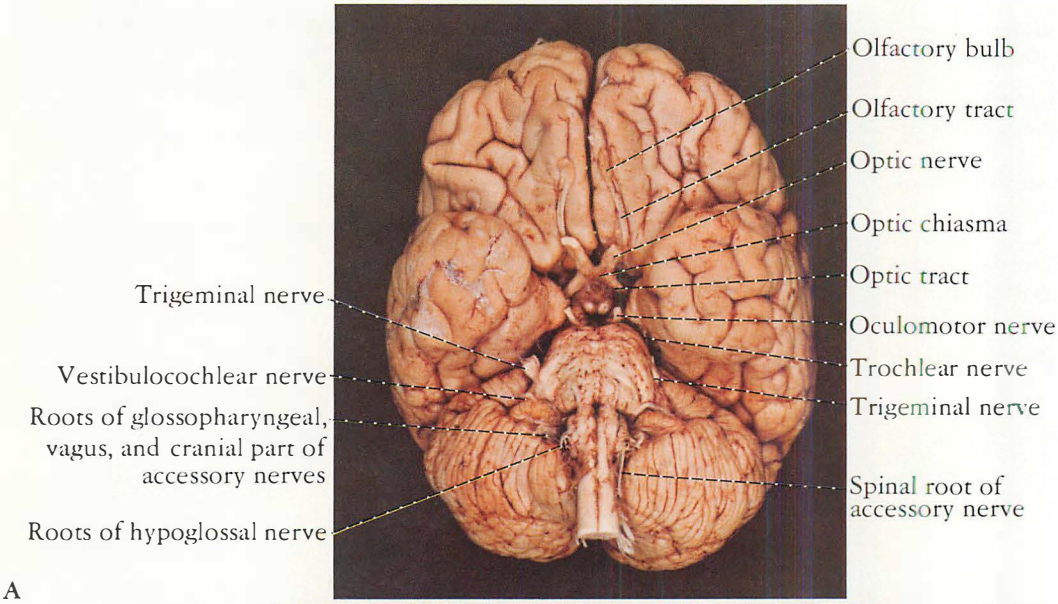
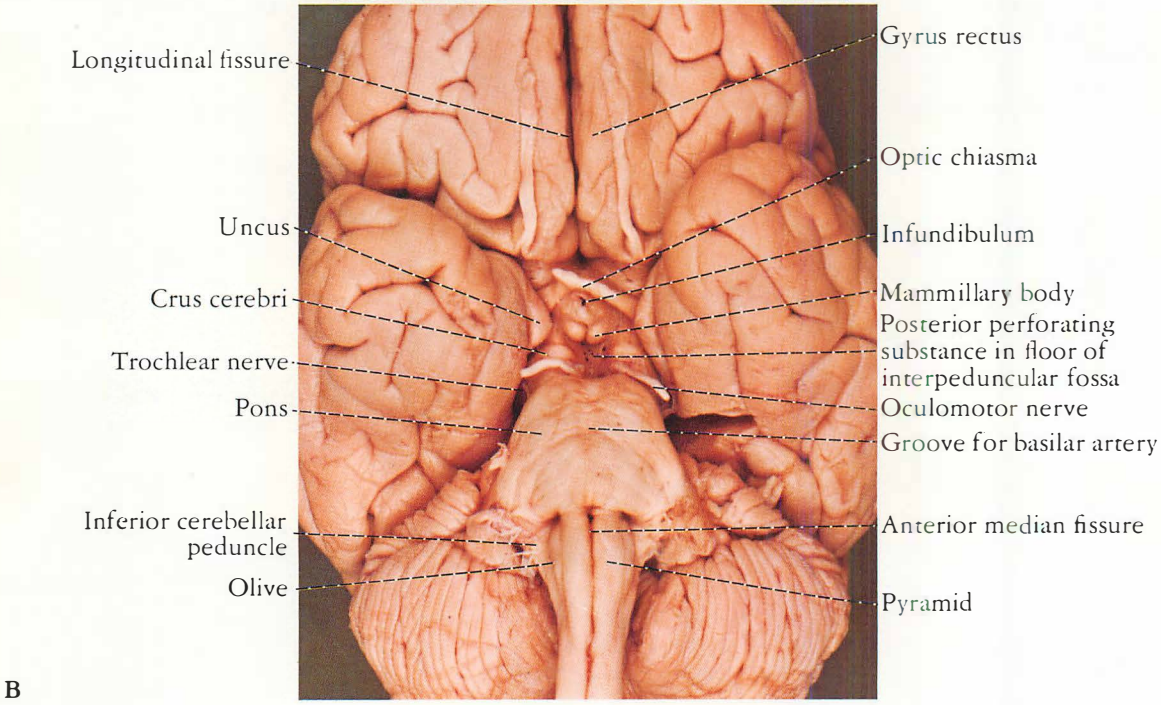


Fig. P-5. A. Horizontal section of the cerebrum showing the lentiform nucleus, the caudate nucleus, the thalamus, and the internal capsule.
B. Oblique coronal section of the brain.



A



B

Fig. P-6. A. Inferior view of the brain showing cranial nerves. The abducent and facial nerves cannot be seen.
B. Enlarged inferior view of the central part of the brain.

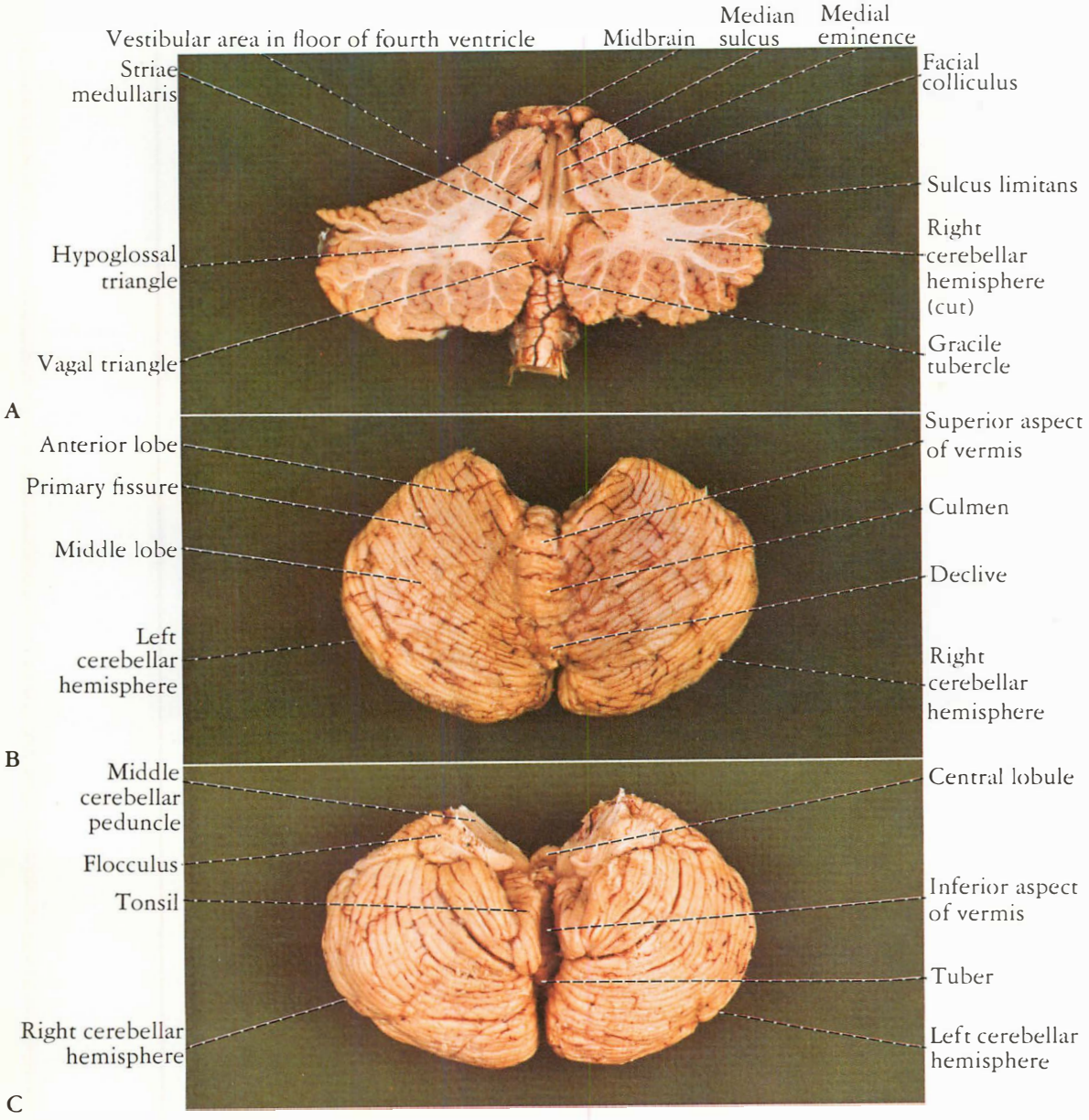


Fig. P-7. A. Posterior view of the brainstem. The greater part of the cerebellum has been removed to expose the floor of the fourth ventricle.
B. Superior view of the cerebellum showing vermis and right and left cerebellar hemispheres.
C. Inferior view of the cerebellum showing vermis and right and left cerebellar hemispheres.

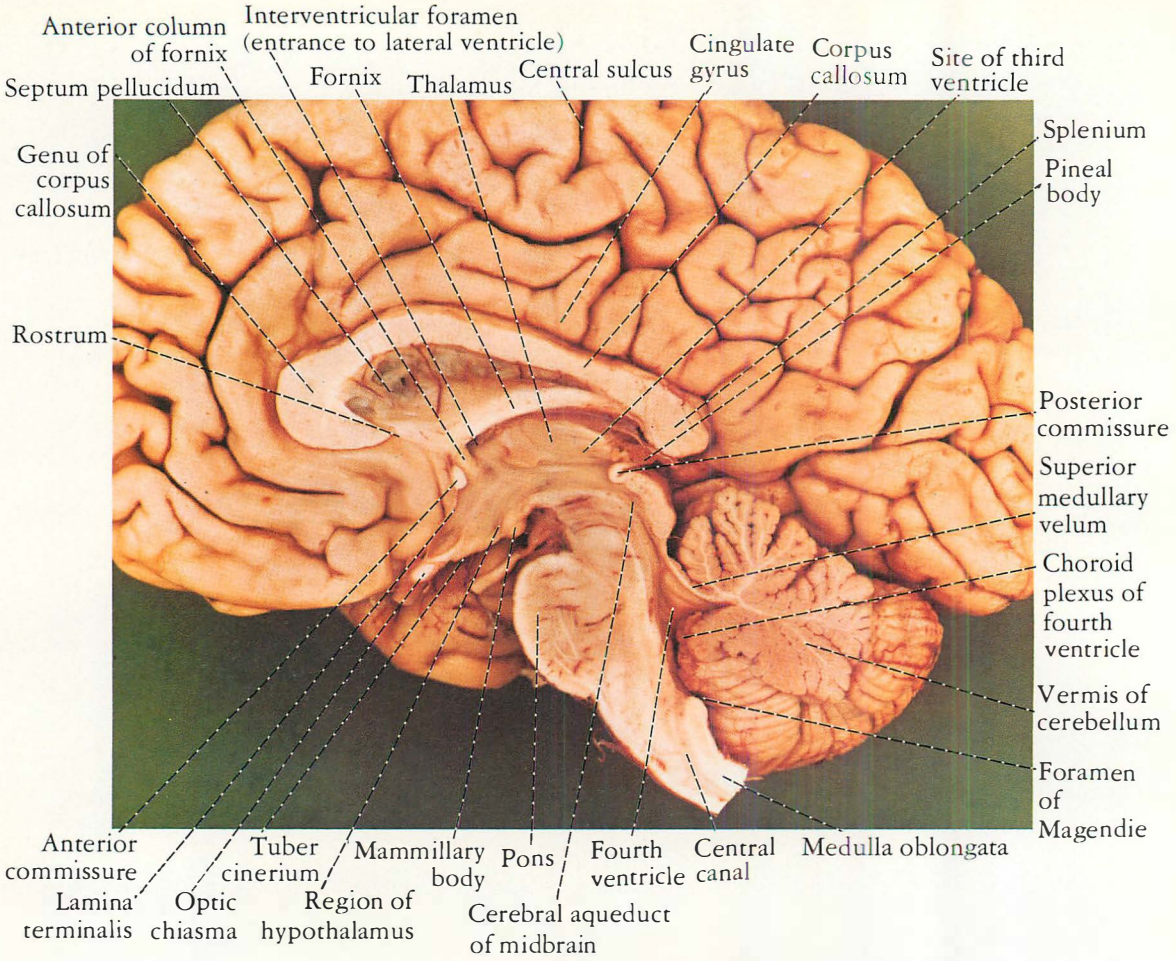


Fig. P-8. Enlarged medial view of the right side of the brain following median sagittal section, showing the continuity of the central canal, fourth ventricle, cerebral aqueduct, and the third ventricle and entrance into the lateral ventricle through the interventricular foramen.

Clinical Neuroanatomy

for Medical Students

1
Organization of the Nervous System

The nervous system is composed basically of specialized cells, whose function is to receive sensory stimuli and to transmit them to effector organs, whether muscular or glandular (Fig. 1-1). The sensory stimuli that arise either outside or inside the body are correlated within the nervous system, and the efferent impulses are coordinated so that the effector organs work harmoniously together for the well-being of the individual. In addition, the nervous system of higher species has the ability to store sensory information received during past experiences; and this information, when appropriate, is integrated with other nervous impulses and channeled into the common efferent pathway.

Central and Peripheral Nervous Systems

The nervous system is divided into two main parts, for purposes of description: the *central nervous system* (Fig. 1-2A), which consists of the brain and spinal cord, and the *peripheral nervous system* (Fig. 1-2B), which consists of the cranial and spinal nerves and their associated ganglia.

In the central nervous system the brain and spinal cord are the main centers where correlation and integration of nervous information occur; therefore, it is not surprising that they are well protected (Fig. 1-3). Both the brain and spinal cord are suspended in fluid, the *cerebrospinal fluid*, and they are further protected by the bones of the skull and the vertebral column.

The central nervous system is composed of large numbers of nerve cells and their processes, which are supported by specialized tissue called *neurologia* (Fig. 1-4). *Neuron* is the name given to the nerve cell and all its processes. The long processes of a nerve cell are called *axons* or *nerve fibers*.

The interior of the central nervous system is organized into gray and white matter. *Gray matter* consists of nerve cells and the proximal portions of their processes embedded in neurologia. *White matter* consists of nerve fibers embedded in neuroglia.

In the peripheral nervous system the cranial and spinal nerves, which consist of bundles of nerve fibers or axons, conduct information to and from the central nervous system. Although surrounded by fibrous sheaths as they run to different parts of the body, they are relatively unprotected and are commonly damaged by trauma.

Autonomic Nervous System

The autonomic nervous system is the part of the nervous system concerned with the innervation of involuntary structures, such as the heart, smooth muscle, and glands within the body. It is distributed throughout the central and peripheral nervous systems. The autonomic system may be divided into two parts, the *sympathetic* and the *parasympathetic*, and in both parts there are afferent and efferent nerve fibers.

The activities of the sympathetic part of the autonomic system prepare the body for an emergency. It accelerates the heart rate, causes constriction of the peripheral blood vessels, and raises the blood pressure. It brings about a redistribution of the blood, so that blood leaves the areas of the skin and intestine and becomes available to the brain, heart, and skeletal muscle. At the same time it inhibits peristalsis of the intestinal tract and closes the sphincters.

The activities of the parasympathetic part of the autonomic system are aimed at conserving and restoring energy. It slows the heart rate, increases peristalsis of the intestine, increases glandular activity, and opens the sphincters.

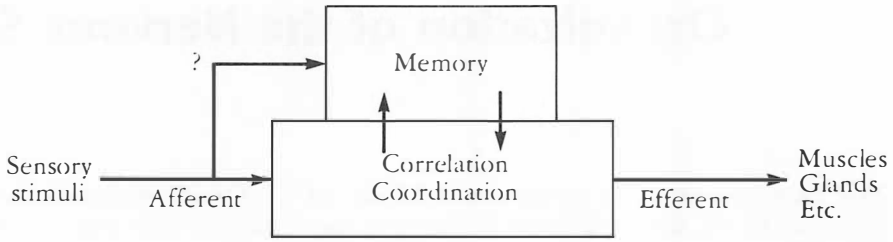


Fig. 1-1. The relationship of afferent sensory stimuli to memory bank, correlation and coordinating centers, and common efferent pathway.

Major Divisions of the Central Nervous System

Before proceeding to a detailed description of the spinal cord and brain, it is essential to understand the main features of these structures and their general relationship to one another. Later, the more intricate parts will be studied in depth.

Spinal Cord

The spinal cord is a grayish-white structure that begins superiorly at the foramen magnum in the skull, where it is continuous with the *medulla oblongata* of the brain (Figs. 1-5 and 1-6). It terminates inferiorly in the adult at the level of the *lower border of the first lumbar vertebra*. In the young child it is relatively longer and ends at the upper border of the third lumbar vertebra. The spinal cord is situated within the *vertebral canal* of the vertebral column and is surrounded by three meninges (Fig. 1-6): the *dura mater*, the *arachnoid mater*, and the *pia mater*. Further protection is provided by the *cerebrospinal fluid*, which surrounds the spinal cord in the *subarachnoid space*.

The spinal cord is roughly cylindrical in shape (Fig. 1-6). However, in the cervical region, where it gives origin to the brachial plexus, and in the lower thoracic and lumbar regions, where it gives origin to the lumbosacral plexus, there are fusiform enlargements, called the *cervical and lumbar enlargements* (Fig. 1-2A). Inferiorly, the spinal cord tapers off into the *conus medullaris*, from the apex of which a prolongation of the pia mater, the *filum terminale*, descends to be attached to the back of the coccyx (Fig. 1-5B). The cord possesses, in the midline anteriorly, a deep longitudinal fissure, the *anterior median fissure*, and, on the posterior surface, a shallow furrow, the *posterior median sulcus* (Fig. 1-7).

Along the entire length of the spinal cord are attached 31 pairs of spinal nerves by the *anterior or motor roots* and the *posterior or sensory roots* (Figs. 1-6 and 1-7). Each root is attached to the cord by a series of rootlets, which extend the whole length of the corresponding segment of the cord. Each posterior nerve root possesses a *posterior root ganglion*, the cells of which give rise to peripheral and central nerve fibers.

STRUCTURE OF SPINAL CORD. The spinal cord is composed of an inner core of *gray matter*, which is surrounded by an outer covering of *white matter* (Fig. 1-7). The gray matter is seen on cross section as an H-shaped pillar with *anterior and posterior gray columns, or horns*, united by a thin *gray commissure* containing the small *central canal*. The white matter, for purposes of description, may be divided into *anterior, lateral, and posterior white columns* (Fig. 1-7). The anterior column on each side lies between the midline and the point of emergence of the anterior nerve roots; the lateral column lies between the emergence of the anterior nerve roots and the entry of the posterior nerve roots; the posterior column lies between the entry of the posterior nerve roots and the midline.

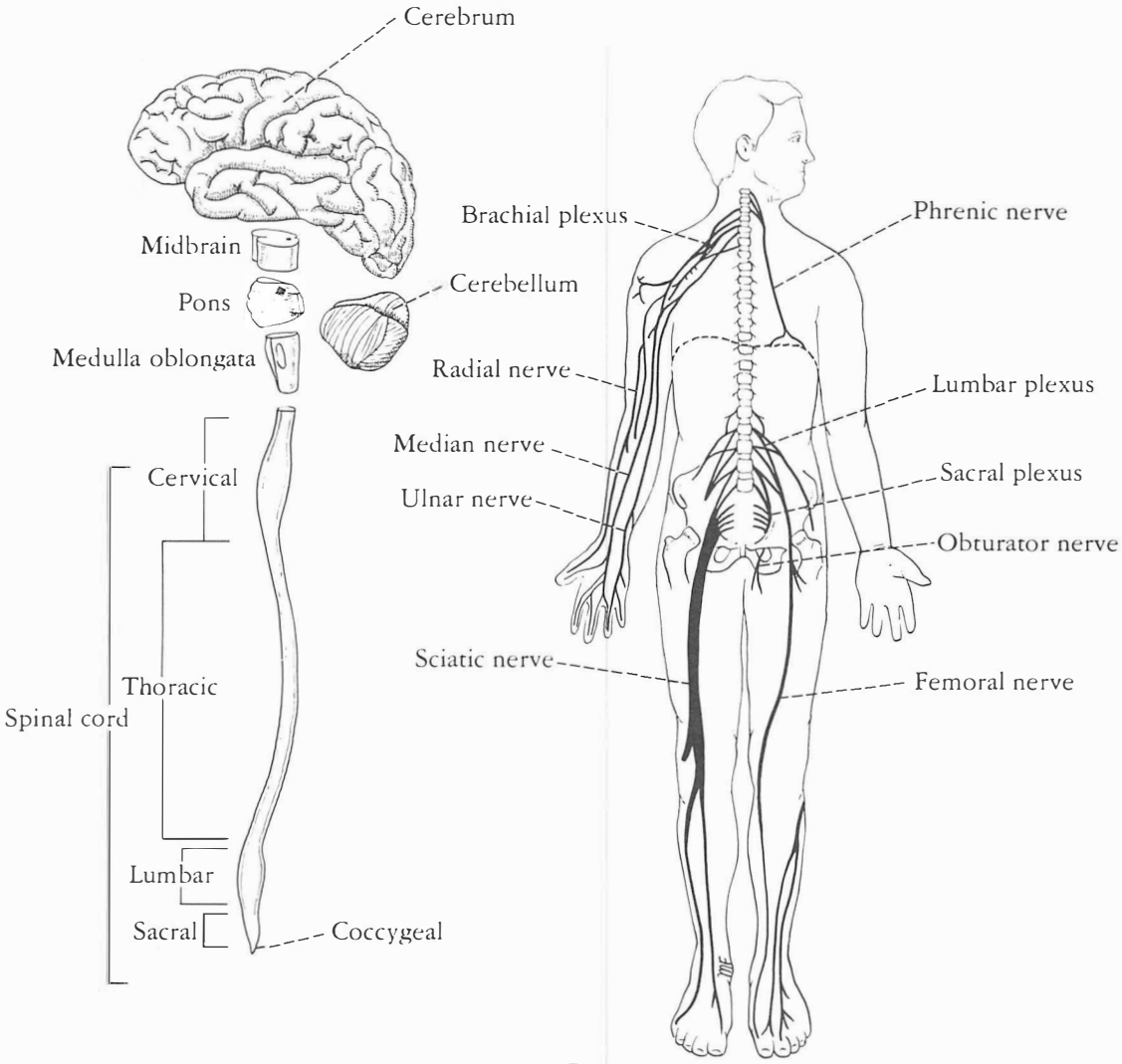


Fig. 1-2. A. The main divisions of the central nervous system.
B. The parts of the peripheral nervous system (the cranial nerves have been omitted).

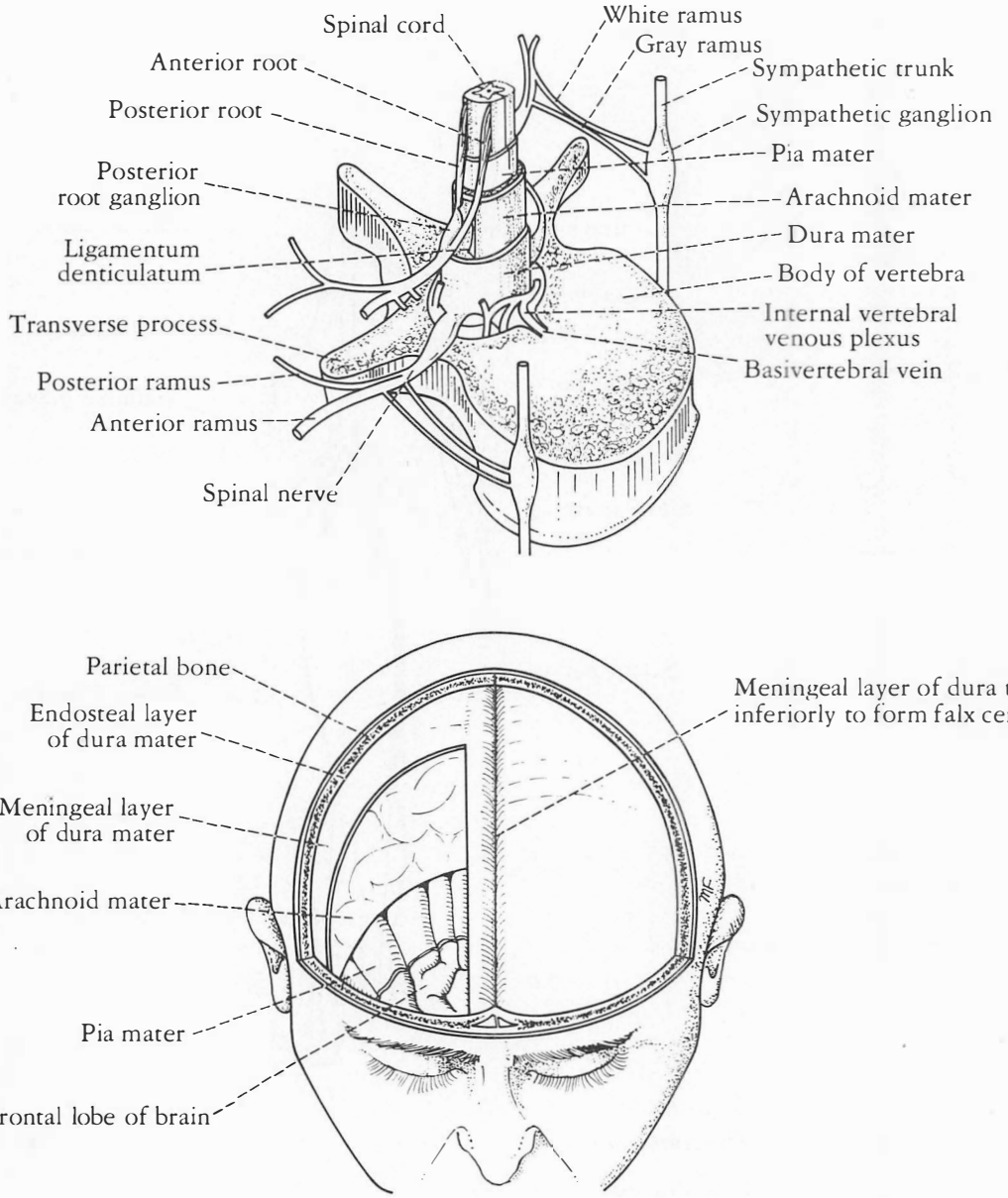


Fig. 1-3. A. Protective coverings of spinal cord. B. Protective coverings of brain.

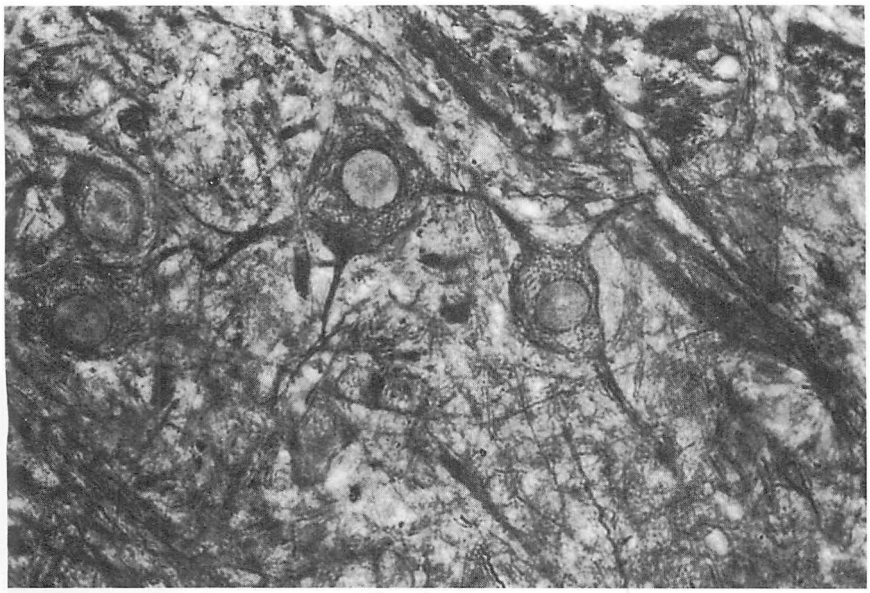


Fig. 1-4. Photomicrograph of several large nerve cells with surrounding neuroglia.

Brain

The brain lies in the cranial cavity and is continuous with the spinal cord through the foramen magnum (see Figs. 1-6A, 1-8, and 1-10). It is surrounded by three meninges: the *dura mater*, the *arachnoid mater*, and the *pia mater* and these are continuous with the corresponding meninges of the spinal cord (Fig. 1-9).

The brain is conventionally divided into three major divisions. These are, in ascending order from the spinal cord, the *rhombencephalon* or hindbrain, the *mesencephalon* or midbrain, the the *prosencephalon* or forebrain. The rhombencephalon may be subdivided into the *myelencephalon* or medulla oblongata, the *metencephalon* or pons, and the *cerebellum*. The prosencephalon may also be subdivided into the *diencephalon* (between brain), which is the central part of the forebrain, and the *telencephalon* or cerebrum. The *brainstem* (a collective term for the medulla oblongata, pons, and midbrain) is that part of the brain that remains after the cerebral hemispheres and cerebellum are removed (see Fig. 1-8).

HINDBRAIN (RHOMBENCEPHALON). The hindbrain consists of the medulla oblongata (myelencephalon), the pons (metencephalon), and the cerebellum (Figs. 1-11 and 1-12).

Medulla Oblongata (Myelencephalon). The medulla oblongata is conical in shape and connects the pons superiorly to the spinal cord inferiorly (see Figs. 1-8 and 1-11). A *median fissure* is present on the anterior surface of the medulla, and on each side of this fissure is a swelling, called the *pyramid*. Posterior to the pyramids are the *olives*, which are oval elevations produced by the underlying *olivary nuclei*. Posterior to the olives are the *inferior cerebellar peduncles*, which connect the medulla to the cerebellum (Fig. 1-14).

On the posterior surface of the inferior part of the medulla oblongata (Fig. 1-14) are the *gracile* and *cuneate tubercles*, produced by the medially placed underlying *nucleus gracilis* and the laterally placed underlying *nucleus cuneatus*.

Pons (Metencephalon). The pons is situated on the anterior surface of the cerebellum, inferior to

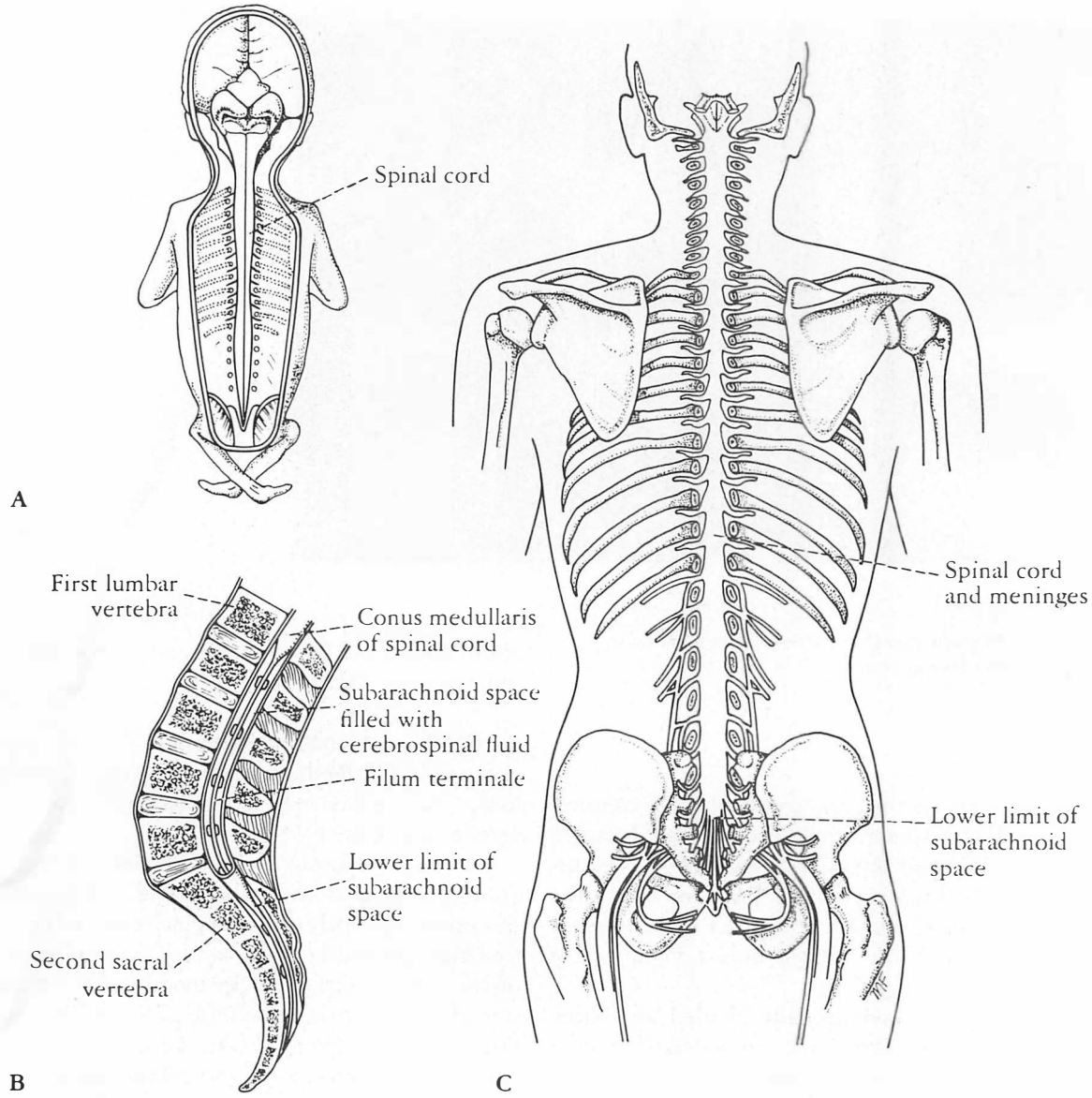


Fig. 1-5. A. Fetus with brain and spinal cord exposed on the posterior surface. Note that the spinal cord extends the full length of the vertebral column. B. Sagittal section of vertebral column in adult, showing spinal cord terminating inferiorly at the level of the lower border of the first lumbar vertebra. C. Adult spinal cord and covering meninges, showing relationship to surrounding structures.

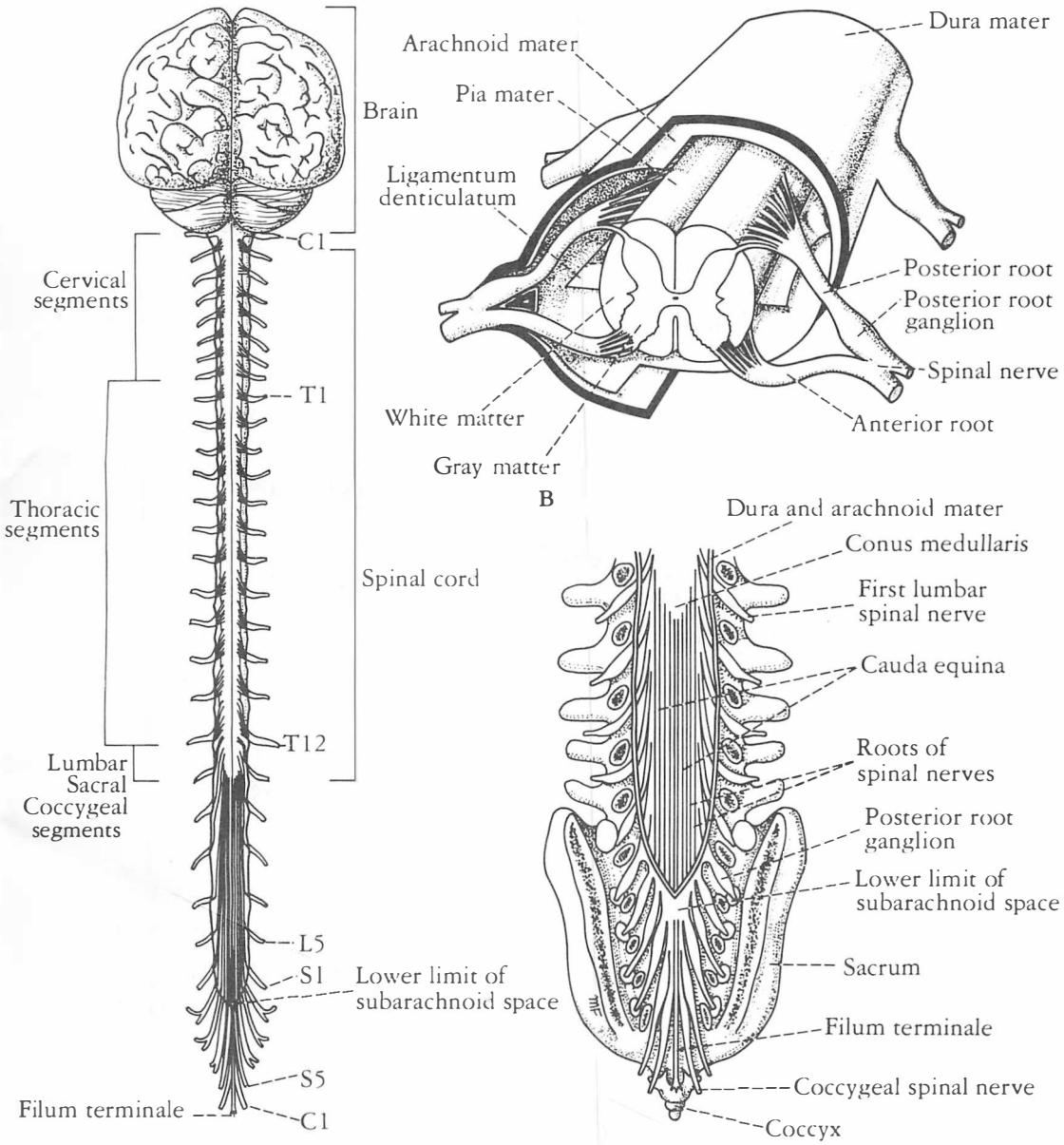


Fig. 1-6. A. Brain, spinal cord, spinal nerve roots, and spinal nerves as seen on their posterior aspect. B. Transverse section through spinal cord in the thoracic region, showing anterior and posterior roots of a spinal nerve and the meninges. C. Posterior view of lower end of spinal cord and cauda equina, showing their relationship with the lumbar vertebrae, sacrum, and coccyx.

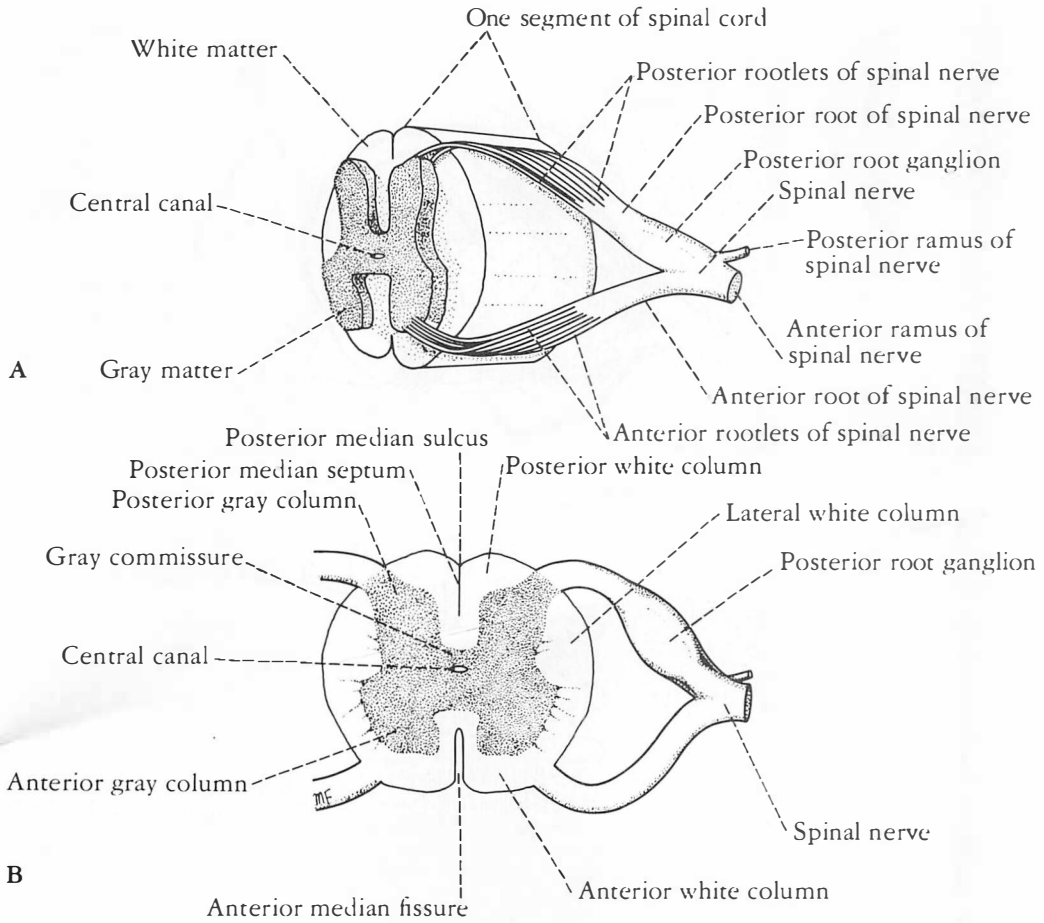


Fig. 1-7. A. Transverse section through lumbar part of spinal cord, oblique view.
B. Transverse section through lumbar part of spinal cord, face view. Sections show anterior and posterior roots of a spinal nerve.

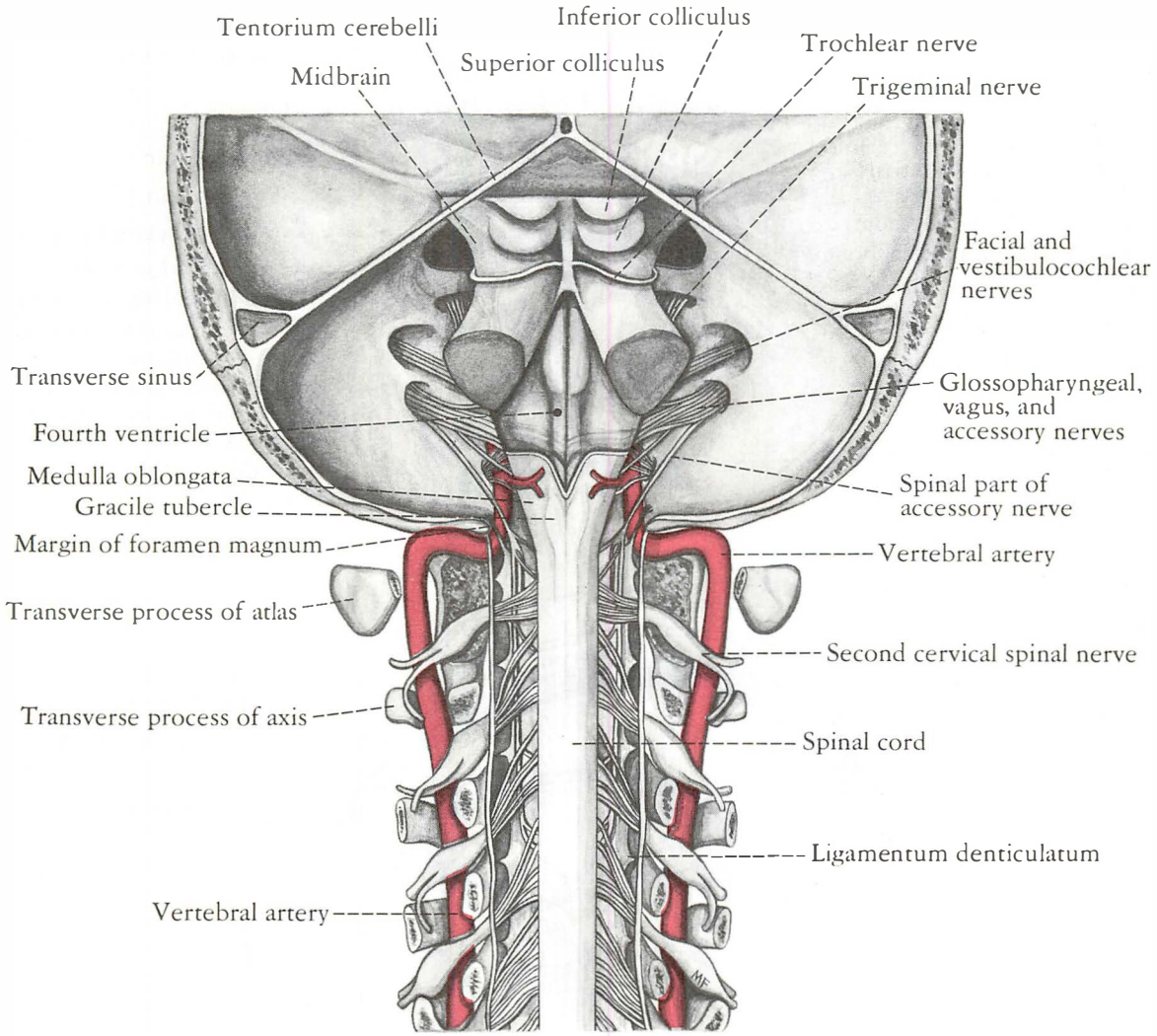


Fig. 1-8. Posterior view of the brainstem after removal of the occipital and parietal bones and the cerebrum, the cerebellum, and the roof of the fourth ventricle. Laminae of the upper cervical vertebrae have also been removed.

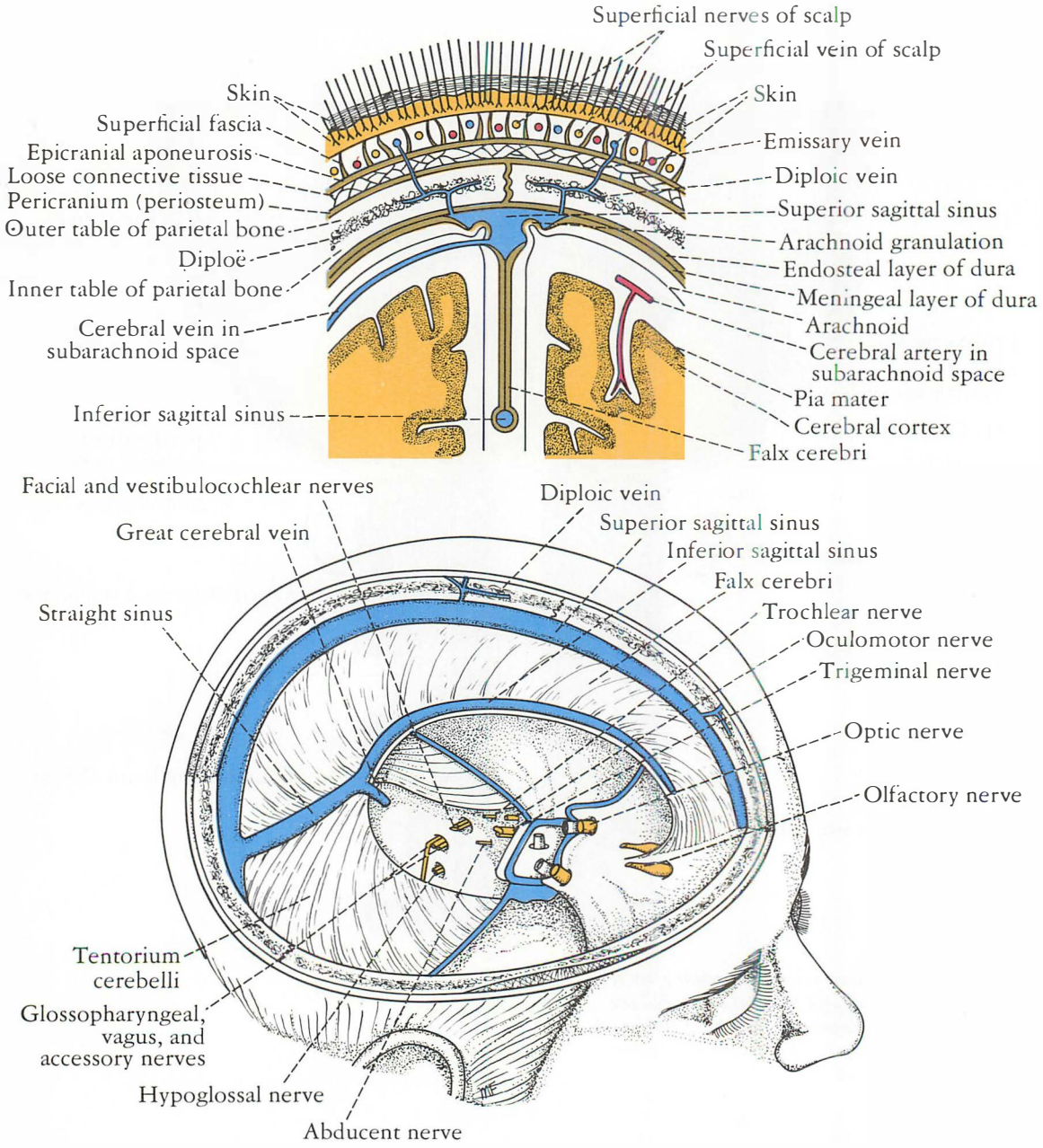


Fig. 1-9. A. Coronal section of upper part of head showing: layers of scalp, sagittal suture of skull, falx cerebri, venous sinuses, arachnoid granulations, emissary veins, and relation of cerebral blood vessels to subarachnoid space.
B. Interior of skull, showing dura mater and its contained venous sinuses.

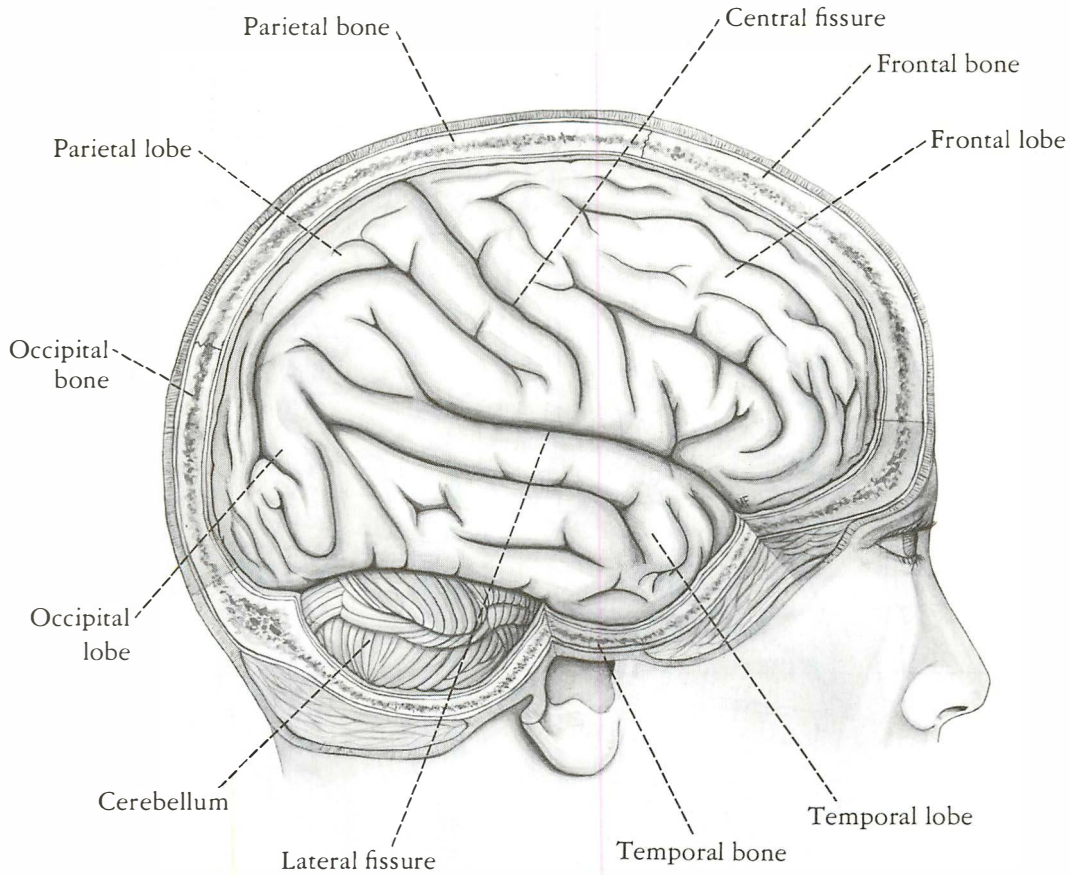


Fig. 1-10. Lateral view of the brain within the skull.

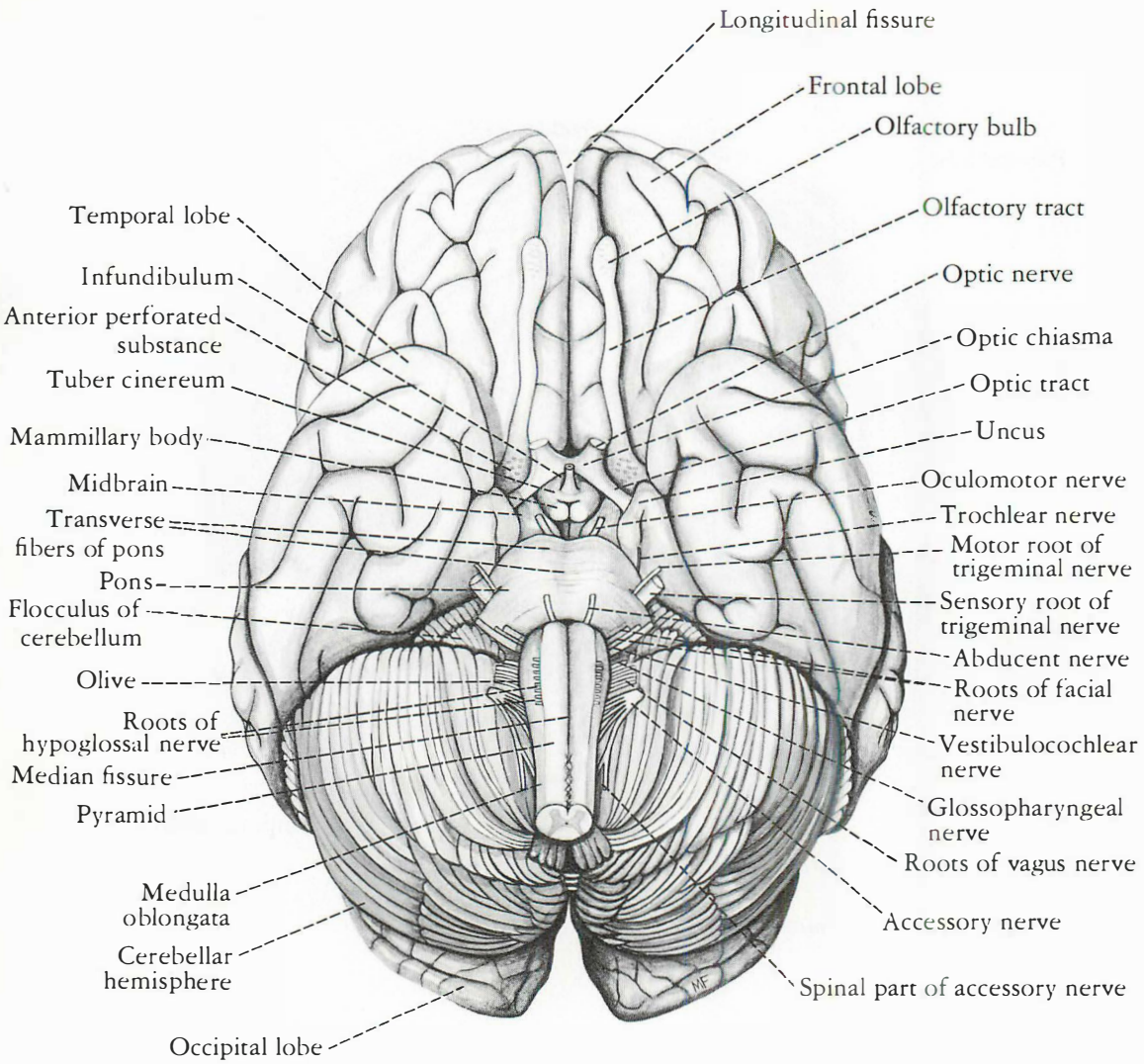


Fig. 1-11. Inferior view of the brain.

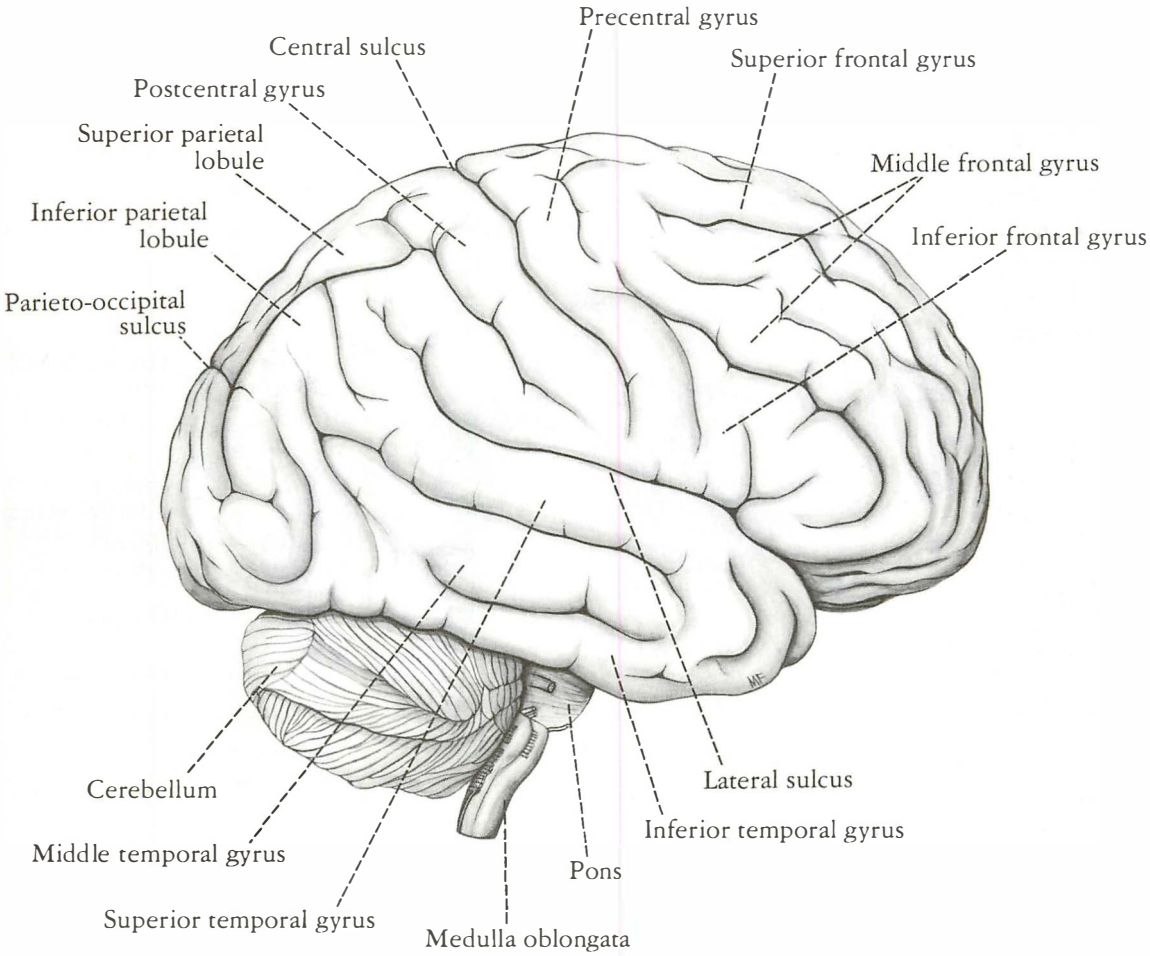


Fig. 1-12. Brain viewed from its right lateral aspect.

the midbrain and superior to the medulla oblongata (see Figs. 1-11 and 1-12). It is much greater in anteroposterior and transverse dimensions than the medulla. The pons, or bridge, derives its name from the large number of transverse fibers on its anterior aspect connecting the two cerebellar hemispheres.

Cerebellum. The cerebellum lies within the posterior cranial fossa posterior to the pons and the medulla oblongata (see Figs. 1-10 and 1-12). It consists of two hemispheres connected by a median portion, the *vermis.* The cerebellum is connected to the midbrain by the *superior cerebellar peduncles,* to the pons by the *middle cerebellar peduncles*, and to the medulla by the *inferior cerebellar peduncles* (Fig. 1-14).

The surface layer of each cerebellar hemisphere is called the *cortex* and is composed of gray matter (Fig. 1-15). The cerebellar cortex is thrown into folds, or folia, separated by closely set transverse fissures. Certain masses of gray matter are found in the interior of the cerebellum, embedded in the white matter; the largest of these is known as the *dentate nucleus* (Fig. 1-14).

The cavity of the hindbrain is the *fourth ventricle*

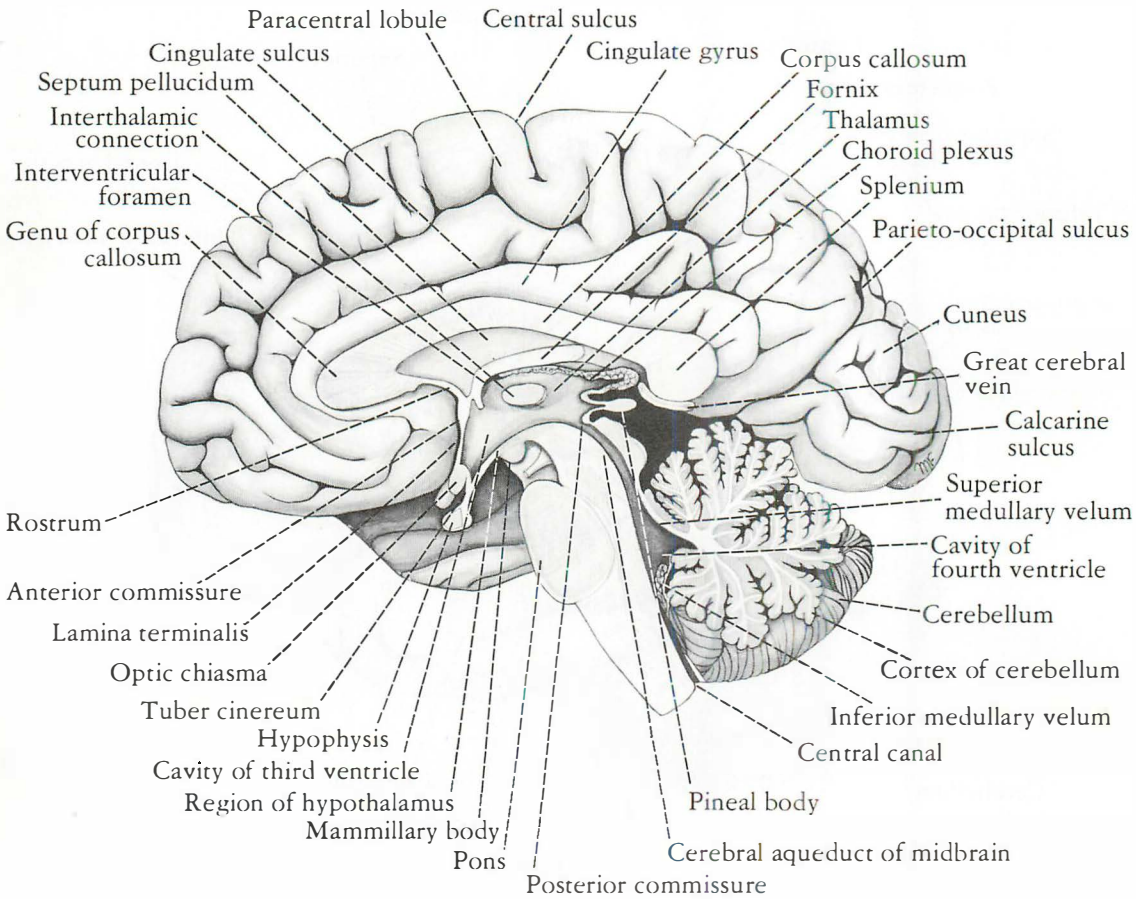


Fig. 1-13. Median sagittal section of the brain to show the third and fourth ventricles.

(see Figs. 1-13, 1-14, and 1-15). This is bounded anteriorly by the pons and the medulla oblongata, and posteriorly by the *superior and inferior medullary vela* and the cerebellum. The fourth ventricle is connected superiorly to the third ventricle by the *cerebral aqueduct*, and inferiorly it is continuous with the central canal of the spinal cord (Figs. 1-14 and 1-15). It communicates with the subarachnoid space through three openings in the inferior part of the roof: a median opening and two lateral openings (Figs. 1-14 and 1-15).

MIDBRAIN (MESENCEPHALON). The midbrain is the narrow part of the brain that connects the forebrain to the hindbrain (see Figs. 1-2, 1-13, and 1-16). The narrow cavity of the midbrain is the *cerebral aqueduct*, which connects the third and fourth ventricles (see Fig. 1-13). The *tectum* is that part of the midbrain that lies posterior to the cerebral aqueduct (Fig. 1-17); it has four surface swellings, namely, the *two superior and two inferior colliculi* (Figs. 1-16 and 1-17). The *cerebral peduncles* are situated anterior to the aqueduct (Fig. 1-17). Each peduncle is divided into an anterior part, the *crus cerebri*, and a posterior part, the *tegmentum*, by a pigmented band of gray matter, the *substantia nigra*. A large ovoid mass of cells, the *red nucleus*, easily recognized by its color (very vascular) is

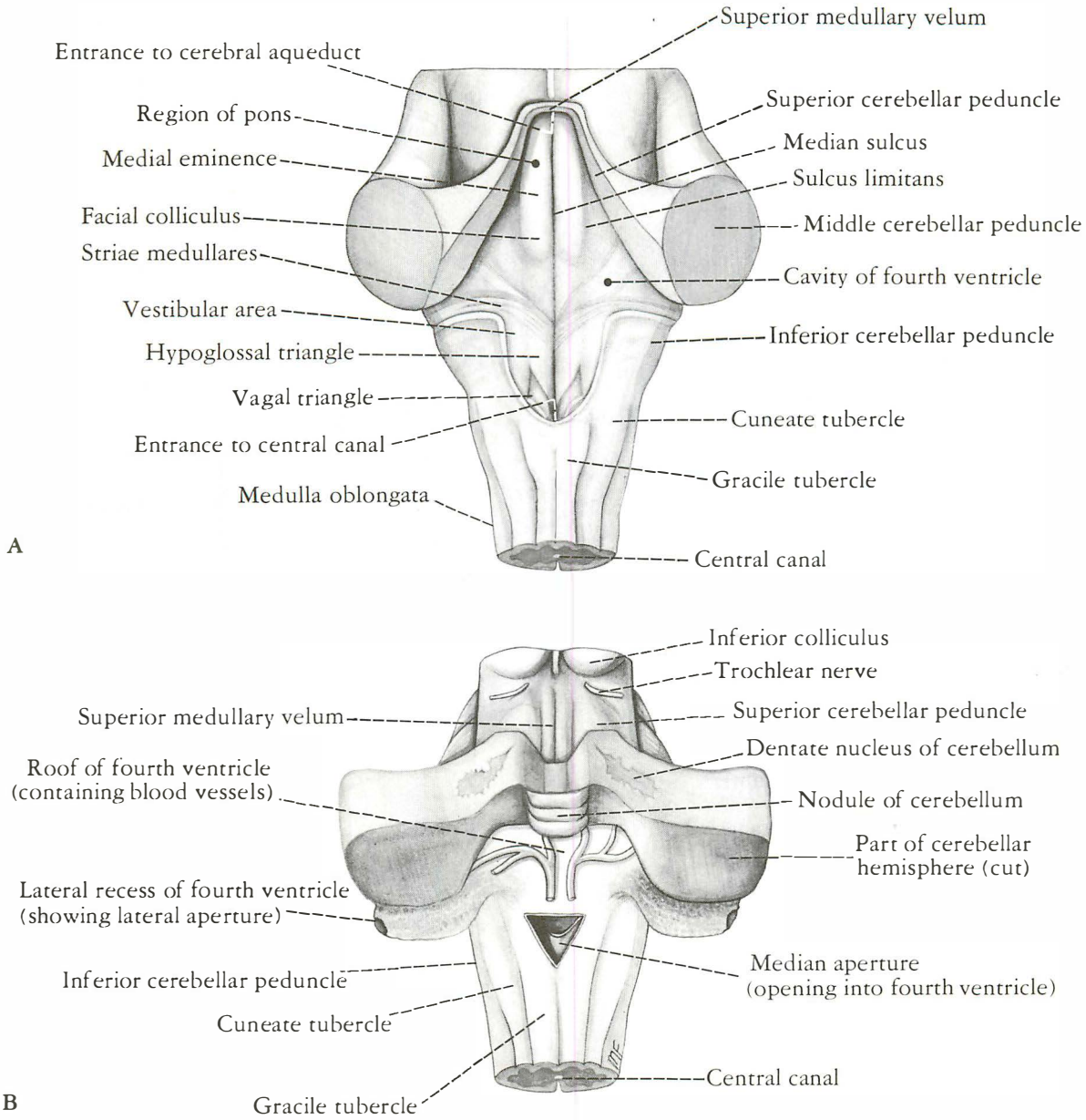


Fig. 1-14. A. Posterior view of the pons and the medulla oblongata, showing the cavity of the fourth ventricle. The cerebellum has been removed.
B. Posterior view of the roof of the fourth ventricle after removal of the greater part of the cerebellum.

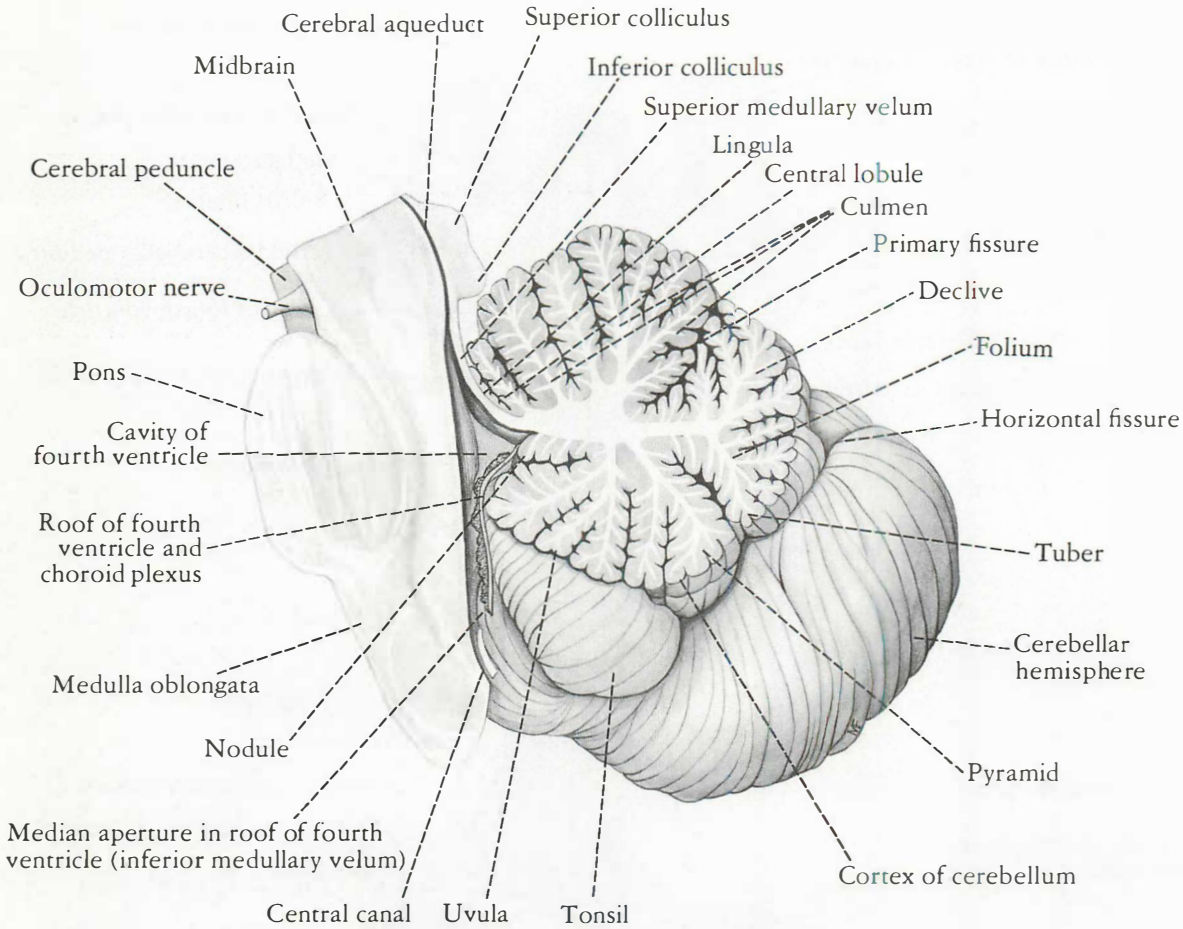


Fig. 1-15. Sagittal section through the brainstem and the cerebellum.

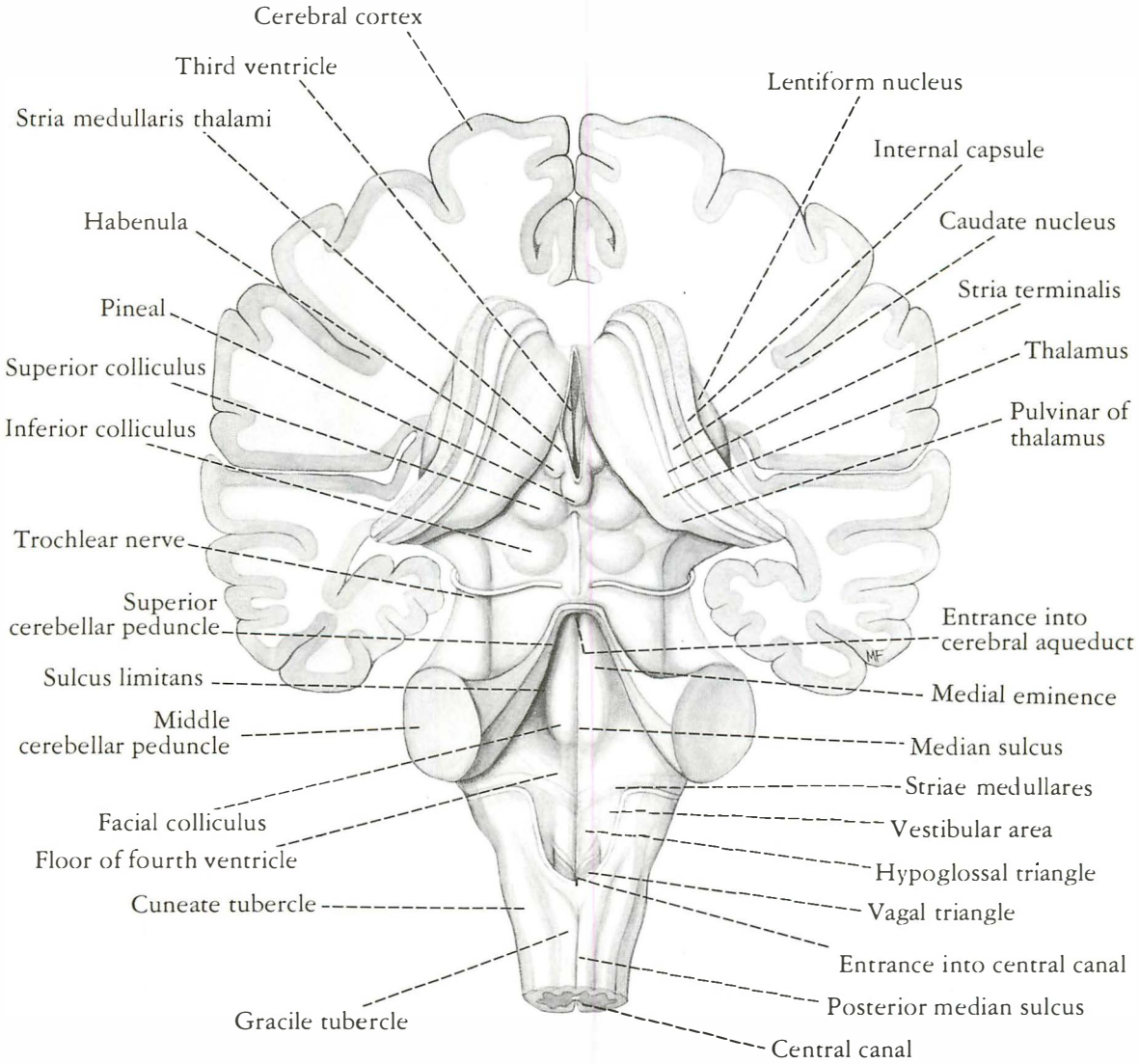


Fig. 1-16. Posterior view of the brainstem showing the tectum of the midbrain.

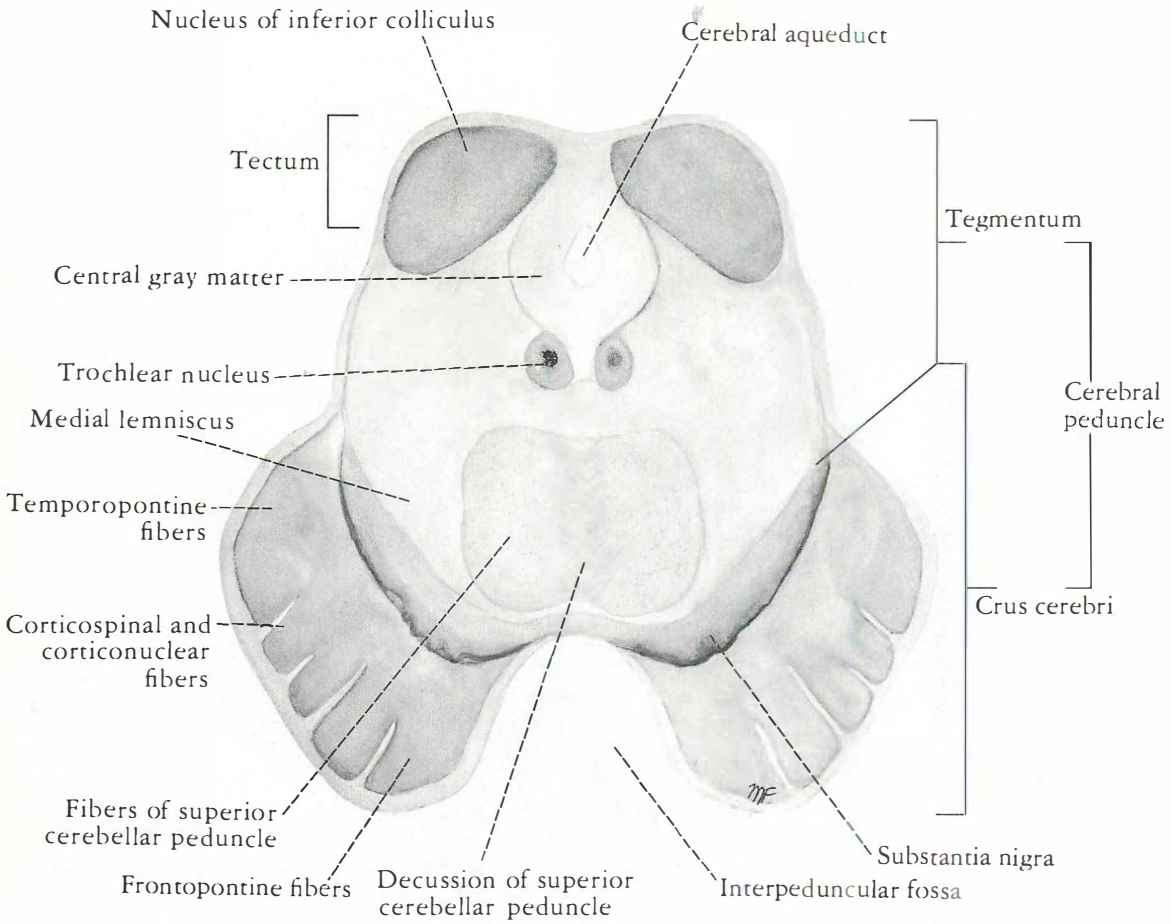


Fig. 1-17. Transverse section of the midbrain through the inferior colliculi.

situated in the tegmentum on each side at the level of the superior colliculus.

Diencephalon. The diencephalon is almost completely hidden from the surface of the brain. It consists of a dorsal *thalamus* and a ventral *hypothalamus* (see Figs. 1-13 and 1-16). The thalamus is a large egg-shaped mass of gray matter that lies on either side of the third ventricle. The anterior end of the thalamus forms the posterior boundary of the *interventricular foramen*, the opening between the third and lateral ventricles (see Fig. 1-13). The posterior end of the thalamus is expanded to form a large swelling, the *pulvinar* (see Fig. 1-16).

The hypothalamus forms the lower part of the lateral wall and floor of the third ventricle (see Fig. 1-13). The following structures are found in the floor of the third ventricle, from front to back: the *optic chiasma*, the *tuber cinereum*, the *infundibulum*, the *mammillary bodies*, and the *posterior perforated substance.* The cephalic, or rostral, end of the third ventricle is bounded by a thin sheet, the *lamina terminalis* (see Fig. 1-13).

Cerebrum. The cerebrum, the largest part of the brain, consists of two cerebral hemispheres, which are connected by a mass of white matter called the *corpus callosum* (see Figs. 1-12, 1-13, and 1-18).

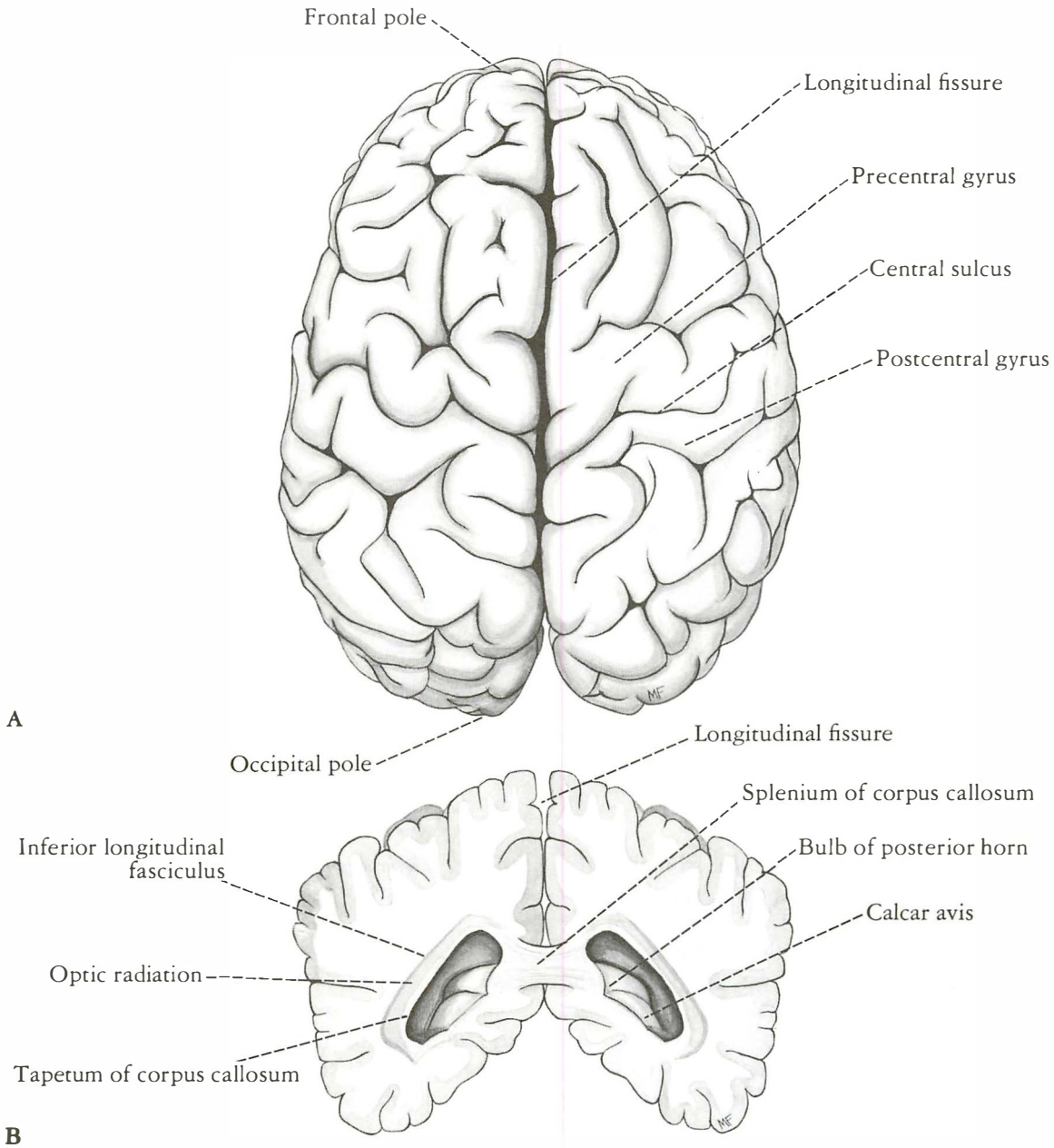


Fig. 1-18. A. The cerebrum viewed from its superior aspect.
B. Coronal section through the posterior parts of the cerebral hemispheres.

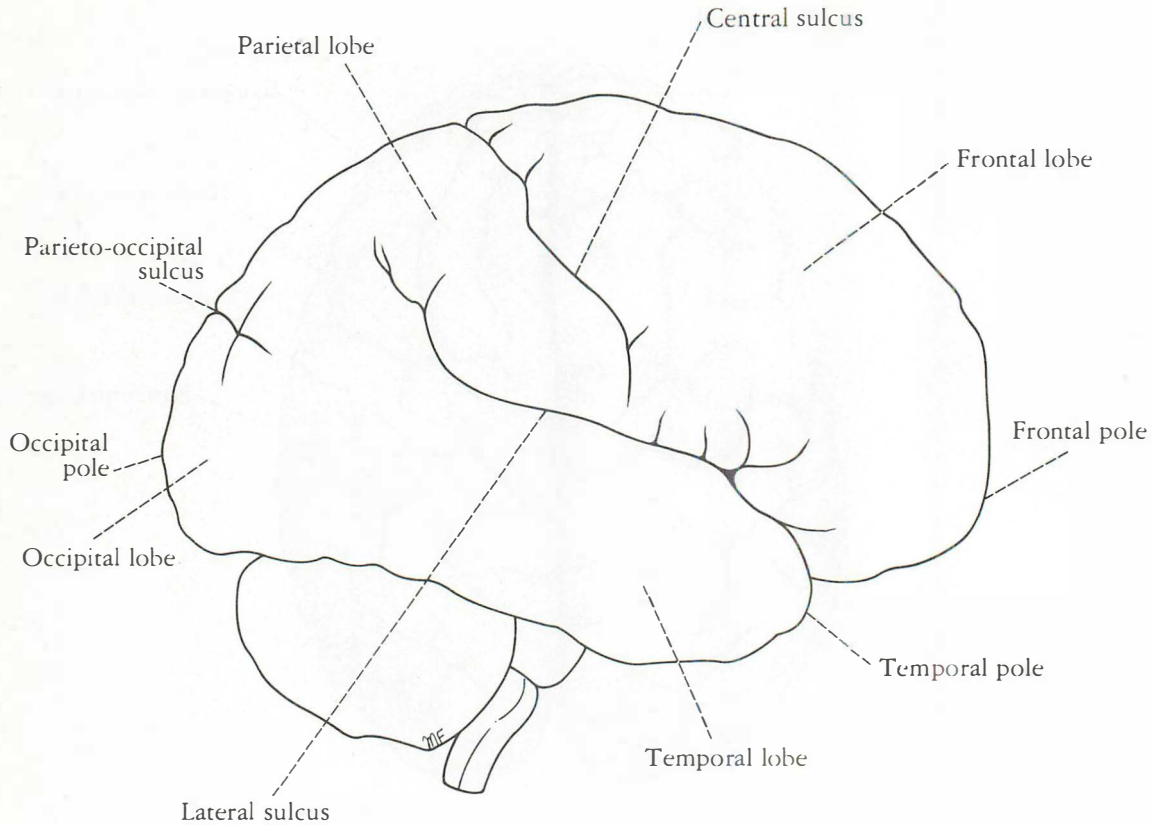


Fig. 1-19. Cerebral cortex viewed from its right lateral aspect, showing the lobes and large sulci.

Each hemisphere extends from the frontal to the occipital bones, superior to the anterior and middle cranial fossae; posteriorly, the cerebrum lies above the tentorium cerebelli (see Fig. 1-9). The hemispheres are separated by a deep cleft, the *longitudinal fissure*, into which projects the *falx cerebri* (see Fig. 1-9).

The surface layer of each hemisphere is called the *cortex* and is composed of gray matter. The cerebral cortex is thrown into folds, or *gyri*, separated by fissures, or *sulci* (see Figs. 1-12 and 1-18). The surface area of the cortex is greatly increased by this means. A number of the large sulci are conveniently used to subdivide the surface of each hemisphere into *lobes* (Fig. 1-19). The lobes are named from the bones of the cranium under which they lie.

The *frontal lobe* is situated anterior to the *central sulcus* and superior to the *lateral sulcus* (Fig. 1-19). The *parietal lobe* is situated posterior to the central sulcus and superior to the lateral sulcus. The *occipital lobe* lies inferior to the *parieto-occipital sulcus*. Inferior to the lateral sulcus is situated the *temporal lobe* (Fig. 1-19). The extreme ends of each hemisphere are often called the *frontal, occipital*, and *temporal poles*.

Within the hemisphere is a central core of white matter, containing several large masses of gray matter, the *basal nuclei* or *ganglia*. A fan-shaped

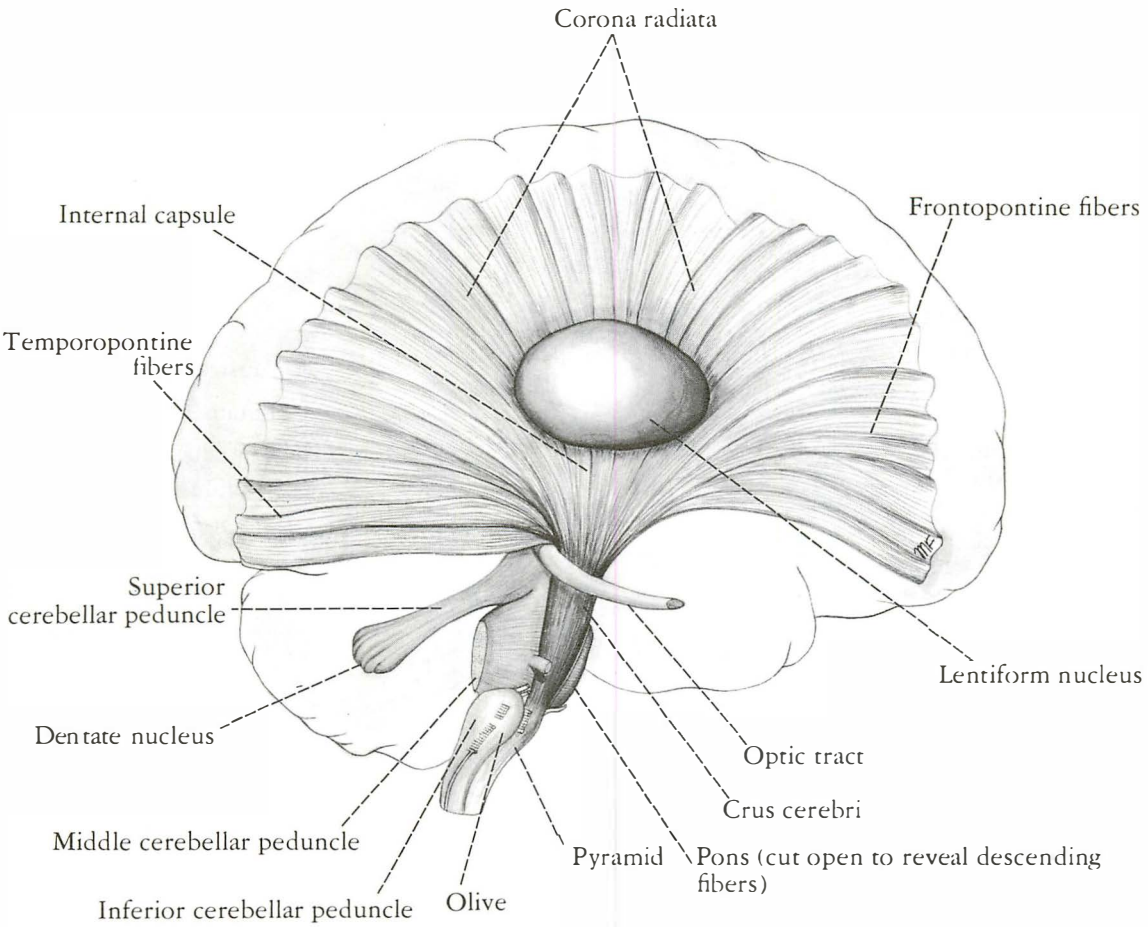


Fig. 1-20. Right lateral view showing continuity of corona radiata, internal capsule, and crus cerebri of the cerebral peduncles. Note the position of the lentiform nucleus lateral to the internal capsule.

collection of nerve fibers, termed the *corona radiata* (Fig. 1-20), passes in the white matter to and from the cerebral cortex to the brainstem. The corona radiata converges on the basal nuclei and passes between them as the *internal capsule*. The tailed nucleus situated on the medial side of the internal capsule is referred to as the *caudate nucleus* (Figs. 1-21 and 1-22) and the lens-shaped nucleus of the lateral side of the internal capsule is called the *lentiform nucleus*.

The cerebral hemispheres are connected across the midline by bundles of commissural nerve fibers, the largest of which is the *corpus callosum*, referred to previously (see Figs. 1-13 and 1-18).

The cavity present within each cerebral hemisphere is called the *lateral ventricle* (Fig. 1-23). The lateral ventricles communicate with the third ventricle through the *interventricular foramina*.

During the process of development, the cerebrum becomes enormously enlarged and overhangs the diencephalon, the midbrain, and the hindbrain. The caudate and lentiform nuclei

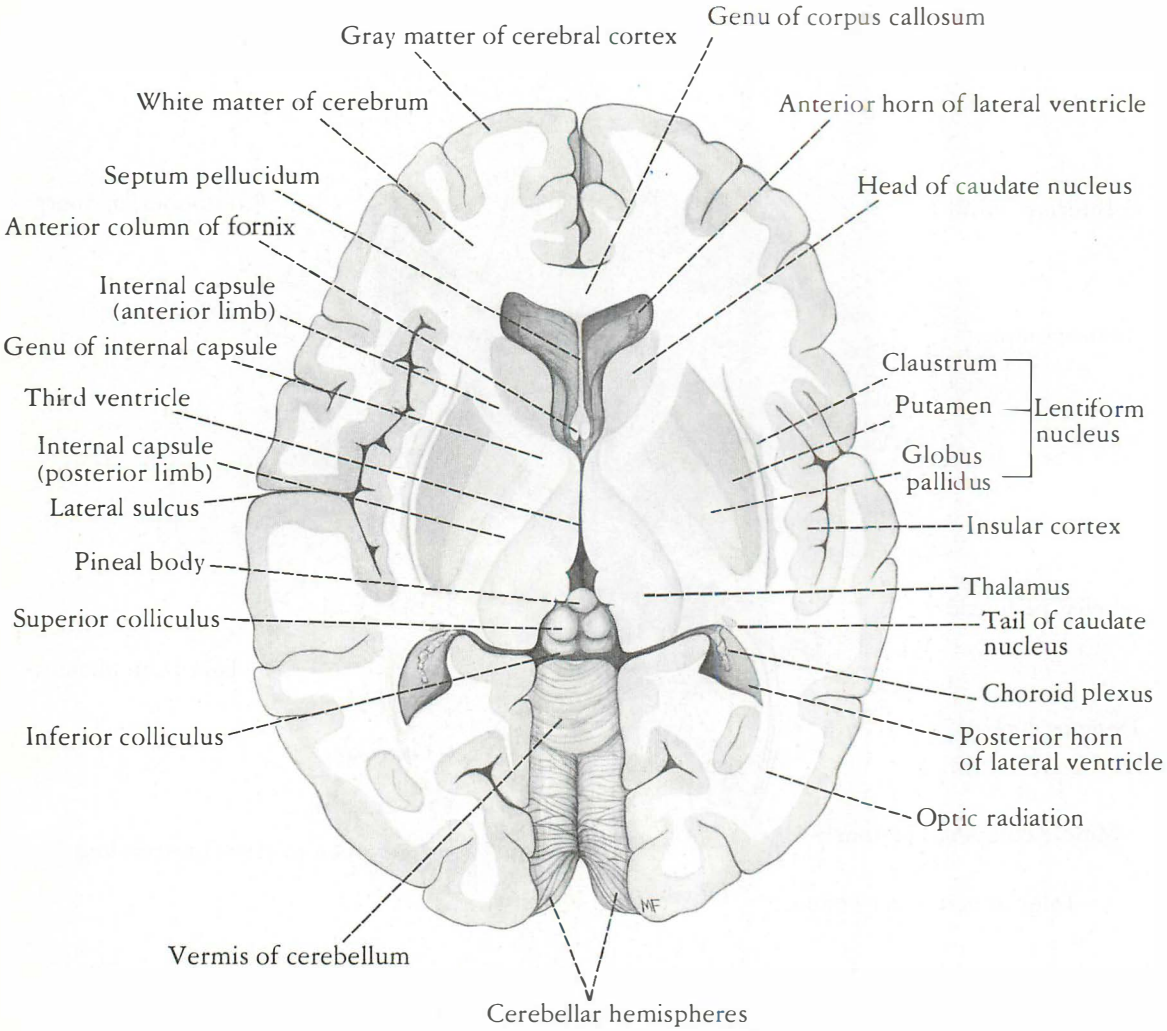


Fig. 1-21. Horizontal section of the cerebrum, showing the relationship between the lentiform nucleus, the caudate nucleus, the thalamus, and the internal capsule.

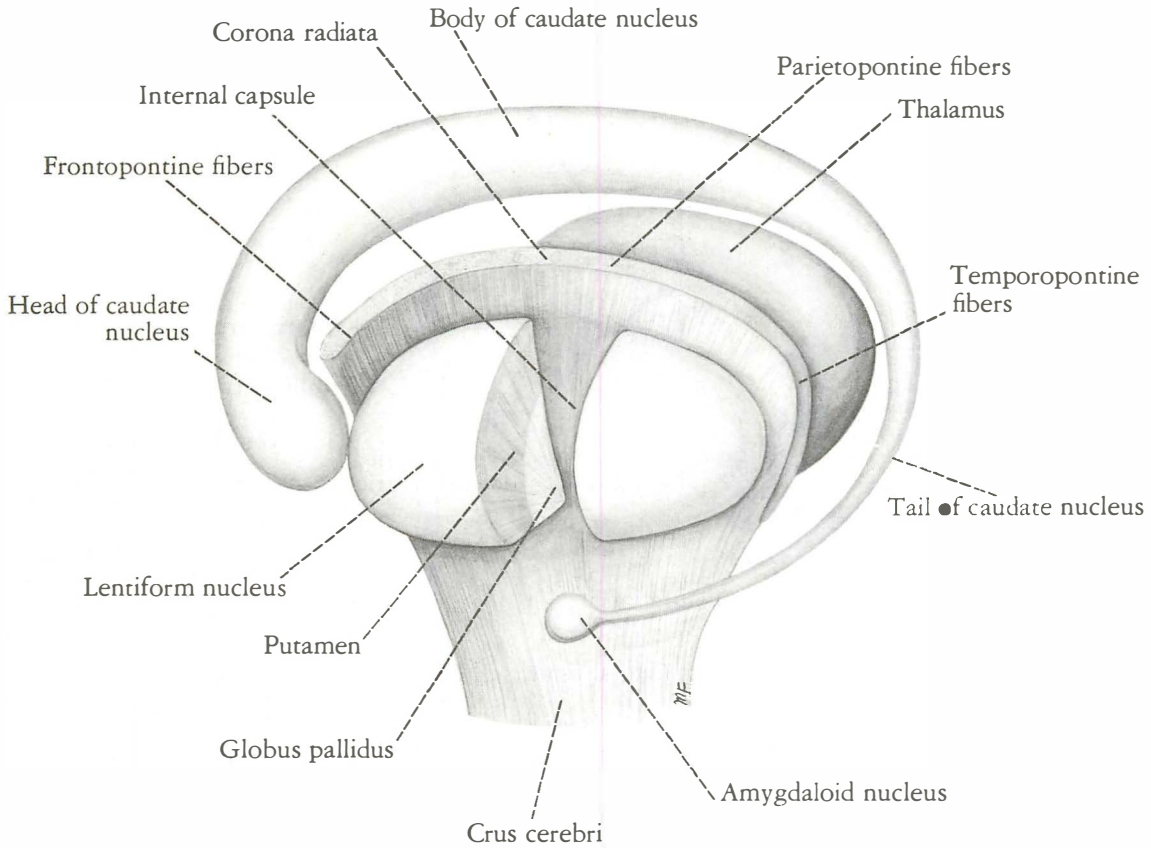


Fig. 1-22. Diagram showing the relationship between the lentiform nucleus, the caudate nucleus, the thalamus, and the internal capsule, as seen from the left lateral side.

and the thalamus become situated close together, so that the internal capsule has the caudate nucleus and thalamus on its medial side and the lentiform nucleus on its lateral side (see Figs. 1-21 and 1-22).

Major Divisions of the Peripheral Nervous System

The peripheral nervous system consists of the cranial and spinal nerves and their associated ganglia.

Cranial and Spinal Nerves

The cranial and spinal nerves are seen on dissection to be cords of grayish-white color that are made up of bundles of nerve fibers supported by connective tissue.

There are 12 pairs of *cranial nerves* (see Fig. 1-11), which leave the brain and pass through foramina in the skull. There are 31 pairs of *spinal nerves* (see Fig. 1-6), which leave the spinal cord and pass through intervertebral foramina in the vertebral column. The spinal nerves are named according to the regions of the vertebral column with which they are associated: 8 *cervical*, 12 *thoracic*, 5 *lumbar*, 5 *sacral* and 1 *coccygeal*. Note that there are 8 cervical nerves and only 7 cervical

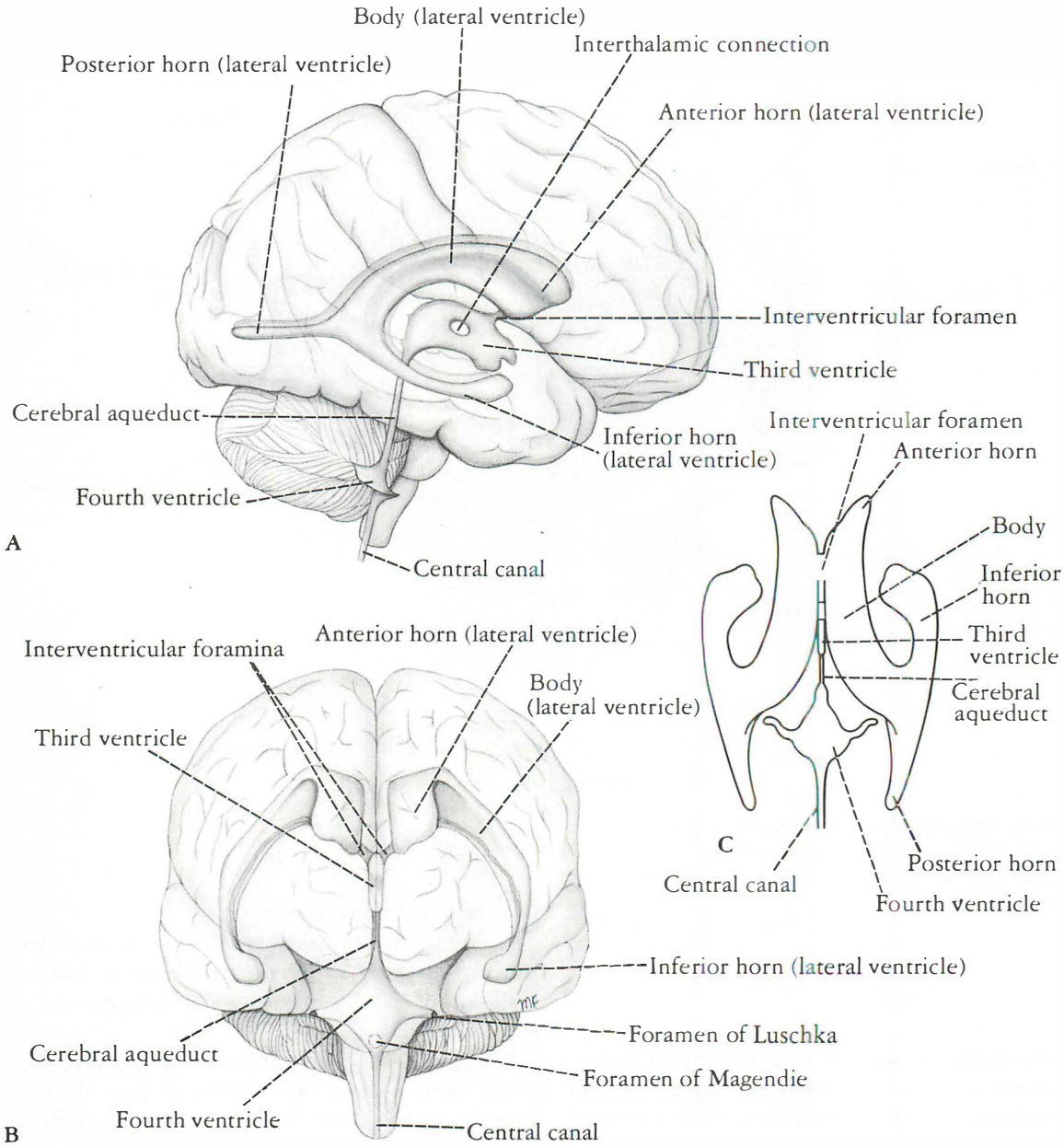


Fig. 1-23. A cast of the ventricular cavities of the brain as seen from:
A. Lateral view.
B. Anterior view.
C. Superior view.

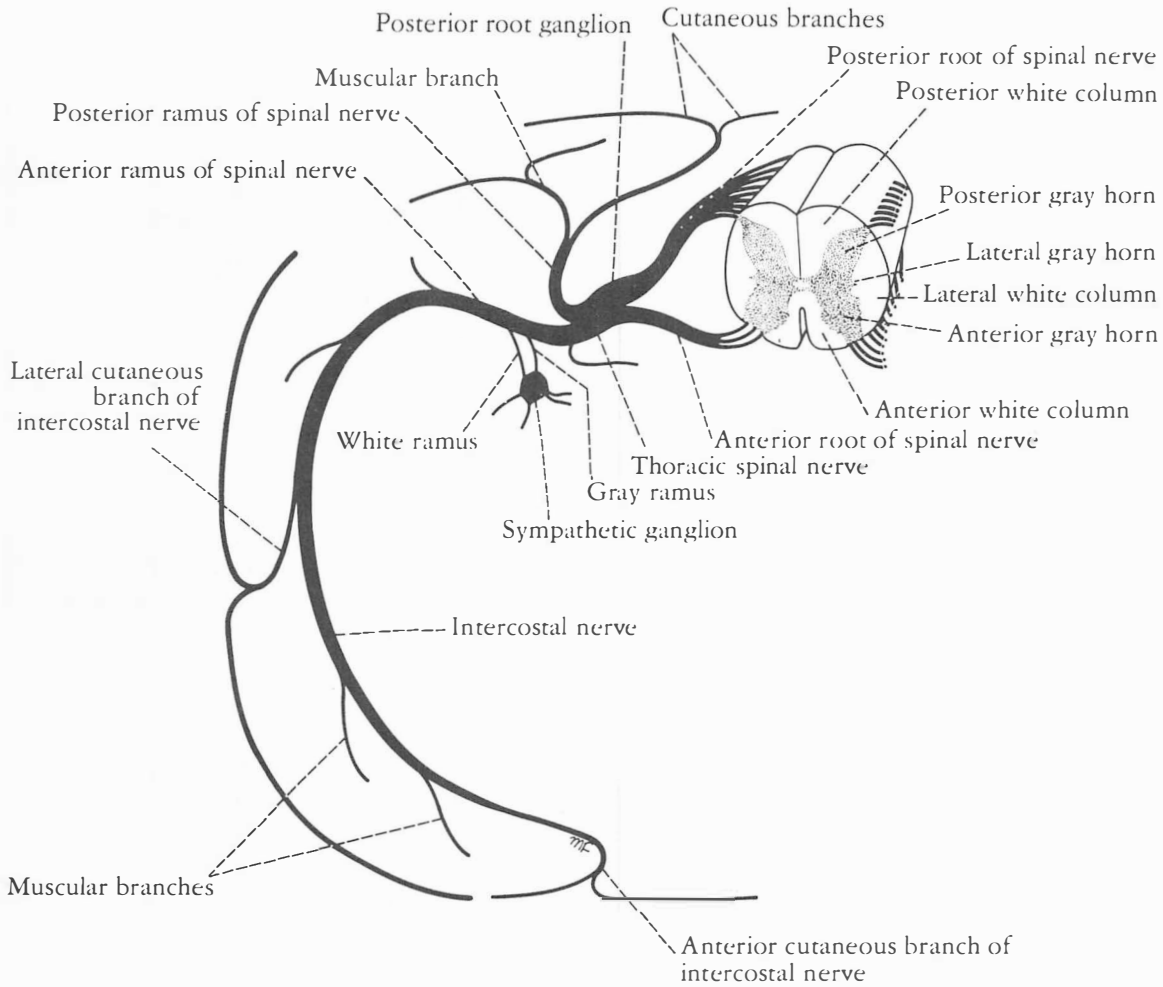


Fig. 1-24. Cross section of the thoracic region of the spinal cord, showing roots, spinal nerve, and anterior and posterior rami and their branches. Note that an intercostal nerve is formed from the anterior rami of T1–11 spinal nerves.

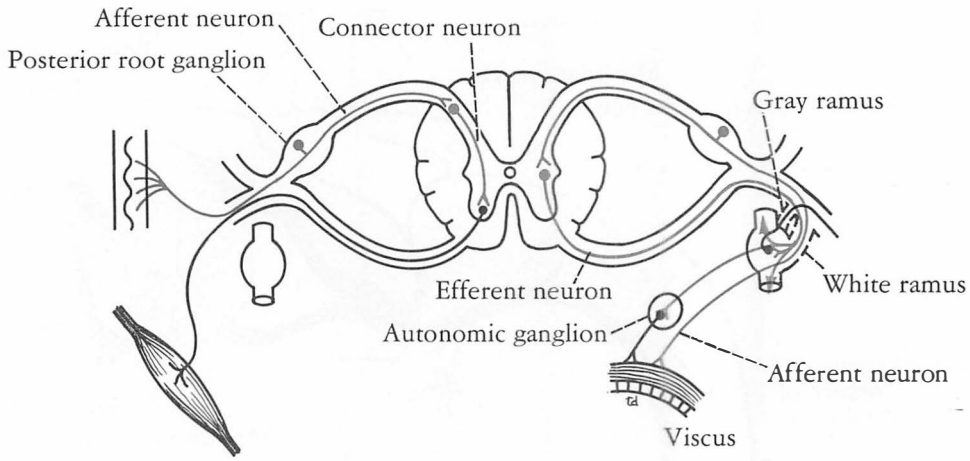


Fig. 1-25. Transverse section of thoracic part of spinal cord, showing the general arrangement of the somatic part of the nervous system (on left) *compared with the autonomic part of the nervous system* (on right).

vertebrae and that there is 1 coccygeal nerve and there are 4 coccygeal vertebrae.

Each spinal nerve is connected to the spinal cord by two roots: the *anterior root* and the *posterior root* (Fig. 1-24). The anterior root consists of bundles of nerve fibers carrying nerve impulses away from the central nervous system. Such nerve fibers are called *efferent fibers*. Those efferent fibers which go to skeletal muscles and cause them to contract are called *motor fibers* (Fig. 1-25). Their cells of origin lie in the anterior gray horn of the spinal cord.

The posterior root consists of bundles of nerve fibers, called *afferent fibers* (Fig. 1-25), that carry nervous impulses to the central nervous system. Because these fibers are concerned with conveying information about sensations of touch, pain, temperature, and vibration, they are called *sensory fibers*. The cell bodies of those nerve fibers are situated in a swelling on the posterior root called the *posterior root ganglion* (Figs. 1-24 and 1-25).

The spinal nerve roots pass from the spinal cord to the level of their respective intervertebral foramina, where they unite to form a *spinal nerve* (Fig. 1-26). Here the motor and sensory fibers become mixed together so that a spinal nerve is made up of a mixture of motor and sensory fibers.

Because of the disproportionate growth in length of the vertebral column during development, compared with that of the spinal cord, the length of the roots increases progressively from above downward (Fig. 1-26). In the upper cervical region the spinal nerve roots are short and run almost horizontally, but the roots of the lumbar and sacral nerves below the level of the termination of the cord (lower border of the first lumbar vertebra in the adult) form a vertical leash of nerves around the *filum terminale* (Fig. 1-27). Together these lower nerve roots are called the *cauda equina*.

After emerging from the intervertebral foramen, each spinal nerve immediately divides into a large *anterior ramus* and a smaller *posterior ramus*, each containing both motor and sensory fibers (see Fig. 1-24). The posterior ramus passes posteriorly around the vertebral column to supply the muscles and skin of the back. The anterior ramus continues anteriorly to supply the muscles and skin over the antero-lateral body wall, and all the muscles and skin of the limbs.

The anterior rami join one another at the root of the limbs to form complicated *nerve plexuses* (see Fig. 1-2B). The cervical and brachial plexuses are found at the root of the arms and the *lumbar* and *sacral plexuses* are found at the root of the legs.

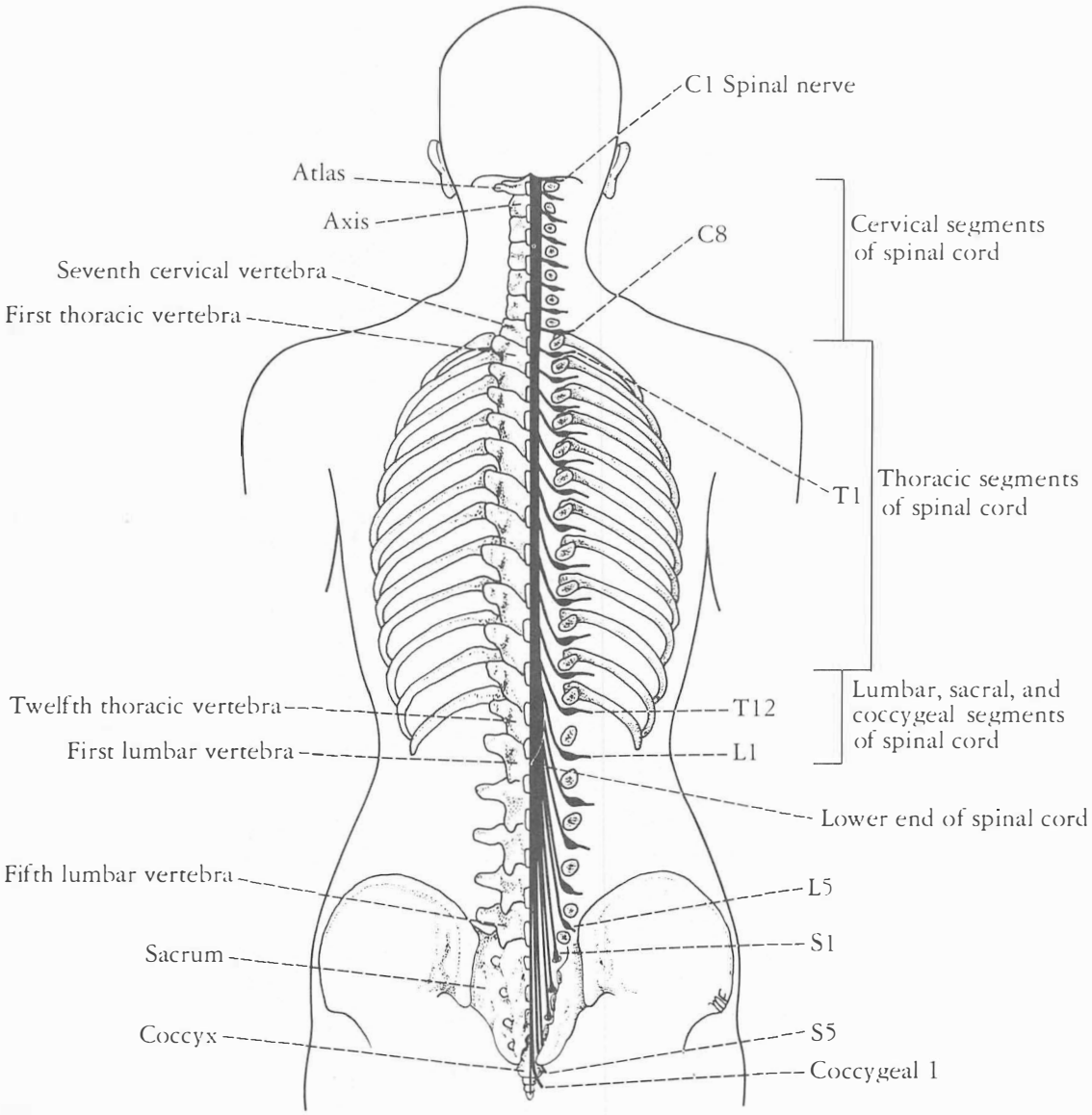


Fig. 1-26. Posterior view of spinal cord, showing the origins of the roots of the spinal nerves and their relationship to the different vertebrae. On the right, the laminae have been removed to expose the right half of the spinal cord and the nerve roots.

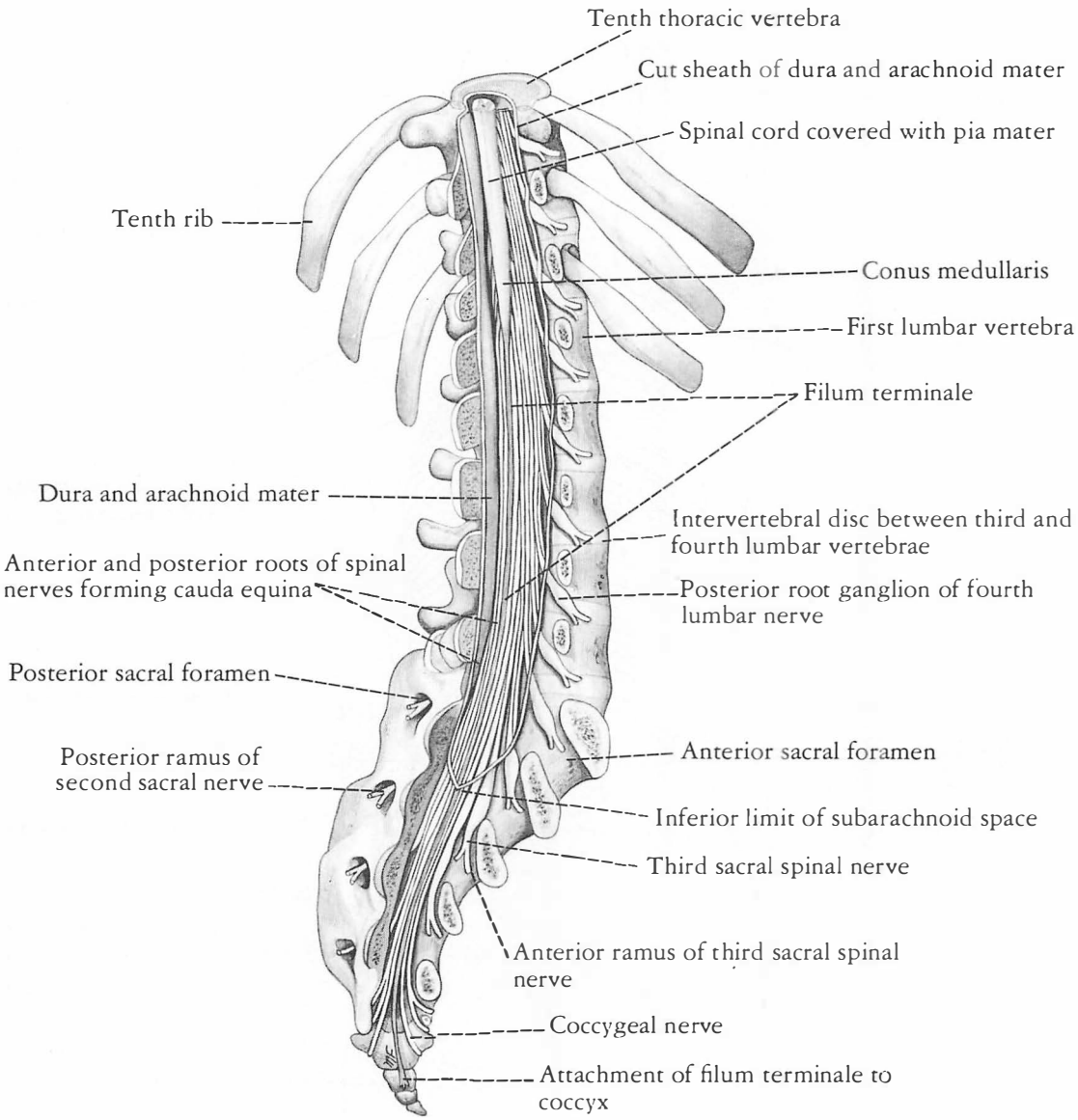


Fig. 1-27. Oblique posterior view of the lower end of the spinal cord and the cauda equina. On the right, the laminae have been removed to expose the right half of the spinal cord and the nerve roots.

GANGLIA. Ganglia may be divided into sensory ganglia of spinal nerves (posterior root ganglia) and cranial nerves, and autonomic ganglia.

Sensory Ganglia. Sensory ganglia are fusiform swellings (see Fig. 1-24) situated on the posterior root of each spinal nerve just proximal to the root's junction with a corresponding anterior root. They are referred to as *posterior root ganglia*. Similar ganglia that are also found along the course of cranial nerves V, VII, VIII, IX, and X are called simply *sensory ganglia* of these nerves.

Autonomic Ganglia. Autonomic ganglia, which are often irregular in shape, are situated along the course of efferent nerve fibers of the autonomic nervous system. They are found in the paravertebral sympathetic chains (see Figs. 1-24 and 1-25) around the roots of the great visceral arteries in the abdomen and close to, or embedded within, the walls of various viscera.

It is essential that this brief outline of the organization of the nervous system be understood before proceeding further.

Clinical Notes

Injuries to the Spinal Cord and Brain

The spinal cord and brain are well protected. Both are suspended in fluid, the *cerebrospinal fluid*, and are surrounded by the bones of the vertebral column and skull. Unfortunately, if the forces of violence are sufficiently great these protective structures can be overcome, with consequent damage to the delicate underlying nervous tissue. Moreover, the cranial and spinal nerves and blood vessels are also likely to be injured.

Spinal Cord Injuries

The degree of spinal cord injury at different vertebral levels is governed largely by anatomical factors. In the cervical region, dislocation or fracture dislocation is common, but the large size of the vertebral canal often prevents severe injury to the spinal cord. However, when there is considerable displacement, the cord is sectioned and death occurs immediately. Respiration ceases if the lesion occurs above the segmental origin of the phrenic nerves (C3, 4, and 5).

In fracture dislocations of the thoracic region, displacement is often considerable and the small size of the vertebral canal results in severe injury to the spinal cord.

In fracture dislocations of the lumbar region, two anatomical facts aid the patient. First, the spinal cord in the adult extends down only as far as the level of the lower border of the first lumbar vertebra (see Fig. 1-27). Second, the large size of the vertebral foramen in this region gives the roots of the cauda equina ample room. Nerve injury may therefore be minimal in this region.

Injury to the spinal cord may produce partial or complete loss of function at the level of the lesion, and partial or complete loss of function of afferent and efferent nerve tracts below the level of the lesion. The symptoms and signs of such injuries will be considered after the detailed structure of the spinal cord has been discussed in a later section.

Spinal Nerve Injuries

The intervertebral foramina (Fig. 1-28) transmit the spinal nerves and the small segmental arteries and veins, all of which are embedded in areolar tissue. Each foramen is bounded superiorly and inferiorly by the pedicles of adjacent vertebrae, anteriorly by the lower part of the vertebral body and by the intervertebral disc, and posteriorly by the articular processes and the joint between them. In this situation, the spinal nerve is very vulnerable and may be pressed upon or irritated by disease of the surrounding structures. Herniation of the intervertebral disc, fractures of the vertebral bodies, and osteoarthritis involving the joints of the articular processes or the joints between the vertebral bodies may all result in pressure, stretching, or edema of the emerging spinal nerve.

Herniation of the intervertebral discs occurs

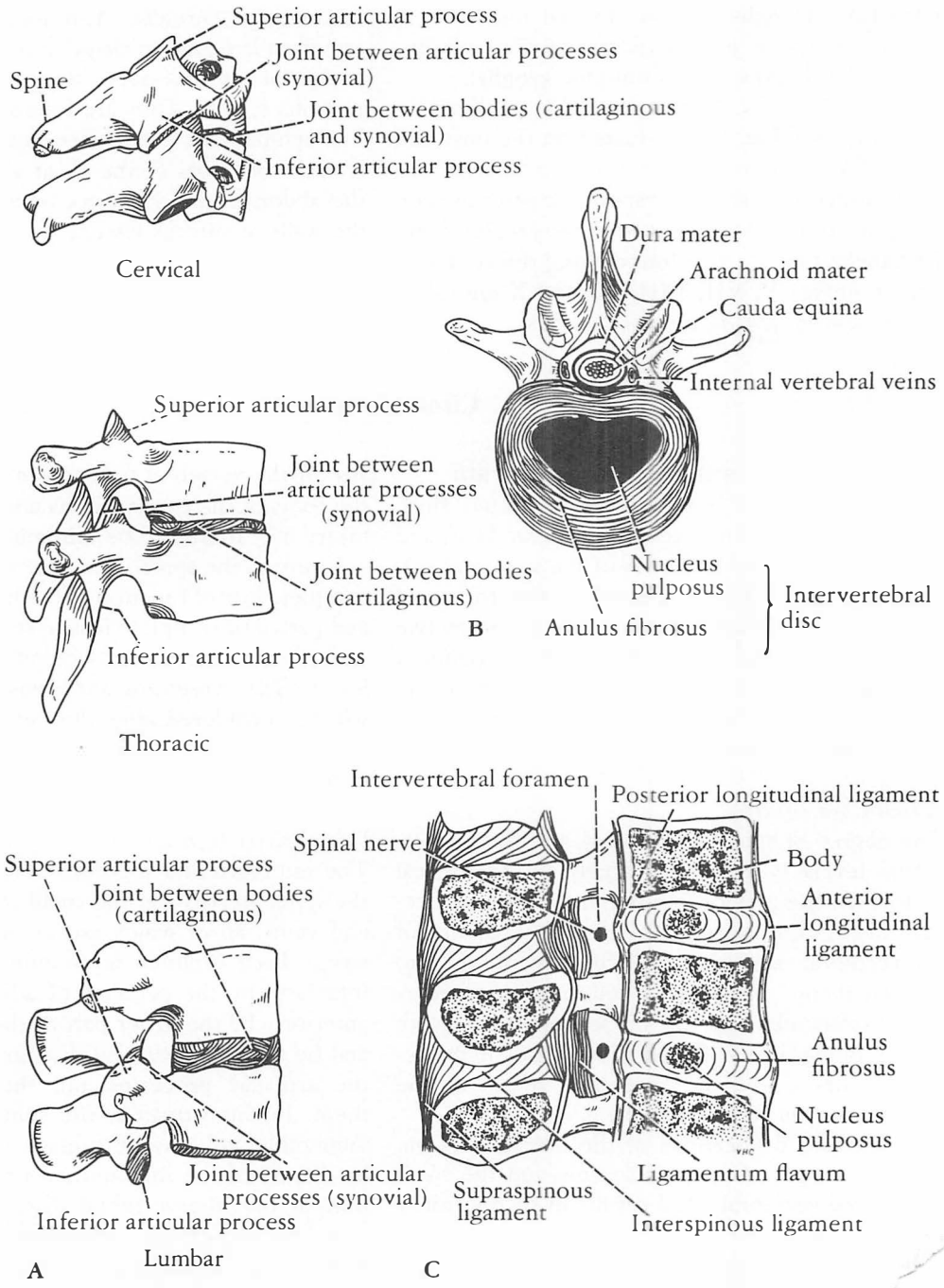


Fig. 1-28. A. Joints in cervical, thoracic, and lumbar regions of vertebral column.
B. Third lumbar vertebra seen from above, showing relationship between intervertebral disc and cauda equina.
C. Sagittal section through three lumbar vertebrae, showing ligaments and intervertebral discs. Note relationship between emerging spinal nerve in an intervertebral foramen and the intervertebral disc.

most commonly in those areas of the vertebral column where a mobile part joins a relatively immobile part, e.g., the cervicothoracic junction and the lumbosacral junction. In these areas the posterior part of the anulus fibrosus of the disc ruptures, and the central nucleus pulposus is forced posteriorly like toothpaste out of a tube. This herniation of the nucleus pulposus may result either in a central protrusion in the midline under the posterior longitudinal ligament of the vertebrae or in a lateral protrusion at the side of the posterior ligament close to the intervertebral foramen (Fig. 1-29).

Cervical disc herniations are less common than in the lumbar region. The discs most liable to this condition are those between the fifth and sixth and seventh vertebrae. Lateral protrusions cause pressure on a spinal nerve or its roots. Each spinal nerve emerges above the corresponding vertebra; thus, the C5 to 6 disc protrusion compresses the C6 spinal nerve or its roots. Pain is felt near the lower part of the back of the neck and shoulder and along the area in the distribution of the spinal nerve involved. Central protrusions may press on the spinal cord and the anterior spinal artery and involve the various spinal tracts.

Lumbar disc herniations are more common than cervical disc herniations (Fig. 1-29). The discs most usually affected are those between the fourth and fifth lumbar vertebrae and between the fifth lumbar vertebra and the sacrum. In the lumbar region, the roots of the cauda equina run posteriorly over a number of intervertebral discs (Fig. 1-29). A lateral herniation may press on one or two roots and often involves the nerve root going to the intervertebral foramen just below. The nucleus pulposus occasionally herniates directly backward and, if it is a large herniation, the whole cauda equina may be compressed, producing paraplegia.

In lumbar disc herniations, pain is referred down the leg and foot in the distribution of the affected nerve. Since the sensory posterior roots most commonly pressed upon are the fifth lumbar and first sacral, pain is usually felt down the back and lateral side of the leg, radiating to the sole of the foot. This condition is often called *sciatica*. In severe cases there may be paresthesia or actual sensory loss.

Pressure on the anterior motor roots causes muscle weakness. Involvement of the fifth lumbar motor root produces weakness of dorsiflexion of the ankle, while pressure on the first sacral motor root causes weakness of plantar flexion, and the ankle jerk may be diminished or absent (Fig. 1-29).

A large, centrally placed protrusion may give rise to bilateral pain and muscle weakness in both legs. Acute retention of urine may also occur.

Relationship of Spinal Cord Segments to Vertebral Numbers

In the adult the spinal cord terminates at the level of the lower border of the first lumbar vertebra; thus the spinal segments do not correspond numerically with the vertebrae that lie at the same level (see Fig. 1-26). The following will help a physician determine which spinal segment is related to a given vertebral body.

Vertebrae	*Spinal Segment*
Cervical vertebrae	Add 1
Upper thoracic vertebrae	Add 2
Lower thoracic vertebrae (7–9)	Add 3
Tenth thoracic vertebra	L1 and 2 cord segments
Eleventh thoracic vertebra	L3 and 4 cord segments
Twelfth thoracic vertebra	L5 cord segment
First lumbar vertebra	Sacral and coccygeal cord segments

It will be seen on examination of a patient's back that the spinous processes lie approximately at the same level as the vertebral bodies. However, in the lower thoracic region, because of the length and extreme obliquity of the spinous processes, it

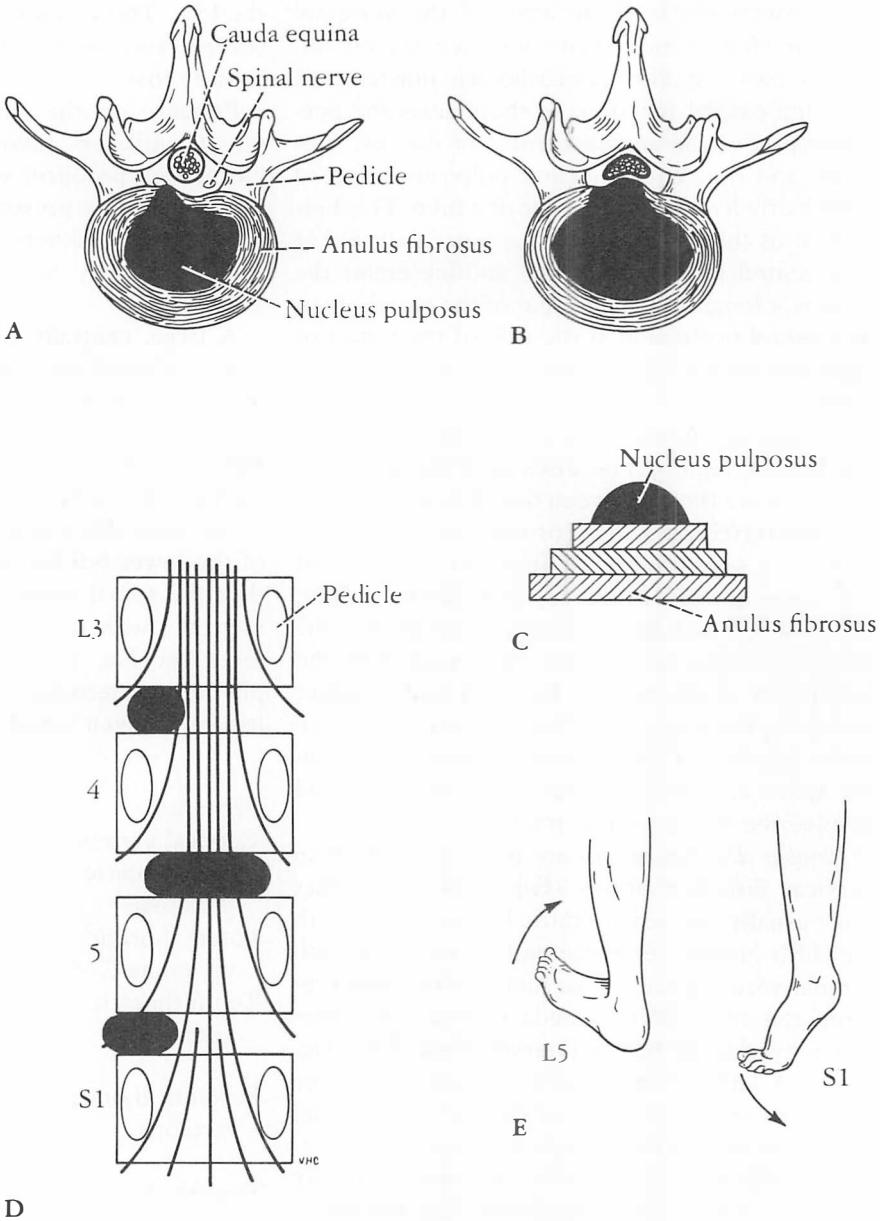


Fig. 1-29. A. Posterolateral rupture of anulus fibrosus, permitting nucleus pulposus to herniate backward and exert pressure on a spinal nerve root or spinal nerve.
B. Posterior rupture of anulus fibrosus, showing nucleus pulposus exerting pressure on spinal nerve roots of cauda equina.
C. Diagrammatic representation of intervertebral disc, showing concentric rings of anulus fibrosus and centrally placed, rounded nucleus pulposus.
D. Diagrammatic representation of posterior view of vertebral bodies in lumbar region, showing relationship that might exist between herniated nucleus pulposus and spinal nerve roots.
E. Pressure on L5 motor nerve root produces weakness of dorsiflexion of ankle joint; pressure on S1 motor nerve root produces weakness of plantar flexion of the ankle joint.

is useful to remember that the tips of the spines lie at the level of the vertebral body below.

Lumbar Puncture

Lumbar puncture may be performed to withdraw a sample of cerebrospinal fluid for microscopic or bacteriological examination, or to inject drugs to combat infection or induce anesthesia. Fortunately, the spinal cord terminates inferiorly at the level of the lower border of the first lumbar vertebra in the adult. (In the infant it may reach inferiorly to the third lumbar vertebra.) The subarachnoid space extends inferiorly as far as the lower border of the second sacral vertebra. The lower lumbar part of the vertebral canal is thus occupied by the subarachnoid space, which contains the lumbar and sacral nerve roots and the filum terminale (the cauda equina). A needle introduced into the subarachnoid space in this region usually pushes the nerve roots to one side without causing damage.

With the patient lying on his side with the vertebral column well flexed, the space between adjoining laminae in the lumbar region is opened to a maximum (Fig. 1-30). An imaginary line joining the highest points on the iliac crests passes over the fourth lumbar spine. Using a careful aseptic technique and local anesthesia, the physician passes the lumbar puncture needle, fitted with a stylet, into the vertebral canal above or below the fourth lumbar spine. The needle will pass through the following anatomical structures before it enters the subarachnoid space: (1) skin, (2) superficial fascia, (3) supraspinous ligament, (4) interspinous ligament, (5) ligamentum flavum, (6) areolar tissue containing the internal vertebral venous plexus, (7) dura mater, and (8) arachnoid mater. The depth to which the needle will have to pass will vary from 1 inch (2.5 cm) or less in a child to as much as 4 inches (10 cm) in a fat adult.

[illegible] the stylet is withdrawn a few drops of blood [illegible]nly escape. This usually indicates that the [illegible] of the needle is situated in one of the veins of the internal vertebral plexus and has not yet reached the subarachnoid space. If the entering needle should stimulate one of the nerve roots of the cauda equina, the patient will experience a fleeting discomfort in one of the dermatomes or a muscle will twitch, depending on whether a sensory or a motor root was impaled.

The cerebrospinal fluid pressure may be measured by attaching a manometer to the needle. When the patient is in the recumbent position, the *normal pressure is about 120 mm of water.*

A block of the subarachnoid space in the vertebral canal, which may be caused by a tumor of the spinal cord or the meninges, may be detected by compressing the internal jugular veins in the neck. This raises the cerebral venous pressure and inhibits the absorption of cerebrospinal fluid in the arachnoid granulations (see p. 292), thus producing a rise in the manometer reading of the cerebrospinal fluid pressure. If this rise fails to occur, the subarachnoid space is blocked and the patient is said to exhibit a positive *Queckenstedt's sign*.

Caudal Anesthesia

Solutions of anesthetics may be injected into the sacral canal through the sacral hiatus. The solutions pass upward in the loose connective tissue and bathe the spinal nerves as they emerge from the dural sheath (Fig. 1-31). Obstetricians use this method of nerve block to relieve the pains of the second stage of labor. The advantage is that when it is administered by this method the anesthetic does not affect the infant.

Head Injuries

A blow to the head may cause the scalp to be merely bruised; severe blows may cause the scalp to be torn or split. Even if the head is protected by a crash helmet, the brain may be severely damaged without clinical evidence of scalp injury.

Severe blows to the head often result in the skull's changing shape at the point of impact. Small objects may penetrate the skull and produce local laceration of the brain. Larger objects applied with great force may shatter the skull, and fragments of bone are driven into the brain at the site of impact.

In the adult fractures of the skull are very common, but in the young child less so. In the infant,

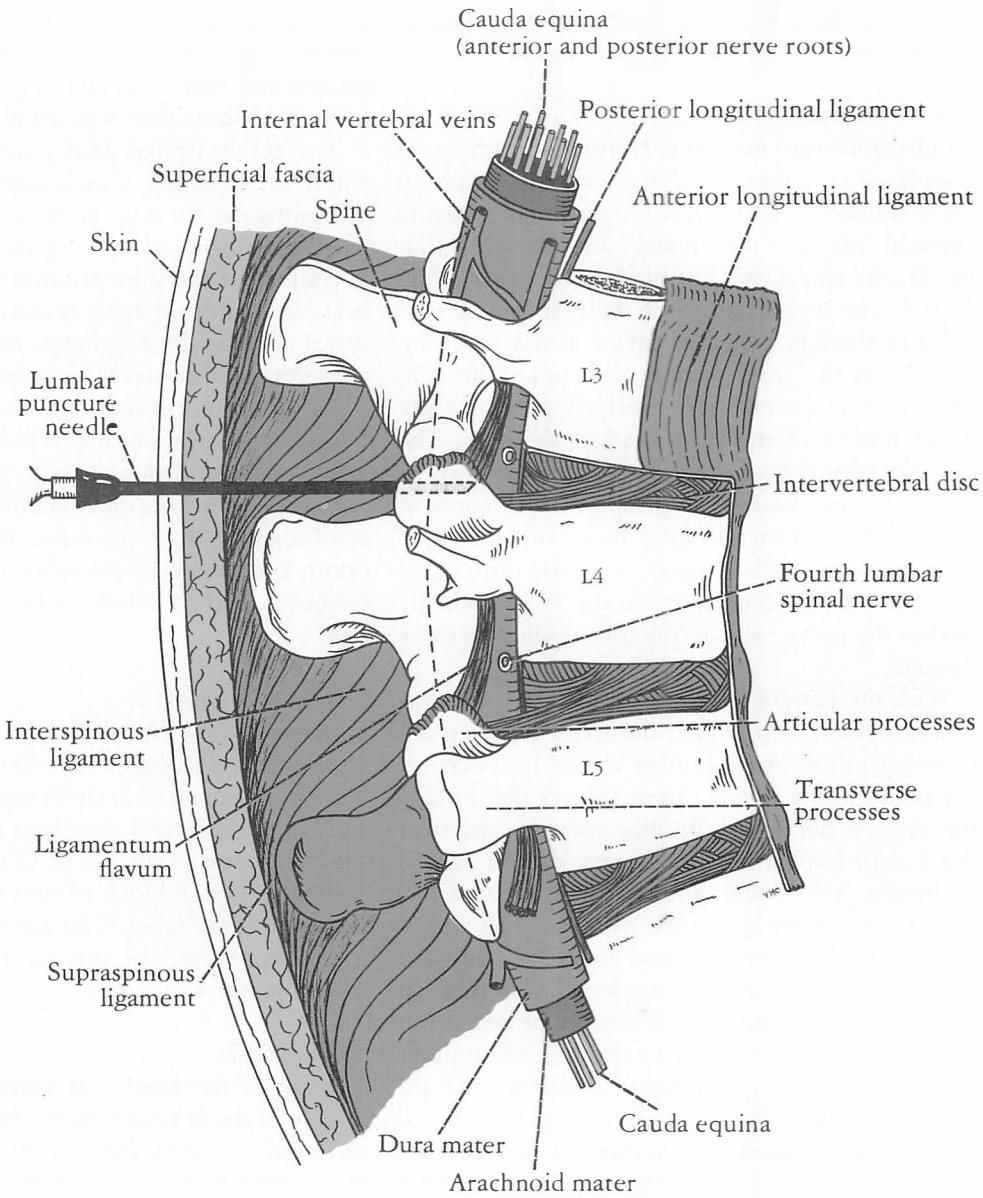


Fig. 1-30. Sagittal section through lumbar part of vertebral column in position of flexion. Note that spine and laminae are well separated in this position, allowing introduction of lumbar puncture needle into subarachnoid space.

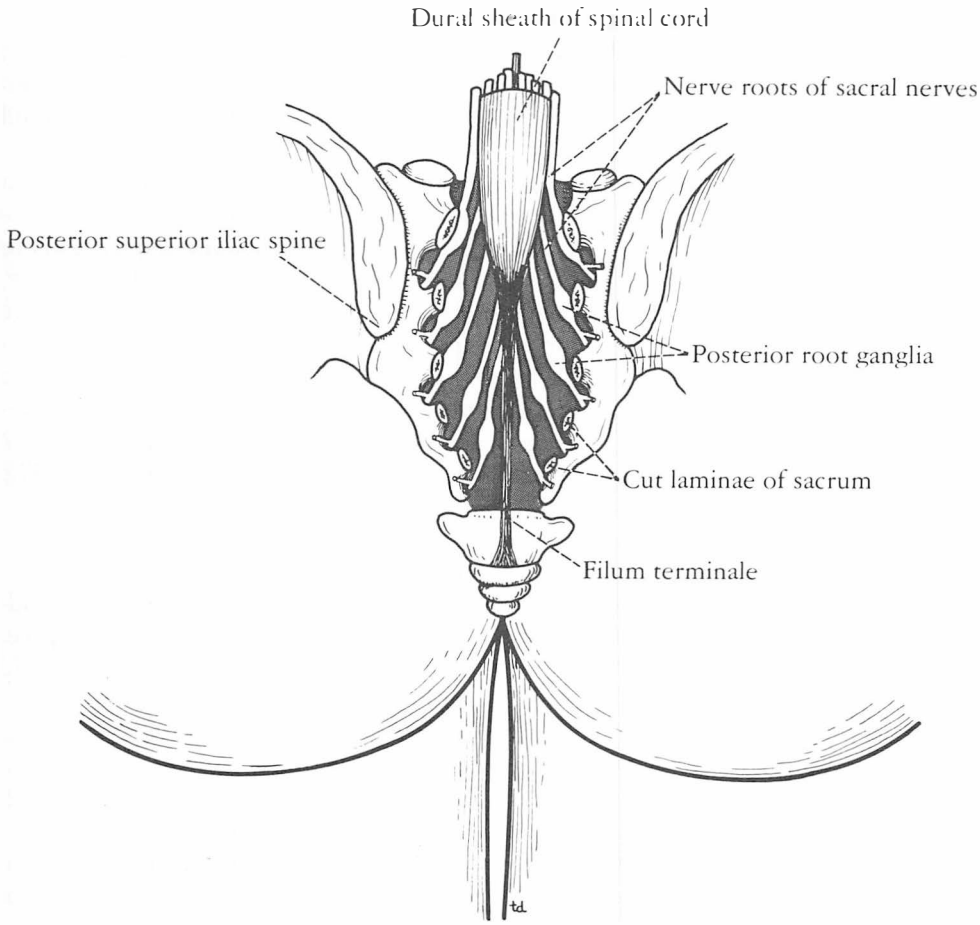


Fig. 1-31. Posterior view of sacrum. Laminae have been removed to show sacral nerve roots lying within sacral canal.

the bones are more resilient than in the adult skull, and they are separated by fibrous sutural ligaments. In the adult the inner table of the skull is particularly brittle. Moreover, the sutural ligaments begin to ossify during middle age.

The type of fracture that occurs in the skull will depend on the age of the patient, the severity of the blow, and the area of the skull receiving the trauma. The *adult skull* may be likened to an eggshell because it possesses a certain limited resilience, beyond which it splinters. A severe, localized blow will produce a local identation, often accompanied by splintering of the bone. Blows to the vault often result in a series of linear fractures, which radiate out through the thin areas of the bone. The petrous parts of the temporal bones and the occipital crests strongly reinforce the base of the skull and tend to deflect linear fractures.

The young *child's skull* may be likened to a table tennis ball because a localized blow produces a depression without splintering. This common type of circumscribed lesion is referred to as a "pond" fracture.

Brain Injuries

Brain injuries are produced by displacement and distortion of the neuronal tissues at the moment of impact (Fig. 1-32). The brain, which is incompressible, may be likened to a water-soaked log floating submerged in water. The brain is floating in the cerebrospinal fluid in the subarachnoid space and is capable of a certain amount of anteroposterior gliding movement. This movement is limited by the attachment of the superior cerebral veins to the superior sagittal sinus. Lateral displacement of the brain is limited by the falx cerebri. The tentorium cerebelli and the falx cerebelli also restrict displacement of the brain.

It follows from these anatomical facts that blows on the front or back of the head lead to displacement of the brain, which may produce severe cerebral damage, stretching and distortion of the brainstem, and stretching and even tearing of the commissures of the brain. Blows on the side of the head produce less cerebral displacement, and the injuries to the brain consequently tend to be less severe. However, it should be noted that the falx cerebri is a tough structure and may cause considerable damage to the softer brain tissue in cases where there has been a severe blow to the side of the head (Fig. 1-32). Further, it is important to remember that glancing blows to the head may cause considerable rotation of the brain, with shearing strains and distortion of the brain, particularly in areas where further rotation is prevented by bony prominences in the anterior and middle cranial fossae. Brain lacerations are very likely to occur when the brain is forcibly thrown against the sharp edges of bone within the skull—the lesser wings of the sphenoid, for example.

It is interesting to note that when the brain is suddenly given momentum within the skull, the part of the brain that moves away from the skull wall is subjected to diminished pressure, because the cerebrospinal fluid has not had time to accommodate itself to the brain movement. This results in a suction effect on the brain surface, with rupture of surface blood vessels.

A sudden severe blow to the head, as in an automobile accident, may result in damage to the brain at two sites: (1) at the point of impact and (2) at the pole of the brain opposite the point of impact, where the brain is thrown against the skull wall. This is referred to as *contrecoup injury.*

The movement of the brain within the skull at the time of head injuries not only is likely to cause avulsion of cranial nerves but commonly leads to rupture of tethering blood vessels. Fortunately, the large arteries found at the base of the brain are tortuous and this, coupled with their strength, explains why they are rarely torn. The thin-walled cortical veins, which drain into the large dural venous sinuses, are very vulnerable and can produce severe subdural or subarachnoid hemorrhage (Fig. 1-32).

Intracranial Hemorrhage

Although the brain is cushioned by the surrounding cerebrospinal fluid in the subarachnoid space, any severe hemorrhage within the relatively rigid skull will ultimately exert pressure on the brain.

Intracranial hemorrhage may result from trauma or cerebral vascular lesions (Fig. 1-32). Four varieties will be considered here: (1) extradural, (2) subdural, (3) subarachnoid, and (4) cerebral.

Extradural hemorrhage results from injuries to the meningeal arteries. The anterior division of the middle meningeal is the common artery to be damaged. A comparatively minor blow to the side of the head, resulting in fracture of the skull in the region of the anterior inferior portion of the parietal bone, may sever the artery (Fig. 1-32). The arterial injury is especially liable to occur if the artery enters a bony canal in this region. Bleeding occurs under high pressure and strips up the meningeal layer of dura from the internal surface of the skull. The intracranial pressure rises, and the enlarging blood clot exerts local pressure on the underlying precentral gyrus (motor area). In order to stop the hemorrhage, the torn artery must be ligated or plugged. The burr hole through the skull wall should be placed about 1½ inch (4 cm) above the midpoint of the zygomatic arch. *Subdural hemorrhage* results from tearing of the superior cerebral veins where they enter the

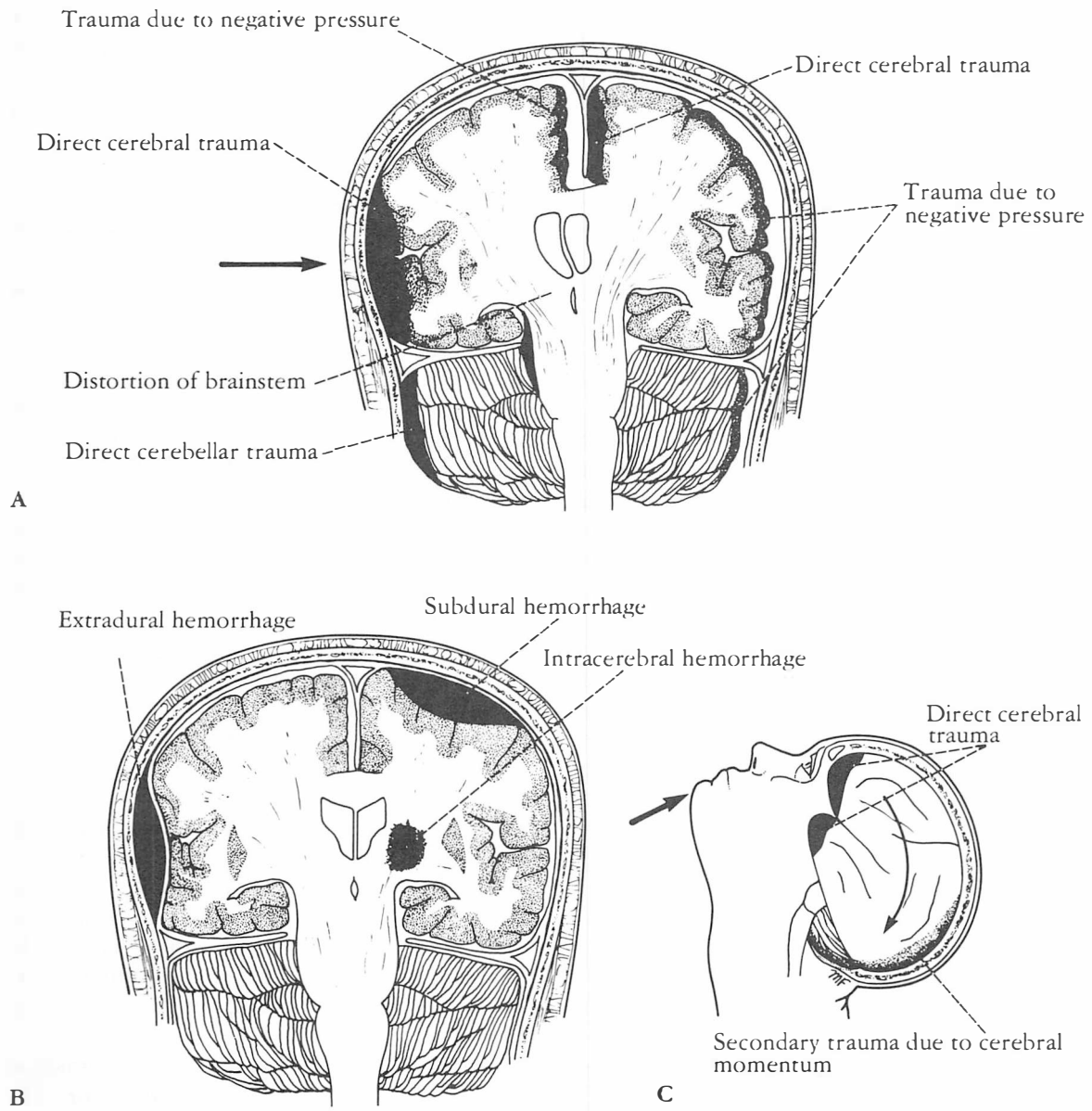


Fig. 1-32. A. Mechanisms of acute cerebral injury when blow is applied to lateral side of the head. B. Varieties of intracranial hemorrhage. C. Mechanism of cerebral trauma following a blow on the chin. The movement of the brain within the skull is responsible for the tearing of the cerebral veins.

superior sagittal sinus (see Fig. 1-9). The cause is usually a blow on the front or back of the head, resulting in excessive anteroposterior displacement of the brain within the skull.

This condition, which is much more common than middle meningeal hemorrhage, can be produced by a sudden minor blow. Once the vein is torn, blood under low pressure begins to accumulate in the potential space between the dura and the arachnoid. In about half the patients with the condition it is bilateral.

Acute and chronic forms of the clinical condition occur, depending on the speed of accumulation of fluid in the subdural space. For example, if the patient starts to vomit, the venous pressure will rise as the result of a rise in the intrathoracic pressure. Under these circumstances the extradural blood clot will increase rapidly in size and produce acute symptoms. In the chronic form, over a course of several months, the small blood clot will attract fluid by osmosis, so that a hemorrhagic cyst is formed, which gradually expands and produces pressure symptoms. In both forms the blood clot must be removed through burr holes in the skull.

Subarachnoid hemorrhage results from leakage or rupture of a congenital aneurysm on the cerebral arterial circle or, less commonly, from an angioma (tumor of a blood vessel). The symptoms, which are sudden in onset, will include severe headache, stiffness of the neck, and loss of consciousness. The diagnosis is established by withdrawing heavily bloodstained cerebrospinal fluid through a lumbar puncture.

Cerebral hemorrhage is generally due to rupture of the thin-walled *lenticulostriate artery* (see page 466), a branch of the middle cerebral artery (Fig. 1-32). The hemorrhage involves important descending nerve fibers in the internal capsule and produces hemiplegia on the opposite side of the body. The patient immediately loses consciousness, and the paralysis is evident when consciousness is regained.

Intracranial hemorrhage in the infant may occur during birth and may result from excessive molding of the head. Bleeding may occur from the cerebral veins or the venous sinuses. Excessive anteroposterior compression of the head often tears the anterior attachment of the falx cerebri from the tentorium cerebelli. Bleeding then occurs from the *great cerebral veins,* the *straight sinus,* or the *inferior sagittal sinus.*

Space-Occupying Lesions within the Skull

Space-occupying or expanding lesions within the skull include tumor, hematoma, or abscess. Since the skull is a rigid container of fixed volume these lesions will add to the normal bulk of the intracranial contents.

An expanding lesion is first accommodated by the expulsion of cerebrospinal fluid from the cranial cavity. Later the veins become compressed, interference with the circulation of blood and cerebrospinal fluid begins, and the intracranial pressure starts to rise. The venous congestion results in increased production and diminished absorption of cerebrospinal fluid, the volume of the cerebrospinal fluid begins to rise, and so a vicious circle is established.

The position of the tumor within the brain may have a dramatic effect on the signs and symptoms. For example, a tumor that obstructs the outflow of cerebrospinal fluid or directly presses upon the great veins will cause a rapid increase in intracranial pressure. The signs and symptoms that enable the physician to localize the lesion will depend on the interference with the brain and the degree of destruction of the nervous tissue produced by the lesion. Severe headache, possibly due to the stretching of the dura mater, and vomiting, due to pressure on the brainstem, are common complaints.

A lumbar puncture should *not* be performed in patients with suspected intracranial tumor. The withdrawal of cerebrospinal fluid may lead to a sudden displacement of the cerebral hemisphere through the tentorial notch into the posterior cranial fossa (Fig. 1-33) or herniation of the medulla oblongata and cerebellum through the foramen magnum.

Autonomic Nervous System

This part of the nervous system is concerned with the innervation of involuntary structures. Because

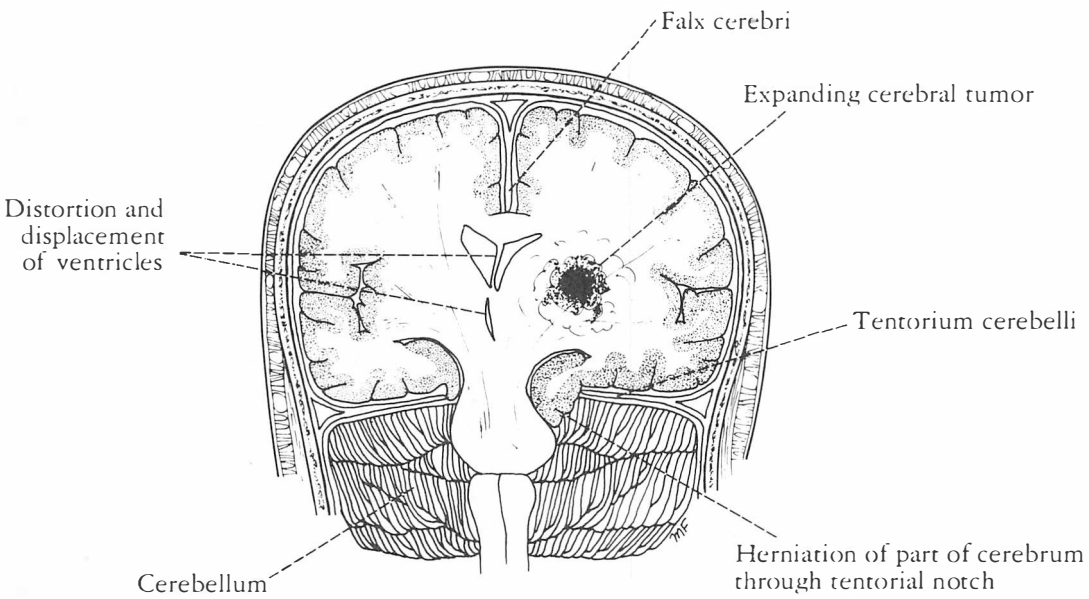


Fig. 1-33. Sudden displacement of cerebral hemispheres through the tentorial notch into the posterior cranial fossa following a lumbar puncture; the cerebral tumor is situated in the right cerebral hemisphere.

it is distributed throughout the central and peripheral nervous systems, symptoms of abnormal autonomic function are common to numerous neurologic diseases. Primary abnormal function of the autonomic system is rare. In *primary megacolon (Hirschsprung's disease)* there is a complete failure of development of the parasympathetic ganglion cells in the pelvic colon. This congenital defect results in the child's being unable to pass meconium and the abdomen becomes enormously distended. In *primary Raynaud's disease,* in which there is vasospasm of the arterioles of the fingers on exposure to cold, the cause may be hyperactivity of the sympathetic part of the autonomic system. Traumatic damage to the parasympathetic centers in the spinal cord will result in loss of normal control of the urinary bladder and rectum.

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 471.

1. A professor of neurology turned to his students and said, "Before we go around the wards this morning I want you to be absolutely certain that you understand what I mean by the terms: (a) *neuron*, (b) *neuroglia*, (c) *gray matter*, (d) *white matter*, and (e) *cerebrospinal fluid*." Are you sure of the precise meaning of these terms?

2. After examining a 12-year-old boy who had loss of muscular coordination (ataxia), especially of the lower limbs, and excessively high longitudinal arches of his feet (pes cavus), a physician made a diagnosis of *Friedreich's ataxia*. The physician explained to a student that this familial hereditary disease results in a steadily progressive degenera-

tion of the posterior and lateral white columns of the spinal cord. What are the posterior and lateral columns of the spinal cord? Where is the white matter in relation to the gray matter in the spinal cord?

3. Familial dysautonomia is a rare disorder that occurs most often in Jewish children. It is characterized by defective lacrimation, excessive sweating (hyperhidrosis), attacks of high blood pressure (hypertension), and raised body temperature (hyperpyrexia). The disease largely affects the autonomic nervous system. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, would you say that the autonomic nervous system is a distinctly separate nervous system? Does the autonomic nervous system have afferent as well as efferent nervous pathways?

4. After a laminectomy in the lower cervical region, the dura and arachnoid mater were incised and the spinal cord was seen to be fusiformly enlarged. The neurosurgeon turned to a fourth-year medical student who was watching the operation and asked, "Is the spinal cord of uniform diameter throughout its length?" How would you have answered that question?

5. A 45-year-old woman was examined by her physician and found to have carcinoma of the thyroid gland. Apart from the swelling in the neck, the patient also complained of back pain in the lower thoracic region, with a burning soreness radiating around the right side of her thorax over the tenth intercostal space. Although the back pain was often relieved by changing posture, it was worsened by coughing and sneezing. A lateral radiograph of the thoracic part of the vertebral column revealed a secondary carcinomatous deposit in the tenth thoracic vertebral body. Further physical examination revealed muscular weakness of both legs. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, explain the following: (a) the pain in the back, (b) the soreness over the right tenth intercostal space, (c) the muscular weakness of both legs, and (d) which segments of the spinal cord lie at the level of the tenth thoracic vertebral body.

6. A 35-year-old coal miner was crouching down at the mine face to inspect a drilling machine. A large rock suddenly became dislodged from the roof of the mine shaft and struck the miner on the upper part of his back. Examination by a physician showed an obvious forward displacement of the upper thoracic spines on the eighth thoracic spine. What anatomical factors in the thoracic region determine the degree of injury that may occur to the spinal cord?

7. A 20-year-old man with a long history of tuberculosis of the lungs was examined by an orthopedic surgeon because of the sudden development of a humpback (kyphosis). He also had symptoms of a stabbing pain that radiated around both sides of his thorax and was intensified by coughing or sneezing. A diagnosis of tuberculous osteitis of the fifth thoracic vertebra was made, with the collapse of the vertebral body responsible for the kyphosis. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, explain why the collapse of the fifth thoracic vertebral body should produce pain in the distribution of the fifth thoracic segmental nerve on both sides.

8. A 50-year-old man woke up one morning with a severe pain near the lower part of the back of the neck and left shoulder. The pain was also referred along the outer side of the left upper arm. Movement of the neck caused an increase in the intensity of the pain, which was also accentuated by coughing. A lateral radiograph of the neck showed a slight narrowing of the space between the fifth and sixth cervical vertebral bodies. State which nerve root was involved, using your knowledge of anatomy. Also state the nature of the disease.

9. A medical student offered to help a fellow student straighten out the bumper of his foreign sports car. He had just finished his course in neuroanatomy and was in poor physical shape. Undaunted, he attempted to lift the end of the bumper while his friend stood on the other end. Suddenly he felt an acute pain in the back that extended down the back and outer side of his right leg. Later he was examined by an orthopedic sur-

geon, who found that the pain was accentuated by coughing. A lateral radiograph of the lumbar vertebral column revealed nothing abnormal. A diagnosis of herniation of the intervertebral disc between the fifth lumbar and first sacral vertebrae was made. Explain the symptoms of this disease, using your knowledge of neuroanatomy. Which spinal nerve roots were pressed upon?

10. A 5-year-old child was seen in the emergency room and a diagnosis of acute meningitis was made. The resident decided to perform a lumbar puncture in order to confirm the diagnosis. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, where would you perform a lumbar puncture? Name, in order, the structures pierced when a lumbar puncture needle is introduced into the subarachnoid space.

11. A young woman, finding herself pregnant, told her friends that she hated the idea of going through the pain of childbirth but she equally detested the thought of having a general anesthetic. Is there a specialized local analgesic technique that will provide painless labor?

12. While crossing the road, a pedestrian was struck on the right side of his head by a passing car. He fell to the ground but did not lose consciousness. After resting for an hour and then getting up, he appeared to be confused and irritable. Later, he staggered and fell to the floor. On questioning, he was seen to be drowsy, and twitching of the lower left half of his face and left arm was noted. A diagnosis of extradural hemorrhage was made. Which artery is likely to have been damaged? What is responsible for the drowsiness and muscle twitching?

13. At the postmortem of a 3-year-old boy with hydrocephalus, a tumor was found in the midbrain obstructing the cerebral aqueduct. Explain the site of the cerebral aqueduct and indicate how blockage of this channel could produce hydrocephalus, using your knowledge of neuroanatomy.

14. A 45-year-old woman was examined by a neurologist and found to have an intracranial tumor. She complained of severe headaches, which occurred during the night and early morning. She described the pain as "bursting" in nature, and although at first, six months ago, they were intermittent, they were now more or less continuous. Coughing, stooping, and straining at stool made the pain worse. The pain was accompanied by vomiting on three recent occasions. What is the sequence of events that occurs within the skull as the intracranial pressure rises? Would you perform a routine lumbar puncture on every patient you suspected of having an intracranial tumor?

15. While examining an unconscious 18-year-old man admitted to the emergency room following a motorcycle accident, the neurosurgeon asked the attending medical student what happens to the brain in an accident in which it is suddenly deaccelerated within the skull. What is the value of wearing a crash helmet?

16. What do you understand by the terms: (a) *contrecoup injury*, (b) *subarachnoid hemorrhage*, (c) *subdural hemorrhage*, and (d) *cerebral hemorrhage*?

17. A well-known professor of medicine started his lecture on expanding intracranial lesions by stating, "The skull and vertebrae provide the central nervous system with a rigid case that communicates with the outside only through the vascular system." Explain this statement, using your knowledge of neuroanatomy.

18. A pediatrician asked a medical student on a ward round how, by a simple physical examination, he would be able to assess the intracranial pressure in a newborn infant. The student was also asked to comment on why the adult skull often responds to trauma in a different way from a young child's skull. How would you respond to these questions?

19. The neurologist, having carefully examined a 5-year-old boy, determined that the child was suffering from a tumor of the cerebellum, and commented that it was probably a medulloblastoma. Where is the cerebellum in relation to other parts of the brain? Where is the cerebellum situated in the skull?

20. A 20-year-old man started to suffer from epilepsy following a severe head injury in an automobile accident. A neurologist determined that he had injured the right frontal lobe of his brain. What is meant by the term *frontal lobe of the brain?*

Additional Reading

Crosby, E. C., Humphrey, T., and Lauer, E. W. *Correlative Anatomy of the Nervous System.* New York: Macmillan, 1962.

Pernkopf, E. *Atlas of Topographical and Applied Human Anatomy.* Vol. 1. Philadelphia: Saunders, 1963.

Snell, R. S. *Atlas of Clinical Anatomy.* Boston: Little, Brown, 1978.

Snell, R. S. *Clinical Anatomy for Medical Students.* Boston: Little, Brown, 1973.

Sobotta, J. *Atlas of Descriptive Human Anatomy.* Vol. 3. New York: Hafner, 1957.

Warwick, R., and Williams, P. L. (Eds.). *Gray's Anatomy* (35th Brit. ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders, 1973.

2
The Neuron

Neuron is the name given to the nerve cell and all its processes (Fig. 2-1). Neurons are excitable cells that are specialized for the reception of stimuli and the conduction of the nerve impulse. They vary considerably in size and shape, but each possesses a *cell body* or *perikaryon*, from whose surface project one or more processes called *neurites* (Fig. 2-2). Those neurites responsible for receiving information and conducting it toward the cell body are called *dendrites*. The single long neurite that conducts impulses away from the cell body is called the *axon*. The dendrites and axons are often referred to as *nerve fibers*.

Neurons are found in the brain and spinal cord and in ganglia.

Varieties of Neurons

Although the size of the cell body of a neuron may be as small as 5μ or as large as 135μ in diameter, the processes or neurites may extend over a distance of more than 5 feet. The number, length, and mode of branching of the neurites provide a morphological method for classifying neurons.

Unipolar neurons are those in which the cell body has a single neurite that divides a short distance from the cell body into two branches, one proceeding to some peripheral structure and the other entering the central nervous system (Fig. 2-3). The branches of this single neurite have the structural and functional characteristics of an axon. In this type of neuron the fine terminal branches found at the peripheral end of the axon at the receptor site are often referred to as the dendrites. Examples of this form of neuron are found in the posterior root ganglion.

Bipolar neurons possess an elongated cell body, from each end of which a single neurite emerges (Fig. 2-3). Examples of this type of neuron are found in the retinal bipolar cells and the cells of the sensory cochlear and vestibular ganglia.

Multipolar neurons have a number of neurites arising from the cell body (Fig. 2-3). With the exception of the long process, the axon, the remainder of the neurites are dendrites. Most neurons of the brain and spinal cord are of this type.

Neurons may also be classified according to size:

Golgi type I neurons have a long axon that may be several feet in length in extreme cases (Figs. 2-4, 2-5, and 2-6). The axons of these neurons form the long fiber tracts of the brain and spinal cord and the nerve fibers of peripheral nerves. The pyramidal cells of the cerebral cortex, the Purkinje cells of the cerebellar cortex, and the motor cells of the spinal cord are good examples.

Golgi type II neurons have a short axon that terminates in the neighborhood of the cell body or is entirely absent (Figs. 2-5 and 2-6). They greatly outnumber the Golgi type I neurons. The short dendrites that arise from these neurons give them a star-shaped appearance. These neurons are very numerous in the cerebral and cerebellar cortex and in the retina.

Structure of the Neuron

The *nerve cell body,* like that of other cells, consists essentially of a mass of cytoplasm in which a nucleus is embedded (Fig. 2-6); it is bounded externally by a limiting membrane. It is interesting to note that the volume of cytoplasm within the nerve cell body is often far less than the total volume of cytoplasm in the neurites. The cell bodies of the small granular cells of the cerebellar cortex measure about 5μ in diameter, whereas those of the large anterior horn cells may measure as much as 135μ in diameter.

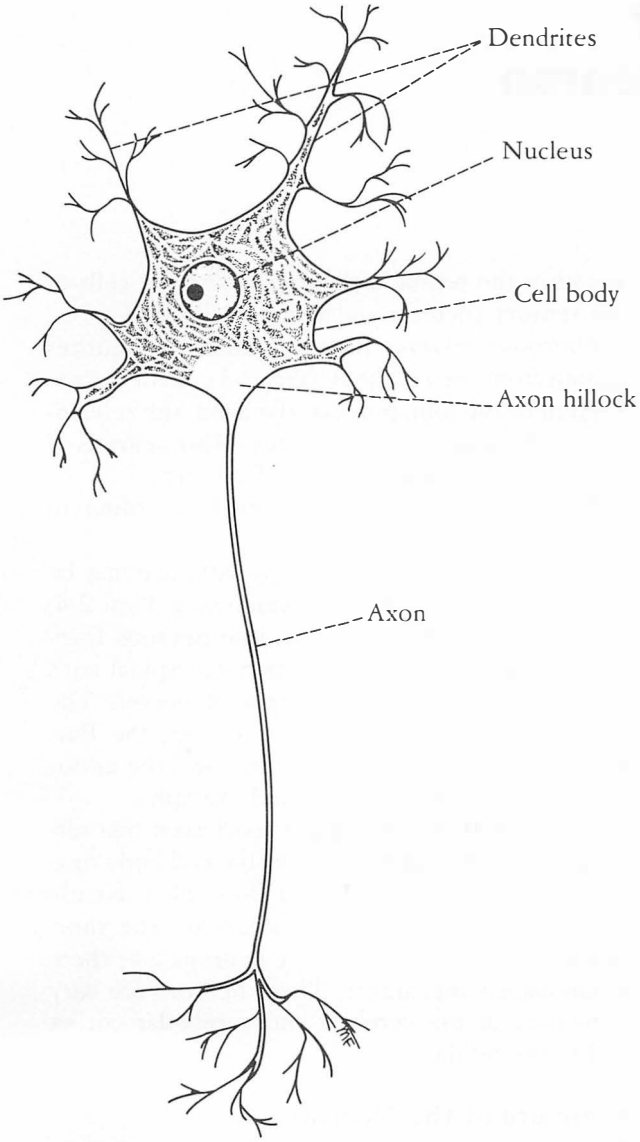


Fig. 2-1. A neuron.

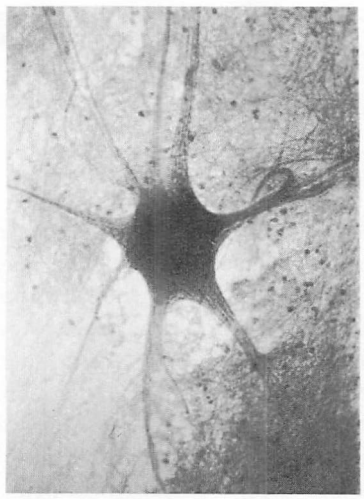


Fig. 2-2. Photomicrograph of a smear preparation of the spinal cord showing a neuron with its cell body or perikaryon and its processes or neurites.

The *nucleus* is typically large, rounded, and pale and the fine chromatin granules are widely dispersed (Figs. 2-6 and 2-7). There is usually a single prominent nucleolus, which is concerned with the synthesis of ribonucleic acid (RNA). The large size of the nucleolus probably is due to the high rate of protein synthesis, which is necessary to maintain the protein level in the large cytoplasmic volume that is present in the long neurites as well as in the cell body.

In the female the compact X chromosome or *Barr body* is situated at the inner surface of the nuclear envelope. The nuclear envelope is double-layered and possesses fine nuclear pores, through which the interior of the nucleus communicates with the cytoplasm (Figs. 2-8 and 2-9).

Nerve cells possess a single nucleus except those of the sympathetic and sensory ganglia, which are binucleate.

The *cytoplasm* is rich in granular and agranular endoplasmic reticulum (Figs. 2-9 and 2-10) and contains the following organelles and inclusions: (1) chromophilic or Nissl substance, (2) the Golgi apparatus, (3) mitochondria, (4) microfilaments, (5) microtubules, (6) lysosomes, (7) a centrosome, and (8) lipofuscin, melanin, glycogen, and lipid.

Nissl substance consists of granules that are distributed throughout the cytoplasm of the cell body, except the region close to the axon, called the *axon hillock* (Fig. 2-11). The granular material also extends into the proximal parts of the dendrites.

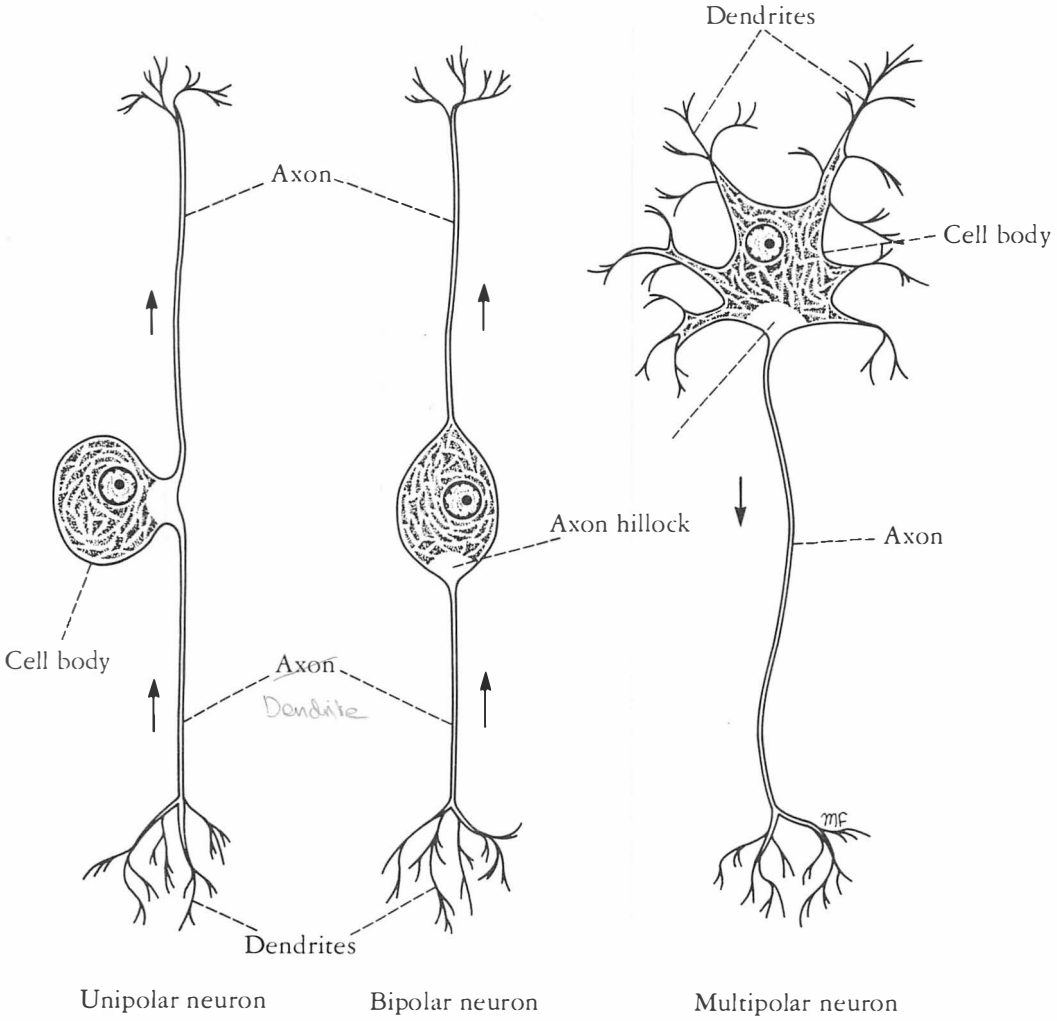


Fig. 2-3. The classification of neurons according to the number, length, and mode of branching of the neurites.

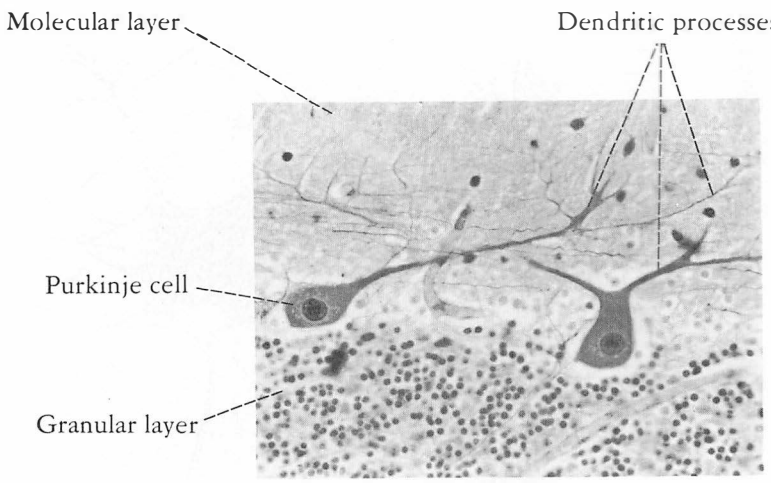


Fig. 2-4. Photomicrograph of silver-stained section of the cerebellar cortex showing two Purkinje cells. These are examples of Golgi type I neurons.

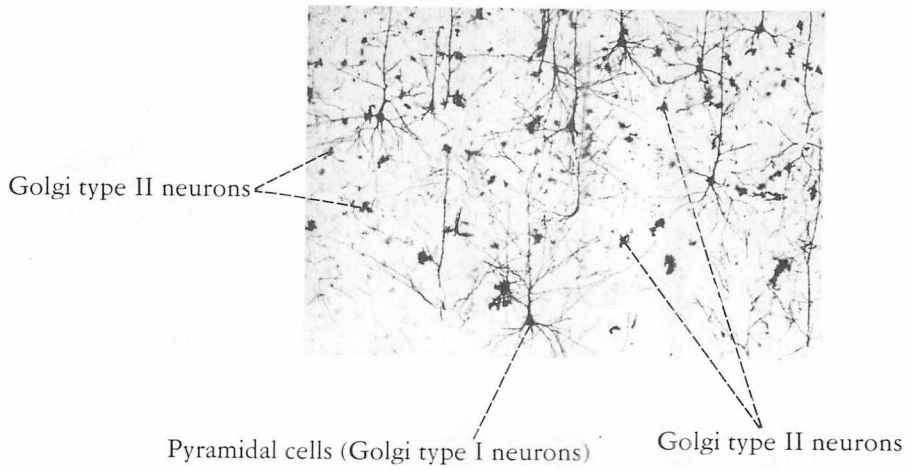


Fig. 2-5. Photomicrograph of a silver-stained section of the cerebral cortex. Note the presence of large pyramidal cells, which are examples of Golgi type I neurons, and numerous Golgi type II neurons.

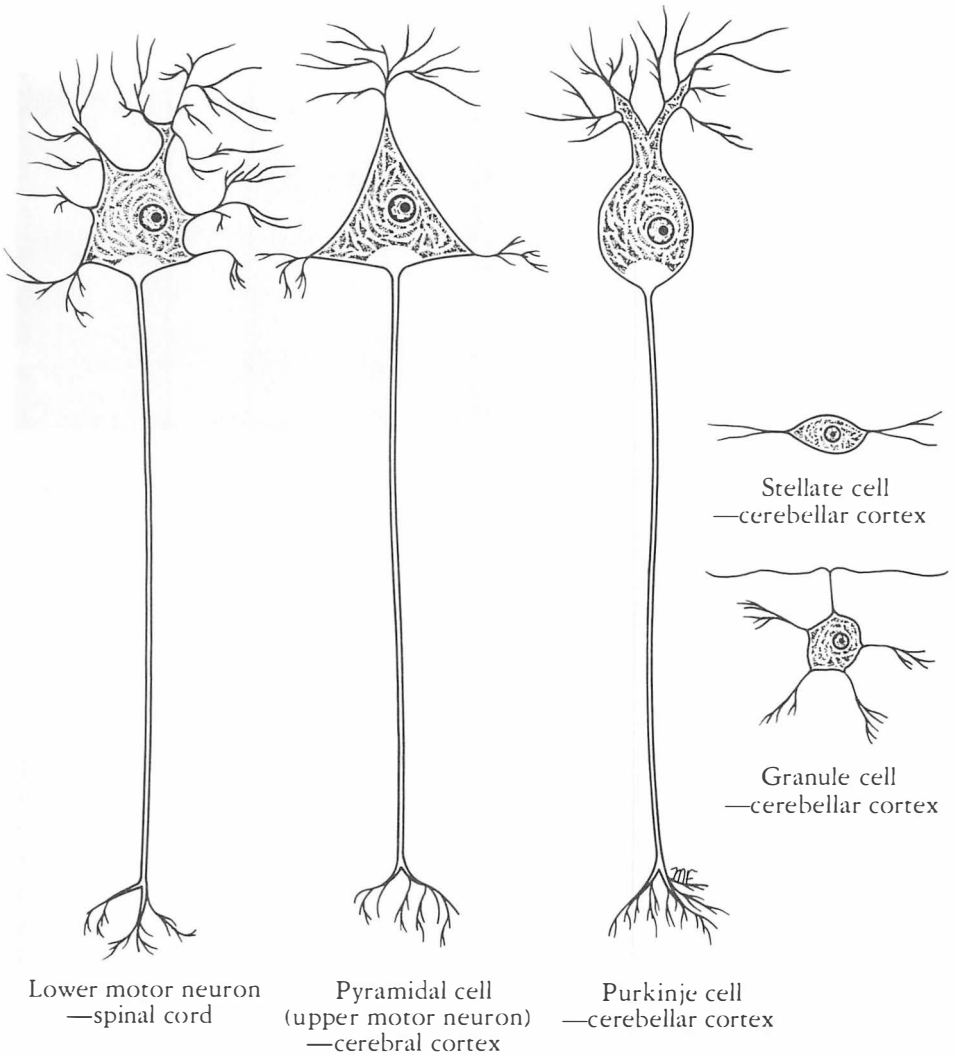


Fig. 2-6. Different types of neurons.

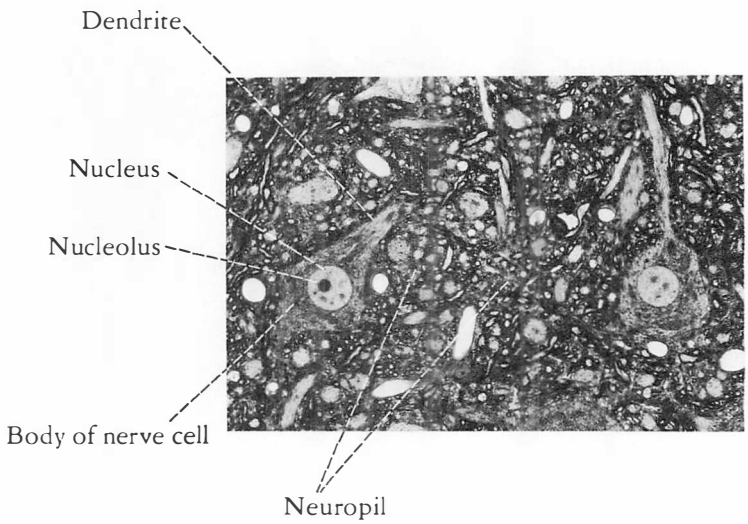


Fig. 2-7. Photomicrograph of section of anterior gray column of spinal cord showing two large motor nerve cells with nuclei. Note the prominent nucleolus in one of the nuclei.

Electron micrographs show that the Nissl substance is composed of rough-surfaced endoplasmic reticulum (Fig. 2-12) and is arranged in the form of broad cisternae, which are stacked one on top of the other. Although many of the ribosomes are attached to the surface of the endoplasmic reticulum, many more lie free in the intervals between the cisternae. Since the ribosomes contain RNA, the Nissl substance is basophilic and can be well demonstrated by staining with toluidine blue or other basic aniline dyes (Fig. 2-11) and using the light microscope.

The Nissl substance is responsible for synthesizing protein, which flows along the dendrites and the axon and replaces the proteins that are broken down during cellular activity. Fatigue or neuronal damage causes the Nissl substance to move and become concentrated at the periphery of the cytoplasm. This phenomenon, which gives the impression that the Nissl substance has disappeared, is known as *chromatolysis* (Fig. 2-13).

The *Golgi apparatus*, when seen with the light microscope after staining with a silver-osmium method, appears as a network of irregular wavy threads around the nucleus. In electron micrographs it appears as clusters of flattened cisternae and small vesicles made up of smooth-surfaced endoplasmic reticulum (Fig. 2-14).

Although the exact function of the Golgi apparatus is unknown, it is believed that some of the protein produced by the Nissl substance is transferred to the Golgi apparatus, where it is temporarily stored and where carbohydrate may be added to the protein. The Golgi apparatus is also thought to be active in lysosome production and in the synthesis of cell membranes.

Mitochondria are found scattered throughout the cell body, dendrites, and axons (see Figs. 2-8 and 2-15). They are spherical or rod-shaped. In electron micrographs the walls show a characteristic double membrane (Fig. 2-16). The inner membrane is thrown into folds or cristae that project into the center of the mitochondrion. Mitochondria possess many enzymes, which are localized chiefly on the inner mitochondrial membrane. These enzymes take part in the tricarboxylic acid cycle and the cytochrome chains of respiration. Mitochondria are therefore important in nerve cells, as in other cells, in the production of energy.

Neurofibrils. Seen with the light microscope, these are numerous fibrils running parallel to each other

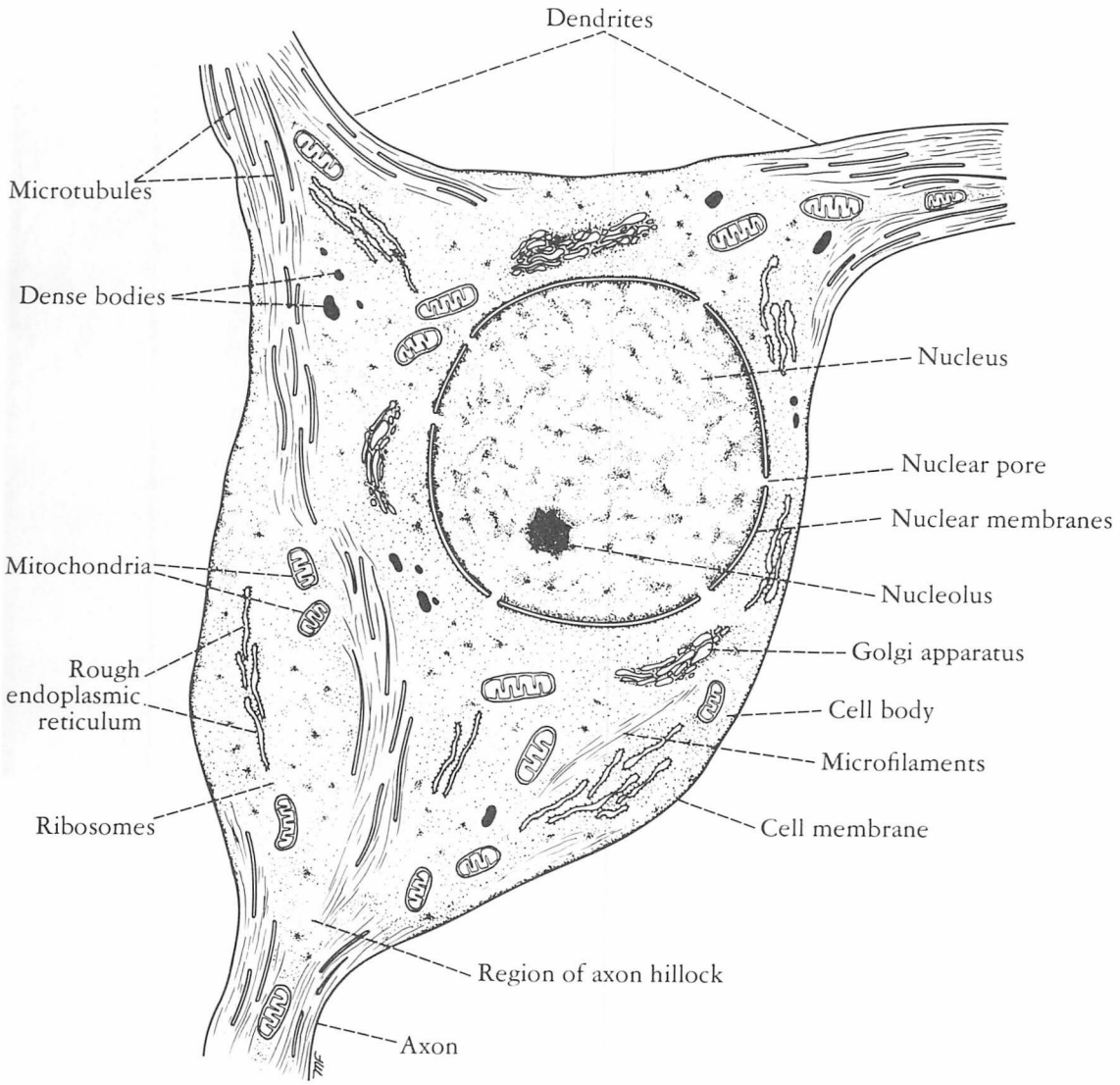


Fig. 2-8. Diagramatic representation of the fine structure of a neuron.

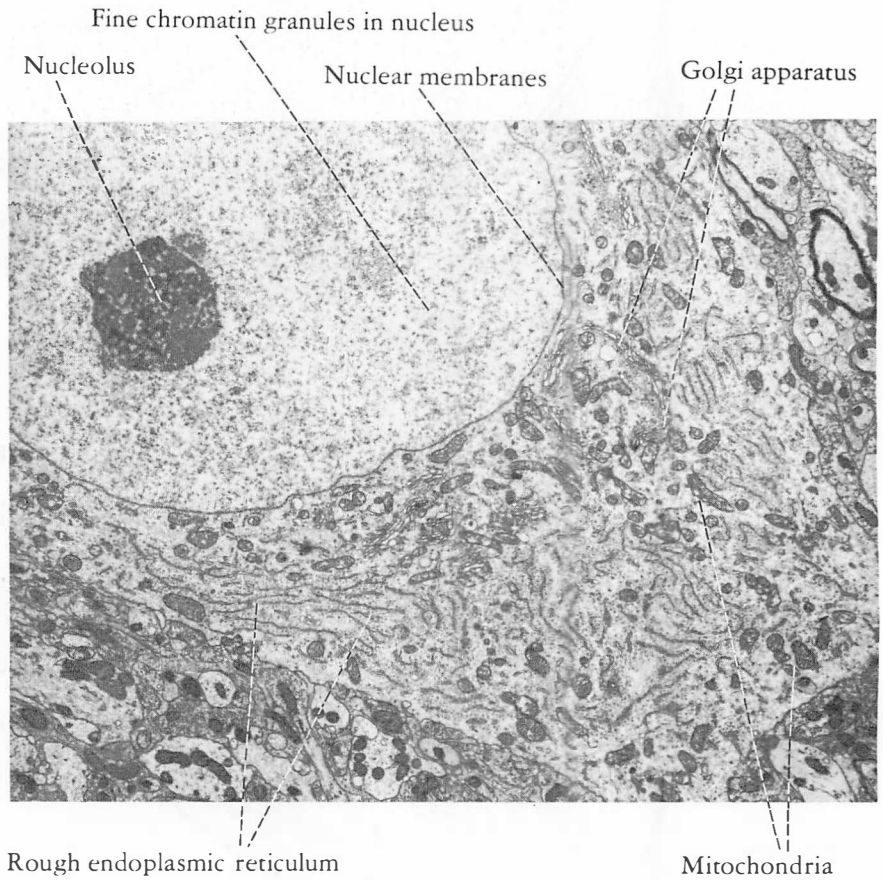


Fig. 2-9. Electronmicrograph of a neuron showing the structure of the nucleus and a number of cytoplasmic organelles. (Courtesy Dr. J. M. Kerns.)

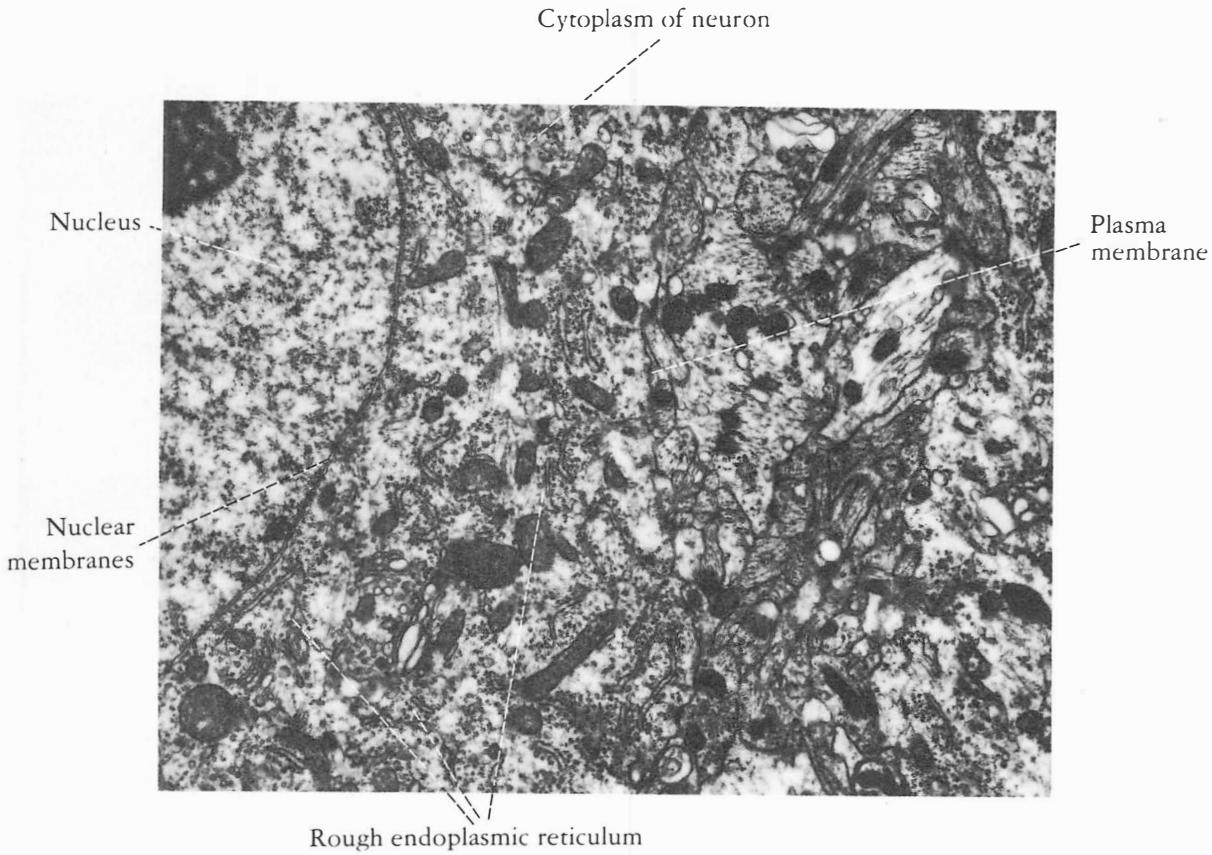


Fig. 2-10. Electronmicrograph of a neuron showing nuclear and plasma membranes and cytoplasmic organelles. (Courtesy Dr. J. M. Kerns.)

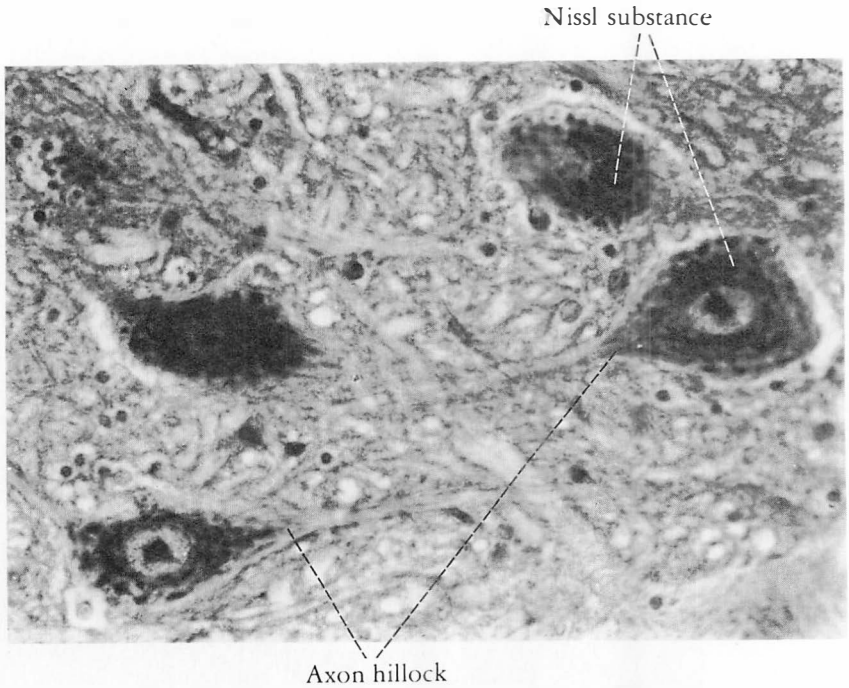


Fig. 2-11. Photomicrograph of section of anterior gray column of spinal cord stained with toluidine blue. Note the presence of dark-staining Nissl substance in cytoplasm of four neurons.

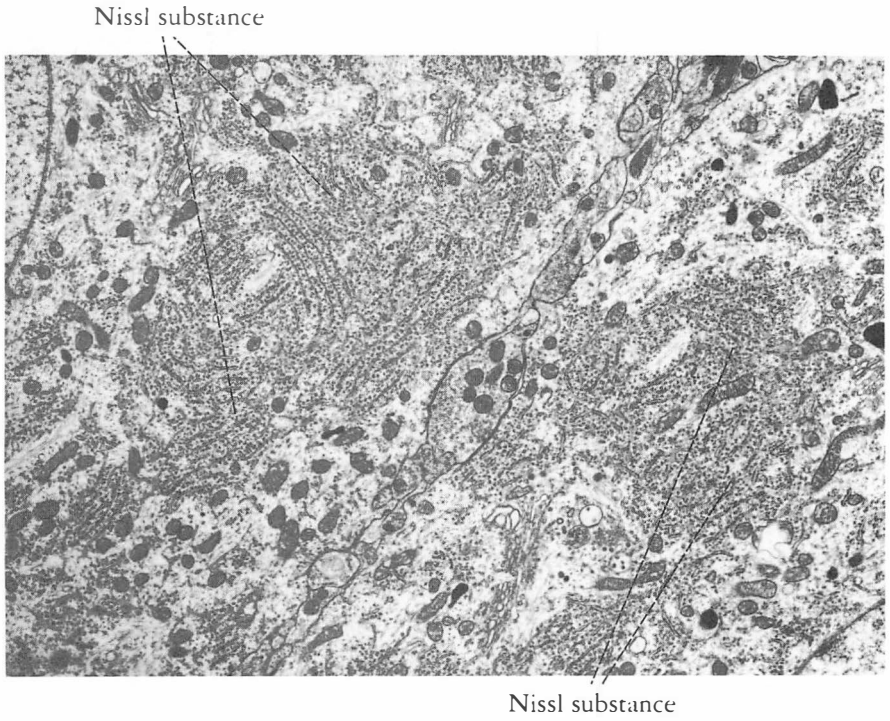


Fig. 2-12. Electronmicrograph of cytoplasm of two neurons showing the structure of Nissl bodies (substance). (Courtesy Dr. J. M. Kerns.)

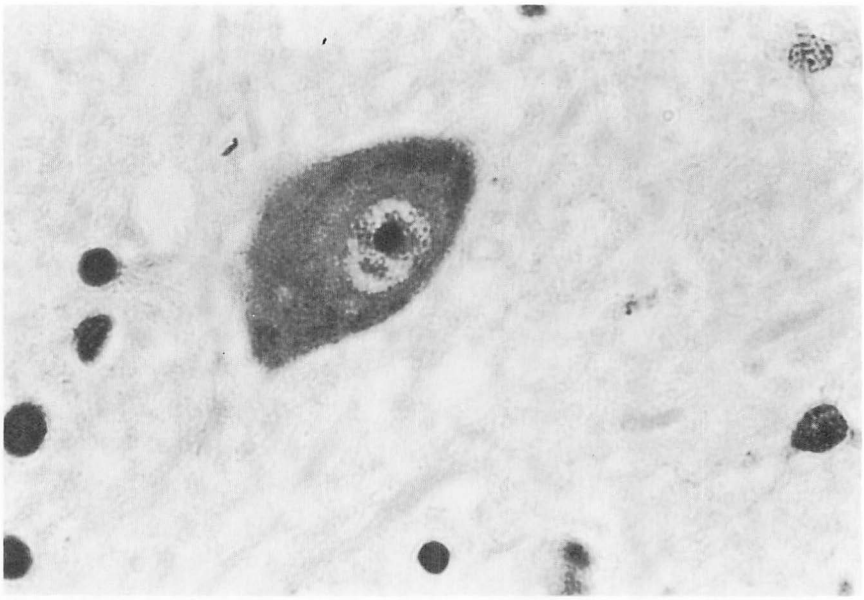


Fig. 2-13. Photomicrograph of section of anterior gray column of spinal cord following division of spinal nerve. Stained with toluidine blue. Note the absence of Nissl substance in the cytoplasm of the neuron. Compare with Fig. 2-11.

through the cell body into the neurites when the cytoplasm is stained with silver (Fig. 2-16). With the electron microscope, the neurofibrils may be resolved into bundles of *microfilaments*, each filament measuring about 70Å in diameter (Fig. 2-17). The function of these filaments is unknown.

Microtubules are revealed with the electron microscope and are similar to those seen in other types of cells. They measure about 200 to 300Å in diameter and are found interspersed among the microfilaments (Fig. 2-17). They extend throughout the cell body and its processes. The function of microtubules is believed to be the transport of substances from the cell body to the distal ends of the cell processes.

Lysosomes are dense, spherical, membrane-bound bodies, measuring about 0.25 to 2μ in diameter, which can be seen with both the light and electron microscope. They contain acid phosphatase and other hydrolytic enzymes and serve the cell by acting as intracellular scavengers. They are thought to originate by budding off from the Golgi apparatus or the endoplasmic reticulum.

Centrosome is seen in immature dividing nerve cells and occasionally in the mature neuron. This structure plays an important role in mitosis. Since mature neurons are incapable of dividing, its function in the mature neuron is unknown; it may be associated with the formation of microtubules.

Lipofuscin (pigment material) occurs as yellowish-brown granules within the cytoplasm (Fig. 2-18). It is believed to be formed as the result of lysosomal activity and it represents a harmless metabolic by-product. Lipofuscin accumulates with age.

Melanin granules are found in the cytoplasm of cells in certain parts of the brain (for example, the substantia nigra of the midbrain). Their presence may be related to the catecholamine-synthesizing ability of these neurons.

Glycogen, which is a polymer of glucose, is seen in electron micrographs of nerve cells as electron-dense rosettes. It functions as a local source of energy.

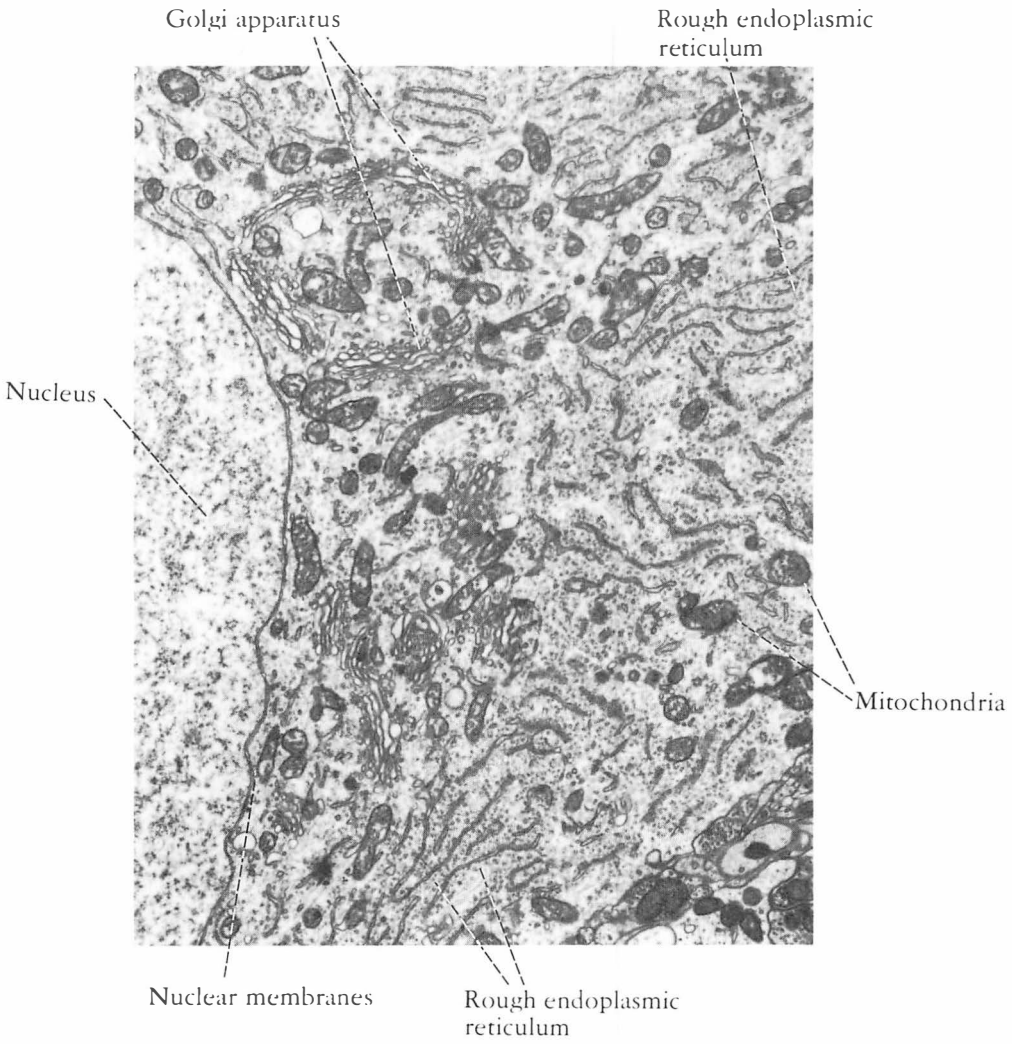


Fig. 2-14. Electronmicrograph of a neuron showing part of the nucleus and a number of cytoplasmic organelles. (Courtesy Dr. J. M. Kerns.)

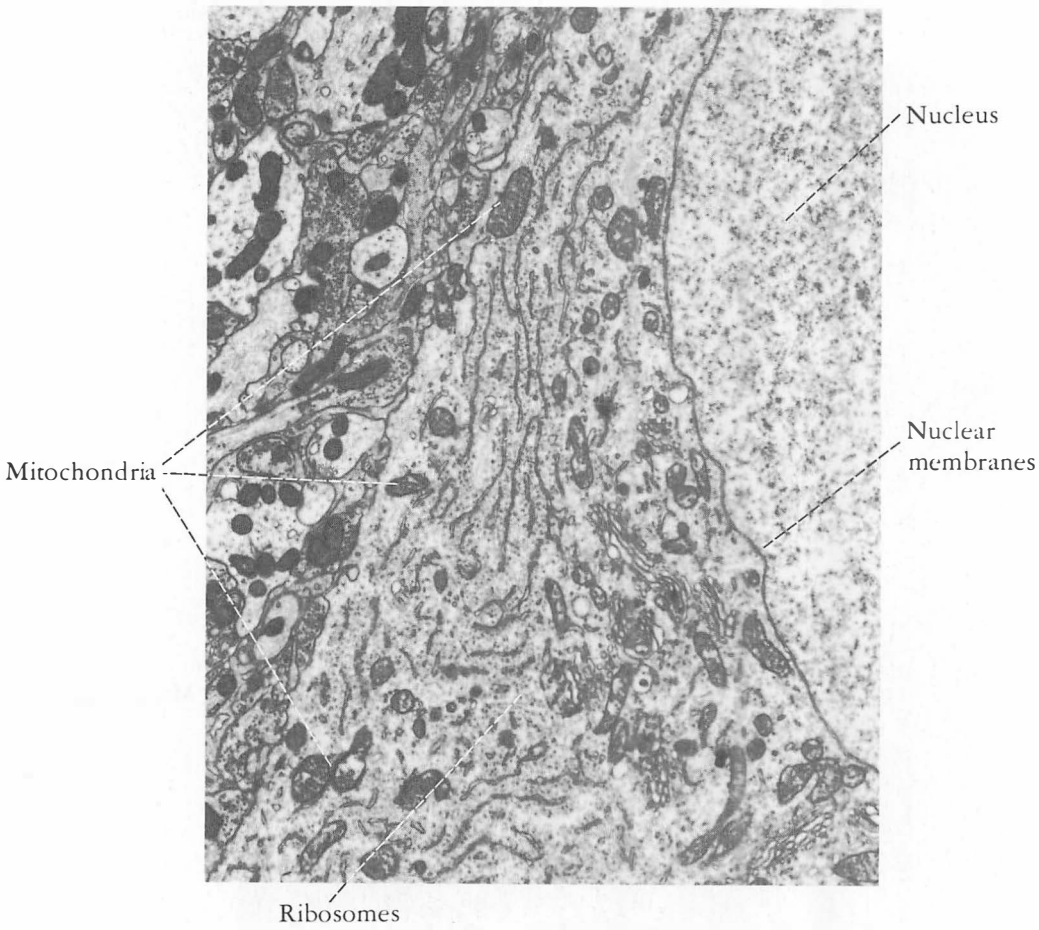


Fig. 2-15. Electronmicrograph of a neuron showing part of the nucleus and a number of cytoplasmic organelles. (Courtesy Dr. J. M. Kerns.)

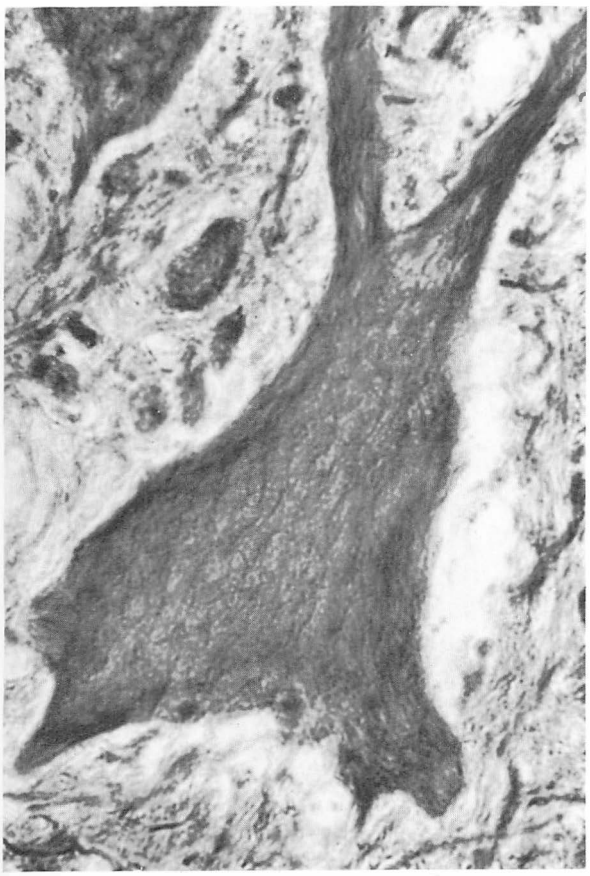


Fig. 2-16. Photomicrograph of a silver-stained section of a neuron. Shows the presence of large numbers of neurofibrils in the cytoplasm of the cell body and the neurites.

Lipid occurs in the form of droplets and provides another local source of energy.

Plasma Membrane

The plasma membrane, which is composed of lipid and protein molecules, forms the continuous external boundary of the cell body and its processes (see Figs. 2-10 and 2-17). It differs from other membranes within the neuron because on its external surface it bears a coat of glycoprotein, the *cell coat*. The overall thickness of the plasma membrane is 70 to 80Å and in high-power electron micrographs it may be resolved into three layers —two dark layers separated by a lighter layer, each 25 to 30Å thick.

The plasma membrane and the cell coat together form a semipermeable membrane that allows diffusion of certain ions through it, but restricts others. In the resting state (unstimulated state) the K^+ ions diffuse through the plasma membrane from the cell cytoplasm to the tissue fluid (Fig. 2-19). This results in a steady potential difference of about 80 mV, which can be measured across the plasma membrane since the inside of the membrane is negative with respect to the outside.

When the nerve cell is excited (stimulated), there is an increase in the permeability of the plasma membrane to Na^+ ions, which diffuse through the plasma membrane into the cell cytoplasm from the tissue fluid (Fig. 2-19). This results in the membrane's becoming progressively depolarized. The sudden influx of Na^+ ions followed by the altered polarity produces the so-called *action potential*. This potential is, however, very brief, lasting about 5 msec, for very quickly the K^+ ions start to flow from the cell cytoplasm and so return the localized area of the cell to the resting state.

Once generated, the action potential spreads over the plasma membrane, away from the site of initiation, and is conducted along neurites as the *nerve impulse*. This impulse is self-propagated and its size and frequency do not alter (Fig. 2-19). Once the nerve impulse has spread over a given region of plasma membrane another action potential cannot be elicited immediately. The duration of this nonexcitable state is referred to as the *refractory period*.

It is important to realize that the greater the strength of the initial stimulus, the larger will be the initial depolarization and the greater the spread into the surrounding areas of the plasma membrane. Should multiple excitatory stimuli be applied to the surface of a neuron, then the effect can be *summated*. For example, subthreshold stimuli may pass over the surface of the cell body and

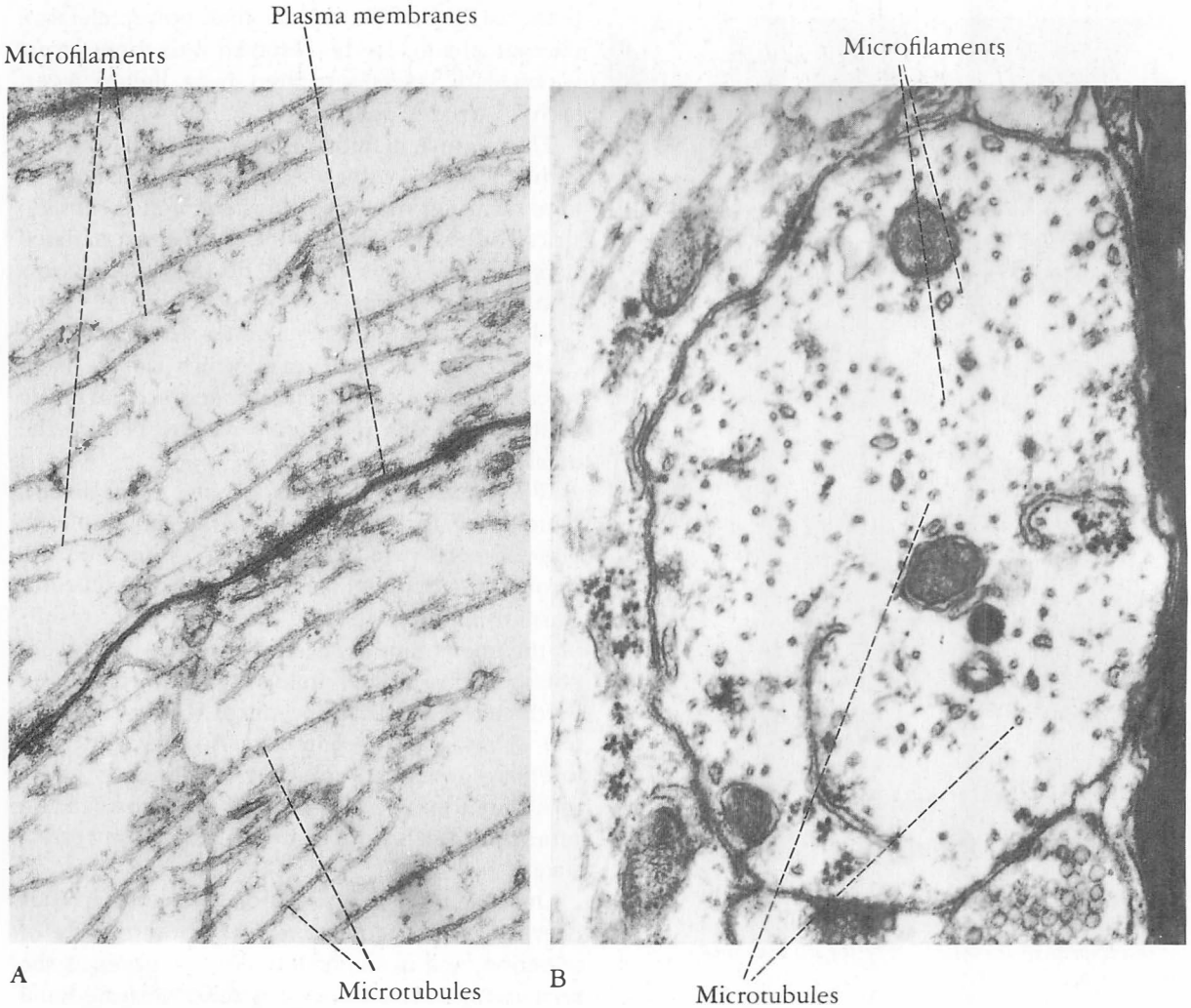


Fig. 2-17. Electronmicrograph of dendrites showing the presence of microfilaments and microtubules within their cytoplasm. (Courtesy Dr. J. M. Kerns.) A. Longitudinal section of two adjacent dendrites. B. Transverse section of a dendrite.

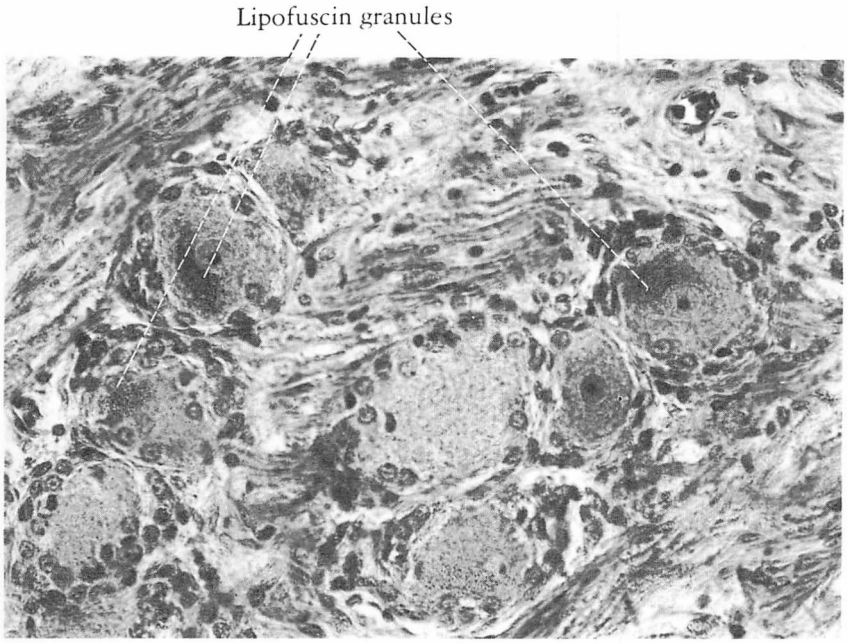


Fig. 2-18. Photomicrograph of longitudinal section of posterior root ganglion showing the presence of lipofuscin granules within the cytoplasm of sensory neurons.

be summated at the root of the axon and so initiate an action potential.

Inhibitory stimuli are believed to produce their effect by causing an influx of Cl^- ions through the plasma membrane into the neuron, thus producing hyperpolarization and reducing the excitatory state of the cell (Fig. 2-20).

The Nerve Cell Processes

The processes of a nerve cell, often called neurites, may be divided into dendrites and an axon.

The *dendrites* are the short processes of the cell body (Fig. 2-21). Their diameter tapers as they extend from the cell body and they often branch profusely. In many neurons the finer branches bear large numbers of small projections called *dendritic spines.* The cytoplasm of the dendrites closely resembles that of the cell body and contains Nissl granules, mitochondria, microtubules, microfilaments, ribosomes, and agranular endoplasmic reticulum. Dendrites should be regarded merely as extensions of the cell body to increase the surface area for the reception of axons from other neurons. Essentially they conduct the nerve impulse toward the cell body.

Axon is the name given to the longest process of the cell body. It arises from a small conical elevation on the cell body, devoid of Nissl's granules, called the *axon hillock* (Fig. 2-1). Occasionally, an axon arises from the proximal part of a dendrite. An axon tends to have a smooth contour and is uniform in diameter.

Axons tend not to branch close to the cell body; collateral branches may occur along their length. Shortly before their termination, axons commonly branch profusely. The distal ends of the terminal

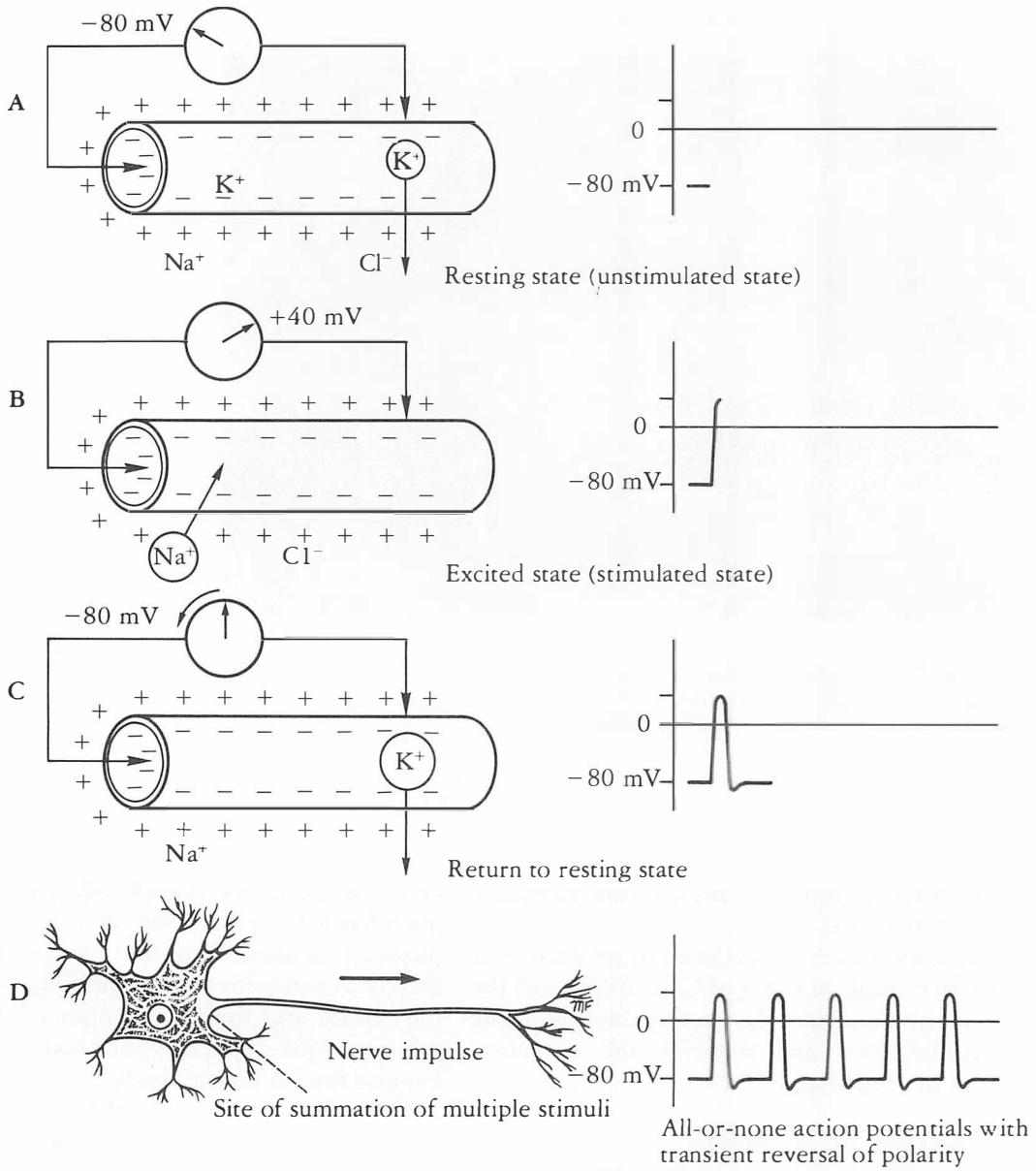
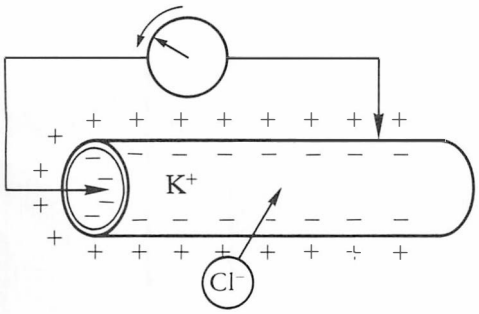


Fig. 2-19. The ionic and electrical changes that occur in a neuron when it is stimulated.



Hyperpolarization

Fig. 2-20. The ionic and electrical changes that occur in a neuron during hyperpolarization.

branches of the axons are often enlarged; they are called *terminals* or *boutons terminaux* (Fig. 2-22).

Axons may be very short, as seen in many neurons of the central nervous system, or extremely long, as seen when they extend from a peripheral receptor in the skin of the toe to the spinal cord and thence to the brain.

The diameter of axons varies considerably with different neurons. Those of larger diameter conduct impulses rapidly and those of smaller diameter conduct impulses very slowly.

The plasma membrane bounding the axon is called the *axolemma*. The cytoplasm of the axon is termed the *axoplasm*. Axoplasm differs from the cytoplasm of the cell body in possessing no Nissl granules or Golgi apparatus. The sites for the production of protein, namely RNA and ribosomes, are absent.

It is usual to state that an axon always conducts impulses away from the cell body. The axons of sensory posterior root ganglion cells are an exception; here the long neurite, which is indistinguishable from an axon, carries the impulse toward the cell body. (See unipolar neurons, p. 43.)

Axoplasmic Flow

There is a considerable amount of experimental evidence to show that materials are transported along axons from the cell body to the terminals and, with some lesser movement, in the opposite direction. It has been noted previously that axons do not possess the machinery for manufacturing proteins, and now it is recognized that the cell body of the neuron is the site of such production. Proteins traveling distally along the axon are probably involved in protein replenishment of the axolemma following physiological activity. Axoplasmic flow is almost certainly involved in the build-up of materials at the axon terminals for the production of transmitter substances. The flow of the axoplasm in the opposite direction may explain how the cell bodies of nerve cells respond to changes produced in the distal ends of the axon.

The mechanism responsible for axoplasmic flow is not fully understood, although wavelike movements of the microtubules have been suggested as a cause of the streaming movements of the axoplasm.

Synapses

The nervous system consists of a large number of neurons that are linked together to form functional conducting pathways. Where two neurons come into close proximity and functional interneuronal communication occurs, the site of such communication is referred to as a *synapse* (Fig. 2-23). Communication at a synapse, under physiological conditions, takes place in one direction only. Synapses occur in a number of forms (Fig. 2-23). The most common type is that which occurs between an axon of one neuron and the dendrite or cell body of the second neuron. As the axon approaches the synapse it may have a terminal expansion (bouton terminal) or it may have a series of expansions (bouton de passage), each of which makes synaptic contact. In other types of synapses the axon synapses on the proximal segment of another axon, i.e., proximal to where the myelin sheath begins, or there may be synapses between terminal expansions from different neurons. Depending on the site of the synapse, they are often referred to as *axodendritic, axosomatic,* or *axoaxonic* (Fig. 2-23).

The manner in which an axon terminates varies considerably in different parts of the nervous system. For example, a single axon may terminate on

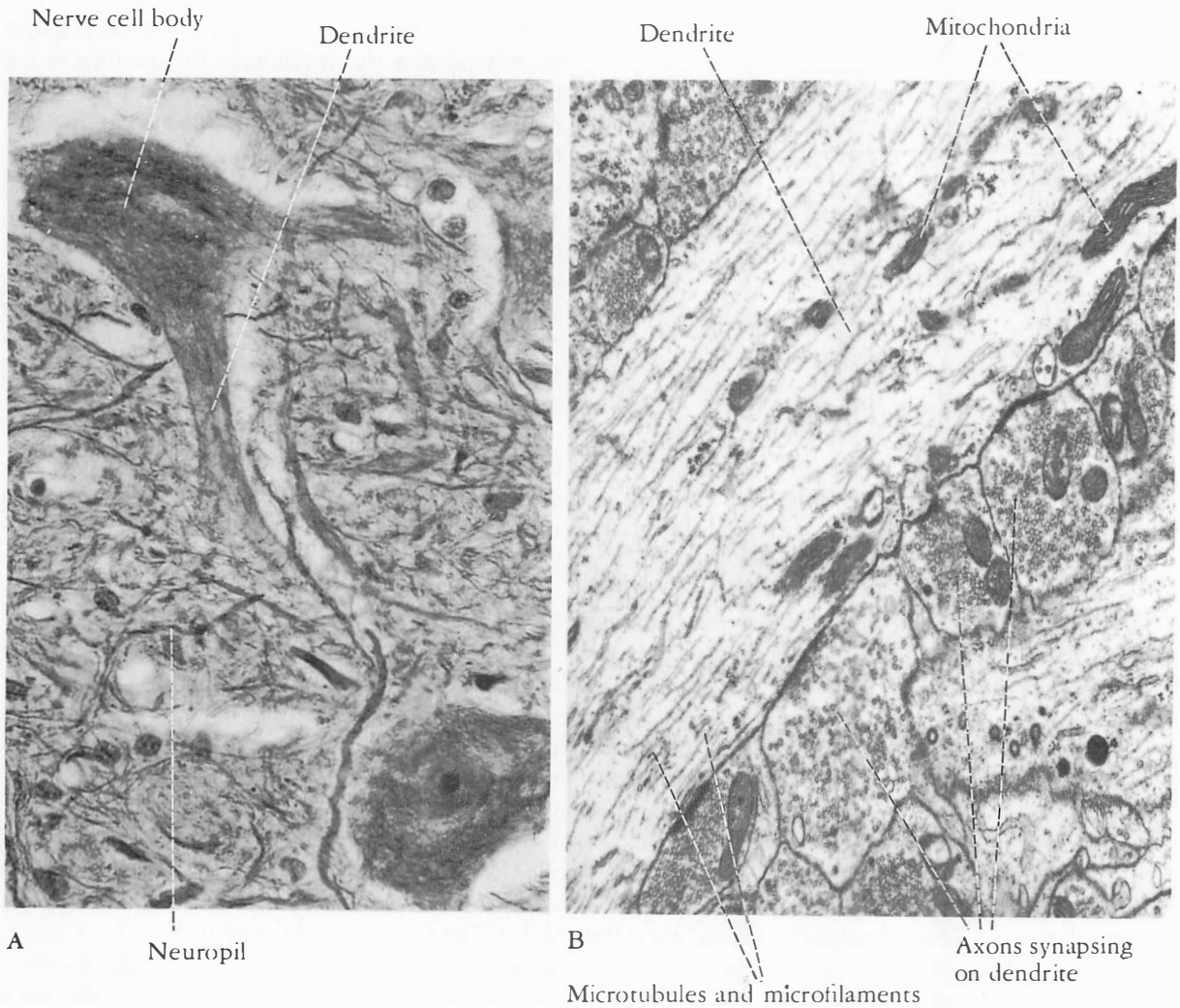


Fig. 2-21. A. Light photomicrograph of a motor neuron in the anterior gray column of the spinal cord. Shows the nerve cell body, two dendrites, and the surrounding neuropil.
B. Electronmicrograph of a dendrite showing axodendritic synapses. (Courtesy Dr. J. M. Kerns.)

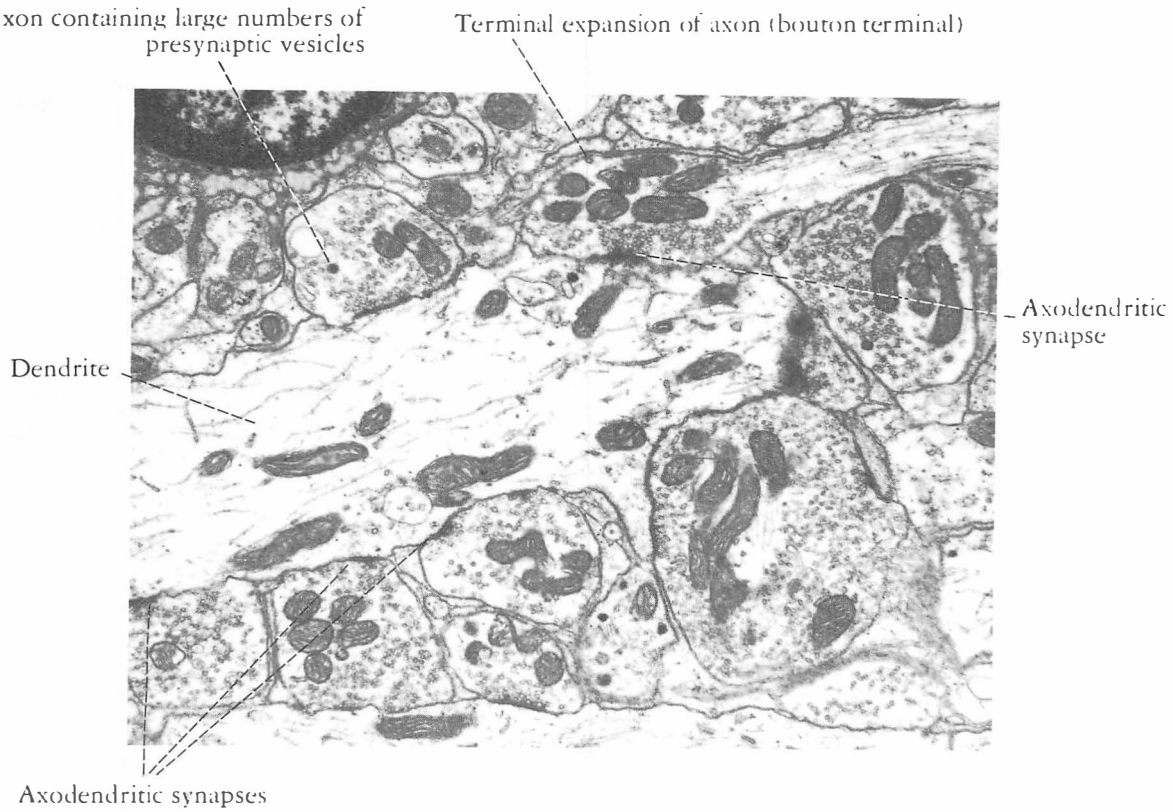


Fig. 2-22. Electronmicrograph showing multiple axodendritic synapses. Note the presence of large numbers of presynaptic vesicles within the axons. (Courtesy Dr. J. M. Kerns.)

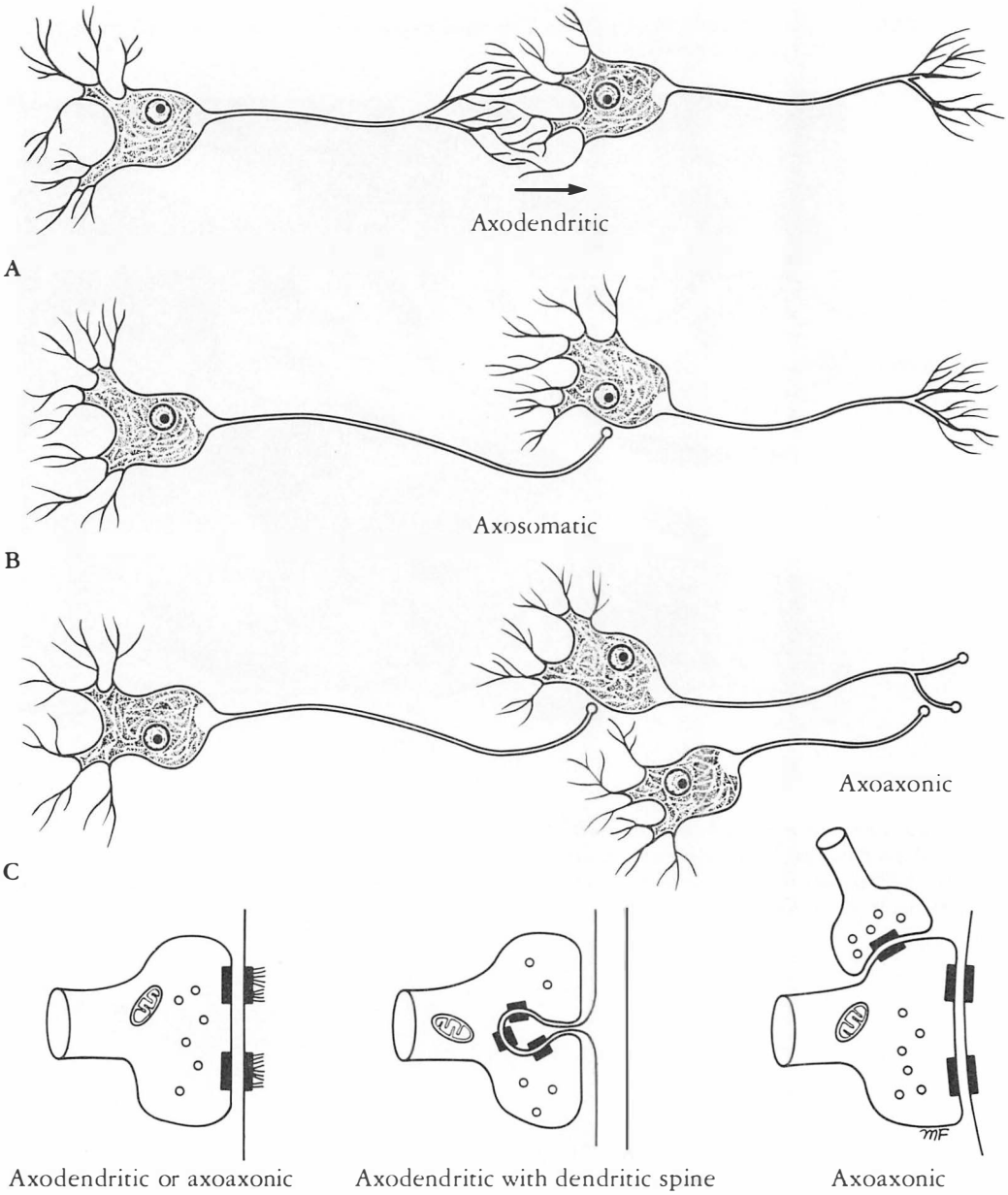


Fig. 2-23. Different types of synapses.

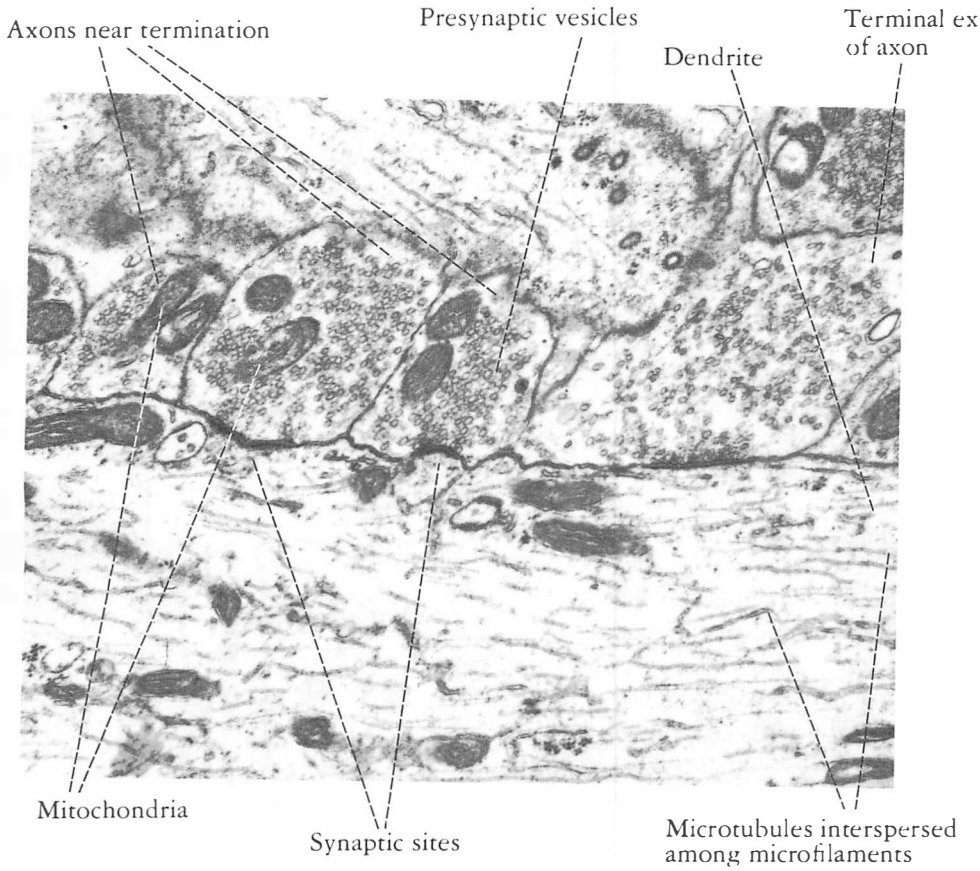


Fig. 2-24. High-power electronmicrograph of axodendritic synapses showing thickening of the cell membranes at the synaptic sites, presynaptic vesicles, and the presence of mitochondria within the axons near their termination. (Courtesy Dr. J. M. Kerns.)

a single neuron, as in the case of a climbing fiber in the cerebellar cortex ending on a single Purkinje cell; or a single axon may synapse with multiple neurons, as in the case of the parallel fibers of the cerebellar cortex synapsing with multiple Purkinje cells. In the same way, a single neuron may have synaptic junctions with axons of many different neurons. The arrangement of these synapses will determine the means by which a neuron can be stimulated or inhibited. *Synaptic spines*, extensions of the surface of a neuron, form receptive sites for synaptic contact with afferent boutons (Fig. 2-23).

ULTRASTRUCTURE OF SYNAPSES. On examination with the electron microscope, synapses are seen to be areas of structural specialization (Figs. 2-22 and 2-24). The apposed surfaces of the terminal axonal expansion and the neuron are called the *presynaptic* and *postsynaptic membranes*, respectively, and they are separated by a *synaptic cleft* measuring 200Å wide. The presynaptic and postsynaptic

membranes are thickened and the adjacent underlying cytoplasm shows increased density. On the presynaptic side, the dense cytoplasm is broken up into groups and on the postsynaptic side the density often extends into a *subsynaptic web*. *Presynaptic vesicles*, mitochondria, and occasional lysosomes are present in the cytoplasm close to the presynaptic membrane (Fig. 2-24). On the postsynaptic side, the cytoplasm often contains parallel cisternae. The synaptic cleft contains polysaccharides.

Transmission across a synapse is accomplished by the release of *neurotransmitters*, associated with the presynaptic vesicles, into the synaptic cleft. In the case of an excitatory synapse, the released transmitter causes a depolarization of the postsynaptic membrane; in the case of an inhibitory synapse, the transmitter causes hyperpolarization of the postsynaptic membrane. It is believed that the transmitter *acetylcholine* is stored in the clear presynaptic vesicles, whereas *catecholamines* are associated with the presence of dense-cored presynaptic vesicles (Fig. 2-25). The arrival of a nerve impulse at the presynaptic membrane results in the release of the transmitter substance into the synaptic gutter.

When synapses are first formed in the embryo they are recognized as small zones of density separated by a synaptic cleft. Later they mature into well-differentiated structures. The presence of simple, undifferentiated synapses in the postnatal nervous system has led to the suggestion that synapses can be developed as required and possibly undergo atrophy when redundant.

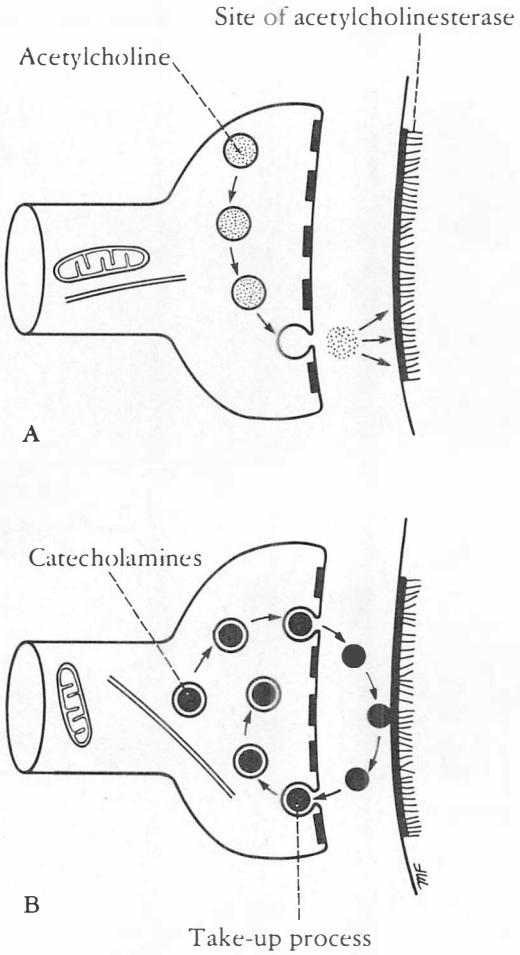


Fig. 2-25. The release of neurotransmitters.
A. Acetylcholine.
B. Catecholamines.

NEUROTRANSMITTERS AT SYNAPSES. *Acetylcholine*, the catecholamines, *norepinephrine* and *epinephrine*, and *dopamine* are the main neurotransmitters that have been extensively researched. Recent work on the central nervous system has suggested that synapses here may operate by means of other unknown chemical transmitters.

All neurotransmitters are released from their nerve endings by the arrival of the nerve impulse. Once in the synaptic gutter they achieve their objective by raising or lowering the resting potential of the postsynaptic membrane for a short period of time. In the case of acetylcholine, the effect is limited by the destruction of the transmitter in the synaptic gutter by the enzyme *acetylcholinesterase* (Fig. 2-25). However, in the case of the *catecholamines* the effect of the transmitter is limited by the return of the transmitter to the presynaptic nerve ending.

The distribution of the neurotransmitters varies in the different parts of the nervous system. *Acetylcholine* is found at the neuromuscular junction (see p. 126), in autonomic ganglia, and at parasym-

pathetic nerve endings. In the central nervous system the motoneuron collaterals to the *Renshaw cells* are cholinergic. In the hippocampus, the ascending reticular pathways and the afferent fibers for the visual and auditory systems, the neurotransmitters are also cholinergic.

Norepinephrine is found at sympathetic nerve endings. In the central nervous system, it is found in high concentration in the hypothalamus. *Dopamine* is found in high concentrations in different parts of the central nervous system, for example, in the basal ganglia.

Clinical Notes

General Considerations

The neuron is the basic functional unit of the nervous system. If it is destroyed by trauma or disease it is not replaced. It is incapable of undergoing cell division. Millions of neurons are present within the nervous system and they are linked together to form functional conducting pathways. They are supported by a framework of nonconducting cells referred to as the neuroglia.

Neurons may be classified according to the number of their processes into unipolar, bipolar, and multipolar; they also may be classified according to their size, the large Golgi type I neurons with long axons and the smaller Golgi type II neurons with short axons. All neurons have the common function of conducting impulses and serving the general function of control and integration. By this means, the activities of separate structures are integrated for the good of the entire body.

It has been seen that the neuron consists of the cell body and its processes, the axons, and the dendrites. All three parts are concerned with the process of conduction. It should be remembered, however, that the cell body is necessary for the normal metabolism of all its processes. Should these processes become separated from the cell body, as the result of disease or simple trauma, they will quickly degenerate. The complex physical and chemical processes involved in the response of a neuron to a stimulus and the mechanisms of nerve conduction will be discussed in a later chapter (see p. 99).

An examination of the structure of a neuron allows one to postulate the possible functions of its constituent parts. For example, the large numbers of unattached ribosomes are present presumably for the synthesis of enzymes and structural macromolecules. The presence of rough and smooth endoplasmic reticulum within the cell body indicates that the cell is producing large amounts of material that could be used for transcellular secretion. These synthetic functions are limited to the cell body and dendrites and are absent from the axon. This would explain the necessity for the transport of macromolecules down the axon from the cell body and also emphasizes the dependence of the axon on the cell body. The rate of axoplasmic transport is, however, insufficient to satisfy the release of transmitter substances at the nerve terminals. This problem is overcome in two ways. First, enzymes are present within the nerve terminals in order to synthesize the transmitters from amino acids derived from the extracellular fluid, and, second, at some terminals the transmitter is reabsorbed back into the terminal following its release. Clinically, it is possible, by the use of drugs, to influence this reuptake mechanism.

Reaction of a Neuron to Injury

The first reaction of a nerve cell to injury is loss of function. Whether the cell recovers or dies will depend on the severity and duration of the damaging agent. If death occurs quickly, say in a few minutes from lack of oxygen, no morphological changes will be immediately apparent. Morphological evidence of cell injury requires a minimum of 6 to 12 hours of survival (Robbins and Angell, 1971). The nerve cell becomes swollen and rounded off, the nucleus swells and is displaced toward the periphery of the cell, and the Nissl granules become dispersed toward the periphery of the cytoplasm (Fig. 2-13). At this stage the neuron could recover. If the kind of neuronal injury were not so severe as to cause death,

the reparative changes would start to appear. The cell would resume its former size and shape, the nucleus would return to the center of the cell body, and the Nissl granules would take up their normal position.

When cell death is imminent or has just occurred, the cell cytoplasm stains dark with basic dyes (hyperchromatism) and the nuclear structure becomes unclear. The final stage occurs after cell death. The cytoplasm becomes vacuolated and the nucleus and cytoplasmic organelles disintegrate. The neuron now is dissolved and removed by the activity of the phagocytes. In the central nervous system this function is performed by the microglial cells and in the peripheral nervous system by local members of the reticulo-endothelial system.

In chronic forms of injury, the size of the cell body is reduced, the nucleus and cytoplasm show hyperchromatism, and the nuclear membranes and those of the cytoplasmic organelles show irregularity.

Axonal Reaction or Axonal Degeneration

Axonal reaction or axonal degeneration are the changes that take place in a nerve cell when its axon is cut or injured. The changes start to appear within 24 to 48 hours after injury; the degree of change will depend on the severity of the injury to the axon, and will be greater if the injury occurred close to the cell body. The nerve cell becomes rounded off and swollen, the nucleus swells and becomes eccentrically placed, and the Nissl granules become dispersed toward the periphery of the cytoplasm. These changes reach their maximum in about 12 days.

In the peripheral nervous system, section of an axon is followed by attempts at regeneration and reparative changes take place in the cell body.

In the central nervous system there is degeneration that is not followed by regeneration. If the corticospinal tracts, for example, are destroyed by disease, the nerve cells that give rise to these axons degenerate and disappear completely.

There is an important exception to the axonal reaction of nerve cells described above. This occurs in the nerve cells of posterior root ganglia of spinal nerves. If the peripheral axons are sectioned, the nerve cells show degenerative changes; if, however, the central axons are sectioned or destroyed by disease, such as tabes dorsalis, the nerve cells show no degenerative changes.

Tumors of Neurons

When considering tumors of the nervous system one must not forget that the nervous system is made up of many different types of tissues. In the central nervous system there are neurons, neuroglia, blood vessels, and meninges and in the peripheral nervous system there are neurons, Schwann cells, connective tissue, and blood vessels. Tumors of neurons in the central nervous system are rare but tumors of peripheral neurons are not uncommon (Florey, 1970).

The *neuroblastoma* occurs in association with the suprarenal gland; it is highly malignant and occurs in infants and children. The *ganglioneuroma* occurs in the suprarenal medulla or sympathetic ganglia; it is benign and occurs in children and adults. The *phaeochromocytoma* occurs in the suprarenal medulla; it is usually benign and gives rise to hypertension, since it secretes norepinephrine and epinephrine.

Synaptic Blocking Agents

Transmission of a nervous impulse across a synapse is accomplished by the release of neurotransmitters into the synaptic gutter. The released transmitter then exerts its effect on the postsynaptic membrane.

The synapse is a region in which transmission is easily blocked. As a general rule, long chains of neurons with multiple synapses are more easily blocked than shorter, simpler chains of neurons. General anesthetic agents are effective because they have the ability to block synaptic transmission.

At autonomic ganglia, preganglionic fibers enter the ganglia and synapse with the postganglionic sympathetic or parasympathetic neurons. The nerve impulse, on reaching the termination of the preganglionic nerve, brings about the release of

acetylcholine, which excites a nervous impulse in the postganglionic neuron.

Ganglionic blocking agents may be divided into three groups, depending on their mechanism of action. The first group, which include the *hexamethonium* and *tetraethylammonium salts,* resemble acetylcholine at the postsynaptic membrane; they thus inhibit transmission across a synapse. The second group, which include *nicotine,* have the same action as acetylcholine on the postsynaptic membrane but they are not destroyed by the cholinesterase. This results in a prolonged depolarization of the postsynaptic membrane, so that it is insensitive to further stimulation by acetylcholine. Unfortunately, this depolarization block is associated with initial stimulation and therefore these drugs are not suitable for clinical use. The third group, which include *procaine,* inhibit the release of acetylcholine from the preganglionic fibers.

In the central nervous system, it is much more difficult to demonstrate the release of a particular transmitter substance at specific synapses due to inaccessibility. For example, with present techniques it is impossible to perfuse specific localized brain areas through their vascular system and it is very difficult to stimulate an isolated neuronal pathway within the brain or spinal cord. The motor neuron collaterals to the Renshaw cells have been shown to liberate acetylcholine at their endings. There is increasing evidence that other synapses in the central nervous system are also cholinergic.

The nonuniform concentrations of norepinephrine in the central nervous system have led many investigators to believe that it might function as a central neurotransmitter. The concentrations are greater in gray matter than in white matter and the highest concentrations are found in the hypothalamus. Dopamine is found in high concentrations in the central nervous system but its distribution is nonuniform and differs from that of norepinephrine. It is thought that dopamine may play a role as a neurotransmitter, especially in the extrapyramidal system.

Many of the cholinergic blocking agents used in the peripheral nervous system have little or no effect on the cholinergic synapses of the central nervous system because they are unable to cross the blood-brain barrier in significant concentrations. *Atropine, scopolamine,* and *diisopropylphosphorofluoridate* (DPF) can effectively cross the barrier and their effects on human behavior have been extensively studied. Similarly, it is believed that many psychotropic drugs bring about changes in the activities of the central nervous system by influencing the release of catecholamines at synaptic sites. The *phenothiazines,* for example, are thought to block dopamine receptors on postsynaptic neurons.

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 474.

1. From 1 to 2 percent of the population of the United States suffer from mental deficiency of sufficient severity to prevent them from becoming self-sufficient. Realizing that mental deficiency is a symptom that is initiated by a number of disease mechanisms, can you make a list of common diseases that have an effect on the normal development and function of neurons?

2. During an operation for repair of the radial nerve, which had been sectioned where it passes around the lateral aspect of the humerus and through the lateral intermuscular septum, the surgeon asked a medical student if the nerve fibers contained within the radial nerve were axons or dendrites, or was the nerve made up of a mixture of axons and dendrites. How would you have answered that question?

3. In a histological section of nervous tissue, one of the characteristic features noted is the large size of the nucleoli. What is the function of a nucleolus and why do you think it is large in nerve cells?

4. A well-known textbook of neurosurgery makes these statements regarding the prognosis following peripheral nerve repair: (a) The younger the patient, the better the return of function. (b) The more distal the injury to a nerve, the more effective regeneration will be. (c) The closer a lesion is to the nerve cell body, the more profound will be the effect on this trophic center. (d) Sensory nerve cells are affected more by this retrograde phenomenon than are motor nerve cells. Comment on these statements.

5. An 18-year-old male patient was examined by a neurosurgeon 12 months after injury to the right forearm in which the median nerve was severed. At the initial operation, shortly after the injury had occurred, debridement was performed and the separated nerve ends were tagged with radiopaque sutures. Unfortunately, the wound was infected and surgical repair of the nerve was deferred. Is it practical to consider repairing a peripheral nerve after a delay of 12 months?

6. While examining a patient, a neurologist turned to a medical student and said, "The pyramidal cells in the cerebral cortex are type I Golgi neurons. What is the structural difference between type I and type II Golgi neurons?" How would you have answered this question?

7. During the examination of a cell body of a neuron in an electron micrograph, a student was puzzled by the number and varied appearance of membrane-bound vesicles seen within the cytoplasm. How would you classify the different types of vesicles found in the cytoplasm?

8. While examining a pathology specimen of nervous tissue under a microscope, the pathologist was able to determine the sex of the individual from whom the tissue had been removed. How would you be able to do this?

9. Axoplasmic flow is believed to be involved in the build-up of materials at the axon terminals for the production of transmitter substances. This is sometimes referred to as anterograde flow. Retrograde axoplasmic flow is also thought to occur. What structures present in the cytoplasm of the neuron are possibly involved in these processes?

10. According to Walton (1977), about 1 percent of all deaths are due to intracranial tumors. One must, however, remember that many different types of tissues are present within the skull in addition to the nervous system. Moreover, the nervous system itself is composed of many different types of tissues. In fact, tumors that arise as neoplasms of nerve cells and fibers are rare. Name the different types of tissues that are found in the central nervous system and in the peripheral nervous system.

11. When a nerve cell is stimulated the permeability of the plasma membrane changes, permitting certain ionic movements to take place across the membrane. (1) What is the structure of the plasma membrane? (2) Is the permeability of the plasma membrane increased or decreased when the nerve cell is stimulated? (3) What is the action of local analgesics on the cell membrane?

12. Define the following terms: (a) *synapse,* (b) *synaptic spine,* (c) *synaptic cleft,* and (d) *presynaptic vesicles,* and (e) give some examples of neurontransmitter substances found at synapses.

13. The synapse is a region where nervous transmission is easily blocked. Clinically, the ganglion-blocking drugs used act by competing with acetylcholine released from the nerve endings in the ganglia. Name two groups of drugs that have been used for this purpose and indicate the site at which they act.

14. With our present methods of investigation it is very difficult to determine the different types of neurotransmitters that act at specific synapses within the central nervous system. Name three possible chemicals that have been identified within the central nervous system and may serve as neurotransmitters.

15. A 2-year-old boy was taken to a pediatrician because his mother had noticed that his right eye was protruding (proptosis). When questioned, the mother stated that she had first noticed this pro-

trusion one month previously and that it had progressively worsened since that time. The child was otherwise perfectly fit. On physical examination, the child was observed to be healthy in every respect except for the marked proptosis of the right eye. A careful palpation of the abdomen, however, revealed a large, soft mass in the upper part of the abdomen that extended across the midline. X-ray examination revealed a large, soft tissue mass that displaced the right kidney downward. A diagnosis of malignant tumor of the suprarenal or neighboring sympathetic nervous tissue was made with metastases in the right orbital cavity, the latter being responsible for the right-side proptosis. Name a tumor of the suprarenal gland or sympathetic nervous tissue that occurs commonly in children and may metastasize in the bones of the orbit.

Additional Reading

Aidley, D. J. *The Physiology of Excitable Cells.* London: Cambridge University Press, 1971.

Barr, M. L. The significance of the sex chromatin. *Int. Rev. Cytol.* 19:35, 1966.

Bodian, D. Introductory survey of neurons. *Cold Spring Harbor Symp. Quant. Biol.* 17:1, 1952.

Bodian, D. Neuron junctions: A revolutionary decade. *Anat. Rec.* 174:73, 1972.

Brightman, M. W., and Reese, T. S. Junctions between intimately apposed cell membranes in the vertebrate brain. *J. Cell. Biol.* 40:648, 1969.

Cooper, J. R., Bloom, F. E., and Roth, R. H. *The Biochemical Basis of Neuropharmacology* (2nd ed.). New York and London: Oxford University Press, 1974.

De Robertis, E. *Histophysiology of Synapses and Neurosecretion.* New York: Pergamon, 1964.

Droz, B., and LeBlond, C. P. Axonal migration of proteins in the central nervous system and peripheral nerves as shown by radioautography. *J. Comp. Neurol.* 121:325, 1963.

Eccles, J. C. *The Physiology of Nerve Cells.* Baltimore: Johns Hopkins Press, 1957.

Florey, H. *General Pathology.* Philadelphia: Saunders, 1970.

Gray, E. G., and Guillery, R. W. Synaptic morphology in the normal and degenerating nervous system. *Int. Rev. Cytol.* 19:111, 1966.

Guth, L. Regeneration in the mammalian peripheral nervous system. *Physiol. Rev.* 36:441, 1956.

Heuser, J. E., and Reese, T. S. Evidence for recycling of synaptic vesicle membrane during transmitter release of the frog neuromuscular junction. *J. Cell. Biol.* 57:315, 1973.

Hodgkin, A. L. *The Conduction of the Nervous Impulse.* Springfield, Ill.:Thomas, 1964.

Kempe, L. G. *Operative Neurosurgery.* Vol. 2, *Posterior Fossa, Spinal Cord, and Peripheral Nerve Disease.* Berlin, Vienna: Springer, 1968.

McEwen, B. S., and Graftsein, B. Fast and slow components in axonal transport of protein. *J. Cell. Biol.* 38:494, 1968.

Mugnaini, E. The relation between cytogenesis and the formation of different types of synaptic contact. *Brain Res.* 17:169, 1970.

Palay, S. L., and Palade, G. E. The fine structure of neurons. *J. Biophys. Biochem. Cytol.* 1:69, 1955.

Palay, S. L. The Structural Basis for Neural Action. In M. A. B. Brazier (Ed.). *Brain Function.* Berkeley: University of California Press, 1963. Vol. 2, p. 69.

Peters, A., Palay, S. L., and Webster, H. Def. *The Fine Structure of the Nervous System, the Cells and Their Processes.* New York: Harper and Row, 1970.

Ramón y Cajal, S. *Histologie du Système Nerveux de L'Homme et des Vertèbrès.* Paris: Maloine, 1909.

Robbins, S. L., and Angell, M. *Basic Pathology.* Philadelphia: Saunders, 1971.

Selkurt, E. E. *Physiology* (4th ed.). Boston: Little, Brown, 1976.

Siegel, G. J., Albers, R. W., Katzman, R., and Agranoff, B. W. *Basic Neurochemistry* (2nd ed.). Boston: Little, Brown, 1976.

Walton, J. N. *Brain's Diseases of the Nervous System* (8th ed.). New York and London: Oxford University Press, 1977.

Wuerker, R. B., and Palay, S. L. Neurofilaments and microtubules in anterior horn cells of the rat. *Tissue Cell.* 1:387, 1969.

3
Neuroglia

The neurons of the central nervous system are supported by several varieties of nonexcitable cells, which together are called *neuroglia* (Fig. 3-1). Neuroglial cells are generally smaller than neurons and outnumber them 5 to 10 times; they comprise about half the total volume of the brain and spinal cord.

There are four main types of neuroglial cells: (1) astrocytes, (2) oligodendrocytes, (3) microglia, and (4) ependyma (Fig. 3-1).

Astrocytes

Astrocytes have small cell bodies with branching processes that extend in all directions. Many of the processes of these cells end in expansions on blood vessels (perivascular feet), on ependymal cells, and on the pia mater. There are two types of astrocytes: fibrous and protoplasmic.

Fibrous astrocytes are found mainly in the white matter, where their processes ramify among the nerve fibers (Fig. 3-2). Each process is long, slender, smooth, and not much branched. The cell bodies and processes contain many filaments, which course through the cytoplasm.

Protoplasmic astrocytes are found mainly in the gray matter, where their processes ramify among the nerve cell bodies (Figs. 3-3 and 3-4). The processes are shorter, thicker, and more branched than those of the fibrous astrocyte. The cytoplasm of these cells contains fewer filaments than that of the fibrous astrocyte.

Oligodendrocytes

Oligodendrocytes have smaller cell bodies than the astrocytes and a few delicate processes. The filaments prominent in astrocytic cytoplasm are absent. They are frequently found in rows along nerve fibers or surrounding nerve cell bodies (Fig. 3-5). In electron micrographs the processes of these cells are continuous with the myelin sheaths of the nerve fibers, and it is believed that the myelin of the central nervous system is formed by oligodendrocytes, much as the myelin of peripheral nerves is formed from Schwann cells (Figs. 3-6 and 3-7). The processes of a single oligodendrocyte may join the sheaths of more than one nerve fiber.

Microglia

The microglial cells are the smallest of the neuroglial cells and are found scattered throughout the central nervous system (Fig. 3-8). From their small cell bodies arise wavy branching processes that give off numerous spinelike projections. They are capable of ingesting vital dyes, such as trypan blue, and closely resemble connective tissue macrophages.

Ependyma

Ependymal cells line the cavities of the brain and spinal cord. They form a single layer of cells that are cuboidal and possess microvilli and cilia (Fig. 3-9). The cilia are often motile and their movements contribute to the flow of the cerebrospinal fluid. The bases of the ependymal cells taper to long processes that branch and ramify among the other cells of the brain. Modified ependymal cells cover the blood vessels of the choroid plexuses (see p. 291).

Function of Neuroglia

Astrocytes, with their ramifying processes, form a supporting framework for nerve cells and nerve

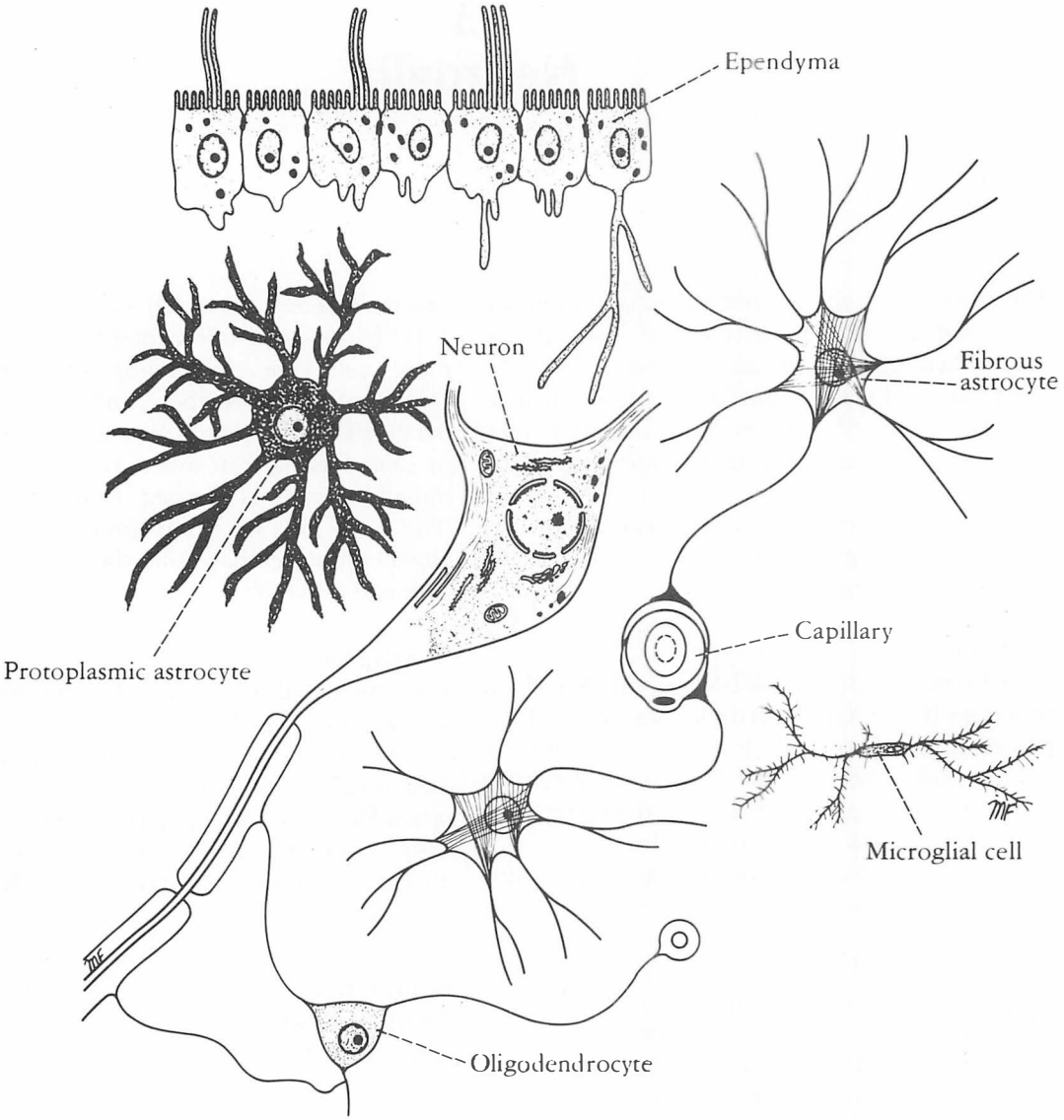


Fig. 3-1. A diagramatic representation of the arrangement of different types of neuroglial cells.

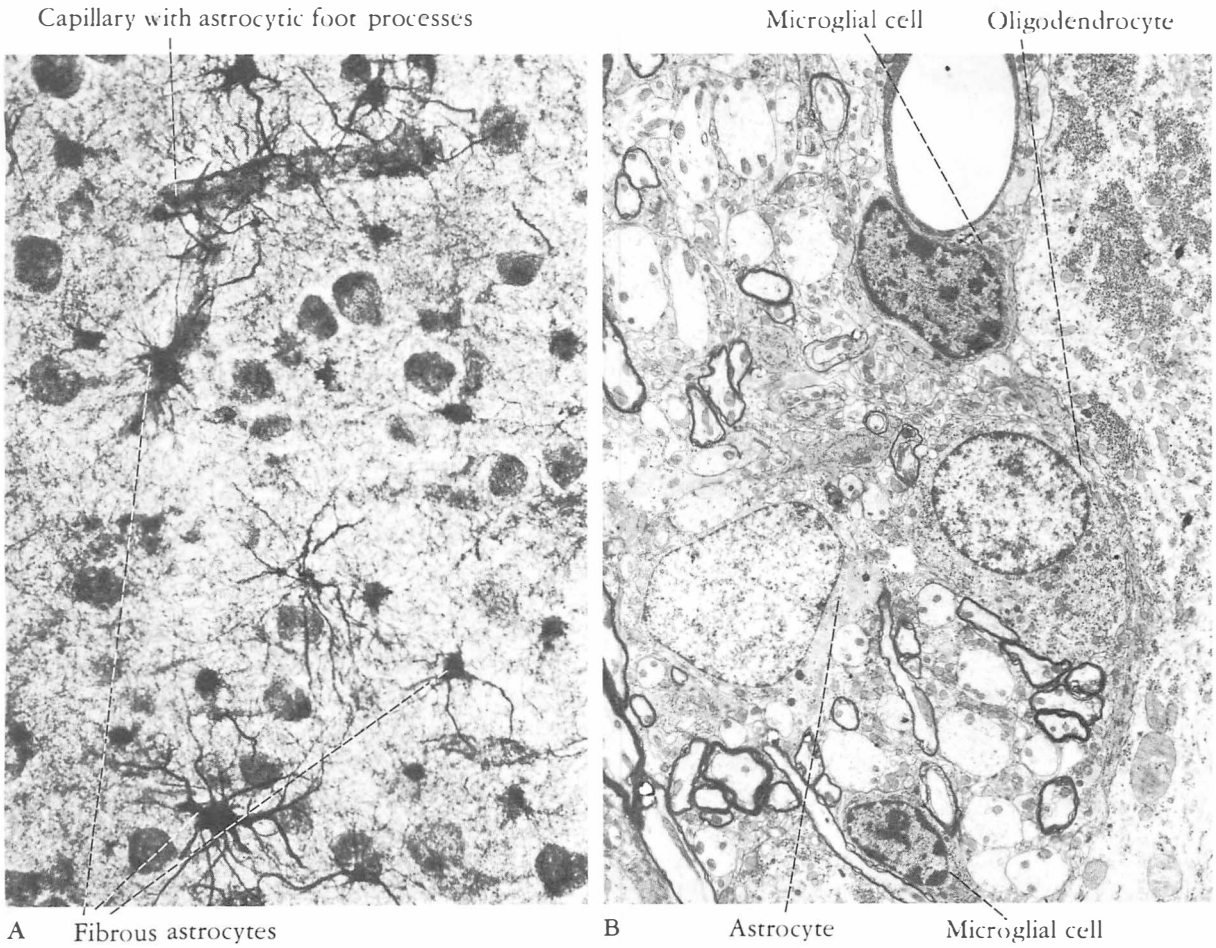


Fig. 3-2. A. Photomicrograph of section of gray matter of spinal cord showing fibrous astrocytes. B. Electronmicrograph showing an astrocyte. (Courtesy Dr. J. M. Kerns.)

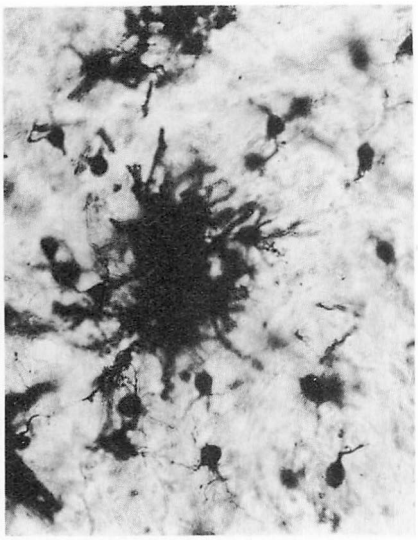


Fig. 3-3. Photomicrograph of a protoplasmic astrocyte in the cerebral cortex.

fibers within the central nervous system. Following the death of neurons due to disease, astrocytes proliferate and fill in the spaces previously occupied by the nerve cell body and its processes *(replacement gliosis)*. When there is extensive destruction of tissue a cavity is formed and it becomes lined with astrocytes.

The observations of Peters and Palay (1965) suggest that astrocytes act as insulators separating neurons and their processes and preventing axon terminals from influencing neighboring and unrelated receptive neuronal surfaces. The processes might act as barriers to the diffusion of neurotransmitters. Some authors suggest that the astrocytes take part in the metabolic activities of neurons. It is possible that metabolites are transported from the capillaries to the neurons through the perivascular feet, or that the by-products of neuronal metabolism are transported through the same route to the capillary. Glia cells (astrocytes and oligodendrocytes) may interact metabolically with neurons. They may be responsible for absorbing excess K^+ ions and CO_2 in the extracellular fluid.

The possible role of astrocytes in the blood-brain barrier has been questioned by recent investigators. (See blood-brain barrier, p. 299.)

Oligodendrocytes are thought to be involved in myelin formation, since, in developing central nervous tissue, connections have been demonstrated between myelin sheaths and oligodendrocytes.

Oligodendrocytes are also believed to play a role in regulating the biochemical environment of neurons. This idea is based largely on the fact that these cells commonly are found clustered around neuronal cell bodies.

Microglial cells in the normal brain and spinal cord appear to be inactive. In inflammatory and degenerative lesions of the central nervous system, they retract their processes and migrate to the site of the lesion. Here they proliferate and are actively phagocytic and their cytoplasm becomes filled with lipids and cell remnants. They are joined in this scavenger activity by histiocytes that migrate from the meninges and neighboring blood vessels.

Ependymal cells show branching processes in the basal border that extend radially and support the developing nervous tissue in the developing nervous system of the embryo. In later embryonic life the basal processes in most areas are resorbed.

The cells are ciliated and the movements of the cilia help in the circulation of the cerebrospinal fluid within the cavities of the central nervous system.

Where the ependymal cells cover the blood vessels of the choroid plexuses, they are thought to have a secretory function and play an active part in the formation of cerebrospinal fluid.

The presence of microvilli on their free surfaces would suggest that ependymal cells also have an absorptive function.

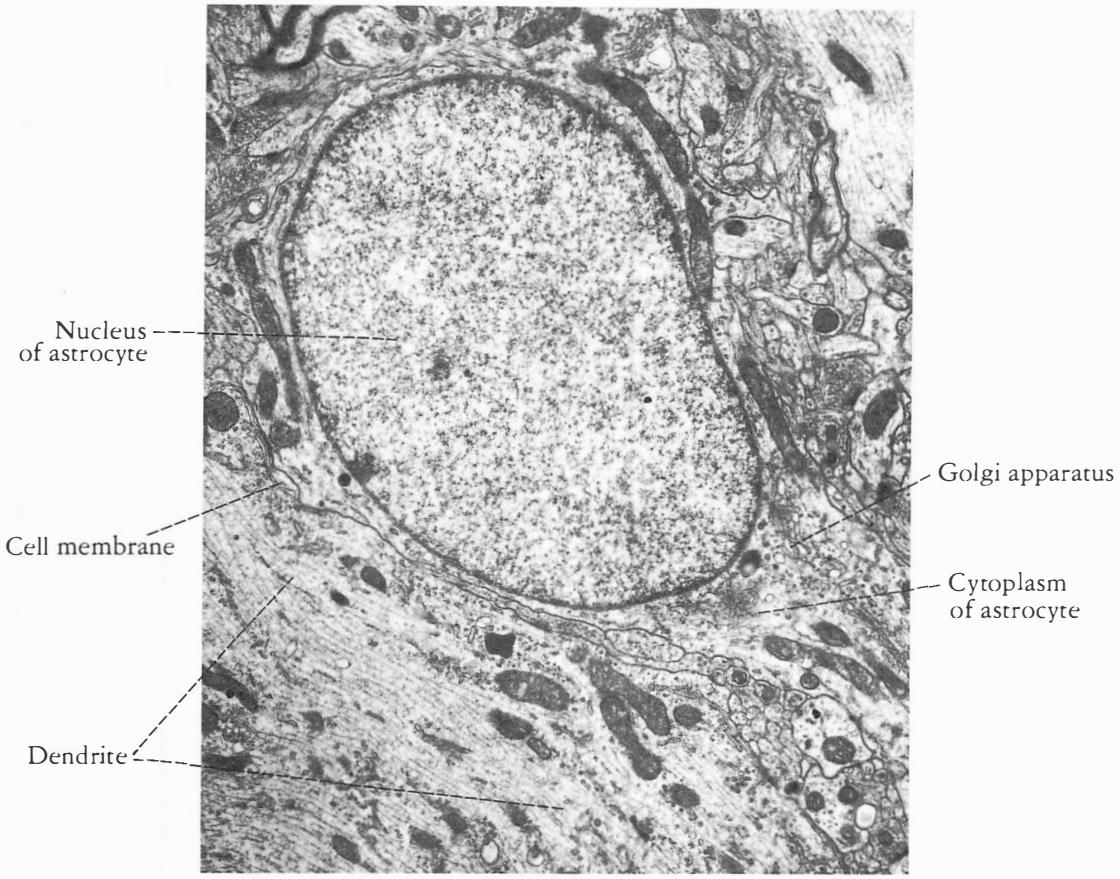


Fig. 3-4. Electronmicrograph of a protoplasmic astrocyte in the cerebral cortex. (Courtesy Dr. A. Peters.)

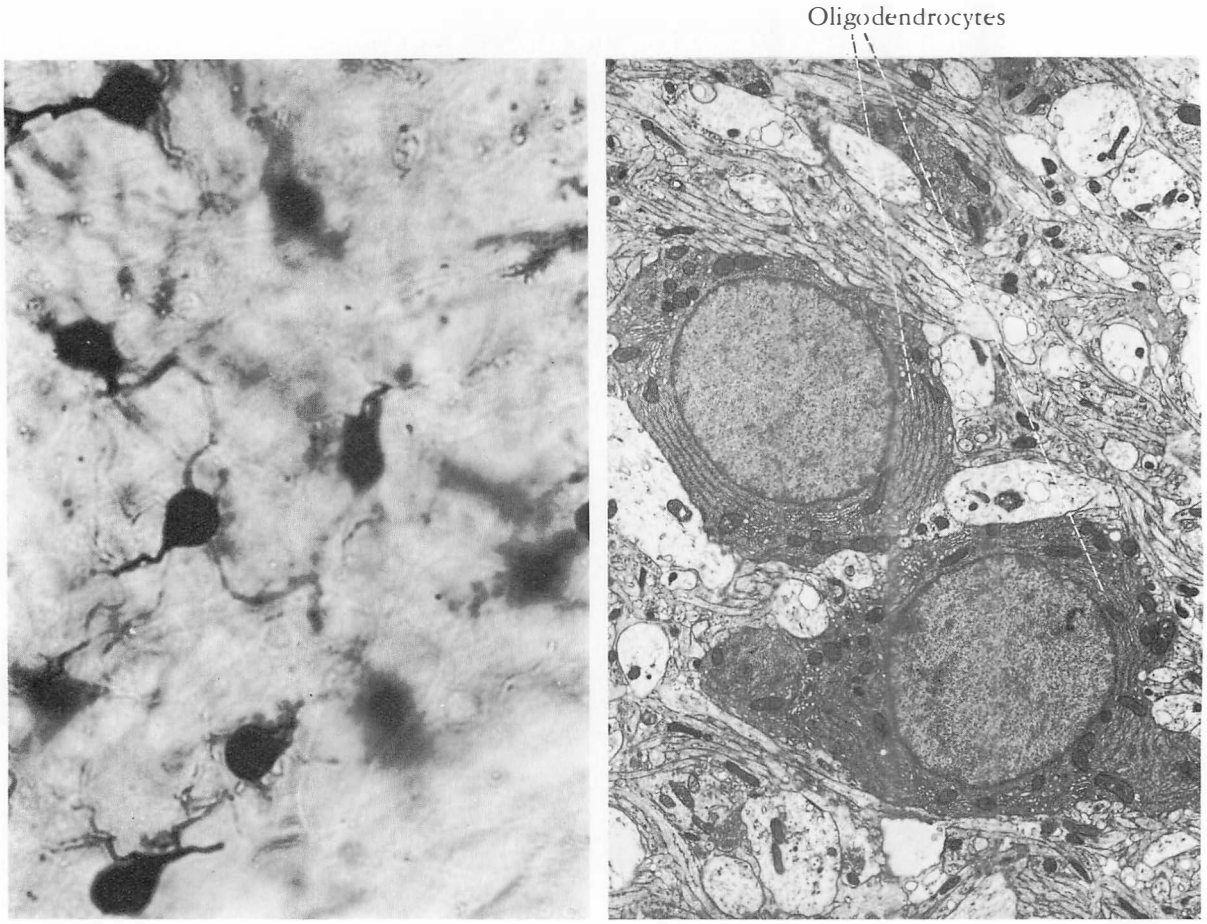


Fig. 3-5. A. Photomicrograph of a group of oligodendrocytes.
B. Electronmicrograph of two oligodendrocytes.
(Courtesy Dr. J. M. Kerns.)

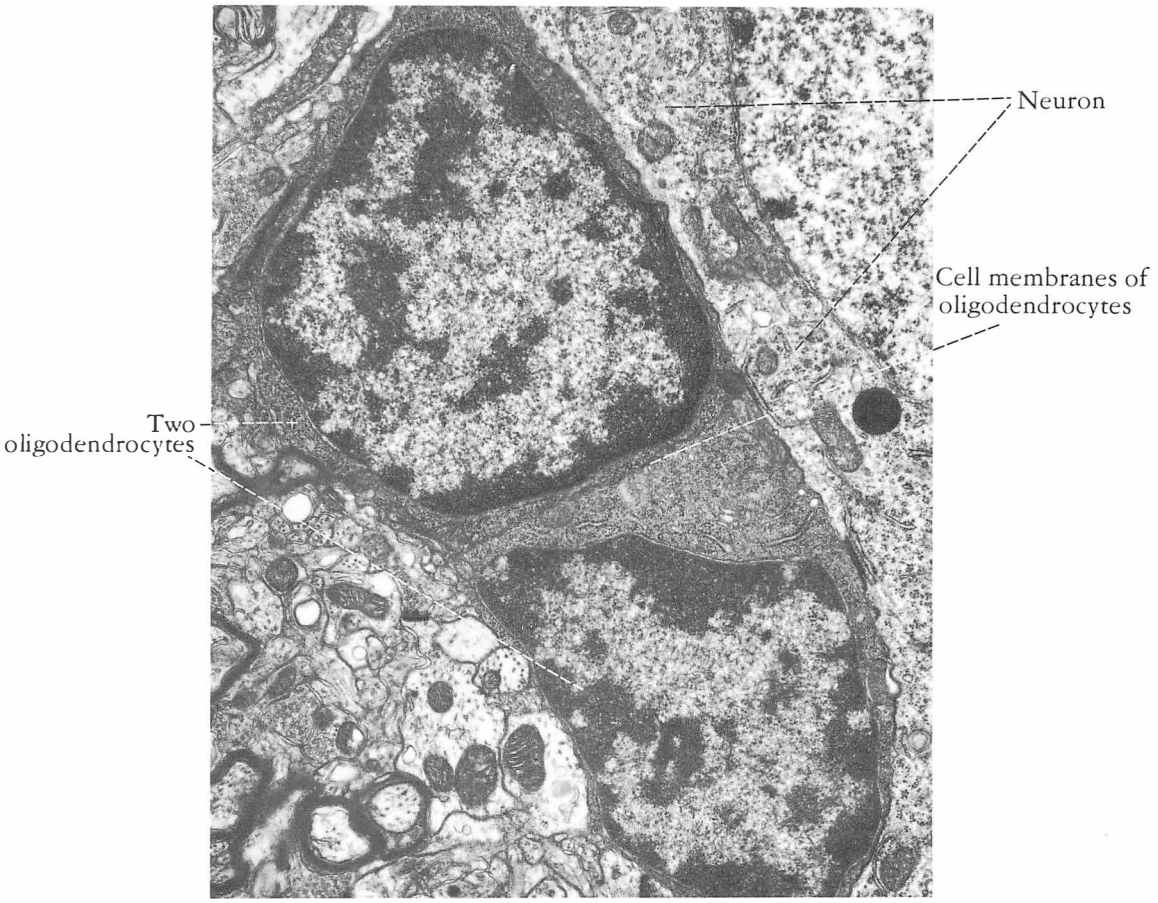


Fig. 3-6. Electronmicrograph of two oligodendrocytes.
(Courtesy Dr. A. Peters.)

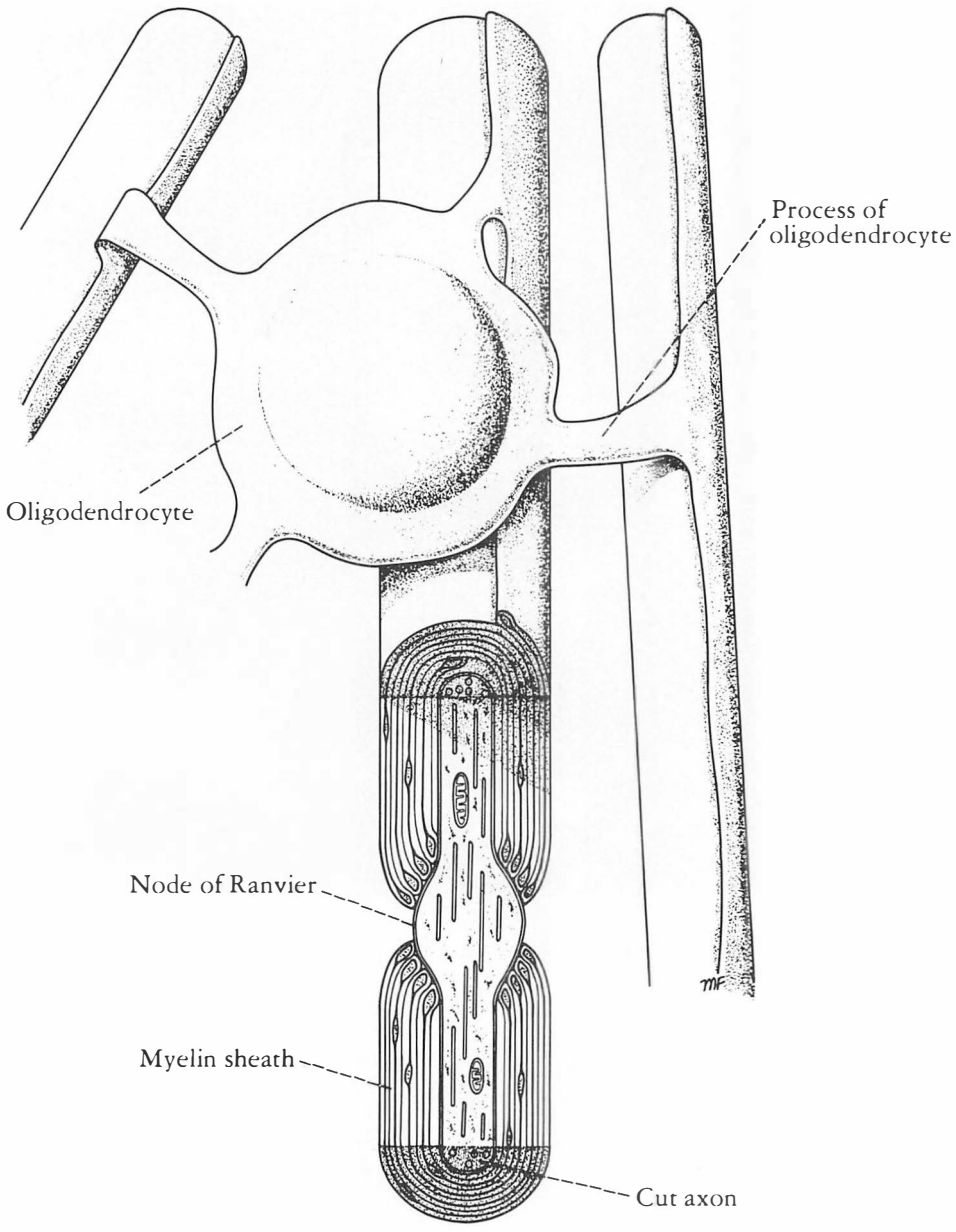


Fig. 3-7. A single oligodendrocyte whose processes are continuous with the myelin sheaths of four nerve fibers within the central nervous system.

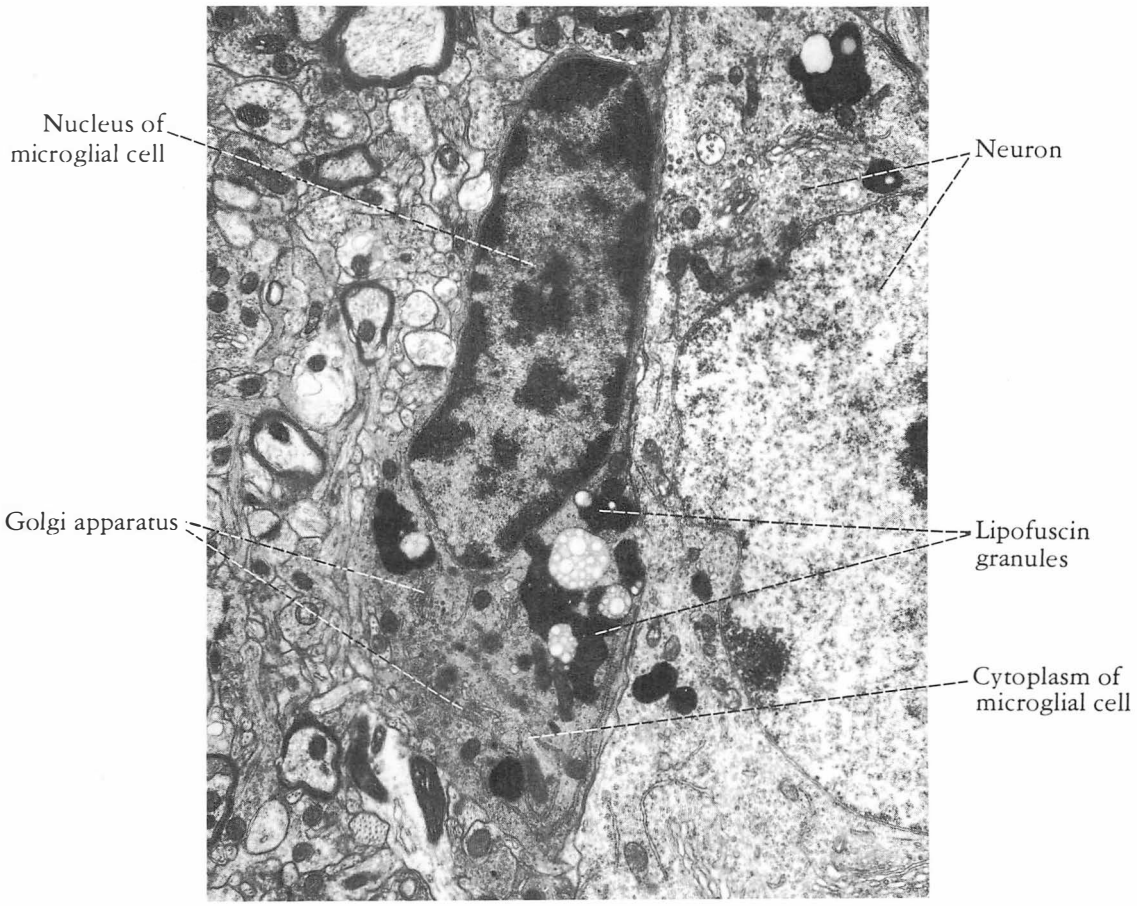
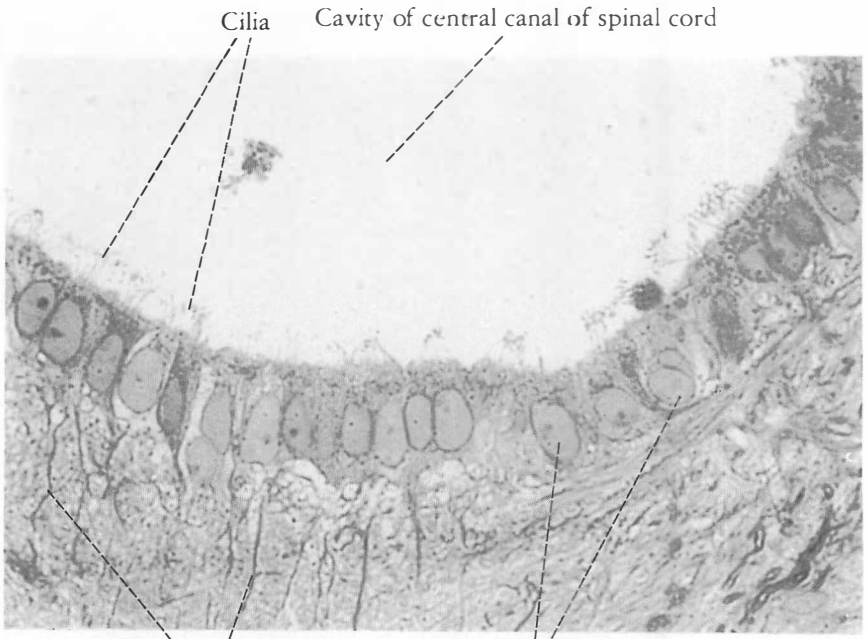


Fig. 3-8. Electronmicrograph of a microglial cell in the cerebral cortex. (Courtesy Dr. A. Peters.)


Cilia
Cavity of central canal of spinal cord
Processes of ependymal cells
Nuclei of ependymal cells

A

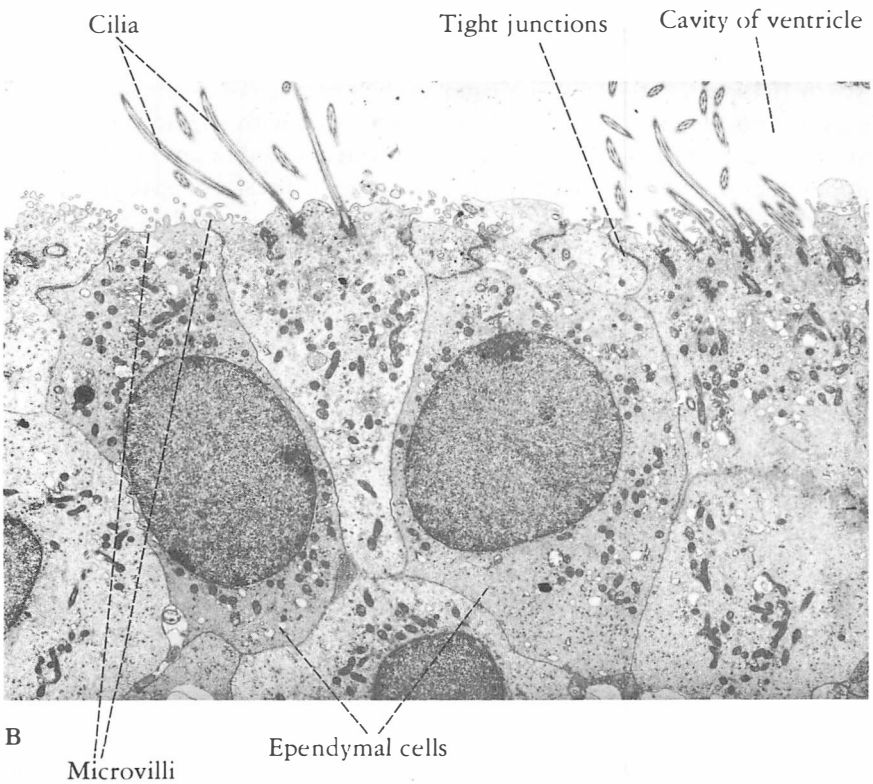


Fig. 3-9. A. Photomicrograph of ependymal cells lining central canal of spinal cord.
B. Electronmicrograph of ependymal cells lining cavity of third ventricle.
(Courtesy Dr. J. M. Kerns.)

Clinical Notes

Neuroglial cells, in contrast to neurons, are nonexcitable and do not have axons, nor do axon terminals synapse upon them. They are smaller than neurons and yet outnumber them 5 to 10 times. They comprise about half the total volume of the central nervous system.

Four types have been described: (1) astrocytes, (2) oligodendrocytes, (3) microglial cells, and (4) ependymal cells. Clinicians often refer to astrocytes and oligodendrocytes as *macroglial cells* to distinguish them from the microglial cells, which are very much smaller. Their functions include support to neurons (astrocytes and oligodendrocytes), myelination of nerve fibers in the central nervous system (oligodendrocytes), and scavenging (microglial cells), but most neuroscientists agree that they probably play a very much more extensive role in the functioning of the normal central nervous system.

Reactions of Neuroglia to Injury

The reaction of neuroglial cells to injury, whether it be caused by physical trauma or vascular occlusion, is characterized by the hyperplasia and hypertrophy of the astrocytes, which become fibrous irrespective of their antecedent morphology; in addition, there is hypertrophy and hyperplasia of the microglial cells. The proliferation of the astrocytes is referred to as *astrocytosis* or *gliosis*. The loss of neuronal tissue is not compensated for in volume by the glial hypertrophy. The cytoplasm of the enlarged astrocytes contains large numbers of fibrils and glycogen granules. The dense feltwork of astrocytic processes that occurs in the areas of neuronal degeneration produces the so-called *gliotic scar*. The degree of gliosis is much greater in the presence of residual damaged neuronal tissue compared with a clean surgical excision in which no traumatized brain remains. This is why, in patients with focal epilepsy due to a large gliotic scar, the scar is excised surgically, leaving a minimal glial reaction.

Oligodendrocytes respond to injury by expanding and showing vacuolation of their cytoplasm; the nuclei also tend to become pyknotic. Severe damage to oligodendrocytes probably would result in demyelination.

Microglial cells in inflammatory and degenerative lesions of the central nervous system retract their processes and migrate to the site of the lesion. Here they proliferate and are actively phagocytic and their cytoplasm becomes filled with lipids and cell remnants. They are joined in their scavenger activity by histiocytes that migrate from the meninges and neighboring blood vessels.

Neoplasms of Neuroglia

According to Walton (1977) tumors of neuroglia account for 40 to 45 percent of intracranial tumors. Such tumors are referred to as *gliomas*. Tumors of astrocytes are those most commonly encountered and include *astrocytomas, glioblastomas,* and *medulloblastomas*. Apart from the ependymomas, tumors of the neuroglia are highly invasive. This explains why it is difficult to achieve complete surgical removal and the great possibility of recurrence after surgery. Another feature is that as these tumors infiltrate they often do so without interfering with the function of neighboring neurons. As a result, the tumor is often very much larger than the symptoms and physical signs would indicate.

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 476.

1. At an autopsy a third-year medical student was handed a slice of the cerebrum and was asked what proportion of central nervous tissue is made up by neuroglia. How would you have answered that question? Which cells are present in the largest numbers, neurons or neuroglial cells?

2. A neurologist, while discussing the different

types of intracranial tumors, repeatedly used the term *macroglia*. What is macroglia? How does macroglia differ from microglia? What is neuroglia?

3. At the end of a seminar entitled "The Neuroglia" a physiologist, a pathologist, and an anatomist took part in an intense discussion on the possible functions of neuroglia in the central nervous system. What do you know about the functions of neuroglial cells?

4. A 23-year-old man, while in the army in Vietnam, received a penetrating gunshot wound to the left side of his head. At the operation the neurosurgeon was able to remove the bullet from the left frontal lobe of his brain. Apart from a slight weakness of his right leg, the patient made an uneventful recovery. Eighteen months later the patient started to have severe generalized attacks of convulsions, during which he lost consciousness. Since this time the attacks have occurred irregularly at about monthly intervals. Each attack is preceded by a feeling of mental irritability and twitching of the right leg occurs. A diagnosis of epilepsy was made by the examining neurologist. Is it possible that this patient's attacks of epilepsy are related to his gunshot wound in Vietnam? Is traumatic epilepsy a common condition? What treatment would you recommend?

5. A 42-year-old woman visited her physician because she was suffering from very severe headaches. Until six months ago she experienced only an occasional mild headache. Since that time her headaches gradually have become more severe and their duration has increased. Now they last 3 or 4 hours and are so intense that she has to lie down. She has felt sick on two occasions but she has vomited on only one occasion. The headaches are generalized in nature and are made worse by coughing or straining. A physical examination revealed swelling of both optic discs with congestion of the retinal veins and the presence of multiple retinal hemorrhages. Weakness of the lateral rectus muscle of the right eye also was detected. Anteroposterior radiographs of the skull showed displacement of the calcified pineal gland to the left side. Anteroposterior and lateral radiographs of the skull showed some degree of calcification in a localized area in the right cerebral hemisphere. These findings, together with those obtained from computerized axial tomography of the brain, made the diagnosis of a right-sided cerebral tumor certain. Surgical exploration confirmed the presence of a large infiltrating tumor of the right parietal lobe. What is the commonest type of tumor found in such a site in a middle-aged patient? How would you treat such a patient?

Additional Reading

Glees, P. *Neuroglia, Morphology and Function.* Springfield, Ill.: Thomas, 1955.

Miller, H., and Stern, G. The long term prognosis of severe head injury. *Lancet* 1:255, 1965.

Penfield, W. Neuroglia: Normal and Pathological. In W. Penfield (Ed.), *Cytology and Cellular Pathology of the Nervous System.* New York: Hoeber Med. Div., Harper, 1932. Vol. 2, p. 421.

Peters, A. Observations on the connections between myelin sheaths and glial cells in the optic nerves of young rats. *J. Anat.* 98:125, 1964.

Peters, A., and Palay, S. L. An electron microscope study of the distribution and patterns of astroglial processes in the central nervous system. *J. Anat.* 99:419, 1965.

Peters, A., Palay, S. L., and Webster, H., Def. *The Fine Structure of the Nervous System: The Neurons and Supporting Cells.* Philadelphia: Saunders, 1976.

Walton, J. N. *Brain's Diseases of the Nervous System* (8th ed.). New York and London: Oxford University Press, 1977.

Windle, W. F. (Ed.). *Biology of Neuroglia.* Springfield, Ill.: Thomas, 1958.

4
Nerve Fibers and Peripheral Nerves

Nerve Fibers

A nerve fiber is the name given to an axon (or a dendrite) of a nerve cell. The structure of axons and dendrites is described on page 59. Bundles of nerve fibers found in the central nervous system are often referred to as *nerve tracts;* bundles of nerve fibers found in the peripheral nervous system are called *peripheral nerves* (Fig. 4-1).

Two types of nerve fibers are present in the central and peripheral parts of the nervous system, namely, myelinated and nonmyelinated fibers.

Myelinated Nerve Fibers

A myelinated nerve fiber is one that is surrounded by a myelin sheath. The myelin sheath is not part of the neuron but is formed by a supporting cell (Figs. 4-2 and 4-3). In the central nervous system the supporting cell is called the oligodendrocyte; in the peripheral nervous system it is called the Schwann cell.

The myelin sheath is a segmented, discontinuous layer interrupted at regular intervals by the *nodes of Ranvier*. Each segment of the myelin sheath measures approximately 0.5 to 1 mm in length. In the central nervous system each oligodenrocyte may form and maintain myelin sheaths for as many as 60 nerve fibers (axons). In the peripheral nervous system there is usually only one Schwann cell for each segment of one nerve fiber.

Formation of Myelin

Myelin sheaths begin to form during the latter part of fetal development and during the first year postnatally. The process has been studied with the electron microscope.

In the *peripheral nervous system*, the nerve fiber or axon first indents the side of a Schwann cell (Fig. 4-4). Later, as the axon sinks farther into the Schwann cell, the external plasma membrane of the Schwann cell forms a *mesaxon*, which suspends the axon within the Schwann cell. Subsequently, it is thought, the Schwann cell rotates on the axon so that the plasma membrane becomes wrapped around and around the axon in a spiral. The direction of the spiral is clockwise in some segments and counterclockwise in others. To begin with, the wrappings are loose, but gradually the cytoplasm between the layers of the cell membrane disappears leaving cytoplasm near the surface and in the region of the nucleus. The wrappings become tight with maturation of the nerve fiber. The thickness of the myelin depends on the number of spirals of Schwann cell membrane. Some nerve fibers are surrounded by only a few turns of the membrane while others have as many as 50 turns. In electronmicrographs of cross sections of mature myelinated nerve fibers, the myelin is seen to be laminated (Fig. 4-5). Each lamella measures 130 to 180Å thick. The dark *major dense line*, about 25Å thick, consists of two inner protein layers of the plasma membrane that are fused together. The lighter *minor dense line*, about 100Å thick, is formed by the approximation of the outer surfaces of adjacent plasma membranes and is made up of lipid. The fused outer protein layers of the plasma membranes are very thin and form a thin intraperiod line situated in the center of the lighter lipid layer (Figs. 4-4 and 4-5).

The *incisures of Schmidt-Lanterman* are seen on longitudinal sections of myelinated nerve fibers (Fig. 4-6). They represent areas where the dark major dense line is not formed as a result of the localized persistence of Schwann cell cytoplasm. This persistence of cytoplasm involves all the layers of the myelin and thus there is a continuous

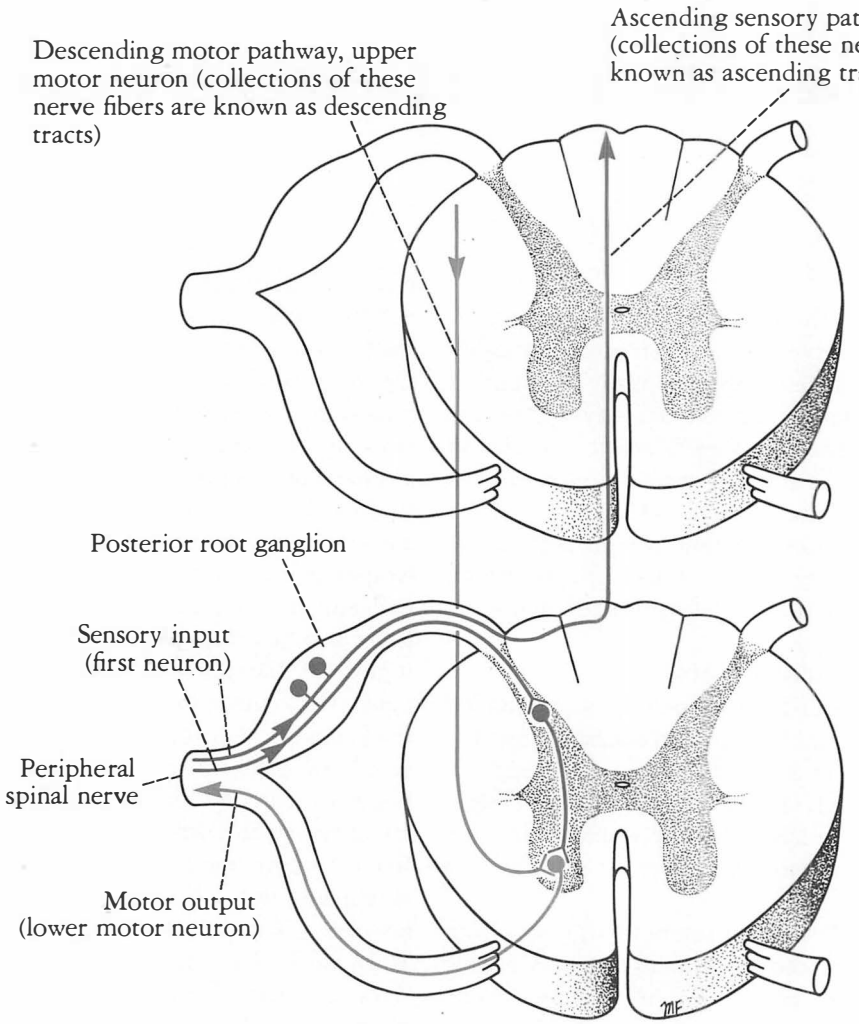


Fig. 4-1. Sections through the thoracic region of the spinal cord showing examples of nerve fibers entering or leaving the central nervous system; ascending and descending nerve fibers (tracts or pathways) are also shown.

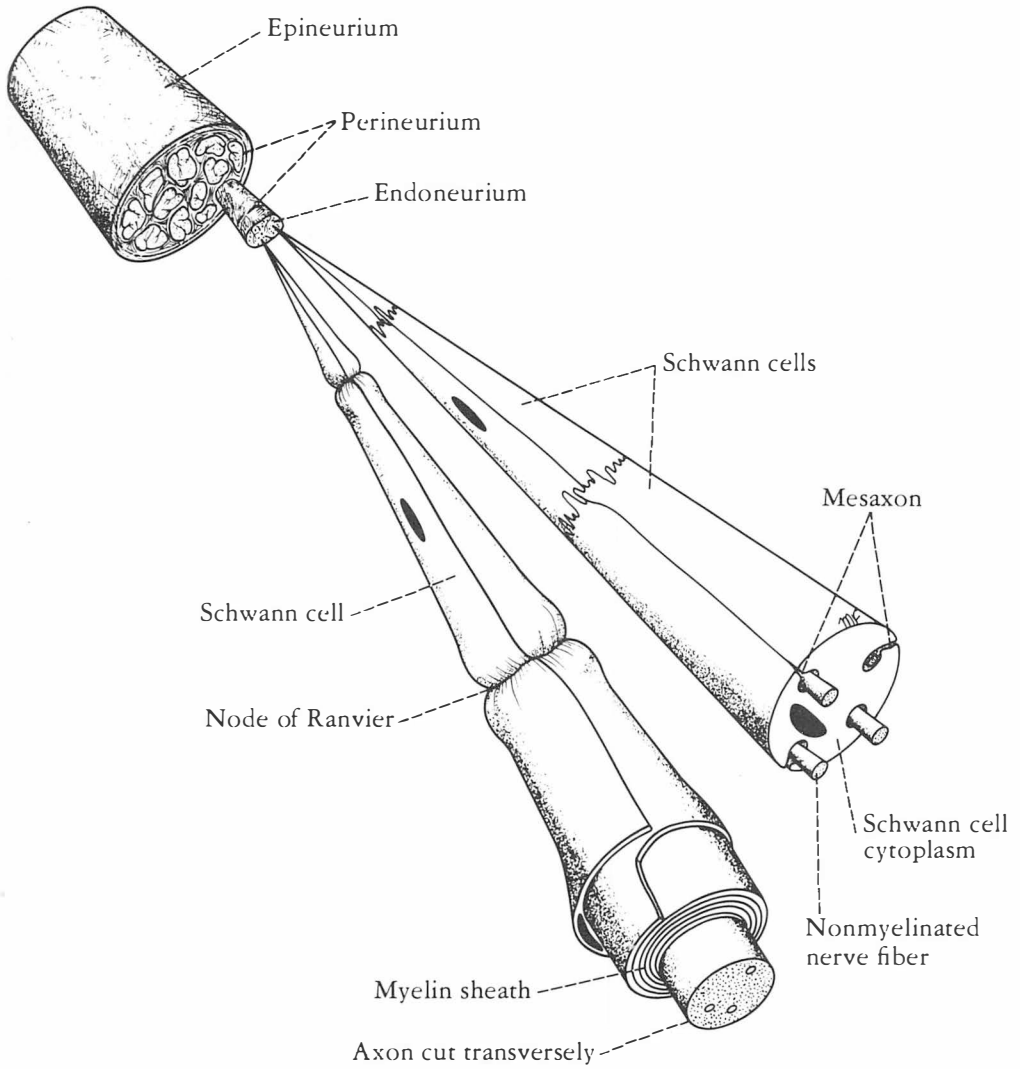


Fig. 4-2. Exploded view of a peripheral nerve, showing the connective tissue sheaths and the structure of myelinated and nonmyelinated nerve fibers.

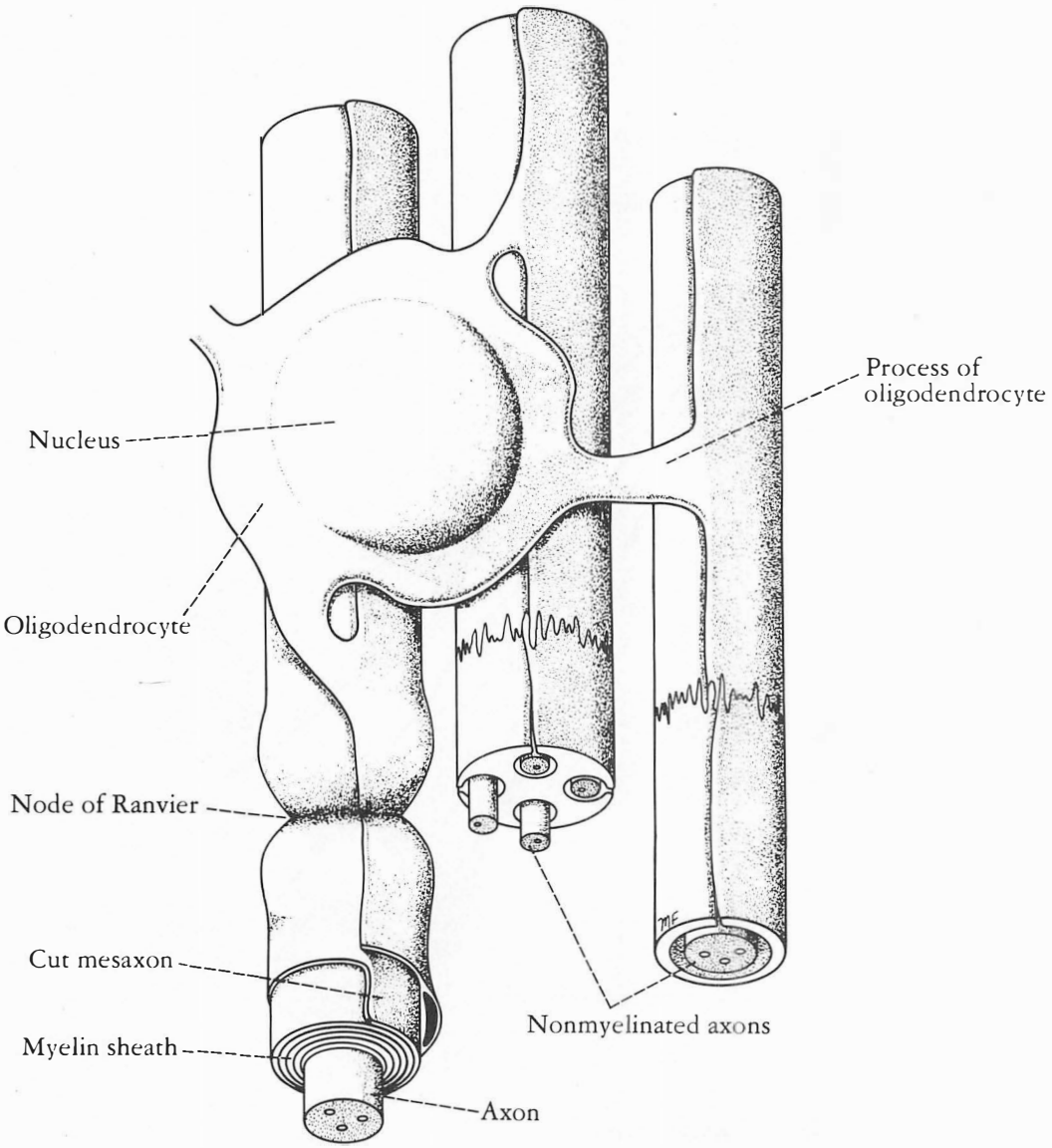


Fig. 4-3. The relationship between an oligodendrocyte and myelinated and nonmyelinated nerve fibers in the central nervous system.

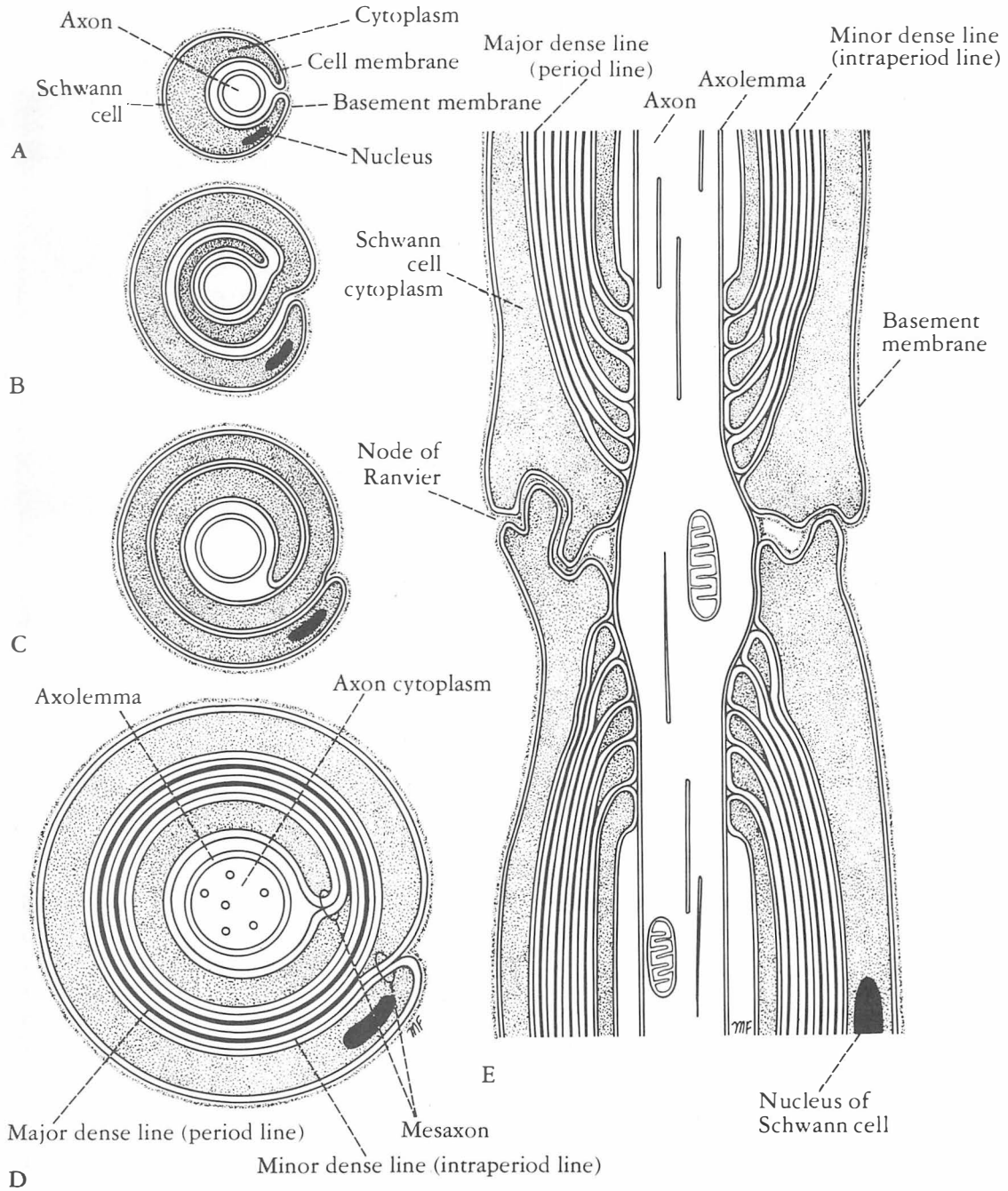


Fig. 4-4. A myelinated nerve fiber in the peripheral nervous system.
A, B, C, and D. Cross sections showing the stages in the formation of the myelin sheath.
E. A longitudinal section of a mature myelinated nerve fiber showing a node of Ranvier.

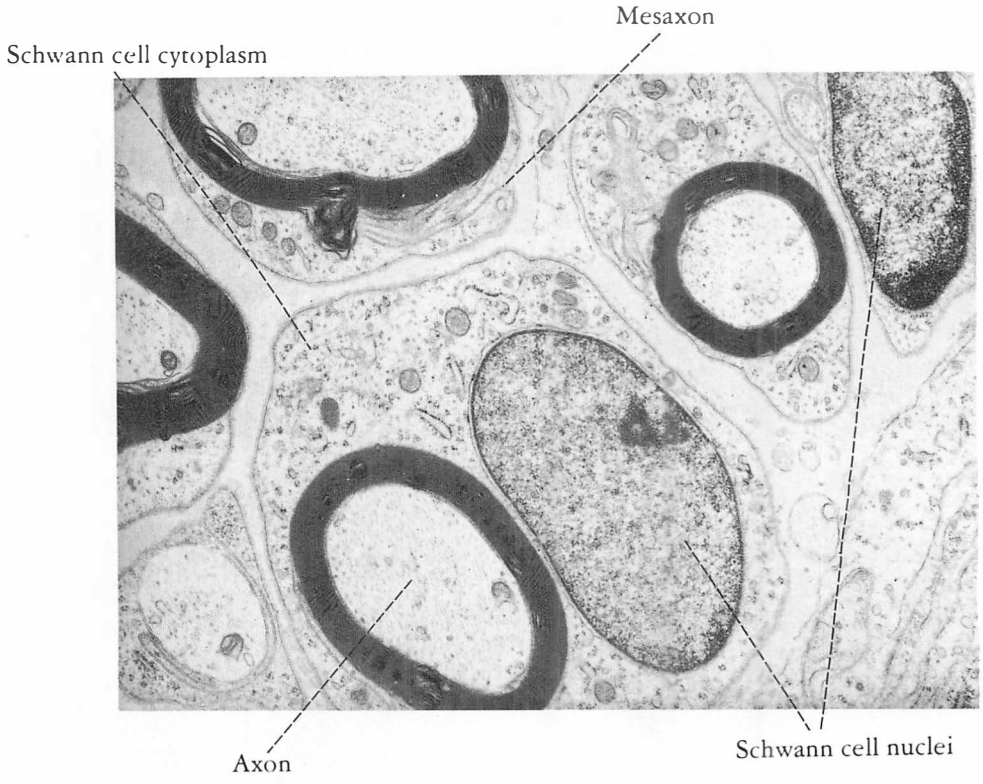


Fig. 4-5. Electronmicrograph of a transverse section of a peripheral nerve showing parts of four myelinated nerve fibers. (Courtesy Dr. J. M. Kerns.)

spiral of cytoplasm from the outermost region of the Schwann cell to the region of the axon. This spiral of cytoplasm may provide a pathway for the conduction of metabolites from the surface region of the Schwann cell to the axon.

In the *central nervous system*, oligodendrocytes are believed to be responsible for the formation of the myelin sheaths. The plasma membrane of the oligodendrocyte becomes wrapped around the axon and the number of layers will determine the thickness of the myelin sheath (see Figs. 4-3 and 4-6). The *nodes of Ranvier* are situated in the intervals between adjacent oligodendrocytes. A single oligodendrocyte may be connected to the myelin sheaths for as many as 60 nerve fibers. Moreover, a single oligodendrocyte may be associated with many nonmyelinated fibers (see below). For these reasons, the process of myelination in the central nervous system cannot take place by rotation of the oligodendrocyte on the axon, as did the Schwann cell in the peripheral nervous system. It is possible that myelination in the central nervous system occurs by the growth in length of the mesaxon of the oligodendrocyte, the mesaxon wrapping itself around the axon. There are incisures of Schmidt-Lanterman in nerve fibers of the central nervous system.

Nonmyelinated Nerve Fibers

The smaller axons of the central nervous system, the postganglionic axons of the autonomic part of the nervous system, and some fine sensory axons associated with the reception of pain, are nonmyelinated.

In the *peripheral nervous system* each axon, which

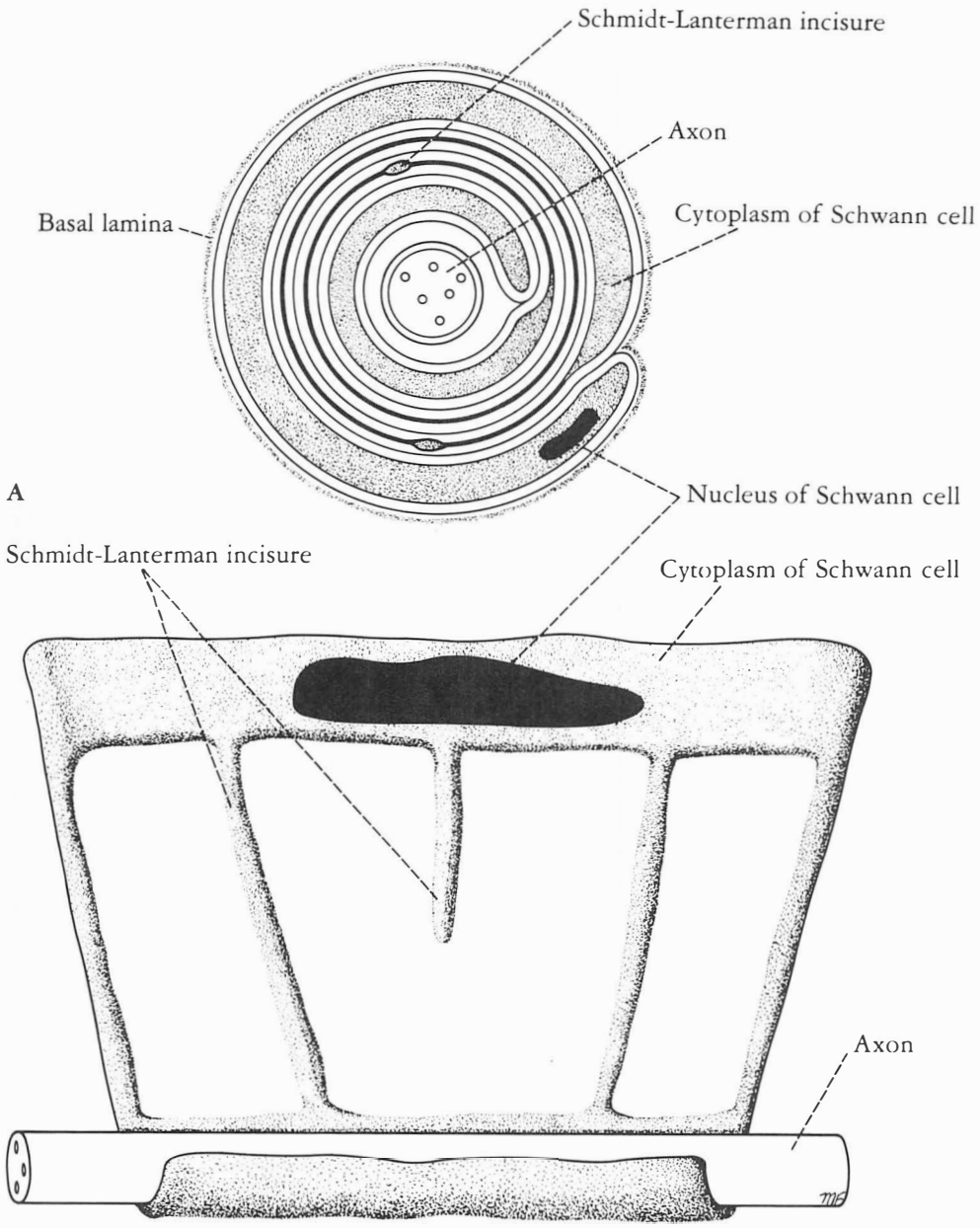


Fig. 4-6. Schmidt-Lanterman incisures in the myelin sheath of a peripheral nerve.
A. Transverse section of a myelinated nerve fiber.
B. Schematic diagram of a myelinated nerve fiber in which the myelin sheath has been unrolled.

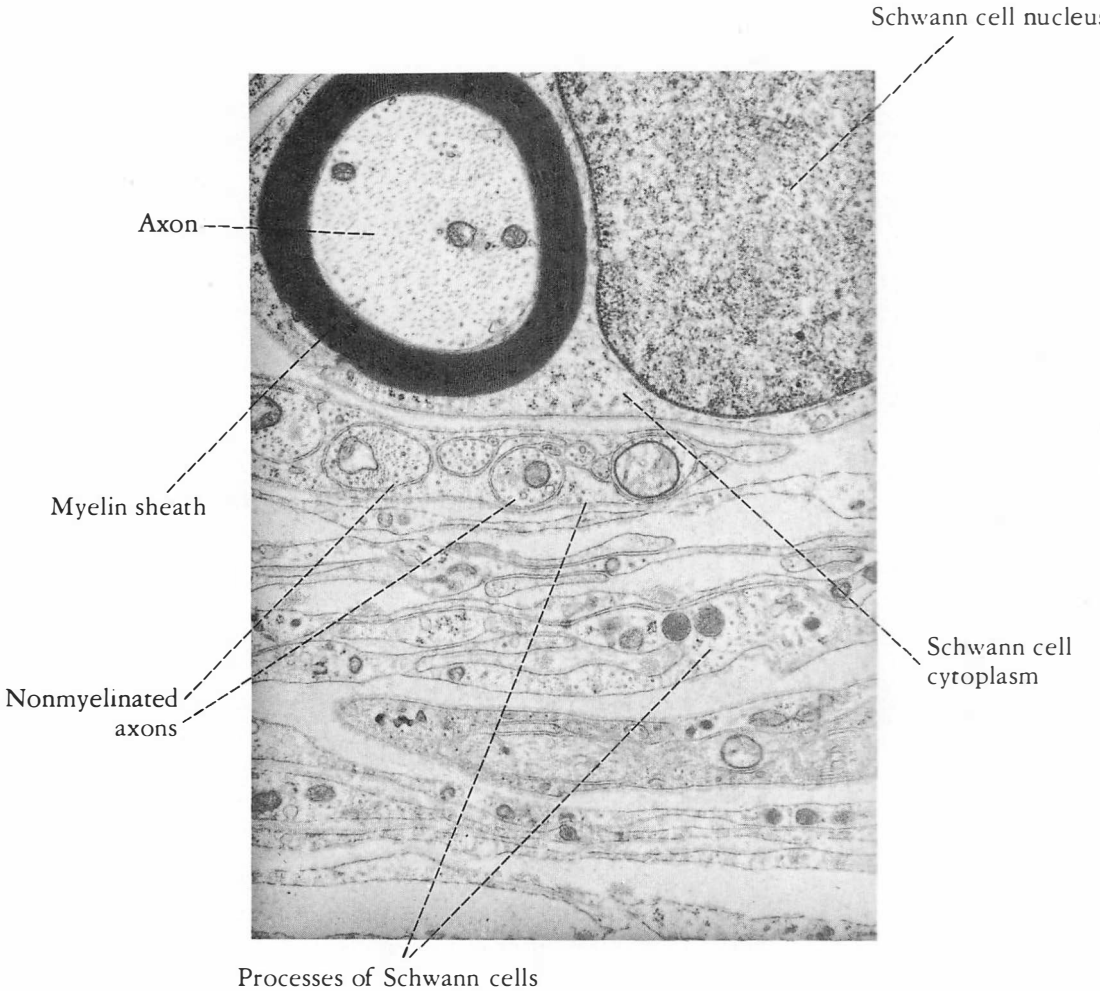


Fig. 4-7. Electronmicrograph of a transverse section of a myelinated nerve fiber and several nonmyelinated nerve fibers. (Courtesy Dr. J. M. Kerns.)

is usually less than 1μ in diameter, indents the surface of the Schwann cell so that it lies within a trough (see Fig. 4-2). As many as 15 or more axons may share a single Schwann cell, each lying within its own trough or sometimes sharing a trough. In some situations the troughs are deep and the axons are embedded deep in the Schwann cells, forming a *mesaxon* from the Schwann cell plasma membrane (Fig. 4-7). The axons run from one Schwann cell to another, there being a series of such cells along the lengths of the axons. There are no nodes of Ranvier.

In areas where there are synapses or where motor transmission occurs, the axon emerges from the trough of the Schwann cell for a short distance, thus exposing the active region of the axon (Fig. 4-8).

In the *central nervous system* a single oligodendrocyte is indented by one or several axons (see

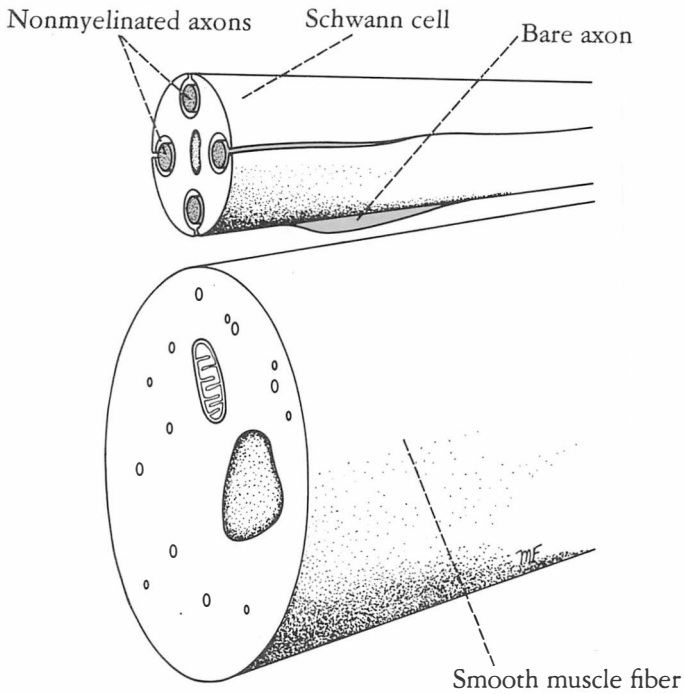


Fig. 4-8. An autonomic neuromuscular junction between a nonmyelinated axon and a smooth muscle cell.

Fig. 4-3). As in the case of Schwann cells in the peripheral nervous system, the plasma membrane forms a single wrapping around the axons.

Peripheral Nerves

The peripheral nerves are the cranial and spinal nerves. Each peripheral nerve consists of parallel bundles of nerve fibers, which may be efferent or afferent axons, and may be myelinated or nonmyelinated, and are surrounded by connective tissue sheaths (Figs. 4-9 and 4-10).

The nerve trunk is surrounded by a dense connective tissue sheath called the *epineurium* (Fig. 4-11). Within the sheath are bundles of nerve fibers, each of which is surrounded by a connective tissue sheath called the *perineurium*. Between the individual nerve fibers is a loose, delicate connective tissue referred to as the *endoneurium*. The connective tissue sheaths serve to support the nerve fibers and their associated blood vessels and lymphatic vessels.

Peripheral nerve fibers may be classified into three groups, depending on their site and speed of conduction:

Group A fibers are 1 to 22 μ in diameter and they conduct at the rate of 5 to 120 meters per second. They are myelinated, somatic, efferent, and afferent fibers.

Group B fibers are 1 to 3 μ in diameter and they conduct at 3 to 15 meters per second. They are myelinated, efferent, preganglionic, autonomic fibers.

Group C fibers are 0.3 to 1.3 μ in diameter and they conduct at 0.5 to 2 meters per second. They are unmyelinated, afferent or efferent, postganglionic, sympathetic fibers.

Spinal Nerves and Spinal Nerve Roots

There are 31 pairs of spinal nerves, which leave the spinal cord and pass through intervertebral

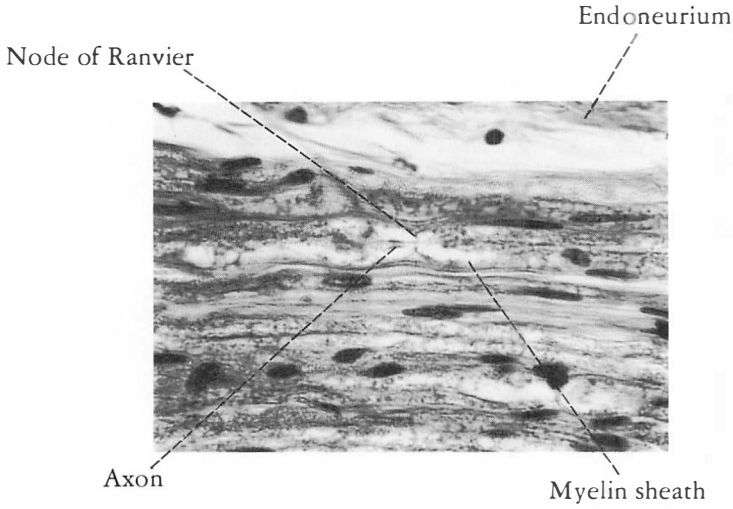


Fig. 4-9. Photomicrograph of a longitudinal section of a peripheral nerve stained with hematoxylin and eosin.

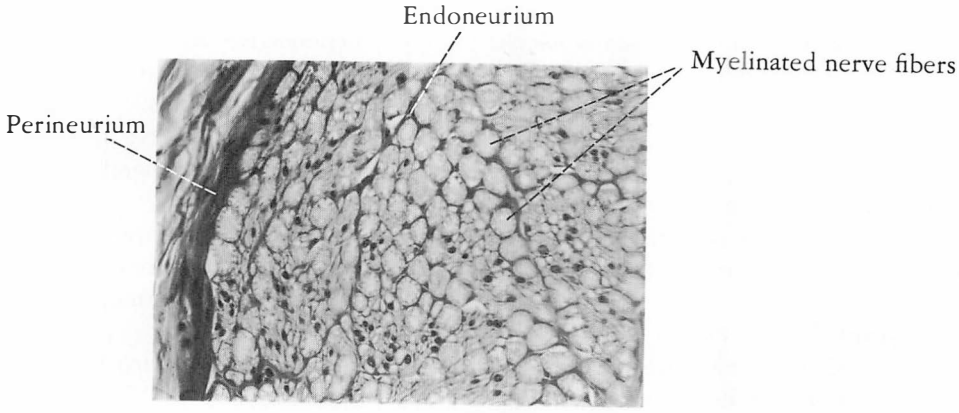


Fig. 4-10. Photomicrograph of a transverse section of a peripheral nerve stained with hematoxylin and eosin.

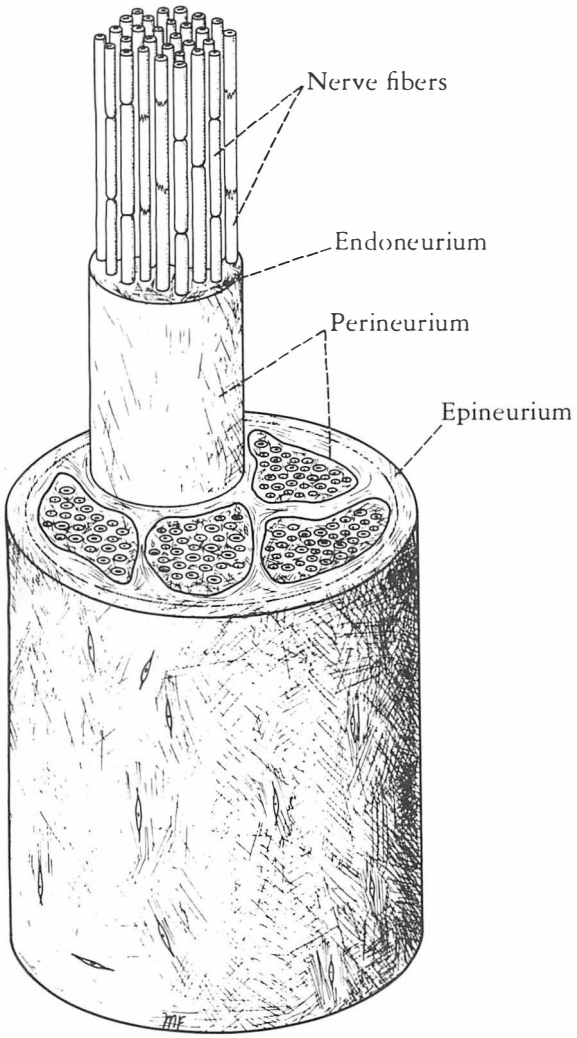


Fig. 4-11. The structure of a peripheral nerve.

foramina in the vertebral column. (For details, see p. 23.) Each spinal nerve is connected to the spinal cord by *two roots*: the *anterior root* and the *posterior root* (Fig. 4-12). The *anterior root* consists of bundles of nerve fibers carrying nerve impulses away from the central nervous system; these nerve fibers are called *efferent* fibers. The *posterior root* consists of bundles of nerve fibers carrying nerve impulses to the central nervous system; these nerve fibers are called *afferent fibers*. Because these fibers are concerned with conveying information to the central nervous system, they are called *sensory fibers*. The cell bodies of these nerve fibers are situated in a swelling on the posterior root called the *posterior root ganglion*.

Cranial Nerves

There are 12 pairs of cranial nerves (Fig. 4-12), which leave the brain and pass through foramina in the skull. Some of these nerves are composed entirely of afferent nerve fibers bringing sensations to the brain (olfactory, optic, vestibulo-cochlear), others are composed entirely of efferent fibers (oculomotor, trochlear, abducent, accessory, hypoglossal), while the remainder possess both afferent and efferent fibers (trigeminal, facial, glossopharyngeal, and vagus). The cranial nerves are described in detail on page 26.

Sensory Ganglia

The sensory ganglia of the posterior spinal nerve roots and of the trunks of the trigeminal, facial, glossopharyngeal, and vagal cranial nerves have the same structure. Each ganglion is surrounded by a layer of connective tissue that is continuous with the epineurium and perineurium of the peripheral nerve. The neurons are unipolar, possessing cell bodies that are rounded or oval in shape (Fig. 4-13). The cell bodies tend to be aggregated and separated by bundles of nerve fibers. A single nonmyelinated process leaves each cell body and after a convoluted course bifurcates at a T-junction into peripheral and central branches. The former axon terminates in a series of dendrites in a peripheral sensory ending, and the latter axon enters the central nervous system. The nerve impulse, on reaching the T-junction, passes directly from the peripheral axon to the central axon, thus bypassing the nerve cell body.

Each nerve cell body is closely surrounded by a layer of flattened cells called *capsular cells* or *satellite cells* (Fig. 4-13). The capsular cells are similar in structure to Schwann cells and are continuous with these cells as they envelop the peripheral and central processes of each neuron.

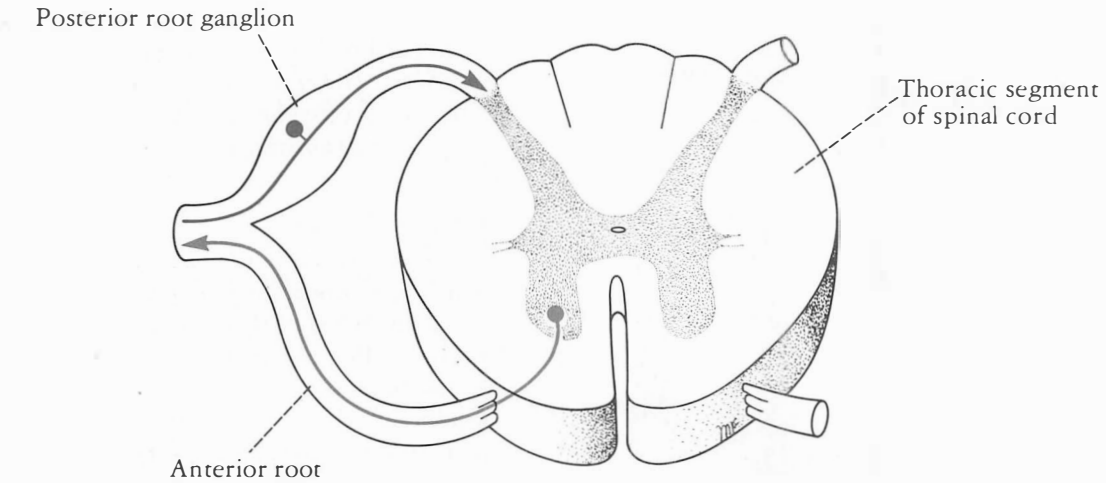


Fig. 4-12. A. Transverse section of the thoracic region of the spinal cord, showing the formation of a spinal nerve from the union of an anterior and a posterior nerve root.
B. Transverse section of the pons showing the sensory and motor roots of the trigeminal nerve.

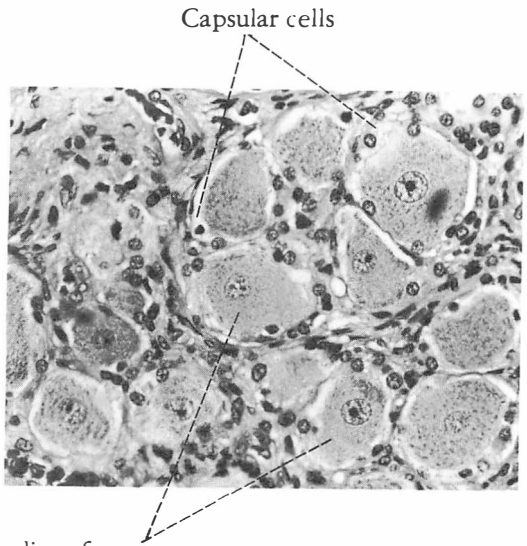


Fig. 4-13. Photomicrograph of longitudinal section of posterior root ganglion of spinal nerve. Stained with hematoxylin and eosin.

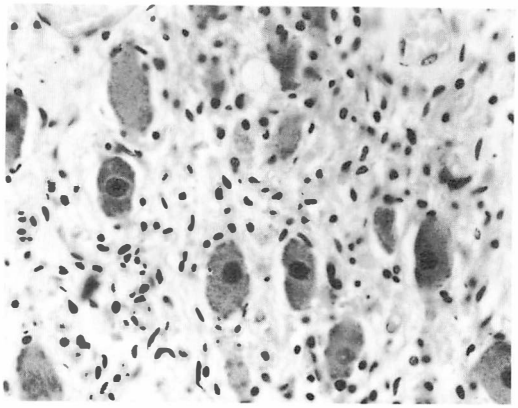


Fig. 4-14. Photomicrograph of longitudinal section of ganglion of the sympathetic trunk. Stained with hematoxylin and eosin.

Autonomic Ganglia

The autonomic ganglia are situated at a distance from the central nervous system. They are found in the sympathetic trunks, in prevertebral autonomic plexuses—for example, in the cardiac, celiac, and mesenteric plexuses—and as terminal ganglia in or close to viscera. Each ganglion is surrounded by a layer of connective tissue that is continuous with the epineurium and perineurium of the peripheral nerve. The neurons are multipolar and possess cell bodies that are irregular in shape (Fig. 4-14). The dendrites of the neurons make synaptic connections with the axons of preganglionic neurons. The axons of the neurons are of small diameter (C fibers) and unmyelinated, and they pass to viscera, blood vessels, and sweat glands.

Each nerve cell body is closely surrounded by a layer of flattened cells called *capsular cells* or *satellite cells*. The capsular cells, like those of sensory ganglia, are similar in structure to Schwann cells and are continuous with them as they envelop the peripheral and central processes of each neuron.

Peripheral Nerve Plexuses

As has been stated previously, peripheral nerves are composed of bundles of nerve fibers. In their course, peripheral nerves sometimes divide into branches that join neighboring peripheral nerves. If this should occur frequently, a network of nerves is formed called a *nerve plexus*. It should be emphasized that the formation of a nerve plexus allows individual nerve fibers to pass from one peripheral nerve to another and *in most instances branching of nerve fibers does not take place*. A plexus thus permits a redistribution of the nerve fibers within the different peripheral nerves.

The anterior rami join at the root of the limbs to form complicated nerve plexuses. The cervical and brachial plexuses are at the root of the arms (Fig. 4-15), and the lumbar and sacral plexuses are at the root of the legs. In these instances, the nerve fibers from different segments of the spinal cord are permitted to travel to different parts of the limbs more directly than if they were confined to a single nerve trunk. Similar smaller plexuses exist in the peripheral parts of the autonomic system.

Conduction in Peripheral Nerves

Normally a resting nerve fiber is polarized so that the interior of the fiber is negative to the exterior;

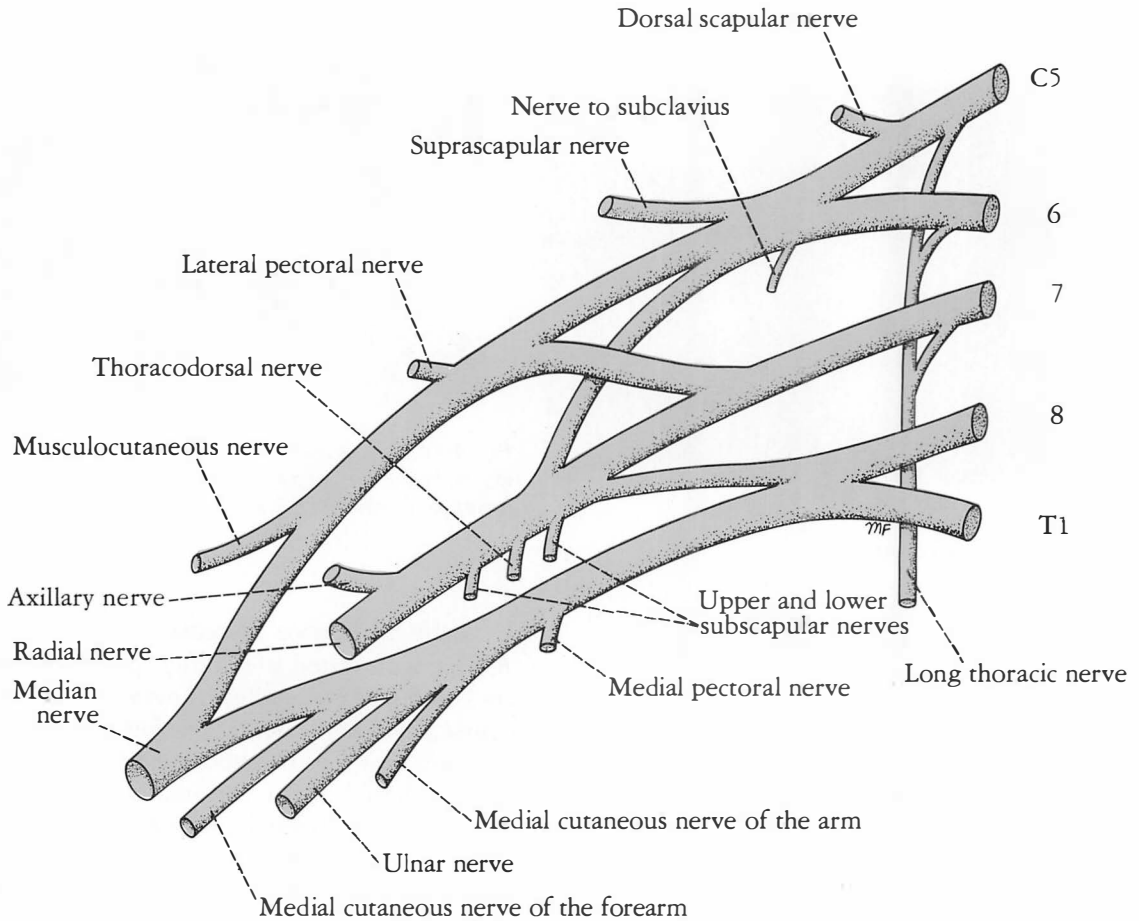


Fig. 4-15. The brachial plexus.

the potential difference across the axolemma is called the *resting membrane potential* (Fig. 4-16).

A nerve impulse is a self-propagating wave of electrical negativity that passes along the surface of the axolemma. In order to initiate this wave of electrical negativity, an adequate stimulus must be applied to the surface of the neuron. This alters the permeability of the membrane to Na^+ ions at the point of stimulation. Now Na^+ ions rapidly enter the axon (Fig. 4-16). The positive ions outside the axolemma quickly decrease to zero. The membrane potential therefore is reduced to zero and is said to be depolarized. A typical resting potential is 80 mV, with the outside of the membrane positive to the inside; the action potential is about 40 mV, with the outside of the membrane negative to the inside.

The negatively charged point on the outside of the axolemma now acts as a stimulus to the adjacent positively charged axolemma and in less than 1 msec the polarity of the adjacent resting potential is reversed (Fig. 4-16). The action potential now has moved along the axolemma from the point originally stimulated to the adjacent point on the membrane. It is in this manner that the action potential travels along the full length of a nerve fiber.

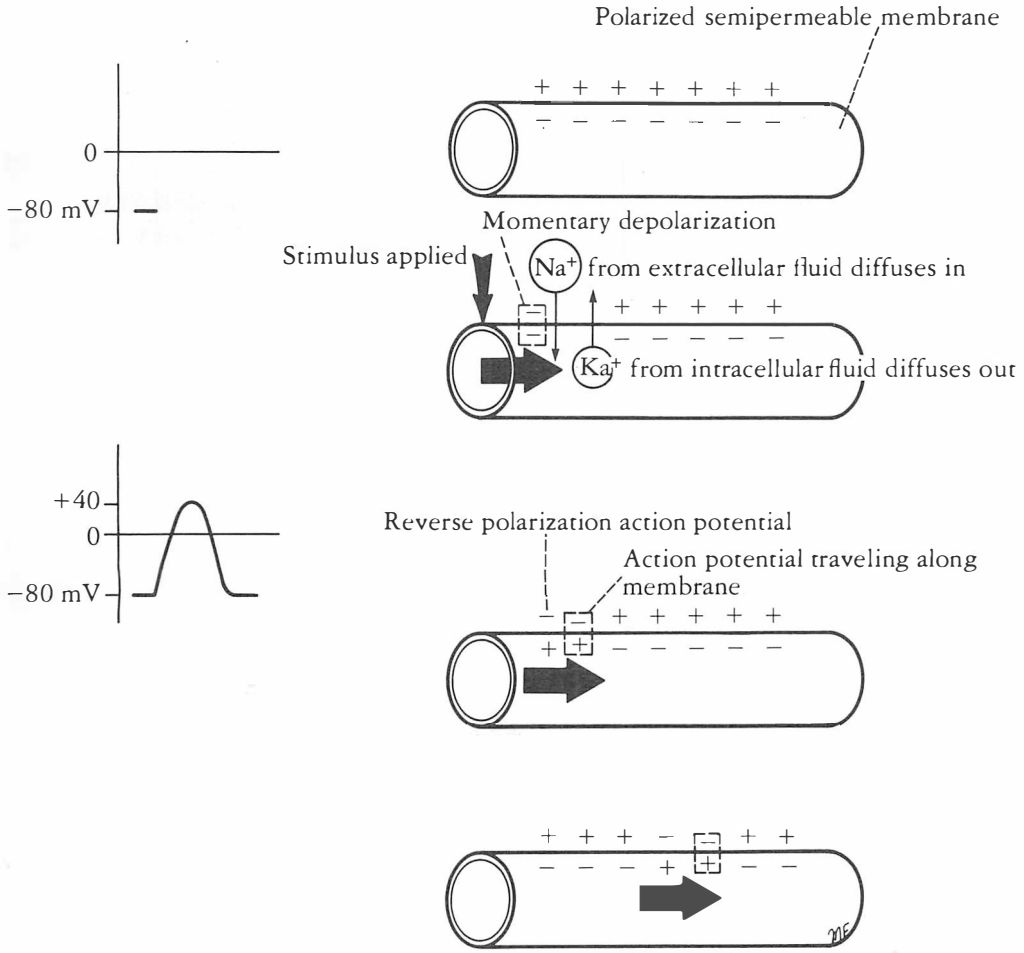


Fig. 4-16. The ionic and electrical changes that occur in a nerve fiber when it is conducting an impulse.

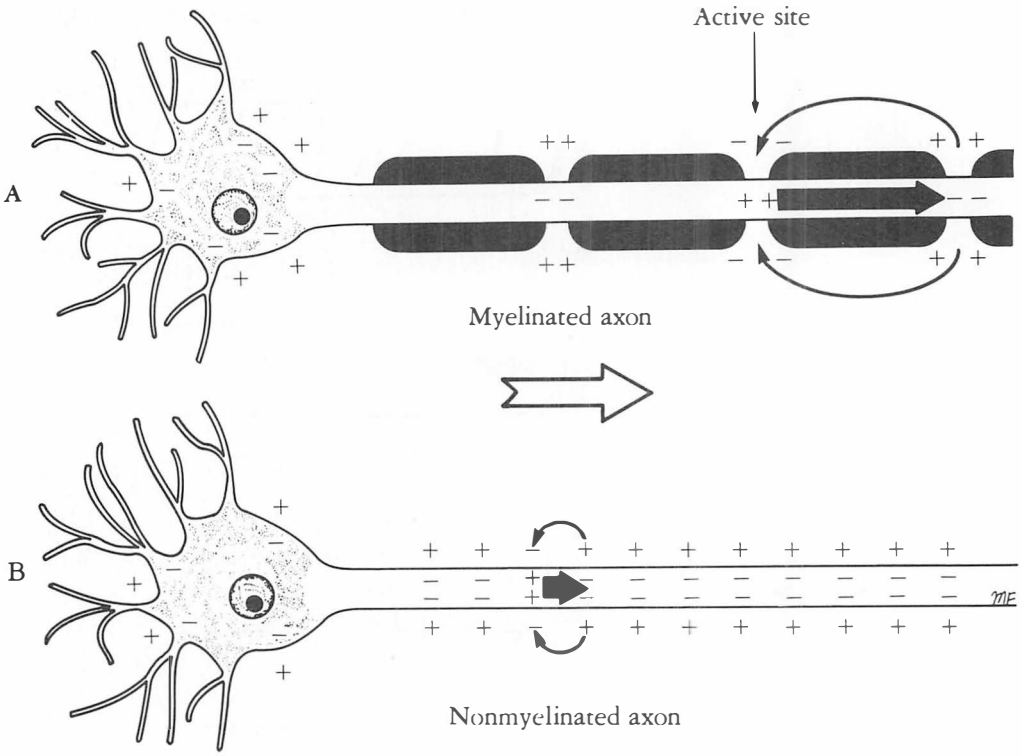


Fig. 4-17. The electrical changes that occur in:
A. A stimulated myelinated axon.
B. A stimulated nonmyelinated axon.

As the action potential moves along the nerve fiber, the entry of the Na^+ ions into the axon ceases and the permeability of the axolemma to K^+ ions increases. Now K^+ ions rapidly diffuse outside the axon (since the concentration is much higher within the axon than outside), so that the original resting membrane potential is restored. The permeability of the axolemma now decreases and the status quo is restored by the active transport of the Na^+ ions out of the axon and the K^+ ions into the axon. The outer surface of the axolemma is again electrically positive compared to the inner surface.

For a short time after the passage of a nerve impulse along a nerve fiber, a second stimulus, however strong, is unable to excite the nerve. This period of time is called the *absolute refractory period.* This period is followed by a further short interval during which the excitability of the nerve gradually returns to normal. This latter period is called the *relative refractory period.* It is clear from this that the refractory period makes a continuous excitatory state of the nerve impossible and it limits the frequency of the impulses.

The *conduction velocity* of a nerve fiber is proportional to the cross-sectional area of the axon, the thicker fibers conducting more rapidly than those of smaller diameter. In the large motor fibers (alpha fibers), the rate is 80–120 meters per second; the smaller sensory fibers have slower conduction rates.

In nonmyelinated fibers, the action potential passes continuously along the axolemma, progressively exciting neighboring areas of membrane (Fig. 4-17). In myelinated fibers, the presence of a myelin sheath serves as an insulator. Con-

sequently, a myelinated nerve fiber can be stimulated only at the nodes of Ranvier. In these fibers the action potential jumps from one node to the next (Fig. 4-17). The action potential at one node sets up a current in the surrounding tissue fluid, which quickly produces depolarization at the next node. This leaping of the action potential from one node to the next is referred to as *saltatory conduction*. This is a more rapid mechanism than is found in nonmyelinated fibers (Fig. 4-17).

Clinical Notes

Response of Neurons to Injury

The survival of the cytoplasm of a neuron depends on its being connected, however indirectly, with the nucleus. The nucleus plays a key role in the synthesis of proteins, which pass into the cell processes and replace proteins that have been metabolized by the cell activity. Thus, the cytoplasm of axons and dendrites will undergo degeneration quickly if these processes are separated from the nerve cell body.

Injury of the Nerve Cell Body

Severe damage of the nerve cell body due to trauma, interference with the blood supply, or disease, may result in degeneration of the entire neuron, including its dendrites and synaptic endings. In the brain and spinal cord, the neuronal debris and the fragments of myelin (if the processes are myelinated) are engulfed and phagocytosed by the microglial cells. Later, the neighboring astrocytes proliferate and replace the neuron with scar tissue.

In the peripheral nervous system, the tissue macrophages remove the debris and the local fibroblasts replace the neuron with scar tissue.

Injury of the Nerve Cell Processes

If the axon of the nerve cell is divided, degenerative changes will take place in (1) the distal segment that is separated from the cell body and (2) a portion of the axon proximal to the injury, and (3) changes may occur in the cell body from which the axon arises.

CHANGES IN THE DISTAL SEGMENT OF THE AXON. The changes spread distally from the site of the lesion (Fig. 4-18) and include its terminations; the process is referred to as *Wallerian degeneration.* By the third or fourth day, the axon is broken into fragments (Fig. 4-18) and the debris is digested by the surrounding Schwann cells and tissue macrophages. The entire axon is destroyed within a week.

Meanwhile, the myelin sheath slowly breaks down and lipid droplets appear within the Schwann cell cytoplasm (Fig. 4-18). Later, the droplets are extruded from the Schwann cell and subsequently are phagocytosed by tissue macrophages. The Schwann cells now begin to proliferate rapidly and become arranged in parallel cords within the persistent basement membrane. The endoneurial sheath and the contained cords of Schwann cells are sometimes referred to as a *band fiber.*

In the central nervous system, degeneration of the axons and myelin sheaths follows a similar course, and the debris is removed by the phagocytic activity of the microglial cells. Little is known about the role of oligodendrocytes in this process.

CHANGES IN THE PROXIMAL SEGMENT OF THE AXON. The changes in the proximal segment of the axon are similar to those that take place in the distal segment (Fig. 4-18) but only extend proximally above the lesion as far as the first node of Ranvier. The proliferating cords of Schwann cells in the peripheral nerves bulge from the cut surfaces of the endoneurial tubes.

CHANGES IN THE NERVE CELL BODY FROM WHICH THE AXON ARISES. The changes that may occur in the cell body following injury to its axon are often referred to as *retrograde degeneration;* the changes that take place in the proximal segment of the axon commonly are included under this heading.

The most characteristic change occurs in the cell

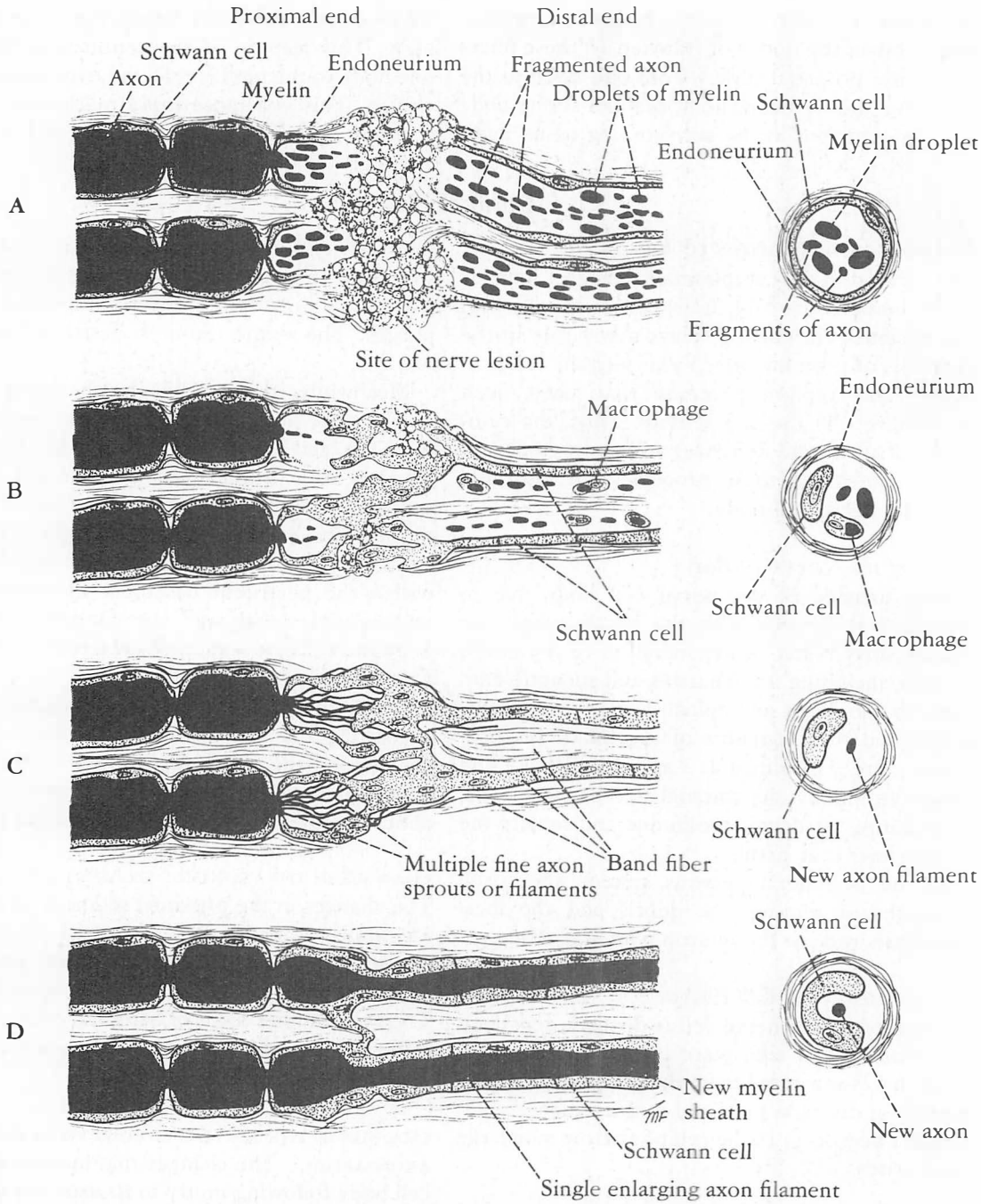
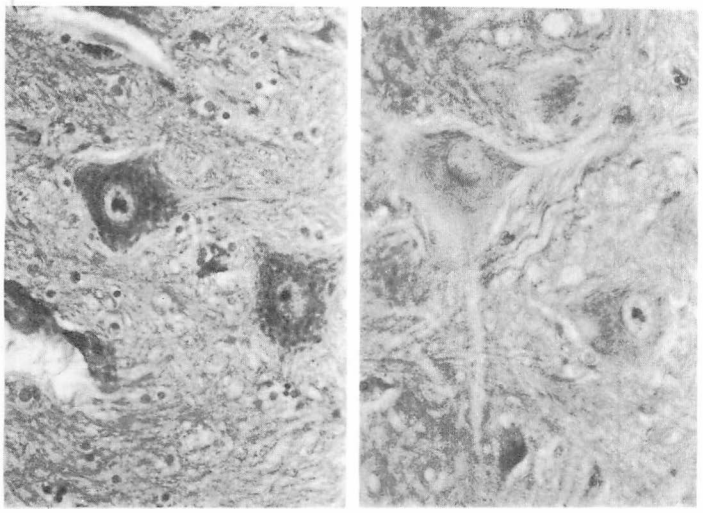


Fig. 4-18. Degeneration and regeneration in a divided nerve.



A B

Fig. 4-19. Photomicrographs of motor neurons of the anterior gray column of the spinal cord.
A. Nissl substance in normal neurons.
B. Following section of anterior roots of spinal nerve, showing chromatolysis.

body within the first two days following injury and reaches its maximum within two weeks. The Nissl material becomes fine, granular (Figs. 4-19 and 4-20), and dispersed throughout the cytoplasm, a process known as *chromatolysis.* Chromatolysis begins near the axon hillock and spreads to all parts of the cell body. In addition, the nucleus moves from its central location toward the periphery of the cell and the cell body swells and becomes rounded (Fig. 4-20). The degree of chromatolysis and the degree of swelling of the cell are greatest when the injury to the axon is close to the cell body. In some neurons, very severe damage to the axon close to the cell body may lead to death of the neuron. On the other hand, damage to the most distal process may lead to little or no detectable change in the cell body. The dispersal of the Nissl material, that is, the cytoplasmic RNA, and the swelling of the cell are caused by cellular edema. The loss of staining affinity of the Nissl material is due to a destruction of the cytoplasmic RNA. The movement of the nucleus away from the center of the cell may be due to the same phenomenon.

Recovery of Neurons Following Injury

In contrast to the rapid onset of retrograde degeneration, the recovery of the nerve cell body and regeneration of its processes may take several months.

Recovery of the Nerve Cell Body

The nucleolus moves to the periphery of the nucleus and polysome clusters reappear in the cytoplasm. This indicates that RNA and protein synthesis is being accelerated in preparation for the reformation of the axon. Thus, there is a reconstitution of the original Nissl structure, a decrease in the swelling of the cell body, and a return of the nucleus to its characteristic central position (see Fig. 4-20).

Regeneration of the Axons

Regrowth of the axon is possible in peripheral nerves and appears to depend on the presence of endoneurial tubes and the special qualities possessed by Schwann cells. In the central nervous system there is an attempt at regeneration of the axons, as evidenced by sprouting of the axons, but

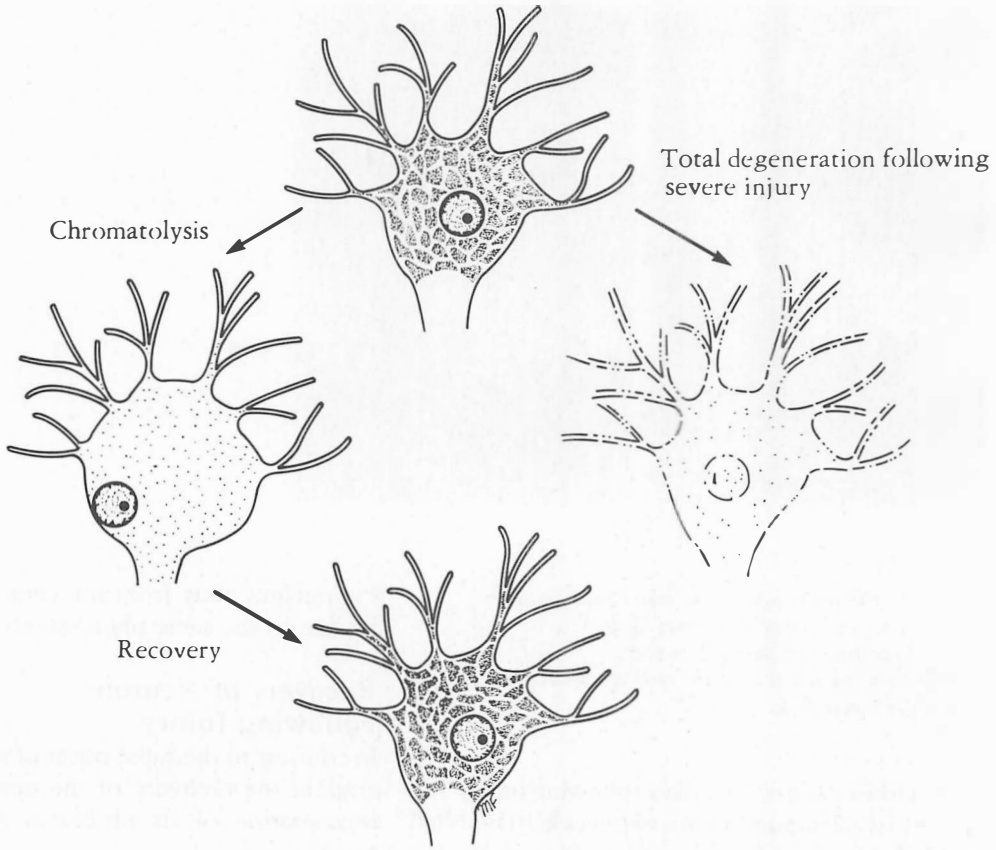


Fig. 4-20. The changes that may take place in a nerve cell body following division of one of its processes.

there is no evidence that restoration of function takes place. The regeneration process is aborted by the absence of endoneurial tubes (which are necessary to guide the regenerating axons), the failure of oligodendrocytes to serve in the same manner as Schwann cells, and the laying down of scar tissue by the active astrocytes.

REGENERATION OF AXONS IN PERIPHERAL NERVES. The satisfactory regeneration of axons and the return of normal function will depend on the following factors:

1. In crush nerve injuries, where the axon is divided or its blood supply has been interfered with but the endoneurial sheaths remain intact, the regenerative process may be very satisfactory.

2. In nerves that have been completely severed there is much less chance of recovery, because the regenerating fibers from the proximal stump may be directed to an incorrect destination in the distal stump, i.e., cutaneous fibers entering incorrect nerve endings or motor nerves supplying incorrect muscles.

3. If the distance between the proximal and distal stumps of the completely severed nerve is greater than a few millimeters, or the gap becomes filled with proliferating fibrous tissue or is simply filled by adjacent muscles that bulge into the gap, then the chances of recovery are very poor. The outgrowing axonal sprouts escape into the surrounding connective tissue and form a tangled mass or ***neuroma***. In these cases, early close surgi-

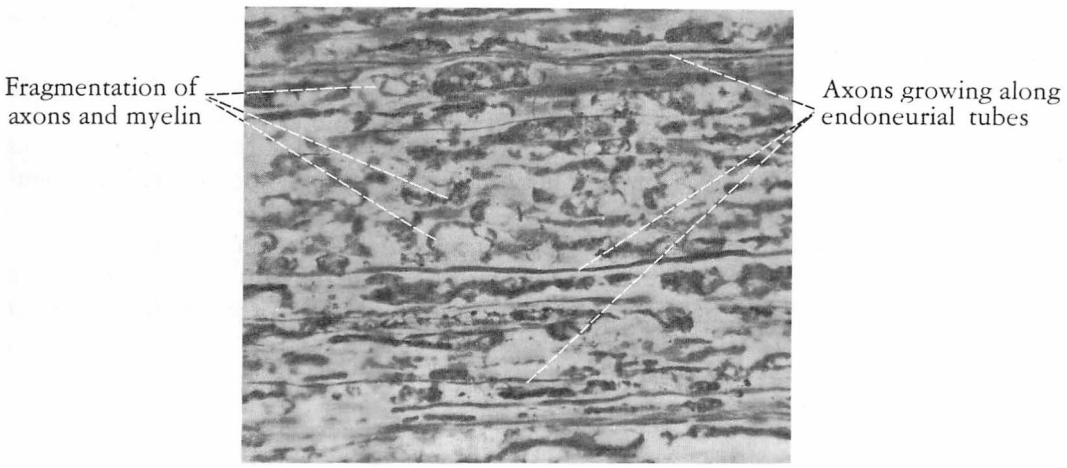


Fig. 4-21. Photomicrograph of longitudinal section of distal stump of sciatic nerve, showing evidence of degeneration and axon regeneration following injury. (Courtesy Dr. M. J. T. Fitzgerald.)

cal approximation of the severed ends, if possible, greatly facilitates the chances of recovery.

4. When mixed nerves (those containing sensory motor and autonomic fibers) are completely severed, the chances of a good recovery are very much less than if the nerve is purely sensory or purely motor. The reason for this is that the regenerating fibers from the proximal stump may be guided to an incorrect destination in the distal stump, e.g., cutaneous fibers may enter motor endoneurial tubes and vice versa.

5. Inadequate physiotherapy to the paralyzed muscles will result in their degenerating before the regenerating motor axons have reached them.

6. The presence of infection at the site of the wound will seriously interfere with the process of regeneration.

If one assumes that the proximal and distal stumps of the severed nerve are in close apposition, the following regenerative processes take place (Fig. 4-18). The Schwann cells, having undergone mitotic division, now fill the space within the basal membrane of the endoneurial tubes of the proximal stump as far proximally as the next node of Ranvier, and in the distal stump as far distally as the end-organs. Where a small gap exists between the proximal and distal stumps, the multiplying Schwann cells form a number of cords to bridge the gap.

Each proximal axon end now gives rise to multiple fine sprouts or filaments with bulbous tips. These filaments, as they grow, advance along the clefts between the Schwann cells and thus cross the interval between the proximal and distal nerve stumps. Many such filaments now enter the proximal end of each endoneurial tube and grow distally in contact with the Schwann cells (Fig. 4-21). It is clear that the filaments from many different axons may enter a single endoneurial tube. However, only one filament persists, the remainder degenerating, and that one filament grows distally to reinnervate a motor or sensory end-organ. While crossing the gap between the severed nerve ends, many filaments fail to enter an endoneurial tube and grow out into the surrounding connective tissue. It is interesting to note that the formation of multiple sprouts or filaments from a single proximal axon greatly in-

creases the chances of a neuron's becoming connected to a sensory or motor ending. It is not known why one filament within a single endoneurial tube should be selected to persist while the remainder degenerate.

Once the axon has reached the end-organ, the adjacent Schwann cells start to lay down a myelin sheath. This process begins at the site of the original lesion and extends in a distal direction. By this means, the nodes of Ranvier and the Schmidt-Lanterman incisures are formed.

Many months may elapse before the axon reaches its appropriate end-organ, depending on the site of the nerve injury. The rate of growth has been estimated to be of the order of 2 to 4 mm daily. If, however, one takes into consideration the almost certain delay incurred by the axons as they cross the site of the injury, an overall regeneration rate of 1.5 mm daily is a useful figure to remember for clinical use. Even if all the difficulties outlined above are overcome and a given neuron reaches the original end-organ, the enlarging axonal filament within the endoneurial tube reaches only about 80 percent of its original diameter. For this reason the conduction velocity will not be as great as the original axon. Moreover, a given motor axon tends to innervate more muscle fibers than formerly, so that the control of muscle is less precise.

Transneuronal Degeneration

The responses of a single neuron to injury have been considered in the previous section. In the central nervous system it is recognized that if one group of neurons is injured then a second group farther along the pathway, serving the same function, may also show degenerative changes. This phenomenon is referred to as *anterograde transneuronal degeneration.* For example, if the axons of the ganglion cells of the retina are severed, not only do the distal ends of the axons that go to the lateral geniculate bodies undergo degeneration, but the neurons in the lateral geniculate bodies with which these axons form synapses also undergo degeneration. In fact, a further set of neurons may be involved in the degenerative process in the visual cortex.

In situations in the central nervous system where multiple neurons synapse with a single distal neuron, injury to one of the proximal neurons is not followed by degeneration of the distal neuron.

Experimentation on animals with artificial lesions of the central nervous system has shown that *retrograde transneuronal degeneration* may occur in certain situations.

Neuronal Degeneration Associated with Senescence

Many neurons degenerate and disappear during fetal development. This process is believed to be due to their failure to establish adequate functional connections. During postnatal life further gradual neuronal degeneration continues to occur. It has been estimated that in old age an individual may have lost up to 20 percent of the original number of neurons. This may account to some extent for the loss of efficiency of the nervous system that is associated with senescence.

Atrophy of Voluntary Muscle and Other End-Organs Following Nerve Degeneration

Voluntary muscle undergoes degenerative changes following motor nerve section. First, there is an altered response to acetylcholine, followed by gradual wasting of the sarcoplasm, and finally loss of the fibrils and striations. Eventually the muscle completely atrophies and is replaced by fibrous tissue. Reinnervation of the muscle halts its degeneration, and if the muscle atrophy is not too advanced, normal structure and function return.

Further, if the motor nerve that supplies fast white voluntary muscle fibers is exchanged for a motor nerve that supplies slow red voluntary muscle fibers, the muscle fibers change their structural and functional properties to comply with the new type of innervation. This experimental result

strongly suggests that not only are voluntary muscle cells dependent on the presence of intact motor nerves, but that the nerve has some trophic influence on the muscle and even determines the type of muscle that it innervates.

Another end-organ, the taste bud, also depends on the integrity of the sensory nerve. If the nerve is sectioned, the taste bud quickly atrophies. Once the sensory nerve regenerates into the mucous membrane new taste buds develop.

Traumatic Lesions of Peripheral Nerves

Seddon (1944) describes three clinical types of nerve injury:

Neuropraxia is the term applied to a transient block. The paralysis is incomplete, recovery is rapid and complete, and there is no microscopic evidence of nerve degeneration. Pressure is the most common cause. It is essentially a temporary interference in function.

Axonotmesis is the term applied to a nerve lesion in which the axons are damaged but the surrounding connective tissue sheaths remain more or less intact. Wallerian degeneration occurs peripherally. Functional recovery is more rapid and more complete than after complete section of the nerve trunk. The explanation of the more rapid and more complete recovery is that the nerve fibers, although severely damaged, for the most part retain their normal anatomical relationships to one another, owing to the preservation of the connective tissue sheaths. Crush injuries, traction, and compression are the most common causes.

Neurotmesis is the term applied to complete section of the nerve trunk.

Symptoms and Signs of Neurotmesis

Motor Changes

The muscles innervated show flaccid paralysis and rapidly waste. The reflexes in which the muscles participate are lost. The paralyzed muscle ceases to respond to faradic stimulation after 4 to 7 days. After 10 days the muscle responds only sluggishly to galvanic stimulation and the strength of the current must be greater than that required for normal innervated muscle. This altered response of muscle to electrical stimulation is known as the *reaction of degeneration.*

Sensory Changes

There is a total loss of cutaneous sensibility over the area exclusively supplied by the nerve. This area is surrounded by a zone of partial sensory loss where adjacent sensory nerves overlap. The skin area in which the sensation of light touch is lost is much greater than the area lost to pin prick.

Vasomotor, Sudomotor, and Trophic Changes

Section of a peripheral nerve results in the interruption of postganglionic sympathetic fibers traveling in the nerve. As a result of the loss of vascular control, the skin area at first becomes red and hot. Later, the affected area becomes blue and colder than normal, especially in cold weather. Because of the loss of sudomotor control, the sweat glands cease to produce sweat and the skin becomes dry and scaly. Nail growth becomes retarded as the direct result of poor peripheral circulation. If a large area of the body is denervated, as, for example, in cases in which the sciatic nerve is sectioned, the bones undergo decalcification as a result of disuse and loss of circulatory control.

Symptoms and Signs of Recovery Following Neurotmesis

Assuming that the divided peripheral nerve has been carefully sutured together, a physician must be aware of the symptoms and signs of recovery and their sequence.

Motor Recovery

Regenerating motor axons grow at an average rate of about 1.5 mm per day. The proximal muscles will recover first and the distal muscles later. The muscles may respond to faradic stimulation before voluntary control returns.

Sensory Recovery

Sensory recovery occurs before there is a return of voluntary movement. The part of the nerve distal to the section becomes very sensitive to mechanical stimulation once the regenerating sensory axons have entered the distal segment. Simple tapping of the distal nerve trunk gives rise to a tingling sensation in the area of cutaneous distribution of the nerve. This sign is referred to as *Tinel's sign.* Recovery of deep cutaneous sensibility, i.e., pain caused by deep pressure, is the first sign of recovery. This is followed by the return of poorly localized, superficial cutaneous pain. Vasomotor control also returns at about this time. Later, the sensations of heat and cold are recovered. Light touch and tactile discrimination are the last sensations to return, many months later, and they are often incomplete.

Some Basic Clinical Principles Underlying Peripheral Nerve Injuries

In open, dirty wounds, where there is a high risk of infection, the sectioned nerve should be ignored and the wound infection should be treated. Later, when the wound has healed satisfactorily, the nerve should be explored and the cut ends of the nerve sutured together.

If a patient visits a physician with a healed wound and there is no evidence of nerve recovery, the treatment should be conservative. Sufficient time should be allowed to elapse to enable the regenerating nerve fibers to reach the proximal muscles. If recovery fails to occur, the nerve should be explored surgically.

In those cases where connective tissue, bone fragments, or muscles come to lie between the cut ends of a severed nerve, the nerve should be explored and, if possible, the cut ends of the nerve should be brought together and sutured.

The nutrition of the paralyzed muscles must be maintained with adequate physiotherapy. Warm baths, massage, and warm clothing help to maintain adequate circulation.

The paralyzed muscles must not be allowed to be stretched by antagonist muscles or by gravity. Moreover, excessive shortening of the paralyzed muscles leads to contracture of these muscles.

The joints must be kept mobile by daily passive movements of all joints. Failure to do this results in the formation of adhesions and consequent limitation of movement.

Once voluntary movement returns in the most proximal muscles, the physiotherapist can assist the patient in performing active exercises. This not only aids in the return of a normal circulation to the affected part but helps the patient to learn once again the complicated muscular performance of skilled movements.

Nerve Transplantation

Nerve grafts have been used with some success to restore muscle tone in facial nerve palsy. In mixed nerve injuries nerve grafts have succeeded only in restoring some sensory function and slight muscle activity. The presence of two suture lines and the increased possibility of mixing the nerve fibers is probably the reason for the lack of success with nerve grafts. In most nerve injuries, even when the gap between the proximal and distal ends is as great as 10 cm, it is usually possible to mobilize the nerve or alter its position in relation to joints so that the proximal and distal ends may be brought together without undue tension; the ends are then sutured together.

Tumors of Peripheral Nerves

A peripheral nerve consists essentially of nerve fibers (axons), each of which is associated with Schwann cells; the fibers are either myelinated or nonmyelinated. The nerve fibers are arranged in parallel bundles and are surrounded by connective tissue sheaths.

A *benign fibroma* or a *malignant sarcoma* may arise in the connective tissue of the nerve and does not differ from similar tumors elsewhere. *Neurolemmomas* are believed to arise from Schwann cells. They arise from any nerve trunk, cranial or spinal, and in any part of its course. Primary tumors of the axons are very rare.

Blood Vessels, Lymphatics, and Endoneurial Spaces within Peripheral Nerves

Peripheral nerves receive branches from arteries in the regions through which they pass. The anastomotic network that exists within a nerve is considerable and local ischemia does not occur should a single artery be obstructed.

A plexus of lymphatic vessels lies within the epineurial connective tissues and this drains to regional lymph nodes.

As the result of experiments in which dyes have been injected into peripheral nerves, spaces have been demonstrated between individual nerve fibers. There seems to be little doubt that these endoneurial spaces provide a potential route for the ascent of tetanus toxin to the spinal cord.

Action of Local Anesthetics on Nerve Conduction

Local anesthetics are drugs that block nerve conduction when applied locally to a nerve fiber in suitable concentrations. Their site of action is the axolemma and they interfere with the transient increase in permeability of the axolemma to Na^+ ions. They also reduce the permeability of the axolemma in the resting axon to Na^+, K^+, and other ions. The sensitivity of nerve fibers to local anesthetics is related to the size of the nerve fibers. Small nerve fibers are more susceptible than are large fibers; small fibers are also slower to recover.

Cocaine has been used clinically to block nerve conduction. Unfortunately, it is a strong stimulant of the cerebral cortex and readily causes addiction. *Procaine* is a synthetic compound that is widely used as a local anesthetic agent.

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 477.

1. A surgeon meticulously examined the patient, who had a stab wound in the arm, for evidence that the median nerve had been severed. The median nerve is a peripheral nerve. What is the structure of a peripheral nerve?

2. A 20-year-old male patient was seen in the emergency room following an automobile accident. A diagnosis of fracture dislocation of the fourth thoracic vertebra was made, with injury to the spinal cord as a complication. It was decided to perform a laminectomy because it was felt that the spinal cord should be decompressed to avoid permanent injury to the tracts of the cord. What is a nerve tract in the spinal cord? How does this differ in structure from a peripheral nerve?

3. Define the following terms: (a) *myelin sheath,* (b) *node of Ranvier,* (c) *Schmidt-Lanterman incisure,* (d) *satellite cells in sensory and autonomic ganglia.*

4. Multiple sclerosis is an example of a demyelinating disease of the nervous system. There are many other examples of diseases of the nervous system that have the common pathological feature of destruction of the myelin sheaths of nerve fibers. How does myelination normally take place in (a) peripheral nerves and (b) central nervous system tracts? When does myelination of nerves normally take place?

5. The myelin sheath is said to be formed in the peripheral nervous system by the rotation of the Schwann cells on the axon so that the plasma membrane becomes wrapped around and around the axon in a spiral. In the central nervous system, do the oligodendrocytes rotate on the axons in a similar manner to form myelin?

6. Give three examples of nonmyelinated nerve fibers in the nervous system.

7. During a neurobiology lecture the professor repeatedly referred to such terms as *Type A and B nerve fibers, resting membrane potential, absolute refractory period, conduction velocity, and saltatory conduction.* Can you define each of these terms?

8. A 26-year-old man was involved in a street brawl and received a knife wound of the right arm

at about the midhumeral level. Physical examination revealed that the median nerve had been sectioned. Motor loss consisted of paralysis of the pronator muscles of the forearm and the long flexor muscles of the wrist and fingers, with the exception of the flexor carpi ulnaris and the medial half of flexor digitorum profundus. As a result of this, the right forearm was kept in the supine position; wrist flexion was weak and was accompanied by adduction. The latter deviation was due to the paralysis of the flexor carpi radialis, and the strength of both the flexor carpi ulnaris and the medial half of flexor digitorum profundus. No flexion was possible at the interphalangeal joints of the index and middle fingers, although weak flexion of the metacarpophalangeal joints of these fingers was attempted by the interossei. When the patient was asked to make a fist of his right hand, the index and, to a lesser extent, the middle finger tended to remain straight, while the ring and little fingers flexed. The latter two fingers were weakened by the loss of the flexor digitorum superficialis. Flexion of the terminal phalanx of the thumb was lost due to paralysis of the flexor pollicis longus. The muscles of the thenar eminence were paralyzed and the right thumb was laterally rotated and adducted.

Sensory loss of the skin of the right hand involved the lateral half of the palm and the palmar aspect of the lateral three and one-half fingers. There was also sensory loss of the skin of the distal parts of the dorsal surfaces of the lateral three and one-half fingers.

The skin areas involved in sensory loss became warmer and drier than normal, evidencing vasomotor changes. This was due to arteriolar dilatation and absence of sweating resulting from loss of sympathetic nervous control.

(a) Describe the changes that would take place in the median nerve proximal and distal to the site of section. (b) How would you treat this case? (c) What will be the first signs and symptoms to indicate that the nerve is regenerating adequately? (d) Which function will return first, sensory or muscular? (e) About how long will it take for the nerve to regenerate and reach its end-organs?

9. What is meant by the following terms: (a) *Wallerian degeneration,* (b) *band fiber,* (c) *transneuronal degeneration?*

10. A 45-year-old woman with a right-sided facial palsy was examined. When questioned, she said that 3 years previously she had had a severe pain near the right ear accompanied by a weakness of the right side of the face and some degree of loss of taste sensation. A diagnosis of Bell's palsy was made. What is Bell's palsy? How would you treat this patient?

11. A family with five small children moved into an old house. Six months later the mother noticed that her 1-year-old son was becoming somnolent and quiet. Whereas previously he was very active and crawled around the house, he now tended to lie about the floor, uninterested in his toys. He had also stopped eating well and was very constipated. The mother decided to take the child to a pediatrician when, as she put it, he suddenly "threw a fit." On examination, there was an absence of positive physical signs except for a dark line between the gums and teeth. When questioned further, the mother admitted that the child liked sucking the peeling paint on the railings outside the house. A diagnosis of chronic lead poisoning was made. This was confirmed by finding that the blood lead level was in excess of 50μg per 100 ml. What effect does lead have on the nervous system?

12. A 54-year-old man suddenly developed severe pain down both legs in the distribution of the sciatic nerve. He also noticed numbness in the buttocks and perineum and recently noted that he could not feel the passage of urine or feces. A diagnosis was made of central protrusion posteriorly of the intervertebral disc between the third and fourth lumbar vertebrae. From the symptoms it was clear that the cauda equina was being pressed upon. Does regeneration occur in the cauda equina?

13. By what anatomical route is tetanus toxin believed to pass from a wound to the central nervous system?

14. Name two tumors that occur in peripheral nerves. In each case state the cell of origin of the tumor.

15. Following an automobile accident, a 35-year-old man was seen in the emergency room with fractures of the fifth and sixth ribs on the right side. In order to relieve the pain and discomfort experienced by the patient when breathing, the surgeon decided to block the right fifth and sixth intercostal nerves by injecting a local anesthetic, xylocaine, around the nerve trunks. What is the effect of the local anesthetic agent on the nerve fibers? Are the large diameter or the small diameter nerve fibers more susceptible to the action of the drug?

16. A 65-year-old man, on returning home from a party, found that he could not climb the stairs. He had consumed several large whiskeys and seemed to have lost control of his legs. He sat down on a chair in the hallway and was soon in a deep, stuporous sleep, with his right arm suspended over the back of the chair. Next morning he awoke with a severe headache and loss of the use of his right arm and hand. During examination in the emergency room, it was found that the patient had severe paralysis involving branches of the medial cord of the brachial plexus and the radial nerve. The diagnosis was neuropraxia, which occurred as the result of the pressure of the back of the chair on the involved nerves. What is neuropraxia? How does this differ from axonotmesis and neurotmesis? What is the prognosis in this patient? How would you treat this case?

17. A well-known politician was attending a rally when a youth suddenly stepped forward and shot him in the back. During examination in the emergency room, it was found that the bullet had entered the back obliquely and was lodged in the vertebral canal at the level of the eighth thoracic vertebra. The patient could not feel anything below this level and was paralyzed from the waist downward. At the operation a laminectomy was performed and the bullet was removed. Considerable damage to the spinal cord was noted. What changes take place in the spinal cord when the nerve fibers are damaged? Does regeneration take place in the central nervous system?

Additional Reading

Aguayo, A. J., Peyronnard, J. M., and Bray, G. M. A quantitative ultrastructural study of regeneration from isolated proximal stumps of transected unmyelinated nerves. *J. Neuropathol. Exp. Neurol.* 32:256, 1973.

Barnes, R. Peripheral nerve injuries. *Spec. Rep. Ser. Med. Res. Coun.* (Lond.) 282:156, 1954.

Bloom, W., and Fawcett, D. W. *A Textbook of Histology* (10th ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders 1975.

Bradley, W. G. *Disorders of Peripheral Nerves.* New York and London: Oxford University Press, 1974.

Buchthal, F., and Rosenfalck, A. Evoked action potentials and conduction velocity in human sensory nerves. *Brain Res. 3:* (special issue), 1966.

Cragg, B. G., and Thomas, P. K. The conduction velocity of regenerated peripheral nerve fibers. *J. Physiol.* (Lond.) 171:164, 1964.

Davis, D. R. Some factors affecting the results of treatment of peripheral nerve injuries. *Lancet.* 1:877, 1949.

Dyck, P. J., and Hopkins, A. P. Electron microscopic observations on degeneration and regeneration of unmyelinated fibers. *Brain.* 95:223, 1972.

Kaeser, H. E. Nerve Conduction Velocity Measurements. In P. J. Vinken and G. W. Bruyn (Eds.), *Handbook of Clinical Neurology,* Vol. 2. Amsterdam: Elsevier, 1970.

Kramer, W. Tumors of Nerves. In P. J. Vinkeny and G. W. Bruyn (Eds.), *Handbook of Clinical Neurology,* Vol. 8. Amsterdam: Elsevier, 1970.

Peters, A., Palay, S. L., and Webster, H., Def. *The Fine Structure of the Nervous System: The Neurons and Supporting Cells.* Philadelphia: Saunders, 1976.

Ruch, T. C., Patton, H. D. Woodbury, J. W., and Towe, A. L. *Neurophysiology* (2nd ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders, 1966.

Seddon, H. J. Three types of nerve injury. *Brain.* 66:237, 1944.

Seddon, H. J. *Surgical Disorders of Peripheral Nerves.* Edinburgh and London: Longman, 1972.

Seddon, H. J., Medawar, P. B., and Smith, H. Rate of regeneration of peripheral nerves in man. *J. Physiol.* (Lond.) 102:191, 1943.

Snell, R. S. Changes in the Histochemical Appearances of Cholinesterase in a Mixed Peripheral Nerve Following Nerve Section and Compression Injury. *Br. J. Exp. Pathol.* 38:34, 1957.

Sunderland, S. *Nerves and Nerve Injuries.* Edinburgh and London: Longman, 1968.

Thomas, P. K., and King, R. H. M. The degeneration of unmyelinated axons following nerve section: An ultrastructural study. *J. Neurocytol.* 3:497, 1974.

Trojaborg, W. Rate of recovery in motor and sensory fibers of the radial nerve: Clinical and electrophysiological aspects. *J. Neurol. Neurosurg. Psychiatry* 33:625, 1970.

Weiss, L., and Greep, R. O. *Histology* (4th ed.) New York: McGraw-Hill, 1977.

5
Receptor and Effector Endings

Receptor Endings

An individual receives impressions from the outside world by special sensory nerve endings or receptors. The eyes are sensitive to changes of light intensity and wavelength, the ears to sound waves, and the olfactory and taste nerve endings to changes in chemical concentrations. The cutaneous sense organs are sensitive to touch, pressure, and temperature changes. All these receptors, which respond to stimuli from the external environment, are referred to as *exteroreceptors.*

The *interoreceptors* respond to stimuli that arise from within the body. They include the *proprioceptors,* which are stimulated by movements and changes of position of the body; the *visceroreceptors* in the walls of the viscera, which respond to stretching or excessive muscular contraction; the *chemoreceptors,* such as the carotid and aortic bodies, which are sensitive to changes in oxygen tension within the blood and assist in the control of respiration; and the *baroreceptors,* which respond to changes in blood pressure and are important in the regulation of blood flow.

Unfortunately, this general classification does not enable one always to correlate sensitivity to certain stimuli with particular microscopic structures. Moreover, the appreciation of normal sensation may not result from the stimulation of certain specific nerve endings but, rather, from the delivery to the brain of large numbers of sensory impulses in a particular pattern. For convenience, and until more is known about the genesis of subjective sensations, the sensory endings will be classified, on a structural basis, into nonencapsulated and encapsulated receptors.

Nonencapsulated Receptors

Free Nerve Endings

Free nerve endings are widely distributed throughout the body (Fig. 5-1). They are found in epithelia of the skin, cornea, and alimentary tract, and in connective tissues, including the dermis, fascia, ligaments, joint capsules, tendons, periosteum, perichondrium, Haversian systems of bone, tympanic membrane, and dental pulp, and they are also present in muscle.

The afferent nerve fibers from free nerve endings are either myelinated or nonmyelinated, and they are always of small diameter. The terminal endings are devoid of a myelin sheath and there are no Schwann cells covering their tips.

Although free nerve endings are commonly thought to be pain receptors, since they are the only receptors found in the cornea and the pulp of teeth, areas of the body where pain is so often experienced, there is little scientific evidence to support this claim. Touch sensation also has been ascribed to these endings.

MERKEL'S DISCS. Merkel's discs are found in hairless skin—for example, the fingertips (Figs. 5-2 and 5-3)—and in hair follicles. Essentially, they consist of free nerve endings derived from a dermal plexus of nerves, which pass into the epidermis and terminate as disc-shaped expansions. Each expansion lies in contact with a single enlarged dark-staining epithelial cell in the deeper part of the epidermis, called the *tactile cell.* These corpuscles are presumed to be sensitive to touch.

NERVE ENDINGS RELATED TO HAIR FOLLICLES. All hair follicles are innervated from a plexus of nerves situated in the dermis, and myelinated nerve fibers reach the follicles from different directions (Figs. 5-4 and 5-5). The nerve fibers divide into branches below the duct of the sebaceous gland and unmyelinated terminals wind around the follicle in its outer connective tissue sheath. Many naked axon filaments terminate among the cells of the outer root sheath. The hair

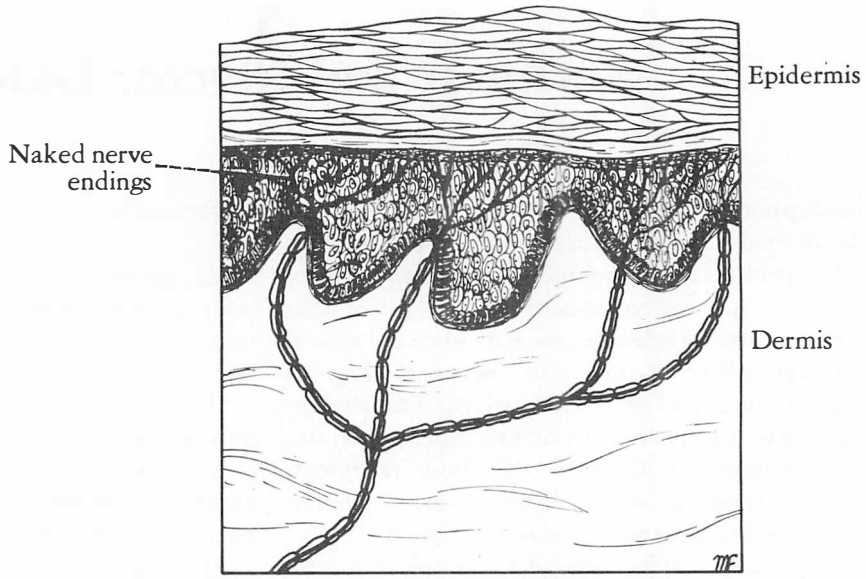


Fig. 5-1. Free nerve endings in the skin. Note that the nerve fibers in the epidermis are naked.

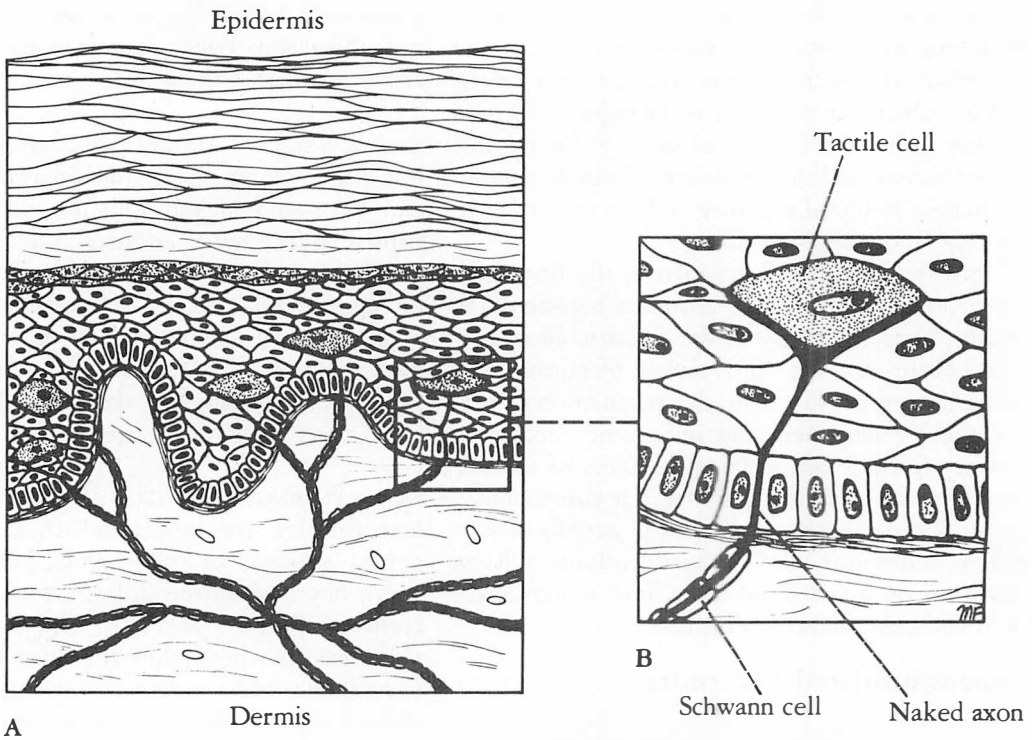


Fig. 5-2. A. Merkel's discs in the skin.
B. A Merkel's disc showing expanded ending of axon with dark-staining tactile cell.

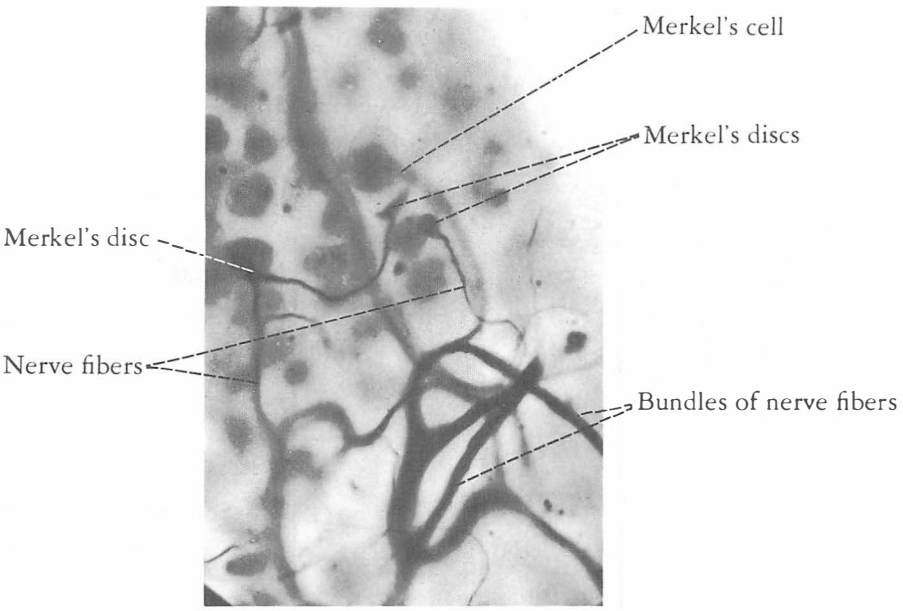


Fig. 5-3. Photomicrograph of digital skin showing fine nerve terminals ending in Merkel's discs. Stained by silver method. (Courtesy of Dr. N. Cauna.)

acts as a lever and any slight movement of the free end of the hair readily stimulates the axon filaments in the hair follicle. These nerve endings are extremely sensitive to touch and they are, therefore, the main tactile organs in hairy skin.

Encapsulated Receptors

These receptors show wide variations in size and shape, but they have one common feature: the termination of the nerve is covered by a capsule.

Meissner's Corpuscles

Meissner's corpuscles, which are found in the dermal papillae of the skin (Figs. 5-6 and 5-7), are most numerous in the skin of the fingers, the palmar surface of the hand, and the plantar surface of the foot. Many also are present in the skin of the nipple and the external genitalia. The corpuscle is ovoid or cylindrical in shape, measuring about 100μ long and 50μ wide. Each consists of a stack of flattened cells arranged transversely across the long axis of the corpuscle, enclosed by a capsule that is continuous with the endoneurium of the nerves that enter it. A few myelinated nerve fibers enter the deep end of the corpuscle; the majority lose their myelin sheath, decrease in size, and ramify among the epithelial cells. The nerve fibers never lose their covering of Schwann cells.

Meissner's corpuscles are believed to be extremely sensitive to touch and enable an individual to distinguish between two pointed structures when they are placed close together on the skin (two-point tactile discrimination). There is a considerable reduction in their number between birth and old age.

Pacinian Corpuscles

These corpuscles (Figs. 5-8 and 5-9) are widely distributed throughout the body and are abundant in the dermis, subcutaneous tissue, ligaments, joint capsules, pleura, peritoneum, nipples, and external genitalia. Each corpuscle is ovoid in shape, measuring up to 4.5mm long and 1 to 2mm wide and it consists of a cylindrical core sur-

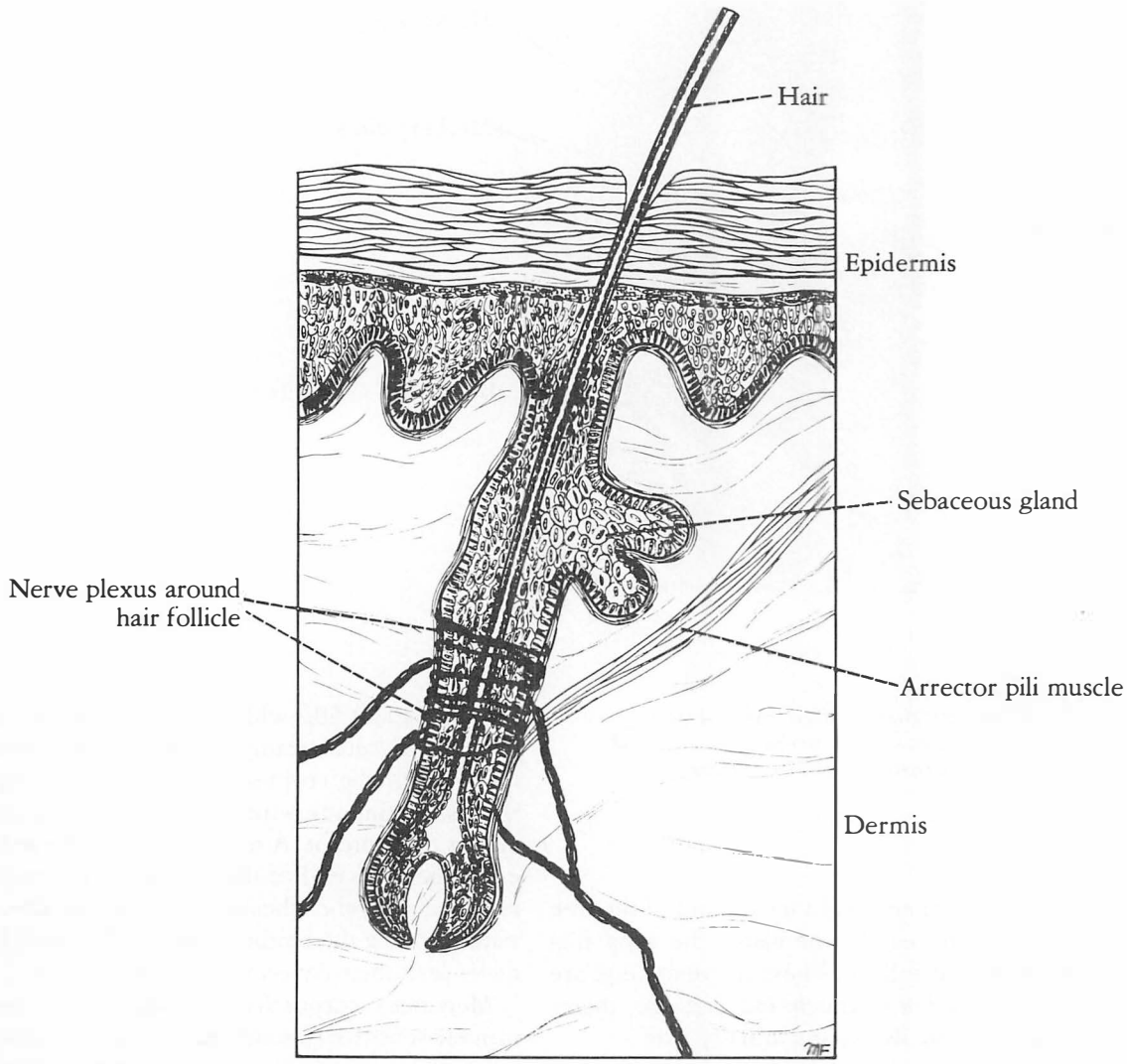


Fig. 5-4. Nerve endings around hair follicle.

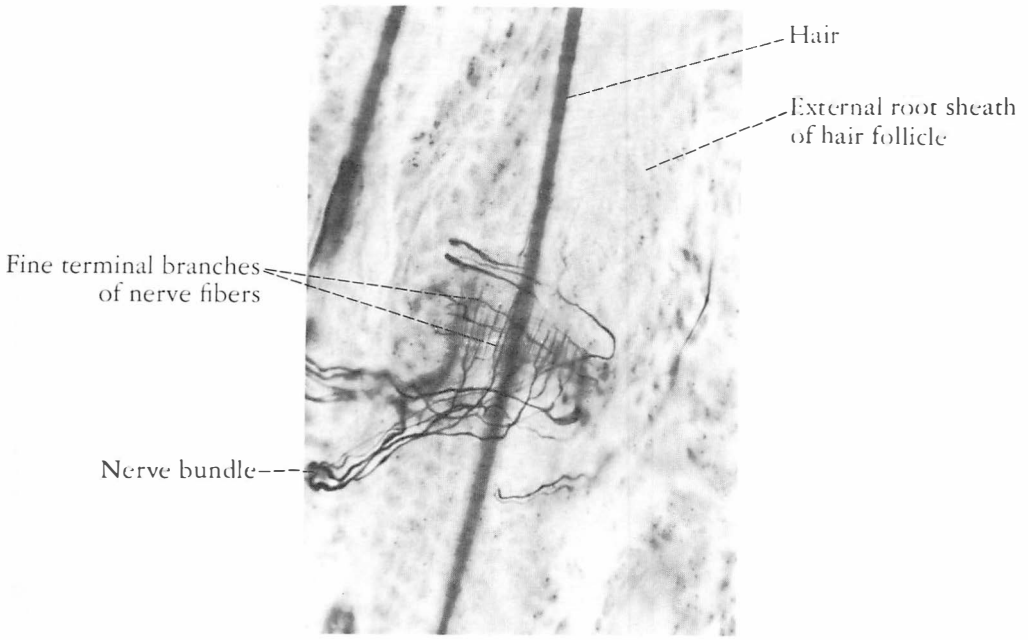


Fig. 5-5. Photomicrograph of nerve endings around hair follicle. Stained by silver method. (Courtesy of Dr. M. J. T. Fitzgerald.)

rounded by numerous concentric lamellae. On section, the corpuscle resembles a sliced onion.

A large myelinated nerve fiber enters one pole of the corpuscle. First, it loses its myelin sheath and then its Schwann cell covering. The naked axon then passes through the center of the core and terminates in an expanded end. The naked axon contains numerous mitochondria. The nerve axon within the core is surrounded by about 60 closely packed lamellae formed of flattened cells. The core is surrounded by 30 or more concentric lamellae of flattened cells, which form the bulk of the corpuscle. Between adjacent lamellae are amorphous material and collagen fibers. On the outer surface of the corpuscle is a condensation of connective tissue forming the capsule, which is continuous with the endoneurium.

Pacinian corpuscles are sensitive to deformation and therefore respond to pressure or tension; they are probably also sensitive to vibration.

Bulbous Corpuscles of Krause

Bulbous corpuscles of Krause are found mainly in mucocutaneous regions—for example, the lip and external genitalia (Fig. 5-10). The corpuscle is spheroidal in shape and measures about 50μ in diameter. It possesses a capsule that is continuous with the endoneurium. A single myelinated nerve fiber, on entering the corpuscle, loses its myelin and expands. Covered by its Schwann cells, the nerve fiber then branches, or becomes coiled, or runs a straight course to terminate as an expanded end. The detailed structure of these corpuscles is subject to considerable variation. The precise function of these receptors is not known.

Neuromuscular Spindles

Neuromuscular spindles, or muscular spindles (Figs. 5-11 and 5-12), are found in skeletal muscle and are most numerous toward the tendinous insertion of the muscle. They provide sensory information that is used by the central nervous sys-

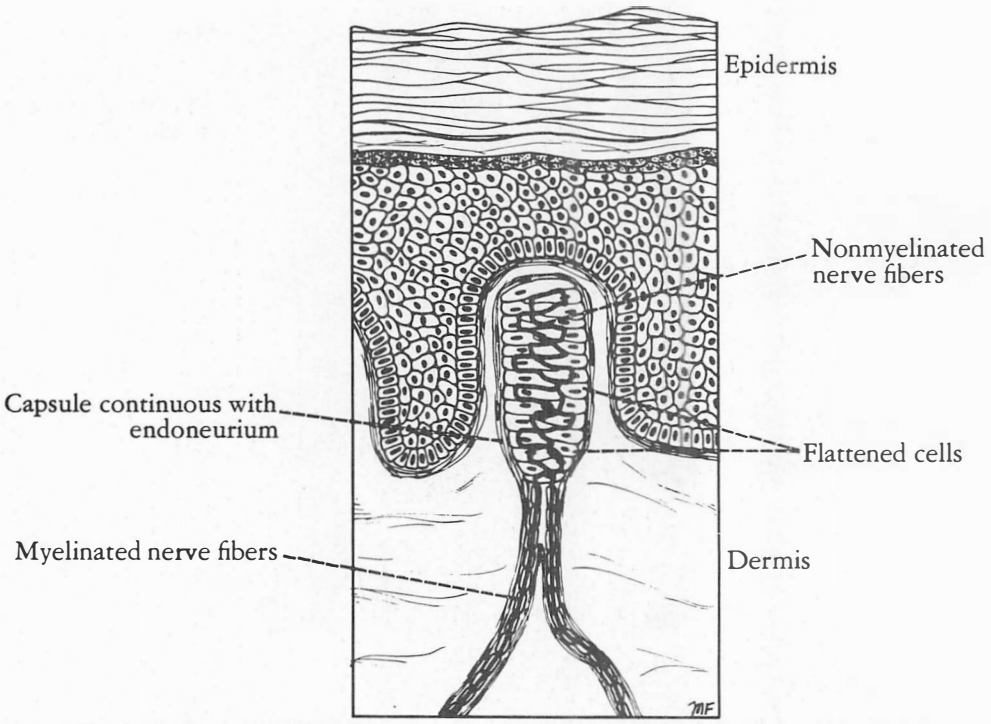


Fig. 5-6. Meissner's corpuscle in skin.

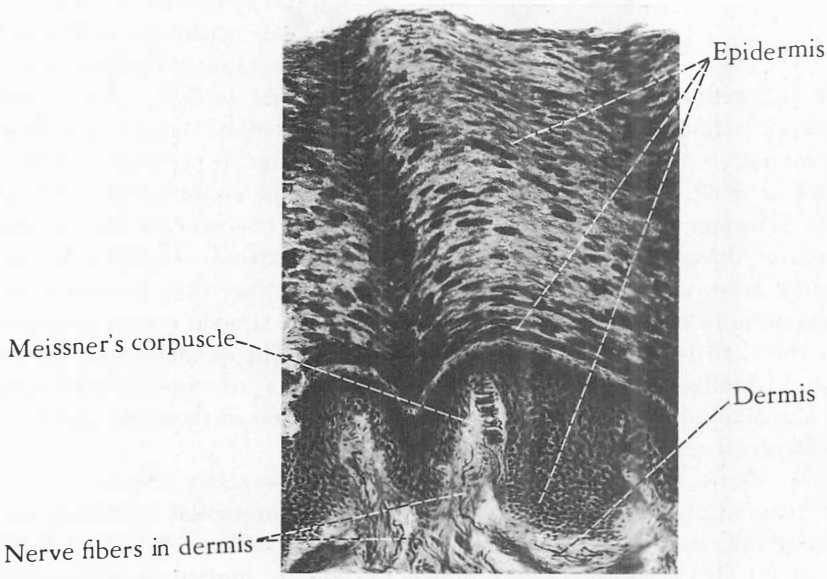


Fig. 5-7. Photomicrograph of Meissner's corpuscle of skin. (Courtesy of Dr. N. Cauna.)

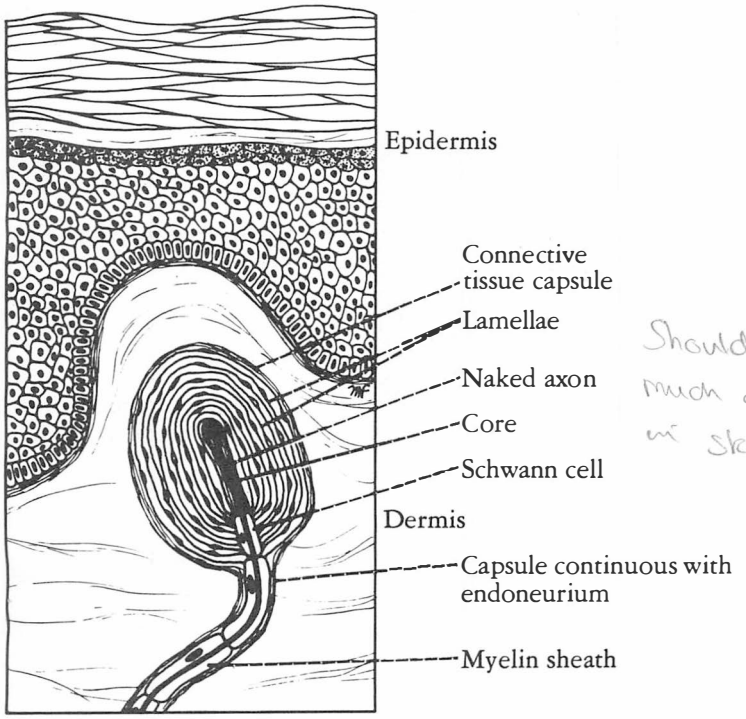


Fig. 5-8. Pacinian corpuscle in skin.

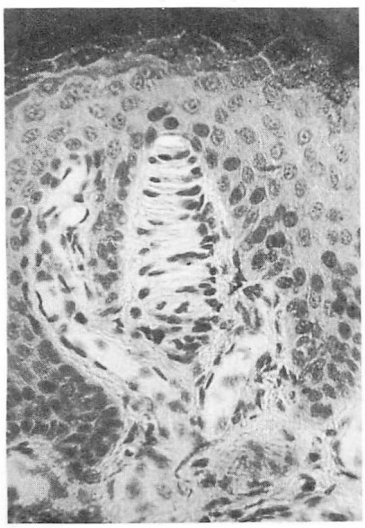


Fig. 5-9. Photomicrograph of Pacinian corpuscle in skin.

tem in the control of muscle activity. Each spindle measures about 1 to 4mm in length and is surrounded by a fusiform capsule of connective tissue. Within the capsule are 6 to 14 slender *intrafusal muscle fibers;* the ordinary muscle fibers situated outside the spindles are referred to as *extrafusal fibers.* The intrafusal fibers of the spindles are of two types: the *nuclear bag* and *nuclear chain* fibers. The nuclear bag fibers are recognized by the presence of numerous nuclei in the equatorial region, which consequently is expanded; also, cross-striations are absent in this region. In the nuclear chain fibers, the nuclei form a single longitudinal row in the center of each fiber at the equatorial region. The nuclear bag fibers are larger in diameter than the nuclear chain fibers, and they extend beyond the capsule at each end to be attached to the endomysium of the extrafusal fibers.

There are two types of sensory innervation of muscle spindles: the annulospiral and the flower spray. The *annulospiral endings* are situated at the equator of the intrafusal fibers. As the large

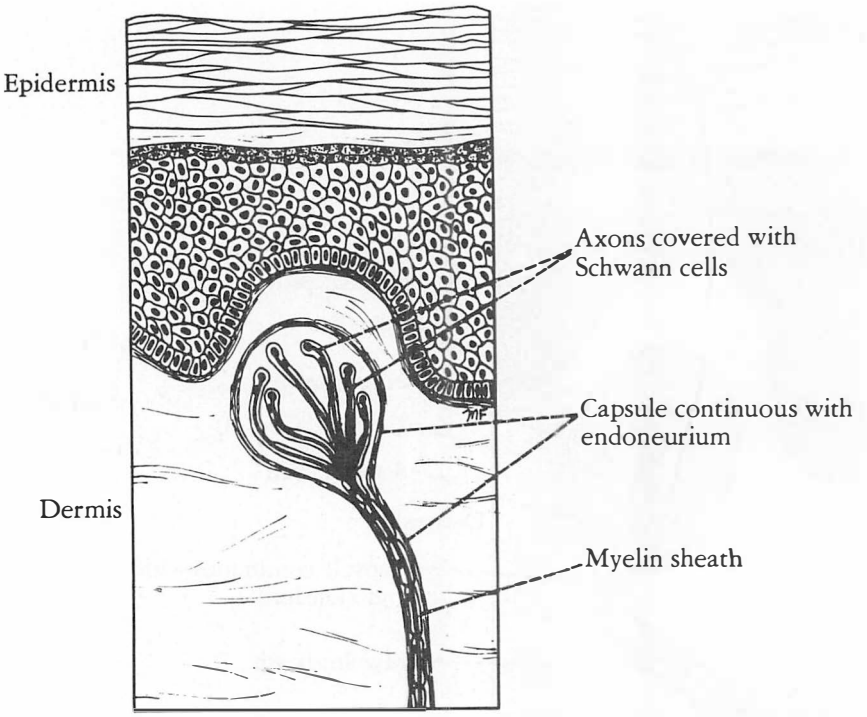


Fig. 5-10. Bulbous corpuscle of Krause.

myelinated nerve fiber pierces the capsule, it loses its myelin sheath and the naked axon winds spirally around the nuclear bag or chain portions of the intrafusal fibers.

The *flower spray endings* are situated mainly on the nuclear chain fibers some distance away from the equatorial region. A slightly smaller myelinated nerve fiber than that for the annulospiral ending pierces the capsule and loses its myelin sheath and the naked axon branches terminally and ends as varicosities.

Stretching of the intrafusal fibers results in stimulation of the annulospiral and flower spray endings, and nerve impulses pass to the spinal cord in the afferent neurons.

Motor innervation of the intrafusal fibers is provided by fine gamma motor fibers. The nerves terminate in small motor end-plates situated at both ends of the intrafusal fibers. It is generally believed that both ends of the fibers, which are cross-striated, are contractile, whereas the equatorial region, which is without cross-striations, is noncontractile. The ordinary extrafusal fibers of the remainder of the muscle receive their innervation in the usual way from large alpha-size axons.

The neuromuscular spindle plays a very important role in controlling the activities of voluntary muscle. Slight stretching of a muscle results in stretching of the intrafusal fibers, the annulospiral and the flower spray endings are stimulated, and impulses reach the spinal cord through the afferent neurons. The large alpha motor neurons, which are situated in the anterior gray horns of the spinal cord, are stimulated and nerve impulses reach the extrafusal fibers, which form the main muscle mass, and the muscle contracts. This simple reflex action is based on the integrity of a two-neuron reflex arc, an afferent neuron, and an efferent neuron.

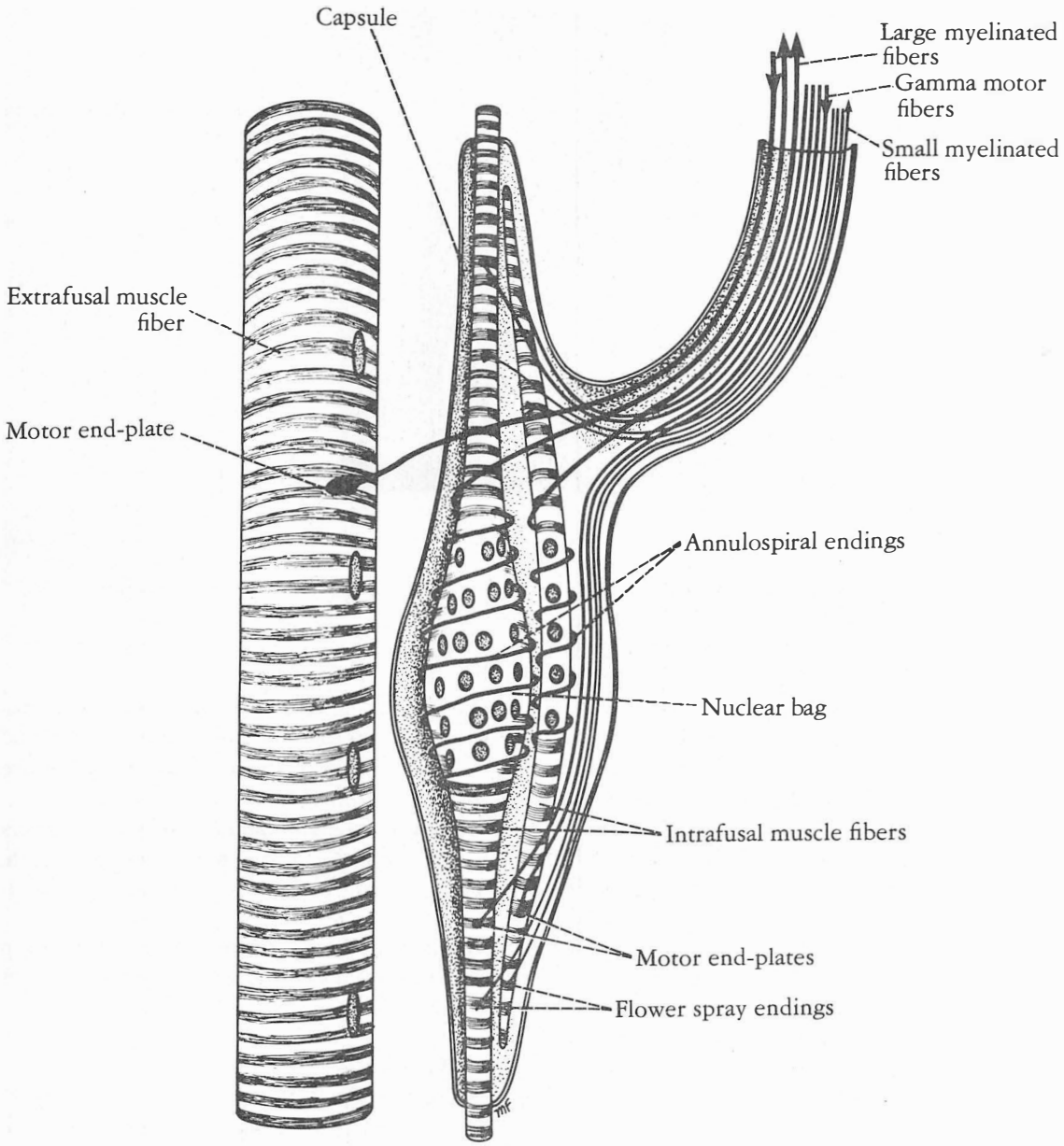


Fig. 5-11. A neuromuscular spindle showing two types of intrafusal fibers: the nuclear bag and nuclear chain fibers.

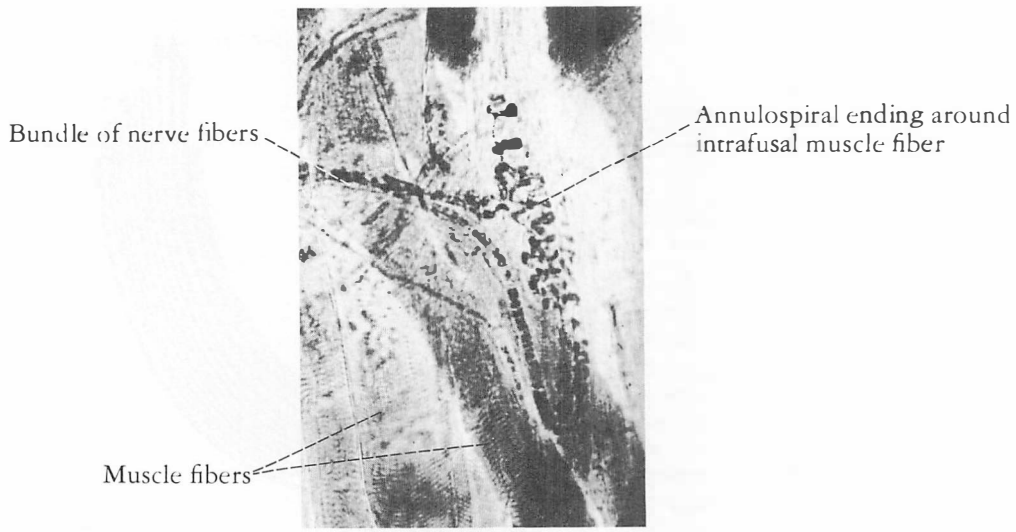


Fig. 5-12. Photomicrograph of a neuromuscular spindle.

In the brain and spinal cord there are centers, referred to as the extrapyramidal motor system (see p. 335), that give rise to tracts that ultimately synapse with gamma motor neurons in the spinal cord. By this means, the extrapyramidal system can greatly influence voluntary muscle activity. The gamma efferent motor fibers, by causing the polar regions of the intrafusal muscle fibers to contract, bring about shortening of the intrafusal fibers, and if the contraction is continued, stretching of the equatorial region occurs, with consequent stimulation of the annulospiral and flower spray endings. This in turn will initiate the reflex contraction of the extrafusal fibers described previously. It is believed that the nuclear bag fibers are associated with position and velocity of contraction, while the nuclear chain fibers are concerned with static slow contractions of voluntary muscle.

Neurotendinous Spindles

Neurotendinous spindles, or tendon spindles (Fig. 5-13), are most numerous near the junctions of tendons with muscles. They provide the central nervous system with information concerning tension within a tendon and are, therefore, associated with the control of muscle tone. Each spindle consists of a fibrous capsule that contains a small bundle of loosely arranged tendon fibers (*intrafusal fibers*). The tendon cells are larger and more numerous than those seen elsewhere in the tendon. One or more myelinated sensory nerve fibers pierce the capsule, lose their myelin sheath, branch freely, and terminate in club-shaped endings.

Stretching of the tendon results in deformation of the nerve endings by the adjacent tendon fibers within the spindle.

Effector Endings

Innervation of Skeletal Muscle

Skeletal muscle is innervated by one or more nerves. In the limbs and head and neck the innervation is usually single but in the large muscles of the abdominal wall the innervation is multiple, the latter muscles having retained their embryonic segmental nerve supply.

The nerve supply and blood supply to a muscle enter it at a more or less constant position called the *neurovascular hilus*. The nerve to a muscle

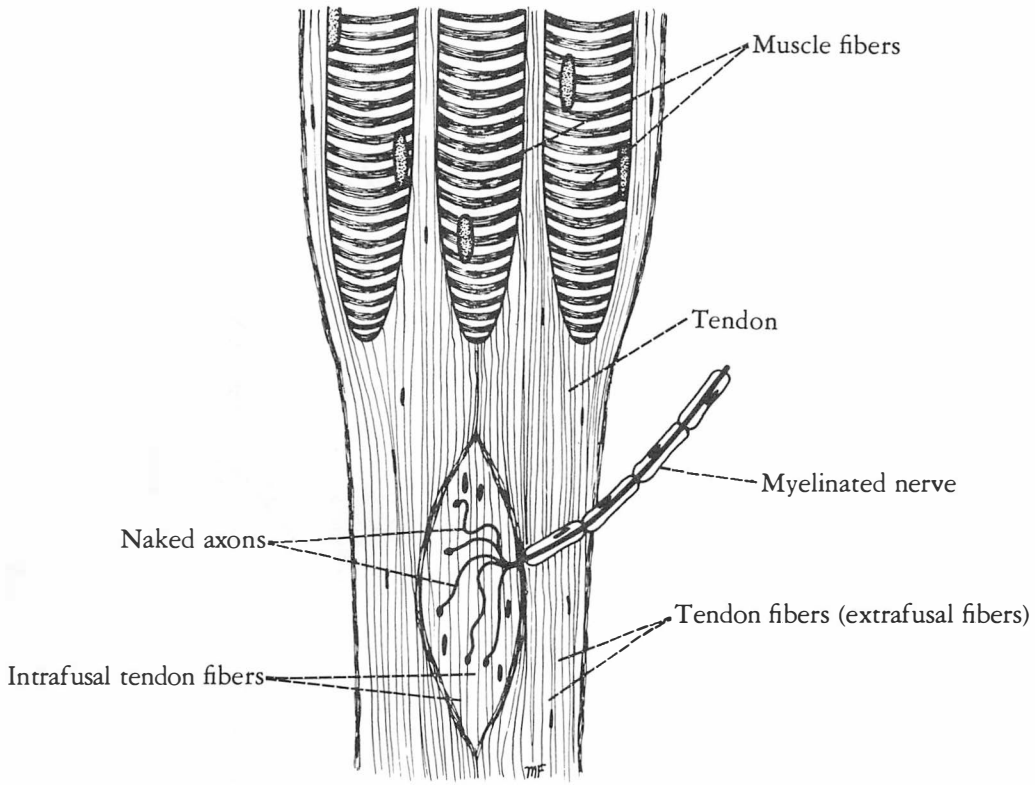


Fig. 5-13. A neurotendinous spindle.

contains motor and sensory fibers. The motor fibers are of three types: (1) large alpha myelinated fibers,* (2) small gamma myelinated fibers, and (3) fine unmyelinated fibers. The large myelinated axons of the alpha anterior horn cells supply the extrafusal fibers that form the main mass of the muscle. The small gamma myelinated fibers supply the intrafusal fibers of the neuromuscular spindles. The fine unmyelinated fibers are postganglionic autonomic efferents that supply the smooth muscle in the walls of blood vessels.

The sensory fibers are of three main types: (1) the myelinated fibers, which originate in the annulospiral and flower spray endings of the neuromuscular spindles, (2) the myelinated fibers, which originate in the neurotendinous spindles, and (3) the myelinated and nonmyelinated fibers, which originate from a variety of sensory endings in the connective tissue of the muscle.

MOTOR UNIT. The motor unit may be defined as the single alpha motor neuron and the muscle fibers that it innervates (Fig. 5-14). The muscle fibers of a single motor unit are widely scattered throughout the muscle. Where fine, precise muscle control is required, such as in the extraocular muscles or the small muscles of the hand, the motor units possess only a few muscle fibers. However, in a large limb muscle, such as the gluteus maximus, where precise control is not necessary, a single motor nerve may innervate many hundreds of muscle fibers.

*Class A fibers (see p. 95) are subdivided into alpha, beta, and gamma fibers. The alpha fibers are large and fast-conducting, and measure about 17μ in diameter. The gamma fibers are the smallest fibers, measure about 2 to 10μ in diameter, and are slow-conducting.

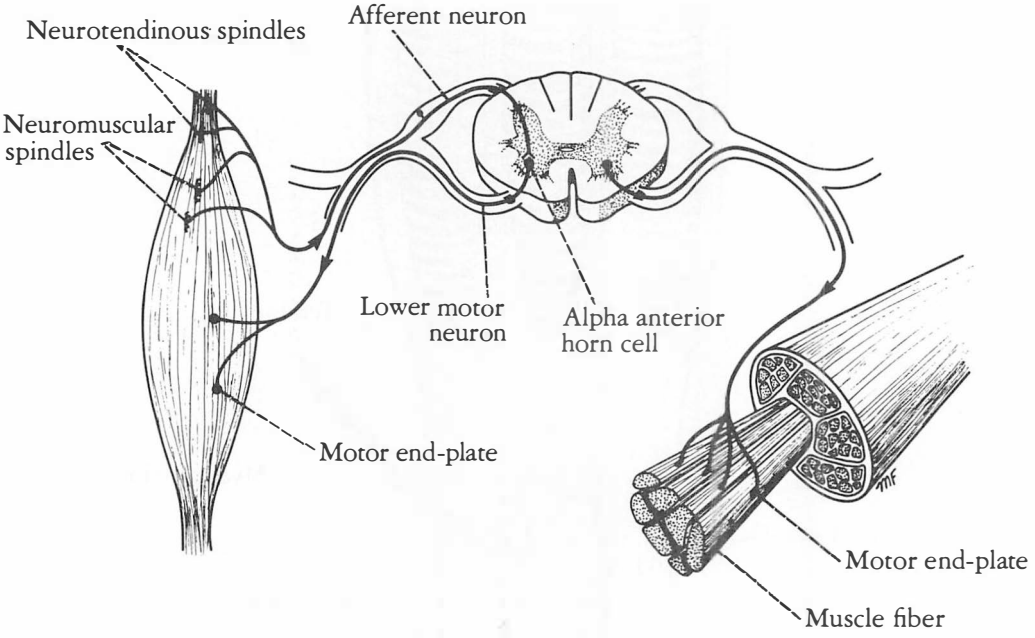


Fig. 5-14. Simple reflex arc consisting of afferent neuron arising from neuromuscular spindles and neurotendinous spindles and efferent lower motor neuron whose cell body is an alpha anterior horn cell within the spinal cord. Note that the efferent neuron terminates on a muscle fiber at a motor end-plate.

NEUROMUSCULAR JUNCTIONS IN SKELETAL MUSCLE. As each large alpha myelinated fiber enters a skeletal muscle it branches many times. The number of branches depends on the size of the motor unit. (See above.) A single branch then terminates on a muscle fiber at a site referred to as a *neuromuscular junction* or *motor end-plate* (Figs. 5-15 and 5-16). The great majority of muscle fibers are innervated by just one motor end-plate. On reaching the muscle fiber, the nerve loses its myelin sheath and breaks up into a number of subsidiary branches. Each branch ends as a naked axon and constitutes the *neural element* of the motor end-plate (Fig. 5-17). The axon is expanded slightly and contains numerous mitochondria and vesicles (approximately 450Å in diameter), but neurofilaments are not seen. At the site of the motor end-plate the surface of the muscle fiber is elevated slightly to form the *muscular element* of the plate, often referred to as the *sole plate* (see Fig. 5-15). The elevation is due to the local accumulation of granular sarcoplasm beneath the sarcolemma and the presence of numerous nuclei and mitochondria.

The expanded naked axon lies in a trough of folded or fluted sarcolemma. The trough or surface groove may branch many times, each branch containing a division of the axon. It is important to realize that the axons are truly naked; the Schwann cells merely serve as a cap or roof to the trough and never project into the trough. The floor of the trough is formed of sarcolemma, which is thrown into numerous folds, called *junctional folds;* these serve to increase the surface area of the sarcolemma that lie close to the naked axon (Fig. 5-18). The plasma membrane of the axon (the axolemma or presynaptic membrane) is separated, by a space about 200–500Å wide, from the plasma membrane of the muscle fiber (the sarcolemma or postsynaptic membrane). This space constitutes

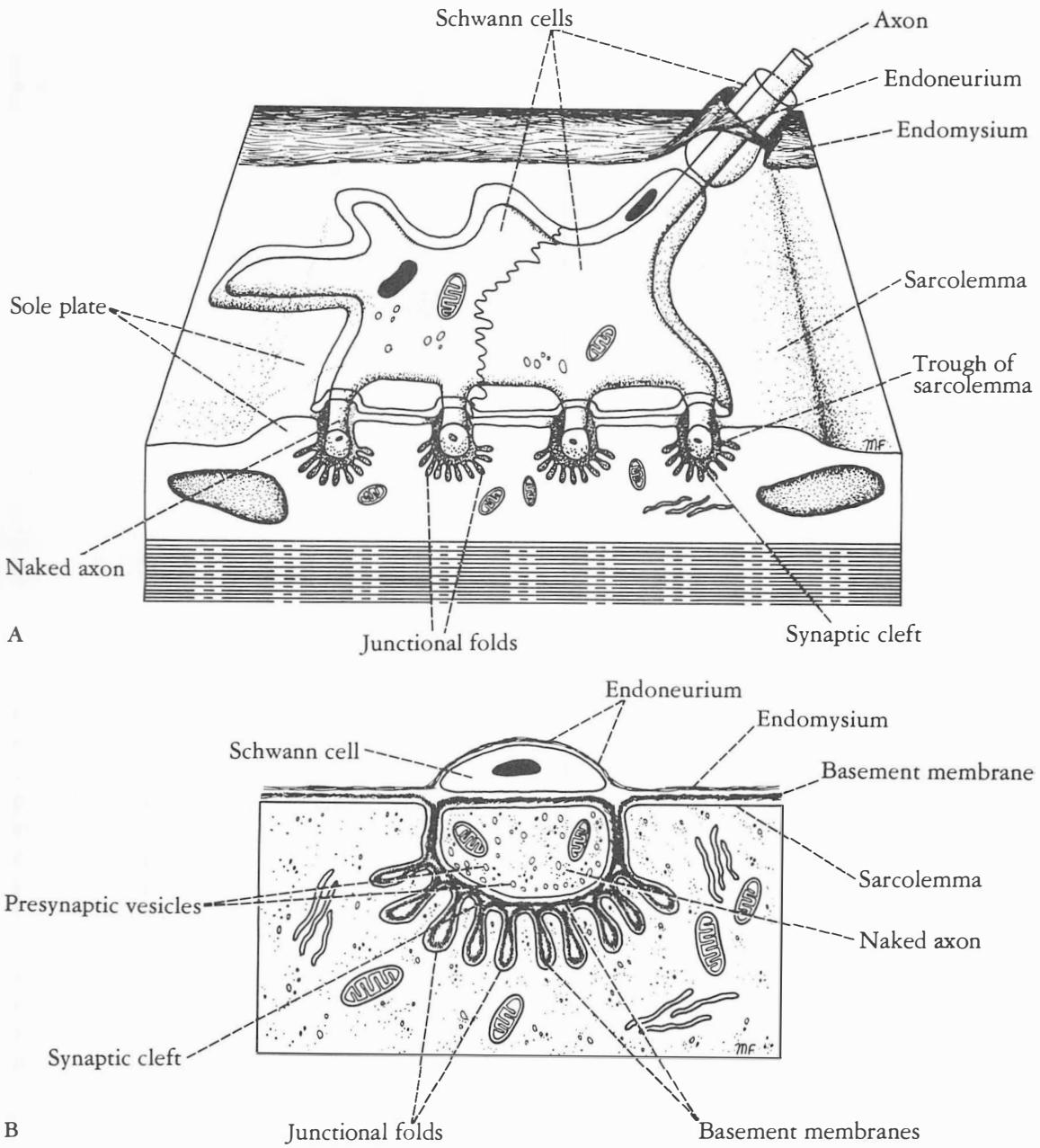


Fig. 5-15. A. A skeletal neuromuscular junction. B. Enlarged view of muscle fiber showing terminal naked axon lying in surface groove of muscle fiber.

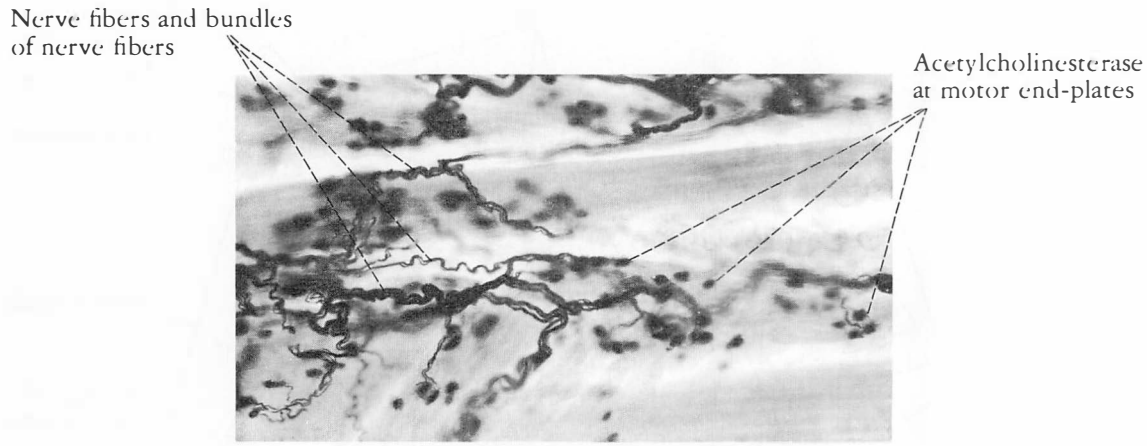


Fig. 5-16. Photomicrograph showing nerve fibers terminating on skeletal muscle fibers at motor end-plates. Stained histochemically for acetylcholinesterase and counterstained with silver. (Courtesy of Dr. M. J. T. Fitzgerald.)

the *synaptic cleft*. The synaptic cleft, which includes the depressions between adjacent junctional folds, is filled with the basement membranes of the axons and the muscle fiber and is made up largely of glycoprotein material (see Fig. 5-15). The motor end-plate is strengthened by the connective tissue sheath of the nerve fiber, the endoneurium, and becomes continuous with the connective tissue sheath of the muscle fiber, the endomysium.

A nerve impulse, on reaching a motor end-plate, causes the release of *acetylcholine* from some of the axonal vesicles. The vesicles discharge their transmitter substance into the synaptic cleft by moving to the presynaptic membrane and opening into the cleft by a process of *exocytosis*. The acetylcholine now affects the much folded postsynaptic membrane, making it more permeable to Na^+ ions. By this means, a wave of depolarization passes over the surface of the sarcolemma, and is carried into the muscle fiber to the contractile myofibrils through the system of transverse tubules.

The amount of acetylcholine released at the motor end-plate will depend on the number of nerve impulses arriving at the nerve terminal. Once the acetylcholine crosses the synaptic cleft it immediately undergoes hydrolysis due to the presence of *acetylcholinesterase* (Fig. 5-16) in the postsynaptic membrane or sarcolemma. Skeletal muscle fiber contraction is thus controlled by the frequency of the nerve impulses that arrive at the motor nerve terminal. A resting muscle fiber shows small occasional depolarizations at the motor end-plate, which are insufficient to cause the fiber to contract. These are believed to be due to the sporadic release of acetylcholine into the synaptic cleft from a single presynaptic vesicle.

NEUROMUSCULAR JUNCTIONS IN SMOOTH MUSCLE. In smooth muscle, where the action is slow and widespread, such as within the wall of the intestine, the autonomic nerve fibers branch extensively, so that a single neuron exerts control over a large number of muscle fibers. In some areas, for example, the longitudinal layer of smooth muscle in the intestine, only a few muscle fibers are associated with autonomic endings, the wave of contraction passing from one muscle cell to another by means of gap junctions (Fig. 5-19).

In smooth muscle, where the action is fast and where precision is required, such as in the iris, the

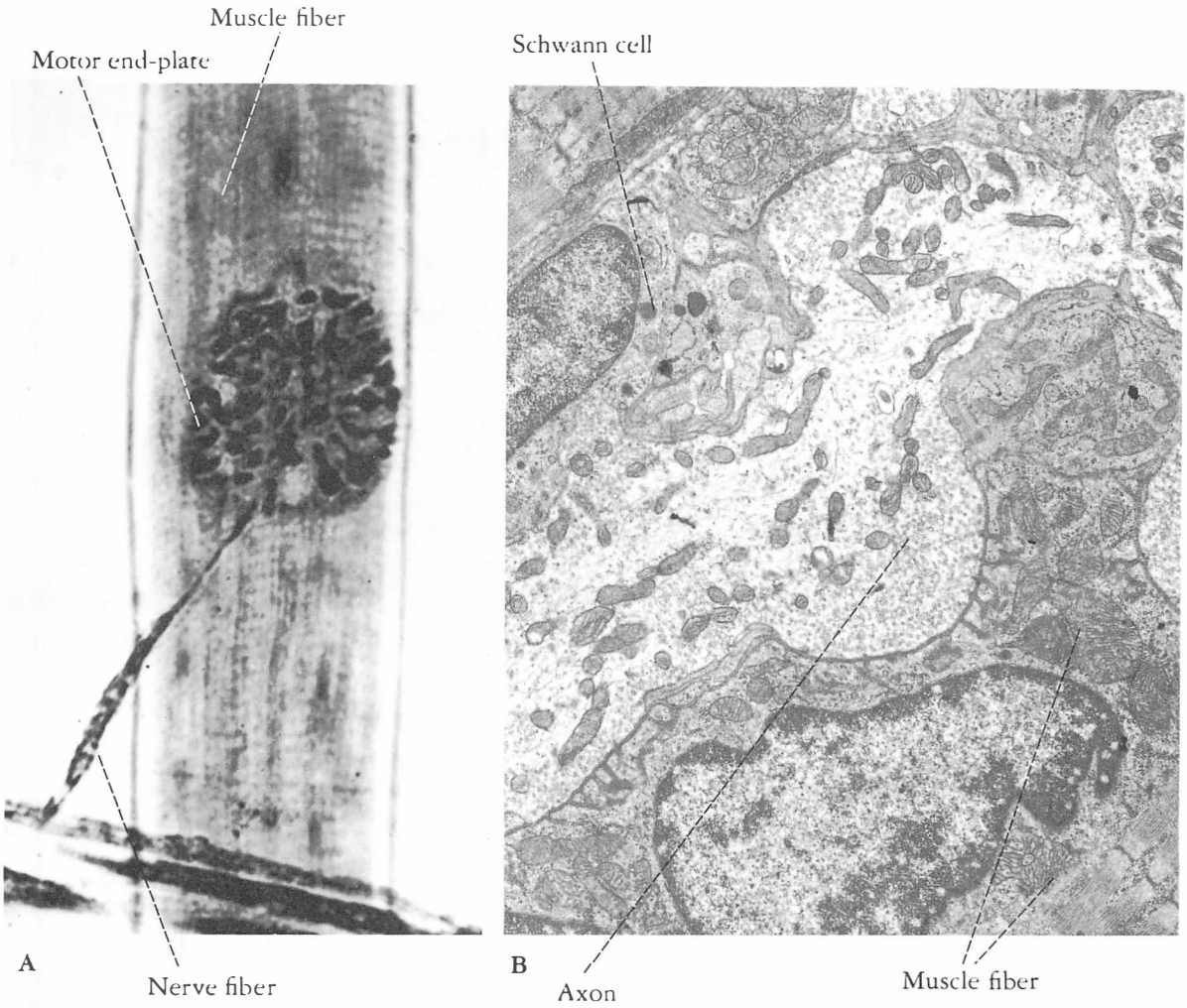


Fig. 5-17. A. Photomicrograph of motor end-plate showing terminal branching of nerve fiber. B. Electronmicrograph of terminal axon at motor end-plate. Shows axon lying in a trough on the surface of the muscle fiber. (Courtesy of Dr. J. M. Kerns.)

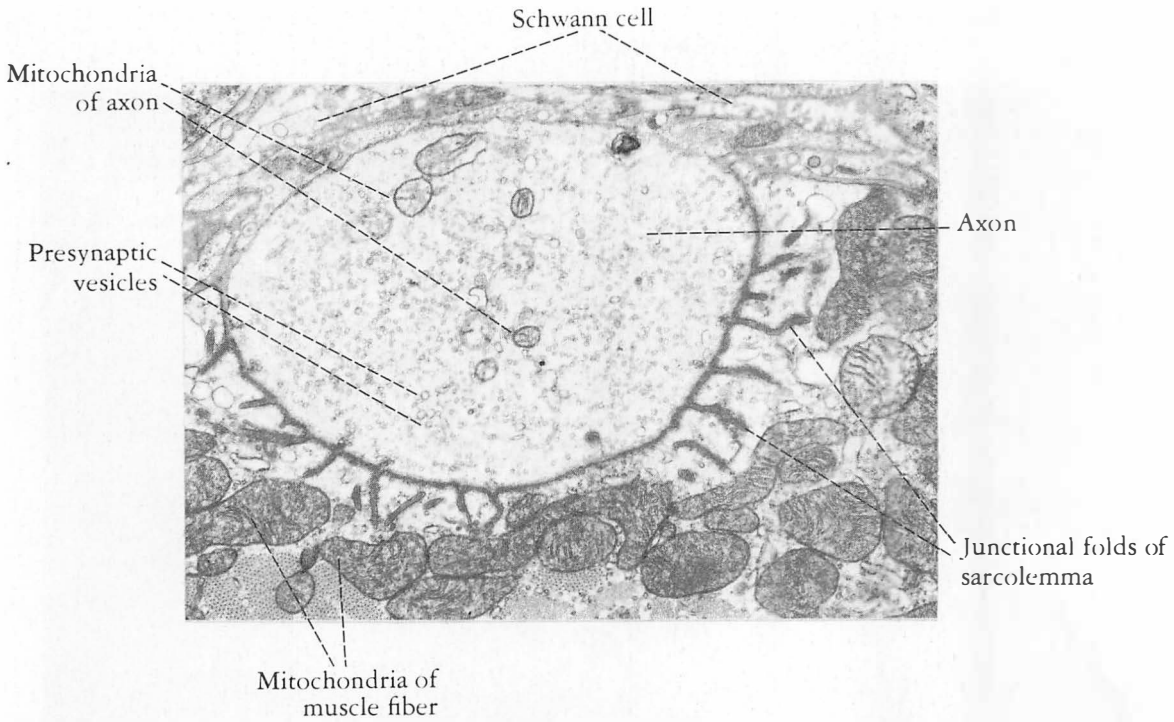


Fig. 5-18. Electronmicrograph of cross section of axon at motor end-plate. Shows axon lying in a trough of folded sarcolemma. (Courtesy of Dr. J. M. Kerns.)

branching of the nerve fibers is less extensive, so that a single neuron exerts control over only a few muscle fibers.

The autonomic nerve fibers, which are postganglionic (see p. 409), are nonmyelinated and terminate as a series of varicosed branches. An interval of from 100 to 1,000Å may exist between the axon and the muscle fiber. At the site where transmission is to occur, the Schwann cell is retracted so that the axon lies within a shallow groove on its surface (Fig. 5-19). Part of the axon thus is naked, permitting free diffusion of the transmitter substance from the axon to the muscle cell (Fig. 5-19). Here the axoplasm contains numerous vesicles similar to those seen at the motor end-plate of skeletal muscle.

Smooth muscle is innervated by sympathetic and parasympathetic parts of the autonomic system. Those nerves that are cholinergic liberate acetylcholine at their endings by a process of exocytosis, the acetylcholine being present in the vesicles at the nerve ending. Those nerves that are noradrenergic liberate *norepinephrine* at their endings by a process of exocytosis, the norepinephrine being present in dark-cored vesicles at the nerve endings. Both the acetylcholine and norepinephrine bring about depolarization of the muscle fibers innervated, which thereupon contract. The fate of these neurotransmitter substances differs. The acetylcholine is probably hydrolyzed in the presence of acetylcholinesterase in the sarcolemma of the muscle fiber. Experimental data of the past few years suggest that norepinephrine is taken up again by the nerve endings. It is

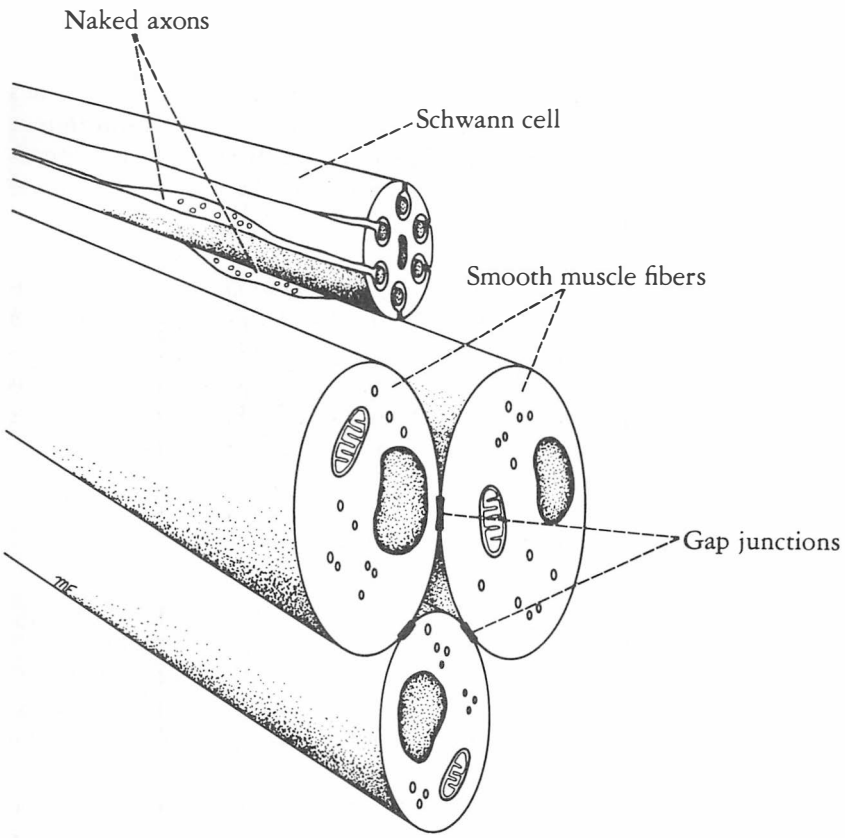


Fig. 5-19. An autonomic neuromuscular junction. Shows the exposed axons close to the smooth muscle fibers.

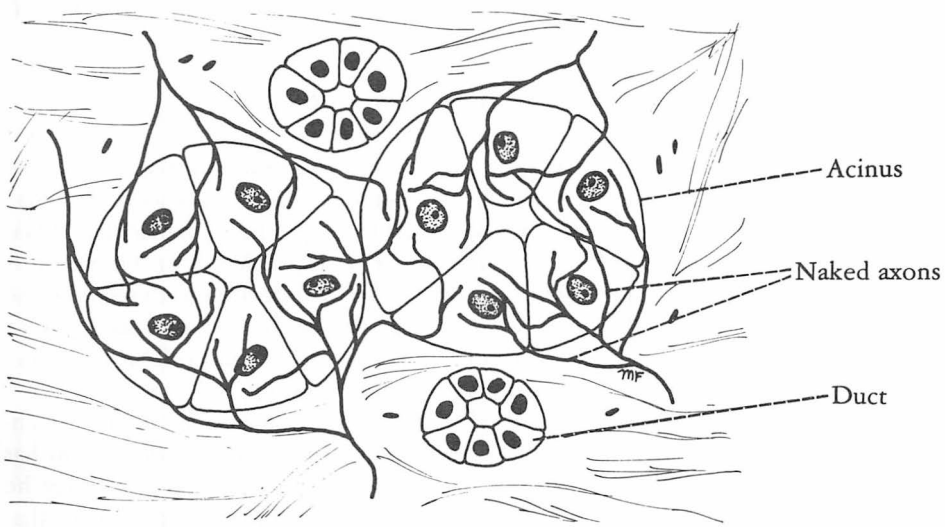


Fig. 5-20. Nerve fibers ending around glandular acini.

important to note that in some areas of the body (e.g., bronchial muscle) the norepinephrine liberated from postganglionic sympathetic fibers causes smooth muscle to relax and not contract.

NEUROMUSCULAR JUNCTIONS IN CARDIAC MUSCLE. Nonmyelinated postganglionic autonomic nerves extend into the connective tissue between the muscle fibers and terminate in close proximity to the individual cardiac muscle fibers. Because of the presence of intermittent desmosomes and gap junctions between abutting muscle fibers, excitation and contraction of one muscle fiber rapidly spreads from fiber to fiber.

As in the case of smooth muscle (Fig. 5-19), the axon at the site where transmission is to occur rises to the surface of the Schwann cell and lies within a shallow groove. Part of the axon thus is naked, permitting free diffusion of the neurotransmitter substance from the axon to the muscle cell.

NERVE ENDINGS ON SECRETORY CELLS. Nonmyelinated postganglionic autonomic nerves extend in the connective tissue of glands and have been reported to ramify between adjacent secretory cells (Fig. 5-20). In many glands the nerve fibers have been found to innervate only the blood vessels.

Clinical Notes

Receptors

Sensory endings are found throughout the body in both somatic and visceral areas. It is fortunate that they are so widely distributed, because they enable the human subject to react to changes in the external and internal environment.

A physician, in order to make a diagnosis or study the effect of treatment on a disease process, relies almost entirely on the patient's ability to describe changes in subjective sensations, or to respond to specific stimuli during a physical examination. Such statements as "knifelike pain," "dull aching pain," "colicky pain," "pins and needles," "cannot feel anything, doctor," are symptoms that are very familiar to the practicing physician. Yet when we come to examine the histological structure of receptors and try to relate these to specific functions, we find a lack of precise information. For practical purposes, the following classification may be used clinically until factual research yields further information.

Probable Function	*Histological Structure*
Touch	Free nerve endings, nerve endings related to hair follicles, Meissner's corpuscles, Merkel's discs
Pressure	Pacinian corpuscles
Pain	Free nerve endings
Temperature	Free nerve endings, Krause's corpuscles
Muscular activity	Neuromuscular spindles
Tendon stretching	Neurotendinous spindles

The function of the neuromuscular and neurotendinous spindles will be considered in more detail, along with general muscular activity, following the description of the descending tracts of the brain and spinal cord and the gamma efferent system.

Examination of Individual Sensory Modalities

An accurate physical examination may enable the neurologist to make a precise diagnosis. He may be able to determine whether a particular sensation can or cannot be appreciated, or whether it is less than normal. He will be able to determine the precise area over the surface of the body where impairment of sensation is found. The following sensations are usually tested:

1. *Light Touch.* This is tested by gently touching the skin with a wisp of cotton; the patient has his eyes closed and responds "yes" whenever he feels the stimulus. It is important to realize that different areas of the skin normally exhibit differ-

ent thresholds for touch. The back and buttocks are less sensitive than the face or fingertips. On hairy surfaces, the slightest movement of a hair usually can be felt.

2. *Localization of Touch.* After the patient has detected the light touch with his eyes closed, he is asked to place a finger on the exact site touched. Failure to accomplish this may be due to damage to the cerebral cortex.

3. *Two-Point Tactile Discrimination.* Two blunt points are applied to the skin surface with the patient's eyes closed. Gradually the points are brought closer together until the patient is unable to distinguish two definite points. A normal person is able to distinguish two separate points on the tip of the index finger when they are separated by a distance greater than about 3 mm. On the back, however, they have to be separated by as much as 3 to 4 cm.

4. *Pain.* The skin may be touched with the sharp end of a pin. First the pain threshold is established, and the areas of diminished or lost pain sensation are mapped out. It is advisable to apply the stimulus in an irregular manner, first using the sharp end of the pin, and then the dull head, the patient responding "sharp" or "dull." In certain diseases, such as tabes dorsalis or peripheral neuritis, there is a delay of up to 3 seconds before the patient recognizes the sharp pain.

5. *Pressure Pain.* This is a poorly localized pain, which is perceived by deep pressure on a muscle or by squeezing a tendon.

6. *Temperature Testing.* Test tubes filled with hot or cold water may be used. When they are applied to the skin the patient responds with either "warm" or "cold." First the temperature threshold is established and then the areas of diminished or lost temperature sensation are mapped out.

7. *Vibration.* When the handle of a vibrating tuning fork is applied to the skin over bone (e.g., the medial malleolus of the tibia or the olecranon process of the ulna), a tingling sensation is felt. This is due to the stimulation of superficial and deep pressure receptors. The patient is asked to respond when he first feels the vibration and when he no longer can detect the vibration. The perception of vibration in the legs is usually diminished after the age of 60.

8. *Appreciation of Form (Stereognosis).* Have the patient close his eyes and place common objects such as coins or keys in his hands. The patient normally should be able to identify objects by moving them around in his hand and feeling them with his fingers.

9. *Passive Movements of Joints.* This test may be carried out on the fingers or toes. With the patient completely relaxed and in the supine position with his eyes closed, the digit is flexed or extended irregularly. After each movement, the patient is asked, "Is the digit 'up' or 'down'?" A normal individual not only can determine that passive movement is taking place but also is aware of the direction of the movement.

10. *Postural Sensibility.* This is the ability to describe the position of a limb when it is placed in that position while the patient's eyes are closed. Another way to perform the test is to ask the patient, with his eyes closed, to place the limb on the opposite side in the same position as the other limb. The application and interpretation of the results of these tests will be understood more fully when the afferent or sensory pathways have been discussed. (See p. 305.)

Action of Drugs and Other Agents on Skeletal Neuromuscular Junctions

Neuromuscular Blocking Agents

D-Tubocurarine produces flaccid paralysis of skeletal muscle first affecting the extrinsic muscles of the eyes and then those of the face, the extremities, and finally the diaphragm. *Dimethyl tubocurarine, gallamine,* and *benzoquinonium* have similar effects.

These drugs combine with the sites at the postjunctional membrane normally used by acetylcholine, and thus block the neurotransmitter action of acetylcholine. They are, therefore, referred to as competitive blocking agents, since they are competing for the same postsynaptic site as does acetylcholine. As these drugs are slowly metabolized, the paralysis passes off.

Decamethonium and Succinylcholine also paralyze skeletal muscle, but their action differs from that of competitive blocking agents because they produce their effect by causing depolarization of the motor end-plate. Acting like acetylcholine, they produce depolarization of the postjunctional membrane and the muscle contracts once. This is followed by a flaccid paralysis and a blockage of neuromuscular activity. Although the blocking action endures for some time, the drugs are metabolized and the paralysis passes off. The actual paralysis is produced by the continued depolarization of the postjunctional membrane. It must be remembered that continuous depolarization does not produce continuous skeletal muscle contraction. Repolarization has to take place before further depolarization can occur.

Neuromuscular blocking agents are commonly used with general anesthetics to produce the desired degree of muscle relaxation without using large doses of general anesthetics. Since the respiratory muscles are paralyzed, facilities for artificial respiration are essential.

Anticholinesterases

Physostigmine and *neostigmine* have the capacity to combine with acetylcholinesterase and prevent the esterase from inactivating acetylcholine. In addition, neostigmine has a direct stimulating action on skeletal muscle. The actions of both drugs are reversible and they have been used with success in the treatment of myasthenia gravis.

Bacterial Toxins

Clostridium botulinum, the causative organism in certain cases of food poisoning, produces a toxin that inhibits the release of acetylcholine at the neuromuscular junction. Death results from paralysis of the respiratory muscles.

Motor Nerve and Skeletal Muscle

As has been pointed out, not only does the motor nerve control the activity of the muscle it supplies, but its integrity is essential for the muscle's normal maintenance. Following section of a motor nerve, the muscle fibers rapidly atrophy and are replaced by connective tissue. The total bulk of the muscle may be reduced by three-quarters in as little as three months. This degree of atrophy does not occur if the muscle simply is immobilized, i.e., it is not just disuse atrophy. It is apparent that the maintenance of normal muscle is dependent on the continued reception of acetylcholine at the postjunctional membrane at the neuromuscular junction.

Denervation Supersensitivity of Skeletal Muscle

After approximately two weeks of denervation, skeletal muscle fibers respond to externally applied acetylcholine at sites other than the neuromuscular junctions. This supersensitivity could be explained on the basis that many new acetylcholine receptors have developed along the length of the muscle fibers following denervation.

Myasthenia Gravis

Myasthenia gravis is a disease characterized by drooping of the upper eyelids (ptosis), double vision (diplopia), difficulty in swallowing (dysphagia), difficulty in talking (dysarthria), and general muscular weakness and fatigue. Initially, the disease most commonly involves the muscles of the eye and pharynx and the symptoms may be relieved with rest. In the progressive form of the disease, the weakness becomes steadily worse and ultimately death occurs.

The condition is relieved by anticholinesterase drugs such as *neostigmine* and the disease is due to the development of some abnormality at the neuromuscular junction. The following explanations have been suggested: (1) the postjunctional membrane is less sensitive than normal to acetylcholine, (2) the amount of acetylcholine released from the motor nerve is less than normal, and (3) it is an example of an autoimmune disease, in which antibodies formed in the thymus affect proteins in the neuromuscular junction, producing a curarelike blocking effect. Neostigmine acts by inhibiting the activity of acetylcholinesterase and thus potentiating the action of acetylcholine.

Hypokalemic Periodic Paralysis and Hyperkalemic Paralysis

These are diseases due to lowered or raised blood potassium levels. It is known that the ability of acetylcholine to initiate electrical changes in the postjunctional membrane of the neuromuscular junction can be greatly influenced by the level of blood potassium, and it is this blood change that is responsible for the paralysis in these patients.

Action of Drugs on Neuromuscular Junctions in Smooth Muscle, Cardiac Muscle, and Nerve Endings on Secretory Cells

It has been stated that, in normal body physiology, acetylcholine released from postganglionic parasympathetic fibers can bring about depolarization and resulting contraction of smooth muscle fibers. Acetylcholine, however, is a useless drug to be administered by the physician, because it is rapidly destroyed by the *cholinesterases,* and because its actions are so widespread it cannot be used selectively. By slightly changing the structure, as in the case of *methacholine chloride* or *carbechol chloride,* the drugs are less susceptible to destruction by the cholinesterases but still possess the ability to react with the receptors.

Atropine and scopolamine are drugs that compete with acetylcholine for the same receptors. These drugs are competitive antagonists of acetylcholine at receptor sites of smooth muscle, cardiac muscle, and various secretory cells.

Norepinephrine is released from postganglionic sympathetic fibers and can bring about depolarization of smooth muscle in the walls of arteries, for example, resulting in their contraction. At other sites, such as the bronchi, it causes smooth muscle relaxation. In 1948 Ahlquist classified sympathetic receptors as alpha and beta. The functions associated with alpha receptors are vasoconstriction, mydriasis (dilatation of pupil), and relaxation of the smooth muscle of the intestine. Beta receptors are associated with vasodilatation, cardioacceleration, bronchial relaxation, and intestinal relaxation.

Phenoxybenzamine has been found to block alpha receptors while *propranolol* blocks beta receptors. It should be clearly understood that the structure of these receptors is not known.

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 480.

1. An 18-year-old woman visited her physician because she had burns, which she had not felt, on the tips of the fingers of the right hand. She also mentioned that she had weakness of her right hand. On physical examination severe scarring of the fingers of the right hand was noted. Obvious atrophy of the small muscles of the right hand was also found. Testing the sensory modalities of the skin of the entire patient showed total loss of pain and temperature sensation of the distal part of the right upper limb. There was diminished sensibility to pain and temperature of the left hand. Definite muscular weakness was demonstrated in the small muscles of the right hand and a small amount of weakness also was found in the muscles of the left hand. A diagnosis of syringomyelia was made. (a) Using your neuroanatomical knowledge, can you describe the type of sensory nerve endings that are sensitive to pain and temperature? (b) How would you examine a patient to determine if there is cutaneous pain and temperature sensory loss?

2. A 35-year-old man, while walking past some workmen who were digging a hole in the road, suddenly became aware of a foreign body in his left eye. Since the cornea is extremely sensitive, he suffered considerable discomfort. What sensory endings are present in the cornea? Is the cornea sensitive to stimuli other than pain?

3. If you wished to carry out some physiological research involving the implantation of electrodes into sensory receptors, you would probably do the

work on the larger receptors. What is the name of the largest sensory receptor (excluding the eye and the ear) and what are its approximate dimensions?

4. While performing a complete neurological examination on a patient, a fourth-year medical student was asked by a physician if there is any anatomical basis for cutaneous sensations. How would you have answered that question?

5. A 60-year-old man visited his physician because for the past 3 months he had been experiencing an agonizing stabbing pain over the middle part of the right side of his face. The stabs would last a few seconds but might be repeated several times. "The pain is the worst I have ever experienced," he told his physician. He had noticed particularly that a draft of cold air on his face or the touching of a few scalp hairs in the temporal region could trigger the pain. Physical examination revealed no sensory or motor loss of the trigeminal nerve. A diagnosis of trigeminal neuralgia was made. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, can you explain why hairs are so sensitive to touch?

6. A 50-year-old man was diagnosed as suffering from tabes dorsalis. On physical examination, many signs of the syphilitic disease were present, including a total lack of deep sensation to pain. Intense squeezing of the tendo calcaneus or the testicles produced no response. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, explain how deep pain sensation is normally experienced.

7. What is the function of intrafusal fibers in a neuromuscular spindle? Is there more than one type of intrafusal muscle fiber? What is the significance of a gamma efferent motor fiber entering a muscle spindle?

8. While carrying out a physical examination of a patient, the physician asked the patient to cross his knees and relax his leg muscles. The left ligamentum patellae was then struck smartly with a reflex hammer, and this immediately produced an involuntary partial extension of the left knee joint (the knee jerk test was positive). How does the central nervous system receive nervous information from the ligamentum patellae in order that it may respond reflexly by extending the knee?

9. Name four types of sensory nerve endings found in muscle; indicate the probable function of each of these endings.

10. Define the terms (a) *motor unit*, (b) *neurovascular hilus*, (c) *sole plate*, (d) *junctional folds of motor end-plate*, (e) *synaptic cleft of motor end-plate*.

11. A 55-year-old man suffering from syphilis of the spinal cord presented characteristic symptoms and signs of tabes dorsalis. He had experienced severe stabbing pains in the abdomen and legs for the last 6 months. When asked to walk, the patient was seen to do so with a broad base, slapping the feet on the ground. How would you test the patient's ability to perceive the position of his lower extremities and his vibratory sense? Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, explain how a normal individual is able to perceive the position of his extremities and detect vibrations.

12. Using your knowledge of pharmacology, name two drugs that act as competitive blocking agents on skeletal neuromuscular junctions. Name the chemical substance against which these agents are competing. Name the sites where the blocking agents are believed to act.

13. Name a drug that will bring about flaccid paralysis of skeletal muscle by causing depolarization of the postsynaptic membrane.

14. In cases of severe food poisoning the organism *Clostridium botulinum* may be found to be responsible. How does this organism cause paralysis of the respiratory muscles?

15. An orthopedic surgeon stated, during a ward round, that the degree of muscular atrophy that occurs in a limb immobilized in a plaster cast is totally different from the degree of muscular atrophy that follows section of the motor nerve supply to muscles. The surgeon asked a medical student to explain this difference. How would you account for this difference in the degree of muscular atrophy?

16. A 35-year-old woman visited her physician because she had noticed that her upper eyelid drooped, especially when she was tired or emotionally upset. She had first noticed this 6 months before. Two months before, she had started to have double vision, which was very slight to begin with and lasted for only a few hours. During the last week the double vision had returned, was more severe, and lasted for several hours. Her friends have remarked that she doesn't seem to smile as much as she used to. On questioning she admitted that talking tires her and her throat feels particularly tired after eating a large meal. On physical examination the patient had slight ptosis (drooping of the upper lid) of the right eye. The eye movements appeared to be normal but the face seemed to be unnaturally immobile. In her attempts to smile the expression was more of a snarl than a happy expression. It was also noted that the patient responded to questions in a rather feeble voice with a nasal quality. When asked to hold her arms outstretched in front of her, the patient became quickly fatigued. What is the diagnosis? What are the possible causes of this condition?

17. Following an abdominal operation for peptic ulcer the surgeon was concerned that the patient had not voluntarily urinated for 14 hours. Before catheterizing the patient, the resident decided to use a cholinergic drug in order to stimulate the detrusor muscle of the bladder. How does an autonomic nerve terminate in the region of a smoooth muscle cell? Name a cholinergic drug that could be used to bring about contraction of the detrusor muscle.

Additional Reading

Adrian, E. D. *The Basis of Sensation.* New York: Hafner, 1964.

Ahlquist, R. P. A study of the adrenotropic receptors. *Am. J. Physiol.* 153:586, 1948.

Andres, K. H., and Duering, M. von. Morphology of Cutaneous Receptors. In A. Iggo (Ed.), *Handbook of Sensory Physiology.* Vol. 2, *Somatosensory System.* Berlin and Vienna: Springer, 1973. P. 3.

Best, C. H., and Taylor, N. B. *The Physiological Basis of Medical Practice* (8th Ed.). Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins, 1966.

Boyd, I. A. The structure and innervation of the nuclear bag muscle fiber system and the nuclear chain muscle fiber system in mammalian muscle spindles. *Philos. Trans. R. Soc. Lond.* [Biol]. 245:8, 1962.

Bridgman, C. F. Comparisons in structure of tendon organs in the rat, cat and man. *J. Comp. Neurol.* 138:369, 1970.

Cauna, N. The free penicillate nerve endings of the human hairy skin. *J. Anat.* 115:277, 1973.

Cauna, N., and Mannan, G. The structure of human digital pacinian corpuscles (corpusculae lamellosae) and its functional significance. *J. Anat.* 92:1, 1958.

Cauna, N., and Ross, L. L. The fine structure of Meissner's touch corpuscle of human fingers. *J. Biophys. Biochem. Cytol.* 8:467, 1960.

Couteaux, R. Contribution à l'étude de la synapse myoneurale; buisson de kühne et plaque motrice. *Rev. Can. Biol.* 6:563, 1947.

Couteaux, R. Localization of cholinesterase at neuromuscular junctions. *Int. Rev. Cytol.* 4:335, 1955.

Guth, L. "Tropic" influences of nerve on muscle. *Physiol. Rev.* 48:645, 1968.

Harrington, T., and Merzenich, M. M. Neural coding in the sense of touch; human sensations of skin indentation compared with the responses of slowly adapting mechanoreceptive afferents innervating the hairy skin of monkeys. *Exp. Brain Res.* 10:251, 1970.

Hess, A. Two kinds of motor nerve endings on mammalian intrafusal muscle revealed by the cholinesterase technique. *Anat. Rec.* 139:173, 1961.

Hunt, C. C., and Kuffler, S. W. Stretch receptor discharges during muscle contraction. *J. Physiol* (Lond.) 113:298, 1951.

Loewenstein, W. R., and Skalak, R. Mechanical transmission in a pacinian corpuscle; an analysis and a theory. *J. Physiol.* (Lond.) 182:346, 1966.

Pease, D. C., and Quilliam, T. Q. Electronmicroscopy of the pacinian corpuscle. *J. Biophys. Biochem. Cytol.* 3:331, 1957.

Robertson, J. D. Electronmicroscopy of the motor end-plate and the neuromuscular spindle. *Am. J. Phys. Med.* 39:1, 1960.

Saltpeter, M. M., McHenry, F. A., and Feng, H. H. Myoneural junctions in the extraocular muscles of the mouse. *Anat. Rec.* 179:201, 1974.

Sinclair, D. C. *Cutaneous Sensation.* New York and London: Oxford University Press, 1967.

Snell, R. S., and McIntyre, N. Changes in the histochemical appearances of cholinesterase at the motor end-plate following denervation. *Br. J. Exp. Pathol.* 37:44, 1956.

Straile, W. E. Encapsulated nerve end-organs in the rabbit, mouse, sheep and man. *J. Comp. Neurol.* 136:317, 1969.

Weddell, G., Pallie, W., and Palmer, E. The morphology of peripheral nerve terminations in the skin. *Q. J. Microscopial Sci.* 95:483, 1954.

Willis, W. D., Jr., and Grossman, R. G. *Medical Neurobiology* (2nd Ed.). St. Louis: Mosby, 1977.

Winkleman, R. K. *Nerve Endings in Normal and Pathologic Skin.* Springfield, Ill.: Thomas, 1960.

6
Dermatomes and Muscular Activity

Segmental Innervation of Skin

The area of skin supplied by a single spinal nerve, and, therefore, a single segment of the spinal cord, is called a *dermatome*. On the trunk, adjacent dermatomes overlap considerably, so that to produce a region of complete anesthesia at least three contiguous spinal nerves have to be sectioned. It should be noted that the area of tactile loss is always greater than the area of loss of painful and thermal sensations. The reason for this difference is that the degree of overlap of fibers carrying pain and thermal sensations is much more extensive than the overlap of fibers carrying tactile sensations. Dermatomal charts for the anterior and posterior surfaces of the body are shown in Figures 6-1 and 6-2.

In the limbs the arrangement of the dermatomes is more complicated, and the reason for this is the embryological changes that take place as the limbs grow out from the trunk. (For details, see Figs. 6-1 and 6-2.)

Segmental Innervation of Muscles

Skeletal muscle also receives a segmental innervation. Most of these muscles are innervated by two, three, or four spinal nerves and, therefore, by the same number of segments of the spinal cord. Thus, to paralyze a muscle completely it would be necessary to section several spinal nerves or destroy several segments of the spinal cord.

To learn the segmental innervation of all the muscles of the body is an impossible task. Nevertheless, the segmental innervation of the following muscles should be known, because it is possible to test them by eliciting simple muscle reflexes in the patient (Fig. 6-3):

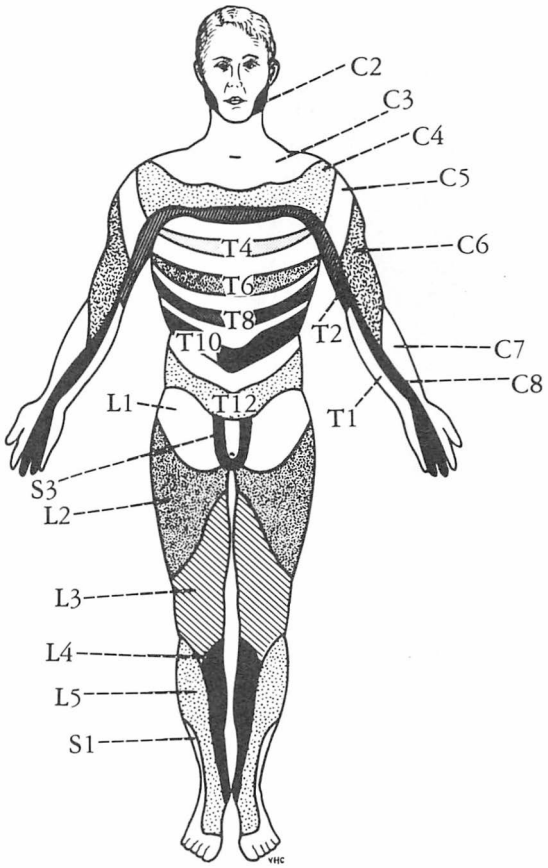


Fig. 6-1. Dermatomes on anterior aspect of the body.

Biceps Brachii Tendon Reflex C5–6 (flexion of the elbow joint by tapping the biceps tendon).

Triceps Tendon Reflex C6–8 (extension of the elbow joint by tapping the triceps tendon).

Brachioradialis Tendon Reflex C7–8 (supination of the radioulnar joints by tapping the insertion of the brachioradialis tendon).

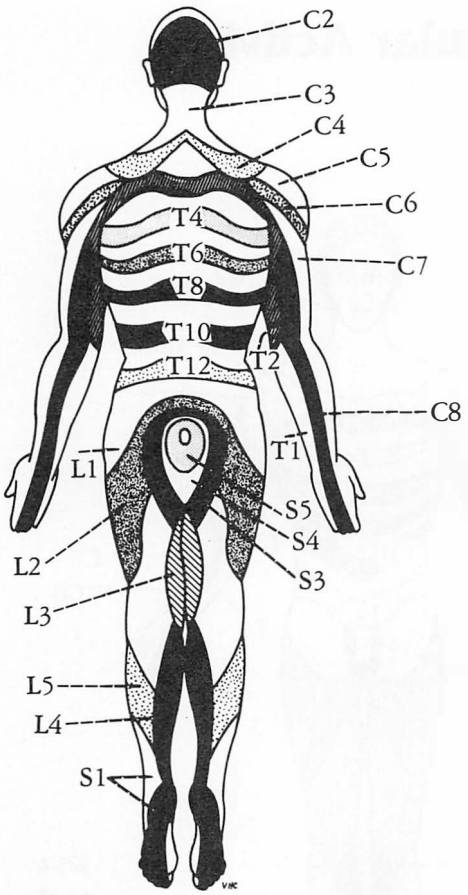


Fig. 6-2. Dermatomes on posterior aspect of the body.

Abdominal Superficial Reflexes (contraction of underlying abdominal muscles by stroking the skin). Upper abdominal skin T6–7; middle abdominal skin T8–9; lower abdominal skin T10–12.

Patellar Tendon Reflex (knee jerk) L2–4 (extension of knee joint on tapping the patellar tendon).

Achilles Tendon Reflex (ankle jerk) L5–S2 (plantar flexion of ankle joint on tapping the Achilles tendon—tendo calcaneus).

Plantar Superficial Reflex L5–S2 (flexion of toes on firmly stroking the sole of the foot).

Muscle Tone and Muscle Action

A *motor unit* consists of a motor neuron in the anterior gray column (horn) of the spinal cord and all the muscle fibers it supplies (Fig. 6-4). In a large buttock muscle, such as the gluteus maximus, where fine control is unnecessary, a given motor neuron may supply as many as 200 muscle fibers. In contrast, in the small muscles of the hand or the extrinsic muscles of the eyeball, where fine control is required, one nerve fiber supplies only a few muscle fibers.

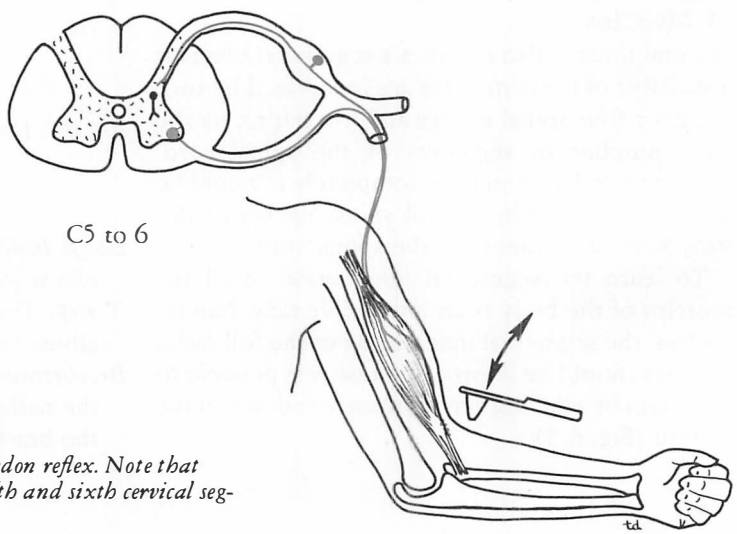


Fig. 6-3. Biceps brachii tendon reflex. Note that reflex arc passes through fifth and sixth cervical segments of spinal cord.

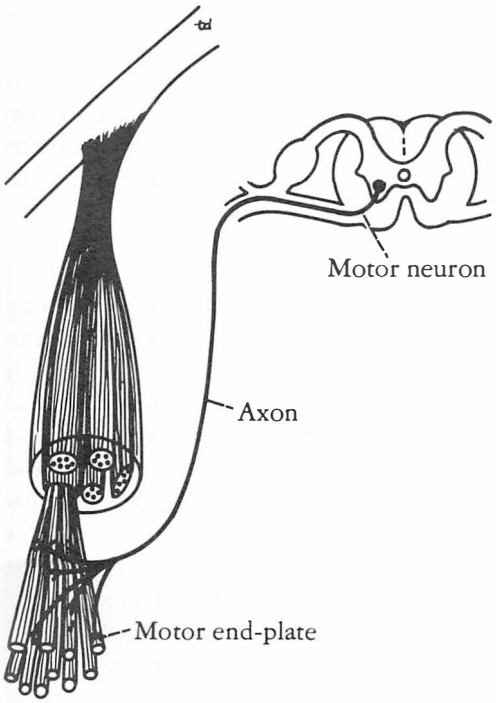


Fig. 6-4. Components of a motor unit.

Every skeletal muscle, while resting, is in a partial state of contraction. This condition is referred to as *muscle tone*. Since there is no intermediate stage, muscle fibers are either fully contracted or relaxed; it follows that a few muscle fibers within a muscle are fully contracted all the time. To bring about this state, and to avoid fatigue, different groups of motor units, and thus different groups of muscle fibers, are brought into action at different times. This is accomplished by the asynchronous discharge of nervous impulses in the motor neurons in the anterior gray horn of the spinal cord.

Basically, muscle tone is dependent on the integrity of a simple monosynaptic reflex arc composed of two neurons in the nervous system (Fig. 6-5). The degree of tension in a muscle is detected by sensitive sensory endings called *muscle spindles* (see p. 119) and *tendon spindles* (see p. 124). The nervous impulses travel in the large afferent fibers to the spinal cord. There, they synapse with the motor neurons situated in the anterior gray column, which, in turn, send impulses down their axons to the muscle fibers (Fig. 6-5). The muscle spindles themselves are innervated by small gamma efferent fibers that regulate the response of the muscle spindles, acting synergically with external stretch. In this manner, muscle tone is maintained reflexly and adjusted to the needs of posture and movement.

Should the afferent or efferent pathways of the

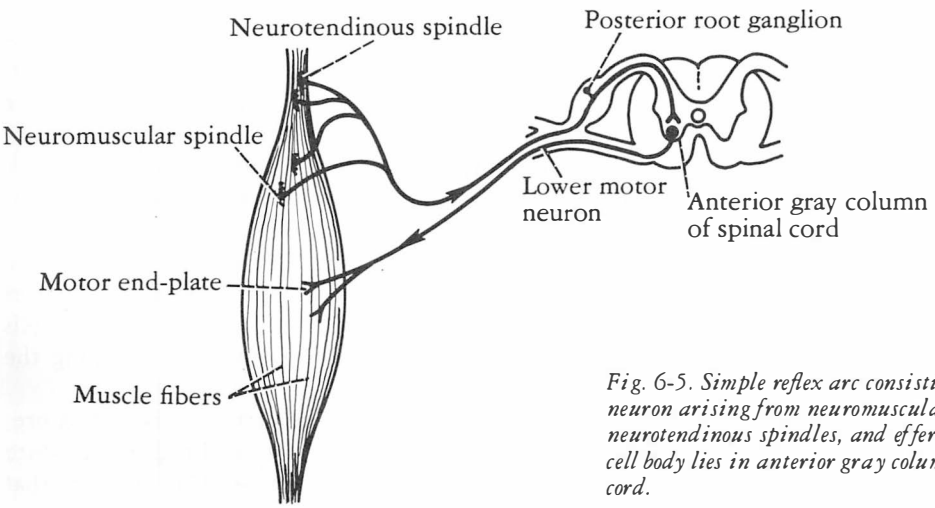


Fig. 6-5. Simple reflex arc consisting of afferent neuron arising from neuromuscular spindles, neurotendinous spindles, and efferent neuron whose cell body lies in anterior gray column (horn) of spinal cord.

Fig. 6-6. Lateral view of skeleton, showing line of gravity. Since greater part of body weight lies anterior to vertebral column, deep muscles of back are important in maintaining normal postural curves of vertebral column in standing position.

reflex arc be cut, the muscle would lose its tone immediately and become flaccid. A flaccid muscle, on palpation, feels like a mass of dough and has completely lost its resilience. It quickly atrophies and becomes reduced in volume. It is important to realize that the degree of activity of the motor anterior column cells, and therefore the degree of muscle tone, depends on the summation of the nerve impulses received by these cells from other neurons of the nervous system.

Muscle movement is accomplished by bringing into action increasing numbers of motor units and, at the same time, reducing the activity of the motor units of muscles that will oppose or antagonize the movement. When the maximum effort is required, all the motor units of a muscle are thrown into action.

Posture

Posture may be defined as the position adopted by the individual within his environment. In the standing position the line of gravity passes through the odontoid process of the axis, behind the centers of the hip joints, and in front of the knee and ankle joints (Fig. 6-6). In order to stabilize the body and prevent it from collapsing, it is not surprising to find that in man the antigravity muscles are well developed and exhibit the greatest degree of tone. One can therefore say that posture depends on the degree and distribution of muscle tone, which in turn depends on the normal integrity of simple reflex arcs centered in the spinal cord.

An individual may assume a particular posture (sitting or standing) over long periods of time with little evidence of fatigue. The reason for this is that muscle tone is maintained through different groups of muscle fibers contracting in relays, only a small number of muscle fibers within a muscle being in a state of contraction at any one time. The active muscle fiber groups are scattered throughout the muscle.

In order to maintain posture the simple myotatic reflex, upon which muscle tone is dependent, must receive adequate nervous input from higher levels of the nervous system (Fig. 6-7). For example, impulses arising from the labyrinths and neck muscles, information arising from the cerebellum, midbrain, and cerebral centers, general information arising from other muscle groups, joints, and even skin receptors will result in nervous impulses impinging on the large anterior gray column cells (i.e., the final common pathway) controlling the muscle fibers.

When an individual assumes a given posture, the tone of the muscles controlling that posture are constantly undergoing fine adjustments so that

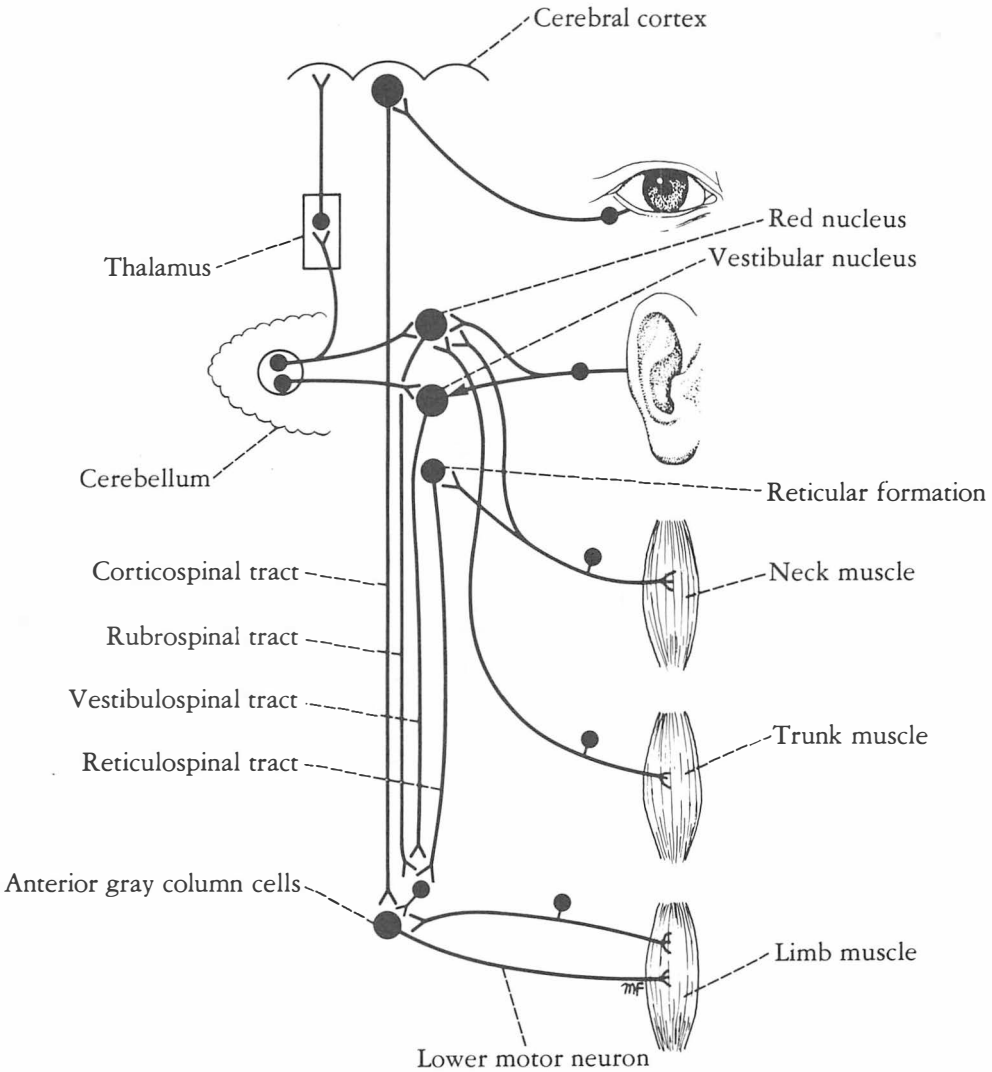


Fig. 6-7. Nervous input from higher levels of the central nervous system, which can influence the activity of the anterior horn cells of the spinal cord.

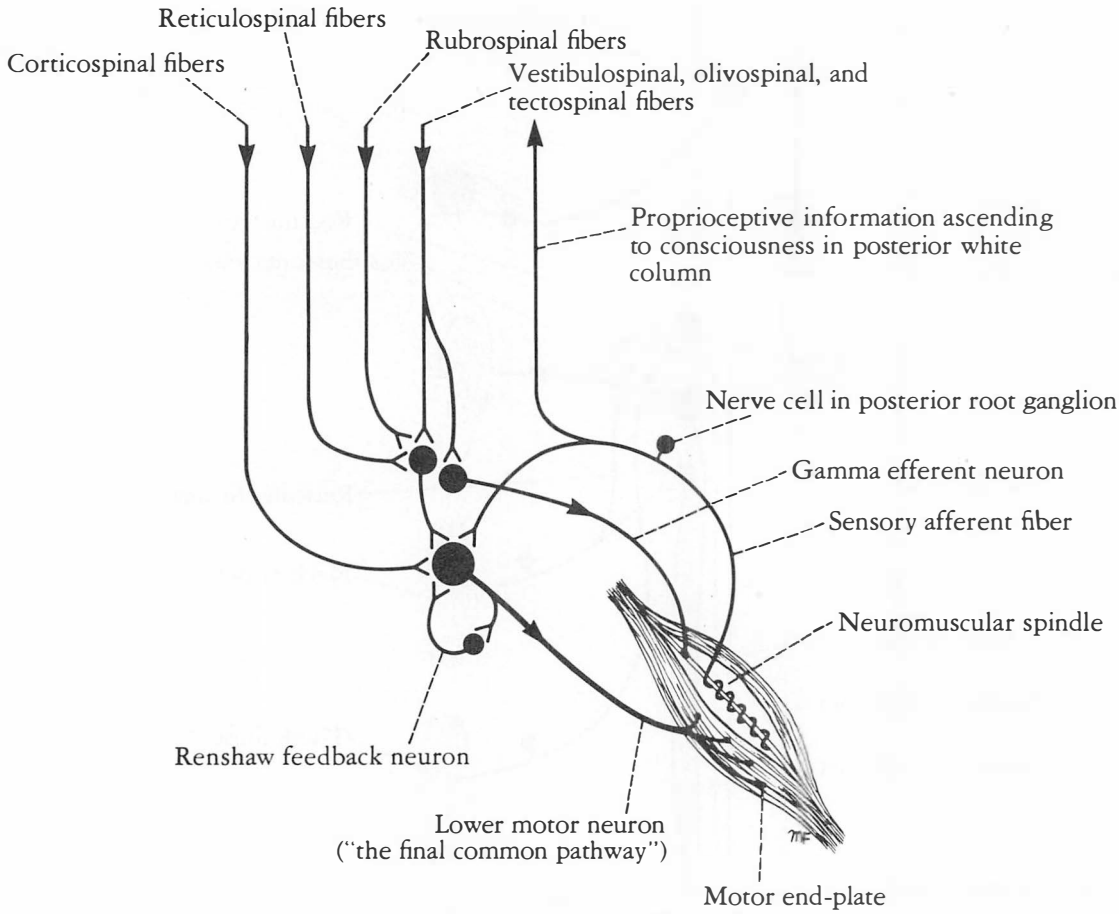


Fig. 6-8. Normal postural tone of skeletal muscle is dependent not only on the integrity of the reflex arc, but also on the summation of the nervous impulses received by the motor anterior gray column (horn) cells from other neurons of the nervous system.

the posture is maintained. Normal posture thus depends not only on the integrity of the reflex arc but also on the summation of the nervous impulses received by the motor anterior gray column cells from other neurons of the nervous system (Fig. 6-8). The detail of the different nervous pathways involved in bringing the information to the anterior gray column cells will be dealt with in the chapters concerned with the ascending and descending tracts of the spinal cord.

Clinical Notes

Segmental Innervation of the Skin

Because large nerve plexuses are present at the roots of the upper and lower limbs, it follows that a single spinal nerve may send both motor and sensory fibers to several peripheral nerves, and, conversely, a single peripheral nerve may receive nerve fibers from many spinal nerves. Moreover, it follows that a lesion of a segment of the spinal cord, or posterior root, or spinal nerve will result in a sensory loss that is different from that occurring after a lesion of a peripheral nerve.

The area of skin supplied by a single spinal nerve, and, therefore, a single segment of the spinal cord, is called a *dermatome*. A physician should remember that dermatomes overlap, and that in the trunk at least three contiguous spinal nerves have to be sectioned to produce a region of complete anesthesia. A physician should remember also that the degree of overlap for painful and thermal sensations is much greater than for tactile sensation. A physician should have a working knowledge of the segmental (dermatomal) innervation of skin, since with the help of a pin or a piece of cotton he can determine whether or not the sensory function of a particular spinal nerve or segment of the spinal cord is normal. When examining the dermatomal charts, one should note that because of the development of the upper limbs the anterior rami of the lower cervical and first thoracic spinal nerves have lost their cutaneous innervation of the trunk anteriorly, and at the level of the second costal cartilage the fourth cervical dermatome is contiguous with the second thoracic dermatome. In the sensory innervation of the head, the trigeminal (fifth cranial) nerve supplies a large area of the face and scalp, and its cutaneous area is contiguous with that of the second cervical segment.

Segmental Innervation of the Muscles

It is important to remember that most skeletal muscles are innervated by two, three, or four spinal nerves and, therefore, by the same number of segments of the spinal cord. Complete destruction of one segment of the spinal cord as the result of trauma or pressure from a tumor will cause weakness of all the muscles that are innervated from that segment. To paralyze a muscle completely, several adjacent segments of the spinal cord have to be destroyed.

Because of the presence of the cervical, brachial, and lumbosacral plexuses the axons of motor anterior gray column cells are redistributed into a number of peripheral nerves. A physician, knowing this, is able to distinguish between a lesion of a segment of the spinal cord, an anterior root, or a spinal nerve, on the one hand, from a lesion of a peripheral nerve on the other. For example, the musculocutaneous nerve of the arm, which receives nerve fibers from the fifth, sixth, and seventh cervical segments of the spinal cord, supplies a finite number of muscles, namely, the biceps brachii, the brachialis, and the coracobrachialis muscles, and section of that nerve would result in total paralysis of these muscles; a lesion of the fifth, sixth, and seventh cervical spinal segments, or their anterior roots, or their spinal nerves, would result in paralysis of these muscles and also partial paralysis of many other muscles, including the deltoid, supraspinatus, teres minor, and infraspinatus.

The segmental innervation of the biceps brachii, triceps, brachioradialis, muscles of the anterior abdominal wall, quadriceps femoris, gastrocnemius and soleus, and the plantar flexor muscles should be memorized, because it is possible to test them easily by eliciting their reflex contraction (for details, see p. 139).

Muscle Tone

Skeletal muscle tone is due to the presence of a few muscle fibers within a muscle being in a state of full contraction all the time. To avoid fatigue different groups of muscle fibers within a muscle are brought into action at different times. The muscle fibers contract in response to the asynchronous discharge of nervous impulses from the motor anterior gray column cells of the spinal cord. Muscle tone is controlled reflexly from afferent nerve endings situated in the muscle itself. It follows, therefore, that any disease process that interferes with any part of the reflex arc will abolish the muscle tone. Some examples are: syphilitic infection of the posterior root (tabes dorsalis); destruction of the motor anterior gray column cells, as in poliomyelitis or syringomyelia; destruction of a segment of the spinal cord by trauma or pressure from a tumor; section of an anterior root; pressure on a spinal nerve by a prolapsed intervertebral disc; and section of a peripheral nerve, as in a stab wound. All these clinical conditions will result in loss of muscle tone.

While it has been emphasized that the basic mechanism underlying muscle tone is the integrity of the spinal segmental reflex, it must not be forgotten that this reflex activity is influenced by nervous impulses received by the anterior horn cells from all levels of the brain and spinal cord. Spinal shock, which follows injury to the spinal cord, will result in diminished muscle tone. Cerebellar disease also results in diminished muscle tone, because the cerebellum facilitates the stretch reflex. The reticular formation normally tends to increase muscle tone, but its activity is inhibited by higher cerebral centers. Therefore, it follows that if the higher cerebral control is interfered with by trauma or disease, the inhibition is lost and the muscle tone is exaggerated (decerebrate rigidity).

Posture

The posture of an individual depends on the degree and distribution of muscle tone and, therefore, on the activity of the motor neurons that supply the muscles. The motor neurons in the anterior gray columns of the spinal cord are the points upon which converge the nervous impulses from many posterior nerve roots, and the descending fibers from many different levels of the brain and spinal cord. The successful coordination of all these nervous influences results in a normal posture.

When one is in the standing posture there is remarkably little muscular activity taking place in the muscles of the limbs and trunk. The reason for this is that the center of gravity of any part of the body is mainly above the joints upon which its weight is directed. Moreover, in many joints, for example, the hip and the knee, the ligaments are very strong and support the body in the erect posture. However, it must be stressed that a person cannot remain standing if all muscles are paralyzed. Once a person starts to fall, either forward, backward, or laterally, the muscle spindles and other stretch receptors immediately increase their activity and the reflex arcs come into play, so that reflex compensatory muscle contractions take place to restore the state of balance. The eyes and the receptors in the membranous labyrinth also play a vital part in the maintenance of balance. The importance of the eyes in maintaining the erect position can easily be tested in a normal person. Once the eyes are closed the person shows a tendency to sway slightly, because he now must rely exclusively on his muscle and labyrinthine receptors to preserve his balance.

Clinical Observation of Muscular Activity

Muscular Power

Ask the patient to perform movements for which the muscle under examination is primarily respon-

sible. Next, ask the patient to perform each movement against resistance and compare the strengths of the muscles on the two sides of the body. Section of the peripheral nerve that supplies the muscle or disease affecting the anterior gray column cells, e.g., poliomyelitis, will clearly reduce the power of or paralyze the muscles involved.

Muscle Wasting
This occurs within 2 or 3 weeks of section of the motor nerve. In the limbs it is easily tested by measuring the diameter of the limbs at a given point over the involved muscle and comparing the measurement obtained with that at the same site on the opposite limb.

Muscular Fasciculation
Twitching of groups of muscle fibers is seen most often in patients with chronic disease that affects the anterior horn cells—for example, progressive muscular atrophy.

Muscular Contracture
Muscular contracture occurs most commonly in the muscles that normally oppose paralyzed muscles. The muscles contract and undergo permanent shortening.

Muscle Tone
A muscle without tone, i.e., one in which the simple spinal reflex arcs are not functioning, is noncontractile and is doughlike on palpation. Degrees of loss of tone may be tested by passively moving the joints and comparing the resistance to the movements by the muscles on the two sides of the body. Increase in muscle tone can occur following the removal of the cerebral inhibition on the reticular formation (see p. 335).

Muscular Coordination
Ask the patient to touch, with his eyes open, the tip of his nose with the tip of his forefinger, then ask him to repeat the process with his eyes closed. A similar test of the lower limbs may be carried out with the patient lying down. Ask him to place one heel on the opposite knee, with his eyes open, then ask him to repeat the process with his eyes closed.

Another test is to ask the patient to quickly supinate and pronate both forearms simultaneously. Disease of the cerebellum, which coordinates muscular activity, would result in impaired ability to perform these rapid repetitive movements.

Involuntary Movement of Muscles

Tic. This is a coordinated, repetitive movement involving one or more muscles.

Choreiform Movements. These are quick, jerky, irregular movements that are nonrepetitive. Swift grimaces and sudden movements of the head or limbs are examples of this condition.

Athetosis. This consists of slow, sinuous, writhing movements that most commonly involve the distal segments of the limbs.

Tremor. This is the alternating contraction of the agonists and antagonists of a joint.

Myoclonus. This consists of shocklike muscular contractions of a portion of a muscle, or an entire muscle, or a group of muscles.

Tonic Spasm. This term refers to a sustained contraction of a muscle or group of muscles, as in the tonic phase of an epileptic seizure.

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 482.

1. A 55-year-old male visited his physician because of pain in the right buttock that extended down the right leg, the back of the thigh, the outer side and back of the calf, and the outer border of the foot. The patient gave no history of previous injury, but stated that the pain started about 3

months ago as a dull, low backache. Since that time the pain has increased in intensity and has spread down the right leg. When asked if the pain had ever disappeared, he replied that on two separate occasions the pain had diminished in intensity, but his back remained "stiff" all the time. He said the pain was aggravated by stooping or by coughing and sneezing. Sometimes he experienced pins and needles along the outer border of his right foot. After a complete physical examination, a diagnosis was made of herniation of a lumbar intervertebral disc. Using your knowledge of anatomy, state which intervertebral disc is most likely to have been herniated.

2. A 60-year-old woman was seen by her physician because she was experiencing a shooting, burning pain in the left side of her chest. Three days later a group of localized papules appeared on the skin covering the left fifth intercostal space. One day later the papules became vesicular; a few days later the vesicles dried up into crusts and these later separated, leaving small permanent scars. The patient also noticed that there was some loss of sensibility over the left side of the chest. A diagnosis of herpes zoster was made. Using your knowledge of anatomy, state the segment of the spinal cord involved with the disease.

3. While examining the sensory innervation of the skin of the head and neck in a patient, a medical student had difficulty remembering the dermatomal pattern at the junction of the head with the neck and at the junction of the neck with the thorax. Are the dermatomes arranged in a special manner in these areas? If so, what is the underlying reason for this?

4. A 30-year-old male patient was found, on physical examination, to have weakness and diminished tone of the rhomboid muscles, deltoids, and biceps brachii on both sides of the body. The degree of weakness was greater on the right side. The biceps tendon jerk was absent on the right side and diminished on the left side. The triceps jerks were normal on both sides of the body. The muscles of the trunk and lower limb showed increased tone and exhibited spastic paralysis. Radiology of the vertebral column revealed the presence of vertebral destruction due to a tumor arising within the vertebral canal. Using your knowledge of anatomy, answer the following questions: (a) Which vertebra is likely to have the tumor within the vertebral canal? (b) Name the segments of the spinal cord that are being pressed upon by the tumor. (c) Which segments of the spinal cord participate in the reflex arcs responsible for the biceps brachii tendon jerk? (d) Why do the rhomboid and deltoid muscles exhibit diminished muscle tone, whereas the muscles of the lower limb exhibit increased tone?

5. Name three clinical conditions that could result in a loss of tone of skeletal muscle.

6. A 60-year-old man with advanced tabes dorsalis was asked to stand with his toes and heels together and his eyes closed. He immediately started to sway violently and if the nurse had not held on to his arm he would have fallen to the ground (positive Romberg test). Why was it vital for this patient to keep his eyes open in order to remain upright?

7. A 60-year-old male with moderately advanced Parkinson's syndrome was disrobed and asked to walk in a straight line in the examining room. The physician observed that the patient had his head and shoulders stooped forward, the arms slightly abducted, the elbow joints partly flexed, and the wrists slightly extended with the fingers flexed at the metacarpophalangeal joints and extended at the interphalangeal joints. It was noted that the patient, on starting to walk, leaned forward and slowly shuffled his feet. The farther he leaned forward the more quickly he moved his legs, so that by the time he had crossed the room he was almost running. The patient's face was masklike and exhibited few emotional movements. The hands showed a coarse tremor and the muscles of the upper and lower limbs showed increased tone in the opposing muscle groups when the joints were passively moved. Parkinson's disease, or the parkinsonian syndrome, can be caused

by a number of pathological conditions but they usually interfere in the normal function of the corpus striatum or the substantia nigra or both. Using your knowledge of the anatomy and physiology of muscle action, attempt to explain the different signs seen in this important syndrome.

8. A 10-year-old girl was taken to a neurologist because of a 6-month history of epileptic attacks. The parents described the attacks as starting with sudden involuntary movements of the trunk, arms, or legs. Sometimes the muscle movements were slight, but at other times they were so violent that she had been known to throw an object in her hand across the room. At other times the patient just fell to the ground, as the result of a sudden loss of muscle tone. Having hit the ground, the patient would immediately rise to her feet. On one occasion she severely bruised her head and shoulder by striking a chair and a table. One month ago the parents noticed that their daughter appeared to lose consciousness briefly. At the time, she was carrying on a normal conversation, when she suddenly stopped and her gaze became fixed. After a few seconds she became alert and continued her conversation. This patient is suffering from a form of epilepsy known as petit mal. What is the correct term for the sudden involuntary contraction of the muscles of the trunk or extremities? Do you know the name for the condition of a patient who suddenly loses all muscle tone and falls to the ground?

9. A 45-year-old male suffering from amyotrophic lateral sclerosis was examined by a third-year medical student. The student found that the flexor and extensor muscles of the knee and ankle joints of the right leg were weaker than those of the left leg. However, he was of the opinion that the muscles of the left leg also were somewhat weaker than normal. On palpation of the extensor muscles of the right thigh it was possible to detect a twitching of the muscle fibers in the quadriceps muscle. Marked atrophy of the muscles of both legs also was noted. There was no evidence of cutaneous sensation on either limb. Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis is a condition in which there is degeneration of the motor anterior horn cells of the spinal cord and brainstem with secondary degeneration of the nervous tracts in the lateral and anterior portions of the spinal cord. Why do you think this patient had weakness and atrophy of the muscles of the lower limbs? What is the correct clinical term for the twitching of the muscle fibers in the extensor muscles of the right knee?

10. A 12-year-old girl was diagnosed as suffering from a medulloblastoma of the cerebellum. Clinical and radiological examinations revealed that the tumor was predominantly invading the right cerebellar hemisphere. Knowing that the cerebellum is concerned with the coordination of motor activity so that complex voluntary movements involving antagonistic muscle groups can take place in a precise manner, what tests would you perform on this patient to demonstrate loss of cerebellar function?

Additional Reading

Critchley, M., O'Leary, J. L., and Jennett, B. *Scientific Foundations of Neurology.* Philadelphia: Davis, 1972.

Curtis, B. A., Jacobson, S., and Marcus, E. M. *An Introduction to the Neurosciences.* Philadelphia: Saunders, 1972.

Judge, R. D., and Zuidema, G. D. *Physical Diagnosis: A Physiologic Approach to the Clinical Examination* (3rd Ed.). Boston: Little, Brown, 1974.

Walton, J. N. *Brain's Diseases of the Nervous System.* New York and London: Oxford University Press, 1977.

7
The Spinal Cord

The spinal cord, as noted in Chapter 1, is roughly cylindrical in shape. It begins superiorly at the foramen magnum in the skull, where it is continuous with the *medulla oblongata* of the brain, and it terminates inferiorly in the adult at the level of the *lower border of the first lumbar vertebra*. In the young child, it is relatively longer and usually ends at the upper border of the third lumbar vertebra. Thus it occupies the upper two-thirds of the *vertebral canal* of the vertebral column and is surrounded by the three meninges, the *dura mater*, the *arachnoid mater,* and the *pia mater*. Further protection is provided by the *cerebrospinal fluid*, which surrounds the spinal cord in the *subarachnoid space*.

In the cervical region, where it gives origin to the brachial plexus, and in the lower thoracic and lumbar regions, where it gives origin to the lumbosacral plexus, the spinal cord is fusiformly enlarged; the enlargements are referred to as the *cervical* and *lumbar enlargements* (Fig. 7-1). Inferiorly, the spinal cord tapers off into the *conus medullaris,* from the apex of which a prolongation of the pia mater, the *filum terminale*, descends to be attached to the posterior surface of the coccyx. The cord possesses, in the midline anteriorly, a deep longitudinal fissure, the *anterior median fissure*, and on the posterior surface, a shallow furrow, the *posterior median sulcus* (Fig. 7-1).

Along the entire length of the spinal cord are attached 31 pairs of spinal nerves by the *anterior* or *motor roots* and the *posterior* or *sensory roots* (Fig. 7-1). Each root is attached to the cord by a series of rootlets, which extend the whole length of the corresponding segment of the cord. Each posterior nerve root possesses a *posterior root ganglion*, the cells of which give rise to peripheral and central nerve fibers.

Structure of Spinal Cord

The spinal cord is composed of an inner core of *gray matter*, which is surrounded by an outer covering of *white matter* (Figs. 7-2 through 7-6).

Gray Matter

The gray matter, on cross section, is seen as an H-shaped pillar with *anterior and posterior gray columns, or horns,* united by a thin *gray commissure* containing the small *central canal* (Fig. 7-2). A small *lateral gray column or horn* is present in the thoracic and upper lumbar segments of the cord. The amount of gray matter present at any given level of the spinal cord is related to the amount of muscle innervated at that level. Thus, its size is greatest within the cervical and lumbosacral enlargements of the cord, which innervate the muscles of the upper and lower limbs, respectively (Figs. 7-2 through 7-6).

STRUCTURE OF GRAY MATTER. As in other regions of the central nervous system, the gray matter of the spinal cord consists of a mixture of nerve cells and their processes, neuroglia, and blood vessels. The nerve cells are multipolar and the neuroglia forms an intricate network around the nerve cell bodies and their neurites.

NERVE CELL GROUPS IN THE ANTERIOR GRAY COLUMNS. The majority of the nerve cells are large and multipolar and their axons pass out in the anterior roots of the spinal nerves as *alpha efferents*, which innervate skeletal muscles. The smaller nerve cells are also multipolar and the axons of many of these pass out in the anterior roots of the spinal nerves as *gamma efferents*, which innervate the intrafusal muscle fibers of neuromuscular spindles.

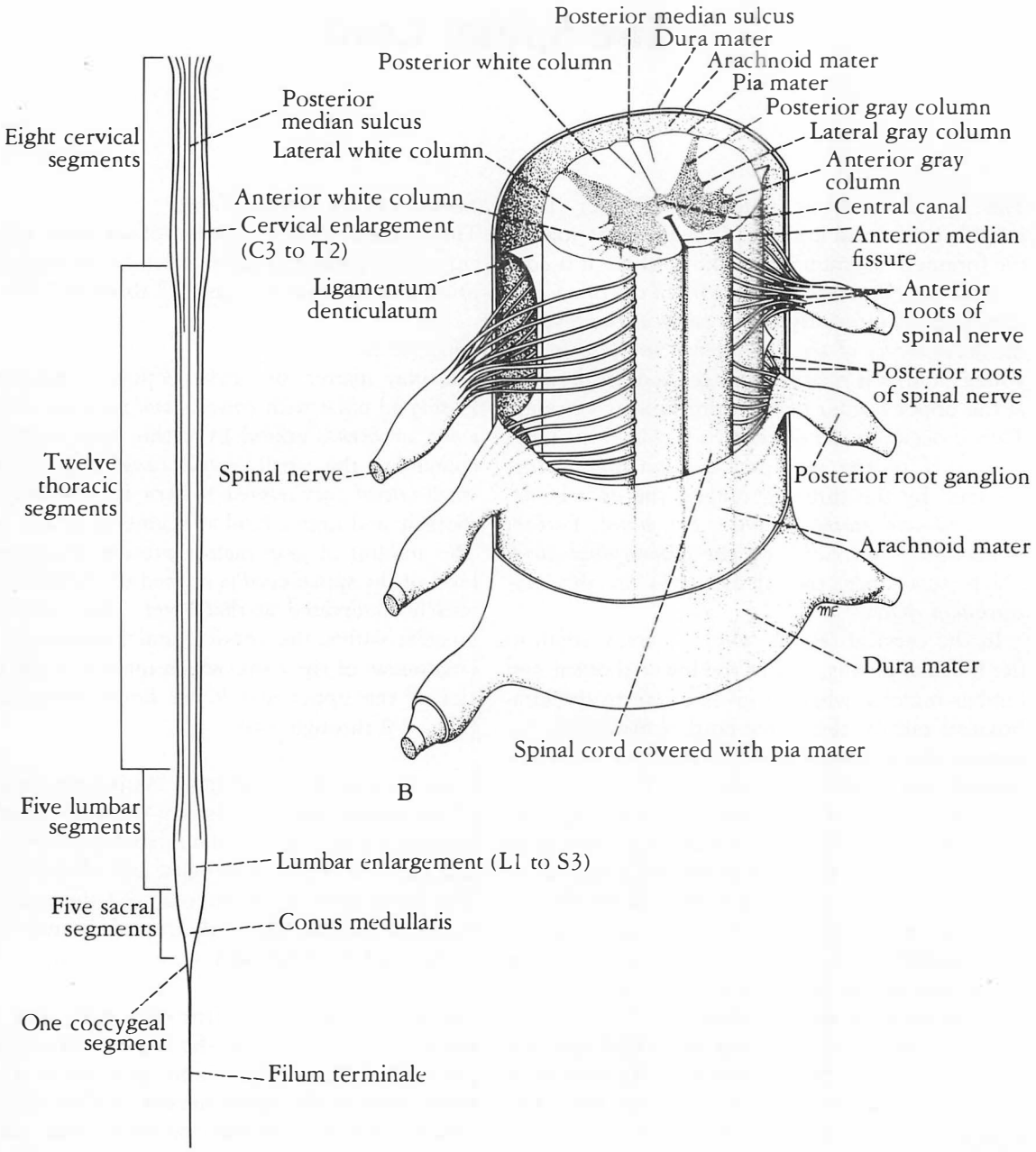


Fig. 7-1. Spinal cord.
A. Posterior view, showing cervical and lumbar enlargements.
B. Three segments of the spinal cord, showing the coverings of dura mater, arachnoid mater, and pia mater.

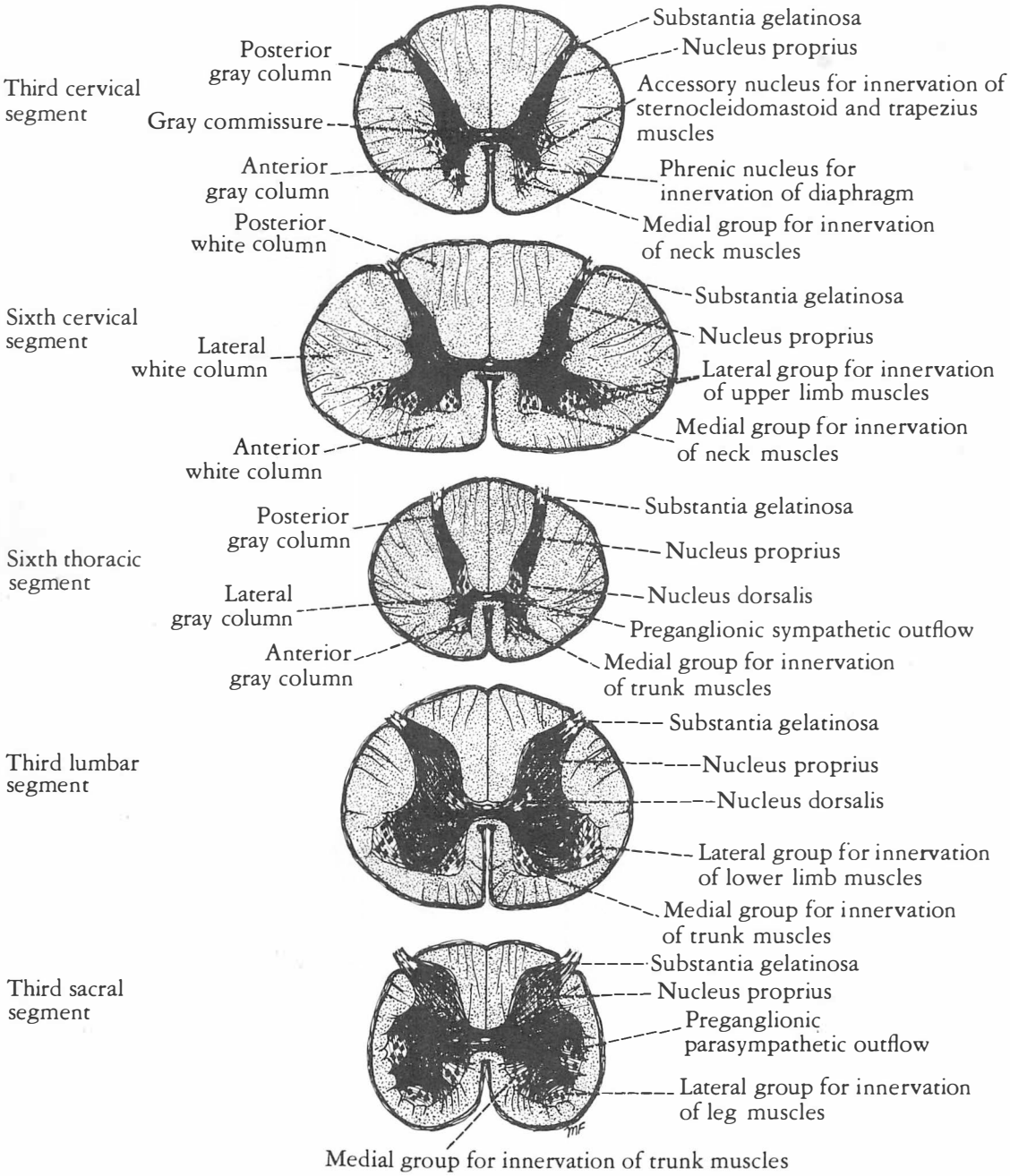


Fig. 7-2. Transverse sections of the spinal cord at different levels, showing the arrangement of the gray matter and white matter.

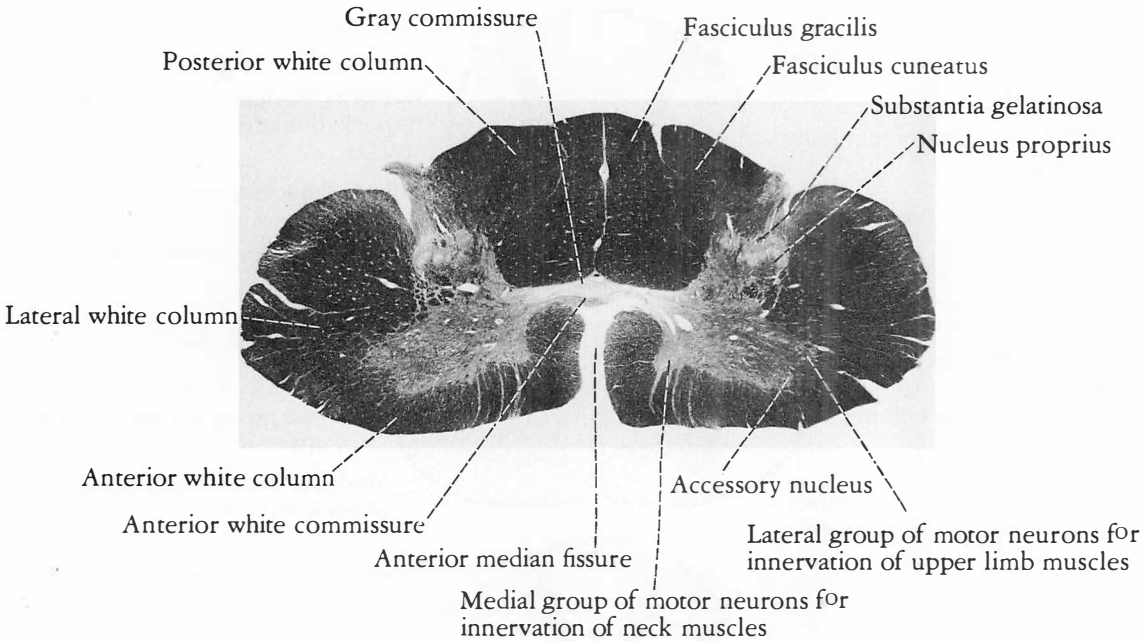


Fig. 7-3. Transverse section of the spinal cord at the level of the fifth cervical segment. (Weigert stain.)

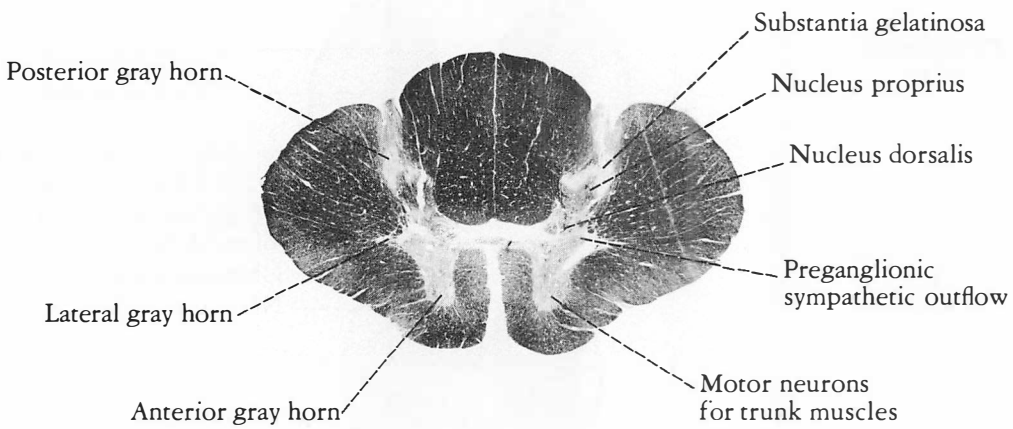


Fig. 7-4. Transverse section of the spinal cord at the level of the second thoracic segment. (Weigert stain.)

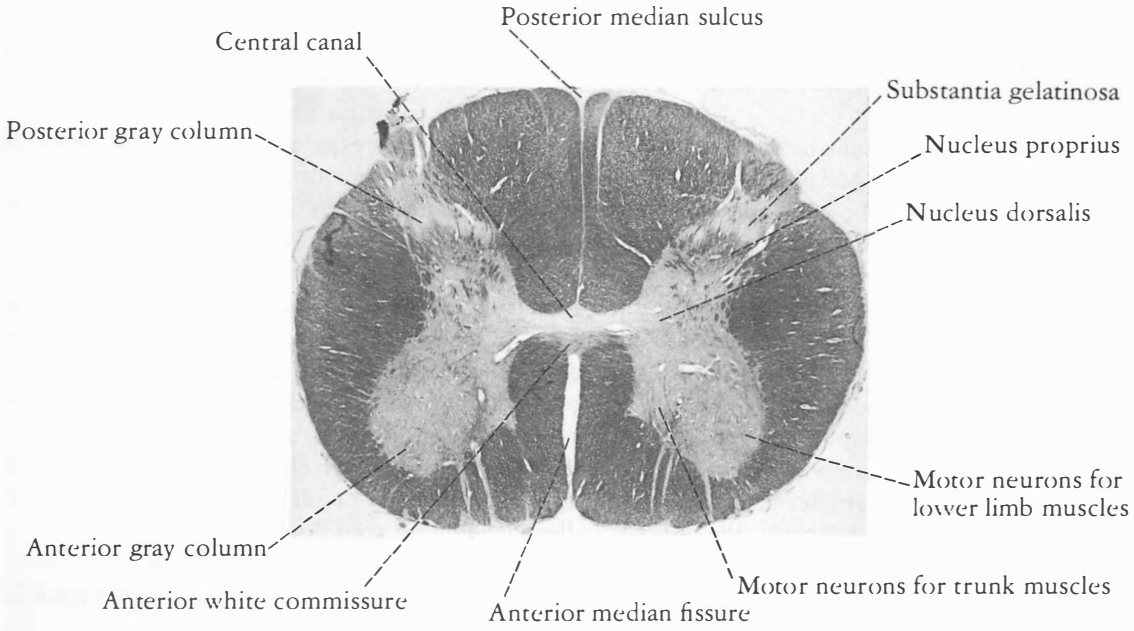


Fig. 7-5. Transverse section of the spinal cord at the level of the fourth lumbar segment. (Weigert stain.)

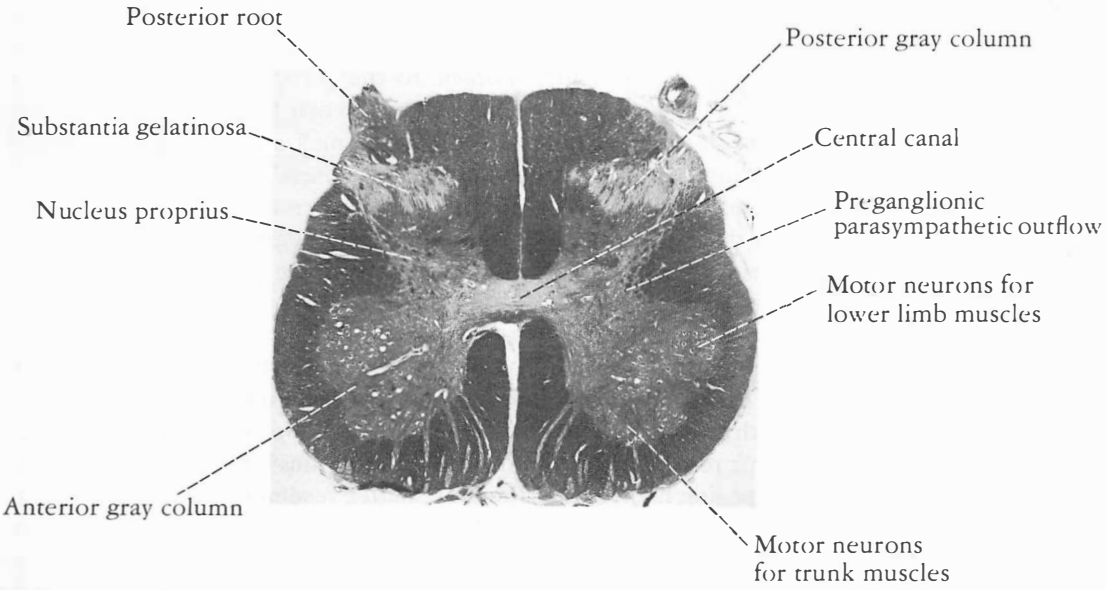


Fig. 7-6. Transverse section of the spinal cord at the level of the second sacral segment. (Weigert stain.)

For practical purposes, the nerve cells of the anterior gray column may be divided into three basic groups or columns—medial, central, and lateral (Figs. 7-2).

The medial group is present in most segments of the spinal cord and is responsible for innervating the skeletal muscles of the neck and trunk, including the intercostal and abdominal musculature.

The central group is the smallest and is present in some cervical and lumbosacral segments (Figs. 7-2 and 7-3). In the cervical part of the cord some of these nerve cells (segments C3, 4, and 5) specifically innervate the diaphragm and are collectively referred to as the *phrenic nucleus* (Fig. 7-2). In the upper five or six cervical segments, some of the nerve cells innervate the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles and are referred to as the *accessory nucleus* (Figs. 7-2 and 7-3). The axons of these cells form the spinal part of the accessory nerve. The *lumbosacral nucleus* present in the second lumbar down to the first sacral segments of the cord is made up of nerve cells whose axons have an unknown distribution.

The lateral group is present in the cervical and lumbosacral segments of the cord and is responsible for innervating the skeletal muscles of the limbs (Figs. 7-2, 7-3, 7-5, and 7-6).

NERVE CELL GROUPS IN THE POSTERIOR GRAY COLUMNS. There are four nerve cell groups of the posterior gray column, two that extend throughout the length of the cord and two that are restricted to the thoracic and lumbar segments.

The *substantia gelatinosa group* is situated at the apex of the posterior gray column throughout the length of the spinal cord (Figs. 7-2 through 7-6). It is largely composed of Golgi type II neurons and receives afferent fibers concerned with pain, temperature, and touch from the posterior root. Furthermore, it receives input from descending fibers from the cerebral cortex. It is believed that the input of the sensations of pain and temperature are modified by excitatory or inhibitory information from other sensory inputs and by information from the cerebral cortex.

The *nucleus proprius* is a group of large nerve cells situated anterior to the substantia gelatinosa throughout the spinal cord (Figs. 7-2 through 7-6). This nucleus constitutes the main bulk of cells present in the posterior gray column and receives fibers from the posterior white column that are associated with the senses of position and movement (proprioception), two-point discrimination, and vibration.

The *nucleus dorsalis (Clark's column)* is a group of nerve cells situated at the base of the posterior gray column and extending from the eighth cervical segment caudally to the third or fourth lumbar segment (Figs. 7-2, 7-4, and 7-5). The majority of the cells are comparatively large and are associated with proprioceptive endings (neuromuscular spindles and tendon spindles).

The *visceral afferent nucleus* is a group of nerve cells of medium size situated lateral to the nucleus dorsalis; it extends from the first thoracic to the third lumbar segment of the spinal cord. It is believed to be associated with receiving visceral afferent information.

NERVE CELL GROUPS IN THE LATERAL GRAY COLUMNS. The intermediolateral group of cells form the small lateral gray column, which extends from the first thoracic to the second or third lumbar segments of the spinal cord (Figs. 7-2 and 7-4). The cells are relatively small and give rise to preganglionic sympathetic fibers.

A similar group of cells found in the second, third, and fourth sacral segments of the spinal cord give rise to preganglionic parasympathetic fibers (Figs. 7-2 and 7-6).

THE GRAY COMMISSURE AND CENTRAL CANAL. In transverse sections of the spinal cord, the anterior and posterior gray columns on each side are seen to be connected by a transverse *gray commissure*, so that the gray matter resembles the letter H (Figs. 7-2 through 7-6). In the center of the gray commissure is situated the *central canal*. The part of the gray commissure that is situated posterior to the central canal is often referred to as the *posterior gray commissure;* similarly, the part that lies an-

terior to the canal is called the *anterior gray commissure*.

The central canal is present throughout the spinal cord (Figs. 7-2 through 7-6). Superiorly, it is continuous with the central canal of the caudal half of the medulla oblongata and above this it opens into the cavity of the fourth ventricle. Inferiorly in the conus medullaris, it expands into the fusiform *terminal ventricle* and terminates below within the root of the filum terminale. It is filled with cerebrospinal fluid and is lined with ciliated columnar epithelium, the *ependyma*. Thus it is seen that the central canal is closed inferiorly and opens superiorly into the fourth ventricle.

White Matter

The white matter, for purposes of description, may be divided into *anterior, lateral, and posterior white columns* (Figs. 7-1 through 7-6). The anterior column on each side lies between the midline and the point of emergence of the anterior nerve roots; the lateral column lies between the emergence of the anterior nerve roots and the entry of the posterior nerve roots; the posterior column lies between the entry of the posterior nerve roots and the midline.

Structure of white matter. As in other regions of the central nervous system, the white matter of the spinal cord consists of a mixture of nerve fibers, neuroglia, and blood vessels. It surrounds the gray matter and its white color is due to the high proportion of myelinated nerve fibers. The diameter of the nerve fibers varies from less than 1 mμ up to about 10 mμ; fibers of 3 mμ or less predominate.

Arrangement of nerve fiber tracts. The arrangement of the nerve fiber tracts within the spinal cord has been deduced as the result of animal experimentation and study of the human spinal cord for degenerative nerve fibers resulting from injury or disease. Although some nerve tracts are concentrated in certain areas of the white matter, it is now generally accepted that considerable overlap is present. For purposes of description, the spinal tracts are divided into ascending, descending, and intersegmental tracts and their relative positions in the white matter are described below. A simplified diagram, showing the general arrangement of the major tracts, is shown in Figure 7-9.

Ascending Tracts

TRACTS IN THE POSTERIOR WHITE COLUMN. The *fasciculus gracilis and cuneatus* are two large ascending tracts, which are separated from each other by a septum (Fig. 7-7). They convey information of proprioceptive sensibility, vibration sense, and tactile discrimination.

Tracts in the Lateral White Column

1. The *posterior spinocerebellar tract* is a flat band of fibers situated at the periphery of the lateral white column (Fig. 7-7). It conveys proprioceptive information and additional contributions from touch and pressure receptors. This information enables the cerebellum to participate in the control of voluntary movements.

2. The *anterior spinocerebellar tract* is a flat band of fibers situated at the periphery of the lateral white column and lying anterior to the posterior spinocerebellar tract (Fig. 7-7). Like the posterior cerebellar tract, it conveys proprioceptive information and contributions from touch and pressure receptors. This information enables the cerebellum to participate in the control of voluntary movements.

3. The *lateral spinothalamic tract* is situated medial to the anterior spinocerebellar tract in the lateral white column (Fig. 7-7). It conveys information concerned with pain and temperature sensibility.

4. The *spinotectal tract* is situated medial to the anterior spinocerebellar tract and anterior to the lateral spinothalamic tract (Fig. 7-7). It is concerned with providing an ascending pathway for spinovisual reflexes.

5. The *posterolateral tract (Lissauer's tract)* is situated between the tip of the posterior gray column and the surface of the spinal cord close to the posterior roots (Fig. 7-7). It is made up of fibers of the lateral part of the posterior roots, which divide into ascending and descending branches. (For details concerning function, see pages 307 and 309.)

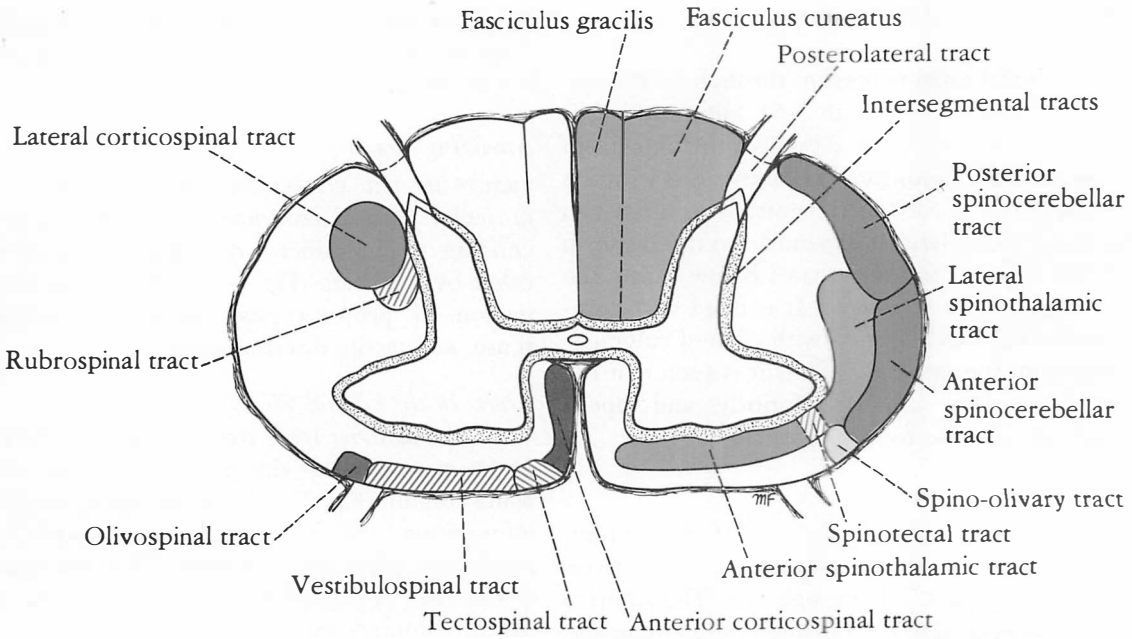


Fig. 7-7. Transverse section of spinal cord, showing the general arrangement of the ascending tracts on the right side and the descending tracts on the left side.

6. The *spinoreticular tract* is mixed with the lateral spinothalamic tract (Fig. 7-7). (For details concerning function, see pages 270 and 314.)

7. The *spino-olivary tract* is situated at the junction of the anterior and lateral white columns (Fig. 7-7). It conveys information from cutaneous and proprioceptive organs.

TRACTS IN THE ANTERIOR WHITE COLUMN. The *anterior spinothalamic tract* lies medial to the anterior nerve roots and is concerned with conveying tactile and pressure sensibilities (Fig. 7-7).

Descending Tracts

TRACTS IN THE POSTERIOR WHITE COLUMN. A number of small tracts have been described by workers whose observations have been based on studies of clinical material. Until more information is available, no further details will be given here.

TRACTS IN THE LATERAL WHITE COLUMN

1. The *lateral corticospinal tract* is situated anterior to the posterior gray column and medial to the posterior spinocerebellar tract (Fig. 7-7). In the lumbar and sacral regions, where the posterior spinocerebellar tract is not present, the lateral corticospinal tract extends laterally to the surface of the spinal cord. The lateral corticospinal tract is an important motor pathway concerned with voluntary movement.

2. The *rubrospinal tract* forms a small band situated anterior to the lateral corticospinal tract (Fig. 7-7). It conveys impulses concerned with muscular activity.

3. The *lateral reticulospinal tract* almost certainly exists in the human subject but its position has not been established. In animals, it is situated medial to the rubrospinal and corticospinal tracts. This tract is thought to play an important role in muscular activity.

4. The *descending autonomic fibers* are thought to

be situated mainly in the lateral white column. Some authorities believe they are located close to the lateral corticospinal tract; others believe they are diffusely dispersed throughout the white columns of the cord. The autonomic fibers are concerned with controlling visceral function.

5. The *olivospinal tract* is situated lateral to the anterior nerve roots and is present only in the upper cervical segments (Fig. 7-7). Its precise function is unknown, although it may be associated with muscular activity.

TRACTS IN THE ANTERIOR WHITE COLUMN

1. The *anterior corticospinal tract* is small and is situated alongside the anterior median fissure (Fig. 7-7). It is confined to the cervical and superior half of the thoracic region of the spinal cord. Although its precise function is unknown, it forms an important pathway concerned with voluntary movement.

2. The *vestibulospinal tract* is a flat band of fibers situated at the periphery of the anterior white column (Fig. 7-7). It conveys information concerned with equilibratory control to the anterior gray horn cells and therefore is associated with the control of muscle tone.

3. The *tectospinal tract* is small and is situated lateral to the margin on the anterior median fissure (Fig. 7-7). It forms part of a reflex nervous pathway associated with rotation of the head and moving of the arms in response to visual stimuli.

4. The *reticulospinal fibers* are scattered throughout the anterior white column and are concerned with motor function.

Intersegmental Tracts

TRACTS IN THE POSTERIOR WHITE COLUMN. The *posterior intersegmental tract* is a thin band of fibers situated posterior to the gray commissure (Fig. 7-7). As its name implies, its fibers run from one segment of the cord to another, thus establishing important intersegmental spinal reflexes.

TRACTS IN THE LATERAL WHITE COLUMN. The *lateral intersegmental tract* is a thin band of fibers situated immediately lateral to the gray matter of the spinal cord (Fig. 7-7). Its function is similar to that of the posterior intersegmental tract, but it is also believed to contain within it some reticulospinal and descending autonomic fibers.

TRACTS IN THE ANTERIOR WHITE COLUMN. The *anterior intersegmental tract* is a thin band of fibers situated immediately anterior to the gray matter of the spinal cord (Fig. 7-7). Its functions are believed to be identical to those of the posterior and lateral intersegmental tracts.

It must be emphasized that the above description of the arrangement of the different tracts within the spinal cord is the barest outline. Nevertheless, the information provided is sufficient for the physician. Those wishing to obtain further details should consult the original publications listed at the end of the chapter.

Meninges of the Spinal Cord

The spinal cord, like the brain, is surrounded by three meninges: the dura mater, the arachnoid mater, and the pia mater.

Dura Mater of the Spinal Cord

The dura mater is a dense, strong, fibrous membrane that encloses the spinal cord and cauda equina (Figs. 7-1 and 1-6). It is continuous above through the foramen magnum with the meningeal layer of dura covering the brain. Inferiorly, it ends on the filum terminale at the level of the lower border of the second sacral vertebra. The dural sheath lies loosely in the vertebral canal and is separated from the walls of the canal by the *extradural space.* This contains loose areolar tissue and the *internal vertebral venous plexus*. The dura mater extends along each nerve root and becomes continuous with the connective tissue surrounding each spinal nerve (epineurium). The inner surface of the dura mater is in contact with the arachnoid mater (Fig. 7-1).

Arachnoid Mater of the Spinal Cord

The arachnoid mater is a delicate impermeable membrane that covers the spinal cord and lies

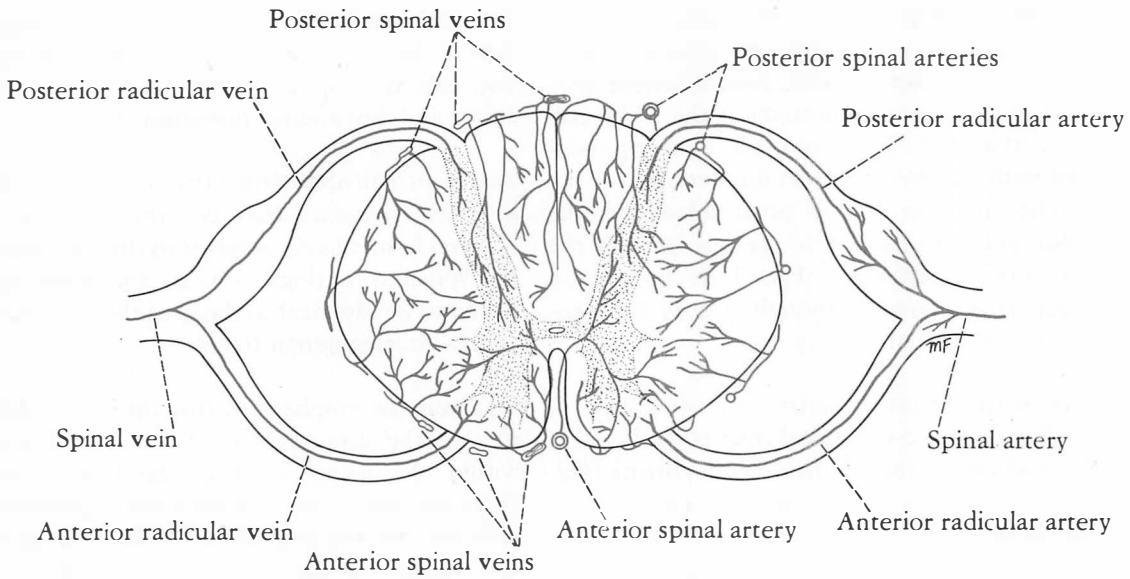


Fig. 7-8. Transverse section of spinal cord, showing arterial supply and venous drainage.

between the pia mater internally and the dura mater externally (Fig. 7-1). It is separated from the pia mater by a wide space, the *subarachnoid space,* which is filled with *cerebrospinal fluid* (Fig. 7-1). The subarachnoid space is crossed by a number of fine strands of connective tissue. The arachnoid mater is continuous above through the foramen magnum with the arachnoid covering the brain. Inferiorly, it ends on the filum terminale at the level of the lower border of the second sacral vertebra (see Fig. 1-6). The arachnoid mater continues along the spinal nerve roots, forming small lateral extensions of the subarachnoid space.

Pia Mater of the Spinal Cord

The pia mater, a vascular membrane that closely invests the spinal cord (Fig. 7-1), is thickened on either side between the nerve roots to form the *ligamentum denticulatum,* which passes laterally to adhere to the arachnoid and dura. It is by this means that the spinal cord is suspended in the middle of the dural sheath. The pia mater extends along each nerve root and becomes continuous with the connective tissue surrounding each spinal nerve (Fig. 7-1).

Cerebrospinal Fluid

The cerebrospinal fluid is produced by the *choroid plexuses* within the lateral, third, and fourth ventricles of the brain. It escapes from the ventricular system of the brain through the three foramina in the roof of the fourth ventricle and so enters the subarachnoid space (see p. 14). The fluid now circulates both superiorly over the surface of the cerebral hemispheres and inferiorly around the spinal cord. The spinal part of the subarachnoid space extends down as far as the lower border of the second sacral vertebra (see Fig. 1-6). Eventually, the fluid enters the bloodstream by passing into the *arachnoid villi* and diffusing through their walls.

In addition to removing waste products associated with neuronal activity, the cerebrospinal fluid provides a medium that surrounds the spinal cord. This fluid, together with the bony and ligamentous walls of the vertebral canal, effectively protects the spinal cord from trauma.

Blood Supply of the Spinal Cord

The *posterior spinal arteries,* which arise either directly or indirectly from the vertebral arteries, divide to form two descending branches, which run inferiorly along the side of the spinal cord, one posterior and one anterior to the attachments of the posterior spinal nerve roots (Fig. 7-8). The anterior spinal arteries, which arise from the vertebral arteries, unite to form a single artery, which runs down within the anterior median fissure (Fig. 7-8).

The posterior and anterior spinal arteries are reinforced by *radicular arteries* (Fig. 7-8), which are branches of local arteries (deep cervical, intercostal, and lumbar arteries). Radicular arteries enter the vertebral canal through the intervertebral foramina. Commonly, one of the anterior radicular arteries is larger than the remainder and is referred to as the *arteria radicularis magna.* It usually arises from an intersegmental branch of the descending aorta in the lower thoracic or upper lumbar vertebral levels. Usually it arises on the left-hand side. The importance of this artery lies in the fact that it may be the major source of blood to the lower two-thirds of the spinal cord.

The branches of the anterior spinal artery supply approximately the anterior two-thirds of the spinal cord, while the remaining posterior third is supplied by branches from the posterior spinal arteries (Fig. 7-8). A small area on the periphery of the spinal cord is supplied by small arteries from a plexus in the pia mater.

The veins of the spinal cord drain into six tortuous longitudinal channels that communicate superiorly within the skull with the veins of the brain and the venous sinuses. They drain mainly into the internal vertebral venous plexus.

Clinical Notes

General Anatomical Features of Clinical Importance

The spinal cord may be described, for practical purposes, as consisting of columns of motor and sensory nerve cells, the gray matter, surrounded by ascending and descending tracts, the white matter. It lies within the vertebral canal and is protected by three surrounding fibrous membranes, the meninges. It is cushioned against trauma by the cerebrospinal fluid and is held in position by the denticulate ligaments on each side and the filum terminale inferiorly. The spinal cord is segmented, and paired posterior (sensory) and anterior (motor) roots corresponding to each segment of the cord leave the vertebral canal through the intervertebral foramina.

The spinal cord is shorter than the vertebral column and terminates inferiorly in the adult at the level of the lower border of the first lumbar vertebra. The subarachnoid space extends inferiorly beyond the end of the cord and ends at the level of the lower border of the second sacral vertebra.

Because of the shortness of the spinal cord relative to the length of the vertebral column, the nerve roots of the lumbar and sacral segments have to take an oblique course downward to reach their respective intervertebral foramina; the resulting leach of nerve roots forms the cauda equina.

A lumbar puncture needle may be inserted into the subarachnoid space below the level of the second lumbar vertebra without damaging the spinal cord. (For details, see p. 33.)

The blood supply to the spinal cord is derived from an anterior artery and two posterior spinal arteries. These arteries form longitudinally running vessels reinforced by segmental arteries that enter the vertebral canal through the intervertebral foramina. The anterior two-thirds of the spinal cord is supplied by the anterior spinal artery, which is reinforced in the cervical region from the vertebral arteries. In the thoracic region the anterior spinal artery receives only a few radicular arteries from the aorta, and for this reason the thoracic region of the spinal cord is predisposed to

vascular insufficiency. In the lumbar region the anterior spinal artery is reinforced by a large anterior radicular artery (arteria radicularis magna) that arises from the aorta, usually on the left side.

Anterior and Posterior Nerve Roots

Each nerve root has a covering of pia, arachnoid, and dura mater. The anterior and posterior roots unite in the intervertebral foramina to form the spinal nerves. Here the meninges fuse with the epineurium of the spinal nerves. Either or both spinal nerve roots may be involved in syphilitic spinal meningitis or pyogenic meningitis. The posterior roots may be involved in tabes dorsalis and herpes zoster. Their anatomical location, both in the vertebral canal and in the intervertebral foramina, exposes them to compression from tumors of the vertebral column and to irritation from abnormal constituents of the cerebrospinal fluid, such as blood following a subarachnoid hemorrhage. A herniated intervertebral disc, a primary or secondary vertebral tumor, vertebral destruction by tumor or infection, or a fracture dislocation can press upon the spinal nerve roots in the intervertebral foramina. Even severe scoliosis may result in compression of the nerve roots.

A lesion of one posterior spinal nerve root will produce pain in the area of skin innervated by that root, and also in the muscles that receive their sensory nerve supply from that root. Movements of the vertebral column in the region of the lesion will heighten the pain, and coughing and sneezing will also make it worse by raising the pressure within the vertebral canal. Before there is actual loss of sensation in the dermatome there may be evidence of hyperalgesia and hyperesthesia.

A lesion of an anterior root will result in paralysis of any muscle that is supplied exclusively by that root and a partial paralysis of any muscle that is supplied partially by that root. In both cases, fasciculation and muscle atrophy occur.

Compression of the Spinal Cord

If injuries to the spinal cord are excluded (see p. 29), the causes of compression may be divided into extradural and intradural. The intradural causes may be divided into those that arise outside the spinal cord (extramedullary) and those that arise within the cord (intramedullary).

The extradural causes include herniation of an intervertebral disc, infection of the vertebrae with tuberculosis, and primary and secondary tumors of the vertebra; leukemic deposits and extradural abscesses may also compress the spinal cord. The two common extramedullary tumors are meningiomas and nerve fibromas. Intramedullary causes include primary tumors of the spinal cord, such as gliomas.

The clinical signs and symptoms are produced by an interference with the normal anatomical and physiological functions of the spinal cord. Pressure on the spinal arteries causes ischemia of the spinal cord with degeneration of nerve cells and their fibers. Pressure on the spinal veins causes edema of the spinal cord with an interference in the function of the neurons. Finally, direct pressure on the white and gray matter of the spinal cord and the spinal nerve roots interferes with nerve conduction. At the same time, the circulation of the cerebrospinal fluid is obstructed and the composition of the fluid changes below the level of obstruction.

Clinical Signs

One of the earliest signs is pain. This may be local pain in the vertebra involved or pain radiating along the distribution of one or more spinal nerve roots. The pain is made worse by coughing or sneezing and is usually worse at night, when the patient is recumbent.

Interference with motor function occurs early. Involvement of the anterior gray column motor cells at the level of the lesion results in partial or complete paralysis of muscles, with loss of tone and muscle wasting. The early involvement of the corticospinal and other descending tracts produces muscular weakness, increased muscle tone (spasticity), increased tendon reflexes below the level of the lesion, and an extensor plantar response. The degree of sensory loss will depend on the nerve tracts involved. A lesion of the posterior

white columns of the spinal cord will cause loss of muscle joint sense (proprioception), vibration sense, and tactile discrimination below the level of the lesion on the same side. Involvement of the lateral spinal thalamic tracts will cause loss of pain and heat and cold sensations on the opposite side of the body below the level of the lesion. A more detailed discussion of the clinical signs and symptoms associated with lesions of the spinal cord appears following the description of the ascending and descending tracts of the spinal cord. (See pages 316, 335, and 337.)

Since many spinal tumors are benign and can be successfully removed (provided that irreversible damage to the spinal cord has not occurred as a result of compression of the blood supply), an early accurate diagnosis is essential. The following investigations should be performed: (1) radiography of the vertebral column, (2) lumbar puncture, and (3) myelography.

EXAMINATION OF CEREBROSPINAL FLUID. Performing a lumbar puncture (spinal tap) is of great value in making a diagnosis of compression of the spinal cord. (For details, see p. 33.) Normal cerebrospinal fluid is clear and colorless and it has the following constituents:

Protein: 15–45 mg per 100 ml
Glucose:40–80 mg per 100 ml
Chloride:720–750 mg per 100 ml
Cells:0–5 lymphocytes per cu mm

The normal pressure of cerebrospinal fluid with the patient lying quietly on his side and breathing through his mouth is between 50 mm and 150 mm of water.

If the cause of the compression is obstructing the flow of cerebrospinal fluid in the subarachnoid space, the normal variations in pressure corresponding to the pulse and respiration are reduced or absent. Compression of the internal jugular veins in the neck raises the cerebral venous pressure and inhibits the absorption of cerebrospinal fluid in the arachnoid granulations, thus producing a rise in the manometric reading of the cerebrospinal fluid pressure. If this fails to occur, the subarachnoid space is blocked and the patient is exhibiting a positive *Queckenstedt's sign.*

Should the tumor completely occupy the vertebral canal in the region of the cauda equina, no cerebrospinal fluid may flow out of the lumbar puncture needle.

Normally the cerebrospinal fluid is clear. In the presence of a tumor the cerebrospinal fluid may become yellow and clot spontaneously owing to the rise in protein content.

RADIOGRAPHIC APPEARANCES OF THE VERTEBRAL COLUMN. The views commonly used in radiography are anteroposterior, lateral, and oblique. Vertebral destruction owing to tuberculosis or to primary or secondary tumors of the vertebrae, or fractures owing to trauma usually can be revealed by x-ray examination. Erosion of the pedicles by a tumor within the intervertebral foramina may be seen. Narrowing of the space between the vertebral bodies with bony spurs because of osteoarthritic changes in adjacent vertebral bodies indicates the presence of a chronic herniation of an intervertebral disc.

MYELOGRAPHY. The subarachnoid space may be studied radiographically by the injection of a contrast medium into the subarachnoid space by lumbar puncture. Iodized oil has been used with success. This technique is referred to as *myelography* (Figs. 7-9 and 9-10).

If the patient is sitting in the upright position, the oil sinks to the lower limit of the subarachnoid space at the level of the lower border of the second sacral vertebra. By placing the patient on a tilting table, the oil can be made to gravitate gradually to higher levels of the vertebral column.

A normal myelogram will show pointed lateral projections at regular intervals at the intervertebral space levels. The reason for this is that the opaque medium fills the lateral extensions of the subarachnoid space around each spinal nerve. The presence of a tumor or a prolapsed intervertebral disc may obstruct the movement of the oil from one region to another when the patient is tilted.

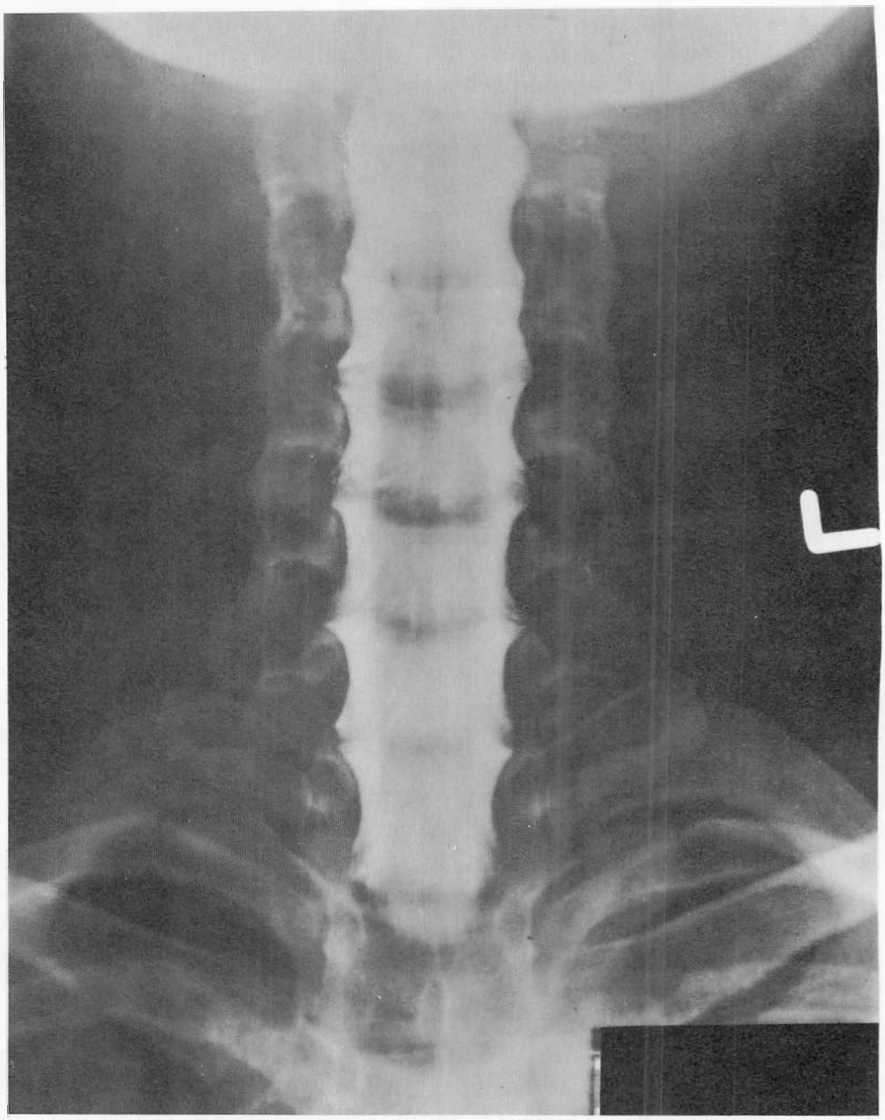


Fig. 7-9. Posteroanterior myelogram of the cervical region of a 22-year-old female. (From R. S. Snell and A. C. Wyman. An Atlas of Normal Radiographic Anatomy. *Boston: Little, Brown, 1976.)*

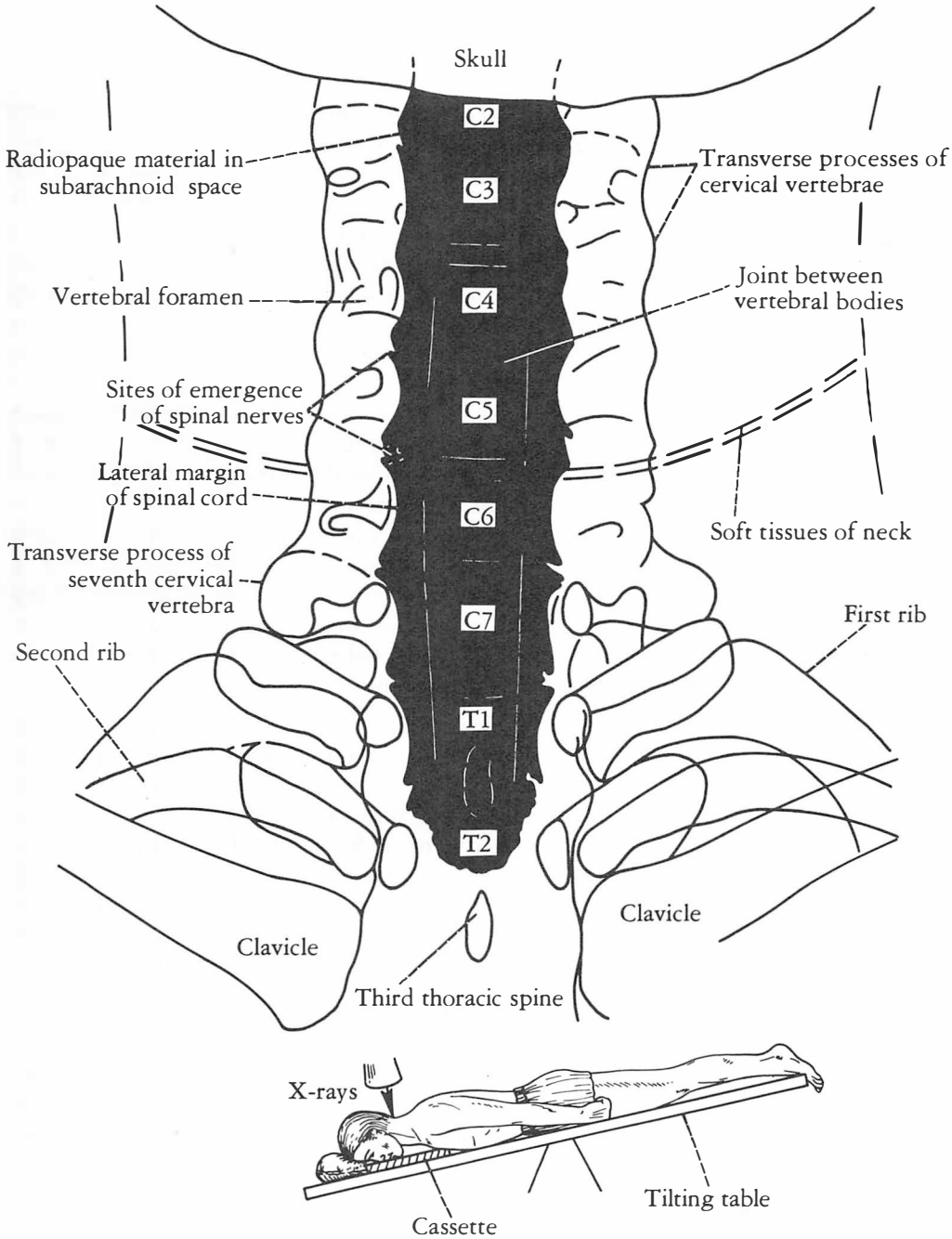


Fig. 7-10. Diagrammatic explanation of myelogram shown in Figure 7-9.

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 484.

1. A 53-year-old widower was admitted to the hospital complaining of a burning pain over his right shoulder region and the upper part of his right arm. The pain had started three weeks previously and since that time had progressively worsened. The pain was accentuated by moving his neck and by coughing. Two years previously he had been treated for osteoarthritis of his vertebral column. The patient stated that he had been a football player at college and since that time he continued to take an active part in the game until his forty-second year. Physical examination revealed weakness, wasting, and fasciculation of the right deltoid and biceps brachii muscles. The right biceps tendon reflex was absent. Radiological examination revealed extensive spur formation on the bodies of the fourth, fifth, and sixth cervical vertebrae. The patient demonstrated hyperesthesia and partial analgesia in the skin over the lower part of the right deltoid and down the lateral side of the arm. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, make the diagnosis. How is the pain produced? Why is the pain made worse by coughing?

2. A 66-year-old woman was admitted to the hospital because of her increasing difficulty in walking. Two weeks before admission she had been able to walk with the help of a stick. Since that time walking had become increasingly difficult and for the past two days she could not walk at all. She had complete control of micturition and defecation. On examination, the handgrip was weak on both sides but power was normal in the proximal segments of the upper extremities. The tendon reflexes of the upper limbs and the sensory function were normal. Both lower limbs showed muscular weakness with increased muscle tone, especially on the left side. The knee jerks and ankle jerks (tendon reflexes) in both lower limbs were grossly exaggerated and there were bilateral extensor plantar responses. There was a loss of sensation of pain below the fifth thoracic dermatome on both sides of the body. Postural sense was impaired in both great toes and vibration sense was absent below the fifth thoracic segmental level. Radiological examination of the vertebral column showed nothing abnormal. A myelogram in the lumbar region revealed a complete block at the lower border of the fourth thoracic vertebra. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, make the diagnosis. How would you treat this patient? Name the tracts in the spinal cord that are responsible for conduction of the sensation of pain. What is the position of these tracts in the spinal cord? Name the tracts responsible for the conduction of postural sense and vibration sense from the spinal cord to the brain. Why did the patient have increasing difficulty in walking? Why were the tendon reflexes in the lower limbs exaggerated, and why did the patient exhibit bilateral extensor plantar responses?

3. How would you perform a lumbar puncture? What important information can be obtained by carrying out this form of examination? What is the normal pressure of cerebrospinal fluid with the patient lying on his side? What is the normal concentration of protein, chloride, and glucose in the cerebrospinal fluid? What color is the normal cerebrospinal fluid? Can one inject foreign substances into the subarachnoid space?

4. A patient's notes state that he has a positive Queckenstedt's sign. What does that mean?

5. What is the blood supply to the spinal cord? Which areas of the spinal cord are supplied by the anterior spinal artery? Which regions of the spinal cord are most suceptible to ischemia?

6. Draw a diagram of a cross section of the spinal cord at the level of the fourth thoracic segment. Label the gray and white matter. Indicate the position of the major groups of nerve cells in the gray matter.

7. Draw a diagram of a cross section of the spinal cord in the lower cervical region. Indicate the positions of the major ascending and descending tracts in the white matter. Now imagine that this patient has syringomyelia; place in position the lesion and identify the nerve tracts and nerve cells that will be pressed upon by the expanding lesion. What symptoms and signs would you expect from such a patient?

8. A myelogram was performed on a 35-year-old man who visited a neurologist with a history of pain in the fourth left thoracic dermatome that he had had for three months. The radiopaque iodized oil was introduced into the subarachnoid space with the patient in the vertical position on a tilting table. Altering the tilt of the table caused the oil to gravitate to higher levels, but there was no evidence of blockage in the subarachnoid space. However, it was noted that the lateral extension of the space around the fourth left thoracic spinal nerve did not show up on the x-ray film. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, give the diagnosis. What is the lateral extension of the subarachnoid space around the spinal nerve? In anatomical terms, how far does this extension pass laterally?

9. A neurologist made the statement in a lecture that the nerve cell groups found in the gray matter of the spinal cord are not small, isolated groups of cells but, rather, should be considered as columns of cells extending along the spinal cord. Do you agree with this statement?

10. Define each of the following terms: (a) *ligamentum denticulatum,* (b) *filum terminale,* (c) *substantia gelatinosa,* (d) *nucleus proprius*, and (e) *anterior gray commissure.*

Additional Reading

Carpenter, M. B. *Human Neuroanatomy* (7th ed.). Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins, 1973.

Crosby, E. C., Humphrey, T., and Lauer, E. W. *Correlative Anatomy of the Nervous System.* New York: Macmillan, 1962.

Walton, J. N. *Brain's Diseases of the Nervous System.* (8th ed.). New York and London: Oxford University Press, 1977.

Warwick, R., and Williams, P. L. (eds.). *Gray's Anatomy* (35th Brit. Ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders, 1973.

8
The Medulla Oblongata

Gross Appearance

The medulla oblongata connects the pons superiorly with the spinal cord inferiorly (Fig. 8-1). The junction of the medulla and spinal cord is at the origin of the anterior and posterior roots of the first cervical spinal nerve, which corresponds approximately to the level of the foramen magnum. The medulla oblongata is conical in shape, its broad extremity being directed superiorly. The *central canal* of the spinal cord continues upward into the lower half of the medulla; in the upper half of the medulla it expands as the *cavity of the fourth ventricle* (Fig. 8-1).

On the anterior surface of the medulla is the anterior median fissure, which is continuous inferiorly with the *anterior median fissure* of the spinal cord (Fig. 8-1). On each side of the median fissure there is a swelling called the *pyramid*. The pyramids are composed of bundles of nerve fibers that originate in large nerve cells in the precentral gyrus of the cerebral cortex. The pyramids taper inferiorly and it is here that the majority of the descending fibers cross over to the opposite side, forming the *decussation of the pyramids* (Fig. 8-1). The *anterior external arcuate fibers* are a few nerve fibers that emerge from the anterior median fissure above the decussation and pass laterally over the surface of the medulla oblongata. Posterolateral to the pyramids are the *olives*, which are oval elevations produced by the underlying *olivary nuclei*. In the groove between the pyramid and the olive emerge the rootlets of the hypoglossal nerve. Posterior to the olives are the *inferior cerebellar peduncles* (Fig. 8-1), which connect the medulla to the cerebellum. In the groove between the olive and the inferior cerebellar peduncle emerge the roots of the glossopharyngeal and vagus nerves and the cranial roots of the accessory nerve (Fig. 8-1).

The posterior surface of the superior half of the medulla oblongata forms the lower part of the *floor of the fourth ventricle* (Fig. 8-1). The posterior surface of the inferior half of the medulla is continuous with the posterior aspect of the spinal cord and possesses a *posterior median sulcus*. On each side of the median sulcus there is an elongated swelling, the *gracile tubercle,* produced by the underlying *gracile nucleus* (Fig. 8-1). Lateral to the gracile tubercle is a similar swelling, the *cuneate tubercle,* produced by the underlying *cuneate nucleus*.

Internal Structure of the Medulla Oblongata

As in the spinal cord, the medulla oblongata consists of white matter and gray matter, but a study of transverse sections of this region shows that they have been extensively rearranged. This rearrangement can be explained embryologically by the expansion of the *neural tube* to form the *hindbrain vesicle,* which becomes the *fourth ventricle* (Fig. 8-2). The extensive lateral spread of the fourth ventricle results in an alteration in the position of the derivatives of the *alar* and *basal plates* of the embryo. To assist in understanding this concept, remember that in the spinal cord the derivatives of the alar and basal plates are situated posterior and anterior to the *sulcus limitans,* respectively, and in the case of the medulla oblongata they are situated lateral and medial to the sulcus limitans, respectively (Fig. 8-2).

The internal structure of the medulla oblongata will be considered at four levels: (1) level of decussation of pyramids, (2) level of decussation of

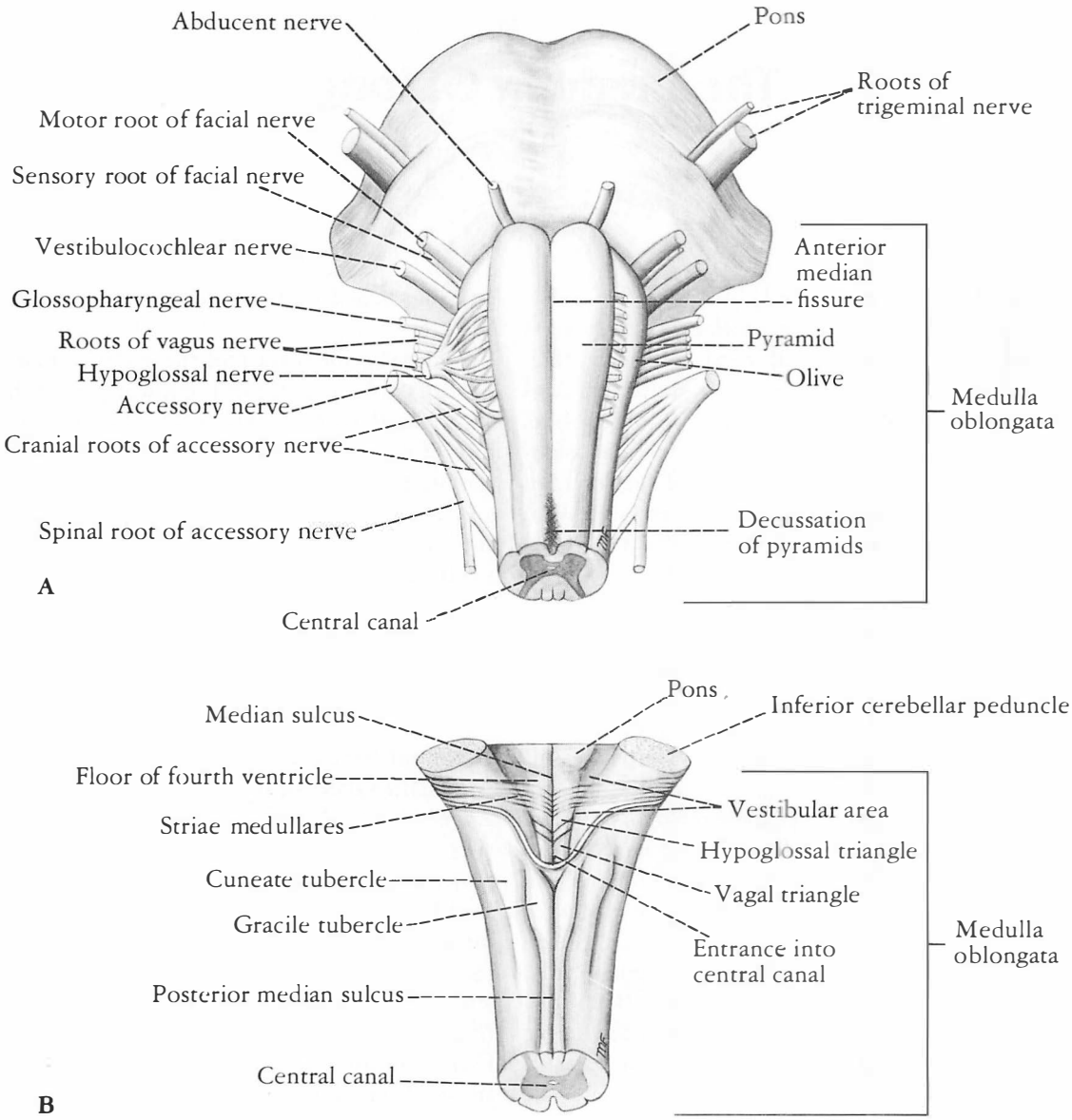


Fig. 8-1. The medulla oblongata.
A. Anterior view.
B. Posterior view. Note that the roof of the fourth ventricle and the cerebellum have been removed.

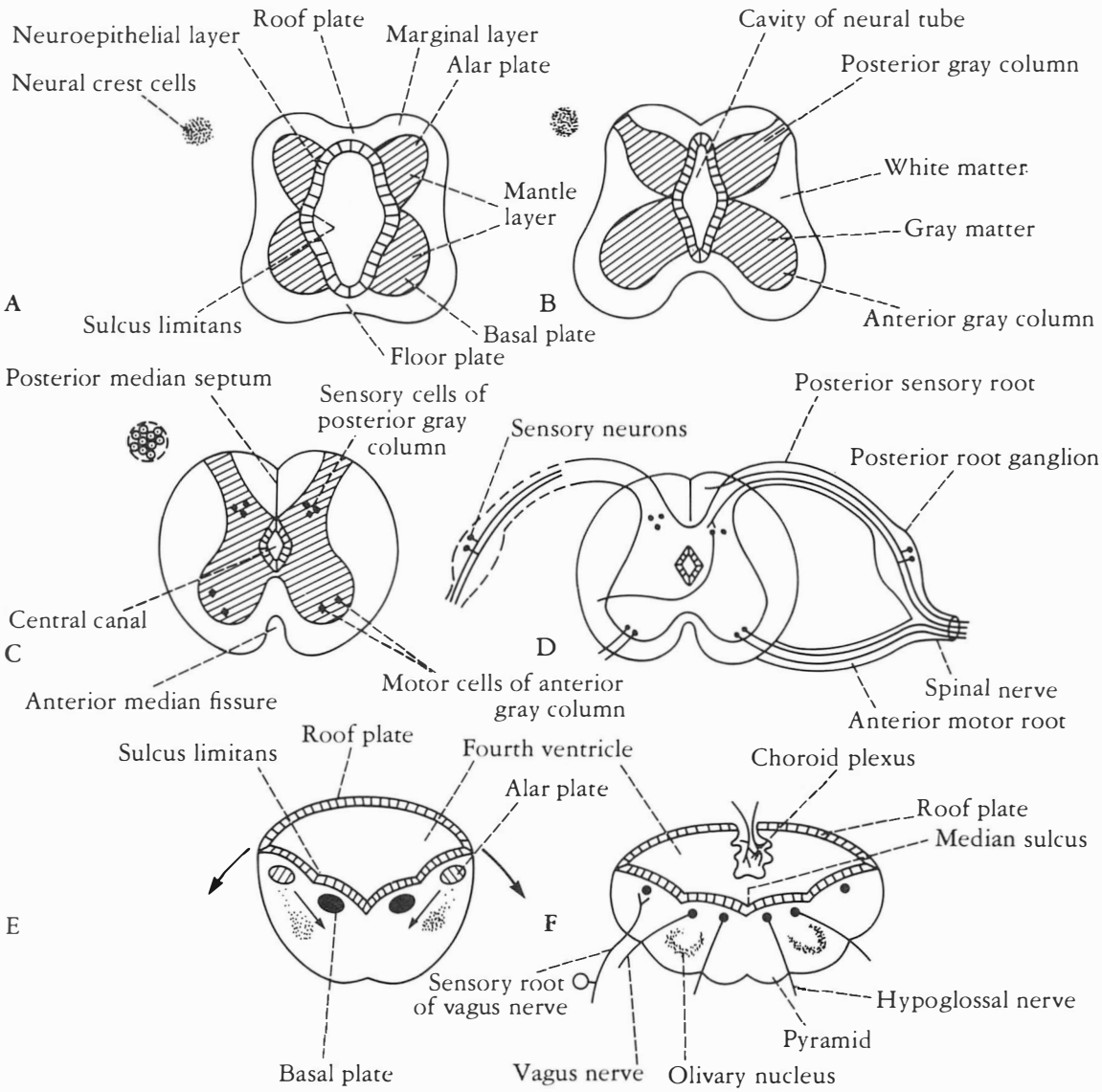


Fig. 8-2. Stages in the development of the spinal cord (A, B, C, D) and the medulla oblongata (E, F). The neural crest cells will form the first afferent sensory neurons in the posterior root ganglia of the spinal nerves and the sensory ganglia of the cranial nerves.

lemnisci, (3) level of the olives, and (4) level just inferior to the pons.

Level of Decussation of Pyramids

A transverse section through the inferior half of the medulla oblongata (Figs. 8-3 and 8-4) passes through the *decussation of the pyramids,* the great motor decussation. In the superior part of the medulla the corticospinal fibers occupy and form the pyramid, but inferiorly about three-quarters of the fibers cross the median plane and continue down the spinal cord in the lateral white column as the *lateral corticospinal tract.* As these fibers cross the midline, they sever the continuity between the anterior column of the gray matter of the spinal cord and the gray matter that surrounds the central canal.

The *fasciculus gracilis* and the *fasciculus cuneatus* continue to ascend superiorly posterior to the central gray matter (Figs. 8-3 and 8-4). The *nucleus gracilis* and the *nucleus cuneatus* appear as posterior extensions of the central gray matter.

The *substantia gelatinosa* in the posterior gray column of the spinal cord becomes continuous with the inferior end of the *nucleus of the spinal tract of the trigeminal nerve.* The fibers of the tract of the nucleus are situated between the nucleus and the surface of the medulla oblongata.

The lateral and anterior white columns of the spinal cord are easily identified in these sections and their fiber arrangement is unchanged (Figs. 8-3 and 8-4).

Level of Decussation of Lemnisci

A transverse section through the inferior half of the medulla oblongata, a short distance above the level of the decussation of the pyramids, passes through the *decussation of lemnisci,* the great sensory decussation (Figs. 8-3 and 8-5). The decussation of the lemnisci takes place anterior to the central gray matter and posterior to the pyramids. It should be understood that the lemnisci have been formed from the *internal arcuate fibers,* which have emerged from the anterior aspects of the *nucleus gracilis* and *nucleus cuneatus.* The internal arcuate fibers first travel anteriorly and laterally round the central gray matter. They then curve medially toward the midline, where they decussate with the corresponding fibers of the opposite side (see Figs. 8-3 and 8-5).

The *nucleus of the spinal tract of the trigeminal nerve* lies lateral to the internal arcuate fibers. The *spinal tract of the trigeminal nerve* lies lateral to the nucleus (see Figs. 8-3 and 8-5).

The *lateral and anterior spinothalamic tracts and the spinotectal tracts* occupy an area lateral to the decussation of the lemnisci (see Fig. 8-3). They are very close to one another and collectively are known as the *spinal lemniscus.* The *spinocerebellar, vestibulospinal,* and the *rubrospinal tracts* are situated in the anterolateral region of the medulla oblongata.

Level of the Olives

A transverse section through the olives passes across the inferior part of the fourth ventricle (Figs. 8-6 and 8-7). The amount of gray matter has increased at this level owing to the presence of the olivary nuclear complex, the nuclei of the vestibulocochlear, glossopharyngeal, vagus, accessory, and hypoglossal nerves, and the arcuate nuclei.

Olivary Nuclear Complex

The largest nucleus of this complex is the *inferior olivary nucleus* (Figs. 8-6 and 8-7). The gray matter is shaped like a crumpled bag with its mouth directed medially; it is responsible for the elevation on the surface of the medulla called the *olive.* Smaller *dorsal and medial accessory olivary nuclei* also are present. The cells of the inferior olivary nucleus send fibers medially across the midline to enter the cerebellum through the inferior cerebellar peduncle. Afferent fibers reach the inferior olivary nuclei from the spinal cord (the *spino-olivary tracts*) and from the cerebellum and cerebral cortex. The function of the olivary nuclei is not known, although they are believed to be associated with voluntary muscle movement.

Vestibulocochlear Nuclei

The *vestibular nuclear complex* is made up of the following nuclei: (1) *medial vestibular nucleus,* (2) *inferior vestibular nucleus,* (3) *lateral vestibular nu-*

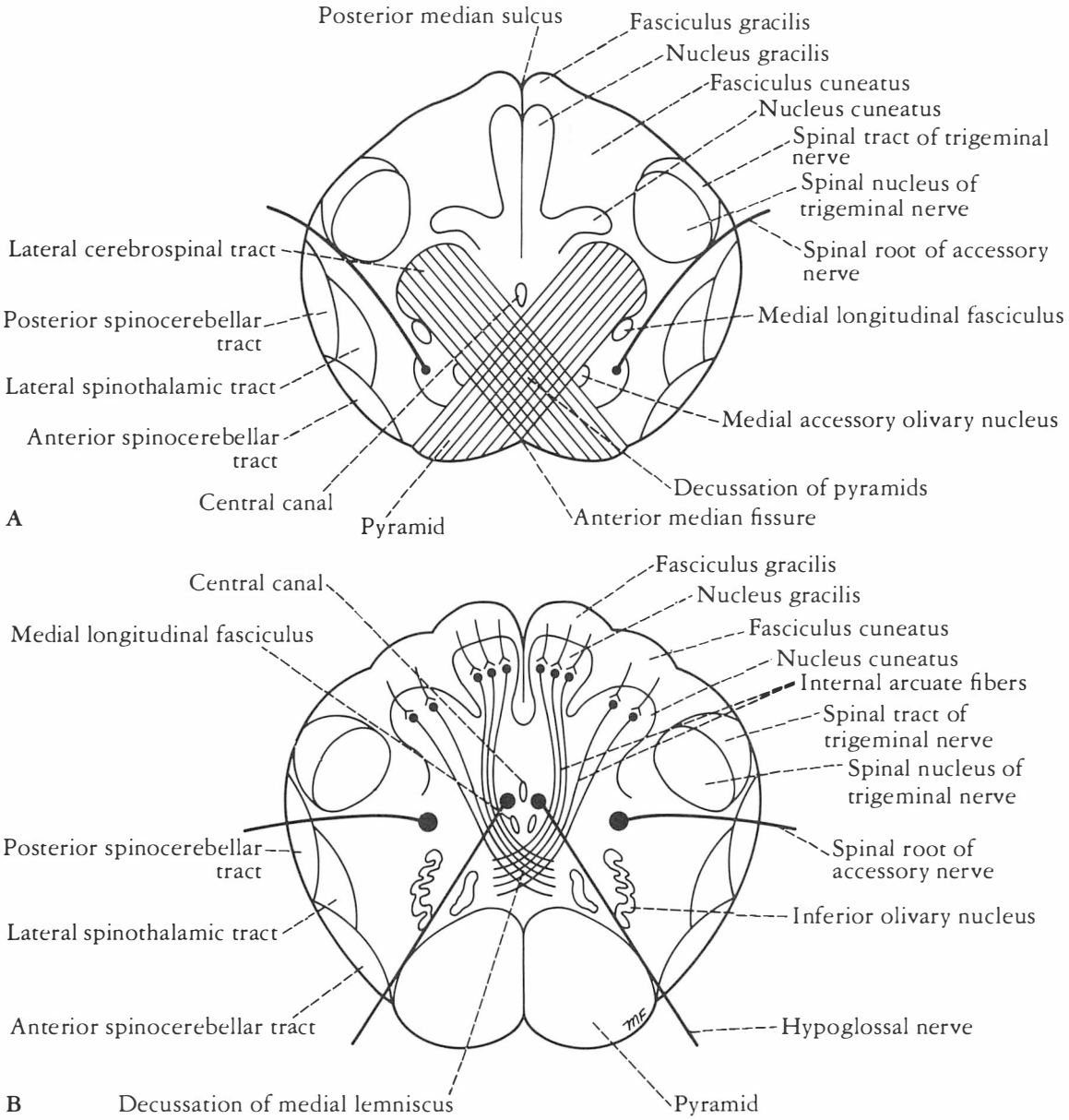


Fig. 8-3. Transverse sections of the medulla oblongata.
A. Level of decussation of the pyramids.
B. Level of decussation of the medial lemnisci.

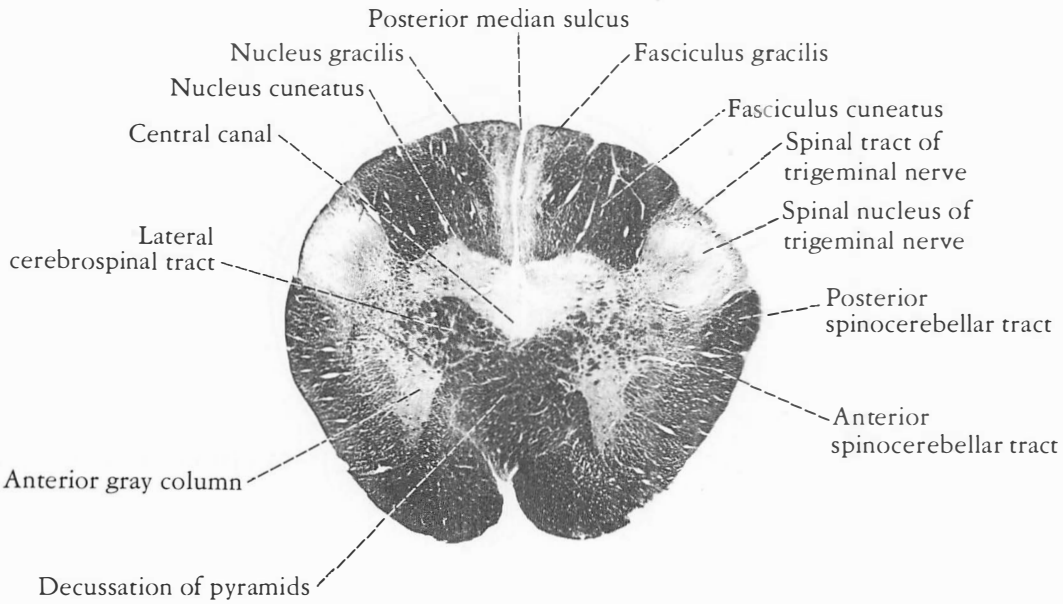


Fig. 8-4. Transverse section of the medulla oblongata at the level of the decussation of the pyramids.

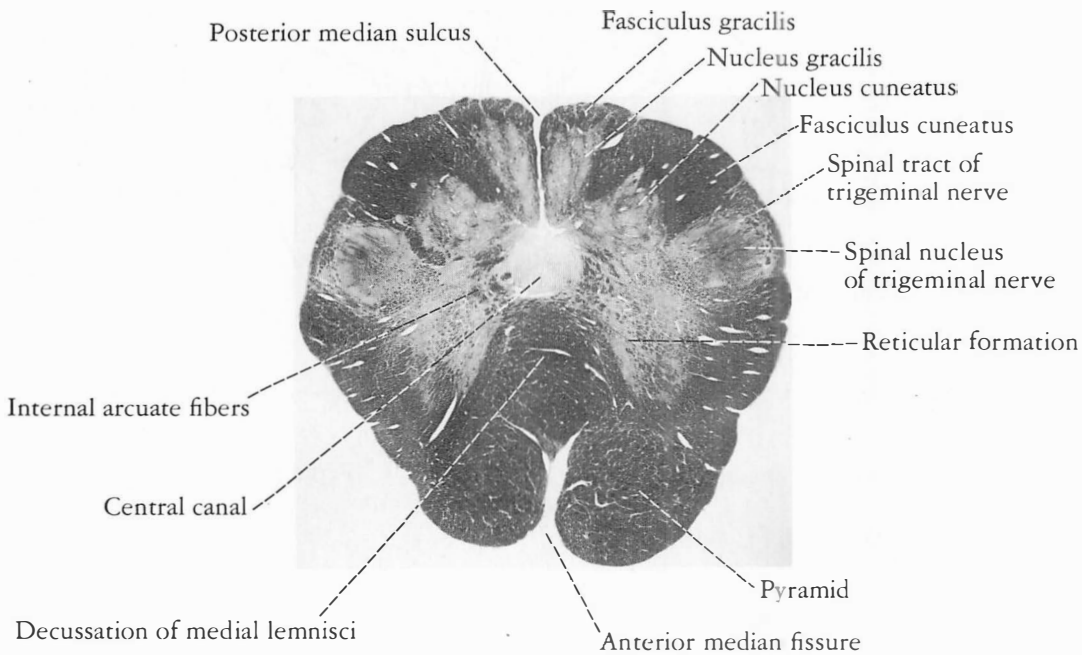


Fig. 8-5. Transverse section of the medulla oblongata at the level of the decussation of the medial lemnisci. (Weigert stain.)

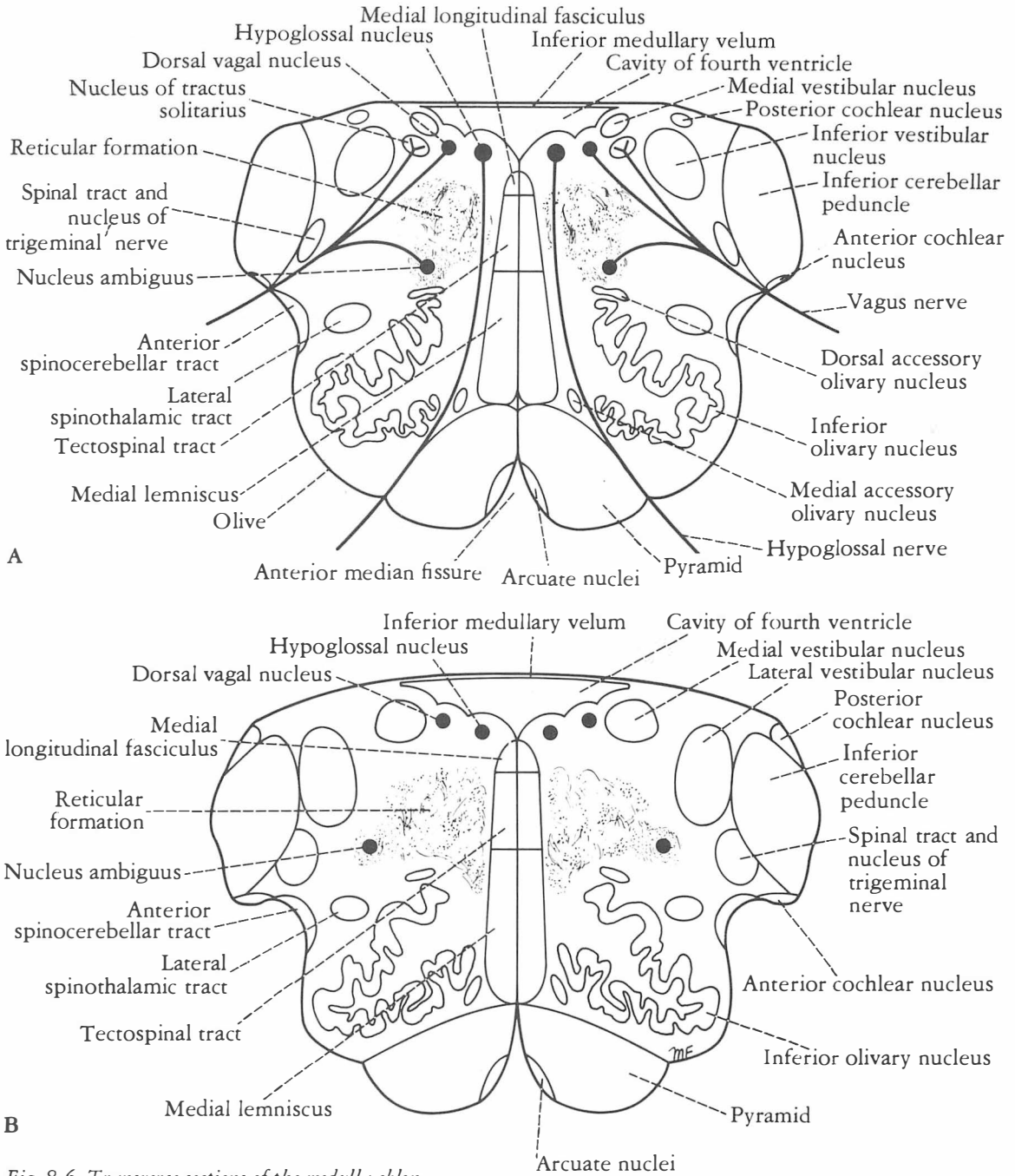


Fig. 8-6. Transverse sections of the medulla oblongata at the level of:
A. Middle of the olivary nuclei.
B. Superior part of the olivary nuclei just inferior to the pons.

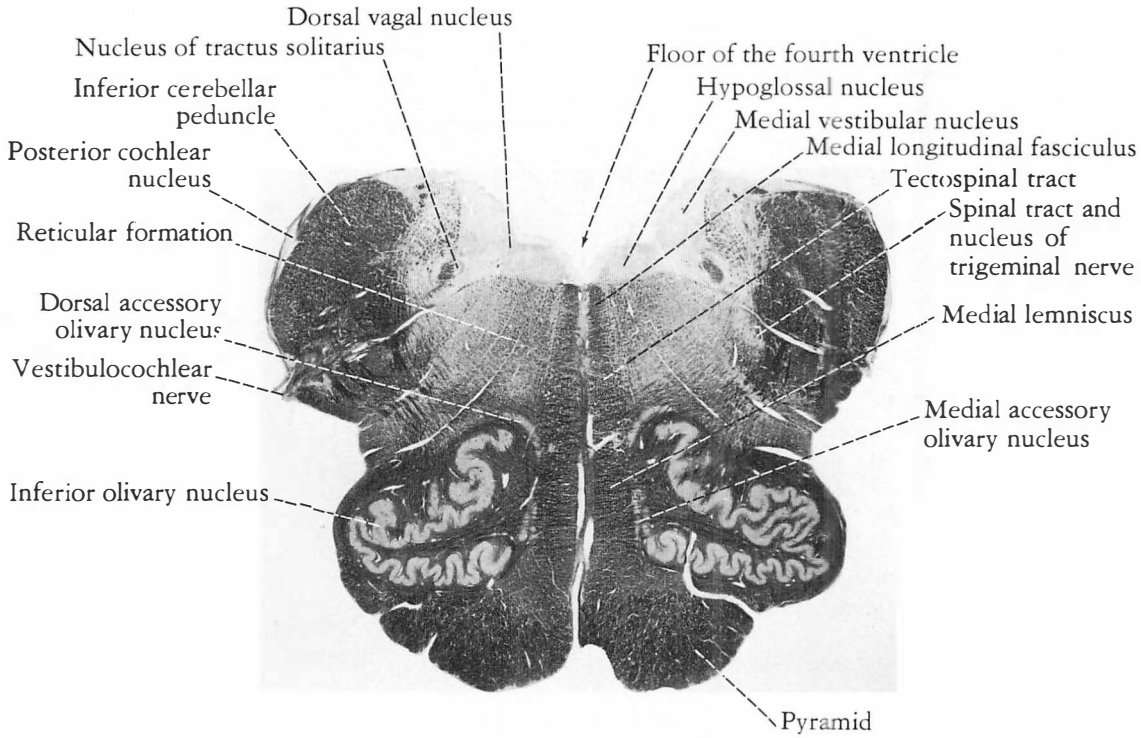


Fig. 8-7. Transverse section of the medulla oblongata at the level of the middle of the olivary nuclei. (Weigert stain.)

cleus, and (4) *superior vestibular nucleus.* The details of these nuclei and their connections will be discussed later (see p. 368). It should be noted that the medial and inferior vestibular nuclei can be seen on section at this level (Figs. 8-6 and 8-7).

The *cochlear nuclei* are two in number. The *anterior cochlear nucleus* is situated on the anterolateral aspect of the inferior cerebellar peduncle and the *posterior cochlear nucleus* is situated on the posterior aspect of the peduncle lateral to the floor of the fourth ventricle (Figs. 8-6 and 8-7). The connections of these nuclei will be described later (see p. 368).

The Nucleus Ambiguus

The nucleus ambiguus consists of large motor neurons and is situated deep within the reticular formation (Figs. 8-6 and 8-8). The emerging nerve fibers join the glossopharyngeal, vagus, and cranial part of the accessory nerve and are distributed to voluntary skeletal muscle.

Central Gray Matter

The central gray matter lies beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle at this level (Figs. 8-6 and 8-7). Passing from medial to lateral (Fig. 8-8) the following important structures may be recognized: (1) the *hypoglossal nucleus,* (2) the *dorsal nucleus of the vagus,* (3) the *nucleus of the tractus solitarius,* and (4) the *medial and inferior vestibular nuclei* (see above). The nucleus ambiguus, referred to above, has become deeply placed within the reticular formation (see Fig. 8-6). The connections and functional significance of these nuclei will be described later.

Arcuate Nuclei

The arcuate nuclei are thought to be inferiorly displaced *pontine nuclei* (see p. 184) and are situated

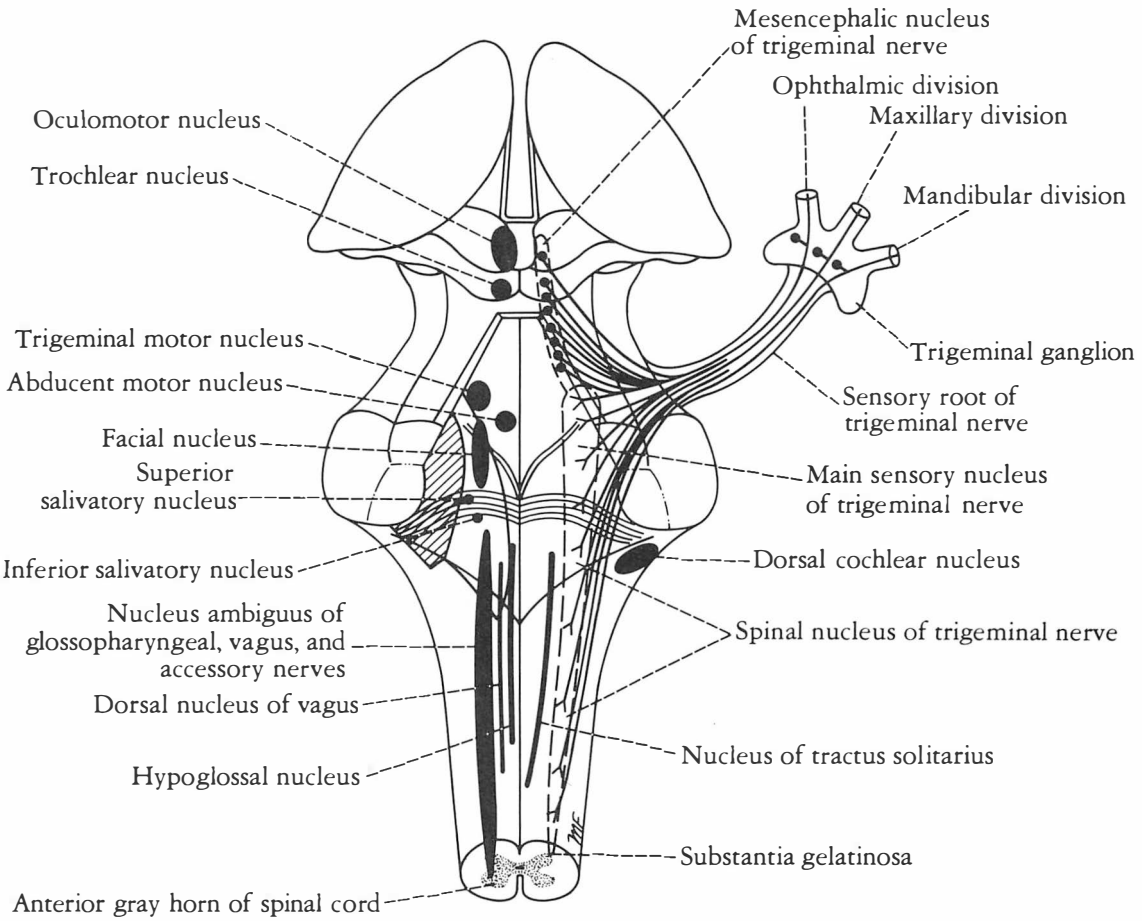


Fig. 8-8. Position of the cranial nerve nuclei within the brainstem. The hatched area indicates the position of the vestibular nuclei.

on the anterior surface of the pyramids (see Fig. 8-6). They receive nerve fibers from the cerebral cortex and send efferent fibers to the cerebellum through the *anterior external arcuate fibers.*

The *pyramids* containing the corticospinal and corticonuclear fibers are situated in the anterior part of the medulla separated by the anterior median fissure (see Figs. 8-6 and 8-7); the corticospinal fibers descend to the spinal cord and the corticonuclear fibers are distributed to the motor nuclei of the cranial nerves.

The *medial lemniscus* forms a flattened tract on each side of the midline posterior to the pyramid (see Figs. 8-6 and 8-7). These fibers emerge from the decussation of the lemnisci and convey sensory information to the thalamus.

The *medial longitudinal fasciculus* forms a small tract of nerve fibers situated on each side of the midline posterior to the medial lemniscus and anterior to the hypoglossal nucleus (see Figs. 8-6 and 8-7). It consists of ascending and descending fibers, the connections of which will be described on page 181.

The *inferior cerebellar peduncle* is situated in the posterolateral corner of the section on the lateral side of the fourth ventricle (see Figs. 8-6 and 8-7).

The *spinal tract of the trigeminal nerve and its nucleus* are situated on the anteromedial aspect of the inferior cerebellar peduncle (see Figs. 8-6 and 8-7).

The *anterior spinocerebellar tract* is situated near the surface in the interval between the inferior olivary nucleus and the nucleus of the spinal tract of the trigeminal nerve (see Figs. 8-6 and 8-7). The *spinal lemniscus,* consisting of the *lateral spinothalamic and spinotectal tracts* and the rubrospinal tract, are deeply placed.

The *reticular formation,* consisting of a diffuse mixture of nerve fibers and small groups of nerve cells, is deeply placed posterior to the olivary nucleus (see Figs. 8-6 and 8-7). The reticular formation represents, at this level, only a small part of this system, which is also present in the pons and midbrain.

The *glossopharyngeal, vagus,* and *cranial part of the accessory nerves* can be seen running forward and laterally through the reticular formation (see Fig. 8-6). The nerve fibers emerge between the olives and the inferior cerebellar peduncles. The *hypoglossal nerves* also run anteriorly and laterally through the reticular formation and emerge between the pyramids and the olives (see Fig. 8-6).

Level of the Medulla Oblongata Just Inferior to the Pons

There are no major changes in the distribution of the gray and white matter (see Figs. 8-6 and 8-8). The lateral vestibular nucleus has replaced the inferior vestibular nucleus, and the cochlear nuclei now are visible on the anterior and posterior surfaces of the inferior cerebellar peduncle.

Blood Supply of the Medulla Oblongata

The vertebral, anterior and posterior spinal, posterior inferior cerebellar, and basilar arteries all send branches to the medulla oblongata.

Clinical Notes

Raised Pressure in the Posterior Cranial Fossa

The medulla oblongata is situated in the posterior cranial fossa, lying beneath the tentorium cerebelli and above the foramen magnum. It is related anteriorly to the basal portion of the occipital bone and the upper part of the odontoid process of the axis and posteriorly to the cerebellum.

In patients with tumors of the posterior cranial fossa, the intracranial pressure is raised and the brain, i.e., the cerebellum and the medulla oblongata, tends to be pushed toward the area of least resistance, and there is a downward herniation of the medulla and cerebellar tonsils through the foramen magnum. This will produce the symptoms of headache, neck stiffness, and paralysis of the glossopharyngeal, vagus, accessory, and hypoglossal nerves owing to traction. In these circumstances it is extremely dangerous to perform a lumbar puncture, because the sudden withdrawal of cerebrospinal fluid may precipitate further herniation of the brain through the foramen magnum and a sudden failure of vital functions resulting from pressure and ischemia of the cranial nerve nuclei present in the medulla oblongata.

Arnold-Chiari Phenomenon

The *Arnold-Chiari malformation* is a congenital anomaly in which there is a herniation of the tonsils of the cerebellum and the medulla oblongata through the foramen magnum into the vertebral canal. This results in the blockage of the exits in the roof of the fourth ventricle to the cerebrospinal fluid, causing internal hydrocephalus. It is commonly associated with craniovertebral anomalies or various forms of spina bifida. Signs and symptoms related to pressure on the cerebellum and medulla oblongata and involvement of the last four cranial nerves are associated with this condition.

Vascular Disorders of the Medulla Oblongata

The posterolateral part of the medulla oblongata is supplied by the posterior inferior cerebellar artery, which is usually a branch of the vertebral

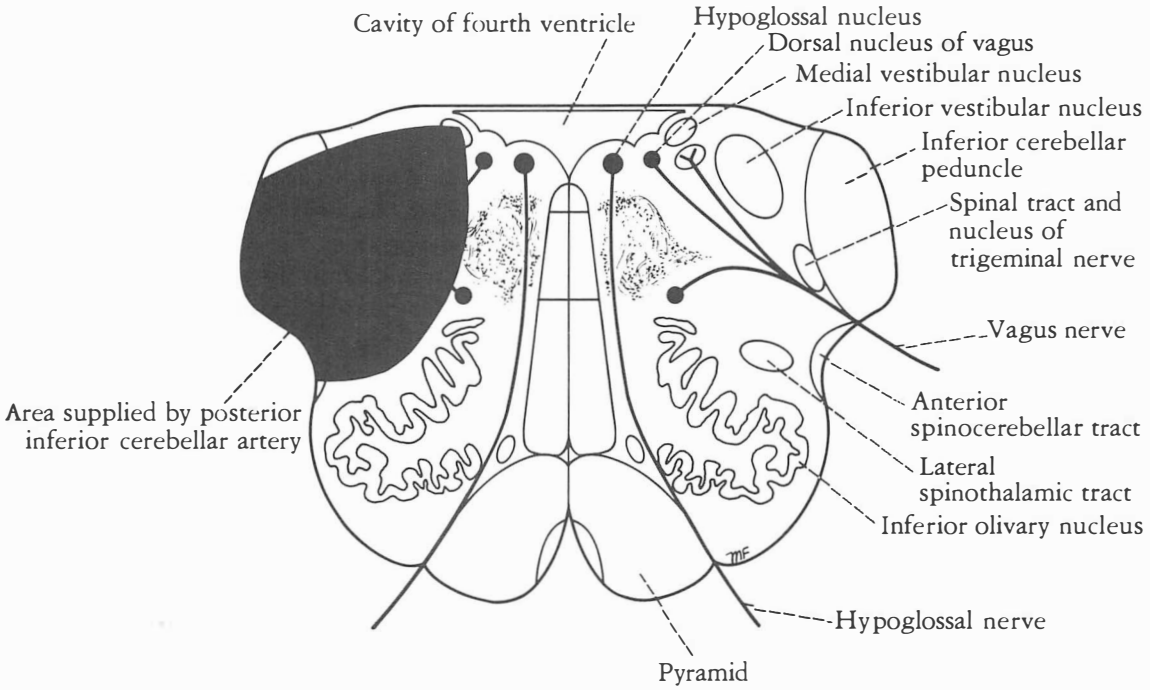


Fig. 8-9. Transverse section of the medulla oblongata at the level of the middle of the olivary nuclei, showing the area supplied by the posterior inferior cerebellar artery.

artery (Fig. 8-9). Occlusion of these arteries produces the following signs and symptoms: dysphagia and dysarthria due to paralysis of the ipsilateral palatal and laryngeal muscles (innervated by the nucleus ambiguus); analgesia and thermoanesthesia on the ipsilateral side of the face (nucleus and spinal tract of the trigeminal nerve); nystagmus (vestibular nuclei); Horner's syndrome on the side of the lesion (descending sympathetic fibers); ipsilateral cerebellar signs (involvement of cerebellum on same side); loss of sensations of pain and temperature on the opposite half of the body (spinal lemniscus).

Functional Significance of the Medulla Oblongata

It is important to remember that the medulla oblongata not only contains many cranial nerve nuclei that are concerned with vital functions (e.g., regulation of heart rate and respiration), but it also serves as a conduit for the passage of ascending and descending tracts connecting the spinal cord to the higher centers of the nervous system. These tracts may become involved in demyelinating diseases, neoplasms, and vascular disorders (see above).

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 486.

1. While carrying out a physical examination of a patient with an intracranial tumor, the neurologist turned to a medical student and asked, "What signs or symptoms would you look for that would enable you to localize the tumor to the region of the medulla oblongata?" How would you have answered that question?

2. A 6-month-old male child died with hydrocephalus and a myelocele in the lower thoracic region. At autopsy the hindbrain was found to be deformed. The lower part of the medulla oblongata extended inferiorly through the foramen magnum into the vertebral canal as far as the third cervical vertebra. The lower four cranial nerves were longer than normal and the upper cervical nerve roots ascended to reach their exit from the vertebral canal. The cerebellum on the left side extended inferiorly through the foramen magnum to the third cervical vertebra, where it was adherent to the spinal cord. The roof of the fourth ventricle was abnormally low. (a) What is the name of this malformation? (b) Is hydrocephalus common in this condition? (c) Is there a possible association between the thoracic myelocele and the presence of part of the hindbrain in the vertebral canal?

3. A 68-year-old man was admitted to the hospital with the sudden onset of severe dizziness (vertigo), hiccups, and vomiting. He also complained of a hot, painful sensation in the skin of the right side of the face. On physical examination the soft palate was drawn up to the left side when the patient was asked to say "ah" and there was lack of mobility of the right vocal cord as seen on laryngoscopic examination. The patient also showed drooping of the right upper eyelid (ptosis), sunken right eye (enophthalmos), and a constricted right pupil (myosis). When asked to protrude his tongue straight out of his mouth, the patient tried to do so but the tip of the tongue pointed to the right side. There was evidence of impairment of pain and temperature sensation in the trunk and extremities on the left side. Using your knowledge of anatomy, make the diagnosis.

4. The pathologist, while exploring the posterior cranial fossa during an autopsy, was endeavoring to determine where the ninth, tenth, and cranial part of the eleventh cranial nerves emerged from the hindbrain. Can you answer that question?

Additional Reading

Crosby, E. C., Humphrey, T., and Lauer, E. W. *Correlative Anatomy of the Nervous System.* New York: Macmillan, 1962.

Elliott, F. A. *Clinical Neurology.* Philadelphia: Saunders, 1964.

Merritt, H. H. *A Textbook of Neurology* (5th ed.). Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger, 1973.

Walton, J. N. *Brain's Diseases of the Nervous System* (8th ed.). New York and London: Oxford University Press, 1977.

Willis, W. D., Jr., and Grossman, R. G. *Medical Neurobiology* (2nd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby, 1977.

9
The Pons

Gross Appearance

The pons is anterior to the cerebellum (Fig. 9-1) and connects the medulla oblongata to the midbrain. It is about 1 inch (2.5 mm) long and owes its name to the appearance presented on the anterior surface, which is that of a bridge connecting the right and left cerebellar hemispheres.

The anterior surface is convex from side to side and shows many transverse fibers that converge on each side to form the *middle cerebellar peduncle* (Fig. 9-1). There is a shallow groove in the midline, the *basilar groove,* which lodges the basilar artery. On the anterolateral surface of the pons the *trigeminal nerve* emerges on each side. Each nerve consists of a smaller, medial part–the *motor root*—and a larger, lateral part–the *sensory root.* In the groove between the pons and the medulla oblongata there emerge, from medial to lateral, the *abducent, facial,* and *vestibulocochlear nerves* (Fig. 9-1).

The posterior surface of the pons is hidden from view by the cerebellum (Fig. 9-2). It forms the upper half of the floor of the fourth ventricle and is triangular in shape. The posterior surface is limited laterally by the *superior cerebellar peduncles* and is divided into symmetrical halves by a *median sulcus.* Lateral to this sulcus is an elongated elevation, the *medial eminence,* which is bounded laterally by a sulcus, the *sulcus limitans* (Fig. 9-2). The inferior end of the medial eminence is slightly expanded to form the *facial colliculus,* which is produced by the root of the facial nerve winding around the nucleus of the abducent nerve (Fig. 9-3). The floor of the superior part of the *sulcus limitans* is bluish-gray in color and is called the *substantia ferruginea;* it owes its color to a group of deeply pigmented nerve cells. Lateral to the sulcus limitans is the *area vestibuli* produced by the underlying vestibular nuclei (Fig. 9-2).

Internal Structure of the Pons

For purposes of description, the pons is commonly divided into a posterior part, the *tegmentum,* and an anterior *basal part* by the transversely running fibers of the *trapezoid body* (Fig. 9-3).

The structure of the pons may be studied at two levels: (1) transverse section through the caudal part, passing through the facial colliculus, and (2) transverse section through the cranial part, passing through the trigeminal nuclei.

Transverse Section through the Caudal Part of the Pons

The *medial lemniscus* rotates as it passes from the medulla into the pons. It is situated in the most anterior part of the tegmentum with its long axis running transversely (Fig. 9-3).

The *facial nucleus* lies posterior to the lateral part of the medial lemniscus. The fibers of the facial nerve wind round the *nucleus of the abducent nerve*, producing the *facial colliculus* (Fig. 9-3). The fibers of the facial nerve then pass anteriorly between the facial nucleus and the superior end of the nucleus of the spinal tract of the trigeminal nerve.

The medial longitudinal fasciculus is situated beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle on either side of the midline (Fig. 9-3). The medial longitudinal fasciculus is the main pathway that connects the vestibular and cochlear nuclei with the nuclei controlling the extraocular muscles (oculomotor, trochlear, and abducent nuclei).

The *medial vestibular nucleus* is situated lateral to the abducent nucleus (Fig. 9-3) and is in close relationship to the inferior cerebellar peduncle. The superior part of the lateral and the inferior part of the superior vestibular nucleus are found at this

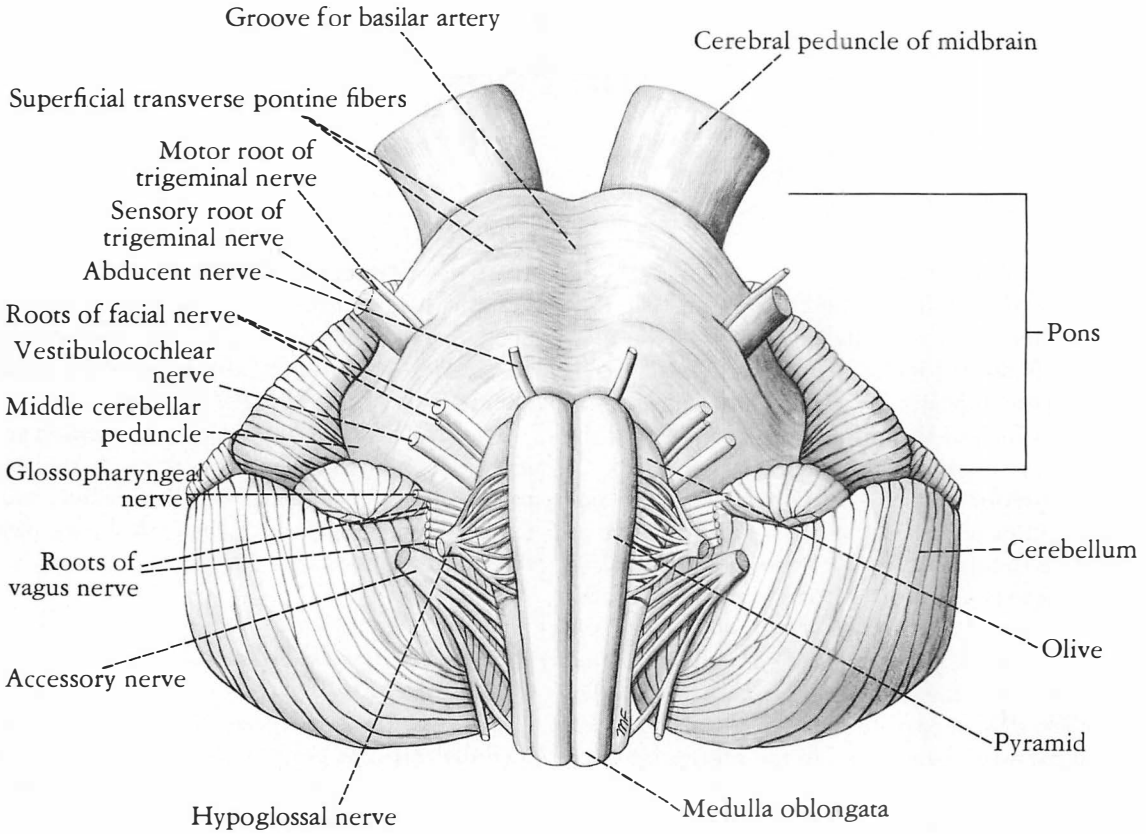


Fig. 9-1. Anterior surface of the brainstem showing the pons.

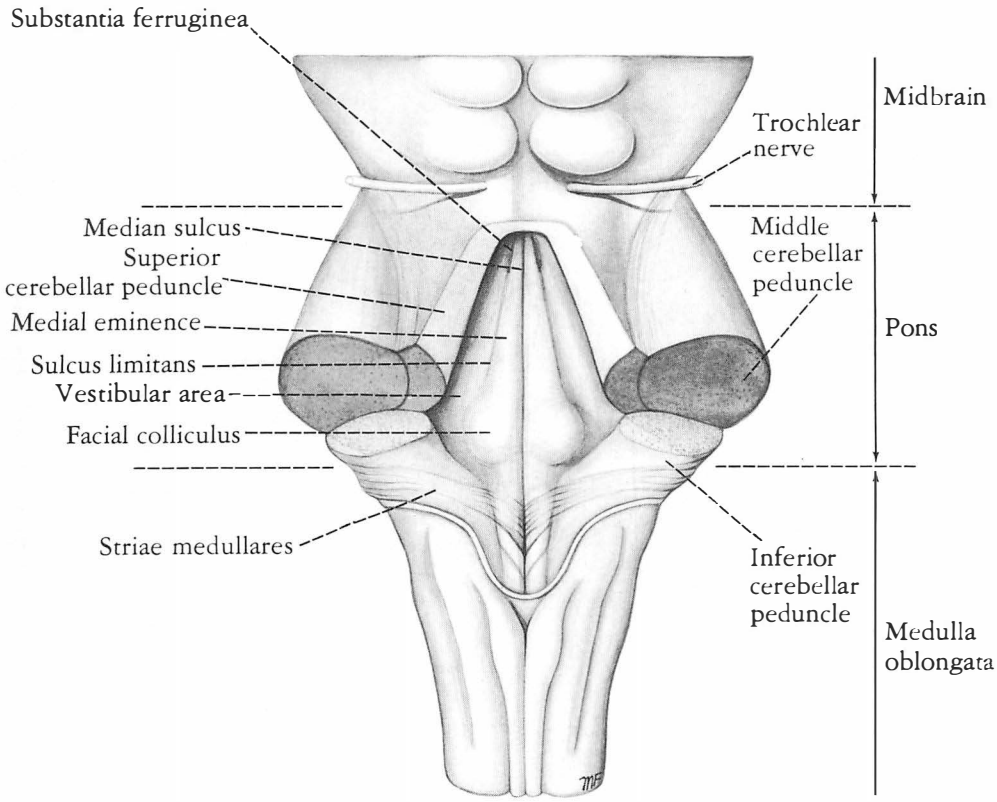


Fig. 9-2. Posterior surface of the brainstem showing the pons. The cerebellum has been removed.

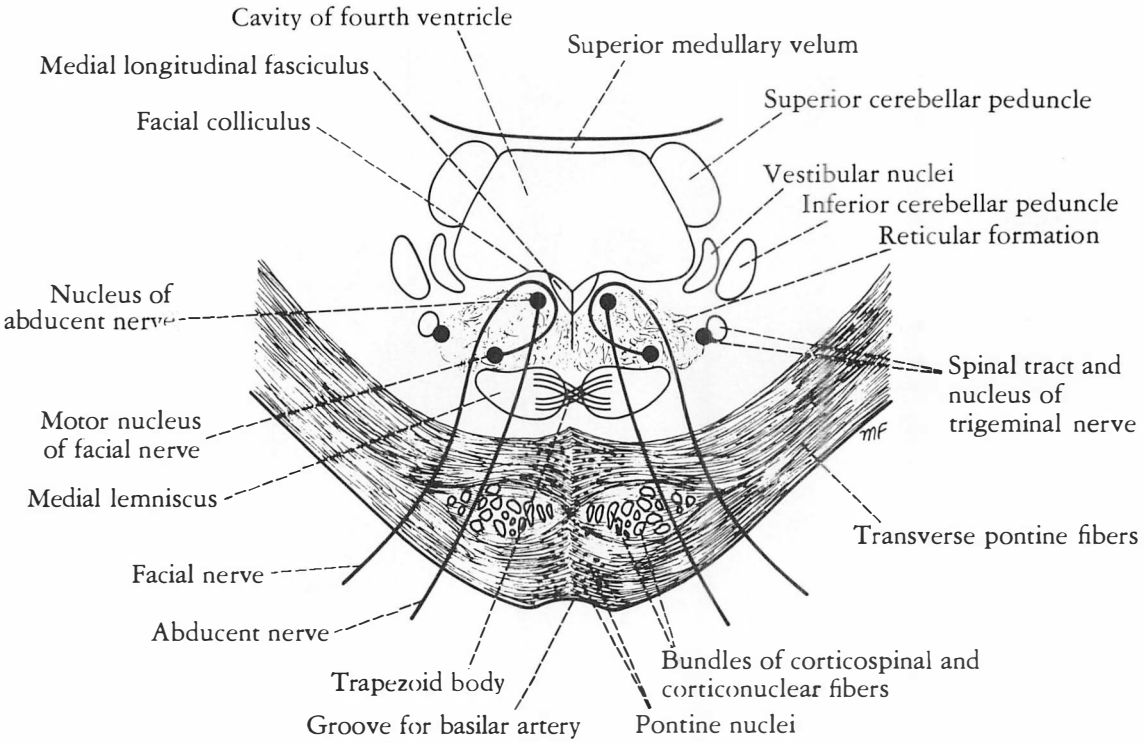


Fig. 9-3. Transverse section through the caudal part of the pons at the level of the facial colliculus.

level. The *posterior and anterior cochlear nuclei* are also found at this level (see p. 368).

The *spinal nucleus of the trigeminal nerve and its tract* lie on the anteromedial aspect of the inferior cerebellar peduncle (Fig. 9-3).

The *trapezoid body* is made up of fibers derived from the cochlear nuclei and the nuclei of the trapezoid body. They run transversely (Fig. 9-3) in the anterior part of the tegmentum (see p. 370).

The basilar part of the pons, at this level, contains small masses of nerve cells called *pontine nuclei* (Fig. 9-3). The *corticopontine fibers* of the crus cerebri of the midbrain terminate in the pontine nuclei. The axons of these cells give origin to the *transverse fibers* of the pons, which cross the midline and intersect the corticospinal and corticonuclear tracts, breaking them up into small bundles. The transverse fibers of the pons enter the middle cerebellar peduncle and are distributed to the cerebellar hemisphere. This connection forms the main pathway linking the cerebral cortex to the cerebellum.

Transverse Section through the Cranial Part of the Pons

The internal structure of the pons is similar to that seen at the caudal level but it now contains the motor and principal sensory nuclei of the trigeminal nerve (Figs. 9-4, 9-5, and 9-6).

The *motor nucleus of the trigeminal nerve* is situated beneath the lateral part of the fourth ventricle within the reticular formation (Figs. 9-4 and 9-5). The emerging motor fibers travel anteriorly through the substance of the pons and exit on its anterior surface.

The *principal sensory nucleus of the trigeminal*

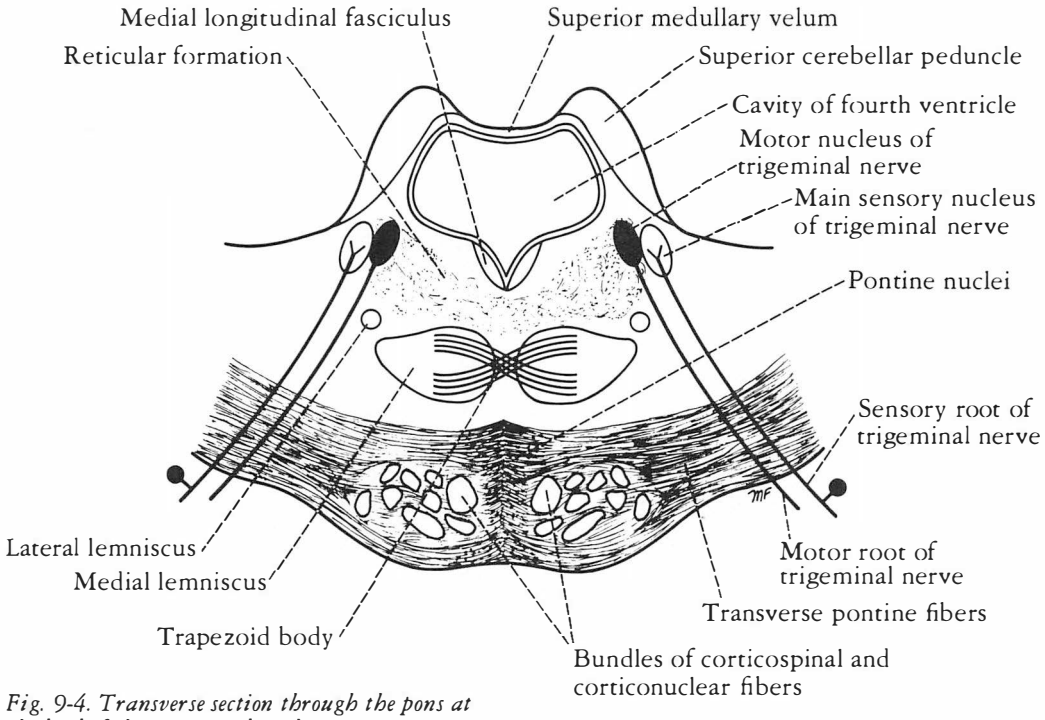
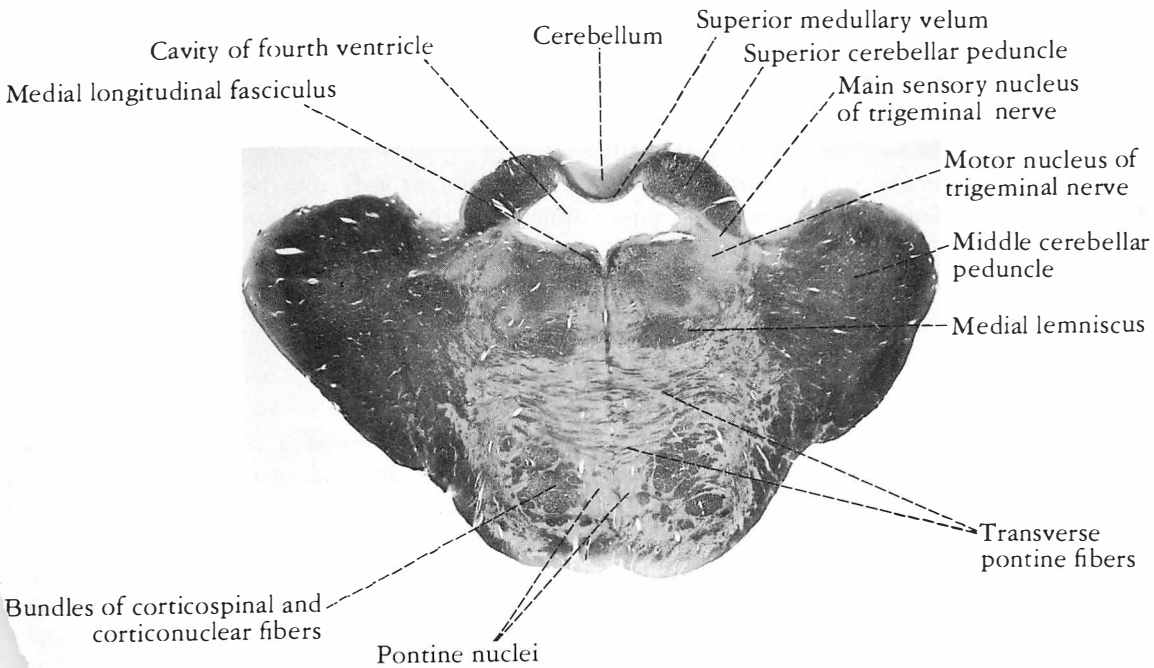


Fig. 9-4. Transverse section through the pons at the level of the trigeminal nuclei.



9-5. Photomicrograph of transverse section of the at the level of the trigeminal nuclei.

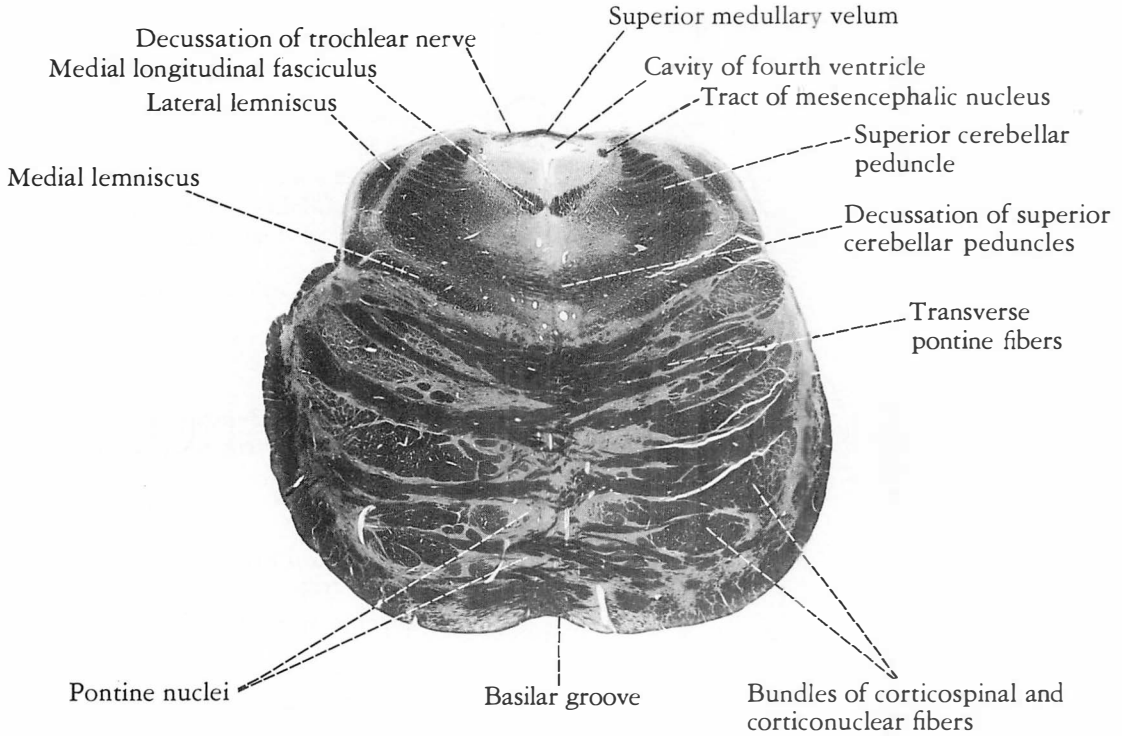


Fig. 9-6. Photomicrograph of transverse section of rostral part of the pons.

nerve is situated on the lateral side of the motor nucleus; it is continuous inferiorly with the nucleus of the spinal tract. The entering sensory fibers travel through the substance of the pons and lie lateral to the motor fibers (Figs. 9-4 and 9-5).

The *superior cerebellar peduncle* is situated posterolateral to the motor nucleus of the trigeminal nerve (Figs. (9-4 and 9-5). It is joined by the *anterior spinocerebellar tract.*

The *trapezoid body* and the *medial lemniscus* are situated in the same position as they were in the previous section (Fig. 9-4). The *lateral lemniscus* lies at the lateral extremity of the medial lemniscus (Figs. 9-4 and 9-6).

Clinical Notes

General Features

The pons, like the medulla oblongata and the cerebellum, is situated in the posterior cranial fossa lying beneath the tentorium cerebelli. It is related anteriorly to the basilar artery, the dorsum sellae of the sphenoid bone, and the basilar part of the occipital bone. In addition to forming the upper half of the floor of the fourth ventricle, it possesses several important cranial nerve nuclei (trigeminal, abducent, facial, and vestibulocochlear) and serves as a conduit for important ascending and descending tracts (corticonuclear, corticopontine, corticospinal, medial longitudinal fasciculus, and medial and lateral lemnisci). It is not surprising, therefore, that tumors, hemorrhage, or infarcts in this area of the brain produce a variety of symptoms and signs. For example involvement of the corticopontocerebellar trac will produce marked cerebellar ataxia, and v untary movements are accompanied by a rh

mic tremor that develops and becomes further accentuated as the movements proceed (intention tremor).

Tumors of the Pons

Astrocytoma of the pons occurring in childhood (Walton, 1977) is the most common tumor of the brainstem. The symptoms and signs are those of ipsilateral cranial nerve paralysis and contralateral hemiparesis: weakness of the facial muscles on the same side (facial nerve nucleus); weakness of the lateral rectus muscle on one or both sides (abducent nerve nucleus); nystagmus (vestibular nucleus); weakness of the jaw muscles (trigeminal nerve nucleus); impairment of hearing (cochlear nuclei); contralateral hemiparesis; quadriparesis (corticospinal fibers); anesthesia to light touch with the preservation of appreciation of pain over the skin of the face (principal sensory nucleus of trigeminal nerve involved, leaving spinal nucleus and tract of trigeminal intact); and contralateral sensory defects of trunk and limbs (medial and lateral lemnisci). Involvement of the corticopontocerebellar tracts may cause ipsilateral cerebellar signs and symptoms. There may be impairment of conjugate deviation of the eyeballs due to involvement of the medial longitudinal fasciculus, which connects the oculomotor, trochlear, and abducent nerve nuclei.

Pontine Hemorrhage

The pons is supplied by the basilar artery and the anterior, inferior, and superior cerebellar arteries. If the hemorrhage occurs from one of those arteries and is unilateral, there will be facial paralysis on the side of the lesion (involvement of the facial nerve nucleus and, therefore, a lower motor neuron palsy) and paralysis of the limbs on the opposite side (involvement of the corticospinal fibers as they pass through the pons). There is often paralysis of conjugate ocular deviation (involvement of the abducent nerve nucleus and the medial longitudinal fasciculus).

When the hemorrhage is extensive and bilateral the pupils may be "pinpoint" (involvement of the ocular sympathetic fibers); there is commonly bilateral paralysis of the face and the limbs. The patient may become poikilothermic because severe damage to the pons has cut off the body from the heat-regulating centers in the hypothalamus.

Infarctions of the Pons

Usually this is due to thrombosis or embolism of the basilar artery or its branches. If it involves the paramedian area of the pons the corticospinal tracts, the pontine nuclei, and the fibers passing to the cerebellum through the middle cerebellar peduncle may be damaged. A laterally situated infarct will involve the trigeminal nerve, the medial lemniscus, and the middle cerebellar peduncle; the corticospinal fibers to the lower limbs also may be affected.

The clinical conditions mentioned above will be understood more clearly after you have studied the ascending and descending tracts of the brain and spinal cord (see pp. 305–321).

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 486.

1. A 10-year-old girl was taken to a physician because her mother had noticed that the right half of her face was weak and did not appear to react to emotional changes. It was noted also that her mouth was pulled over slightly to the left, especially when she was tired. On questioning, the patient admitted that food tended to stick inside her right cheek and that the right side of her face "felt funny." The mother had first noticed the facial changes three months previously and the condition had progressively worsened. On examination, there was definite weakness of the facial muscles on the right side; the facial muscles on the left side were normal. Skin sensation on stimulation of the face was normal. On testing of the ocular movements there was evidence of slight weakness of the lateral rectus muscle on the right side. Examination of the movements of the arm and leg showed

slight weakness on the left side. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, relate these symptoms and signs to a lesion in the pons.

2. A 65-year-old man was admitted to the emergency room with a diagnosis of a severe pontine hemorrhage. On examination he was found to have bilateral "pinpoint" pupils and quadriplegia. How can you explain the presence of the "pinpoint" pupils?

3. A 46-year-old man visited his physician with symptoms of deafness, vertigo, and double vision (diploplia). On questioning, he said that he also suffered from severe headaches, which were increasing in frequency and severity. The week before he vomited several times during one of the headache attacks. On examination, he was found to have a slight right internal strabismus and there were a flattening of the skin furrows on the right side of his forehead and a slight drooping of the right corner of his mouth. There was definite evidence of impairment of hearing on the right side. On testing for sensory loss, there was definite sensory impairment on the right side of the face in the areas supplied by the maxillary and mandibular divisions of the trigeminal nerve. Using your knowledge of anatomy, explain the symptoms and signs.

Additional Reading

Crosby, E. C., Humphrey, T., and Lauer, E. W. *Correlative Anatomy of the Nervous System.* New York: Macmillan, 1962.

Walton, J. N. *Brain's Diseases of the Nervous System* (8th ed.). New York and London: Oxford University Press, 1977.

Warwick, R. and Williams, P. L. (Eds.). *Gray's Anatomy* (35th Brit. ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders, 1973.

10
The Cerebellum

Gross Appearance

The cerebellum, the largest part of the hind brain, lies posterior to the pons and the medulla oblongata (Fig. 10-1). It is somewhat ovoid in shape and constricted in its median part. It is situated in the posterior cranial fossa and is covered superiorly by the tentorium cerebelli. The cerebellum consists of two *cerebellar hemispheres* joined by a narrow median *vermis*.

In this description, the cerebellum is divided into three main lobes: the *anterior lobe*, the *middle lobe,* and the *flocculonodular lobe*. The *anterior lobe* may be seen on the superior surface of the cerebellum and is separated from the middle lobe by a wide V-shaped fissure called the *primary fissure* (Figs. 10-2 and 10-3). The *middle lobe* (sometimes called the posterior lobe), which is the largest part of the cerebellum, is situated between the primary and *uvulonodular fissures*. The *flocculonodular lobe* is situated posterior to the uvulonodular fissure (Fig. 10-3). A deep *horizontal fissure* that is found along the margin of the cerebellum separates the superior from the inferior surfaces; it is of no morphological or functional significance (Figs. 10-2 and 10-3).

The anterior lobe, uvula, and pyramid of the vermis (Fig. 10-3) constitute the *paleocerebellum*, which is functionally related to the gross movements of the head and body. The middle lobe (except for the uvula and pyramid) constitutes the *neocerebellum* and is associated with fine voluntary movements (Fig. 10-3). The flocculonodular lobe is phylogenetically the oldest portion of the cerebellum and constitutes the *archicerebellum*, which is associated with the vestibular system (Fig. 10-3).

The superior surface of the cerebellum shows the anterior aspect of the vermis as a ridge that is separated from the hemispheres by grooves or fissures (Fig. 10-2). The primary fissure, noted above, is visible on this surface.

The inferior surface of the cerebellum shows a deep groove, the *vallecula*, the floor of which is formed by the inferior aspect of the vermis (Fig. 10-2).

The *cortex* of the cerebellum is much folded, the folds or *folia* being separated by numerous transverse fissures. Each folium has a core of white matter and an outer covering of gray matter (Fig. 10-1). A section made through the cerebellum parallel with the median plane divides the folia at right angles, and the cut surface has a branched appearance, called the *arbor vitae* (Fig. 10-1).

Internal Structure of the Cerebellum

The internal structure of the cerebellum is made up of gray matter and white matter. The gray matter is found mainly covering the surface of the cerebellum as *cortex*; small aggregations of gray matter are also found in the interior of the cerebellum.

Gray Matter of the Cerebellum

Cerebellar Cortex

The cortex of the cerebellum is folded by many parallel transverse fissures into the cerebellar folia (see Fig. 10-1). Each folium contains a core of white matter covered superficially by gray matter (Fig. 10-4). The cerebellar cortex throughout its extent has a uniform structure. The cortex may be divided into three layers: (1) an external layer, the *molecular layer*; (2) a middle layer, the *Purkinje cell layer*; and (3) an internal layer, the *granular layer* (Figs. 10-4 and 10-5).

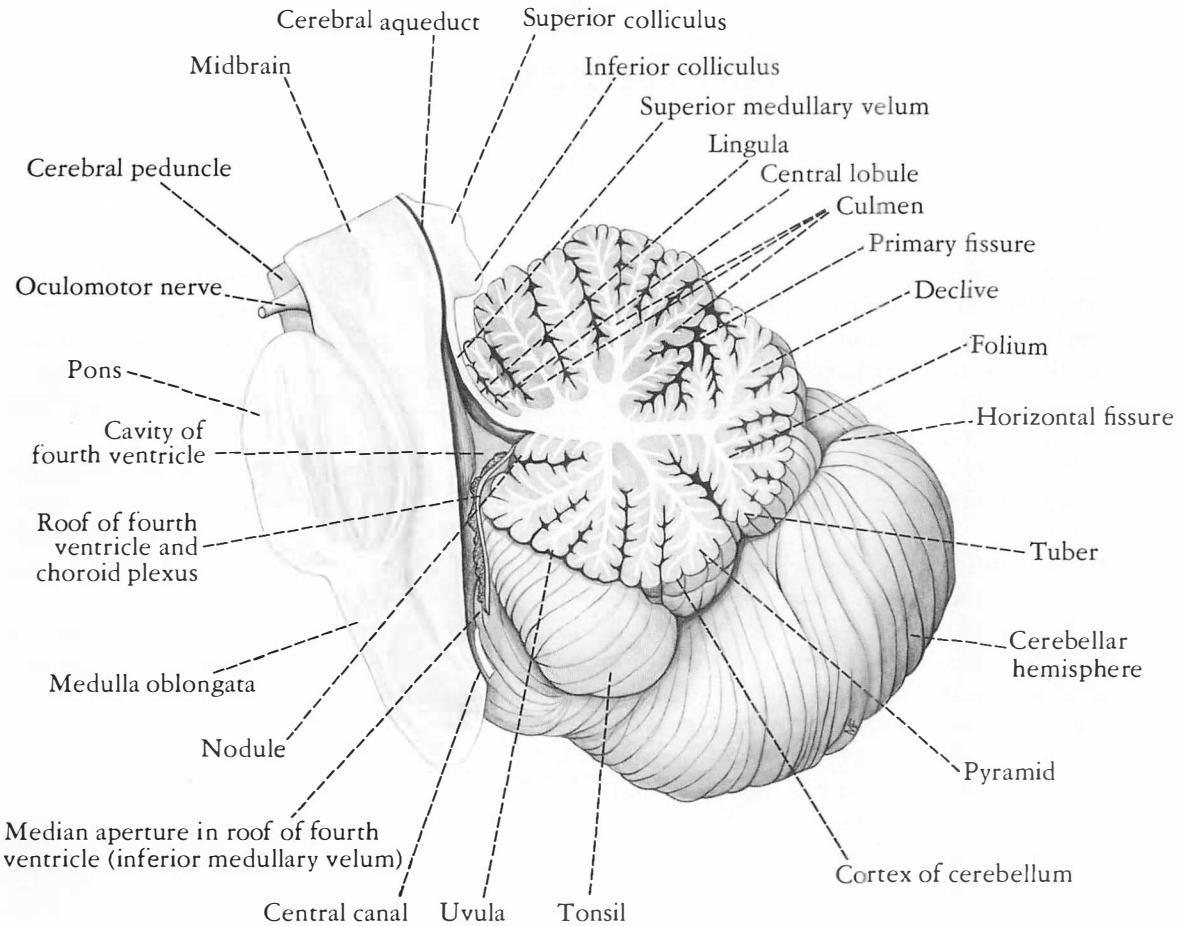


Fig. 10-1. Sagittal section through the brainstem and the cerebellum.

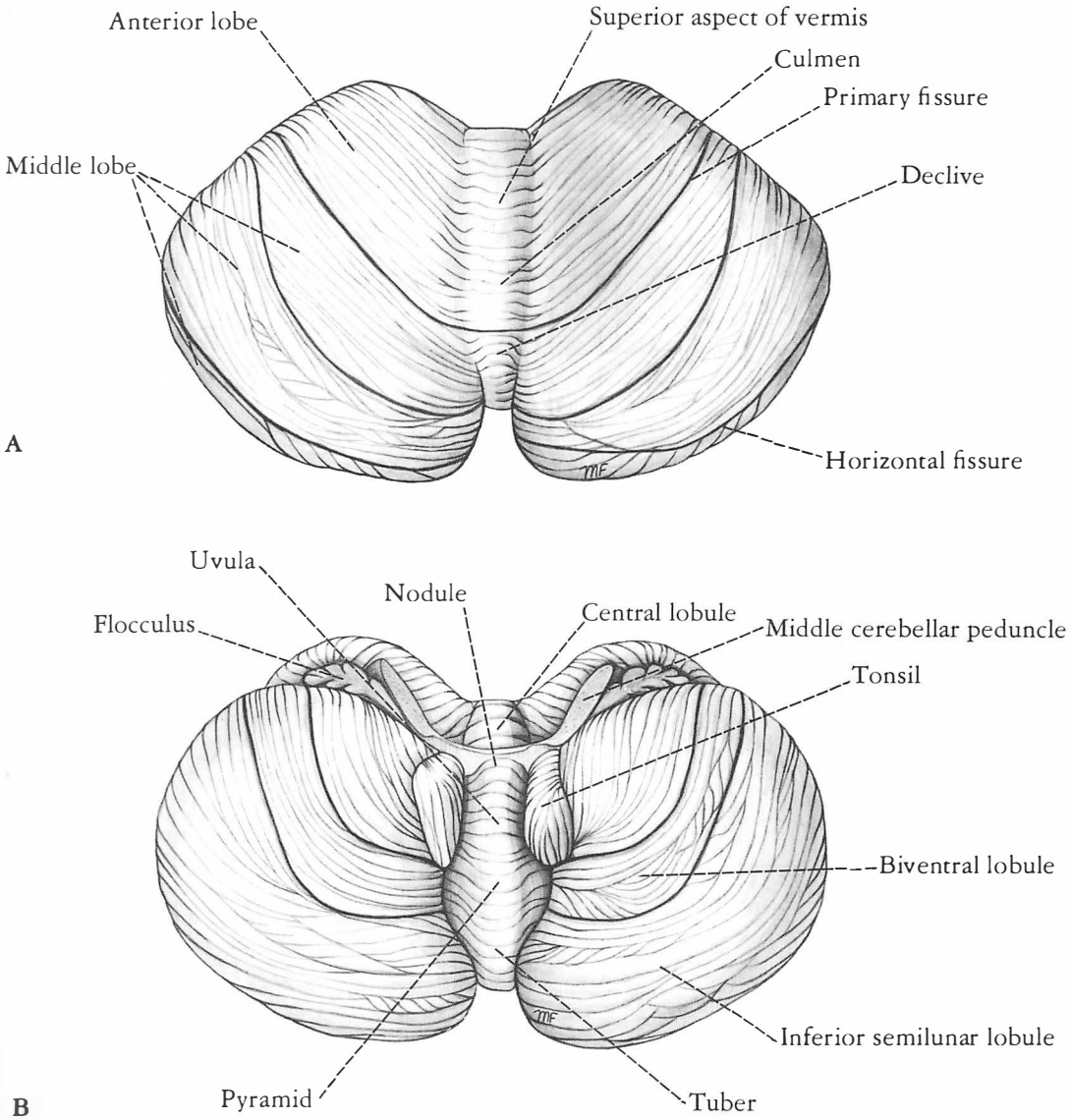


Fig. 10-2. The cerebellum.
A. Superior view.
B. Inferior view.

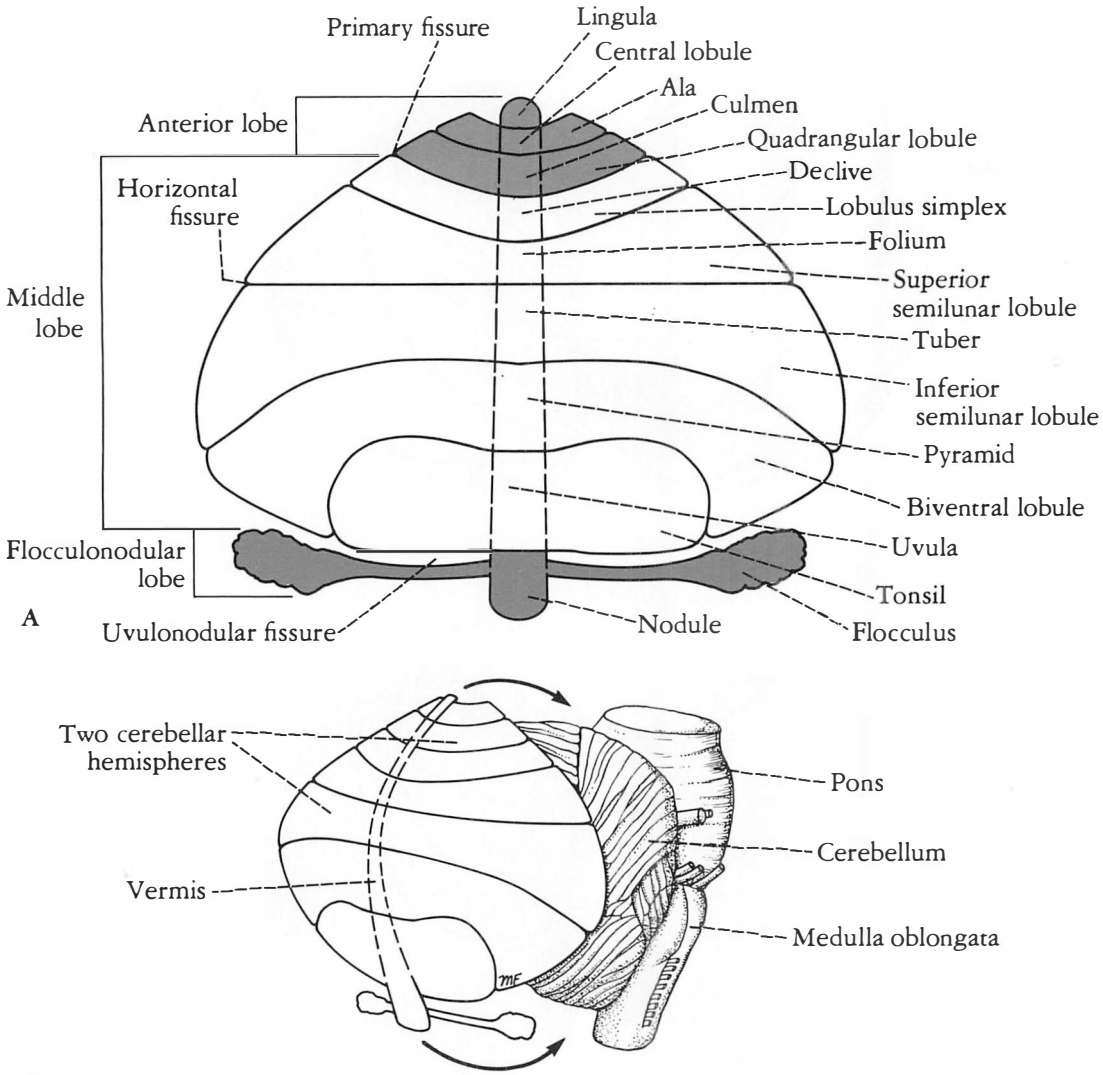


Fig. 10-3. A. Main cerebellar lobes, lobules, and fissures.
B. Relationship between the diagram in A and the cerebellum.

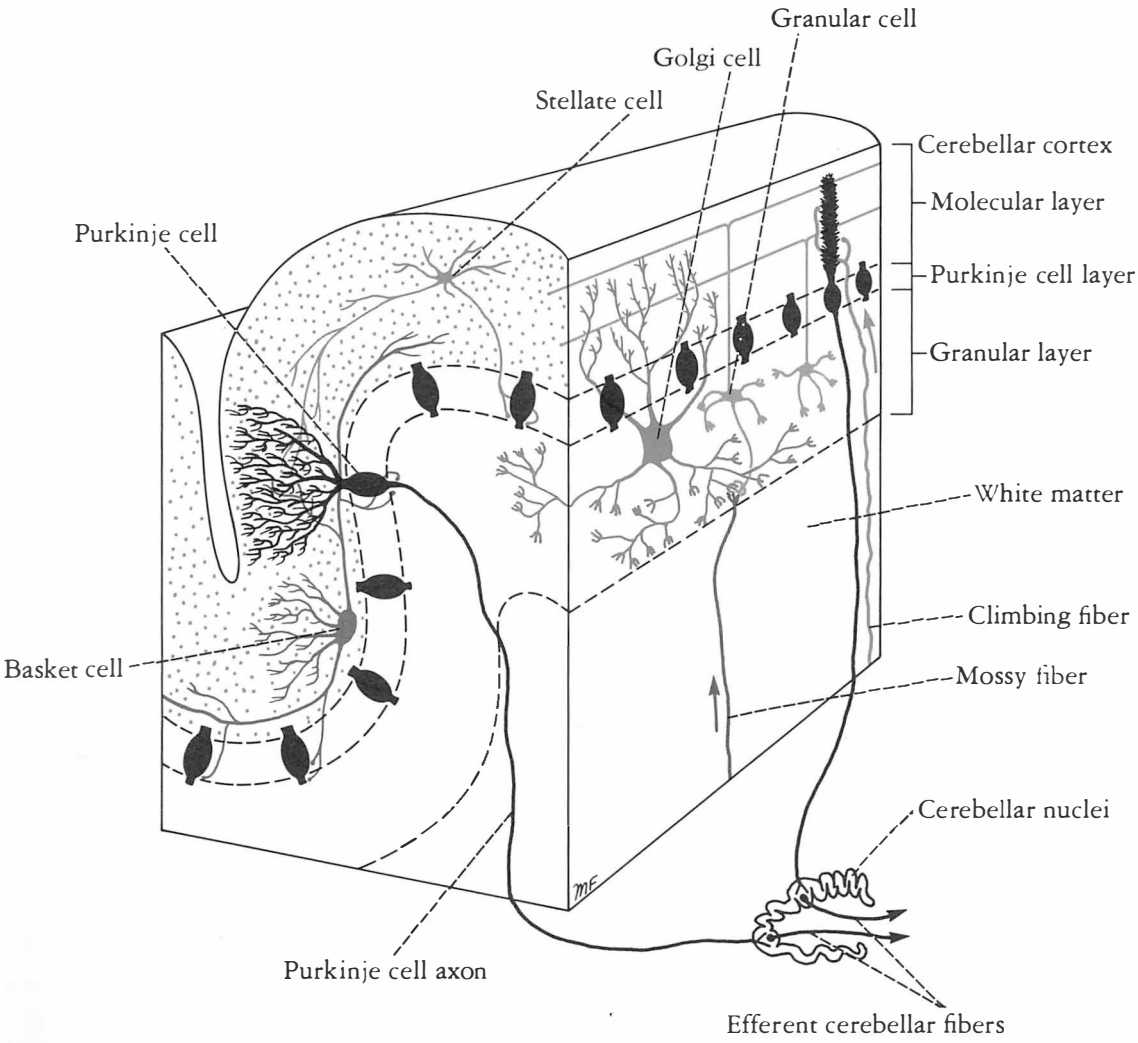


Fig. 10-4. The cellular organization of the cerebellar cortex. Note the afferent and efferent fibers.

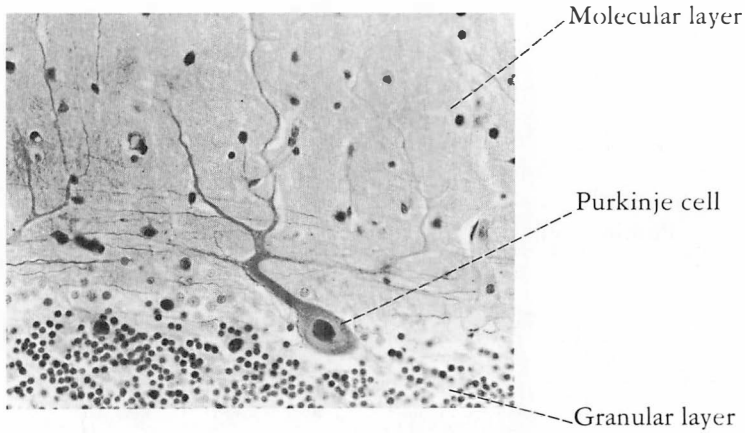


Fig. 10-5. Photomicrograph of a cross section of a cerebellar folium, showing the three layers of the cerebellar cortex.

THE MOLECULAR LAYER. The molecular layer contains two types of neurons: the outer *stellate cell* and the inner *basket cell* (Fig. 10-4). These neurons are scattered among dendritic arborizations and numerous thin axons that run parallel to the long axis of the folia. Neuroglial cells are found between these structures.

PURKINJE CELL LAYER. The Purkinje cells are large Golgi type I neurons. They are flask-shaped and are arranged in a single layer (Figs. 10-4 and 10-5). In a plane transverse to the folium, the dendrites of these cells are seen to pass into the molecular layer, where they undergo profuse branching (Figs. 10-4 and 10-5). The primary and secondary branches are smooth and subsequent branches are covered by short, thick *dendritic spines*. It has been shown that the spines form synaptic contacts with the parallel fibers derived from the granule cell axons (see below).

At the base of the Purkinje cell, the axon arises and passes through the granular layer to enter the white matter. On entering the white matter, the axon acquires a myelin sheath and it terminates by synapsing with cells of one of the intracerebellar nuclei. Collateral branches of the Purkinje axon make synaptic contacts with the dendrites of basket and stellate cells of the granular layer in the same area or in distant folia. A few of the Purkinje cell axons pass directly to end in the vestibular nuclei of the brainstem.

GRANULAR LAYER. The granular layer is packed with small cells with densely staining nuclei and scanty cytoplasm (Figs. 10-4 and 10-5). Each cell gives rise to four or five dendrites, which make clawlike endings and have synapatic contact with mossy fiber input (see p. 343). The axon of each granule cell passes into the molecular layer, where it bifurcates at a T-junction, the branches running parallel to the long axis of the cerebellar folium (Fig. 10-4). These fibers, known as *parallel fibers*, run at right angles to the dendritic processes of the Purkinje cells. The majority of the parallel fibers make synaptic contacts with the spinous processes of the dendrites of the Purkinje cells. Neuroglial cells are found throughout this layer. Scattered throughout the granular layer are Golgi cells (Fig. 10-4). Their dendrites ramify in the molecular layer and their axons terminate by splitting up int branches that synapse with the dendrites of granular cells (Fig. 10-5).

Intracerebellar Nuclei

Four masses of gray matter are embedde white matter of the cerebellum on each si midline (Fig. 10-6). From lateral to me nuclei are: the *dentate*, the *emboliform*, and the *fastigial*.

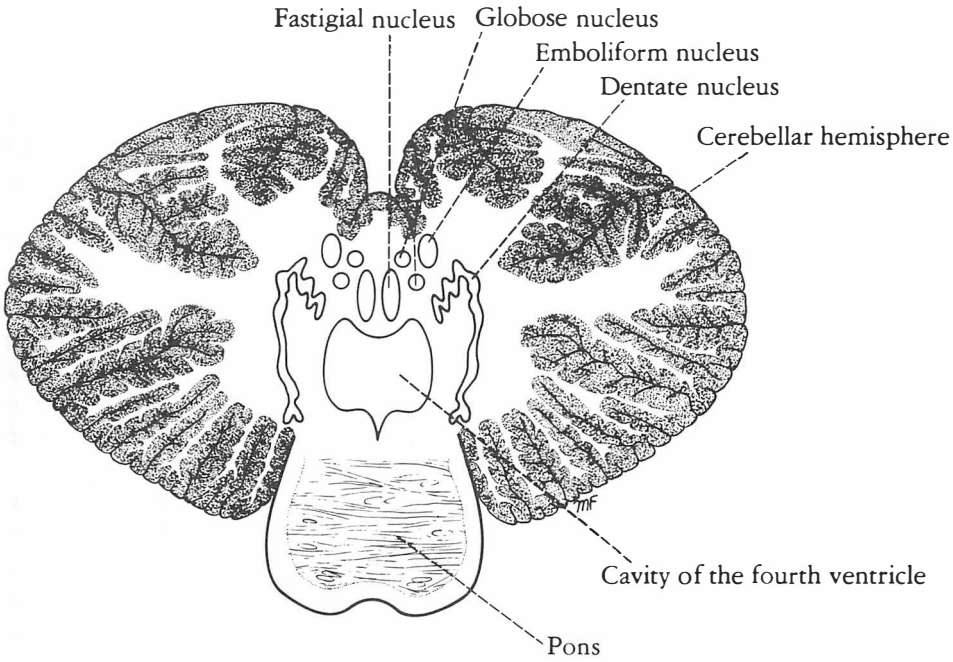


Fig. 10-6. Position of the intracerebellar nuclei.

The *dentate nucleus*, the largest of the cerebellar nuclei, is situated in the white matter of each cerebellar hemisphere (Fig. 10-6). It has the shape of a crumpled bag with the opening facing medially (Fig. 10-6). The interior of the bag is filled with white matter made up of efferent fibers that leave the nucleus through the opening to form a large part of the superior cerebellar peduncle.

The *emboliform nucleus* is oval-shaped and situated medial to the dentate nucleus, partially covering its hilus (Fig. 10-6).

The *globose nucleus* consists of one or more rounded cell groups that lie medial to the emboliform nucleus (Fig. 10-6).

The *fastigial nucleus* lies near the midline in the vermis and close to the roof of the fourth ventricle; it is larger than the globose nucleus (Fig. 10-6).

The intracerebellar nuclei are composed of large, multipolar neurons with simple branching dendrites. The axons form the cerebellar outflow in the superior and inferior cerebellar peduncles.

White Matter of the Cerebellum

There is a small amount of white matter in the vermis and it closely resembles the trunk and branches of a tree—the *arbor vitae* (see Fig. 10-1). There is a large amount of white matter in each cerebellar hemisphere.

The white matter is made up of three groups of fibers: (1) intrinsic, (2) afferent, and (3) efferent.

The *intrinsic fibers* do not leave the cerebellum but connect up different regions of the organ. Some interconnect folia of the cerebellar cortex and vermis on the same side; others connect the two cerebellar hemispheres together.

The *afferent fibers* form the greater part of the white matter and proceed to the cerebellar cortex. They enter the cerebellum mainly through the inferior and middle cerebellar peduncles.

The *efferent fibers* constitute the output of the cerebellum and commence as the axons of the Purkinje cells of the cerebellar cortex. The great majority of the Purkinje cell axons pass to and synapse with the neurons of the cerebellar nuclei (fastigial, globose, emboliform, and dentate). The axons of the neurons then leave the cerebellum. A

few Purkinje cell axons in the flocculonodular lobe and in parts of the vermis bypass the cerebellar nuclei and leave the cerebellum without synapsing.

Fibers from the dentate, emboliform, and globose nuclei leave the cerebellum through the superior cerebellar peduncle. Fibers from the fastigial nucleus leave through the inferior cerebellar peduncle.

Cerebellar Peduncles

The cerebellum is linked to other parts of the central nervous system by numerous efferent and afferent fibers that are grouped together on each side into three large bundles, or peduncles (Fig. 10-7). The superior cerebellar peduncles connect the cerebellum to the midbrain, the middle cerebellar peduncles connect the cerebellum to the pons, and the inferior cerebellar peduncles connect the cerebellum to the medulla oblongata (Fig. 10-7).

The *inferior cerebellar peduncle* is formed on the posterolateral aspect of the superior half of the medulla oblongata (Fig. 10-7). The two peduncles diverge as they ascend and pass into their respective cerebellar hemispheres. The inferior cerebellar peduncle is made up largely of afferent fibers, which pass to the cerebellum (Fig. 10-8) and include the following: (1) the posterior spinocerebellar tract, which passes from the spinal cord and is distributed to the paleocerebellum; (2) the cuneocerebellar tract (posterior external arcuate fibers), which passes from the cells of the cuneate nucleus to the vermis; (3) the olivocerebellar tract, which passes from the inferior olivary nuclei to the cortex of the neocerebellum; (4) the reticulocerebellar tract, which passes from the reticular formation in the medulla to the vermis; and (5) the vestibulocerebellar tract, which passes from the vestibular nuclei and the vestibulocochlear nerve to the archicerebellum.

The tracts leaving the cerebellum in the inferior cerebellar peduncle include the following: (1) cerebellovestibular fibers, which pass to the vestibular nuclei, and (2) cerebelloreticular fibers, which pass to the reticular formation in the pons and medulla oblongata.

The *middle cerebellar peduncle* is the largest of the three peduncles (see Fig. 10-7). It arises from the posterolateral region of the pons and becomes continuous with the white matter within the cerebellar hemisphere. It is formed by the *transverse fibers of the pons* (Fig. 10-8). The fibers arise from the neurons of the pontine nuclei in one half of the pons and cross the midline, traversing the opposite middle cerebellar peduncle to reach the cortex of the neocerebellum of the contralateral hemisphere. The middle cerebellar peduncle, therefore, is made up of the extensive corticopontocerebellar pathway.

The *superior cerebellar peduncle* emerges from the superior part of the vallecula (anterior cerebellar notch) and runs superiorly, lateral to the upper half of the fourth ventricle, to enter the lower part of the midbrain (Fig. 10-7). The great majority of the fibers within the peduncle are efferent and arise from the intracerebellar nuclei (Fig. 10-8). In addition, the superior peduncle contains afferent fibers, which include: (1) the anterior spinocerebellar tract (2) rubrocerebellar fibers, and (3) the tectocerebellar fibers.

Cerebellar Cortical Mechanisms

As the result of extensive cytological and physiological research, certain basic mechanisms have been attributed to the cerebellar cortex. The climbing and the mossy fibers constitute the two main lines of input to the cortex and are excitatory to the Purkinje cells (Fig. 10-9). The climbing fibers pass through the granular layer of the cortex and terminate by dividing repeatedly. Each climbing fiber makes a large number of synaptic contacts with the dendrites of a single Purkinje cell. A few side branches leave each climbing fiber and synapse with the stellate cells and basket cells. The mossy fibers, on the other hand, exert a much more diffuse excitatory effect, so that a single mossy fiber may stimulate thousands of Purkinje cells through the granule cells (Fig. 10-9). The Purkinje cells, by means of their axons, exert an inhibitory effect upon the intracerebellar and

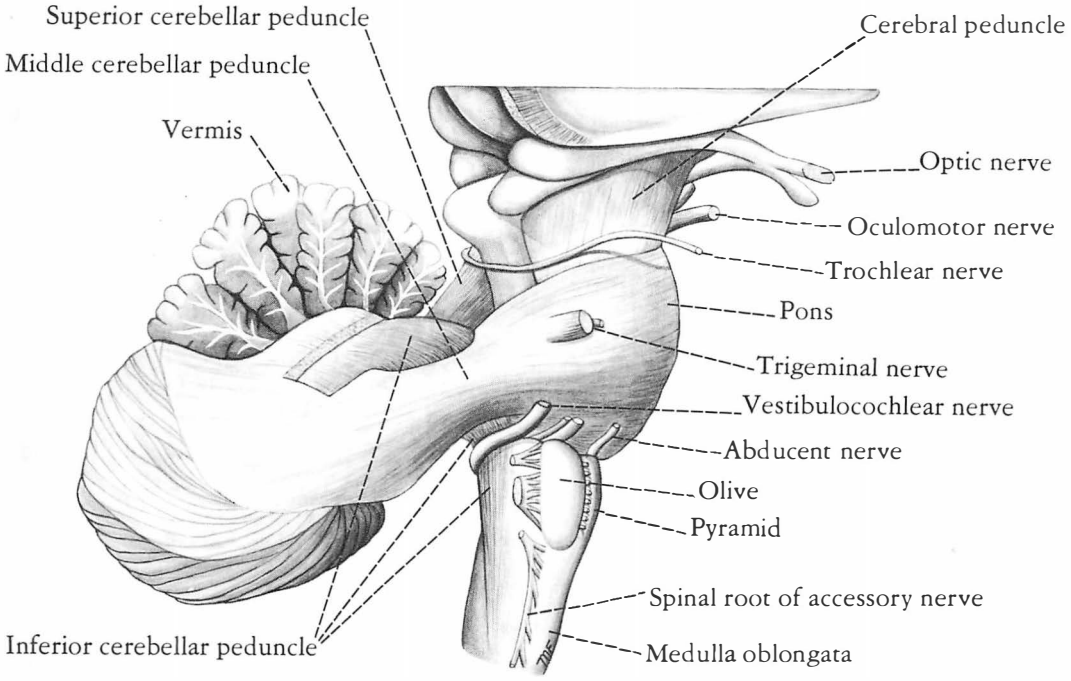


Fig. 10-7. Three cerebellar peduncles connecting the cerebellum to the rest of the central nervous system.

vestibular nuclei. What then is the function of the remaining cells of the cerebellar cortex, namely, the stellate, basket, and Golgi cells? Neurophysiological research, using microelectrodes, would indicate that they serve as inhibitory interneurons. It is believed that they not only limit the area of cortex excited but influence the degree of Purkinje cell excitation produced by the climbing and mossy fiber input. By this means, fluctuating inhibitory impulses are transmitted by the Purkinje cells to the intracerebellar nuclei, which in turn modify muscular activity through the motor con- areas of the brainstem and cerebral cortex.

ional Anatomy Cerebellum

ference has already been made to the tic development of the cerebellum (p. ***archicerebellum***, phylogenetically the of the cerebellum, receives input from ar nerve and the vestibular nuclei. The output to the lower motor neurons is transmitted through the vestibulospinal tract, the medial longitudinal fasciculus, and the reticulospinal fibers. This part of the cerebellum responds to vestibular stimuli from the inner ear and assists in maintaining equilibrium by bringing about modification in muscle tone.

The *paleocerebellum* receives input from the proprioceptive endings in muscles and tendons, and from touch and pressure receptors (spinocerebellar tracts, cuneocerebellar fibers, and spinoreticular and reticulocerebellar tracts). The output to the lower motor neurons, especially the gamma efferents, is transmitted through vestibulospinal, rubrospinal, and reticulospinal tracts. This part of the cerebellum is sensitive to changes in muscle and tendon tension and information on touch and deep pressure, and responds by modifying muscle tone and aiding the synergistic action of groups of muscles. It thus plays an active role in the maintenance of posture and the performance of voluntary movements.

The *neocerebellum* receives a very large input through the corticopontocerebellar tracts from the cerebral cortex of the opposite side; it also re-

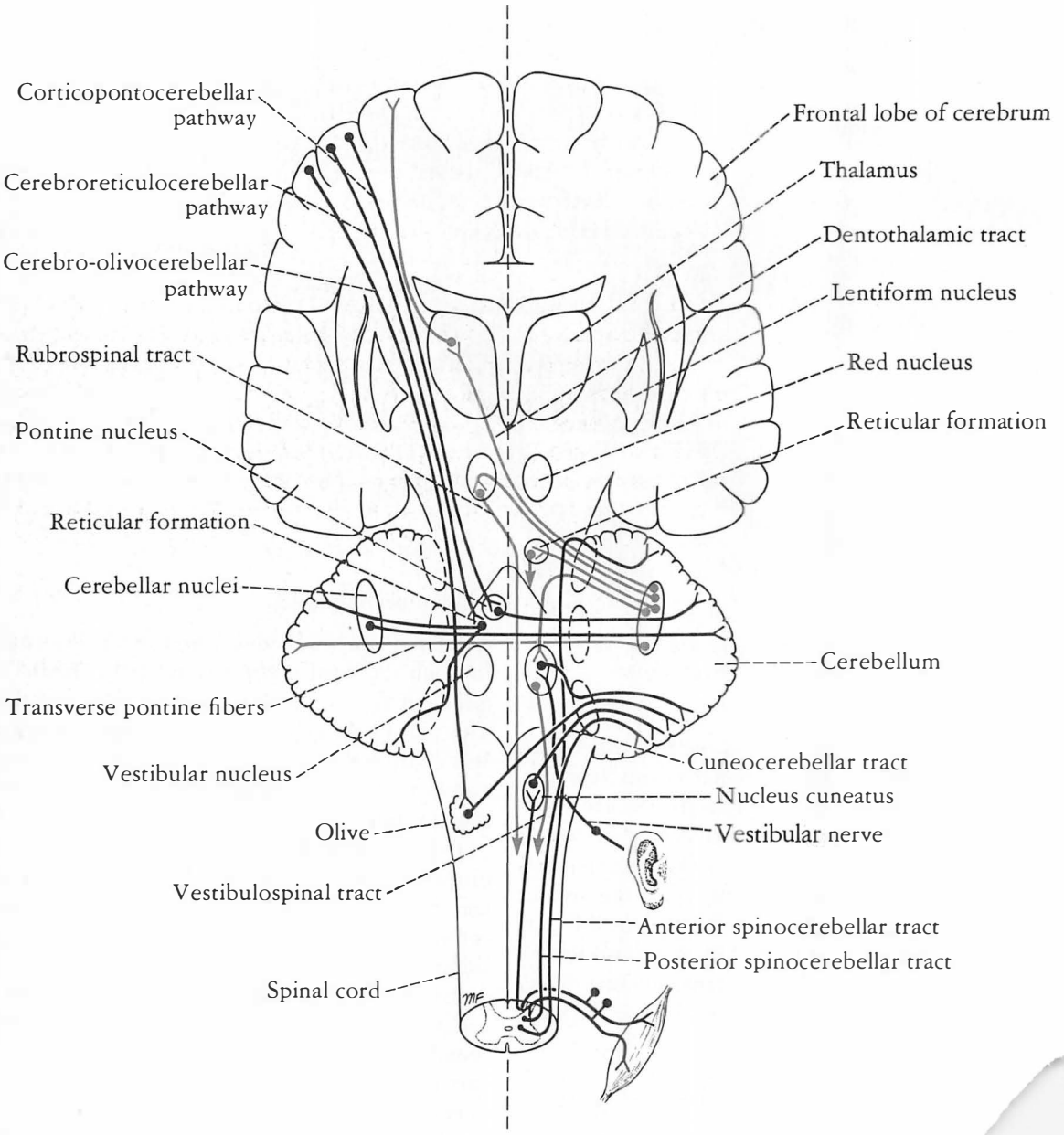


Fig. 10-8. Some of the main connections of the cere bellum. The cerebellar peduncles are shown as ovoi dashed lines.

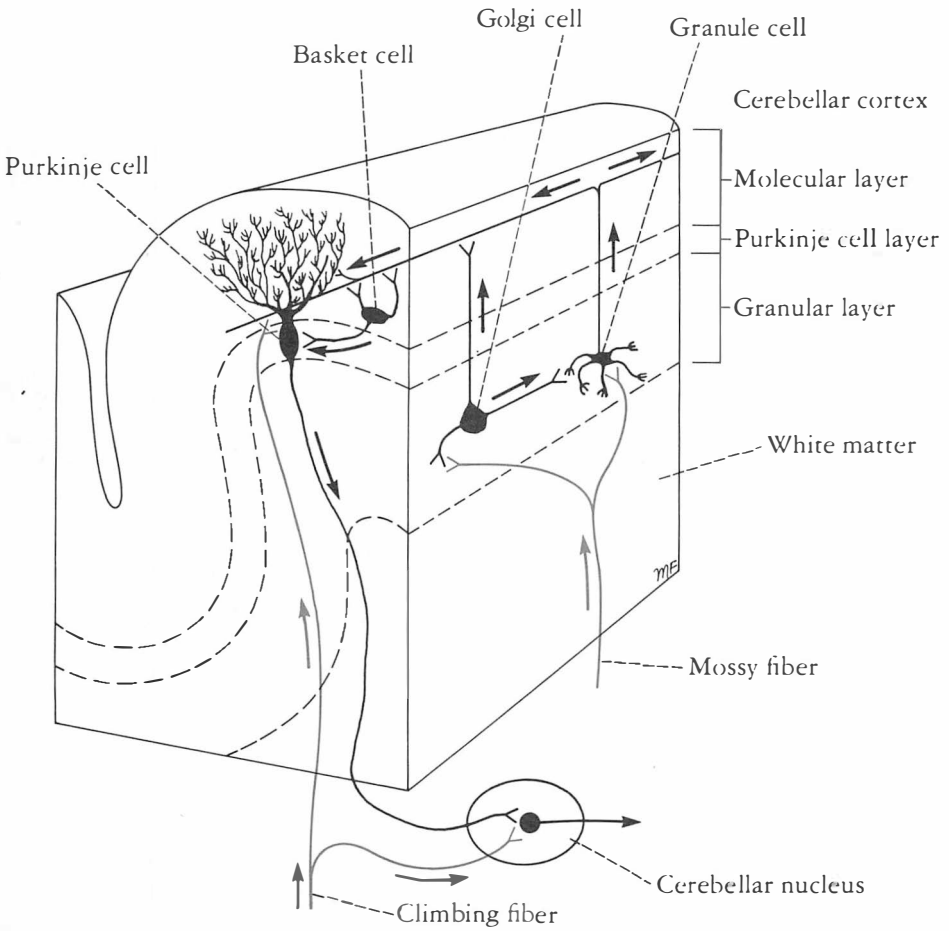


Fig. 10-9. The functional organization of the cerebellar cortex. The arrows indicate the direction taken by the nervous impulses.

ceives information through the olivocerebellar fibers. The output to the lower motor neurons travels through the thalamus to the motor area of the cerebral cortex, then through the corticospinal and corticonuclear fibers to the lower motor neurons. The neocerebellum thus facilitates a smooth, coordinated voluntary movement and ensures that the force, direction, and extent of the movement are accurate.

Later, when detailed studies of the precise connections of the cerebellum are discussed, it will become apparent that a cerebellar hemisphere influences the muscular activity of the same side of the body; this fact is of great clinical significance.

Clinical Notes

General Considerations

The cerebellum lies in the posterior cranial fossa of the skull and forms the roof of the fourth ventricle. It is joined to the brainstem by three pairs of peduncles: the superior, middle, and inferior peduncles. The cerebellum consists of two cerebellar hemispheres joined by a narrow median vermis. The cerebellum has three main lobes: the anterior, middle, and flocculonodular lobes.

Afferent nerve fibers enter the cerebellum

through all three pairs of cerebellar peduncles and terminate in the cerebellar cortex as climbing or mossy fibers. The large Purkinje cells link the cortex to the intracerebellar nuclei, namely, the dentate, emboliform, globose, and fastigial nuclei. The neurons of the nuclei form the main efferent fibers of the cerebellum, which leave through the superior and inferior cerebellar peduncles.

It is believed that within the cerebellar cortex the afferent fibers are excitatory to the Purkinje cells. The Purkinje cells exert an inhibitory influence on the intracerebellar nuclei. The axons of the cells of the nuclei exert their influence on the motor activity indirectly through the vestibular nuclei, reticular formation, red nucleus, tectum, and corpus striatum and the motor areas of the cerebral cortex. The stellate, basket, and Golgi cells of the cerebellar cortex limit the area of cortex excited by the afferent fibers and probably modify the Purkinje cell excitability.

The essential function of the cerebellum is to coordinate, by synergistic action, all reflex and voluntary muscular activity. It thus graduates and harmonizes muscle tone and maintains normal body posture. It permits voluntary movements to take place with precision and economy of effort.

There are two neuroanatomical features concerning the cerebellum that are of great clinical significance. First, the cortex of the cerebellum, unlike that of the cerebrum, has a uniform microscopic structure and physiological investigations show that the activities occurring are identical in all regions; functional localization, therefore, does not exist in the cerebellar cortex. Second, each cerebellar hemisphere is connected by nervous pathways principally with the same side of the body, so that a lesion in one cerebellar hemisphere gives rise to signs and symptoms that are limited to the same side of the body.

Signs and Symptoms of Cerebellar Disease

While the importance of the cerebellum in the maintenance of muscle tone and the coordination of muscle movement has been emphasized, it should be remembered that the symptoms and signs of acute lesions differ from those pr[illegible] by chronic lesions. Acute lesions produce su[illegible] severe symptoms and signs, but there is consid[illegible]able clinical evidence to show that patients can recover completely from large cerebellar injuries. This suggests that other areas of the central nervous system can compensate for loss of cerebellar function. Chronic lesions, such as slowly enlarging tumors, produce symptoms and signs that are much less severe than those of acute lesions. The reason for this may be that other areas of the central nervous system have time to compensate for loss of cerebellar function.

The following symptoms and signs are characteristic of cerebellar dysfunction.

Hypotonia

The muscles lose resilience to palpation. There is diminished resistance to passive movements of joints. Shaking the limb produces excessive movements at the terminal joints. The condition is due to loss of cerebellar influence on the simple stretch reflex.

Postural Changes and Alteration of Gait

The head is often rotated and flexed and the shoulder on the side of the lesion is lower than on the normal side. The patient assumes a wide base when he stands and is often stiff-legged to compensate for loss of muscle tone. When the individual walks, he lurches and staggers toward the affected side.

Disturbances of Voluntary Movement (Ataxia)

The muscles contract irregularly and weakly. *Tremor* occurs when fine movements, such as buttoning clothes, writing, and shaving, are attempted. Muscle groups fail to work harmoniously and there is *decomposition of movement*. When the patient is asked to touch the top of his nose with his index finger the movements are not properly coordinated and the finger either passes the nose (past-pointing) or hits the nose. A similar test can be performed on the lower limbs by asking the

patient to place the heel of one foot on the shin of the opposite leg.

Dysdiadochokinesis

Dysdiadochokinesis is the inability to perform alternating movements regularly and rapidly. Ask the patient to rapidly pronate and supinate the forearms. On the side of the cerebellar lesion the movements are slow, jerky, and incomplete.

Disturbances of Reflexes

Movement produced by tendon reflexes tends to continue for a longer period of time than normal. The pendular knee jerk, for example, occurs following tapping the patellar tendon. Normally the movement occurs and is self-limited by the stretch reflexes of the agonists and antagonists. In cerebellar disease, because of loss of influence on the stretch reflexes, the movement continues as a series of flexion and extension movements at the knee joint, i.e., the leg moves like a pendulum.

Disturbances of Ocular Movement

Nystagmus, which is essentially an ataxia of the ocular muscles, is a rhythmical oscillation of the eyes. It is more easily demonstrated when the eyes are deviated in a horizontal direction.

Disorders of Speech

Dysarthria occurs in cerebellar disease owing to ataxia of the muscles of the larynx. Articulation is jerky and the syllables often are separated from one another. Speech tends to be explosive and the syllables often are slurred.

It is important to remember that in cerebellar lesions there is no paralysis and there are no sensory changes. Although muscle hypotonia and incoordination may be present, the disorder is not limited to specific muscles or muscle groups; rather, an entire extremity or the entire half of the body is involved, and if both cerebellar hemispheres are involved, then the entire body may show disturbances of muscle action. Even though the muscular contractions may be weak and the patient easily fatigued, there is no atrophy.

Vermis Syndrome

The most common case of this syndrome is a *medulloblastoma* of the vermis in children. Involvement of the flocculonodular lobe results in signs and symptoms related to the vestibular system. Since the vermis is unpaired and influences midline structures, muscle incoordination involves the head and trunk and not the limbs. There is a tendency to fall forward or backward. There is difficulty in holding the head steady and in an upright position. There also may be difficulty in holding the trunk erect.

Cerebellar Hemisphere Syndrome

Tumors of one cerebellar hemisphere may be the cause of this syndrome. The symptoms and signs are usually unilateral and involve muscles on the side of the diseased cerebellar hemisphere. Movements of the limbs, especially the arms, are disturbed. Swaying and falling to the side of the lesion often occur. Dysarthria and nystagmus are also common findings.

Common Diseases Involving the Cerebellum

The following diseases frequently involve the cerebellum: congenital agenesis or hypoplasia, neoplasms, trauma, infections, thrombosis of the cerebellar arteries, and degenerative diseases.

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 487.

1. A 37-year-old man visited his physician because he had noticed clumsiness of his right arm. The symptoms had started 6 months previously and were getting worse. He also noticed that his right hand had a tremor when he attempted fine movements or tried to insert a key in a lock. When he walks he has noticed that now and again he tends to reel over to the right, "as if he had too

much alcohol to drink." On physical examination, the face was tilted slightly to the left and the right shoulder was held lower than the left. Passive movements of the arms and legs revealed hypotonia and looseness on the right side. When asked to walk heel-toe along a straight line on the floor the patient swayed over to the right side. When he was asked to touch his nose with his right index finger, the right hand displayed tremor and the finger tended to overshoot the target. Speech was normal and nystagmus was not present. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, explain each sign and symptom. Is the lesion of the cerebellum likely to be in the midline or to one side?

2. A 4½-year-old boy was taken to a neurologist because his mother was concerned about his attacks of vomiting on waking in the morning and his tendency to be unsteady on standing up. The mother also noticed that the child walked with an unsteady gait and often fell backward. On physical examination, the child tended to stand with the legs well apart, i.e., broad-based. The head was larger than normal for his age and the suture lines of the skull could be easily felt. A retinal examination with an ophthalmoscope showed severe papilledema in both eyes. The muscles of the upper and lower limbs showed some degree of hypotonia. Nystagmus was not present and the child showed no tendency to fall to one side or the other when asked to walk. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, explain the symptoms and signs. Is the lesion in the cerebellum likely to be in the midline or to one side?

3. During a ward round, a third-year student was asked to explain the phenomenon of nystagmus. How would you have answered that question? Why do patients exhibit nystagmus in cerebellar disease?

4. On looking at a histological slide of the cerebellar cortex, one is struck by the uniformity of the cellular arrangement. What different types of neurons are found in the cerebellar cortex, and what may their function be?

5. What is the essential difference between the symptoms and signs of acute and chronic lesions of the cerebellum? How can you explain these differences?

6. What is meant by the terms *climbing* and *mossy fibers of the cerebellum?* Are they afferent or efferent fibers?

7. What are the cerebellar peduncles? The middle peduncle is the main connecting link between the cerebrum and the cerebellum; explain this.

8. Name the intracerebellar nuclei. Why do you think that cerebellar signs and symptoms are more permanent when these nuclei are destroyed in addition to the cerebellar cortex?

9. Two physicians were talking in the street when one turned to the other and said, "Look at that man over there—look at the way he is walking—he is not swinging his right arm at all—it is just hanging down by his side. I wonder if he has a cerebellar lesion." Does a person with a unilateral cerebellar hemisphere tumor tend to hold his arm limply at his side when he walks?

Additional Reading

Angevine, J. B., Mancall, E. L., and Yakovlev, P. I. *The Human Cerebellum.* Boston: Little, Brown, 1961.

Bloomfield, S., and Marr, D. How the cerebellum may be used. *Nature* (London) 227:1224, 1970.

Braitenberg, V., and Atwood, R. P. Morphological observations on the cerebellar cortex. *J. Comp. Neurol.* 109:1, 1958.

Carpenter, M. B., and Stevens, G. H. Structural and functional relationships between the deep cerebellar nuclei and the brachium conjunctivum in the rhesus monkey. *J. Comp. Neurol.* 107:109, 1957.

Eccles, J. C., Ito, M., and Szentágothai, J. *The Cerebellum As a Neuronal Machine.* Berlin and Vienna: Springer, 1967.

Fields, W. D., and Willis, W. D., Jr. *The Cerebellum In Health and Disease.* St. Louis: Green, 1970.

Fox, C. A., and Barnard, J. W. A quantitative study of the Purkinje cell dendritic branches and their relations to afferent fibers. *J. Anat.* 91:299, 1957.

Gilman, S. The mechanisms of cerebellar hypotonia. *Brain.* 92:621, 1969.

Jansen, J., and Brodal, A. *Aspects of Cerebellar Anatomy.* Oslo: Johan Grundt Tanum Forlag, 1954.

Llinas, R. R. The cortex of the cerebellum. *Sci. Am.* 232(1): 56, 1975.

Palay, S. L., and Chan-Palay, V. *Cerebellar Cortex: Cytology and Organization.* Berlin and Vienna: Springer, 1974.

11
The Fourth Ventricle

Gross Appearance

The fourth ventricle is a tent-shaped cavity filled with cerebrospinal fluid. It is situated anterior to the cerebellum and posterior to the pons and the cranial half of the medulla oblongata (Fig. 11-1). It is lined with ependyma and is continuous superiorly with the cerebral aqueduct of the midbrain and inferiorly with the central canal of the medulla oblongata.

The fourth ventricle possesses lateral boundaries, a roof and the *tela choroidea*, and a diamond-shaped anterior floor called the *rhomboid fossa*.

Lateral boundaries. The caudal part of each lateral boundary is formed by the inferior cerebellar peduncle (Fig. 11-2). The cranial part of each lateral boundary is formed by the superior cerebellar peduncle.

The *roof or posterior wall.* The roof of the fourth ventricle extends posteriorly toward the cerebellum (Fig. 11-1). The superior part is formed by the medial borders of the two superior cerebellar peduncles and a connecting sheet of white matter called the *superior medullary velum* (Fig. 11-3). The inferior part of the roof is formed by the *inferior medullary velum*, which consists of a thin sheet devoid of nervous tissue and formed by the ventricular ependyma and its posterior covering of pia mater (Fig. 11-4). This part of the roof is pierced in the midline by a large aperture, the *median aperture* (foramen of Magendie), which connects the interior of the ventricle with the subarachnoid space (Figs. 11-1 and 11-4).

The *tela choroidea.* The tela choroidea of the fourth ventricle is a double layer of pia mater that lies in the interval between the cerebellum and the lower part of the roof of the ventricle. In this region, the blood vessels of the tela choroidea form a rich vascular fringe that projects through the lower part of the roof of the fourth ventricle to form the *choroid plexus* (see Figs. 11-1 and 11-4). In this region the cavity of the ventricle extends laterally over the surface of the inferior cerebellar peduncle to form the *lateral recess* of the ventricle (see Fig. 1-14). The lateral recess on each side opens into the subarachnoid space by a *lateral aperture* (foramen of Luschka). Thus, the cavity of the fourth ventricle communicates with the subarachnoid space through a single median opening and two lateral apertures. These important openings permit the cerebrospinal fluid to flow from the ventricular system into the subarachnoid space.

The *floor or rhomboid fossa.* The floor is formed by the posterior surface of the pons and the cranial half of the medulla oblongata (see Fig. 11-2). The floor is divided into symmetrical halves by the *median sulcus*. On each side of this sulcus there is an elevation, the *medial eminence*, which is bounded laterally by another sulcus, the *sulcus limitans*. Lateral to the sulcus limitans there is an area known as the *vestibular area* (see Figs. 11-2 and 11-3). The vestibular nuclei lie beneath the vestibular area.

The *facial colliculus* is a slight swelling at the inferior end of the median eminence that is produced by the fibers from the motor nucleus of the facial nerve looping over the abducens nucleus (Fig. 11-5). At the superior end of the sulcus limitans there is a bluish-gray area that is produced by a cluster of nerve cells containing melanin pigment; the cluster of cells is called the *substantia ferruginea*. Strands of nerve fibers, the *stria medullaris*, emerge from the median sulcus and pass laterally over the medial eminence and the vestibular area and enter the inferior cerebellar peduncle (see Fig. 11-2).

Inferior to the stria medullaris the following

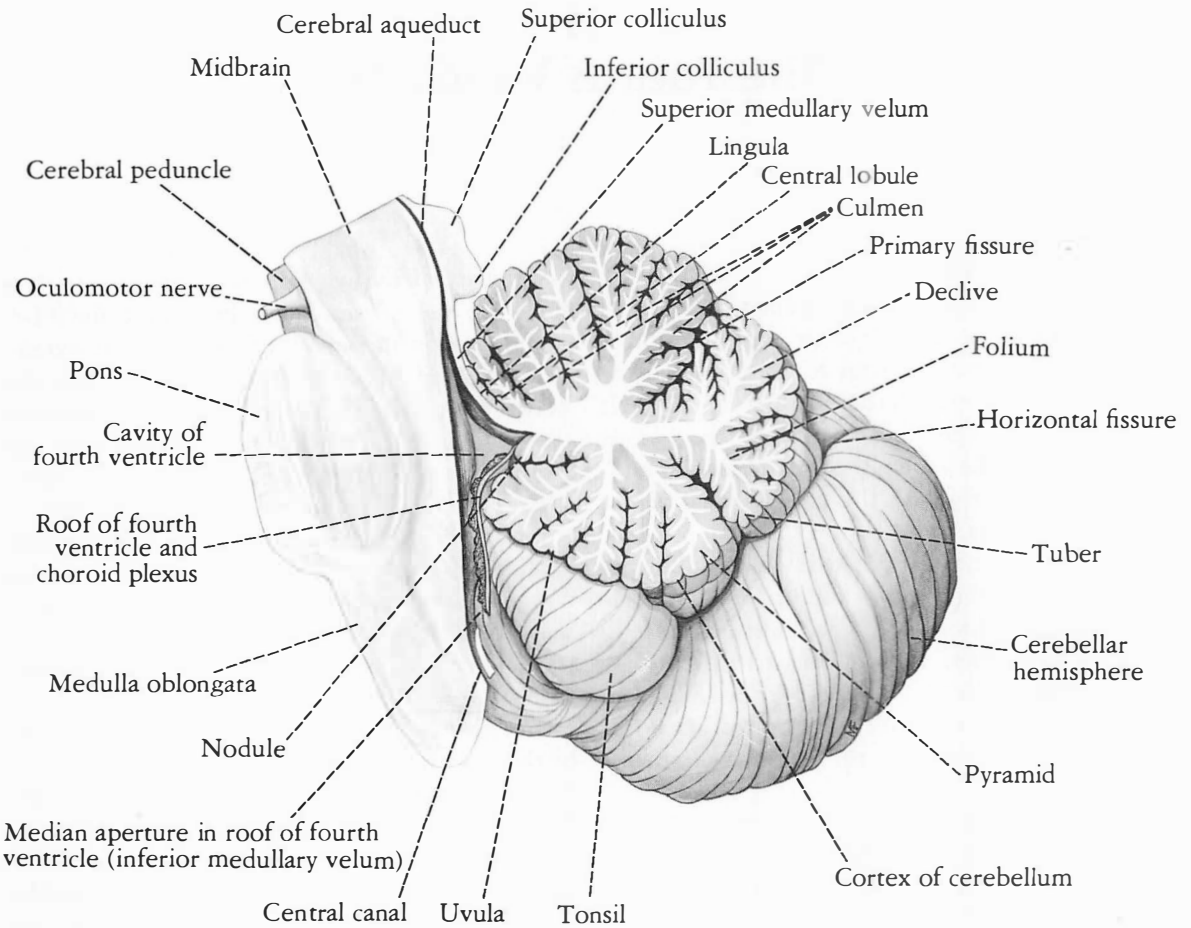


Fig. 11-1. Sagittal section through the brainstem and the cerebellum showing the fourth ventricle.

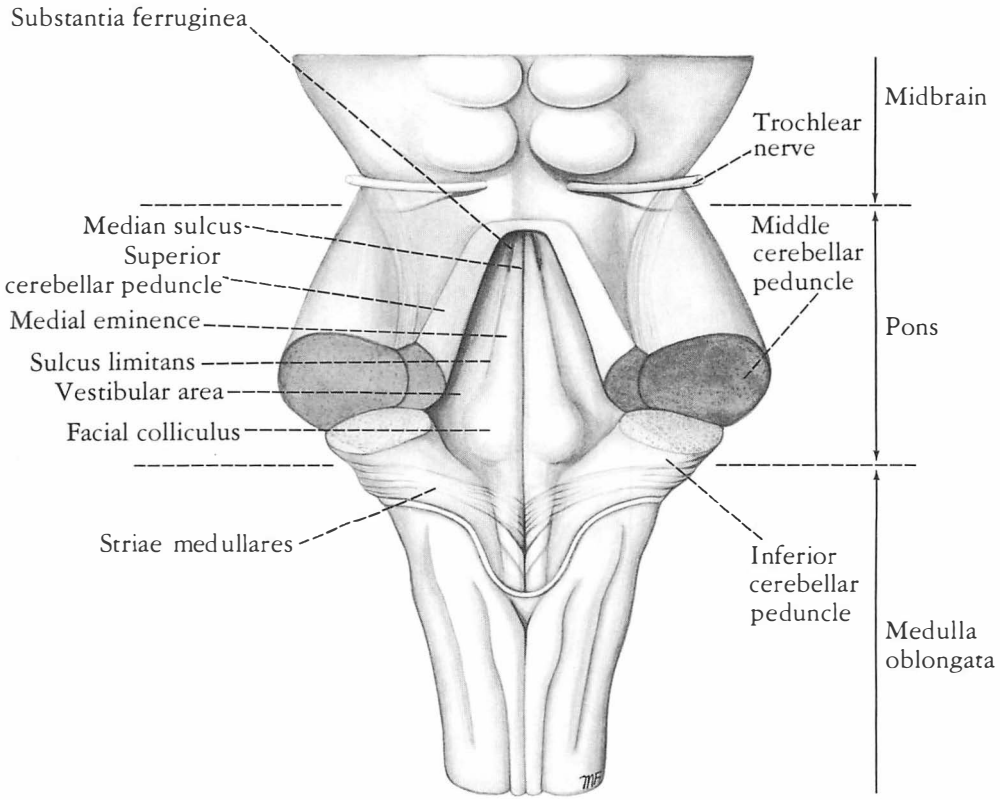


Fig. 11-2. Posterior surface of the brainstem showing the floor of the fourth ventricle. The cerebellum has been removed.

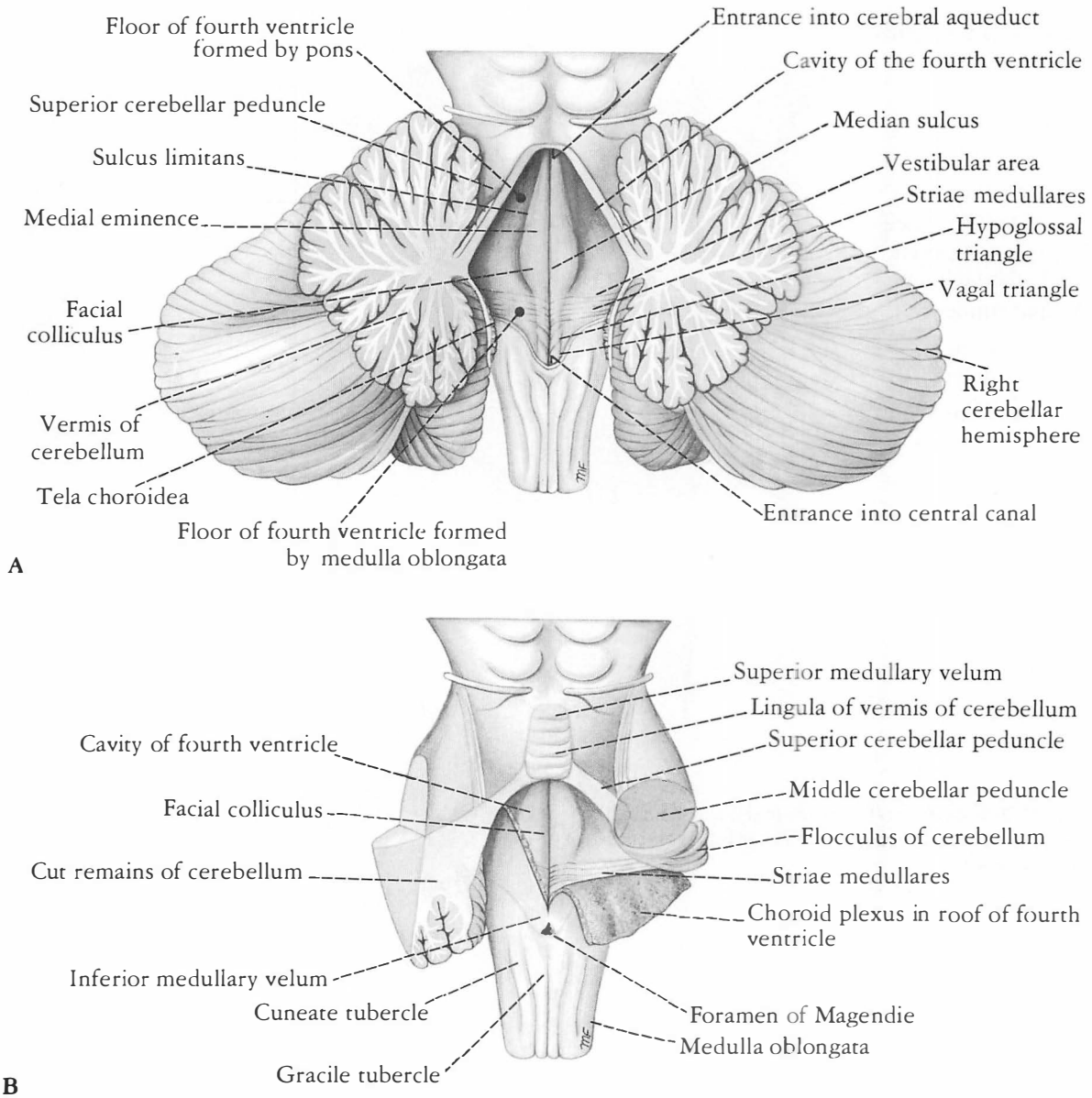


Fig. 11-3. Posterior view of the cavity of the fourth ventricle.
A. The vermis of the cerebellum has been divided in the midline and the cerebellar hemispheres have been displaced laterally.
B. The greater part of the cerebellum has been removed, leaving the superior and inferior medullary vela.
Note that the right half of the inferior medullary velum has been reflected inferiorly to reveal the choroid plexus.

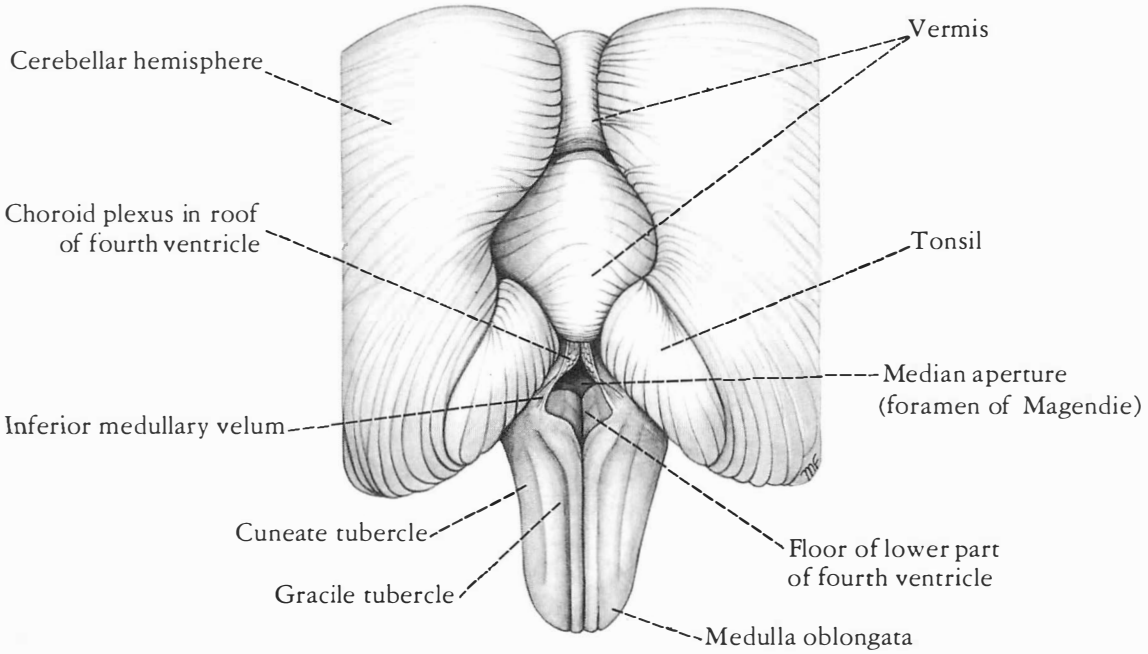


Fig. 11-4. Posterior view of the roof of the fourth ventricle. The cerebellum has been displaced superiorly to show the large median aperture (foramen of Magendie).

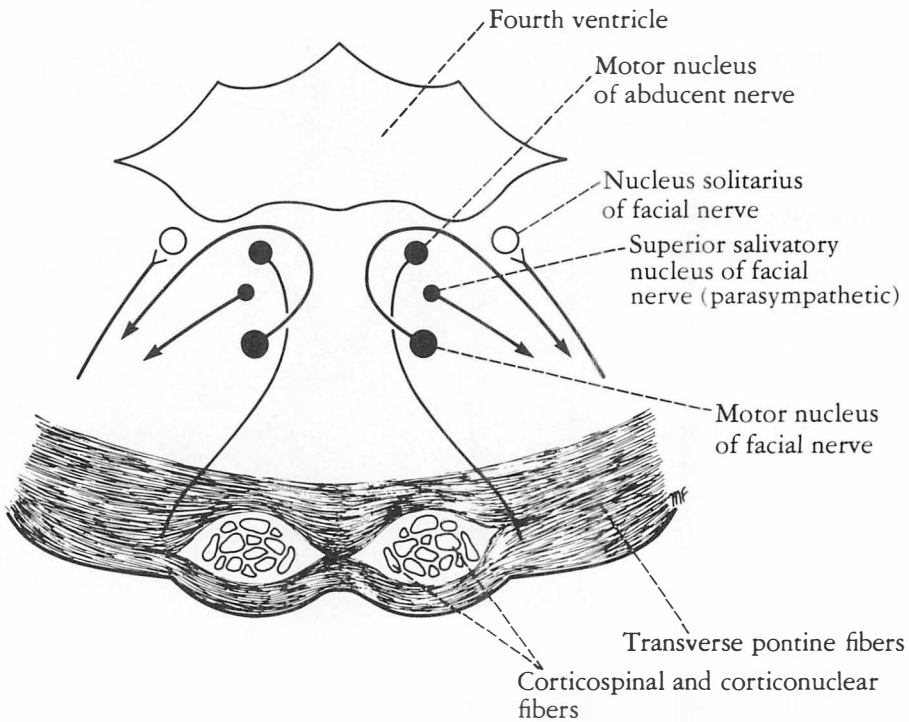


Fig. 11-5. Development of the nuclei of the facial nerve and their relationship to the nucleus of the abducent nerve.

features should be recognized in the floor of the ventricle. The most medial is the *hypoglossal triangle*, which indicates the position of the underlying *hypoglossal nucleus* (see Fig. 11-3). Lateral to this is the *vagal triangle*, beneath which lies the dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus. The inferior part of the vestibular area lies lateral to the vagal triangle.

The *choroid plexus* of the fourth ventricle, whose function is to produce cerebrospinal fluid, is suspended from the inferior medullary velum (see Figs. 11-1 and 11-3). Here the highly vascular, fringelike processes of the tela choroidea invaginate the ependymal lining of the ventricular roof. It is the cells of the ependyma that are secretory and produce the cerebrospinal fluid.

Clinical Notes

General Considerations

The fourth ventricle is the cavity of the hindbrain and is situated in the posterior cranial fossa. It is related posteriorly to the vermis of the cerebellum and anteriorly to the pons and the cranial part of the medulla oblongata. The ventricle is lined with ependyma and is continuous superiorly with the third ventricle through the cerebral aqueduct of the midbrain. Inferiorly it is continuous with the central canal of the medulla and the spinal cord. The fourth ventricle is full of cerebrospinal fluid, which leaves the ventricular system through the three apertures in the roof of the ventricle. The large median aperture, the foramen of Magendie, and the two small lateral apertures, the foramina of Luschka, are the only openings by which the

cerebrospinal fluid within the ventricular system of the brain can enter the subarachnoid space.

Suspended from the roof of the fourth ventricle is the choroid plexus, which, together with similar plexuses in the third ventricle and the lateral ventricles, is the site for the secretion of cerebrospinal fluid.

Beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle are located several important nuclei that control vital functions; the hypoglossal and vagal nuclei, for example, control movements of the tongue, swallowing, respiration, heart rate, and blood pressure.

Hydrocephalus

Hydrocephalus, which may be defined as an abnormal increase in volume of the cerebrospinal fluid within the skull, may occur as the result of blockage of the foramina in the roof of the fourth ventricle. A congenital septum may be present, or adhesions occurring during meningitis, or displacement of the medulla oblongata by the pressure of an intracranial tumor; all of these conditions can cause hydrocephalus.

Tumors of the Fourth Ventricle

Tumors may arise in the vermis of the cerebellum or in the pons and invade the fourth ventricle. *Ependymomas* arising from the ependymal cells lining the ventricle also occur. Tumors in this region may invade the cerebellum and produce the symptoms and signs of cerebellar deficiency, or they may press upon the vital nuclear centers situated beneath the floor of the ventricle and produce cardiac irregularities, tachycardia, irregular respiration, and vasomotor disturbances.

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 488.

1. A 38-year-old man was admitted to the neurosurgery ward with symptoms of persistent headache and vomiting and some unsteadiness in walking. The headache started 6 weeks previously and has become progressively worse. On examination it was found that he could not sit up in bed unsupported. The limbs on the right side of the body showed some loss of tone. Examination of the patient when he stood up showed a marked loss of equilibrium. Examination of the cranial nerves showed central deafness of the right ear. Ophthalmoscopic examination showed severe bilateral papilledema. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, explain the symptoms and signs experienced by this patient and try to make a diagnosis.

2. A 4-year-old girl was found to have tuberculous meningitis. She was immediately admitted to the hospital and administration of streptomycin and isoniazid was commenced. As soon as this therapy was started she was also administered steroid hormones to reduce the incidence of adhesions. She recovered fully, with no complications. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, explain why it is important to prevent the formation of adhesions in the subarachnoid space.

3. A freshman medical student was asked by his professor of neuroanatomy to name the five ways by which cerebrospinal fluid may leave the cavity of the fourth ventricle. The student responded by giving the three apertures in the roof of the fourth ventricle, but he could not remember the other two. Do you remember?

4. On three occasions during a lecture a professor referred to the superior and inferior medullary vela. What are these vela, and do they perform any particular function?

5. Name the important structures that lie beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle.

Additional Reading

Crosby, E. C., Humphrey, T., and Lauer, E. W. *Correlative Anatomy of the Nervous System.* New York: Macmillan, 1962.

Walton, J. N. *Brain's Diseases of the Nervous System* (8th ed.). New York and London: Oxford University Press, 1977.

Warwick, R., and Williams, P. L. (Eds.). *Gray's Anatomy* (35 Brit. ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders, 1973.

12
The Midbrain (Mesencephalon)

Gross Appearance

The midbrain measures about 0.8 inch (2 cm) in length and connects the pons and cerebellum with the forebrain (Fig. 12-1). Its long axis inclines anteriorly as it ascends through the hiatus in the tentorium cerebelli. The midbrain is traversed by a narrow channel, the *cerebral aqueduct*, which is filled with cerebrospinal fluid (Figs. 12-2, 12-3, and 12-4).

On the posterior surface are four *colliculi* (corpora quadrigemina). These are rounded eminences that are divided into superior and inferior pairs by a vertical and a transverse groove (see Fig. 1-16). The superior colliculi are centers for visual reflexes (see p. 359), and the inferior are lower auditory centers. In the midline below the inferior colliculi the *trochlear* nerves emerge. These are small-diameter nerves that wind round the lateral aspect of the midbrain to enter the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus.

On the lateral aspect of the midbrain, the superior and inferior brachia ascend in an anterolateral direction (Fig. 12-1). The *superior brachium* passes from the superior colliculus to the lateral geniculate body and the optic tract. The *inferior brachium* connects the inferior colliculus to the *medial geniculate body*.

On the anterior aspect of the midbrain (Fig. 12-1) there is a deep depression in the midline, the *interpeduncular fossa*, which is bounded on either side by the *crus cerebri*. Many small blood vessels perforate the floor of the interpenduncular fossa and this region is termed the *posterior perforated substance* (see Fig. 12-1). The oculomotor nerve emerges from a groove on the medial side of the crus cerebri and passes forward in the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus.

Internal Structure of the Midbrain

The midbrain comprises two lateral halves, called the *cerebral peduncles;* each of these is divided into an anterior part, the *crus cerebri*, and a posterior part, the *tegmentum*, by a pigmented band of gray matter, the *substantia nigra* (see Fig. 12-2). The narrow cavity of the midbrain is the *cerebral aqueduct*, which connects the third and fourth ventricles. The *tectum* is the part of the tegmentum posterior to the cerebral aqueduct; it has four small surface swellings referred to previously: the *two superior* and *two inferior colliculi* (see Fig. 12-2). The cerebral aqueduct is lined by ependyma and is surrounded by the *central gray matter*. On transverse sections of the midbrain the interpeduncular fossa can be seen to separate the crura cerebri, whereas the tegmentum is continuous across the median plane (see Fig. 12-2).

Transverse Section of the Midbrain at the Level of the Inferior Colliculi

The *inferior colliculus*, consisting of a large nucleus of gray matter, lies beneath the corresponding surface elevation and forms part of the auditory pathway (see Figs. 12-2A and 12-3). It receives many of the terminal fibers of the lateral lemniscus. The pathway then continues (see p. 370) through the inferior brachium to the medial geniculate body.

The *trochlear nucleus* is situated in the central gray matter close to the median plane just posterior to the *medial longitudinal fasciculus*. The emerging fibers of the trochlear nucleus pass laterally and posteriorly round the central gray matter and leave the midbrain just below the inferior colliculi. Most of the fibers of the trochlear nerve

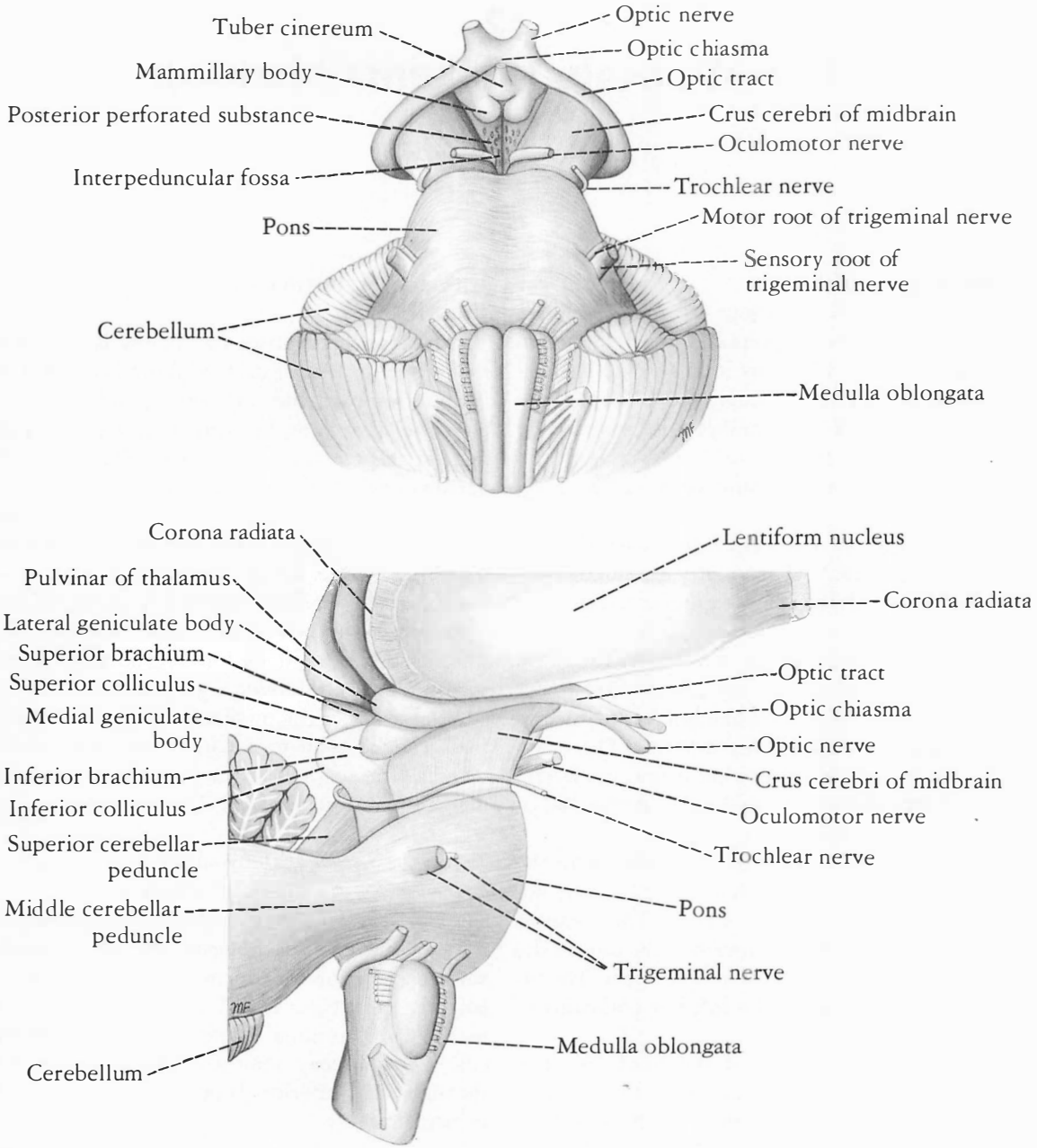


Fig. 12-1. The midbrain.
A. Anterior view.
B. Lateral view.

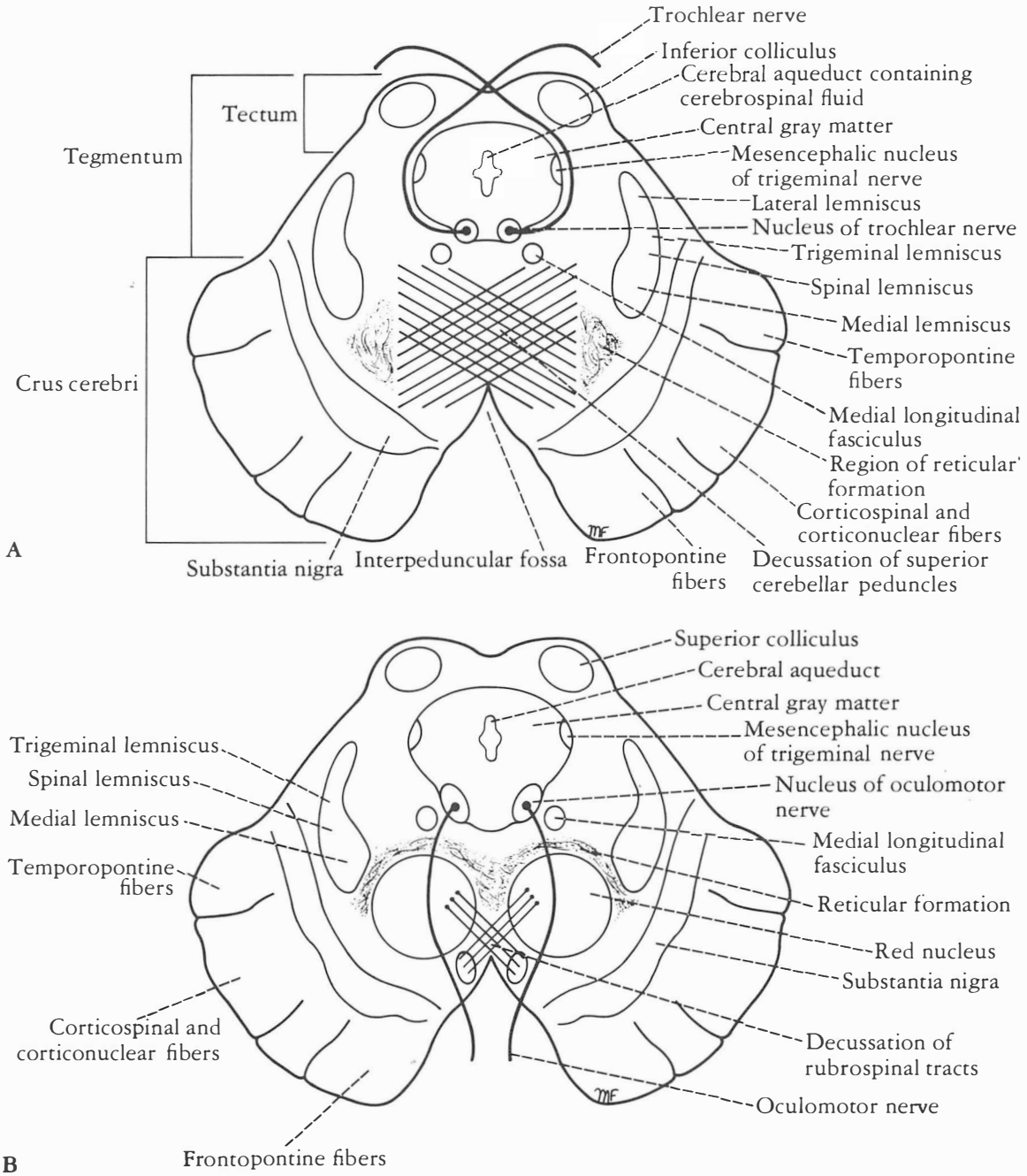


Fig. 12-2. Transverse sections of the midbrain.
A. At the level of the inferior colliculus.
B. At the level of the superior colliculus.

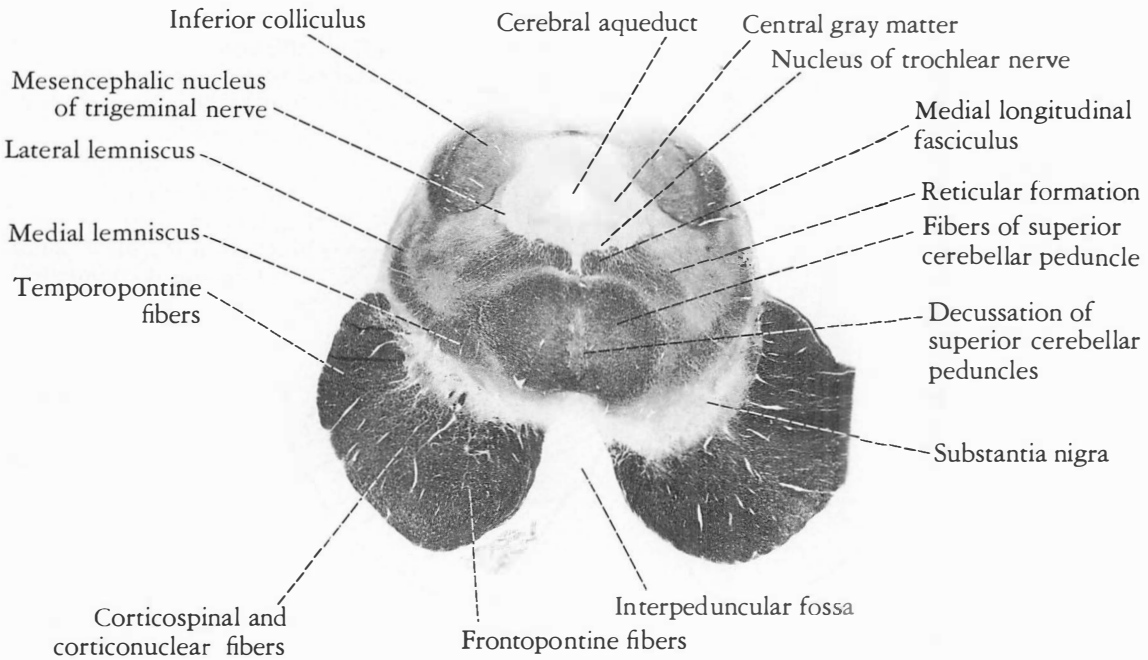


Fig. 12-3. Photomicrograph of transverse section of midbrain at the level of the inferior colliculus. (Weigert stain.)

now decussate. The *mesencephalic nuclei of the trigeminal nerve* are lateral to the cerebral aqueduct (see Figs. 12-2A and 12-3). The *decussation of the superior cerebellar peduncles* occupies the central part of the tegmentum anterior to the cerebral aqueduct. The *reticular formation* is smaller than that of the pons and is situated lateral to the decussation.

The *medial lemniscus* ascends posterior to the substantia nigra; the *spinal* and *trigeminal lemnisci* are situated lateral to the medial lemniscus (see Figs. 12-2 and 12-3). The *lateral lemniscus* is located posterior to the trigeminal lemniscus.

The *substantia nigra* (see Figs. 12-2 and 12-3) is a large motor nucleus situated between the tegmentum and the crus cerebri and is found throughout the midbrain. The nucleus is composed of medium-size multipolar neurons that possess inclusion granules of melanin pigment within their cytoplasm. The substantia nigra is concerned with muscle tone and is connected to the cerebral cortex, spinal cord, hypothalamus, and basal nuclei.

The *crus cerebri* contains important descending tracts and is separated from the tegmentum by the substantia nigra (see Figs. 12-2 and 12-3). The corticospinal and corticonuclear fibers occupy the middle two-thirds of the crus. The frontopontine fibers occupy the medial part of the crus and the temporopontine fibers occupy the lateral part of the crus (see Figs. 12-2 and 12-3). These descending tracts connect the cerebral cortex to the anterior gray column cells of the spinal cord, the cranial nerve nuclei, the pons, and the cerebellum.

Transverse Section of the Midbrain at the Level of the Superior Colliculi

The *superior colliculus* (see Figs. 12-2B and 12-4), a large nucleus of gray matter that lies beneath the corresponding surface elevation, forms part of the visual reflexes (see p. 359). It is connected to the lateral geniculate body by the superior brachium. It receives afferent fibers from the optic nerve, the

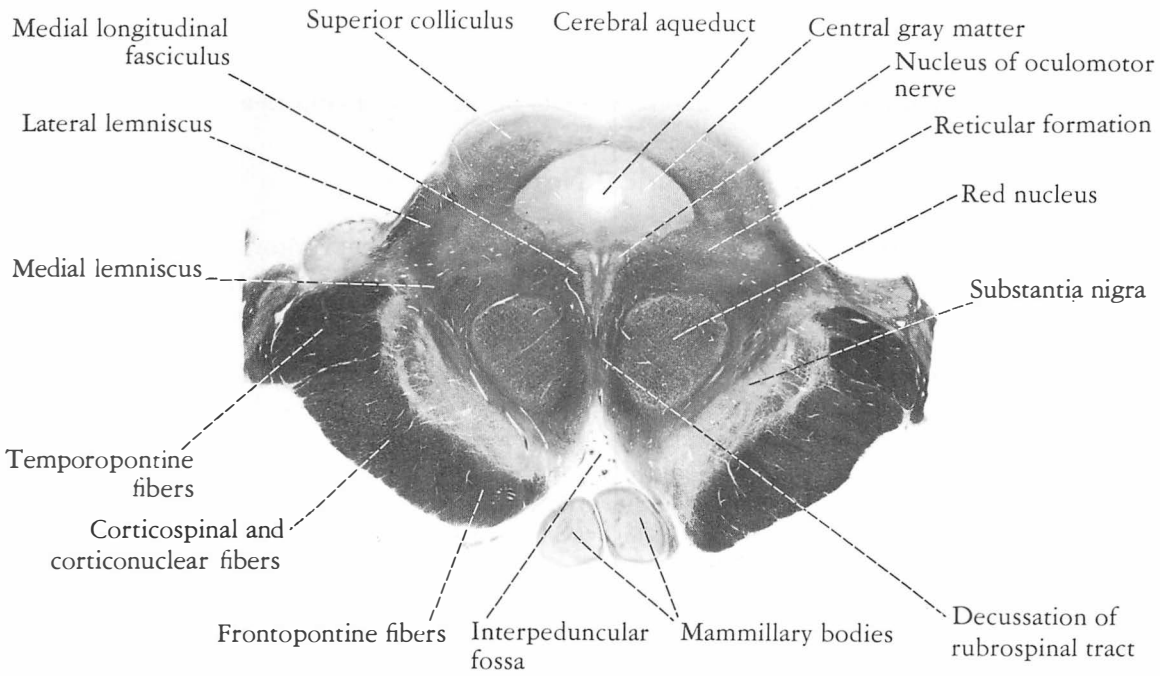


Fig. 12-4. Photomicrograph of transverse section of midbrain at the level of the superior colliculus. (Weigert stain.)

visual cortex, and the spinotectal tract. The efferent fibers form the tectospinal and tectobulbar tracts, which are probably responsible for the reflex movements of the eyes, head, and neck in response to visual stimuli. The afferent pathway for the *light reflex* ends in the *pretectal nucleus*. This is a small group of neurons situated close to the lateral part of the superior colliculus. After relaying in the pretectal nucleus, the fibers pass to the parasympathetic nucleus of the oculomotor nerve (Edinger-Westphal nucleus). The emerging fibers then pass to the oculomotor nerve. The *oculomotor nucleus* is situated in the central gray matter close to the median plane, just posterior to the *medial longitudinal fasciculus* (see Figs. 12-2B and 12-4). The fibers of the oculomotor nucleus pass anteriorly through the red nucleus to emerge on the medial side of the crus cerebri in the interpeduncular fossa. The nucleus of the oculomotor nerve is divisible into a number of cell groups, the details of which are described on page 359.

The *medial, spinal,* and *trigeminal lemnisci* form a curved band posterior to the substantia nigra but the *lateral lemniscus* does not extend superiorly to this level (see Figs. 12-2B and 12-4).

The *red nucleus* (see Figs. 12-2B and 12-4) is a rounded mass of gray matter situated between the cerebral aqueduct and the substantia nigra. Its reddish hue, seen in fresh specimens, is due to its vascularity and the presence of an iron-containing pigment in the cytoplasm of many of its neurons. Afferent fibers reach the red nucleus from: (1) the cerebral cortex through the corticospinal fibers, (2) the cerebellum through the superior cerebellar peduncle, and (3) the lentiform nucleus, subthalamic and hypothalamic nuclei, substantia nigra, and spinal cord. Efferent fibers leave the red nucleus and pass to: (1) the spinal cord through the rubrospinal tract (as this tract descends it decussates), (2) the reticular formation through the rubroreticular tract, (3) the thalamus, and (4) the substantia nigra.

The *reticular formation* is situated in the teg-

mentum lateral and posterior to the red nucleus (see Figs. 12-2B and 12-4).

The *crus cerebri* contains the identical important descending tracts, the *corticospinal, corticonuclear,* and *corticopontine* fibers, that are present at the level of the inferior colliculus.

Clinical Notes

General Considerations

Trauma

The midbrain connects the pons and cerebellum to the forebrain and ascends through the opening in the tentorium cerebelli. Among the mechanisms of injuries to the brain, a sudden lateral movement of the head could result in the cerebral peduncles impinging against the sharp free edge of the tentorium cerebelli. Sudden movements of the head resulting from trauma cause different regions of the brain to move at different velocities relative to one another. For example, the large anatomical unit, the forebrain, may move at a different velocity from the remainder of the brain, such as the cerebellum. This will result in the midbrain being bent, stretched, or torn.

Blockage of the Cerebral Aqueduct

The cavity of the midbrain, the cerebral aqueduct, is one of the narrower parts of the ventricular system. Normally, cerebrospinal fluid that has been produced in the lateral and third ventricles passes through this channel to enter the fourth ventricle, and so escapes through the foramina in its roof to enter the subarachnoid space. In congenital hydrocephalus, the cerebral aqueduct may be blocked or replaced by numerous small tubular passages that are insufficient for the normal flow of cerebrospinal fluid. A tumor of the midbrain (Fig. 12-5A) or pressure on the midbrain from a tumor arising outside the midbrain may compress the aqueduct and produce hydrocephalus. When the cerebral aqueduct is blocked, the accumulating cerebrospinal fluid within the third and lateral ventricles causes lesions in the midbrain. The presence of the oculomotor and trochlear nerve nuclei, together with the important descending corticospinal and corticonuclear tracts, will provide symptoms and signs that are helpful in accurately localizing a lesion in the brainstem.

Involvement of the oculomotor nucleus will produce ipsilateral paralysis of the levator palpebrae superioris, the superior, inferior, and medial rectus muscles, and the inferior oblique muscle. Malfunction of the parasympathetic nucleus of the oculomotor nerve produces a dilated pupil that is insensitive to light and does not constrict on accommodation.

Involvement of the trochlear nucleus will produce ipsilateral paralysis of the superior oblique muscle of the eyeball. Thus it is seen that involvement of one or both of these nuclei, or the corticonuclear fibers that converge upon them, will cause impairment of ocular movements.

Weber's syndrome (Fig. 12-5B), which is commonly produced by occlusion of the blood vessels that supply the midbrain, results in the necrosis of brain tissue involving the oculomotor nerve and the crus cerebri. There is ipsilateral ophthalmoplegia and contralateral paralysis of the lower part of the face, the tongue, and the arm and leg. The eyeball is deviated laterally because of the paralysis of the medial rectus muscle; there is drooping (ptosis) of the upper lid and the pupil is dilated and fixed to light and accommodation.

Benedikt's syndrome (Fig. 12-5C), is similar to Weber's syndrome, but the necrosis involves the medial lemniscus and red nucleus, producing contralateral hemianesthesia and involuntary movements of the limbs of the opposite side.

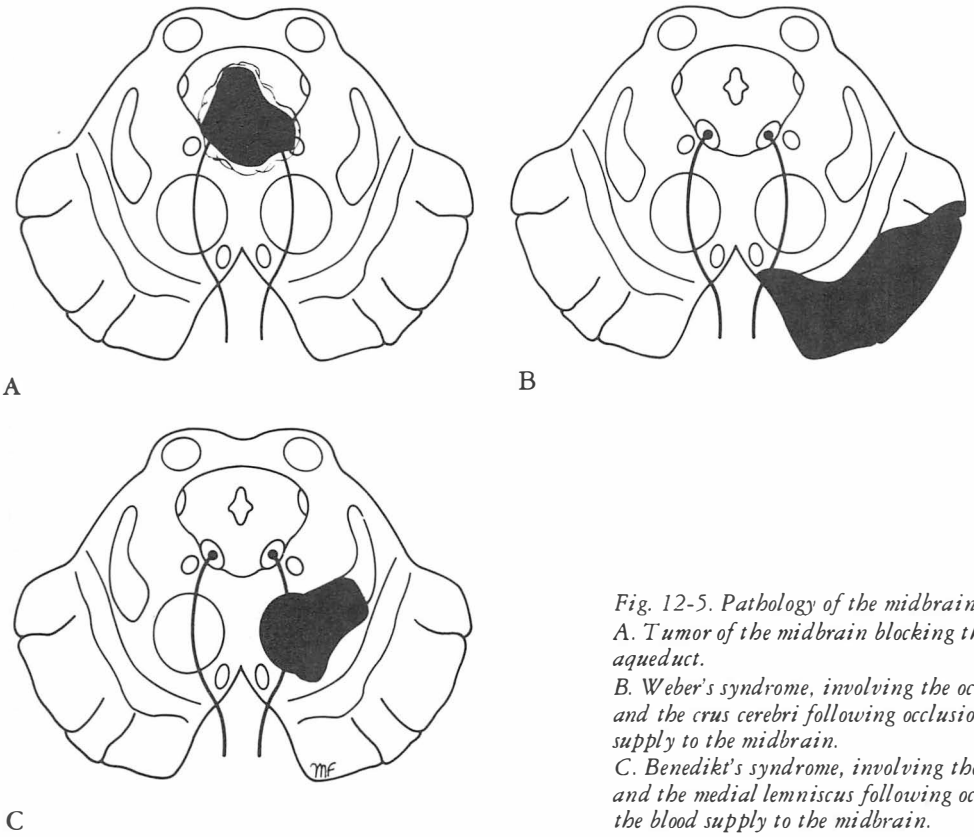


Fig. 12-5. Pathology of the midbrain.
A. Tumor of the midbrain blocking the cerebral aqueduct.
B. Weber's syndrome, involving the oculomotor nerve and the crus cerebri following occlusion of the blood supply to the midbrain.
C. Benedikt's syndrome, involving the red nucleus and the medial lemniscus following occlusion of the blood supply to the midbrain.

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 489.

1. After a severe automobile accident that resulted in the death of the driver of one of the vehicles, an autopsy was performed and the skull was opened. A massive subdural hematoma was found in the middle cranial fossa. The rapid accumulation of blood within the skull had exerted pressure on the brain above the tentorium cerebelli. The uncus of the temporal lobe had been forced inferiorly through the hiatus in the tentorium cerebelli. What effect do you think these intracranial changes had on the midbrain of this patient?

2. A 3-month-old girl was taken to a pediatrician because her mother was concerned about the large size of her head. The child was perfectly normal in every other respect. Examination of the child showed that the diameter of the head was larger than normal for the age; the fontanelles were larger than normal and were moderately tense. The scalp was shiny and the scalp veins were dilated. The eyes were normal and the mental and physical development of the child were within normal limits. Sonar scanning and computerized

axial tomography of the head revealed gross dilation of the third and lateral ventricles of the brain. What is your diagnosis? What possible treatment would have been suggested to this mother?

3. A 20-year-old male was seen by a neurologist because he had a 3-month history of double vision. On examination of the patient, both eyes at rest were turned downward and laterally. The patient was unable to move the eyes upward or medially. Both upper lids were drooping (ptosis). Examination of both pupils showed them to be dilated and they did not constrict when a light was shone into either eye. Facial movements and sensation were normal. Movements of the upper and lower limbs were normal. There was no evidence of loss of or altered skin sensations in the upper or the lower limbs. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, make a diagnosis and accurately locate the site of the lesion. Is the lesion unilateral or bilateral?

4. A 56-year-old man with hypertension was admitted to the hospital with a diagnosis of a hemorrhage into the midbrain, possibly from a branch of the posterior cerebral artery. He was found, on physical examination, to have paralysis on the right side of the levator palpebrae superioris, the superior rectus, medial rectus, inferior rectus, and inferior oblique muscle. Furthermore, his right pupil was dilated and failed to constrict on exposure to light or on accommodation. The left eye was normal in every respect. He displayed hypersensitivity to touch on the skin of the left side of his face, and loss of skin sensation on the greater part of his left arm and left leg. The left leg also displayed some spontaneous slow writhing movements (athetosis). Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, can you explain the signs and symptoms exhibited by this patient?

5. A 42-year-old woman was diagnosed as having a lesion in the midbrain. Physical examination revealed an oculomotor nerve palsy on the left side (paralysis of the left extraocular muscles except the lateral rectus and the superior oblique muscles) and an absence of the light and accommodation reflexes on the left side. There was some weakness but no atrophy of the muscles of the lower part of the face and the tongue on the right side. There was evidence of spastic paralysis of the right arm and leg. There was no evidence of any sensory loss on either side of the head, trunk, or limbs. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, precisely place the lesion in the midbrain of this patient.

Additional Reading

Carpenter, M. B., and McMasters, R. E. Lesions of the substantia nigra in the rhesus monkey: Efferent fiber degeneration and behavioral observations. *Am. J. Anat.* 114:293, 1964.

Marsden, C. D. Pigmentation in the nuclei substantiae nigrae of mammals. *J. Anat.* 95:256, 1961.

Merritt, H. H. *A Textbook of Neurology* (5th ed.). Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger, 1973.

Stern, G. The effects of lesions in the substantia nigra. *Brain.* 89:449, 1966.

Warwick, R., and Williams, P. L. (Eds.). *Gray's Anatomy* (35th Brit. ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders, 1973.

Warwick, R. Observations upon certain reputed accessory nuclei of the oculomotor complex. *J. Anat.* 87:46, 1953.

Warwick, R. Representation of the extraocular muscles in the oculomotor nuclei of the monkey. *J. Comp. Neurol.* 98:449, 1953.

13
The Cerebrum

The cerebrum is the largest part of the brain and is situated in the anterior and middle cranial fossae of the skull occupying the whole concavity of the vault of the skull. It may be divided into two parts: the *diencephalon,* which forms the central core, and the *telencephalon,* which forms the *cerebral hemispheres.* The different parts of the diencephalon will be described in this chapter.

Diencephalon

The diencephalon consists of the third ventricle and the structures that form its boundaries (Fig. 13-1). It extends posteriorly to the point where the third ventricle becomes continuous with the cerebral aqueduct and anteriorly as far as the interventricular foramina (Fig. 13-3). The diencephalon is thus a midline structure with symmetrical right and left halves. Obviously, these subdivisions of the brain are made for convenience, and from a functional point of view nerve fibers freely cross the boundaries.

Gross Features

The *inferior surface* of the diencephalon is the only area exposed to the surface in the intact brain (Fig. 13-2). It is formed by hypothalamic structures, which are, from anterior to posterior: the *optic chiasma,* with the *optic tract* on either side; the *infundibulum* with the *tuber cinereum;* and the *mammillary bodies.*

The *superior surface* of the diencephalon is concealed by the *fornix*, which is a thick bundle of fibers that originates in the *hippocampus* of the temporal lobe and arches posteriorly over the *thalamus* (Fig. 13-3) to join the *mammillary body.* The actual superior wall of the diencephalon is formed by the *roof of the third ventricle.* This consists of a layer of ependyma, which is continuous with the rest of the ependymal lining of the third ventricle. It is covered superiorly by a vascular fold of pia mater, called the *tela choroidea of the third ventricle.* From the roof of the third ventricle a pair of vascular processes, the *choroid plexuses of the third ventricle,* project downward from the midline into the cavity of the third ventricle.

The *lateral surface* of the diencephalon is bounded by the *internal capsule* of white matter and consists of nerve fibers that connect the cerebral cortex with other parts of the brainstem and spinal cord (Fig. 13-1).

Since the diencephalon is divided into symmetrical halves by the slitlike third ventricle, it also has a medial surface. The *medial surface* of the diencephalon (i.e., the lateral wall of the third ventricle) is formed in its superior part by the medial surface of the *thalamus* and in its inferior part by the *hypothalamus* (Fig. 13-3). These two areas are separated from one another by a shallow sulcus, the *hypothalamic sulcus.* A bundle of nerve fibers forms a ridge along the superior margin of the medial surface of the diencephalon and is called the *stria medullaris thalami* (Fig. 13-1).

The diencephalon may be divided into four major parts: (1) the thalamus, (2) the subthalamus, (3) the epithalamus, and (4) the hypothalamus.

Thalamus

The thalamus is a large ovoid mass of gray matter that forms the major part of the diencephalon. It is situated on each side of the third ventricle (Fig. 13-3). The anterior end of the thalamus is narrow and rounded and forms the posterior boundary of the interventricular foramen. The posterior end (Fig. 13-4) is expanded to form the *pulvinar,* which overhangs the superior colliculus and the superior brachium. The *lateral geniculate* body

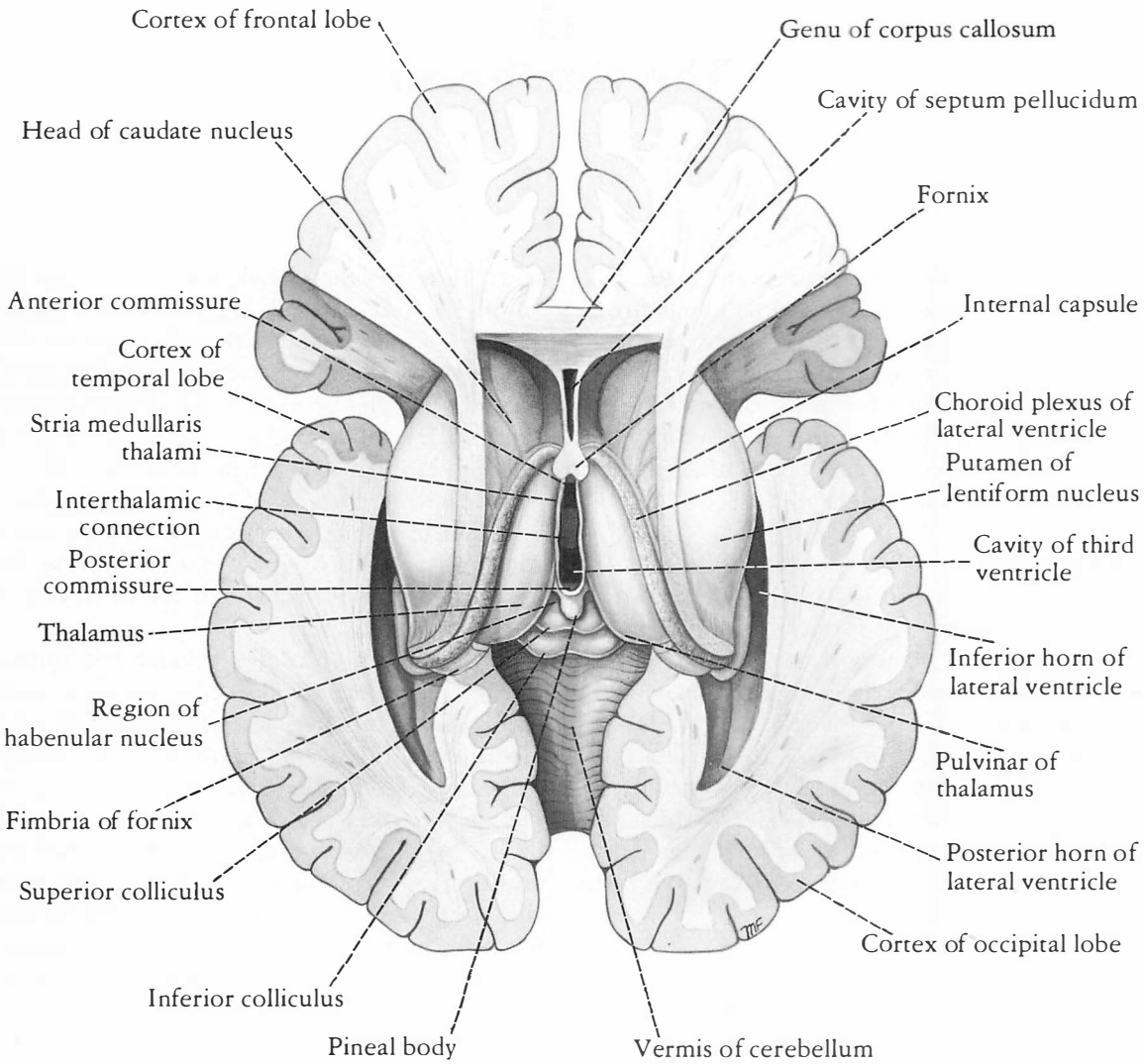


Fig. 13-1. Horizontal section of the brain, showing the third and lateral ventricles exposed from above.

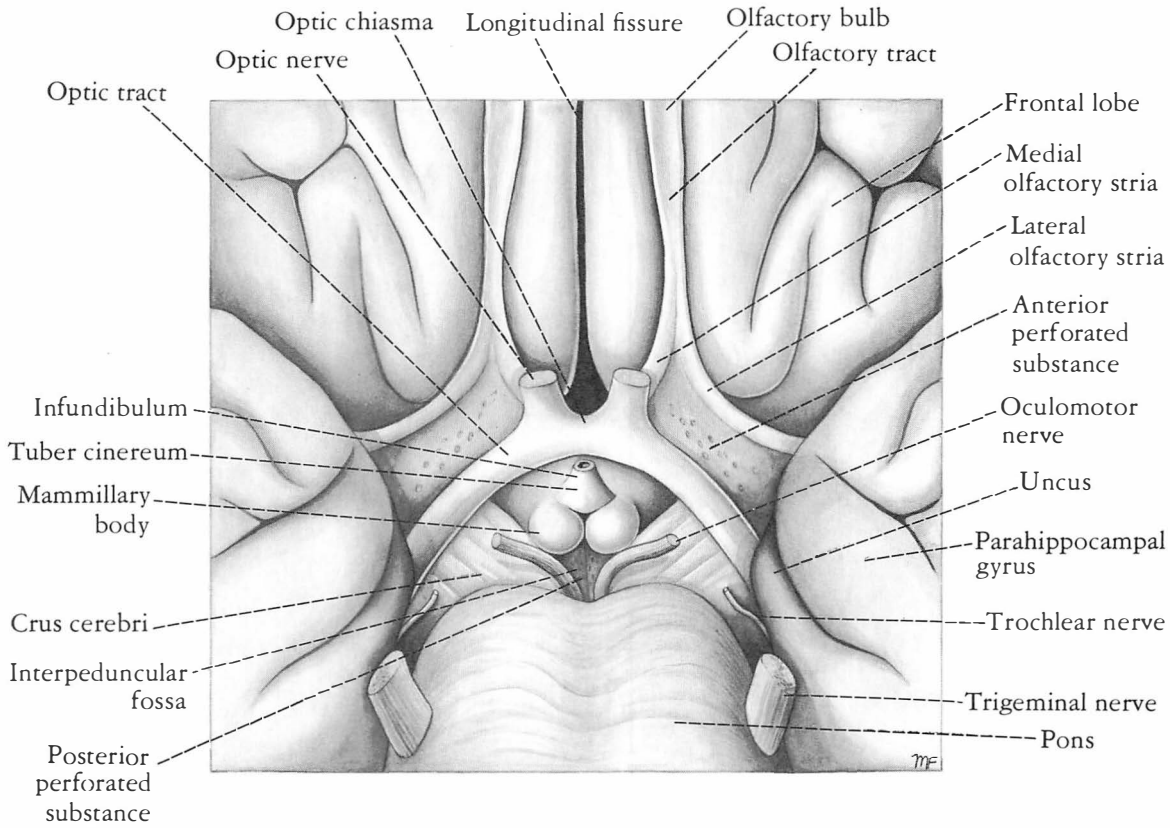


Fig. 13-2. Inferior surface of the brain, showing parts of the diencephalon.

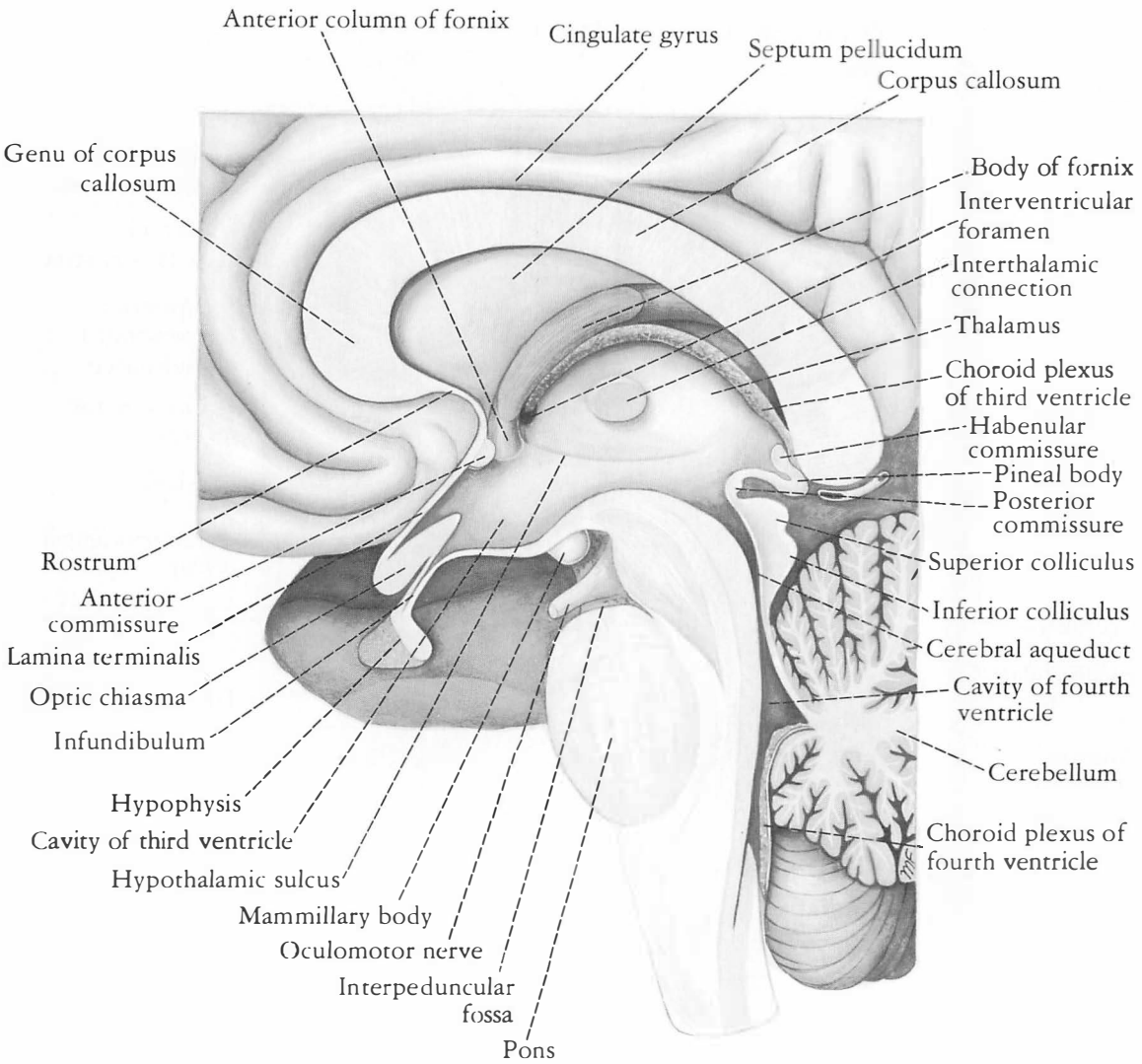


Fig. 13-3. Sagittal section of the brain showing the medial surface of the diencephalon.

forms a small elevation on the under aspect of the lateral portion of the pulvinar.

The superior surface of the thalamus is covered medially by the tela choroidea and the fornix, and laterally it is covered by ependyma and forms part of the floor of the lateral ventricle; the lateral part is partially hidden by the choroid plexus of the lateral ventricle (see Fig. 13-1).

The inferior surface is continuous with the tegmentum of the midbrain (Fig. 13-3).

The medial surface of the thalamus forms the superior part of the lateral wall of the third ventricle and is usually connected to the opposite thalamus by a band of gray matter, the *interthalamic connection* (Fig. 13-3).

The lateral surface of the thalamus is separated from the lentiform nucleus by the band of white matter called the *internal capsule* (see Fig. 13-1).

SUBDIVISIONS OF THE THALAMUS. The thalamus is covered on its superior surface by a thin layer of

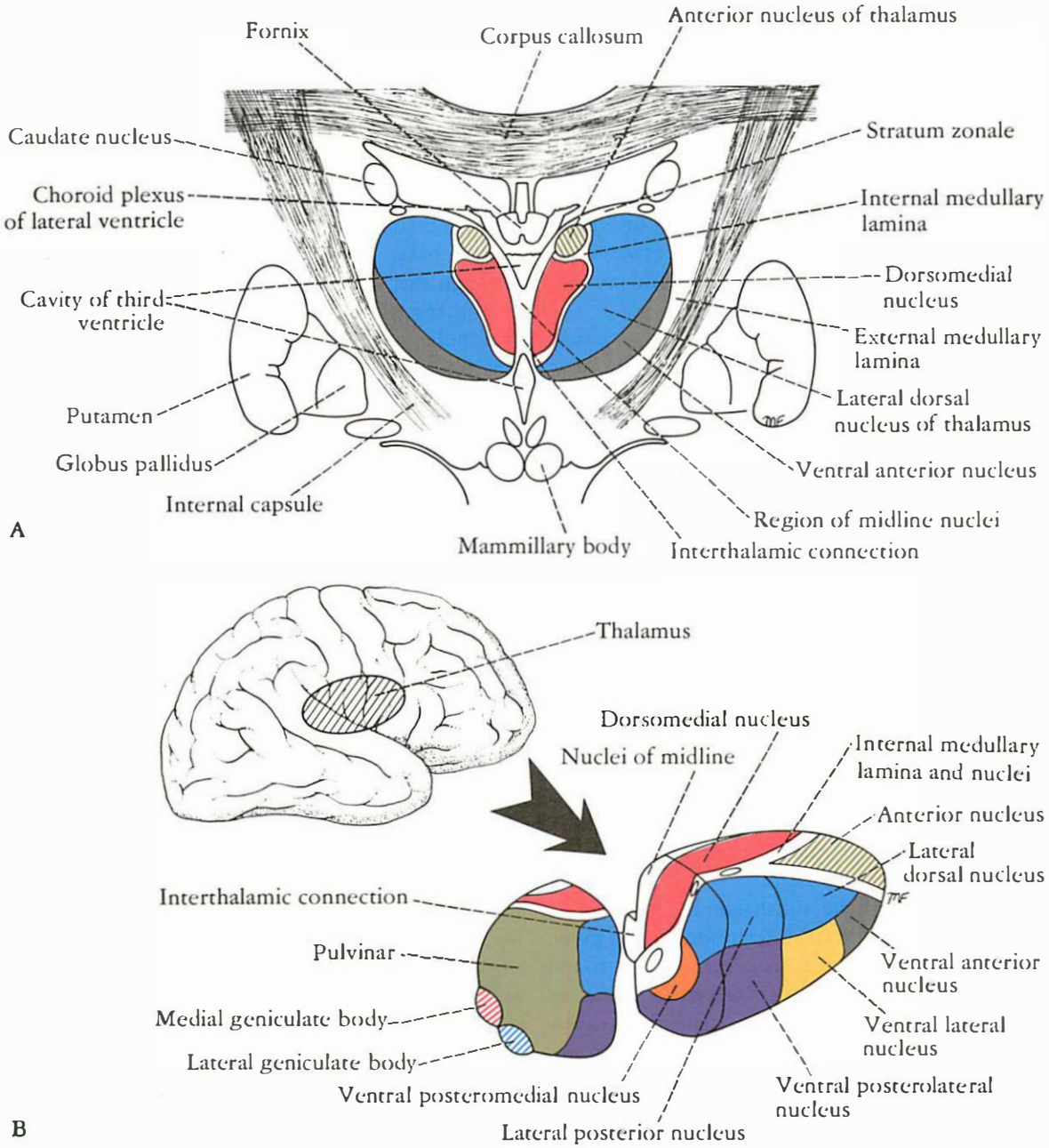


Fig. 13-4. Nuclei of the thalamus.
A. Transverse section through anterior end of thalamus.
B. Diagram showing position of thalamus within right cerebral hemisphere and the relative position of the thalamic nuclei to one another.

white matter, called the *stratum zonale*, and on its lateral surface by another layer, the *external medullary lamina* (Fig. 13-4). The gray matter of the thalamus is divided by a vertical sheet of white matter, the *internal medullary lamina*, into medial and lateral halves. Anterosuperiorly, the internal medullary lamina splits so that it is Y-shaped (Fig. 13-4). The thalamus is thus subdivided into three main parts; the anterior part lies between the limbs of the Y, and the medial and lateral parts lie on the sides of the stem of the Y.

Each of the three parts of the thalamus contains a group of thalamic nuclei (Fig. 13-4). Moreover, smaller nuclear groups are situated within the internal medullary lamina, and some are located on the medial and lateral surfaces of the thalamus. The detailed description of the *thalamic nuclei* and their connections is given on page 389. The thalamus is a very important cell station and receives the main sensory tracts (except the olfactory pathway). It should be regarded as a station where much of the information is integrated and relayed to the cerebral cortex and many other subcortical regions. It also plays a key role in the integration of visceral and somatic functions.

Subthalamus

The subthalamus lies inferior to the thalamus and, therefore, is situated between the thalamus and the tegmentum of the midbrain; craniomedially, it is related to the hypothalamus.

The structure of the subthalamus is extremely complex and only a brief description will be given here. Among the collections of nerve cells found in the subthalamus are the cranial ends of the *red nuclei* and the *substantia nigra*. The *subthalamic nucleus* has the shape of a biconvex lens. The nucleus has important connections with the corpus striatum (see p. 243) and, as a result of this, is involved in the control of muscle activity.

The subthalamus also contains many important tracts that pass up from the tegmentum to the thalamic nuclei; the cranial ends of the medial, spinal, and trigeminal lemnisci are examples of these.

Epithalamus

The epithalamus consists of the habenular nuclei and their connections, and the pineal gland.

The *habenular nucleus* is a small group of nerve cells situated just medial to the posterior surface of the thalamus. Afferent fibers are received from the amygdaloid nucleus in the temporal lobe (see p. 275) through the stria medullaris thalami; other fibers pass from the hippocampal formation through the fornix. Some of the fibers of the stria medullaris thalami cross the midline and reach the habenular nucleus of the opposite side; these latter fibers form the *habenular commissure* (Fig. 13-3). Axons from the habenular nucleus pass to the interpeduncular nucleus in the roof of the interpeduncular fossa, the tectum of the midbrain, the thalamus, and the reticular formation of the midbrain. The habenular nucleus is believed to be a center for integration of olfactory, visceral, and somatic afferent pathways.

The *pineal gland* or *body* is a small, conical structure that is attached by the pineal stalk to the diencephalon. It projects backward so that it lies posterior to the midbrain (Fig. 13-3). The base of the pineal stalk possesses a recess that is continuous with the cavity of the third ventricle (Fig. 13-3). The superior part of the base of the stalk contains the *habenular commissure;* the inferior part of the base of the stalk contains the *posterior commissure.*

On microscopic section, the pineal gland is seen to be incompletely divided into lobules by connective tissue septa that extend into the substance of the gland from the capsule. Two types of cells are found in the gland, the *pinealocytes* and the *glial cells.* Concretions of calcified material called *brain sand* progressively accumulate within the pineal gland with age (Fig. 13-5).

The pineal gland possesses no nerve cells, but adrenergic sympathetic fibers derived from the superior cervical sympathetic ganglia enter the gland and run in association with the blood vessels and the pinealocytes.

The functions of the pineal gland are not fully understood. *Melatonin* and *seratonin* are present in

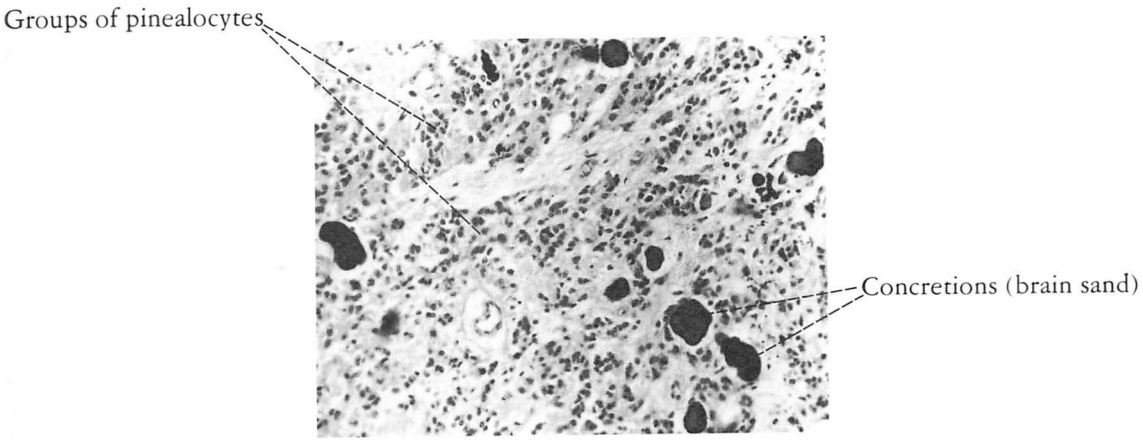


Fig. 13-5. Photomicrograph of section of pineal gland stained with hematoxylin and eosin.

high concentration within the gland. The noradrenalin from the sympathetic fibers probably stimulates the release of these substances from the pinealocytes. It is not known whether these substances leave the pineal gland through the capillaries or through the pineal recess into the cerebrospinal fluid of the third ventricle. There is increasing evidence that the pineal gland influences the output of gonadotrophins through the hypothalamus. Whether melatonin or seratonin is involved in this activity is unknown.

Hypothalamus

The *hypothalamus* is that part of the diencephalon that extends from the region of the optic chiasma to the caudal border of the mammillary bodies (Fig. 13-2). It forms the lower part of its lateral wall below the hypothalamic sulcus.

Anterior to the hypothalamus is an area that extends forward from the optic chiasma to the lamina terminalis and the anterior commissure; it is referred to as the *preoptic area.* Caudally, the hypothalamus merges into the tegmentum of the midbrain. Superior to the hypothalamus lies the thalamus and inferolaterally is the subthalamic region.

When observed from below, the hypothalamus is seen to be made up of the following structures, from anterior to posterior: (1) the optic chiasma, (2) the tuber cinereum and the infundibulum, and (3) the mammillary bodies.

Optic Chiasma. The optic chiasma is a flattened bundle of nerve fibers situated at the junction of the anterior wall and floor of the third ventricle (Figs. 13-2 and 13-3). The superior surface is attached to the *lamina terminalis,* and inferiorly it is related to the *hypophysis cerebri,* from which it is separated by the *diaphragma sellae.* The anterolateral corners of the chiasma are continuous with the *optic nerves,* and the posterolateral corners with the *optic tracts.* A small recess, the *optic recess of the third ventricle,* lies on its superior surface.

The origin and destination of the nerve fibers within the optic chiasma are fully described on page 354. It is important to remember that the fibers originating from the nasal half of each retina cross the median plane at the chiasma to enter the optic tract of the opposite side.

Tuber Cinereum. The tuber cinereum is a convex mass of gray matter, as seen from the inferior surface (Figs. 13-2 and 13-3). It is continuous inferiorly with the *infundibulum.* The infundibulum is hollow and becomes continuous with the posterior lobe of the *hypophysis cerebri.* The *median eminence* is a raised part of the tuber cinerium to which is attached the infundibulum. The median eminence, the infundibulum, and the posterior lobe

(pars nervosa) of the hypophysis cerebri together form the *neurohypophysis.*

Mammillary Bodies. These are two small hemispherical bodies placed side by side posterior to the tuber cinereum (Figs. 13-2 and 13-3). They possess a central core of gray matter invested by a capsule of myelinated nerve fibers. The nervous connections of these bodies are described on page 276. Posterior to the mammillary bodies lies an area of the brain that is pierced by a number of small apertures and is called the *posterior perforated substance.* (For a discussion of anterior perforated substance, see p. 449.) These apertures transmit the central branches of the posterior cerebral arteries.

HYPOTHALAMIC NUCLEI. As the result of considerable neurobiological research in this very complex region of the brain, a number of groups of neurons have been identified and given specific nuclear names. In this discussion, only the principal nuclear groups and their connections will be given. For functional reasons the *preoptic area* is included as part of the hypothalamus. For purposes of description, the nuclei are divided by an imaginary parasagittal plane into medial and lateral zones (Fig. 13-6). The columns of the fornix and the mammillothalamic tract, which serve as markers, lie within the plane.

Medial Zone. In the medial zone, the following hypothalamic nuclei may be recognized, from anterior to posterior: the *preoptic nucleus,* the *paraventricular nucleus,* the *dorsomedial nucleus,* the *ventromedial nucleus,* the *infundibular nucleus,* and the *posterior nucleus* (Fig. 13-6).

Lateral Zone. In the lateral zone, the following hypothalamic nuclei may be recognized, from anterior to posterior: the *supraoptic nucleus,* the large *lateral nucleus,* the *tuberomammillary nucleus,* and the *lateral tuberal nuclei* (Fig. 13-6). Some of the nuclei, for example, the preoptic nucleus, extend into both the medial and lateral zones. The mammillary body, with its medial and lateral mammillary nuclei, overlaps both zones.

The connections of the hypothalamus are described in detail on page 397. In general, the afferent fibers reach the hypothalamus through ascending visceral and somatic sensory pathways and also by fibers that arise in the cerebral cortex, the olfactory pathways, the midbrain, and limbic structures. Efferent fibers descend to lower centers and influence the peripheral parts of the autonomic nervous system. Other fibers pass to the hypophysis cerebri and thus assist in controlling the endocrine glands of the body.

Third Ventricle

The third ventricle, which is derived from the forebrain vesicle, is a slitlike cleft between the two thalami (Figs. 13-1 and 13-3). It communicates anteriorly with the *lateral ventricles* through the *interventricular foramina* and posteriorly with the *fourth ventricle* through the *cerebral aqueduct.* The third ventricle has anterior, posterior, lateral, superior, and inferior walls and is lined with ependyma.

The *anterior wall* is formed by a thin sheet of gray matter, the *lamina terminalis,* across which runs the *anterior commissure* (Fig. 13-3). The anterior commissure is a round bundle of nerve fibers that are situated anterior to the *anterior columns of the fornix.*

The *posterior wall* is formed by the opening into the cerebral aqueduct (Fig. 13-3). Superior to this opening is the small *posterior commissure.* Superior to the commissure is the *pineal recess,* which projects into the stalk of the *pineal body.* Superior to the pineal recess is the small *habenular commissure.*

The *lateral wall* is formed by the medial surface of the *thalamus* superiorly and the *hypothalamus* inferiorly (Fig. 13-3). These two structures are separated by the *hypothalamic sulcus.* The lateral wall is limited superiorly by the *stria medullaris thalami.* The lateral walls are joined by the *interthalamic connection.*

The *superior wall or roof* is formed by a layer of ependyma that is continuous with the lining of the ventricle. Superior to this layer is a two-layered fold of pia mater called the *tela choroidea of the third ventricle.* The vascular tela choroidea projects downward on each side of the midline, invaginat-

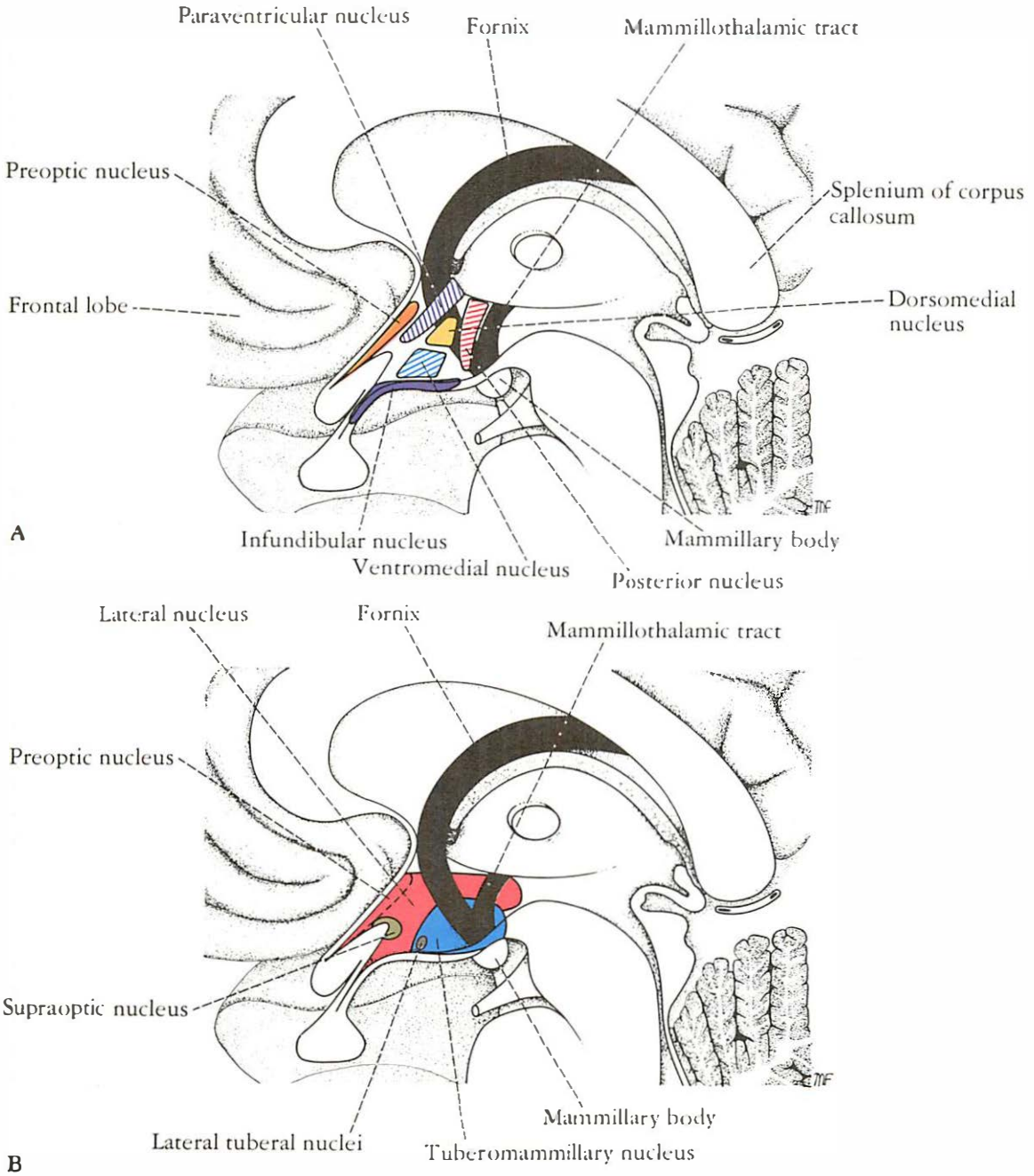


Fig. 13-6. The hypothalamic nuclei.
A. Medial zone nuclei lying medial to the plane of the fornix and the mammillothalamic tract.
B. Lateral zone nuclei lying lateral to the plane of the fornix and the mammillothalamic tract.

ing the ependymal roof to form the *choroid plexuses of the third ventricle.* Within the tela choroidea lie the *internal cerebral veins.* Superiorly, the roof of the ventricle is related to the *fornix* and the *corpus callosum.*

The *inferior wall or floor* is formed by structures that are part of the hypothalamus (Figs. 13-2 and 13-3); they are, from anterior to posterior: the *optic chiasma,* the *tuber cinereum,* the *infundibulum,* with its funnel-shaped recess, and the *mammillary bodies.* The *hypophysis* is attached to the infundibulum. Posterior to these hypothalamic structures lie the *posterior perforated substance* and the *tegmentum of the cerebral peduncles.*

Clinical Notes

The diencephalon is a convenient term that encompasses the third ventricle and the structures that surround it. It is an anatomical term and the region has no specific function, since many systems enter and leave the area. It is customary to divide the diencephalon into four major areas: the thalamus, the subthalamus, the epithalamus, and the hypothalamus. Each of these areas and their connections are dealt with in detail in subsequent chapters. Only a brief overview of some important clinical features will be given here.

Thalamus

The thalamus is a large mass of gray matter that forms the major part of the diencephalon and is a very important sensory relay station. Ascending sensory fibers synapse here and then are projected to the sensory areas of the cerebral cortex. Interference with this pathway causes sensory loss. The many connections that exist between the different nuclei within the thalamus are believed to permit an integration of much of the sensory information received by the thalamus. In this regard, it is interesting to note that the thalamus does not receive olfactory information directly.

The thalamus should be regarded as a primitive sensory center, and one that gives rise to a crude form of consciousness. For example, if the sensory cortex is destroyed, one can still appreciate the presence of a hot object in the hand; however, appreciation of the shape, weight, and exact temperature of the object would be impaired.

The many connections between the frontal cortex, the hypothalamus, and the thalamus indicate that the thalamus plays a role in the integration of visceral and somatic functions.

Lesions of the Thalamus

Sensory Loss

These lesions usually result from thrombosis or hemorrhage of one of the arteries that supply the thalamus. Since the thalamus is concerned with receiving sensory impulses from the opposite side of the body, the disability resulting from a lesion within it will be confined to the contralateral side of the body. There may be a major impairment of all forms of sensation, which could include light touch, tactile localization and discrimination, and loss of appreciation of joint movements.

Thalamic Syndrome

This syndrome may occur as the patient is recovering from a thalamic infarct. Spontaneous pain, which is often excessive and unpleasant, occurs on the opposite side of the body. The painful sensation may be aroused by light touch or by cold, and may fail to respond to powerful analgesic drugs.

Abnormal Involuntary Movements

Choreoathetosis with ataxia may follow vascular lesions of the thalamus. It is not certain whether these signs in all cases are due to the loss of function of the thalamus or to involvement of the neighboring caudate and lentiform nuclei. The ataxia may arise as the result of the loss of appreciation of muscle and joint movement owing to a thalamic lesion.

Thalamic Hand

The contralateral hand is held in an abnormal posture in some patients with thalamic lesions. The wrist is pronated and flexed, the metacar-

pophalangeal joints are flexed, and the interphalangeal joints are extended. The fingers can be moved actively, but the movements are slow. The condition is due to altered muscle tone in the different muscle groups.

Subthalamus

The subthalamus should be regarded as one of the extrapyramidal motor nuclei and has a large connection with the globus pallidus. Lesions of the subthalamus result in sudden, forceful involuntary movements in a contralateral extremity. The movements may be jerky (choreiform) or violent (ballistic).

Epithalamus

The epithalamus is composed largely of the habenular nuclei and their connections, and probably assists in the correlation of olfactory and somatic impulses. The *pineal gland* consists essentially of pinealocytes and glial cells supported by a connective tissue framework. The vascular pattern is that of an endocrine gland. As the result of regressive changes that occur with age, calcareous concretions accumulate within the glial cells and connective tissue of the gland. These deposits are useful to the radiologist, since they serve as a landmark and assist in determining whether the pineal gland has been displaced laterally by a space-occupying lesion within the skull.

Although the function of the pineal gland is not fully understood, it has been found to contain melatonin, norepinephrine, seratonin, and enzymes capable of the conversion of seratonin into melatonin. While melatonin has been shown to cause the aggregation of melanin granules in frog melanophores, it apparently has no effect on mammalian melanocytes. Clinical observation of patients with pineal tumors has revealed that the pineal gland may have an antigonadotropic function.

Hypothalamus

The hypothalamus is that area of the brain that forms the floor and lower part of the lateral wall of the third ventricle. Research and clinical observations have revealed that it is an area of the nervous system that is of great functional importance. Not only does it control emotional states, but it assists in the regulation of fat, carbohydrate, and water metabolism. Among its many other activities, it influences body temperature, genital functions, sleep, and food intake. The pituitary and the hypothalamus constitute a closely integrated unit and the hypothalamus plays a role in the release of pituitary hormones.

Syndromes of the Hypothalamus

Lesions of the hypothalamus may result from infection, trauma, or vascular disorders. Tumors, such as a craniopharyngioma or *chromophobe adenoma of the pituitary* and *pineal tumors,* may interfere with the function of the hypothalamus. The most common abnormalities include *genital hypoplasia* or *atrophy, diabetes insipidus, obesity, disturbances of sleep, irregular pyrexia,* and *emaciation.* Some of these disorders may occur together, for example, in the *adiposogenital dystrophy syndrome.*

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 490.

1. A 45-year-old man who had suddenly developed a weakness of the left leg 12 hours previously was admitted to a medical ward. On examination, he was found to have paralysis of the left leg and weakness of the muscles of the left arm. The muscles of the affected limbs showed increased tone and there was an exaggeration of the tendon reflexes on the left side of the body. There was also considerable sensory loss on the left side of the body, involving both the superficial and deep sensations. During the examination the patient would exhibit spontaneous jerking move-

ments of the left leg. When asked to touch the tip of his nose with the left index finger, he demonstrated considerable intention tremor. The same test with the right arm showed nothing abnormal. Three days later, the patient started to complain of agonizing pain down the left leg. The pain would start spontaneously or be initiated by the light touch of the bed sheet. What is your diagnosis? How can you explain the various signs and symptoms?

2. A 53-year-old woman was admitted to an emergency ward after she had collapsed in the street. Apart from being confused and disoriented, she exhibited violent, uncoordinated movements of her right arm and right leg and slight spontaneous movements on the right side of her face. The physician was able to ascertain from a friend that the patient had been perfectly fit that morning and had no previous history of this condition. On examination, the involuntary movements of the right limbs were mainly confined to the muscles of the proximal part of the limbs. One week later, the patient died of cardiac failure. What is the medical term used to describe this condition? Which area of the brain is likely to be involved in the production of this condition?

3. A 64-year-old male was admitted to a hospital on the suspicion that he had a cerebral tumor. One of the investigations asked for by the physician was a simple anteroposterior and lateral radiograph of the head. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, name the structure that would assist the radiologist in this case in determining whether lateral displacement of the brain had occurred within the skull.

4. During a discussion with a dermatologist that followed the examination of a patient with vitiligo, a fourth-year medical student suggested that excessive production of melatonin by the patient might be responsible for the condition. What is the action of melatonin on melanocytes in the skin? Where is melatonin normally produced?

5. A 12-year-old boy was seen by a pediatrician because his parents were concerned about his excessive weight and lack of development of the external genitalia. On examination, the child was seen to be tall for his age and very obese. The excessive fat was concentrated especially in the lower part of the anterior abdominal wall and the proximal parts of the limbs. His penis and testes were small. Is it possible that disease of the diencephalon might account for this condition?

Additional Reading

Netter, F. H. *The CIBA Collection of Medical Illustrations,* Vol. 1. Summit, N. J.: CIBA Pharmaceutical Company, Division of CIBA-GEIGY Corporation, 1953.

Snell, R. S. Effect of melatonin on mammalian epidermal melanocytes. *J. Invest. Derm.* 44:273, 1965.

Sobotta, J. *Atlas of Descriptive Human Anatomy*, Vol. 3. New York: Hafner Publishing Co., 1957.

Spillane, J. D. *An Atlas of Clinical Neurology* (2nd ed.). New York and London: Oxford University Press, New York, 1975.

Walton, J. N. *Brain's Diseases of the Nervous System* (8th Ed.). New York and London: Oxford University Press, 1977.

14
The Cerebral Hemispheres

The cerebral hemispheres are separated by a deep midline sagittal fissure, the *longitudinal cerebral fissure* (Fig. 14-1). The fissure contains the sickle-shaped fold of dura mater, the *falx cerebri,* and the *anterior cerebral vessels.* In the depths of the fissure, the great commissure, the *corpus callosum,* connects the hemispheres across the midline (Fig. 14-1). A second fold of dura mater separates the cerebral hemispheres from the cerebellum and is called the *tentorium cerebelli.*

In order to maximally increase the surface area of the cerebral cortex, the surface of each cerebral hemisphere is thrown into *folds or gyri,* which are separated from each other by *sulci or fissures* (Fig. 14-1). For ease of description, it is customary to divide each hemisphere into *lobes,* which are named according to the cranial bones under which they lie. The *central and parieto-occipital sulci* and the *lateral and calcarine sulci* are boundaries used for the division of the cerebral hemisphere into *frontal, parietal, temporal,* and *occipital lobes* (Fig. 14-2).

Main Sulci

The *central sulcus* (Fig. 14-2) is of great importance because the gyrus that lies anterior to it contains the motor cells that initiate the movements of the opposite side of the body; posterior to it lies the general sensory cortex that receives sensory information from the opposite side of the body. The central sulcus indents the superior medial border of the hemisphere about 0.4 inch (1 cm) behind the midpoint (Fig. 14-3). It runs downward and forward across the lateral aspect of the hemisphere, and its lower end is separated from the posterior ramus of the lateral sulcus by a narrow bridge of cortex. The central sulcus is the only sulcus of any length on this surface of the hemisphere that indents the supermedial border and lies between two parallel gyri.

The *lateral sulcus* (Fig. 14-2) is a deep cleft found mainly on the inferior and lateral surfaces of the cerebral hemisphere. It consists of a short stem that divides into three rami. The stem arises on the inferior surface and on reaching the lateral surface it divides into the *anterior horizontal ramus* and the *anterior ascending ramus,* and continues as the *posterior ramus* (Figs. 14-2 and 14-5). An area of cortex called the *insula* lies at the bottom of the deep lateral sulcus and cannot be seen from the surface unless the lips of the sulcus are separated (Fig. 14-4).

The *parieto-occipital sulcus* begins on the superior medial margin of the hemisphere about 2 inches (5 cm) anterior to the occipital pole (Figs. 14-3 and 14-5). It passes downward and anteriorly on the medial surface to meet the calcarine sulcus (Fig. 14-3).

The *calcarine sulcus* is found on the medial surface of the hemisphere (Figs. 14-3 and 14-5). It commences under the posterior end of the corpus callosum and arches upward and backward to reach the occipital pole, where it stops. However, in some brains it continues for a short distance onto the lateral surface of the hemisphere. The calcarine sulcus is joined at an acute angle by the parieto-occipital sulcus about halfway along its length.

Lobes of the Cerebral Hemisphere

Superolateral Surface of the Hemisphere

The *frontal lobe* occupies the area anterior to the central sulcus and superior to the lateral sulcus (Fig. 14-5). The superolateral surface of the fron-

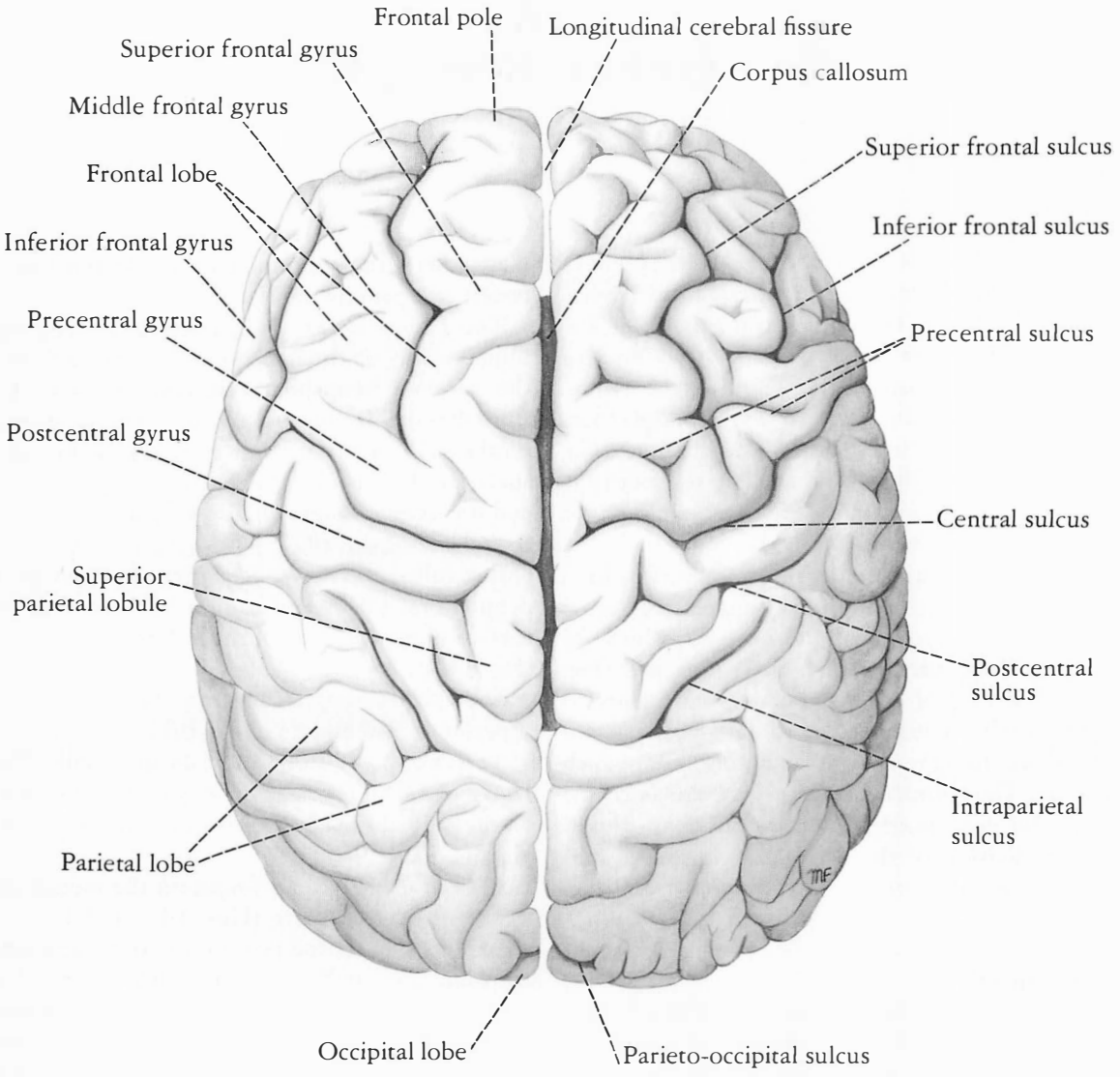


Fig. 14-1. Superior view of cerebral hemispheres.

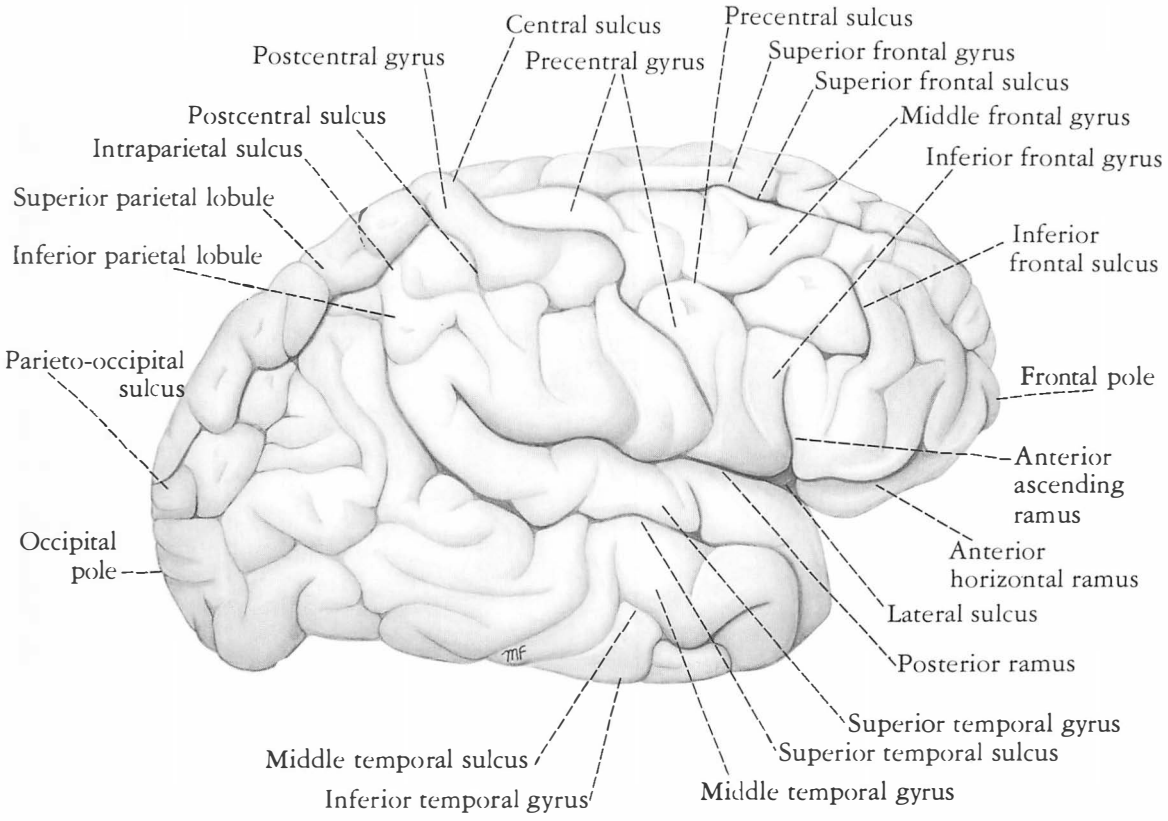


Fig. 14-2. Lateral view of right cerebral hemisphere.

tal lobe is divided by three sulci into four gyri. The *precentral sulcus* runs parallel to the central sulcus and the *precentral gyrus* lies between them (see Figs. 14-2 and 14-5). Extending anteriorly from the precentral sulcus are the *superior and inferior frontal sulci.* The *superior frontal gyrus* lies superior to the superior frontal sulcus, the *middle frontal gyrus* lies between the superior and inferior frontal sulci, and the *inferior frontal gyrus* lies inferior to the inferior frontal sulcus (see Figs. 14-2 and 14-5). The inferior frontal gyrus is invaded by the anterior and ascending rami of the lateral sulcus.

The *parietal lobe* occupies the area posterior to the central sulcus and superior to the lateral sulcus; it extends posteriorly as far as the parieto-occipital sulcus (see Figs. 14-2 and 14-5). The lateral surface of the parietal lobe is divided by two sulci into three gyri. The *postcentral sulcus* runs parallel to the central sulcus and the *postcentral gyrus* lies between them. Running posteriorly from the middle of the postcentral sulcus is the *intraparietal sulcus* (see Figs. 14-2 and 14-5). The intraparietal sulcus has superior to it the *superior parietal lobule* (gyrus) and inferior to it the *inferior parietal lobule* (gyrus).

The *temporal lobe* occupies the area inferior to the lateral sulcus (see Figs. 14-2 and 14-5). The lateral surface of the temporal lobe is divided into three gyri by two sulci. The *superior* and *middle temporal sulci* run parallel to the posterior ramus of the lateral sulcus, and divide the temporal lobe into the *superior, middle,* and *inferior temporal gyri;* the inferior temporal gyrus is continued onto the inferior surface of the hemisphere (see Figs. 14-2 and 14-5).

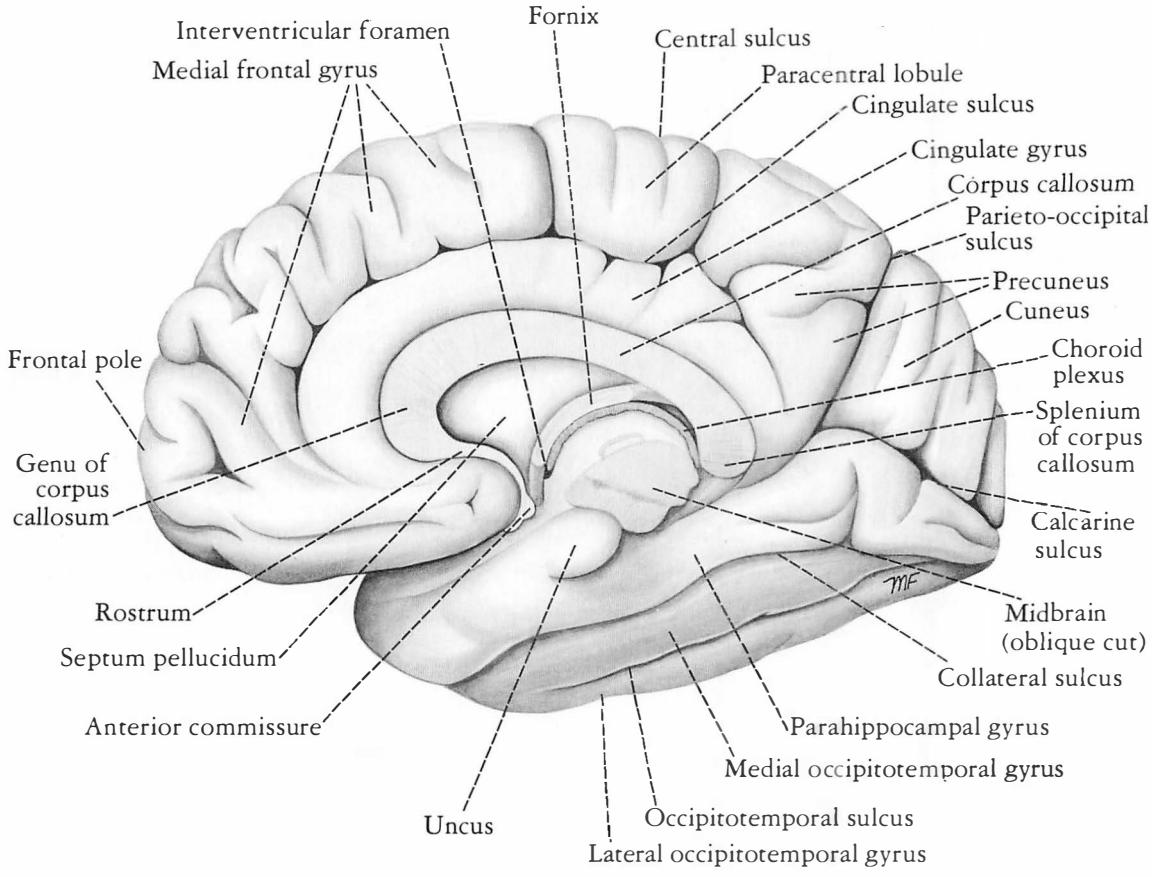


Fig. 14-3. Medial view of right cerebral hemisphere.

The *occipital lobe* occupies the small area behind the parieto-occipital sulcus (see Figs. 14-2 and 14-5).

Medial and Inferior Surface of the Hemisphere

The lobes of the cerebral hemisphere are not clearly defined on the medial and inferior surfaces. However, there are many important areas that should be recognized. The *corpus callosum,* which is the largest commissure of the brain, forms a striking feature on this surface (Figs. 14-3 and 14-5). The *cingulate gyrus* begins beneath the anterior end of the corpus callosum and continues above the corpus callosum until it reaches its posterior end (Figs. 14-3 and 14-5). The gyrus is separated from the corpus callosum by the *callosal sulcus.* The cingulate gyrus is separated from the superior frontal gyrus by the *cingulate sulcus* (Fig. 14-5).

The *paracentral lobule* is the area of the cerebral cortex that surrounds the indentation produced by the central sulcus on the superior border (Figs. 14-3 and 14-5). The anterior part of this lobule is a continuation of the precentral gyrus on the superior lateral surface, and the posterior part of the lobule is a continuation of the postcentral gyrus.

The *precuneus* (Figs. 14-3 and 14-5) is an area of cortex bounded anteriorly by the upturned posterior end of the cingulate sulcus and posteriorly by the parieto-occipital sulcus.

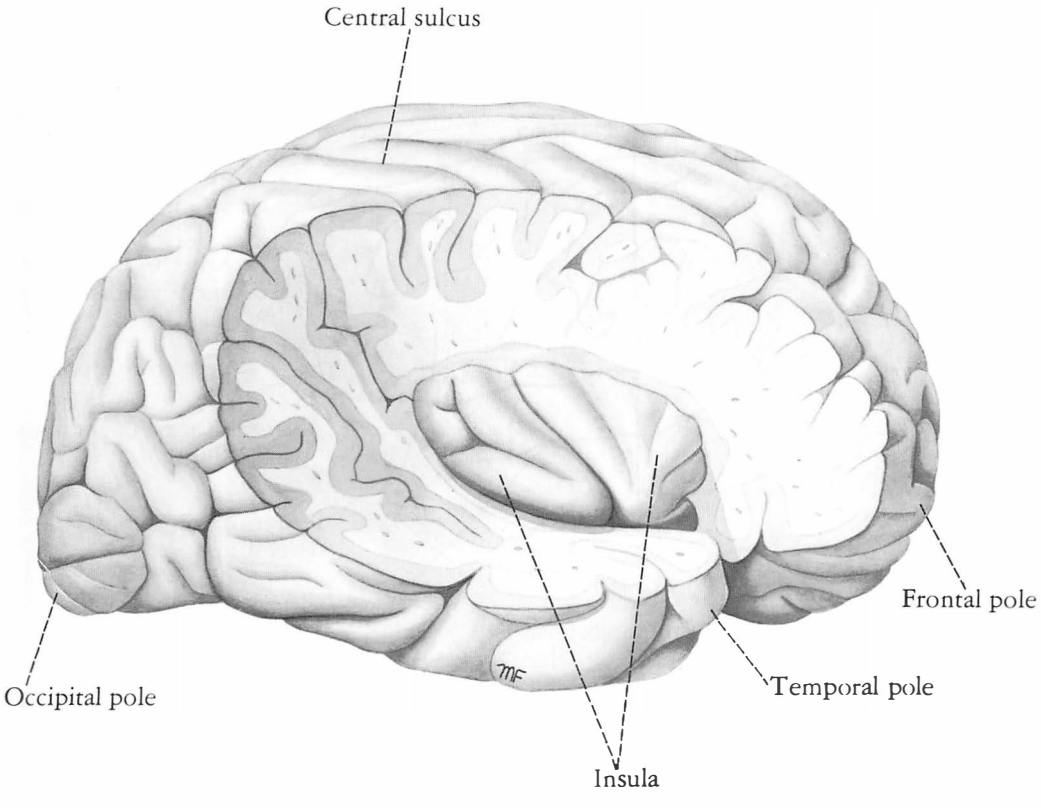


Fig. 14-4. Lateral view of right cerebral hemisphere dissected to reveal the right insula.

The *cuneus* (Figs. 14-3 and 14-5) is a triangular area of cortex bounded above by the parieto-occipital sulcus, inferiorly by the calcarine sulcus, and posteriorly by the superior medial margin.

The *collateral sulcus* is situated on the inferior surface of the hemisphere (Figs. 14-3 and 14-6). This runs anteriorly below the calcarine sulcus. Between the collateral sulcus and the *calcarine sulcus* is the *lingual gyrus.* Anterior to the lingual gyrus is the *parahippocampal gyrus;* the latter terminates in front as the hooklike *uncus* (Fig. 14-6).

The *medial occipitotemporal gyrus* extends from the occipital pole to the temporal pole (Fig. 14-6). It is bounded medially by the *collateral* and *rhinal sulci* and laterally by the *occipitotemporal sulcus.* The *occipitotemporal gyrus* lies lateral to the sulcus and is continuous with the inferior temporal gyrus (Fig. 14-6).

On the inferior surface of the frontal lobe, the olfactory bulb and tract overlie a sulcus called the *olfactory sulcus* (Fig. 14-6). Medial to the olfactory sulcus is the *gyrus rectus* and lateral to the sulcus are a number of *orbital gyri.*

The *isthmus* is a narrow area of cortex that connects the cingulate gyrus with the parahippocampal gyrus.

Internal Structure of the Cerebral Hemispheres

The cerebral hemispheres are covered with a layer of gray matter, the cerebral cortex, the structure and function of which will be dealt with in subsequent chapters. Located in the interior of the cerebral hemispheres are the *lateral ventricles,* masses

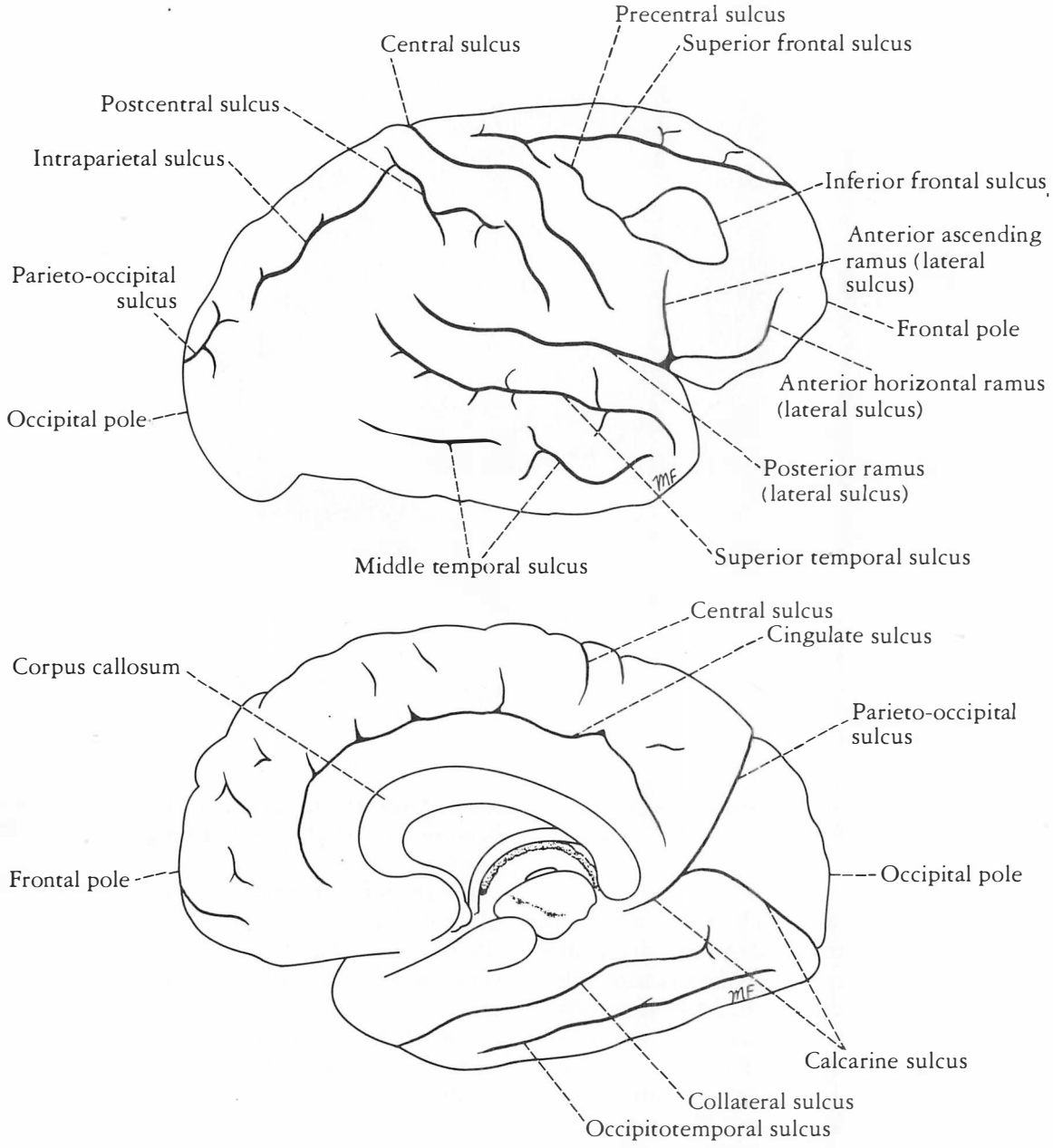


Fig. 14-5. A. Lateral view of right cerebral hemisphere showing main sulci.
B. Medial view of right cerebral hemisphere showing main sulci.

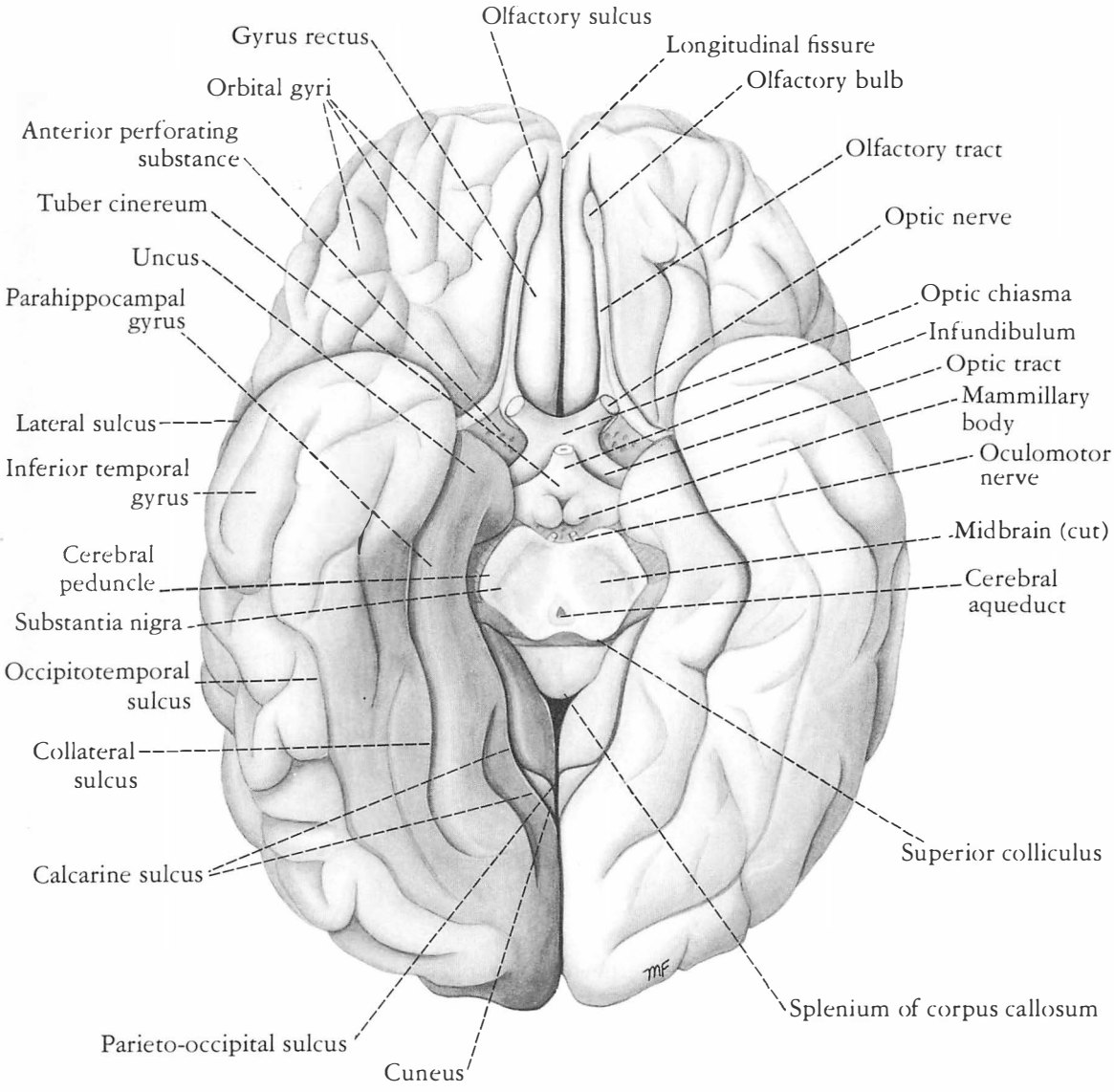


Fig. 14-6. Inferior view of the brain; the medulla oblongata, the pons, and the cerebellum have been removed.

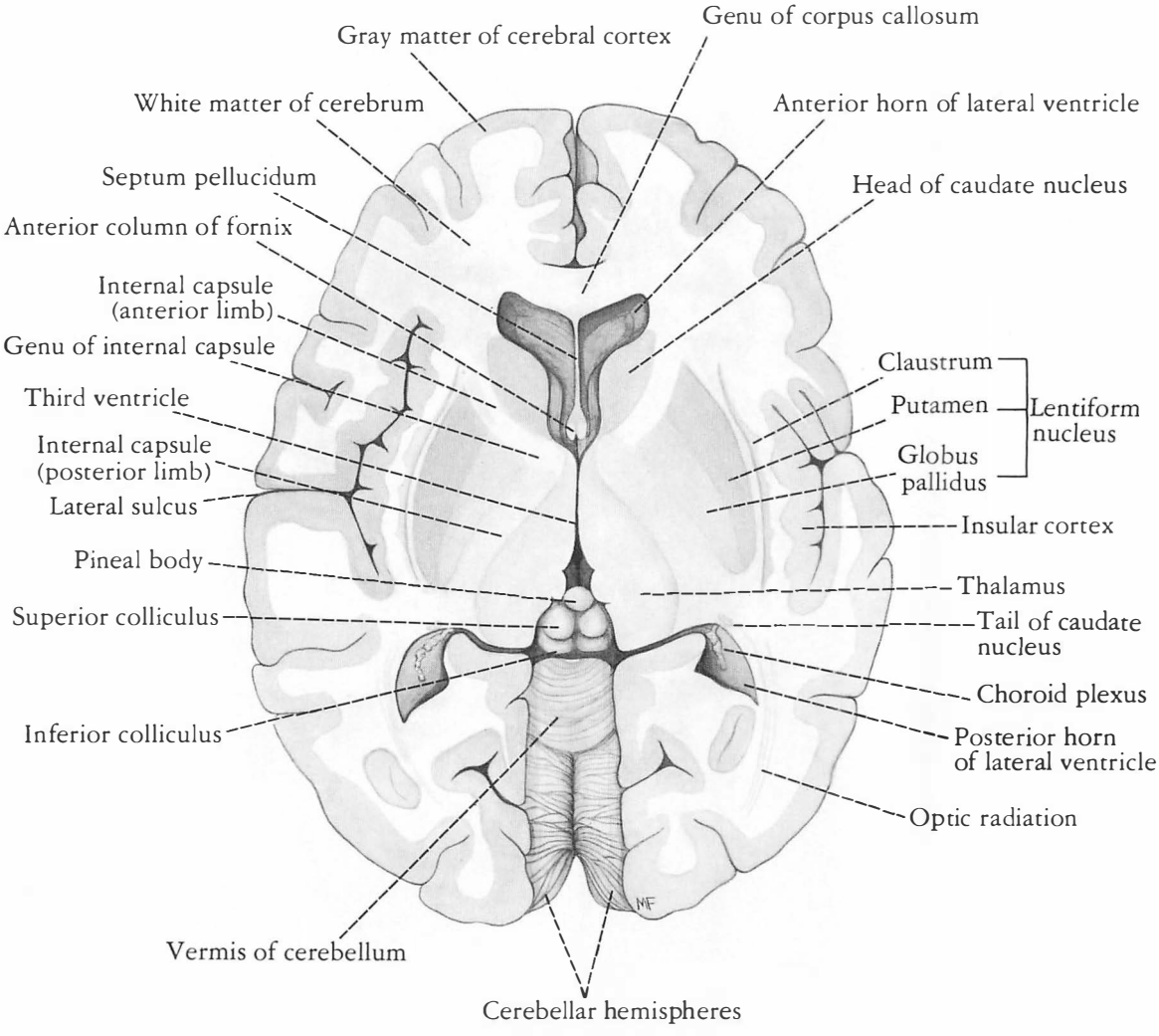


Fig. 14-7. Horizontal section of the cerebrum showing the relationship between the lentiform nucleus, the caudate nucleus, the thalamus, and the internal capsule.

of gray matter, the *basal nuclei,* and nerve fibers. The nerve fibers are embedded in neuroglia and constitute the *white matter* (Fig. 14-7).

Lateral Ventricles

There are two lateral ventricles and one is present in each cerebral hemisphere (Figs. 14-7 and 14-8). Each ventricle is a roughly C-shaped cavity lined with ependyma and filled with cerebrospinal fluid (see Fig. 1-23). The lateral ventricle may be divided into a *body,* which occupies the parietal lobe, and from which *anterior, posterior,* and *inferior horns* extend into the frontal, occipital, and temporal lobes, respectively. The lateral ventricle communicates with the cavity of the third ventricle through the *interventricular foramen* (see Fig. 14-3). This opening, which lies in the anterior part of the medial wall of the lateral ventricle, is bounded anteriorly by the anterior column of the

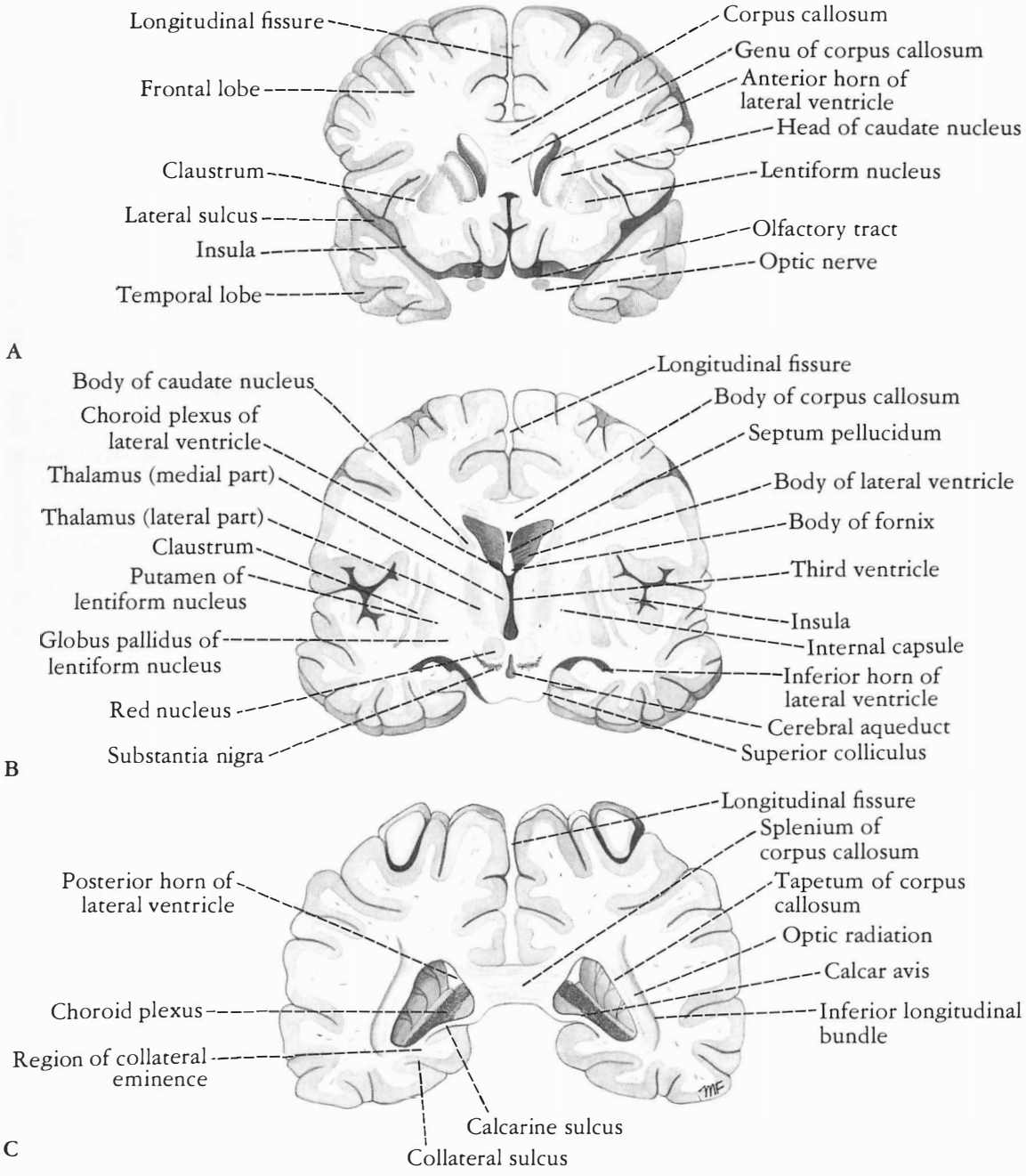


Fig. 14-8. Coronal sections of brain passing through:
A. The anterior horn of the lateral ventricle.
B. The body of the lateral ventricle.
C. The posterior horn of the lateral ventricle.

fornix and posteriorly by the anterior end of the thalamus.

The *body of the lateral ventricle* extends from the interventricular foramen posteriorly as far as the posterior end of the thalamus. Here it becomes continuous with the posterior and the inferior horns. The body of the lateral ventricle has a roof, a floor, and a medial wall (Fig. 14-8).

The *roof* is formed by the undersurface of the *corpus callosum* (Fig. 14-8). The *floor* is formed by the following structures, from lateral to medial. The body of the *caudate nucleus* becomes rapidly narrower as it passes posteriorly (Fig. 14-8). The *stria terminalis,* a bundle of nerve fibers, and the *thalamostriate vein* are situated in a narrow groove between the medial border of the caudate nucleus and the lateral margin of the thalamus. The superior surface of the thalamus is obscured in its medial part by the *body of the fornix.* The *choroid plexus* of the ventricle projects into the body of the ventricle through the slitlike gap between the body of the fornix and the superior surface of the thalamus. This slitlike gap is known as the *choroidal fissure* and through it the blood vessels of the plexus invaginate the pia mater of the tela choroidea and the ependyma of the lateral ventricle. The *medial wall* is formed by the *septum pellucidum anteriorly;* posteriorly the roof and the floor come together on the medial wall (Fig. 14-8).

The *anterior horn of the lateral ventricle* extends forward into the frontal lobe (Fig. 14-8). It is continuous posteriorly with the body of the ventricle at the interventricular foramen. The anterior horn has a roof, a floor, and a medial wall. The *roof* is formed by the undersurface of the anterior part of the *corpus callosum;* the *genu of the corpus callosum* limits the anterior horn anteriorly (Fig. 14-8). The *floor* is formed by the rounded *head of the caudate nucleus,* and medially a small portion is formed by the superior surface of the *rostrum of the corpus callosum.* The *medial wall* is formed by the *septum pellucidum* and the *anterior column of the fornix* (Fig. 14-8).

The *posterior horn of the lateral ventricle* extends posteriorly into the occipital lobe (Fig. 14-8). The *roof* and *lateral wall* are formed by the fibers of the *tapetum* of the *corpus callosum.* Lateral to the tapetum are the fibers of the *optic radiation* (Fig. 14-8). The *medial wall* of the posterior horn has two elevations. The superior swelling is caused by the splenial fibers of the corpus callosum, called the *forceps major,* passing posteriorly into the occipital lobe; this superior swelling is referred to as the *bulb of the posterior horn.* The inferior swelling is produced by the *calcarine sulcus* and is called the *calcar avis* (Fig. 14-8).

The *inferior horn of the lateral ventricle* extends anteriorly into the temporal lobe. The inferior horn has a roof and a floor (Fig. 14-8).

The *roof* is formed by the inferior surface of the *tapetum of the corpus callosum* and by the *tail of the caudate nucleus* (see Fig. 16-3). The latter passes anteriorly to end in the *amygdaloid nucleus.* Medial to the tail of the caudate nucleus is the *stria terminalis,* which also ends anteriorly in the amygdaloid nucleus.

The *floor* is formed laterally by the *collateral eminence,* produced by the *collateral* fissure, and medially by the *hippocampus* (see Figs. 16-2 and 16-3). The anterior end of the hippocampus is expanded and slightly furrowed to form the *pes hippocampus.* The hippocampus is composed of gray matter; however, the ventricular surface of the hippocampus is covered by a thin layer of white matter called the *alveus,* which is formed from the axons of the cells of the hippocampus. These axons converge on the medial border of the hippocampus to form a bundle known as the *fimbria.* The fimbria of the hippocampus becomes continuous posteriorly with the *posterior column of the fornix.*

In the interval between the stria terminalis and the fimbria is the temporal part of the choroidal fissure. It is here that the lower part of the *choroid plexus* of the lateral ventricle invaginates the ependyma from the medial side and closes the fissure (Fig. 14-8). The choroid plexus thus tends to cover the fimbria and hide it from view (see Fig. 16-3).

Basal Nuclei

The term *basal nuclei* is applied to a collection of masses of gray matter situated within each cerebral

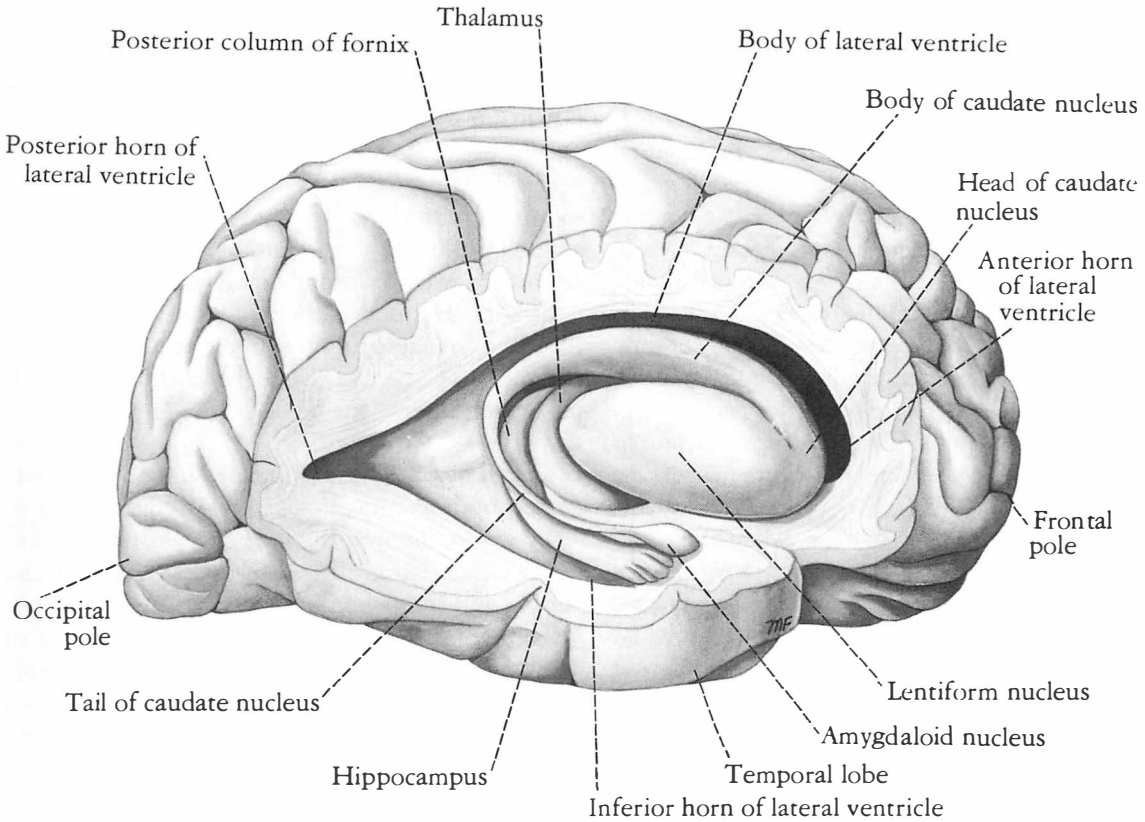


Fig. 14-9. Lateral view of right cerebral hemisphere dissected to show the position of the lentiform nucleus, the caudate nucleus, the thalamus, and the hippocampus.

hemisphere. They are the corpus striatum, the amygdaloid nucleus, and the claustrum.

CORPUS STRIATUM. The corpus striatum is situated lateral to the thalamus (see Fig. 14-12). It is almost completely divided by a band of nerve fibers, the *internal capsule,* into the caudate nucleus and the lentiform nucleus (Fig. 14-7).

The *caudate nucleus,* a large C-shaped mass of gray matter that is closely related to the lateral ventricle, lies lateral to the thalamus (Fig. 14-9). The lateral surface of the nucleus is related to the internal capsule, which separates it from the lentiform nucleus. For purposes of description, it may be divided up into a head, a body, and a tail.

The *head* of the caudate nucleus is large and rounded and forms the lateral wall of the anterior horn of the lateral ventricle (Fig. 14-8). The head is continuous inferiorly with the putamen of the lentiform nucleus. Just superiorly to this point of union, strands of gray matter pass through the internal capsule, giving the region a striated appearance; hence the term *corpus striatum.*

The *body* of the caudate nucleus is long and narrow and is continuous with the head in the region of the interventricular foramen. The body of the caudate nucleus forms part of the floor of the body of the lateral ventricle. Here it is separated from the thalamus by a well-defined groove containing the *stria terminalis* and the *thalamostriate vein.*

The *tail* of the caudate nucleus is long and slender and is continuous with the body in the region of the posterior end of the thalamus. It follows the contour of the lateral ventricle and continues forward in the roof of the inferior horn of the lateral ventricle. It terminates anteriorly in the *amygdaloid nucleus* (Fig. 14-9).

The *lentiform nucleus* is a wedge-shaped mass of gray matter, whose broad convex base is directed laterally and its blade medially (Fig. 14-9). It is buried deep in the white matter of the cerebral hemisphere and is related medially to the internal capsule, which separates it from the caudate nucleus and the thalamus. The lentiform nucleus is related laterally to a thin sheet of white matter, the *external capsule* (see Fig. 14-7), that separates it from a thin sheet of gray matter, called the *claustrum* (see Fig. 14-7). The claustrum, in turn, separates the external capsule from the subcortical white matter of the insula. A vertical plate of white matter divides the nucleus into a larger, darker lateral portion, the *putamen,* and an inner lighter portion, the *globus pallidus* (see Fig. 14-7). Inferiorly at its anterior end, the putamen is continuous with the head of the caudate nucleus.

The detailed connections of the corpus striatum will be considered in a subsequent chapter. Briefly, it may be stated that the corpus striatum receives afferent fibers from different areas of the cerebral cortex, the thalamus, subthalamus, and brainstem. Efferent fibers then travel back to the same areas of the nervous system. The function of the corpus striatum is concerned with muscular movement, which now is believed to be accomplished by controlling the cerebral cortex rather than through direct descending pathways to the brainstem and spinal cord.

AMYGDALOID NUCLEUS. The amygdaloid nucleus is situated in the temporal lobe close to the uncus (Fig. 14-9). The amygdaloid nucleus is considered to be part of the limbic system and is described in Chapter 16.

CLAUSTRUM. The claustrum is a thin sheet of gray matter that is separated from the lateral surface of the lentiform nucleus by the *external capsule* (see Fig. 14-7). Lateral to the claustrum is the subcortical white matter of the insula. The function of the claustrum is unknown.

White Matter of the Cerebral Hemispheres

The white matter is composed of myelinated nerve fibers of different diameters supported by neuroglia. The nerve fibers may be classified into three groups according to their connections: (1) commissural fibers, (2) association fibers, and (3) projection fibers.

COMMISSURES. These fibers essentially connect corresponding regions of the two hemispheres. They are as follows: the corpus callosum, the anterior commissure, the posterior commissure, the fornix, and the habenular commissure.

The *corpus callosum,* the largest commissure of the brain, connects the two cerebral hemispheres (see Figs. 14-3 and 14-10). It lies at the bottom of the longitudinal fissure. For purposes of description, it is divided into the rostrum, the genu, the body, and the splenium.

The *rostrum* is the thin part of the anterior end of the corpus callosum, which is prolonged posteriorly to be continuous with the upper end of the lamina terminalis (see Fig. 14-3).

The *genu* is the curved anterior end of the corpus callosum that bends inferiorly in front of the septum pellucidum (see Figs. 14-3 and 14-10).

The *body* of the corpus callosum arches posteriorly and ends as the thickened posterior portion called the *splenium* (Fig. 14-10).

Traced laterally, the fibers of the genu curve forward into the frontal lobes and form the *forceps minor* (Fig. 14-10). The fibers of the body extend laterally as the *radiation of the corpus callosum* (Fig. 14-10). They intersect with bundles of association and projection fibers as they pass to the cerebral cortex. Some of the fibers form the roof and lateral wall of the posterior horn of the lateral ventricle and the lateral wall of the inferior horn of the lateral ventricle; these fibers are referred to as the *tapetum.* Traced laterally, the fibers in the

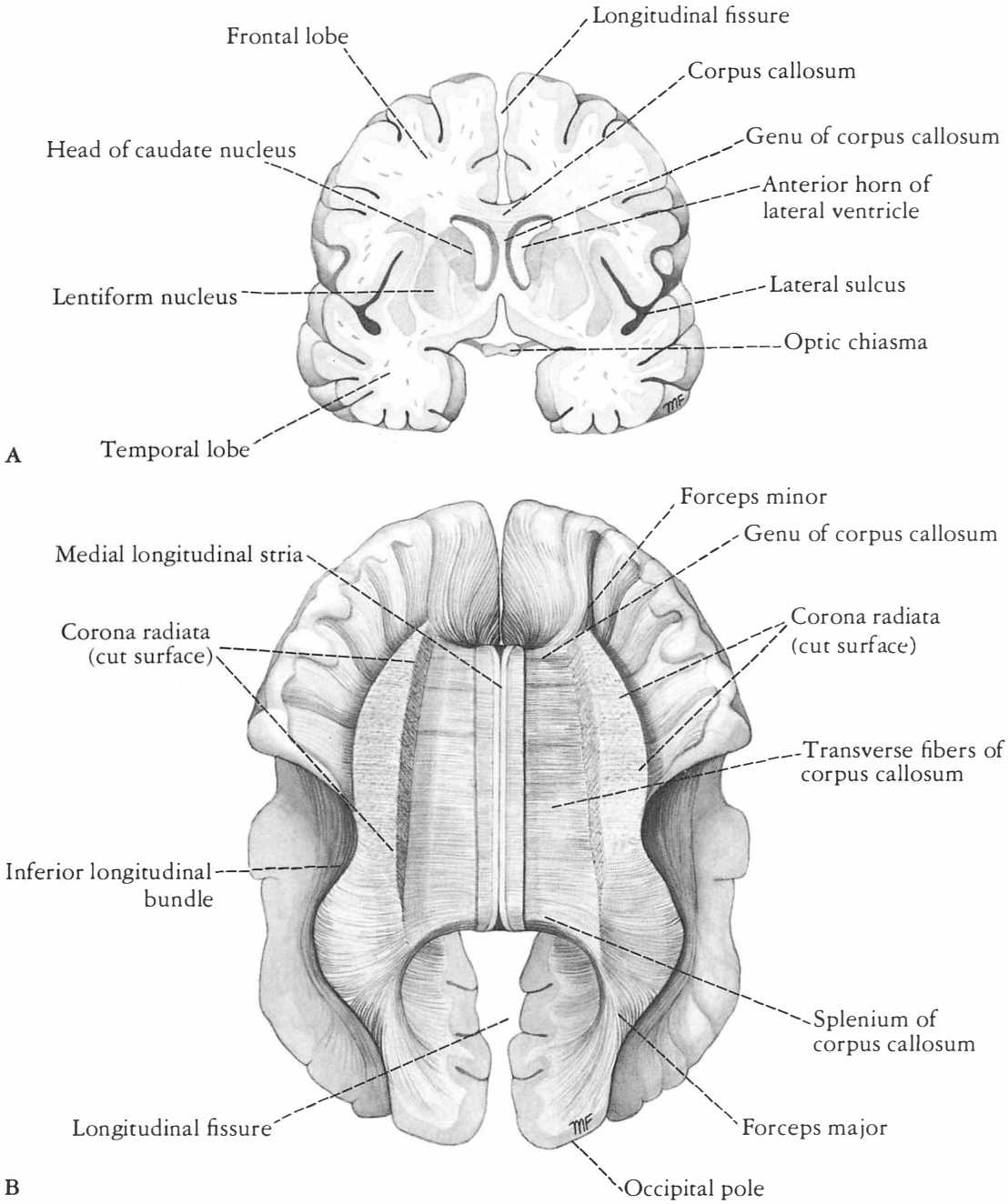


Fig. 14-10. A. Coronal section of the brain passing through the anterior horn of the lateral ventricle and the optic chiasma.
B. Superior view of the brain dissected to show the fibers of the corpus callosum and the corona radiata.

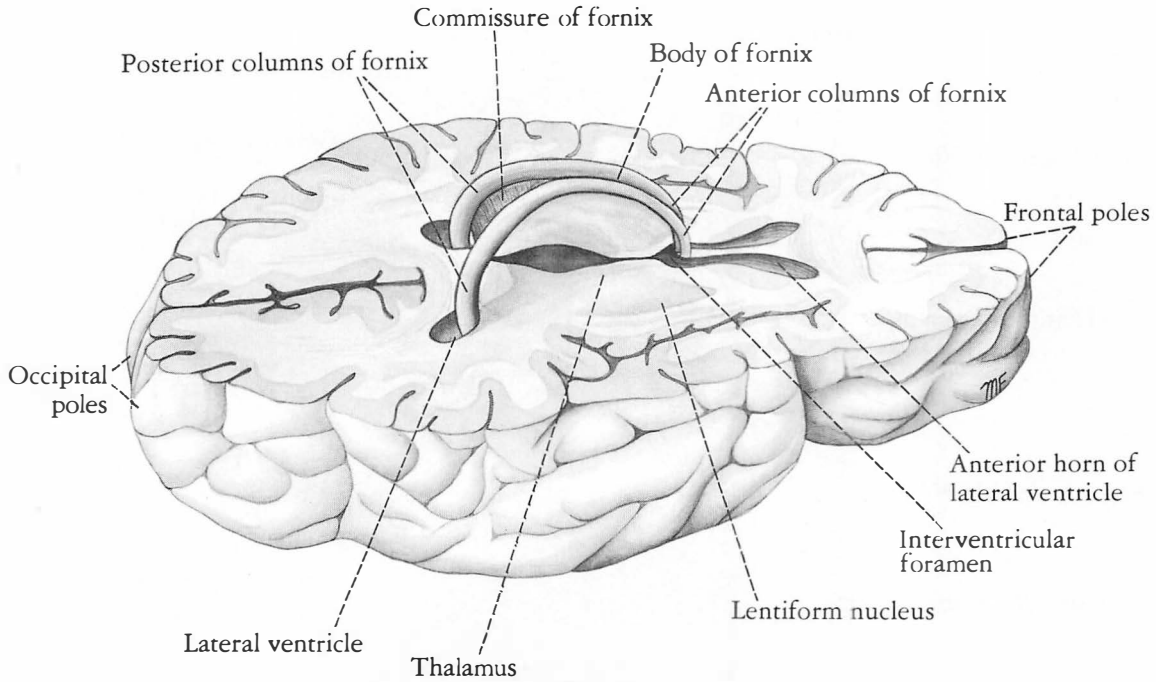


Fig. 14-11. Horizontal section of the brain leaving the fornix in position.

splenium arch backward into the occipital lobe and form the *forceps major* (Fig. 14-10).

The *anterior commissure* is a small bundle of nerve fibers that cross the midline in the *lamina terminalis* (see Fig. 14-3). When traced laterally, a smaller or anterior bundle curves forward on each side toward the anterior perforated substance and the olfactory tract. A larger bundle curves posteriorly on each side and grooves the inferior surface of the lentiform nucleus to reach the temporal lobes.

The *posterior commissure* is a bundle of nerve fibers that cross the midline immediately above the opening of the cerebral aqueduct into the third ventricle (see Fig. 13-3); it is related to the inferior part of the stalk of the pineal gland. Various collections of nerve cells are situated along its length. The destinations and functional significance of many of the nerve fibers are not known. However, the fibers from the pretectal nuclei involved in the pupillary light reflex are believed to cross in this commissure on their way to the parasympathetic part of the oculomotor nuclei (see p. 357).

The *fornix* is composed of myelinated nerve fibers and constitutes the efferent system of the hippocampus (see p. 278). The nerve fibers first form the *alveus* (see Fig. 16-3), which is a thin layer of white matter covering the ventricular surface of the hippocampus, then converge to form the *fimbria.* The fimbriae of the two sides increase in thickness and, on reaching the posterior end of the hippocampus, they arch forward above the thalamus and below the corpus callosum to form the *posterior columns of the fornix.* The two columns then come together in the midline to form the *body of the fornix* (Fig. 14-11). A more detailed description of the fornix is given on page 278. The *commissure of the fornix* consists of transverse fibers that cross the midline from one column to another just before the formation of the body of the fornix. The function of the commissure of the fornix is to connect the hippocampal formations of the two sides.

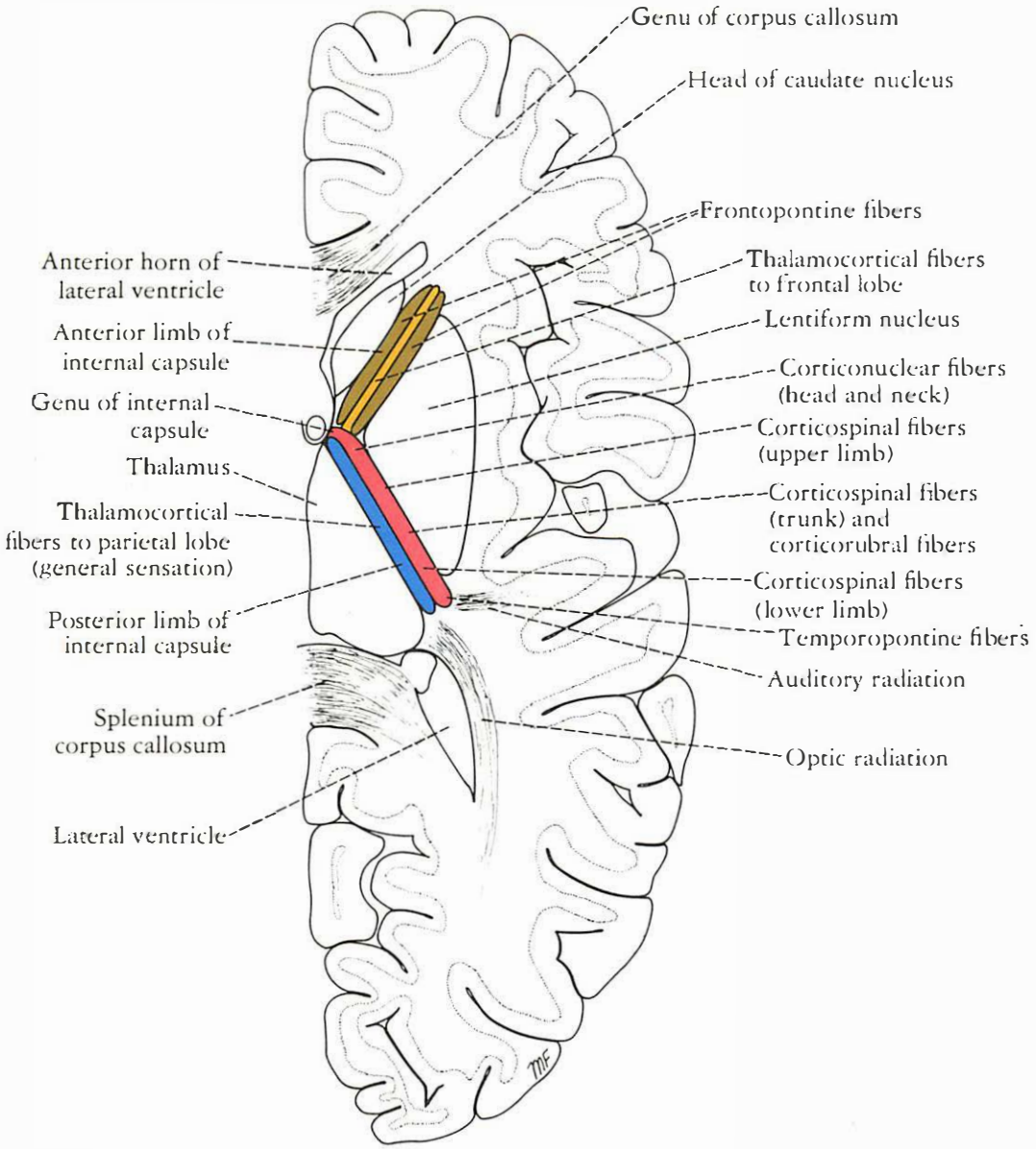


Fig. 14-12. Horizontal section of the right cerebral hemisphere showing the relationships and different parts of the internal capsule.

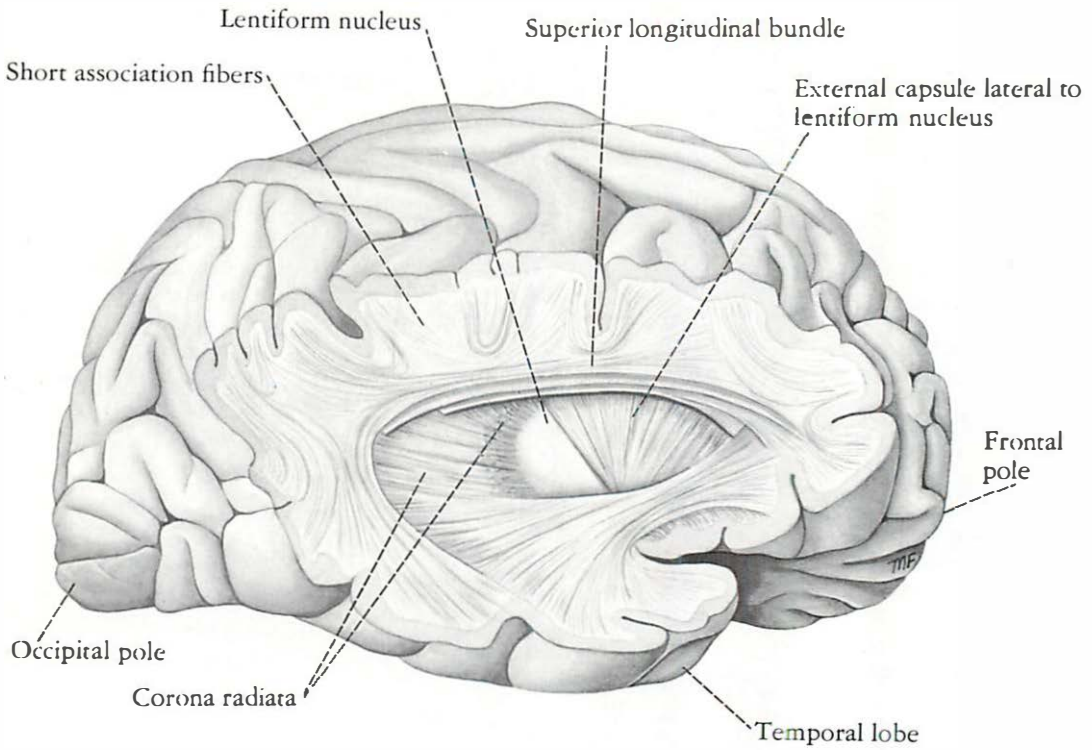


Fig. 14-13. Lateral view of the right cerebral hemisphere, which has been dissected to show some of the principal association fibers.

The *habenular commissure* is a small bundle of nerve fibers that cross the midline in the superior part of the root of the pineal stalk (see Figs. 13-1 and 13-3). The commissure is associated with the *habenular nuclei*, which are situated on either side of the midline in this region. The habenular nuclei receive many afferents from the amygdaloid nuclei and the hippocampus. These afferent fibers pass to the habenular nuclei in the *stria medullaris thalami*. Some of the fibers cross the midline to reach the contralateral nucleus through the habenular commissure.

ASSOCIATION FIBERS. These nerve fibers essentially connect various cortical regions within the same hemisphere and may be divided into short and long groups (Fig. 14-13). The *short association fibers* lie immediately beneath the cortex and connect adjacent gyri; these fibers run transversely to the long axis of the sulci (Fig. 14-13). The *long association fibers* are collected into named bundles that can be dissected in a formalin-hardened brain. The *uncinate fasciculus* connects the first motor speech area and the gyri on the inferior surface of the frontal lobe with the cortex of the pole of the temporal lobe. The *cingulum* is a long, curved fasciculus lying within the white matter of the cingulate gyrus (see Fig. 14-3). It connects the frontal and parietal lobes with parahippocampal and adjacent temporal cortical regions. The *superior longitudinal fasciculus* is the largest bundle of nerve fibers. It connects the anterior part of the frontal lobe to the occipital and temporal lobes. The *inferior longitudinal fasciculus* runs anteriorly from the occipital lobe, passing lateral to the optic radiation, and is distributed to the temporal lobe. The *fronto-occipital fasciculus* connects the frontal

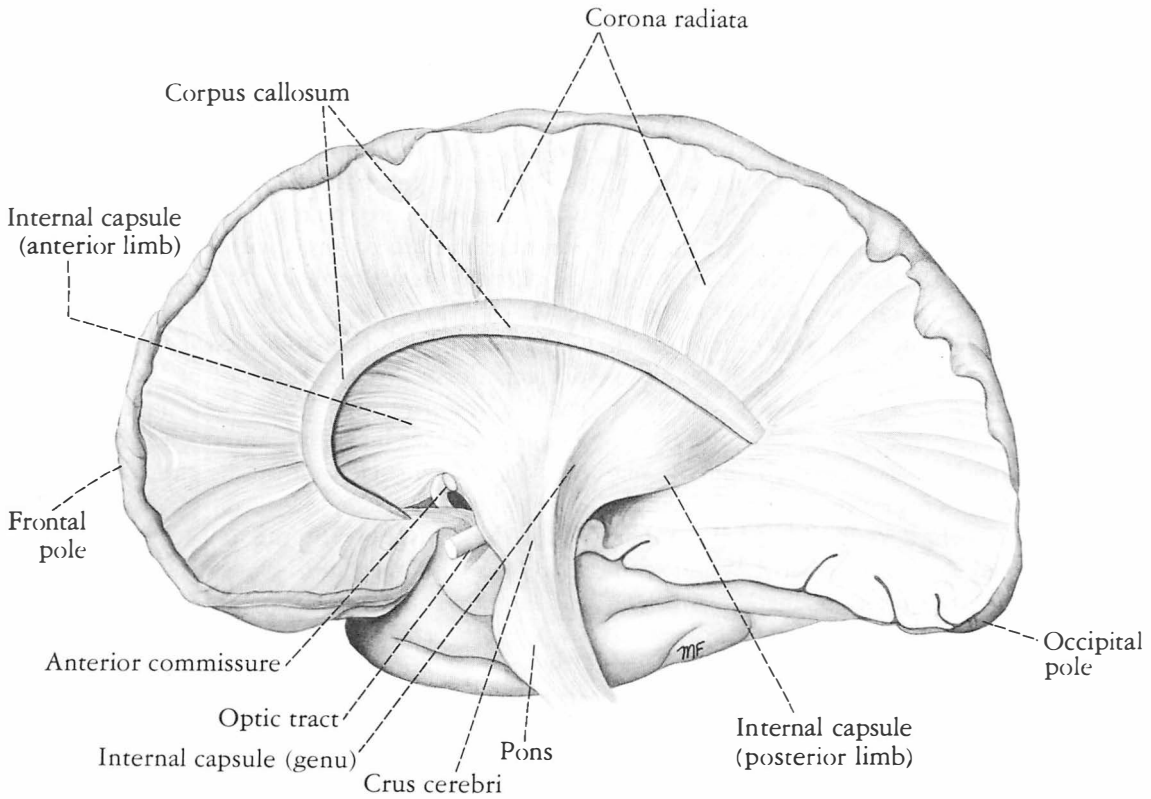


Fig. 14-14. Medial view of the right cerebral hemisphere, which has been dissected to show the internal capsule and the corona radiata. The thalamus has been removed. Note the interdigitation of the horizontally running fibers of the corpus callosum and the vertical fibers of the corona radiata.

lobe to the occipital and temporal lobes. It is situated deep within the cerebral hemisphere and is related to the lateral border of the caudate nucleus.

PROJECTION FIBERS. Afferent and efferent nerve fibers passing to and from the brainstem to the entire cerebral cortex must travel between large nuclear masses of gray matter within the cerebral hemisphere. At the upper part of the brainstem these fibers form a compact band known as the *internal capsule,* which is flanked medially by the caudate nucleus and the thalamus, and laterally by the lentiform nucleus (see Fig. 14-7). Because of the wedge shape of the lentiform nucleus, as seen on horizontal section, the internal capsule is bent to form an *anterior limb* and a *posterior limb,* which are continuous with each other at the *genu* (Figs. 14-12 and 14-14). Once the nerve fibers have emerged superiorly from between the nuclear masses, they radiate in all directions to the cerebral cortex. These radiating projection fibers are known as the *corona radiata* (Fig. 14-14). The majority of the projection fibers lie medial to the association fibers, but they intersect the commissural fibers of the corpus callosum and the anterior commissure. The nerve fibers lying within the most posterior part of the posterior limb of the internal capsule radiate toward the calcarine sulcus and are known as the *optic radiation* (Fig. 14-12). The detailed arrangement of the fibers within the internal capsule is shown in Figure 14-12.

Septum Pellucidum

The septum pellucidum is a thin vertical sheet of nervous tissue consisting of white and gray matter covered on either side by ependyma (see Figs. 14-3 and 14-7). It stretches between the fornix and the corpus callosum. Anteriorly, it occupies the interval between the body of the corpus callosum and the rostrum. It is essentially a double membrane with a closed, slitlike cavity between the membranes. The septum pellucidum forms a partition between the anterior horns of the lateral ventricles.

Tela Choroidea

The tela choroidea is a two-layered fold of pia mater. It is situated between the fornix superiorly and the roof of the third ventricle and the upper surfaces of the two thalami inferiorly. When seen from above, it is triangular in shape, with the rounded apex situated at the interventricular foramina (see Fig. 17-4). Its lateral edges are irregular and project laterally into the body of the lateral ventricles. Here they are covered by ependyma and form the choroid plexuses of the lateral ventricle. The center of the base of the triangle marks the place where the two constituent layers of pia separate, the superior layer passing over the corpus callosum and the inferior layer passing over the posterior surface of the midbrain. At the lateral angles of the base of the triangle, the lateral edges continue into the inferior horn of the lateral ventricle and are covered with ependyma so that the choroid plexus projects through the choroidal fissure.

On either side of the midline the tela choroidea projects down through the roof of the third ventricle and forms two linear vascular processes. These processes invaginate the ependymal roof of of the third ventricle to form the choroid plexuses of the third ventricle.

The blood supply of the tela choroidea and, therefore, also the choroid plexuses of the third and lateral ventricle are derived from the *choroidal branches of the internal carotid and basilar arteries.* The venous blood drains into the *internal cerebral veins,* which unite to form the *great cerebral vein.* The great cerebral vein joins the *inferior sagittal sinus* to form the straight sinus.

Clinical Notes

Cerebral Cortex, Sulci, and Lobes of the Cerebral Hemisphere

The cerebral cortex is composed of gray matter. Only about one-third lies on the exposed convexity of the gyri; the remaining two-thirds form the walls of the sulci. The major part of the cortex can be divided into six laminae, which exhibit marked regional differences in structure, as will be described in Chapter 15. Moreover, different areas of the cortex have different functions, and the anatomical division of the cortex into lobes and gyri by sulci enables the physician to localize loss of function or accurately place a brain lesion. For example, focal lesions of the precentral gyrus will produce contralateral hemiparesis, while lesions of the postcentral gyrus will result in contralateral hemisensory loss. More widespread lesions of the frontal lobe might cause symptoms and signs indicative of loss of attention span or change in social behavior. Widespread degeneration of the cerebral cortex gives rise to symptoms of dementia.

Lateral Ventricles

Each lateral ventricle contains about 7 to 10 ml of cerebrospinal fluid. This fluid is produced in the choroid plexus of the lateral ventricle and normally drains into the third ventricle through the interventricular foramen (foramen of Monro). Blockage of the foramen by a cerebral tumor would result in distention of the ventricle, thus producing a type of *hydrocephalus.*

The choroid plexus of the lateral ventricle is continuous with that of the third ventricle through the interventricular foramen. The choroid plexus is largest where the body and posterior and inferior horns join, and it is here that it may be-

come calcified with age. It is important that this calcification, as seen on x-rays, is not confused with that of the pineal gland.

The size and shape of the lateral ventricle may be investigated clinically by pneumoencephalography (Figs. 14-15 through 14-18). In this procedure, small amounts of air are introduced into the subarachnoid space by lumbar puncture with the patient in the sitting position. If the patient already has a raised intracranial pressure, this method is dangerous (see p. 38), and air or radiopaque fluid should be injected directly into the lateral ventricles through a burr hole in the skull (this procedure is referred to as *ventriculography*). Recently, the introduction of *computerized axial tomography* has provided a simple and accurate method of studying the ventricles.

Basal Nuclei

The *basal nuclei,* in this discussion, refers to the masses of gray matter that are deeply placed within the cerebrum. They include the caudate nucleus, the lentiform nucleus, the amygdaloid nucleus, and the claustrum.

Because of the close relationship that exists between these nuclei and the internal capsule, tumors of the caudate or lentiform nuclei may cause severe motor or sensory symptoms on the opposite side of the body. Tumors pressing on the anterior limb of the internal capsule will cause progressive spastic hemiplegia, while more posteriorly situated tumors will produce impairment of sensation on the opposite side.

Disorders of function of the basal nuclei will be considered after the connections of these nuclei have been discussed.

Commissures of the Cerebrum

The major commissure is the large corpus callosum. The majority of the fibers within the corpus callosum interconnect symmetrical areas of the cerebral cortex. It is interesting to note that the auditory, visual, and somatic sensory receptive cortices do not have connections that pass through the corpus callosum. Since communication between the right and left hemispheres is carried out mainly through the corpus callosum, section of the commissure has been attempted clinically, with some success, in an attempt to prevent the spread of seizures from one hemisphere to the other.

The corpus callosum, because it transfers information from one hemisphere to another, is essential for learned discrimination, sensory experience, and memory.

Occasionally the corpus callosum fails to develop and in these individuals no definite signs or symptoms appear. However, should the corpus callosum be destroyed by disease in later life, each hemisphere becomes isolated and the patient responds as if he has two separate brains. His general intelligence and behavior appear normal, since over the years both hemispheres have been trained to respond to different situations. If a pencil is placed in his right hand, he will recognize the object by touch and be able to describe it. If the pencil is placed in his left hand, the tactile information will pass to his right postcentral gyrus. This information will not be able to travel through the corpus callosum to his speech area in his left hemisphere and, therefore, he will be unable to describe the object in his left hand.

Internal Capsule

The internal capsule is an important compact band of white matter. It is composed of ascending and descending nerve fibers that connect the cerebral cortex to the brainstem and spinal cord. The internal capsule is flanked medially by the caudate nucleus and thalamus and laterally by the lentiform nucleus. The arrangement of the nerve fibers within the internal capsule is shown in Figure 14-12.

The internal capsule is frequently involved in vascular disorders of the brain. The blood supply of the internal capsule is described on page 449. The most common cause of arterial hemorrhage is atheromatous degeneration in an artery in a patient with high blood pressure. Because of the high concentration of important nerve fibers

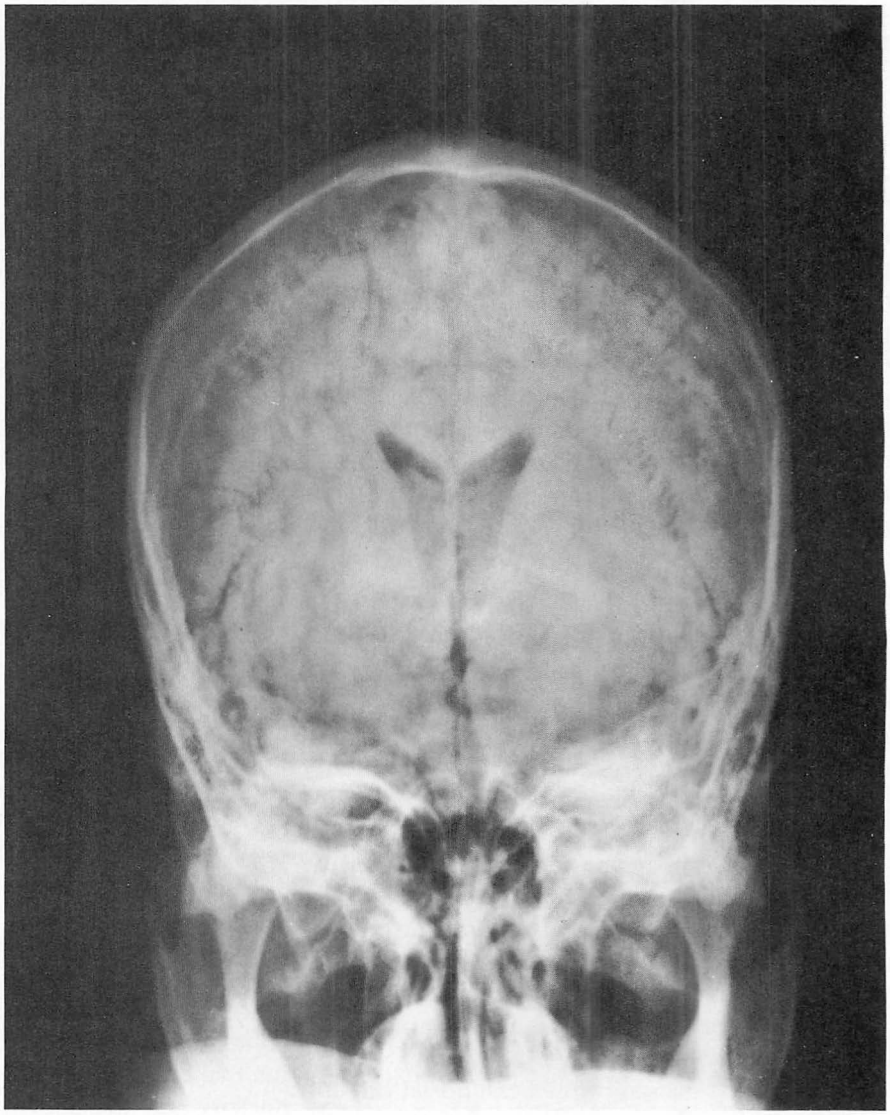


Fig. 14-15. Anteroposterior pneumoencephalogram of a 28-year-old male. (From R. S. Snell and A. C. Wyman, An Atlas of Normal Radiographic Anatomy, *Boston: Little, Brown, 1976.)*

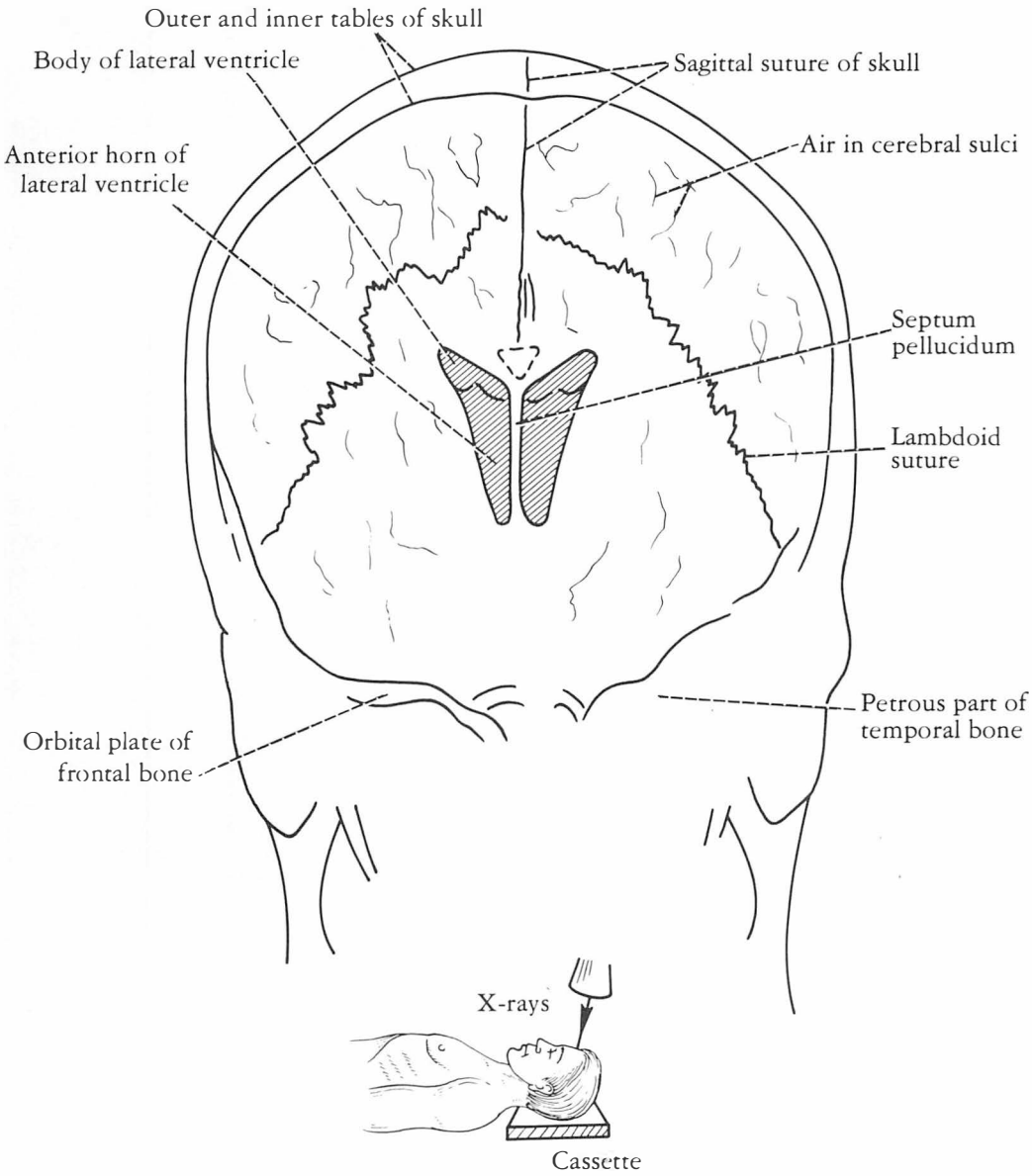


Fig. 14-16. Explanation of radiograph seen in Figure 14-15. Note the position of the x-ray gun relative to the head and the film cassette.

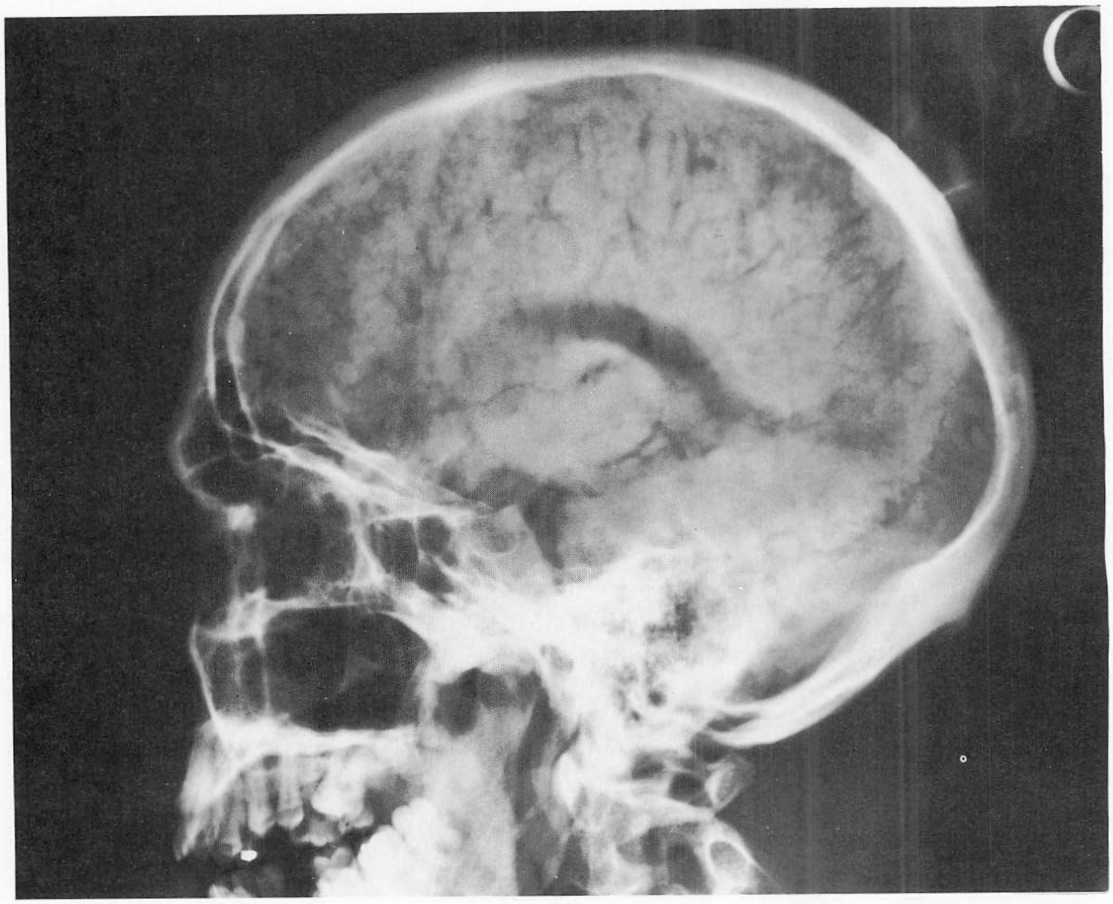


Fig. 14-17. Lateral pneumoencephalogram of a 28-year-old male. (From R. S. Snell and A. C. Wyman, An Atlas of Normal Radiographic Anatomy, *Boston: Little, Brown, 1976.)*

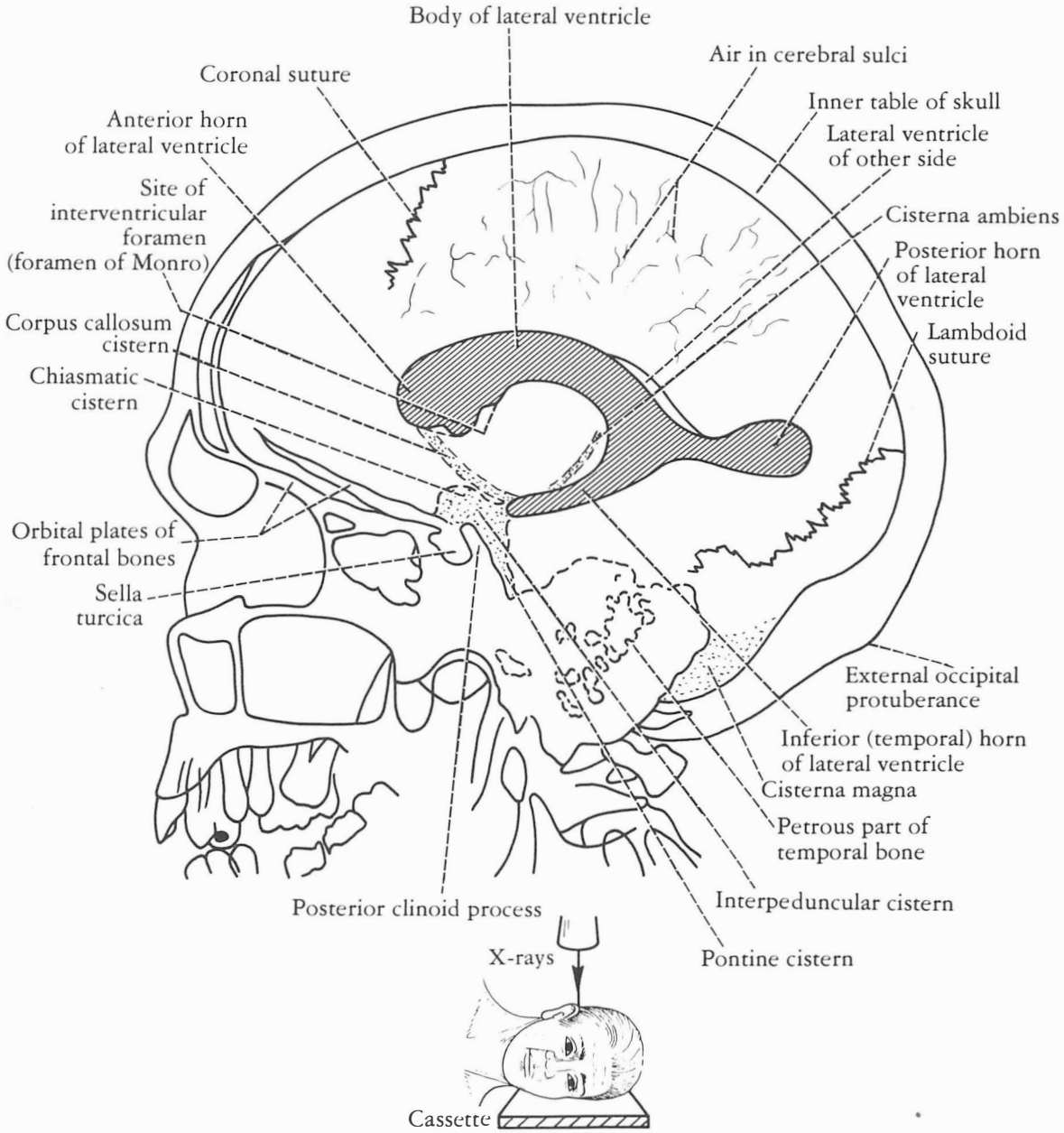


Fig. 14-18. Explanation of radiograph seen in Figure 14-17. Note the position of the x-ray gun relative to the head and the film cassette.

within the internal capsule, even a small hemorrhage may cause widespread effects on the contralateral side of the body. Not only is the immediate neural tissue destroyed by the blood, which later clots, but neighboring nerve fibers may be compressed or be edematous.

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 491.

1. A neurosurgeon explained to his residents that he would attempt to remove the glioma located in the right middle frontal gyrus by turning back a flap of the scalp and removing a rectangular piece of the overlying skull. Where exactly is the right middle frontal gyrus in the brain? What are the names of the sulci that lie above and below this gyrus? Which skull bone overlays this gyrus?

2. While performing an autopsy, a pathologist had great difficulty in finding the central sulcus in each cerebral hemisphere. Since finding this sulcus is the key to localizing many other sulci and gyri, what landmarks would you use to identify the central sulcus? Are the sulci and gyri in the two hemispheres similar in size and shape? Are there individual variations in the arrangement of the sulci and gyri?

3. A fourth-year medical student was shown a lateral radiograph of the skull following the procedure of pneumoencephalography and was asked to comment on his observations. The patient was a 55-year-old male. The student responded by saying that one of the lateral ventricles was larger than normal. On looking at the anteroposterior radiograph, he identified the enlarged ventricle as the left one. He noted a small area of "calcification" situated in the posterior part of the left ventricle. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, describe the location of the lateral ventricle in the brain. What are the different parts of the lateral ventricle? Where is the cerebrospinal fluid in the lateral ventricle produced and what does it normally drain into? What is responsible for the calcification seen in the left lateral ventricle in this patient?

4. A medical student, while performing an autopsy, found that the patient had no corpus callosum. On consulting the patient's clinical notes he was surprised to find no reference to a neurological disorder. Are you surprised that this patient had no recorded neurological signs and symptoms?

5. During a lecture, a distinguished neurologist repeatedly referred to the *corpus striatum*, the *basal ganglia*, and the *basal nuclei*. Are you sure you understand the differences, if any, between these terms?

Additional Reading

Crosby, E. C., Humphrey, T., and Lauer, E. W. *Correlative Anatomy of the Nervous System.* New York: Macmillan, 1962.

Sobotta, J. *Atlas of Descriptive Human Anatomy,* Vol. 3. New York: Hafner Publishing Co., 1957.

Warwick, R., and Williams, P. L. (Eds.) *Gray's Anatomy* (35th Brit. ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders, 1973.

15
The Structure and Functional Localization of the Cerebral Cortex

Structure of the Cerebral Cortex

The cerebral cortex forms a complete covering of the cerebral hemisphere. It is composed of gray matter and has been estimated to contain approximately 10 billion neurons. The surface area of the cortex has been increased by throwing it into convolutions, or gyri, separated by fissures or sulci. The thickness of the cortex varies from 1.5 to 4.5 mm. The cortex is thickest over the crest of a gyrus and thinnest in the depth of a sulcus. The cerebral cortex, like gray matter elsewhere in the central nervous system, consists of a mixture of nerve cells, nerve fibers, neuroglia, and blood vessels. The following types of nerve cells are present in the cerebral cortex: (1) pyramidal cells, (2) stellate cells, (3) fusiform cells, (4) horizontal cells of Cajal, and (5) cells of Martinotti (Fig. 15-1).

Nerve Cells of the Cerebral Cortex

The *pyramidal cells* are named from the shape of their cell bodies (Fig. 15-1). The majority of the cell bodies measure 10 to 50 μ long. However, there are giant pyramidal cells, also known as *Betz cells,* whose cell bodies measure as much as 120 μ; these are found in the motor precentral gyrus of the frontal lobe.

The apices of the pyramidal cells are orientated toward the pial surface of the cortex. From the apex of each cell a thick apical dendrite extends upward toward the pia, giving off collateral branches. From the basal angles, several basal dendrites pass laterally into the surrounding neuropil. Each dendrite possesses numerous *dendritic spines* for synaptic junctions with axons of other neurons (Fig. 15-1). The axon arises from the base of the cell body and either terminates in the deeper cortical layers or, more commonly, enters the white matter of the cerebral hemisphere as a projection, association, or commissural fiber.

The *stellate* cells, sometimes called granule cells because of their small size, are polygonal in shape and their cell bodies measure about 8 μ in diameter (Fig. 15-1). These cells have multiple branching dendrites and a relatively short axon, which terminates on a nearby neuron.

The *fusiform cells* have their long axis vertical to the surface and are concentrated mainly in the deepest cortical layers (Fig. 15-1). Dendrites arise from each pole of the cell body. The inferior dendrite branches within the same cellular layer, while the superficial dendrite ascends toward the surface of the cortex and branches in the superficial layers. The axon arises from the inferior part of the cell body and enters the white matter as a projection, association, or commissural fiber.

The *horizontal cells of Cajal* are small, fusiform, horizontally oriented cells found in the most superficial layers of the cortex (Fig. 15-1). A dendrite emerges from each end of the cell and an axon runs parallel to the surface of the cortex, making contact with the dendrites of pyramidal cells.

The *cells of Martinotti* are small, multipolar cells that are present throughout the levels of the cortex (Fig. 15-1). The cell has short dendrites, but the axon is directed toward the pial surface of the cortex, where it ends in a more superficial layer, commonly the most superficial layer. The axon gives origin to a few short collateral branches en route.

Nerve Fibers of the Cerebral Cortex

The nerve fibers of the cerebral cortex are arranged both radially and tangentially (Figs. 15-2 and 15-3). The *radial fibers* run at right angles to

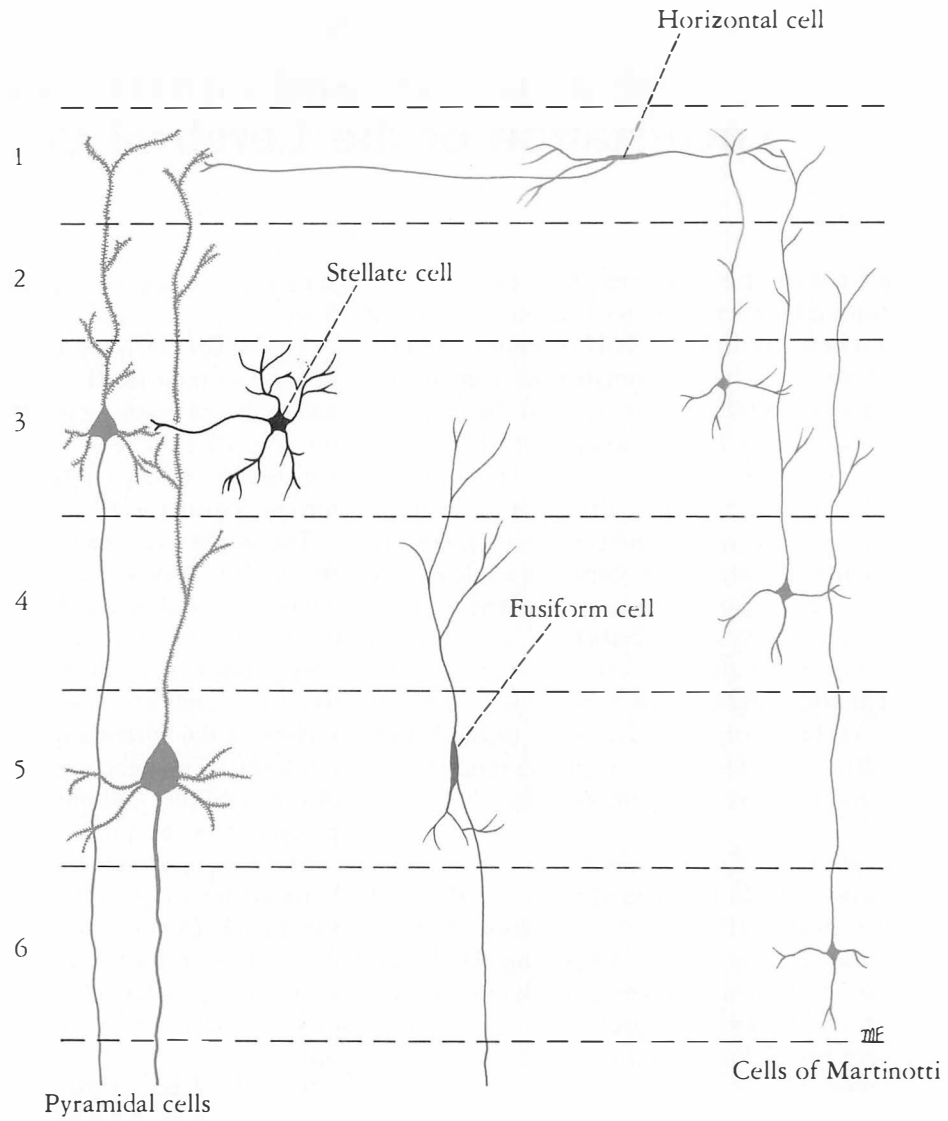


Fig. 15-1. The main types of neurons found in the cerebral cortex.

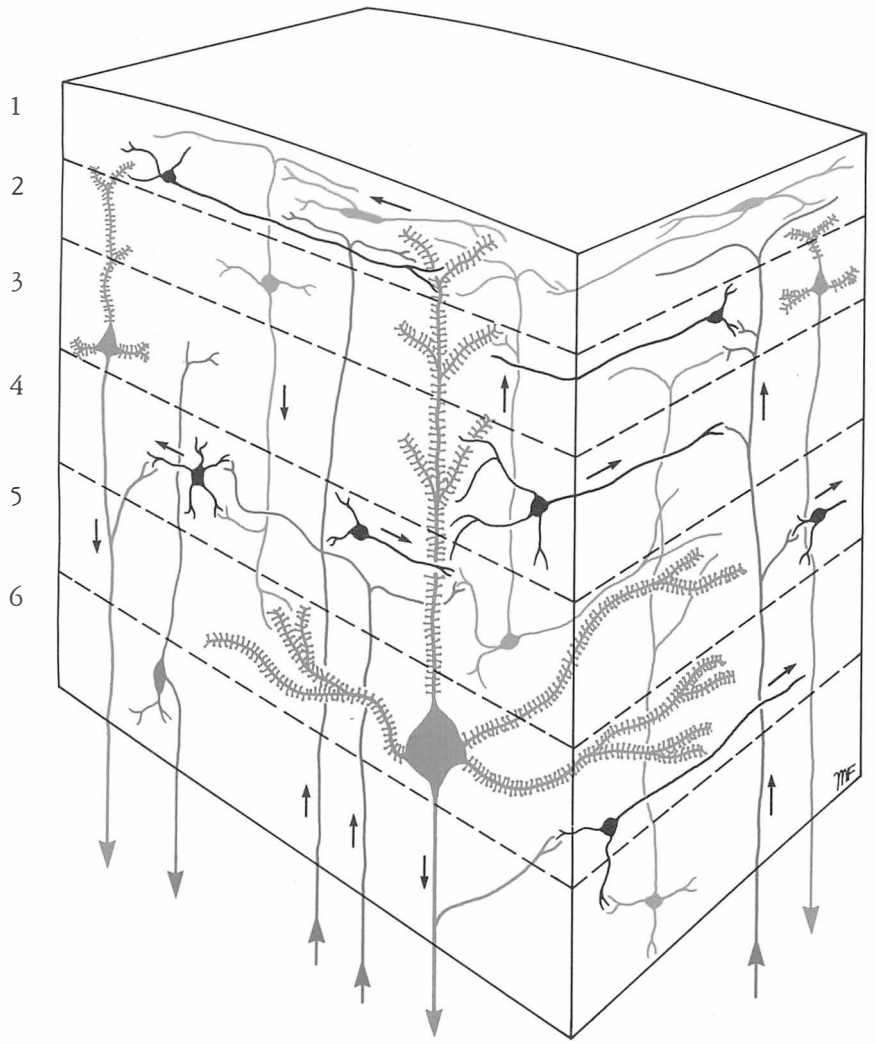


Fig. 15-2. The neuronal connections of the cerebral cortex. Note the presence of the afferent and efferent fibers.

the cortical surface. They include the afferent entering projection, association, and commissural fibers that terminate within the cortex, and the axons of pyramidal, stellate, and fusiform cells, which leave the cortex to become projection, association, and commissural fibers of the white matter of the cerebral hemisphere.

The *tangential fibers* run parallel to the cortical surface and are, for the most part, collateral and terminal branches of afferent fibers. They include also the axons of horizontal and stellate cells, and collateral branches of pyramidal and fusiform cells. The tangential fibers are most concentrated in layer 4 and layer 5, where they are referred to as the outer and inner *bands of Baillarger,* respectively (Figs. 15-2 and 15-3). The bands of Baillarger are particularly well-developed in the sensory areas due to the high concentration of the terminal parts of the thalamocortical fibers. In the visual cortex, the outer *band of Baillarger,* which is

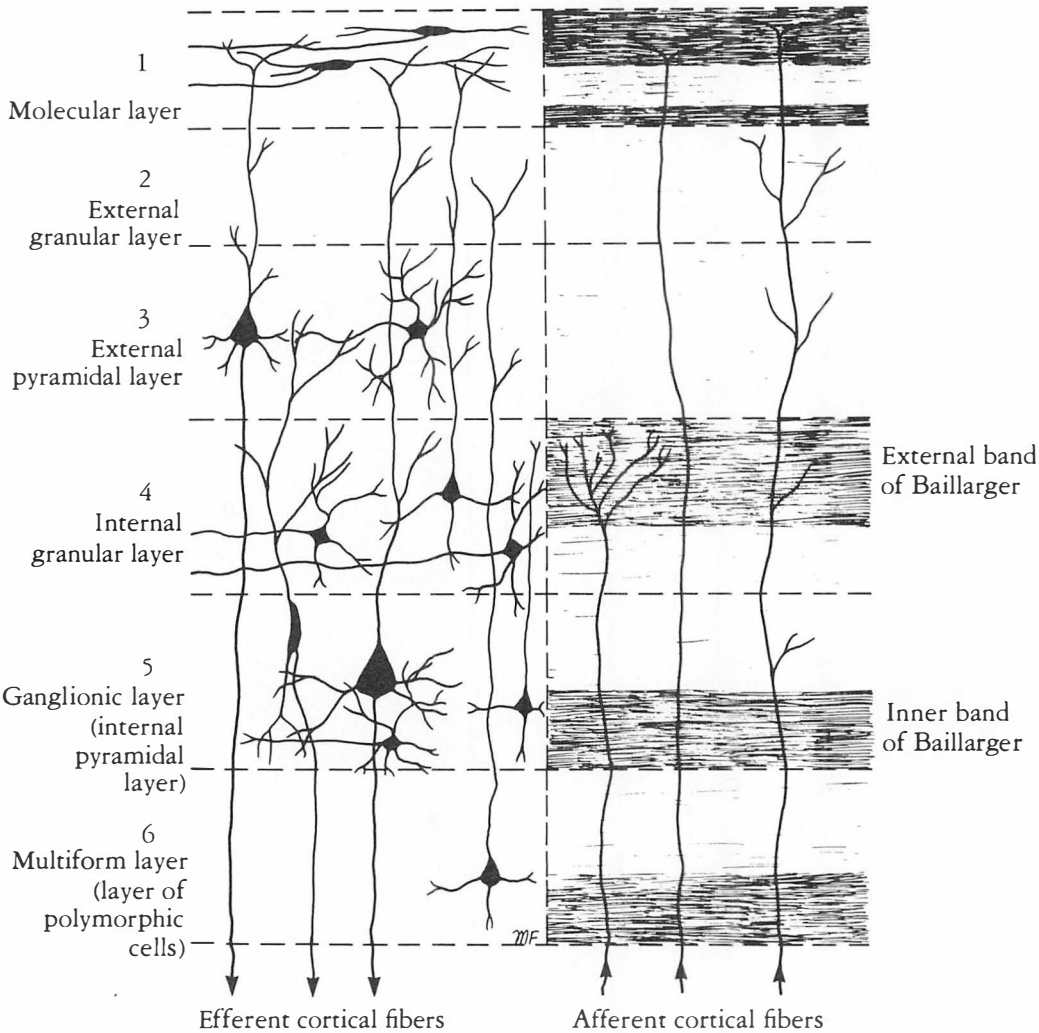


Fig. 15-3. The layers of the cerebral cortex, showing the neurons on the left and the nerve fibers on the right.

so thick it can be seen with the naked eye, is known as the *stria of Gennari*. Because of this obvious band, or stria, the visual cortex in the walls of the calcarine sulcus is sometimes called the *striate cortex*.

Layers of the Cerebral Cortex

It is convenient, for descriptive purposes, to divide the cerebral cortex into layers that may be distinguished by the types, density, and arrangement of their cells (Figs. 15-1 and 15-3). The names and characteristic features of the layers are described here; regional differences will be discussed later.

1. *Molecular Layer (plexiform layer).* This is the most superficial layer; it consists mainly of a dense network of tangentially oriented nerve fibers (Figs. 15-1 and 15-3). These fibers are derived from the apical dendrites of the pyramidal cells and fusiform cells, the axons of the stellate cells,

and the cells of Martinotti. Afferent fibers originating from the thalamus and from association and commissural fibers also are present. Scattered among these nerve fibers are occasional horizontal cells of Cajal. This most superficial layer of the cortex clearly is where large numbers of synapses between different neurons occur.

2. *External Granular Layer.* This layer contains large numbers of small pyramidal cells and stellate cells (Figs. 15-1 and 15-3). The dendrites of these cells terminate in the molecular layer, and the axons enter deeper layers, where they terminate or pass on to enter the white matter of the cerebral hemisphere.

3. *External Pyramidal Layer.* This layer is composed of pyramidal cells, whose cell body size increases from the superficial to the deeper borders of the layer (Figs. 15-1 and 15-3). The apical dendrites pass into the molecular layer and the axons enter the white matter as projection, association, or commissural fibers.

4. *Internal Granular Layer.* This layer is composed of closely packed stellate cells (Figs. 15-1 and 15-3). There is a high concentration of horizontally arranged fibers known collectively as the *external band of Baillarger.*

5. *Ganglionic Layer (internal pyramidal layer).* This layer contains very large and medium-sized pyramidal cells (Figs. 15-1 and 15-3). Scattered among the pyramidal cells are stellate cells and cells of Martinotti. In addition, there are a large number of horizontally arranged fibers that form the *inner band of Baillarger* (Fig. 15-3). In the motor cortex of the precentral gyrus, the pyramidal cells of this layer are very large and are known as Betz cells. These cells account for about 3 percent of the projection fibers of the *corticospinal or pyramidal tract.*

6. *Multiform Layer (layer of polymorphic cells).* Although the majority of the cells are fusiform, many of the cells are modified pyramidal cells, whose cell bodies are triangular or ovoid (Figs. 15-1 and 15-3). The cells of Martinotti also are conspicuous in this layer. Many nerve fibers are present that are entering or are leaving the underlying white matter.

Variations in Cortical Structure

The system of numbering and nomenclature of the cortical layers used above is similar to that distinguished by Brodmann (1909). It is important, however, to realize that not all areas of the cerebral cortex possess six layers (Fig. 15-3). Those areas of the cortex in which the basic six layers cannot be recognized are referred to as *heterotypical,* as opposed to the majority, which are *homotypical* and possess six layers. Two heterotypical areas will be described, the granular and the agranular type.

In the *granular type,* the granular layers are well-developed and contain densely packed stellate cells (Fig. 15-3). Thus, layers 2 and 4 are well developed, and layers 3 and 5 are poorly developed, so that layers 2 through 5 merge into a single layer of predominantly granular cells. It is these cells that receive thalamocortical fibers. The granular type of cortex is found in the postcentral gyrus, the superior temporal gyrus, and in parts of the hippocampal gyrus.

In the *agranular type* of cortex, the granular layers are poorly developed, so that layers 2 and 4 are practically absent (Fig. 15-3). The pyramidal cells in layers 3 and 5 are densely packed and are very large in size. The agranular type of cortex is found in the precentral gyrus and other areas in the frontal lobe. These areas give rise to large numbers of efferent fibers that are associated with motor function.

Mechanisms of the Cerebral Cortex

A study of the histology of the cerebral cortex, combined with the neurophysiological recordings made with microelectrodes, suggests that the cerebral cortex is organized into vertical units of functional activity (Fig. 15-2). Such a functional unit possesses afferent fibers, internuncial neurons, and efferent fibers. An afferent fiber may synapse directly with an efferent neuron or may involve vertical chains of internuncial neurons. A single vertical chain of neurons may be involved or the wave of excitation may spread to adjacent vertical chains through short axon granule cells. The horizontal cells of Cajal permit activation of vertical

units that lie some distance away from the incoming afferent fiber (Fig. 15-2).

Cortical Areas

Clinicopathological studies in man and electrophysiological and ablation studies in animals have, over the past century, produced evidence that different areas of the cerebral cortex are functionally specialized. However, the precise division of the cortex into different areas of specialization, as described by Brodmann, oversimplifies and misleads the reader. The simple division of cortical areas into motor and sensory is erroneous, for many of the sensory areas are far more extensive than originally described, and it is known that motor responses can be obtained on stimulation of sensory areas. Until a satisfactory terminology has been devised to describe the various cortical areas, the main cortical areas will be named by their anatomical location.

Frontal Lobe

The *precentral area* includes the precentral gyrus and the posterior parts of the superior, middle, and inferior frontal gyri; it extends over the superomedial border of the hemisphere into the paracentral lobule (Fig. 15-4). Histologically, the characteristic feature of this area is the almost complete absence of the granular layers and the prominence of the pyramidal nerve cells. The giant pyramidal cells of Betz, which may measure as much as 120 μ long and 60 μ wide, are concentrated most highly in the superior part of the precentral gyrus and the paracentral lobule; their numbers diminish as one passes anteriorly in the precentral gyrus or inferiorly toward the lateral fissure. The great majority of the corticospinal and corticobulbar fibers originate from the small pyramidal cells in this area. It has been estimated that the number of Betz cells present is between 25,000 and 30,000 and accounts for only about 3 percent of the corticospinal fibers. Now it is accepted generally that the postcentral gyrus and the second somatosensory areas, as well as the occipital and temporal lobes, give origin to some of these important descending tracts.

The precentral area is concerned with voluntary movements on the opposite side of the body. Electrical stimulation of this area produces isolated movements on the opposite side of the body and contraction of muscle groups concerned with the performance of a specific movement. Ipsilateral movements do not occur, but bilateral movements of the extraocular muscles, the muscles of the upper part of the face, the tongue and the mandible, and the larynx and the pharynx do occur. The area of cortex controlling a particular movement is proportional to the skill involved in performing the movement and is not related to the mass of muscle participating in the movement (Fig. 15-5). The movement areas of the body in the precentral gyrus, starting from below and passing upward, are: structures involved in swallowing, tongue, jaw, lips, larynx, eyelid, and brow. The next area is an extensive region for movements of the fingers, especially the thumb, hand, wrist, elbow, shoulder, and trunk. The movements of the hip, knee, and ankle are represented in the highest areas of the precentral gyrus and the toes are situated on the medial surface of the cerebral hemisphere in the paracentral lobule. The anal and vesical sphincters are also located in the paracentral lobule.

It is customary to divide the precentral area into posterior and anterior regions. The posterior region—referred to as the *motor area, primary motor area,* or Brodmann's area 4—occupies the precentral gyrus extending over the superior border into the paracentral lobule (Fig. 15-4). The anterior area is known as the *premotor area, secondary motor area,* or Brodmann's area 6 and parts of areas 8, 44, and 45. It occupies the anterior part of the precentral gyrus and the posterior parts of the superior, middle, and inferior frontal gyri.

The premotor area, which is wider superiorly than below and narrows down to be confined to the anterior part of the precentral gyrus, has no giant pyramidal cells of Betz. Electrical stimulation of the premotor area produces muscular movements similar to those obtained by stimulation of the motor area; however, stronger stimulation is necessary to produce the same degree of movement.

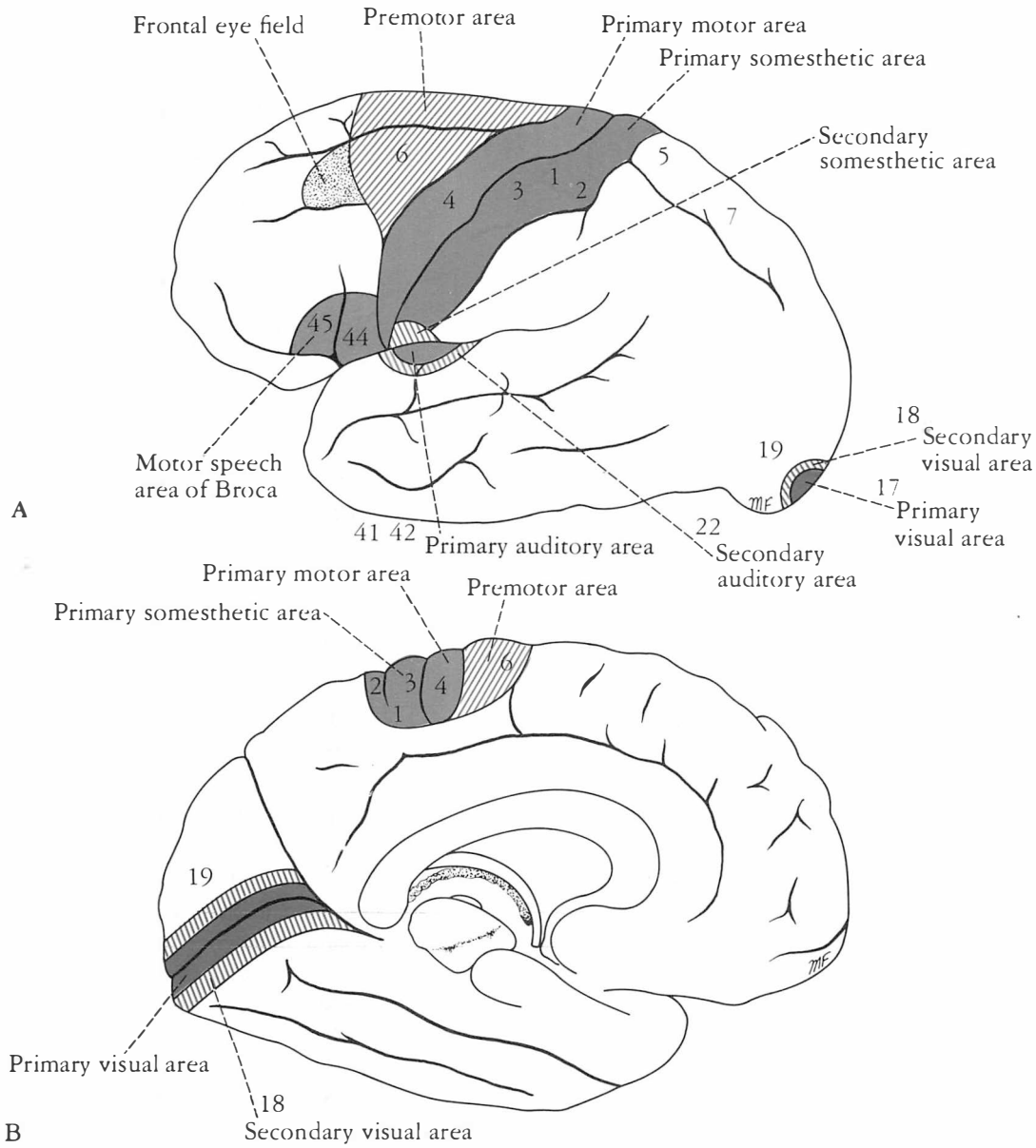


Fig. 15-4. Functional localization of the cerebral cortex.
A. Lateral view of left cerebral hemisphere.
B. Medial view of left cerebral hemisphere.

Fig. 15-5. A motor homunculus on the precentral gyrus.

The *supplementary motor area* is situated in the medial frontal gyrus on the medial surface of the hemisphere and anterior to the paracentral lobule. Stimulation of this area results in movements of the contralateral limbs, but a stronger stimulus is necessary than when the primary motor area is stimulated. Removal of the supplementary motor area produces no permanent loss of movement.

The *frontal eye field* (Fig. 15-4) extends forward from the facial area of the precentral gyrus into the middle frontal gyrus (parts of Brodmann's areas 6, 8, and 9). Electrical stimulation of this region causes conjugate movements of the eyes, especially toward the opposite side. The exact pathway taken by nerve fibers from this area is not known, but they are thought to pass to the superior colliculus of the midbrain. The frontal eye field is considered to control voluntary scanning movements of the eye and is independent of visual stimuli.

The *motor speech area of Broca* (Fig. 15-4) is located in the inferior frontal gyrus between the anterior and ascending rami and the ascending and posterior rami of the lateral fissure (Brodmann's areas 44 and 45). In the majority of individuals, this area is important on the left or dominant hemisphere and ablation will result in paralysis of speech. In those individuals where the right hemisphere is dominant, the area on the right side is of importance. The ablation of this region in the nondominant hemisphere has no effect on speech.

The *prefrontal cortex* is an extensive area that lies anterior to the precentral area. It includes the greater parts of the superior, middle, and inferior frontal gyri, the orbital gyri, most of the medial frontal gyrus, and the anterior half of the cingulate gyrus (Brodmann's areas 9, 10, 11, and 12). Large numbers of afferent and efferent pathways connect the prefrontal area with other areas of the cerebral cortex, the thalamus, the hypothalamus, and the corpus striatum. The frontopontine fibers also connect this area to the cerebellum through the pontine nuclei. The commissural fibers of the for-

ceps minor and genu of the corpus callosum unite these areas in both cerebral hemispheres.

The prefrontal area is concerned with the makeup of the individual's personality. As the result of the input from many cortical and subcortical sources, this area plays a role as a regulator of the person's depth of feeling. It also exerts its influence in determining the initiative and judgment of an individual.

Parietal Lobe

The *primary somesthetic area* (Fig. 15-4) occupies the postcentral gyrus on the lateral surface of the hemisphere and the posterior part of the paracentral lobule on the medial surface (Brodmann's areas 1, 2, and 3). Histologically, the anterior part of the postcentral gyrus is the area that borders the central sulcus (area 3), is granular in type, and contains only scattered pyramidal cells. The *outer layer of Baillarger* is broad and very obvious. The posterior part of the postcentral gyrus (areas 1 and 2) possesses fewer granular cells. The primary somesthetic areas of the cerebral cortex receive projection fibers from the ventral posterior lateral and ventral posterior medial nuclei of the thalamus. The opposite half of the body is represented as inverted. The pharyngeal region, tongue, and jaws are represented in the most inferior part of the postcentral gyrus; this is followed by the face, fingers, hand, arm, trunk, and thigh. The leg and the foot areas are found on the medial surface of the hemisphere in the posterior part of the paracentral lobule. The anal and genital regions are also found in this latter area. The apportioning of the cortex for a particular part of the body is related to its functional importance rather than to its size. The face, lips, thumb, and index finger have particularly large areas assigned to them.

Although the majority of the sensations reach the cortex from the contralateral side of the body, some from the oral region go to the same side, and those from the pharynx, larynx, and perineum go to both sides.

The *secondary somesthetic area* (Fig. 15-4) is in the superior lip of the posterior limb of the lateral fissure. The face area lies most anterior and the leg area is posterior. The detailed connections of this area are unknown, but the spinothalamic tracts are believed to be associated with it.

The *somesthetic association area* (Fig. 15-4) occupies the superior parietal lobule extending onto the medial surface of the hemisphere (Brodmann's areas 5 and 7). This area has many connections with other sensory areas of the cortex. It is believed that its main function is to receive and integrate different sensory modalities. For example, it enables one to recognize objects placed in the hand without the help of vision. In other words, it not only receives information concerning the size and shape of an object but relates this to past sensory experiences, so that the information may be interpreted and recognition occurs. A quarter placed in the hand can be distinguished from a dime or a nickel by the size, shape, and feel of the coin without having to use one's eyes.

Occipital Lobe

The *primary visual area* (Brodmann's area 17) is situated in the walls of the posterior part of the calcarine sulcus and occasionally extends around the occipital pole onto the lateral surface of the hemisphere (Fig. 15-4). Macroscopically, this area can be recognized by the thinness of the cortex and the visual stria, and microscopically, it is seen to be a granular type of cortex with only a few pyramidal cells present.

The visual cortex receives afferent fibers from the lateral geniculate body. The fibers first pass forward in the white matter of the temporal lobe and then turn back to the primary visual cortex in the occipital lobe. The visual cortex receives fibers from the temporal half of the ipsilateral retina and the nasal half of the contralateral retina. The right half of the field of vision, therefore, is represented in the visual cortex of the left cerebral hemisphere and vice versa. It is also important to note that the superior retinal quadrants (inferior field of vision) pass to the superior wall of the calcarine sulcus, while the inferior retinal quadrants (superior field of vision) pass to the inferior wall of the calcarine sulcus.

The macula lutea, which is the central area of

the retina and the area for most perfect vision, is represented on the cortex in the posterior part of area 17 and accounts for one-third of the visual cortex. The peripheral parts of the retina in the region of the orra serrata are represented in the anterior part of area 17.

The *secondary visual area* (Brodmann's areas 18 and 19) surrounds the primary visual area on the medial and lateral surfaces of the hemisphere (Fig. 15-4). This area receives afferent fibers from area 17 and other cortical areas, as well as from the thalamus. The function of the secondary visual area is to relate the visual information received by the primary visual area to past visual experiences, thus enabling the individual to recognize and appreciate what he is seeing.

The *occipital eye field* is thought to exist in the secondary visual area in man (Fig. 15-4). Stimulation produces conjugate deviation of the eyes, especially to the opposite side. The function of this eye field is believed to be reflex and associated with movements of the eye when it is following an object. The occipital eye fields of both hemispheres are connected by nervous pathways, and also are thought to be connected to the superior colliculus. The frontal eye field, on the other hand, controls voluntary scanning movements of the eye and is independent of visual stimuli.

Temporal Lobe

The *primary auditory area* (Brodmann's areas 41 and 42) is situated in the inferior wall of the lateral sulcus (Fig. 15-4). Area 41 is a granular type of cortex; area 42 is homotypical and is mainly an auditory association area.

Projection fibers to the auditory area arise principally in the medial geniculate body and form the *auditory radiation of the internal capsule.* Although some authorities believe that certain regions of the primary auditory area are concerned with the reception of sounds of a specific frequency, other researchers deny this. A unilateral lesion of the auditory area produces partial deafness in both ears, the greater loss being on the contralateral ear. This can be explained on the basis that the medial geniculate body receives fibers mainly from the organ of Corti of the opposite side as well as some fibers from the same side.

The *secondary auditory area* (auditory association cortex) is situated posterior to the primary auditory area (Fig. 15-4) in the lateral sulcus and in the superior temporal gyrus (Brodmann's area 22). This area is thought to be necessary for the interpretation of sounds.

Other Cortical Areas

The *taste area* has not been definitely established in man. It is probably situated at the lower end of the postcentral gyrus in the superior wall of the lateral sulcus or in the adjoining area of the insula (Brodmann's area 43). The nervous connections are unknown.

The *vestibular area* is thought to be situated near the part of the postcentral gyrus concerned with sensations of the face. Its exact location is unknown.

The *insula* is an area of the cortex that is buried within the lateral sulcus and forms its floor (see Fig. 14-4). It can be examined only when the lips of the lateral sulcus are separated widely. Histologically, the posterior part is granular and the anterior part is agranular, thus resembling the adjoining cortical areas. Its fiber connections are incompletely known. It is believed to be associated with visceral functions.

Association Cortex

The primary sensory areas with their granular cortex and the primary motor areas with their agranular cortex form only a small part of the total cortical surface area. The remaining areas have all six cellular layers and therefore are referred to as homotypical cortex. Classically, these large remaining areas were known as association areas, though precisely what they associate is not known. The original concept, that they receive information from the primary sensory areas, to be integrated and analyzed in the association cortex and then fed to the motor areas, has not been established. Now it is becoming apparent that these homotypical areas of the cortex have multiple inputs and outputs, quite independent of the pri-

mary sensory and motor areas. Three main association areas are recognized: prefrontal, anterior temporal, and parietotemporal-preoccipital.

Cerebral Dominance

An anatomical examination of the two cerebral hemispheres shows that the cortical gyri and fissures are almost identical. Moreover, nervous pathways projecting to the cortex do so largely contralaterally and equally to identical cortical areas. In addition, the cerebral commissures provide a pathway for information that is received in one hemisphere to be transferred to the other. Nevertheless, we know that certain nervous activity is predominantly performed by one of the two cerebral hemispheres. Handedness, perception of language, speech, and spatial judgment are functional areas of behavior that are in most individuals controlled by the dominant hemisphere.

Over 90 percent of the adult population are right-handed and are therefore left hemisphere-dominant. About 96 percent of the adult population are left hemisphere-dominant for speech.

The work of Yakolev and Rakic on human fetuses and neonates has shown that more descending fibers in the left pyramid cross over the midline in the decussation than vice versa. This would suggest that, in the majority of individuals, the anterior horn cells on the right side of the spinal cord have a greater corticospinal innervation than those on the left side, which might explain the dominance of the right hand.

Other workers have shown that the speech area of the adult cortex is larger on the left than on the right. It is believed that the two hemispheres of the newborn have equipotential capabilities. During childhood, one hemisphere slowly comes to dominate the other, and it is only after the first decade that the dominance becomes fixed. This would explain why a five-year-old child with damage to the dominant hemisphere can easily learn to become left-handed and speak well, whereas in the case of the adult this is almost impossible.

Clinical Notes

General Considerations

The cerebral cortex reaches its greatest degree of development in human beings, which is the main difference between the human and subhuman brain. Microscopically, most of the cerebral cortex can be seen to be made up of six identifiable layers. Areas of specialization occur, as, for example, in the motor cortex in the precentral gyrus, where there is a relative absence of granular cells in the second and fourth layers, and in the somesthetic cortex in the postcentral gyrus, where there is a relative absence of pyramidal cells in the third and fifth layers.

Four groups of nerve fibers pass out and in to the cerebral cortex. *Corticofugal fibers* project from the cortex to lower areas of the central nervous system, such as the corticonuclear and corticospinal tracts. *Corticopetal fibers* project from the thalamus and other lower nuclei to the cortex. *Association fibers* connect different cortical regions of the same hemisphere. *Commissural fibers* connect identical portions of the two cerebral hemispheres.

Microscopical and electrophysiological research has led to the belief that the cerebral cortex is organized into vertical units of functional activity. The basal dendrites and the apical dendrite of the pyramidal cells run in a vertical direction, the axons of interconnecting neurons are vertically arranged, and the majority of cortical afferents run in a vertical direction. A single vertical chain of neurons initially may be involved in cortical activity or the wave of excitation may spread to involve neighboring vertical chains or vertical chains situated at some distance through horizontally arranged nerve cells.

The cerebral cortex should be regarded as the last receiving station involved along a line of stations receiving information from the eyes and ears and organs of general sensation. The function of the cortex is, in simple terms, to discriminate, and it relates the received information to past

memories. The enriched sensory input is then presumably discarded, stored, or translated into action. In this whole process, there is interplay between the cortex and basal nuclei provided by the many cortical and subcortical nervous connections.

Lesions of the Cerebral Cortex

In human beings, the effect of destruction of different areas of the cerebral cortex has been studied by examining patients with lesions resulting from cerebral tumors, vascular accidents, surgery, or head injuries. Moreover, it has been possible to take electrical recordings from different areas of the cortex during surgical exposure of the cerebral cortex, or when stimulating different parts of the cortex in the conscious patient. One thing that has emerged from these studies is that the human cerebral cortex possesses, in a remarkable degree, the ability to reorganize the remaining intact cortex so that a certain amount of cerebral recovery is possible after brain lesions.

Lesions of the Motor Cortex

Lesions of the *precentral motor cortex* in one hemisphere result in paralysis of the contralateral extremities. In some patients, there remains a little voluntary movement of the shoulder, hip, knee, and digits of the hand. It is possible that this remaining movement is performed by the ipsilateral cerebral hemisphere, for if both precentral cortices are destroyed, both arms and legs are completely paralyzed. Destruction of the *primary motor area* (area 4) produces more severe paralysis than destruction of the *secondary motor area* (area 6). Destruction of both areas produces the most complete form of contralateral paralysis.

Lesions of the *secondary motor area* alone produce a difficulty in the performance of skilled movements, with little loss of strength.

The *Jacksonian epileptic seizure* is due to an irritative lesion of the primary motor area (area 4). The convulsion begins in the part of the body represented in the primary motor area that is being irritated. The convulsive movement may be restricted to one part of the body, such as the face or the foot, or it may spread to involve many regions, depending on the spread of irritation of the primary motor area.

Muscle Spasticity Caused by Lesions of the Motor Cortex

A discrete lesion of the primary motor cortex (area 4) results in little change in the muscle tone. However, larger lesions involving the primary and secondary motor areas (areas 4 and 6), which are the most common, result in muscle spasm. The explanation for this is that the motor cortex gives origin to corticospinal and corticonuclear tracts and, in addition, gives origin to extrapyramidal tracts that pass to the basal ganglia. The corticospinal and corticonuclear tracts tend to increase muscle tone, but the extrapyramidal fibers transmit inhibitory impulses that lower muscle tone (see p. 335). Destruction of the secondary motor area removes the inhibitory influence and, consequently, the muscles are spastic.

Lesions of the Frontal Eye Field

Destructive lesions of the frontal eye field of one hemisphere cause the two eyes to deviate to the side of the lesion and an inability to turn the eyes to the opposite side.

Irritative lesions of the frontal eye field of one hemisphere cause the two eyes to periodically deviate to the opposite side of the lesion. Since the exact nerve connections of this area of the frontal cortex (middle frontal gyrus) are not known, it is not possible to explain the effects of these lesions.

Lesions of the Motor Speech Area of Broca

Destructive lesions in the left inferior frontal gyrus result in the loss of ability to produce speech, i.e., *expressive aphasia*. The patients, however, retain the ability to think the words they wish to say, they can write the words, and they can understand their meaning when they see or hear them.

Lesions of the Prefrontal Cortex

It is now generally agreed that destruction of the prefrontal region does not produce any marked loss of intelligence. It is an area of the cortex that

is capable of associating experiences that are necessary for the production of abstract ideas, judgment, emotional feeling, and personality. Tumors or traumatic destruction of the prefrontal cortex result in the person's losing initiative and judgment. Emotional changes that occur include a tendency to euphoria. The patient no longer conforms to the accepted mode of social behavior and becomes careless of dress and appearance.

Frontal leukotomy (cutting the fiber tracts of the frontal lobe), and *frontal lobectomy* (removal of the frontal lobe) are surgical procedures that have been used to reduce the emotional responsiveness of patients with obsessive emotional states and intractable pain. The surgical technique was developed to remove the frontal association activity, so that past experience is not recalled and the possibilities of the future are not considered; thus introspection is lessened.

A patient suffering from severe pain, such as may be experienced in the terminal stages of cancer, will, following frontal lobectomy, still feel the pain, but he will no longer worry about the pain and therefore will not suffer. It should be pointed out that the introduction of effective tranquilizing and mood-elevating drugs has made these operative procedures largely obsolete.

Lesions of the Sensory Cortex

The lower centers of the brain, principally the thalamus, relay a large part of the sensory signals to the cerebral cortex for analysis. The sensory cortex is necessary for the appreciation of spatial recognition, recognition of relative intensity, and recognition of similarity and difference.

Lesions of the *primary somesthetic area* of the cortex result in contralateral sensory disturbances, which are most severe in the distal parts of the limbs. Crude painful, tactile, and thermal stimuli often return, but this is believed to be due to the function of the thalamus. The patient remains unable to judge degrees of warmth, unable to localize tactile stimuli accurately, and unable to judge weights of objects. Loss of muscle tone may also be a symptom of lesions of the sensory cortex.

Lesions of the secondary somesthetic area of the cortex do not cause recognizable sensory defects.

Lesions of the Somesthetic Association Area

Lesions of the superior parietal lobule interfere with the patient's ability to combine touch, pressure, and proprioceptive impulses, so he is unable to appreciate texture, size, and form. This loss of integration of sensory impulses is called *astereognosis.* For example, with the eyes closed, the individual would be unable to recogniże a key placed in his hand.

Lesions of the Primary Visual Area

Lesions involving the walls of the posterior part of one calcarine sulcus result in a loss of sight in the opposite visual field, i.e., *crossed homonymous hemianopia.* It is interesting to note that the central part of the visual field, when tested, apparently is normal. This so-called macular sparing is probably due to the patient's shifting his eyes very slightly while the visual fields are being examined. The following clinical defects should be understood. Lesions of the upper half of one primary visual area, i.e., the area above the calcarine sulcus, result in *inferior quadrantic hemianopia,* whereas lesions involving one visual area below the calcarine sulcus result in *superior quadrantic hemianopia.* Lesions of the occipital pole produce central scotomas. The most common causes of these lesions are vascular disorders, tumors, and injuries from gunshot wounds.

Lesions of the Secondary Visual Area

Lesions of the secondary visual area result in a loss of ability to recognize objects seen in the opposite field of vision. The reason for this is that the area of cortex that stores past visual experiences has been lost.

Lesions of the Primary Auditory Area

Because the primary auditory area in the inferior wall of the lateral sulcus receives nerve fibers from both cochleae, a lesion of one cortical area will produce only slight, but bilateral, loss of hearing. The main defect noted is a loss of ability to locate

the source of the sound. Bilateral destruction of the primary auditory areas causes complete deafness.

Lesions of the Secondary Auditory Area

Lesions of the cortex posterior to the primary auditory area in the lateral sulcus and in the superior temporal gyrus result in an inability to interpret sounds, and the patient may experience *word deafness (acoustic verbal agnosia).*

Cerebral Dominance

Although both hemispheres are almost identical in structure, we know that in the majority of the adult population, handedness, perception of language, speech, spatial judgment, and areas of behavior are controlled by one hemisphere and not the other. About 90 percent of people are right-handed, and the control resides in the left hemisphere. The remainder are left-handed, and a few individuals are ambidextrous. In 90 percent of individuals, speech and understanding of spoken and written language are controlled by the left hemisphere. Thus, in the majority of adults, the left cerebral hemisphere is dominant.

From a clinical point of view, the age at which cerebral dominance comes into effect is important. For example, when cerebral damage occurs before the child has learned to speak, speech usually develops and is maintained in the remaining intact hemisphere. This transference of speech control is much more difficult in older persons.

Cerebral Cortical Potentials

Electrical recordings taken from inside neurons of the cerebral cortex show a negative resting potential of about 60 mV. The action potentials overshoot the zero potential. It is interesting to know that the resting potential shows marked fluctuation, which is probably due to the continuous but variable reception of afferent impulses from other neurons. Spontaneous electrical activity can be recorded from the cortical surface rather than intracellularly; such recordings are known as *electrocorticograms.* Similar recordings can be made by placing the electrodes on the scalp. The result of this latter procedure is referred to as the *electroencephalogram (EEG).* The changes of electrical potential recorded usually are very small and in the order of 50 mV. Characteristically, three frequency bands may be recognized in the normal individual; they are referred to as *alpha, beta, and delta rhythms.* Abnormalities of the electroencephalogram may be of great value clinically in helping to diagnose cerebral tumors, epilepsy, and cerebral abscess. An electrically silent cortex indicates cerebral death.

Consciousness

A conscious patient is one who is aware of himself and his surroundings. The brain is receiving an inflow of sensory information from the sensory nerves and special senses and the patient is responding by normal speech and normal voluntary motor activity, and his eyes are open and their movements are normal. Recent research has indicated that the reticular formation of the brainstem, through the thalamocortical projections, activates the cerebral cortex and maintains consciousness. It is suggested that drugs, such as anesthetics that produce unconsciousness, selectively depress the *reticular alerting mechanism,* while those that cause wakefulness have a stimulating effect on this mechanism.

It is important that a physician be able to recognize the different signs and symptoms associated with different stages of consciousness, namely, *lethargy, stupor,* and *coma* (unconsciousness). In a lethargic individual, the speech is slow and voluntary movement is diminished and slow. The movement of the eyes is slow. A stuporized patient will speak only if stimulated with painful stimuli. The voluntary movements are nearly absent, the eyes are closed, and there is very little spontaneous eye movement. A deeply stuporized patient will not speak; there will be mass movements of different parts of the body in response to severe pain. The eyes will show even less spontaneous movement.

An unconscious patient will not speak and will respond only reflexly to painful stimuli, or not at all; the eyes are closed and do not move.

Clinically, it is not uncommon to observe a patient with, for example, intracranial bleeding pass progressively from consciousness to lethargy, stupor, and coma, and then, if recovery occurs, pass in the reverse direction. For these altered states of unconsciousness to occur, the thalamocortical system and the reticular formation must be either directly involved bilaterally or indirectly affected by distortion or pressure.

Sleep

Sleep is a changed state of consciousness. The pulse rate, respiratory rate, and blood pressure fall, the eyes deviate upward, the pupils contract but react to light, the tendon reflexes are lost, and the plantar reflex may become extensor. A sleeping person is not, however, unconscious, because he may be awakened quickly by the cry of a child, for example, even though he has slept through the background noise of an air conditioner.

Sleep is facilitated by reducing the sensory input and by fatigue. This results in decreased activity of the reticular formation and the thalamocortical activating mechanism. Whether this decreased activity is a passive phenomenon, or whether the reticular formation is actively inhibited, is not known.

Epilepsy

Epilepsy is a symptom in which there is a sudden transitory disturbance of the normal physiology of the brain, usually the cerebral cortex, which ceases spontaneously and tends to recur. The condition is usually associated with a disturbance of normal electrical activity and in its most typical form is accompanied by seizures. In partial seizures, the abnormality occurs in only one part of the brain and the patient does not lose consciousness. In generalized seizures, the abnormal activity involves large areas of the brain bilaterally and the individual loses consciousness.

In some patients with generalized seizures, there may be nonconvulsive attacks, in which the patient suddenly stares blankly into space. This syndrome is referred to as *petit mal*. In the majority of patients with generalized seizures, there is a sudden loss of consciousness and there are tonic spasm and clonic contractions of the muscles. There are transient apnea and often loss of bowel and bladder control. The convulsions usually last from a few seconds to a few minutes.

In the majority of patients with epilepsy the cause is unknown; in some there appears to be a hereditary predisposition; while in a few, a local lesion, such as a cerebral tumor or scarring of the cortex following trauma, is the cause.

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 491.

1. During a practical class in pathology, a student was shown a slide illustrating a particular form of cerebral tumor. At the edge of the section there was present a small area of the cerebral cortex. The instructor asked the student whether the tissue had been removed from a motor or sensory area of the cortex. What is the main difference in structure between the motor and sensory areas of the cerebral cortex?

2. A 43-year-old male was examined by a neurologist for a suspected brain tumor. The patient was tested for stereognosis, i.e., the appreciation of form in three dimensions. With the patient's eyes closed, a hairbrush was placed in his right hand and he was asked to recognize the object. He was unable to recognize the brush even after the neurologist moved the brush about in the patient's hand. On opening his eyes, the patient immediately recognized the brush. (a) Name the area of the cerebral cortex likely to be diseased in this patient. (b) Do you think that it is necessary for the object to be moved around in the patient's hand?

3. A 65-year-old man attended his physician because he noticed that for the past three weeks he had been dragging his right foot when walking. On physical examination, he was found to have an increase in tone of the flexor muscles of the right

arm and when he walked he tended to hold his right arm adducted and flexed. He also held his right fist tightly clenched. On study of the patient's gait, he was seen to have difficulty in flexing his right hip and knee. There was slight but definite weakness and increased tone of the muscles of the right leg. As the patient walked, it was noted that he moved his right leg in a semicircle and placed the forefoot on the ground before the heel. Examination of the right shoe showed evidence of increased wear beneath the right toes. Given that this patient had a cerebrovascular lesion involving the cerebral cortex, which area of the cortex was involved to cause these symptoms?

4. While examining an unconscious patient, a physician noted that when the patient's head was gently rotated to the right the two eyes deviated to the left. On rotation of the patient's head to the left, the patient's eyes still looked to the left. Which area of the cortex is likely to be damaged in this patient?

5. A 25-year-old soldier was wounded in Vietnam by an antipersonnel bomb. A small piece of shrapnel entered the right side of his skull over the precentral gyrus. Five years later, he was examined by a physician during a routine physical checkup and was found to have weakness of his left leg. The physician could not detect any increase in muscle tone in his left leg. Can you explain why it is that most patients with damage to the motor area of the cerebral cortex have spastic muscle paralysis while in a few the muscle tone remains normal?

6. A 22-year-old girl was involved in an automobile accident. She was thrown from the car and suffered severe head injuries. Although she was unconscious for 5 hours, she made a remarkable recovery and left the hospital one month later with very slight weakness of her right leg. Nothing else abnormal was noted. Four months later she was seen by a neurologist because she was experiencing sudden attacks of jerking movements of her right leg and foot. The attacks lasted only a few minutes. One week later the patient had a very severe attack, which involved her right leg and then spread to her right arm. On this occasion, she lost consciousness during the attack. What is the nature of these attacks? Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, do you think this patient's present condition is related to her automobile accident? Which area of the cerebral cortex is involved?

7. A distinguished neurobiologist gave a lecture on the physiology of the cerebral cortex to the freshman medical student class. Having reviewed the structure of the different areas of the cerebral cortex and the functional localization of the cerebral cortex, he stated that our knowledge of the cytoarchitecture of the human cerebral cortex has contributed very little to our understanding of the normal functional activity of the cerebral cortex. Do you agree with his statement? What do you understand by the term, "the vertical chain theory"?

8. An 18-year-old boy received a gunshot wound that severely damaged his left precentral gyrus. On recovering from the incident, he left the hospital with a spastic paralysis of the right arm and leg. The patient, however, still possessed some coarse voluntary movements of the right shoulder, hip, and knee. How can you explain the presence of these residual movements on the right side?

9. A 53-year-old professor and chairman of a department of anatomy received a severe head injury while rock climbing. During the ascent of a crevasse, his companion's ice axe fell from his belt and struck the professor's head, causing a depressed fracture of the frontal bone. After convalescing from his accident, the professor returned to his position in the medical school. It quickly became obvious to the faculty and the student body that the professor's social behavior had changed dramatically. His lectures, although amusing, no longer had direction. Although previously a smartly dressed man, he now had an unkempt appearance. The organization of the department started to deteriorate rapidly. Finally, he was removed from office after being found one morning urinating into the trash basket in one of the

classrooms. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, can you explain the professor's altered behavior?

10. A 50-year-old woman with a cerebrovascular lesion, on questioning, was found to experience difficulty in understanding spoken speech, although she fully understood written speech. Which area of the cerebral cortex was damaged?

11. A 62-year-old man, on recovering from a stroke, was found to have difficulty in understanding written speech (alexia) but could easily understand spoken speech and written symbols. Which area of the cerebral cortex is damaged in this patient?

12. What is understood by the following terms: (a) *coma,* (b) *sleep,* and (c) *electroencephalogram?* Name three neurological conditions whose diagnosis may be assisted by the use of an electroencephalogram.

Additional Reading

Berlucchi, G. Cerebral Dominance and Interhemispheric Communication in Normal Man. In *The Neurosciences, Third Study Program.* Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press, 1974. P. 65.

Broadbent, D. E. Division of Function and Integration of Behavior. In *The Neurosciences, Third Study Program.* Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press, 1974. P. 31.

Brodmann, K. *Vergleichende Lokalisationslehre der Grosshirnrinde.* Leipzig: Barth, 1909.

Campbell, A. W. *Histological Studies on the Localization of Cerebral Function.* Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Press, 1905.

Chow, K. L., and Leiman, A. L. The structural and functional organization of the neocortex. *Neurosci. Res. Program Bull.* 8:153, 1970.

Economo, von, C., and Koskinas, G. N. *The Cytoarchitectonics of the Human Cerebral Cortex.* New York and London: Oxford University Press, 1929.

Foerster, O. The cerebral cortex in man. *Lancet.* 2:309, 1931.

Fois, A., and Low, N. *The Electroencephalogram of the Normal Child.* Springfield, Ill.: Thomas, 1961.

Geschwind, N. Language and the brain. *Sci. Am.* 226:76, 1972.

Jackson, J. H. Selected Writings of John Hughlings Jackson. In J. Taylor (Ed.), *On Epilepsy and Epileptiform Convulsions,* Vol. 1. London: Huddler and Stoughton, 1931.

Jasper, H. H., Ward, A. A., and Pope, A. (Eds.). *Basic Mechanisms of the Epilepsies.* Boston: Little, Brown, 1969.

Milner, B. Hemispheric Specialization: Scope and Limits. In *The Neurosciences, Third Study Program.* Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press, 1974. P. 75.

Penfield, W., and Boldrey, E. Somatic motor and sensory representation in the cerebral cortex of man as studied by electrical stimulation. *Brain.* 60:389, 1937.

Penfield, W., and Rasmussen, T. *The Cerebral Cortex of Man: A Clinical Study of Localization of Function.* New York and London: Macmillan, 1950.

Penfield, W., and Roberts, L. *Speech and Brain Mechanisms.* Princeton, N.J.: Princeton University Press, 1959.

Plum, F., and Posner, J. B. *The Diagnosis of Stupor and Coma.* (2nd Ed.). Philadelphia: Davis, 1972.

Sholl, D. A. *Organization of the Cerebral Cortex.* London: Methuen, 1956.

Sperry, R. W. Lateral Specialization in the Surgically Separated Hemispheres. In *The Neurosciences, Third Study Program.* Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press, 1974. P. 5.

Sutherland, J. M., and Tait, H. *The Epilepsies: Modern Diagnosis and Treatment.* Edinburgh: Livingstone, 1969.

Teuber, H. L. Why Two Brains. In *The Neurosciences, Third Study Program.* Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press, 1974. P. 71.

Walton, J. N. *Brain's Diseases of the Nervous System* (8th ed.). New York and London: Oxford University Press, 1977.

Warwick, R., and Williams, P. L. *Gray's Anatomy* (35th Brit. Ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders, 1973.

Woolsey, C. N. Cortical Localization as Defined by Evoked Potential and Electrical Stimulation Studies. In G. Shaltenbrand and C. N. Woolsey (Eds.), *Cerebral Localization and Organization.* Madison: University of Wisconsin Press, 1964. P. 17.

Ziberman, A. M. The Specialization of the Language Hemisphere. In *The Neurosciences, Third Study Program.* Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press, 1974. P. 43.

16
The Limbic System

In this account, the following regions of gray matter are included within the term *limbic system*: the limbic lobe, the hippocampal formation, the amygdaloid nucleus, the hypothalamus, and the anterior nucleus of the thalamus (Fig. 16-1). The alveus, the fimbria, the fornix, the mammillothalamic tract, and the stria terminalis constitute the connecting pathways of this system.

Limbic Lobe

Limbic lobe was a term introduced by Broca in 1878 to describe the large, curved convolution situated on the medial surface of the cerebral hemisphere. It includes the subcallosal, cingulate, and parahippocampal gyri and thus consists of a series of anatomical structures that surround the upper part of the brainstem.

Hippocampal Formation

The hippocampal formation consists of the hippocampus, the dentate gyrus, and the parahippocampal gyrus.

The *hippocampus* is a curved elevation of gray matter that extends throughout the entire length of the floor of the inferior horn of the lateral ventricle (Fig. 16-2). Its anterior end is expanded to form the *pes hippocampus*. In coronal section, the hippocampus is C-shaped. The convex ventricular surface is covered with ependyma, beneath which lies a thin layer of white matter called the *alveus* (Fig. 16-3). The alveus consists of nerve fibers that have originated in the hippocampus and these converge medially to form a bundle called the *fimbria* (Figs. 16-2 and 16-3). The fimbria in turn becomes continuous with the crus of the fornix (Fig. 16-2). The hippocampus terminates posteriorly beneath the splenium of the corpus callosum.

The *dentate gyrus* is a narrow, notched band of gray matter that lies between the fimbria of the hippocampus and the parahippocampal gyrus (Fig. 16-2). Posteriorly, the gyrus accompanies the fimbria almost to the splenium of the corpus callosum and becomes continuous with the *indusium griseum*. The indusium griseum is a thin, vestigial layer of gray matter that covers the superior surface of the corpus callosum (Fig. 16-4). Embedded in the superior surface of the indusium griseum are two slender bundles of white fibers on each side called the *medial and lateral longitudinal striae*. The striae are the remains of the white matter of the vestigial indusium griseum. Anteriorly, the dentate gyrus is continued into the *uncus*.

The *parahippocampal gyrus* lies between the hippocampal fissure and the collateral sulcus and is continuous with the hippocampus along the medial edge of the temporal lobe (Figs. 16-2 and 16-3).

Amygdaloid Nucleus

The amygdaloid nucleus is so named because it resembles an almond. It is situated partly anterior and partly superior to the tip of the inferior horn of the lateral ventricle (see Fig. 14-9). It is fused with the tip of the tail of the caudate nucleus, which has passed anteriorly in the roof of the inferior horn of the lateral ventricle. The stria terminalis emerges from its posterior aspect.

The hypothalamus and the anterior nucleus of the thalamus are considered elsewhere in this text.

Connecting Pathways of the Limbic System

These pathways are the alveus, the fimbria, the fornix, the mammillothalamic tract, and the stria terminalis.

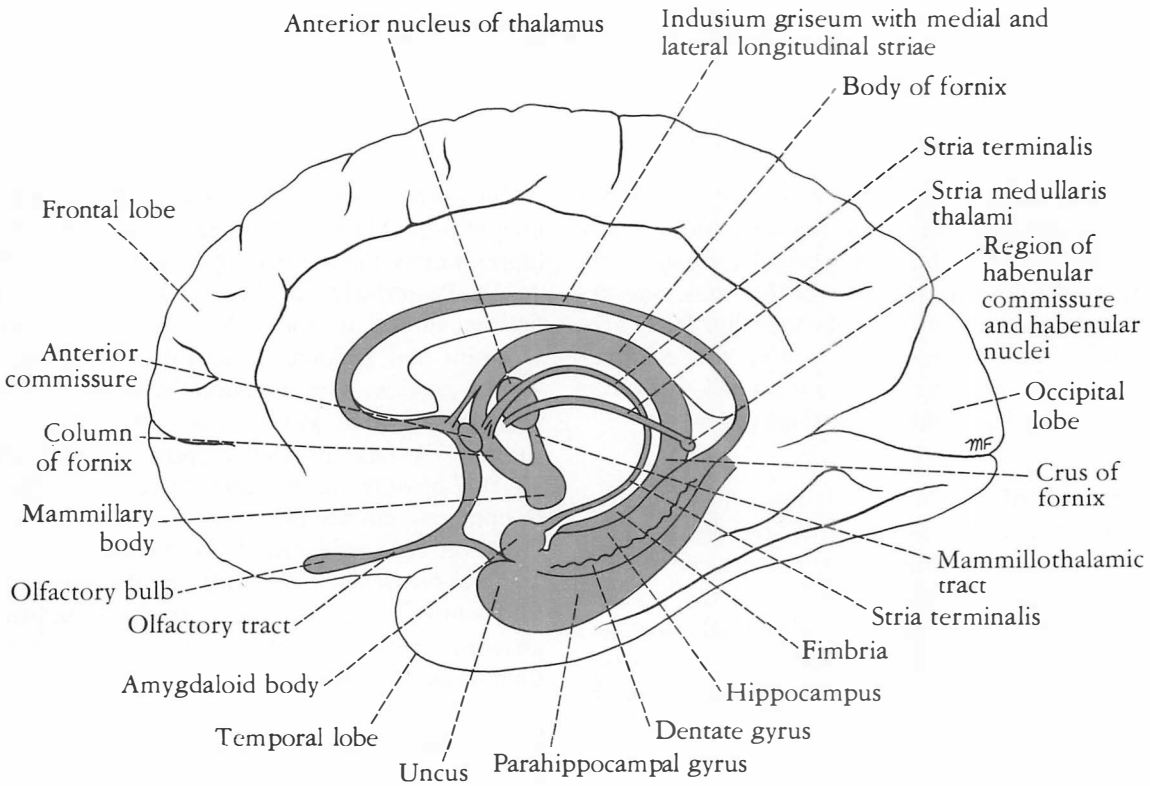


Fig. 16-1. Medial aspect of right cerebral hemisphere, showing structures that form the limbic system.

The *alveus* consists of a thin layer of white matter that lies on the superior or ventricular surface of the hippocampus (Fig. 16-3). It is composed of nerve fibers that originate in the hippocampal cortex. The fibers converge on the medial border of the hippocampus to form a bundle called the *fimbria*.

The fimbria now leaves the posterior end of the hippocampus as the *crus of the fornix* (see Fig. 16-2). The crus from each side curves posteriorly and superiorly beneath the splenium of the corpus callosum and around the posterior surface of the thalamus. The two crura now converge to form the *body of the fornix*, which is applied closely to the undersurface of the corpus callosum (see Fig. 16-1). As the two crura come together they are connected by transverse fibers called the *commissure of the fornix* (see Fig. 14-11). These fibers decussate and join the hippocampi of the two sides.

Anteriorly, the body of the fornix is connected to the undersurface of the corpus callosum by the *septum pellucidum*. Inferiorly, the body of the fornix is related to the tela choroidea and the ependymal roof of the third ventricle.

The body of the fornix splits anteriorly into two anterior *columns of the fornix*, each of which curves anteriorly and inferiorly over the interventricular foramen (foramen of Monro). Then each column disappears into the lateral wall of the third ventricle to reach the *mammillary body* (see Fig. 16-1).

The *mammillothalamic tract* provides important connections between the mammillary body and the anterior nuclear group of the thalamus.

The *stria terminalis* emerges from the posterior

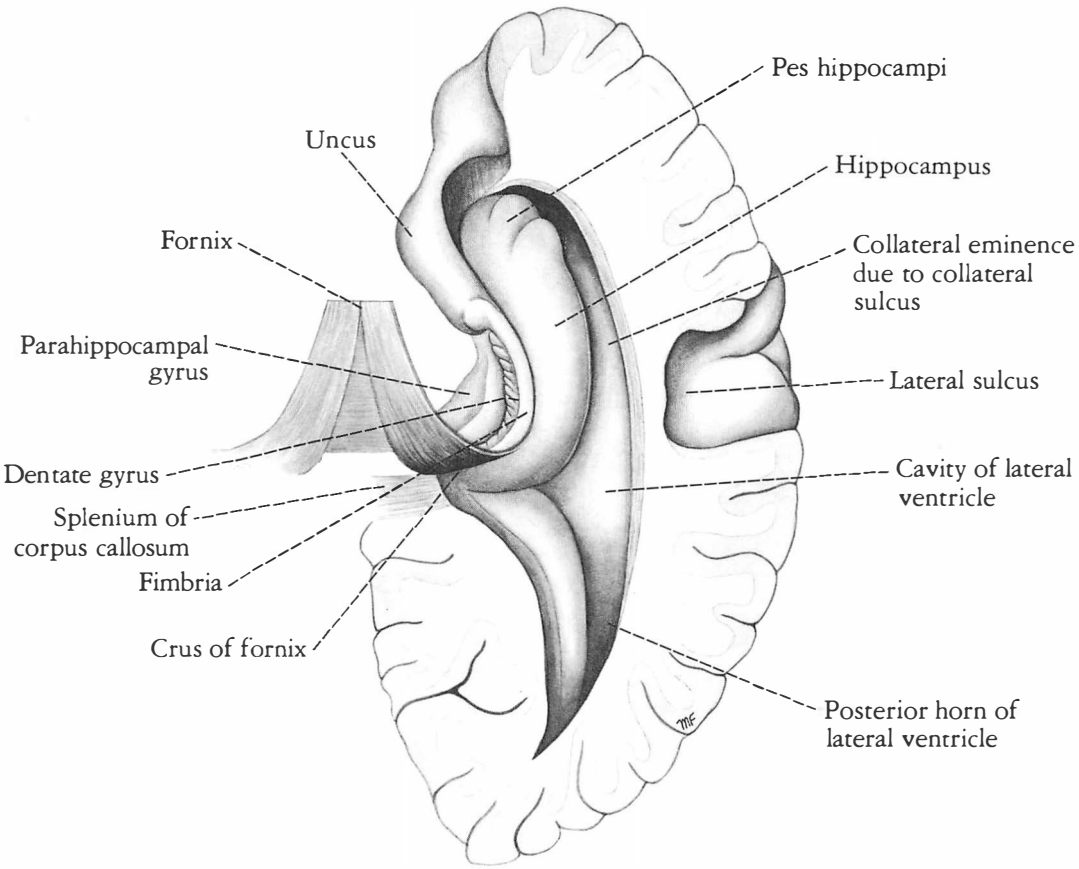


Fig. 16-2. Dissection of the right cerebral hemisphere exposing the cavity of the lateral ventricle. Shows the hippocampus, the dentate gyrus, and the fornix.

aspect of the amygdaloid nucleus and runs as a bundle of nerve fibers posteriorly in the roof of the inferior horn of the lateral ventricle on the medial side of the tail of the caudate nucleus (see Fig. 16-1). It follows the curve of the caudate nucleus and comes to lie in the floor of the body of the lateral ventricle, where it occupies a groove between the caudate nucleus and the thalamus.

Structure of the Hippocampus and the Dentate Gyrus

The cortical structure of the parahippocampal gyrus is six-layered (Fig. 16-3). As the cortex is traced into the hippocampus there is a gradual transition from a six- to a three-layered arrangement. These three layers are: the superficial *molecular layer*, consisting of nerve fibers and scattered small neurons; the *pyramidal layer*, consisting of many large pyramidal shaped neurons; and the inner *polymorphic layer*, which is similar in structure to the polymorphic layer of the cortex seen elsewhere.

The dentate gyrus also has three layers but the pyramidal layer is replaced by the granular layer (Fig. 16-3). The granular layer is composed of densely arranged rounded or oval neurons that give rise to axons that terminate upon the dendrites of the pyramidal cells in the hippocampus. A few of the axons join the fimbria and enter the fornix.

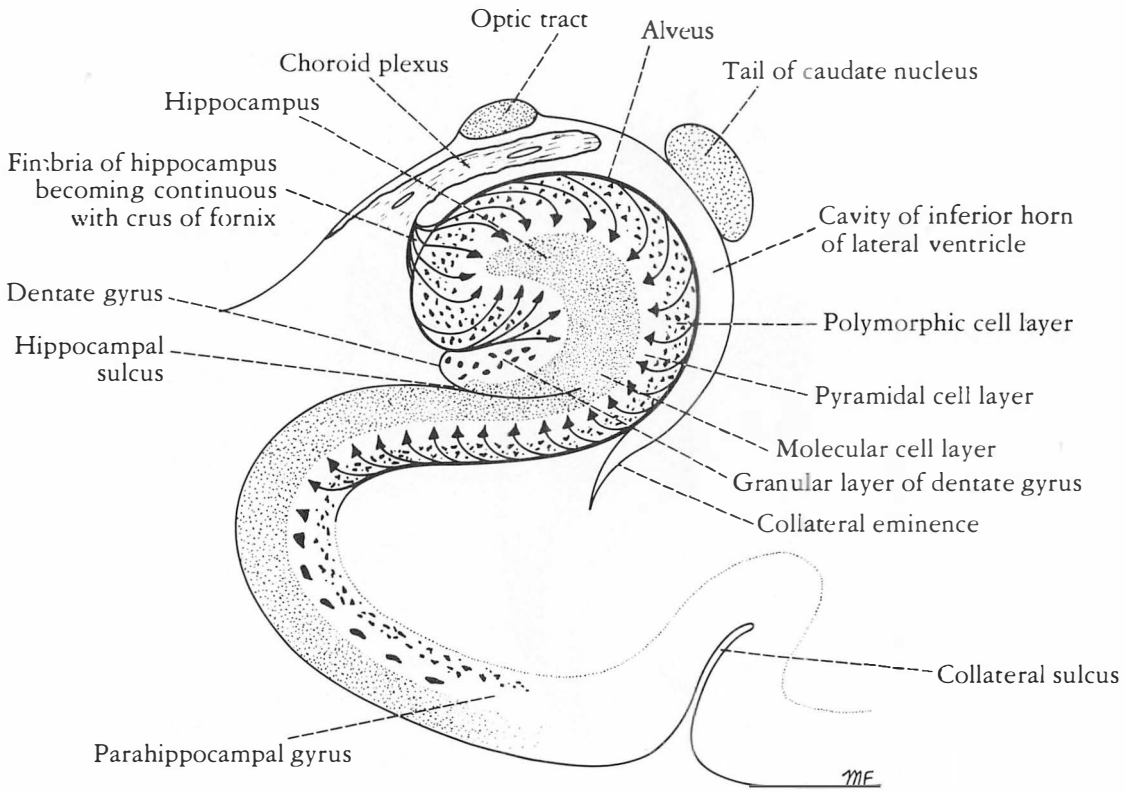


Fig. 16-3. Coronal section of hippocampus and related structures.

Afferent Connections of the Hippocampus

Afferent connections of the hippocampus may be divided into six groups:

1. Fibers arising in the cingulate gyrus passing to the hippocampus.
2. Fibers arising from the septal nuclei (nuclei lying within the midline close to the anterior commissure) pass posterior in the fornix to the hippocampus.
3. Fibers arising from one hippocampus pass across the midline to the opposite hippocampus in the commissure of the fornix.
4. Fibers from the indusium griseum pass posteriorly in the longitudinal striae to the hippocampus.
5. Fibers from the entorhinal area or olfactory association cortex pass to the hippocampus.
6. Fibers arising from the dentate and parahippocampal gyri travel to the hippocampus.

Efferent Connections of the Hippocampus

Axons of the large pyramidal cells of the hippocampus emerge to form the alveus and the fimbria. The fimbria continues as the crus of the fornix. The two crura converge to form the body of the fornix. The body of the fornix splits into the two columns of the fornix, which curve downward and forward in front of the interventricular foramina. The fibers within the fornix are distributed to the following regions:

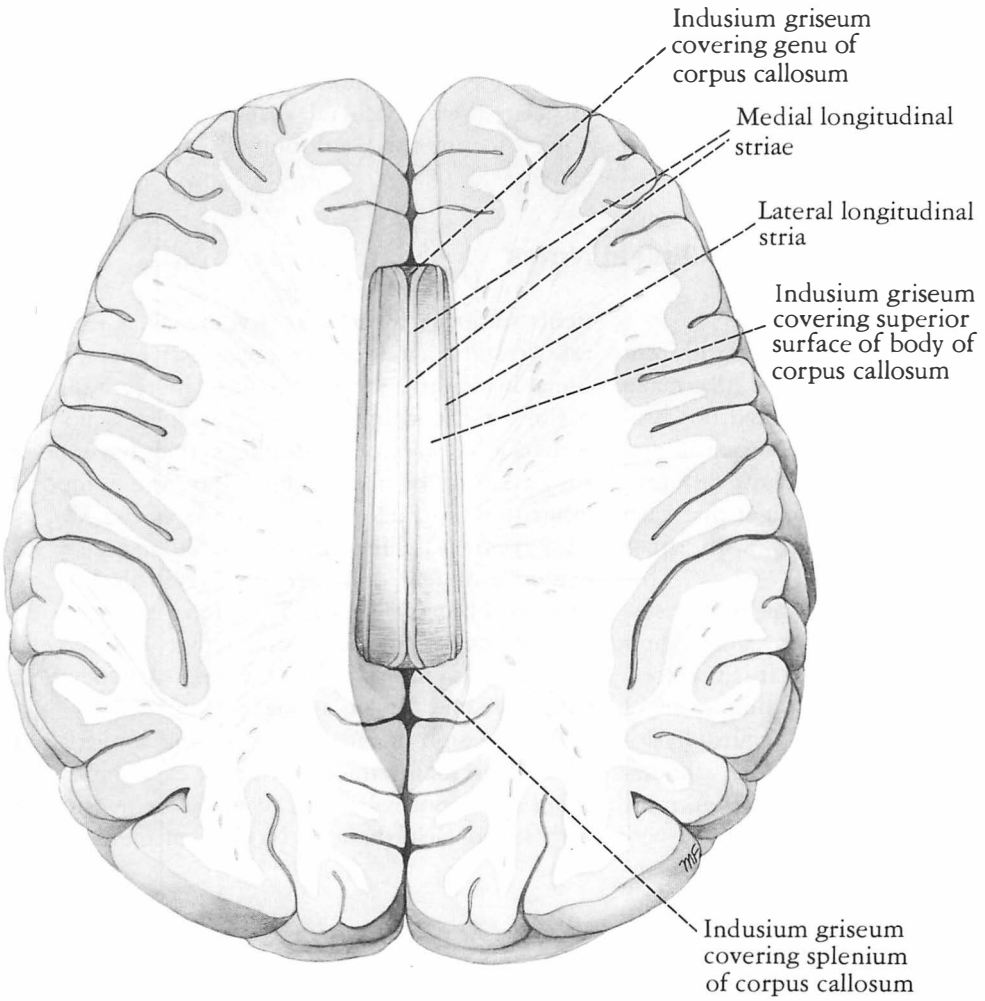


Fig. 16-4. Dissection of both cerebral hemispheres to show the superior surface of the corpus callosum.

1. Fibers pass posterior to the anterior commissure to enter the mammillary body, where they end in the medial nucleus.
2. Fibers pass posterior to the anterior commissure to end in the anterior nuclei of the thalamus.
3. Fibers pass posterior to the anterior commissure to enter the tegmentum of the midbrain.
4. Fibers pass anterior to the anterior commissure to end in the septal nuclei, the lateral preoptic area, and the anterior part of the hypothalamus.
5. Fibers join the stria medullaris thalami to reach the habenular nuclei.

Functions of the Limbic System

There is considerable evidence to indicate that the limbic system is concerned with emotional behavior, particularly the reactions of fear and anger and the emotions associated with sexual behavior.

There also is evidence that the hippocampus is concerned with recent memory. Memory for remote past events usually is unaffected by lesions of this structure. There is no evidence that the limbic system has an olfactory function. The various afferent and efferent connections of the limbic system provide pathways for the integration and effective homeostatic responses to a wide variety of environmental stimuli. Emotional changes are associated with visceral responses and thus involve locomotor, autonomic, and endocrine activities.

Clinical Notes

General Considerations

The term *limbic system* suggests that the different structures, both cortical and subcortical, that make up the system are arranged in a ring and this is in fact the case. Although there are anatomical and physiological reasons for considering the different structures together, we must not forget that each structure may interreact separately with other parts of the brain.

The anatomical connections of the limbic system are extremely complex and, since their significance is not fully understood, it is unnecessary for a student of medicine to commit all of them to memory. The results of neurophysiological experiments, which have included stimulation and ablation of different parts of the limbic system in animals, are not entirely clear. Nevertheless, certain important roles have been inferred: (1) The limbic structures are involved in the development of sensations of emotion and with the visceral responses accompanying those emotions, and (2) the hippocampus is concerned with recent memory. It is also believed that the limbic system plays a minor role in olfaction.

Destruction of the Amygdaloid Complex

Unilateral or bilateral destruction of the amygdaloid nucleus and the paraamygdaloid area in patients suffering from aggressive behavior in many cases results in a decrease in aggressiveness, emotional instability, and restlessness, increased interest in food, and hypersexuality. There is no disturbance in memory. Monkeys that have been subjected to bilateral removal of the temporal lobes demonstrate what is known as the *Kluver-Bucy syndrome*. They become docile and show no evidence of fear or anger and are unable to appreciate objects visually. They have an increased appetite and increased sexual activity. Moreover, the animals indiscriminately seek partnerships with male and female animals.

Precise stereotaxic lesions in the amygdaloid complex in man reduce emotional excitability and bring about normalization of behavior in patients with severe disturbances. No loss of memory occurs.

Temporal Lobe Dysfunction

Temporal lobe epilepsy may be preceded by an aura of acoustic or olfactory experience. The olfactory aura is usually an unpleasant odor. The patient is often confused, anxious, and docile and may perform automatic and complicated movements, such as undressing in public or driving a car, and then, following the seizure, may have no memory of what occurred previously.

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 493.

1. While discussing the neurological basis of emotions during a ward round, a neurologist asked a third-year medical student what he knew about the Kluver-Bucy syndrome. Can you answer that question? Does it ever occur in the human subject?

2. A 23-year-old woman visited her neurologist with a four-year history of epileptic attacks. A friend of hers vividly described one of her attacks. For a few seconds before the convulsions began the patient would complain of an unpleasant odor, similar to that encountered in a cow shed. This was followed by a shrill cry as she fell to the floor unconscious. Her whole body immediately became involved in generalized tonic and clonic movements. Clearly, this patient had a generalized form of epileptic seizure. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, could you suggest which lobe of the brain was initially involved in the epileptic discharge?

3. A 54-year-old man died in the hospital with a cerebral tumor. He had always been intellectually very bright and could easily recall events in his childhood. For the past 6 months his family had noticed that he had difficulty in recalling where he had placed things, such as his pipe. He also had difficulty in recalling recent news events and, just before he died, he could not remember that his brother had visited him the day before. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, could you suggest which part of the brain was being affected by the expanding and highly invasive tumor?

Additional Reading

Adey, W. R., and Tokizane, T. (Eds.). Structure and Function of the Limbic System. In *Progress in Brain Research*, Vol. 27. New York: American Elsevier Press, 1967.

Broca, P. Anatomie comparée des circonvolutions cérébrales; le grand lobe limbique et la scissure limbique dans la série des mammifères. *Rev. Anthropol. Series* 2, 1:385, 1878.

De Jong, R. N., Itabashi, H. H., and Olsen, J. R. Memory loss due to hippocampal lesions. *Arch. Neurol.* 20:339, 1969.

Douglas, R. J. The hippocampus and behavior. *Psychol. Bull.* 67:416, 1967.

Green, J. D. The hippocampus. *Physiol. Rev.* 44:561, 1964.

Livingston, K. E., and Escobar, A. Anatomical basis of the limbic system concept. *Arch. Neurol.* 24:17, 1971.

Powell, E. N., and Hines, G. The limbic system: An interface. *Behav. Biol.* 12:149, 1974.

Raisman, G., Cowan, W. M., and Powell, T. P. S. An experimental analysis of the efferent projection of the hippocampus. *Brain* 89:83, 1966.

17
The Ventricular System and the Formation and Fate of the Cerebrospinal Fluid

Ventricular System

The ventricles of the brain are the lateral ventricles, the third ventricle, and the fourth ventricle (Fig. 17-1). The two *lateral ventricles* communicate through the *interventricular foramina* (of Monro) with the *third ventricle*. The third ventricle is connected to the *fourth ventricle* by the *cerebral aqueduct* (*aqueduct of Sylvius*). The fourth ventricle in turn is continuous with the narrow *central canal* of the spinal cord and, through the three foramina in its roof, with the subarachnoid space. The central canal has a small dilatation at its inferior end, referred to as the *terminal ventricle* (Fig. 17-1).

The ventricles are developmentally derived from the cavity of the neural tube. They are lined throughout with *ependyma* and are filled with *cerebrospinal fluid*.

Lateral Ventricles

There are two lateral ventricles and one is present in each cerebral hemisphere (Fig. 17-2). The ventricle is a roughly C-shaped cavity and may be divided into a *body*, which occupies the parietal lobe and from which *anterior*, *posterior*, and *inferior horns* extend into the frontal, occipital, and temporal lobes, respectively. The lateral ventricle communicates with the cavity of the third ventricle through the *interventricular foramen* (Figs. 17-2 and 17-3). This opening, which lies in the anterior part of the medial wall of the ventricle, is bounded anteriorly by the anterior column of the fornix and posteriorly by the anterior end of the thalamus.

A detailed description of the different parts of the lateral ventricles is given on page 240.

The *choroid plexus of the lateral ventricle* projects into the ventricle on its medial aspect and is a vascular fringe composed of pia mater covered with the ependymal lining of the ventricular cavity (Fig. 17-4). The choroid plexus is, in fact, the irregular lateral edge of the tela choroidea, which is a two-layered fold of pia mater situated between the fornix superiorly and the upper surface of the thalamus (Fig. 17-6). At the junction of the body of the lateral ventricle and the inferior horn the choroid plexus is continued into the inferior horn and projects through the choroidal fissure.

Third Ventricle

The third ventricle is a slitlike cleft between the two thalami. It communicates anteriorly with the lateral ventricles through the interventricular foramina (of Monro) and posteriorly with the fourth ventricle through the cerebral aqueduct (of Sylvius) (see Fig. 17-3). The walls of the third ventricle are described on page 228.

The *choroid plexuses of the third ventricle* are formed from the tela choroidea situated above the roof of the ventricle (Fig. 17-4). The vascular tela choroidea projects downward on each side of the midline, invaginating the ependymal roof of the ventricle. The two vascular ridges or fringes that hang from the roof of the third ventricle are referred to as the choroid plexuses of that ventricle.

The blood supply of the tela choroidea and therefore also of the choroid plexuses of the third and lateral ventricles is derived from the choroidal branches of the internal carotid and basilar arteries. The venous blood drains into the internal cerebral veins, which unite to form the great cerebral vein. The great cerebral vein joins the inferior sagittal sinus to form the straight sinus.

Cerebral Aqueduct (Aqueduct of Sylvius)

The cerebral aqueduct, a narrow channel about ¾-inch (1.8 cm) long, connects the third with the fourth ventricle (see Fig. 17-3). It is lined with

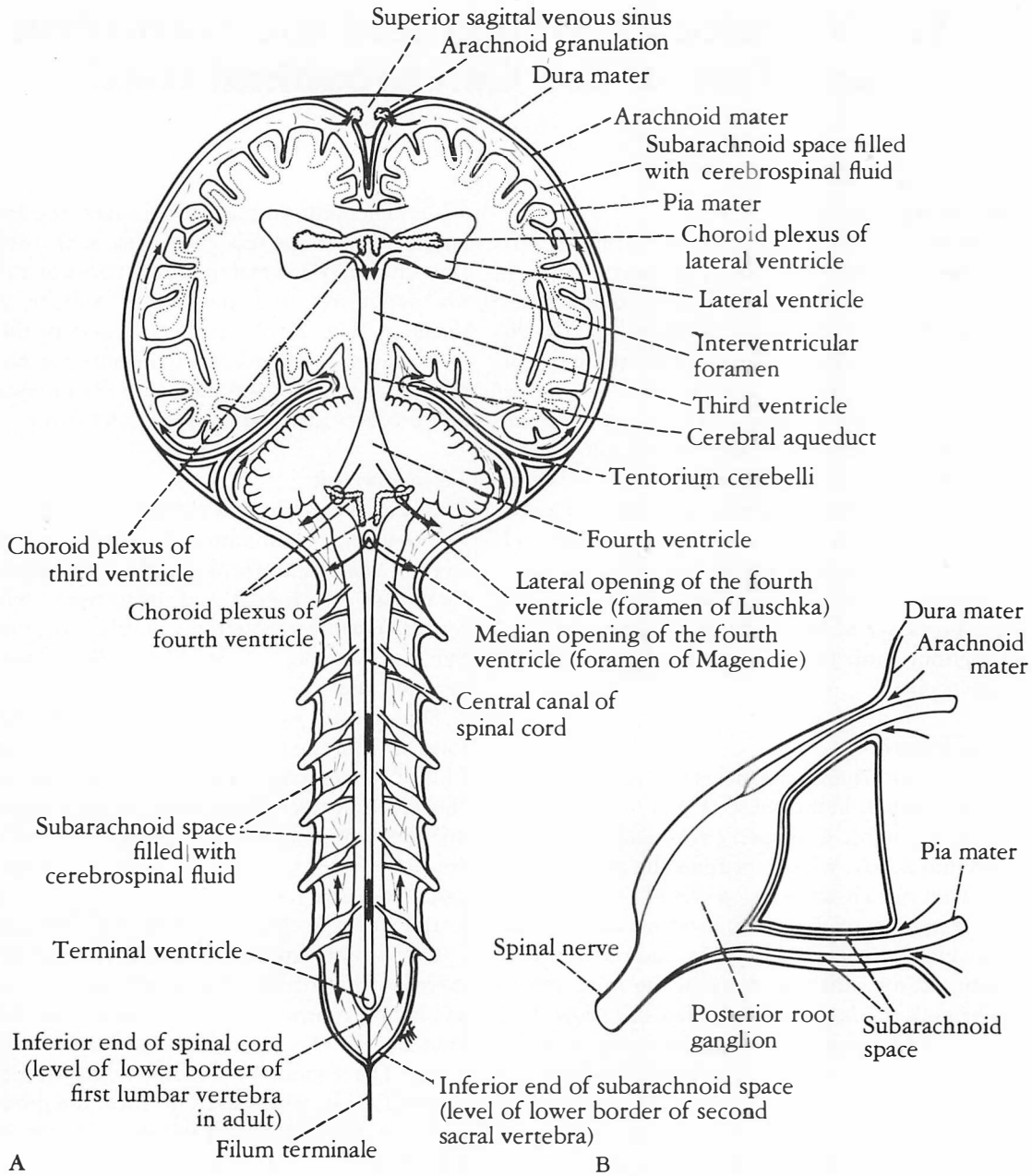


Fig. 17-1. A. The origin and circulation of the cerebrospinal fluid.
B. The lateral prolongation of the subarachnoid space over the anterior and posterior roots of a spinal nerve.

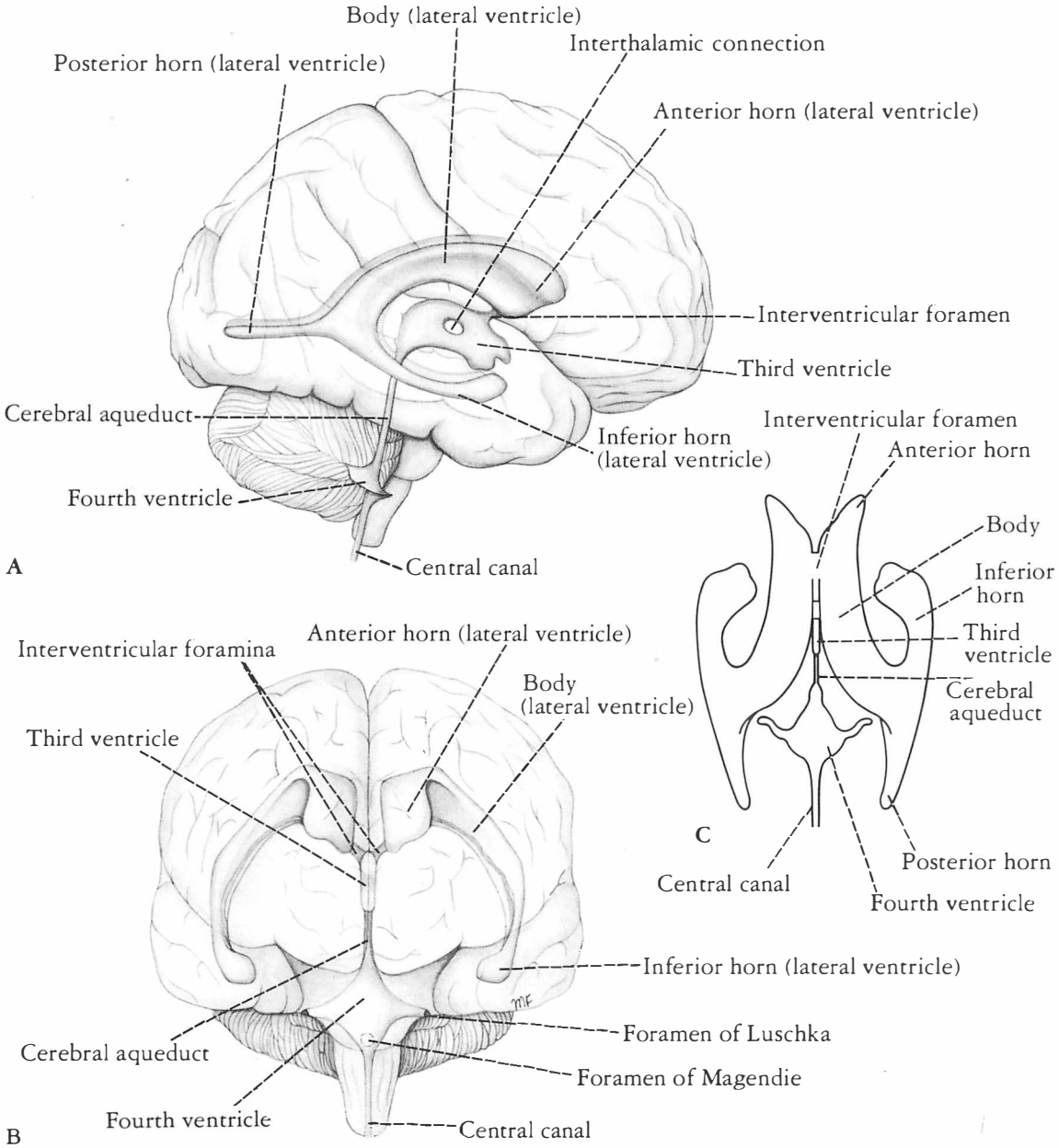


Fig. 17-2. A cast of the ventricular cavities of the brain as seen from:
A. Lateral view.
B. Anterior view.
C. Superior view.

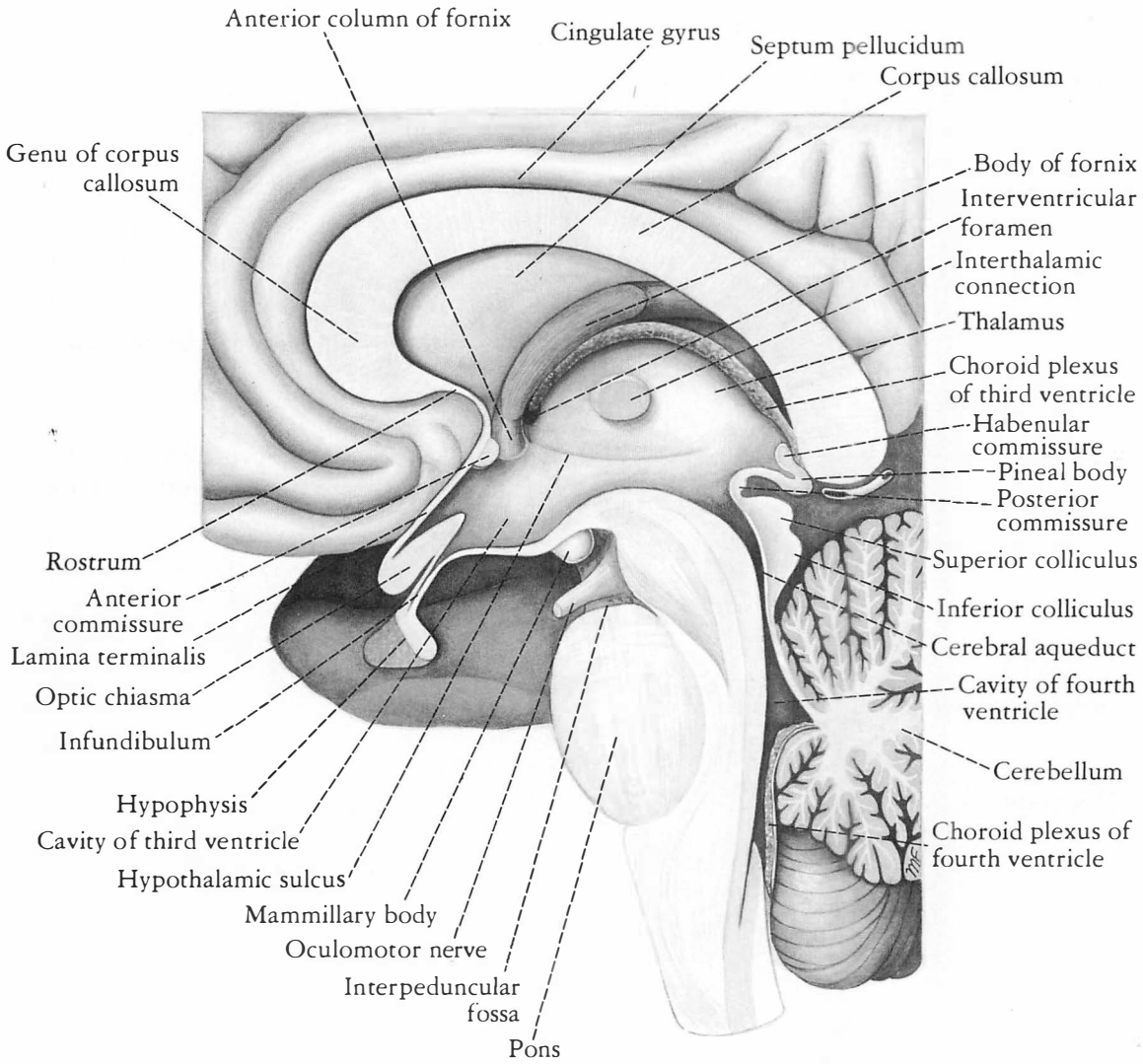


Fig. 17-3. Sagittal section of the brain, showing the third ventricle, the cerebral aqueduct, and the fourth ventricle.

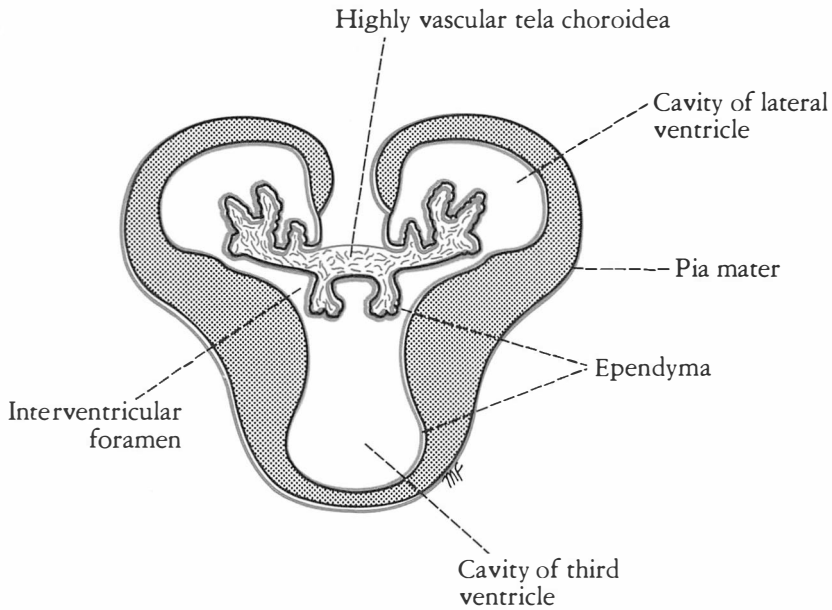


Fig. 17-4. Schematic diagram of coronal section of the third and lateral ventricles at the site of the interventricular foramina. Shows the structure of the tela choroidea and its relationship with the ependyma and pia mater.

ependyma and is surrounded by a layer of gray matter called the *central gray*. The direction of flow of cerebrospinal fluid is from the third to the fourth ventricle. There is no choroid plexus in the cerebral aqueduct.

Fourth Ventricle

The fourth ventricle is a cavity situated anterior to the cerebellum and posterior to the pons and the superior half of the medulla oblongata (Fig. 17-5). It is continuous above with the cerebral aqueduct and below with the central canal of the spinal cord. The fourth ventricle possesses lateral boundaries, a roof, and a rhomboid-shaped floor. The details of these boundaries are fully described on page 205.

The tent-shaped roof projects into the cerebellum. The lateral recesses extend laterally around the sides of the medulla and open anteriorly as the *lateral openings of the fourth ventricle*, or the *foramina of Luschka* (see Fig. 1-14). A median aperture in the roof of the fourth ventricle, the *foramen of Magendie*, also is present (Fig. 17-5). It is through these three openings that the cerebrospinal fluid enters the subarachnoid space.

The *choroid plexus of the fourth ventricle* has a T-shape; the vertical part of the T is double (Fig. 17-5). It is suspended from the inferior half of the roof of the ventricle and is formed from the highly vascular tela choroidea. The tela choroidea is a two-layered fold of pia mater that projects through the roof of the ventricle and is covered by ependyma. The horizontal part of the T extends into the lateral recesses of the ventricle on each side. The blood supply to the plexus is from the *posterior inferior cerebellar arteries*.

Central Canal of the Spinal Cord and Medulla Oblongata

The central canal opens superiorly into the fourth ventricle. Inferiorly, it extends through the inferior half of the medulla oblongata and through the entire length of the spinal cord. In the conus

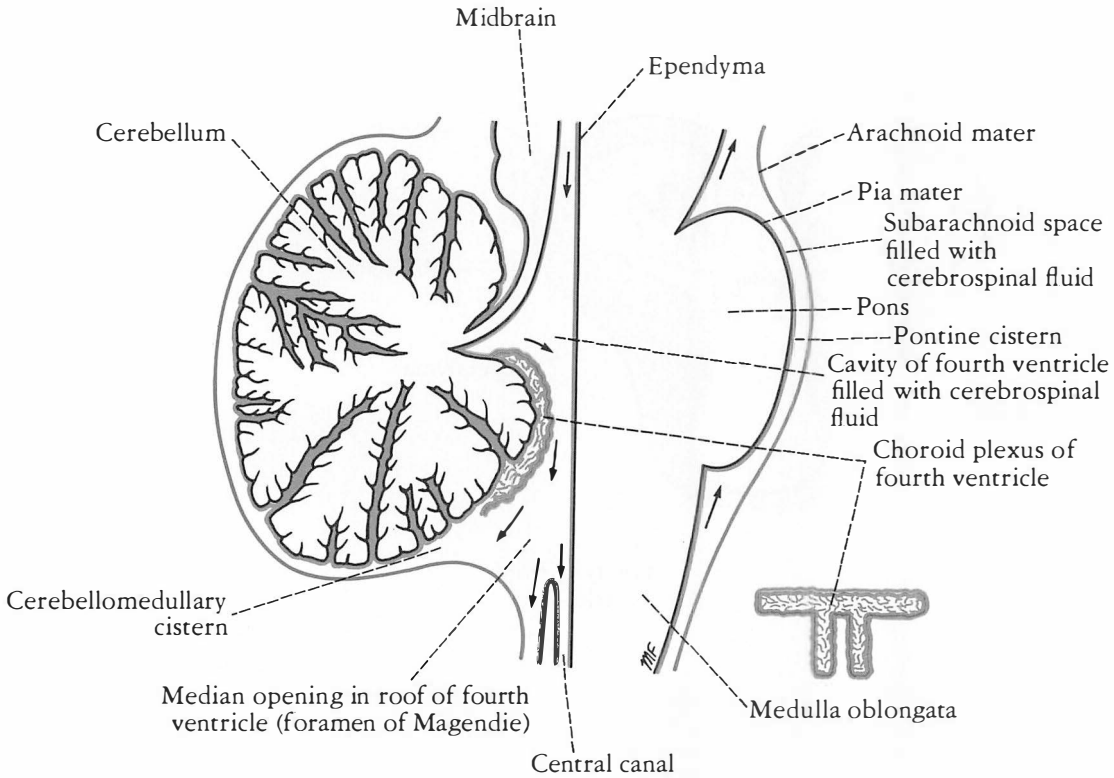


Fig. 17-5. Sagittal section of fourth ventricle, showing origin and circulation of cerebrospinal fluid. Note the position of the foramen of Magendie.

medullaris of the spinal cord, it expands to form the *terminal ventricle* (see Fig. 17-1). The central canal is closed at its lower end, is filled with cerebrospinal fluid, and is lined with ependyma. The central canal is surrounded by gray matter, *the gray commissure*. There is no choroid plexus in the central canal.

Subarachnoid Space

The subarachnoid space is the interval between the arachnoid mater and pia mater and therefore is present where these meninges envelop the brain and spinal cord (see Fig. 17-1). The space is filled with cerebrospinal fluid and contains the large blood vessels of the brain (Fig. 17-7). It is traversed by a network of fine trabeculae formed of delicate connective tissue. The subarachnoid space completely surrounds the brain and extends along the olfactory nerves to the mucoperiosteum of the nose. The subarachnoid space also extends along the cerebral blood vessels as they enter the substance of the brain and stops where each artery becomes a capillary.

In certain situations around the base of the brain, the arachnoid does not closely follow the surface of the brain so that the subarachnoid space expands to form *subarachnoid cisterns*. The descriptions of the *cerebellomedullary cistern,* the *pontine cistern*, and the *interpeduncular cistern*, which are the largest cisterns, are on page 443.

Inferiorly, the subarachnoid space extends beyond the lower end of the spinal cord and invests the *cauda equina* (see Fig. 1-27). The subarachnoid space ends below at the level of the interval between the second and third sacral vertebrae.

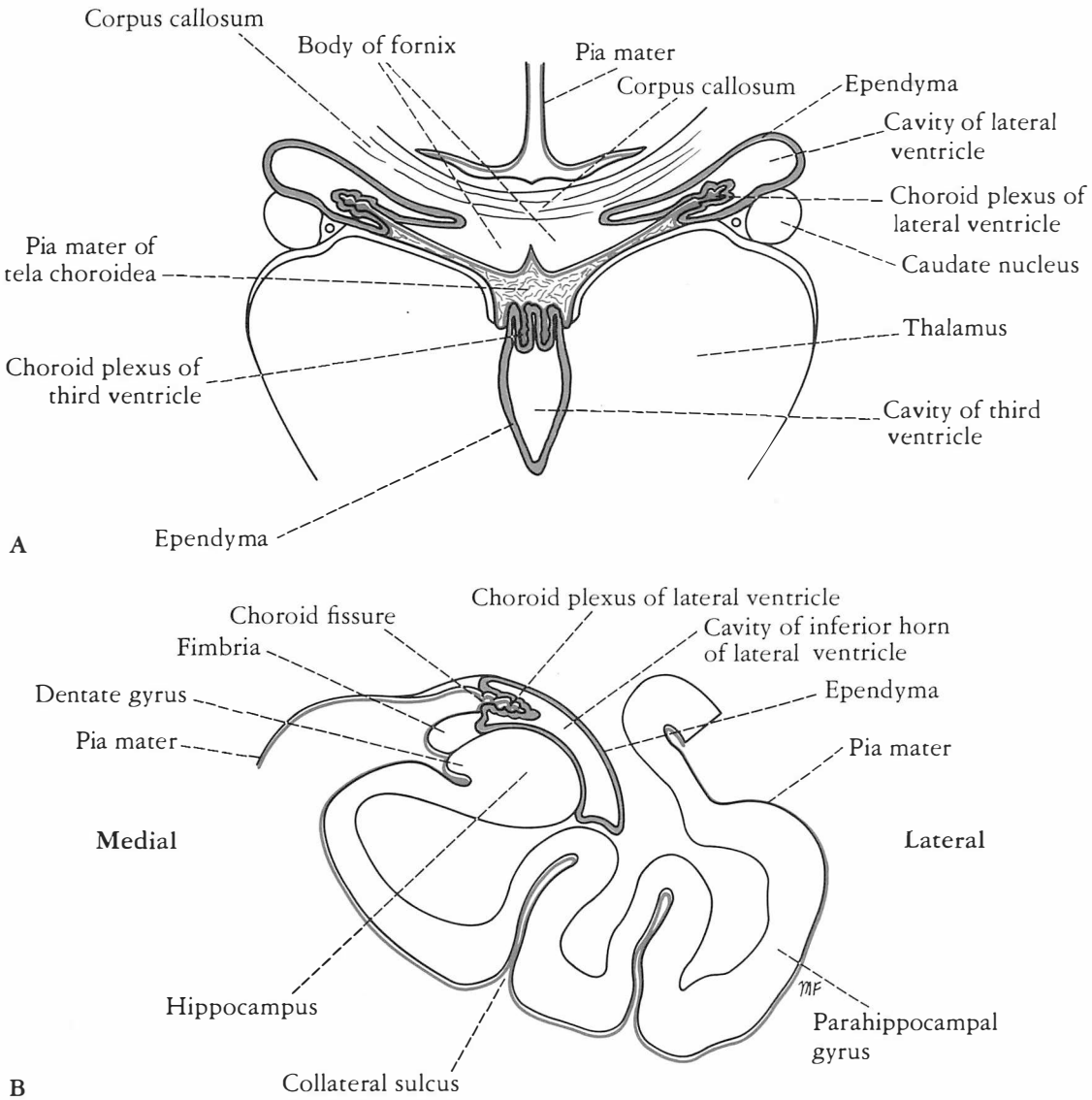


Fig. 17-6. Coronal section of:
A. Cavities of third and lateral ventricles.
B. Cavity of inferior horn of lateral ventricle.

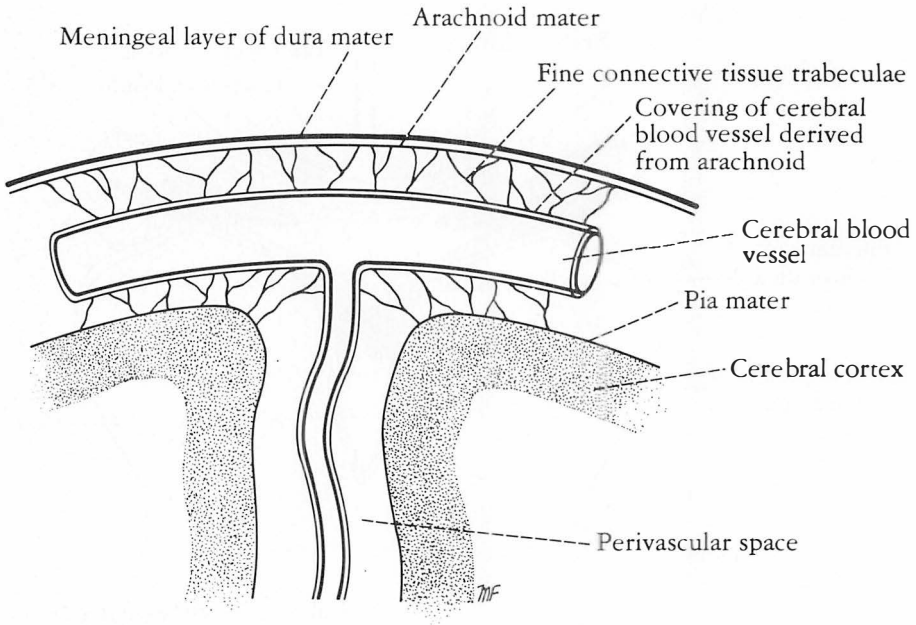


Fig. 17-7. Subarachnoid space around cerebral hemisphere. Shows relationship of cerebral blood vessel to meninges and cerebral cortex.

The subarachnoid space surrounds the cranial and spinal nerves and follows them to the point where they leave the skull and vertebral canal. Here the arachnoid mater and pia mater fuse with the perineurium of each nerve.

Cerebrospinal Fluid

The cerebrospinal fluid is a clear, colorless fluid with a specific gravity of about 1.007. It possesses, in solution, inorganic salts similar to those in the blood plasma. The glucose content is about half that of blood and there is only a trace of protein. Only a few cells are present and these are lymphocytes. The normal lymphocyte count is 1 to 8 cells/mm^3. In the lateral recumbent position the cerebrospinal fluid pressure, as measured by lumbar puncture, is about 100 to 150 mm water. This pressure may be easily raised by straining or coughing or compressing the internal jugular veins in the neck (see p. 33). The total volume of cerebrospinal fluid in the subarachnoid space and within the ventricles is about 140 ml.

Functions of the Cerebrospinal Fluid

The cerebrospinal fluid, which bathes the external and internal surfaces of the brain and spinal cord, serves as a cushion between the central nervous system and the surrounding bones, thus protecting it against mechanical trauma. The close relationship of the fluid to the nervous tissue and the blood enables it to serve as a reservoir and assist in the regulation of the contents of the skull. For example, if the brain volume or the blood volume increases the cerebrospinal fluid volume decreases. Since the cerebrospinal fluid is an ideal physiological substrate, it probably plays an active part in the nourishment of the nervous tissue; it almost certainly assists in the removal of products of neuronal metabolism.

Formation of Cerebrospinal Fluid

The cerebrospinal fluid is formed mainly in the choroid plexuses of the lateral, third, and fourth ventricles; some may originate as tissue fluid formed in the brain substance.

The choroid plexuses have a much folded surface and each fold consists of a core of vascular connective tissue covered with cuboidal epithe-

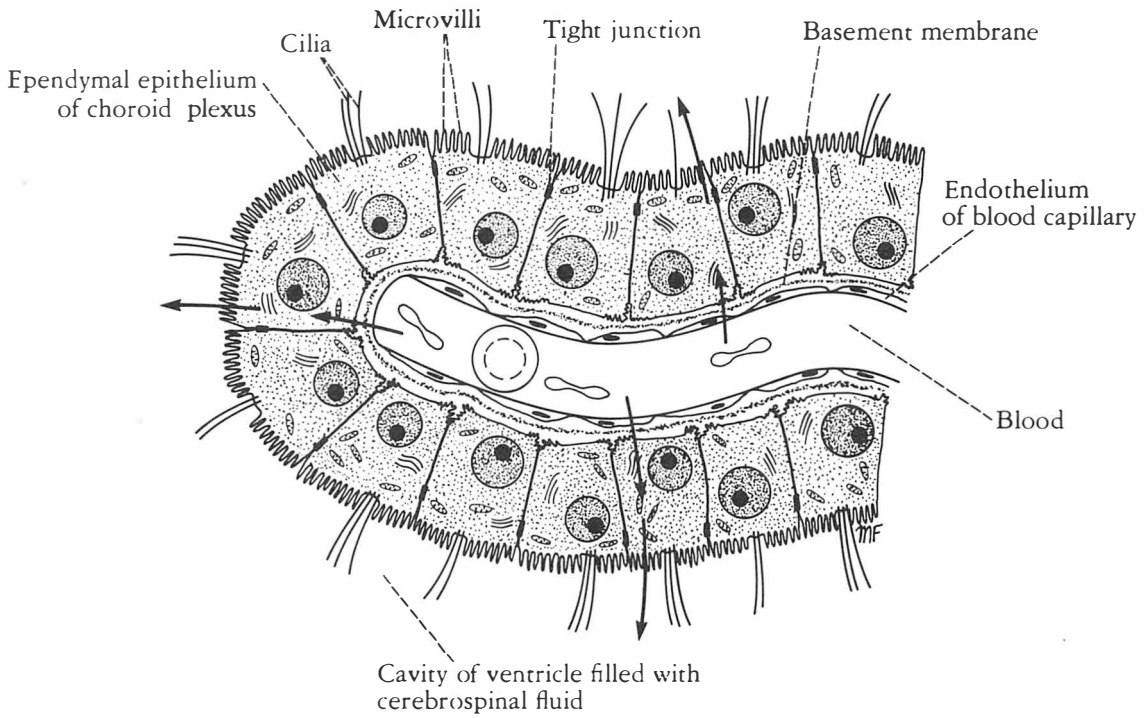


Fig. 17-8. Microscopic structure of choroid plexus. Shows path taken by fluids in the formation of cerebrospinal fluid.

lium of the ependyma (Fig. 17-8). Electron-microscopic examination of the epithelial cells shows that their free surfaces are covered with microvilli. The blood of the capillaries is separated from the ventricular lumen by endothelium, a basement membrane, and the surface epithelium.

There is considerable evidence that the choroid plexuses actively secrete cerebrospinal fluid. It has been shown experimentally in animals, for example, that the passage of Na is stopped when a carbonic anhydrase inhibitor is applied to the choroid plexus. Furthermore, it has been shown that the concentrations of electrolytes—particularly K, Ca, and Mg—differ in the cerebrospinal fluid as compared with the blood plasma.

Circulation of Cerebrospinal Fluid

The circulation begins with its secretion from the choroid plexuses in the ventricles and its production from the brain surface. The fluid passes from the lateral ventricles into the third ventricle through the interventricular foramina (see Figs 17-1 and 17-9). It then passes into the fourth ventricle through the cerebral aqueduct. The circulation is aided by the arterial pulsations of the choroid plexuses.

From the fourth ventricle, the fluid passes through the median aperture and the lateral foramina of the lateral recesses of the fourth ventricle and enters the subarachnoid space. The fluid slowly moves through the cerebellomedullary cistern and pontine cisterns and flows superiorly through the interval in the tentorium cerebelli to reach the inferior surface of the cerebrum (see Figs. 17-1 and 17-9). It now moves superiorly over the lateral aspect of each cerebral hemisphere. Some of the cerebrospinal fluid moves inferiorly in the subarachnoid space around the spinal cord and cauda equina. It is believed that the pulsations of the cerebral and spinal arteries and the movements of the vertebral column facilitate this gradual flow of fluid.

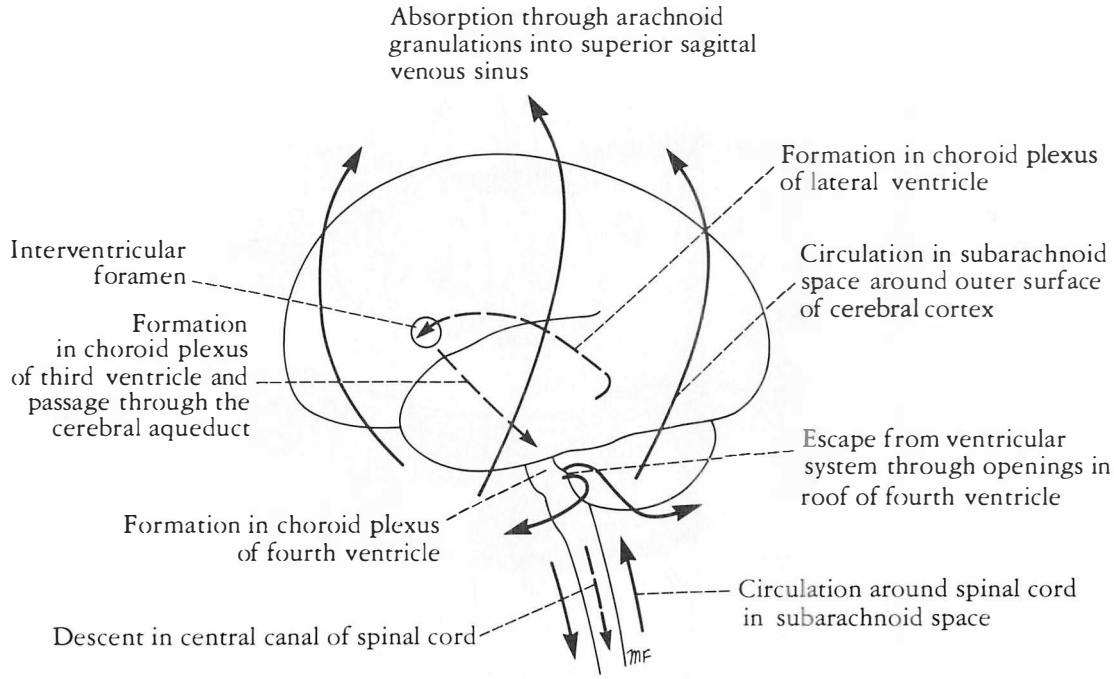


Fig. 17-9. Circulation of cerebrospinal fluid. Dashed line indicates course taken by fluid within the cavities of the central nervous system.

Absorption of Cerebrospinal Fluid

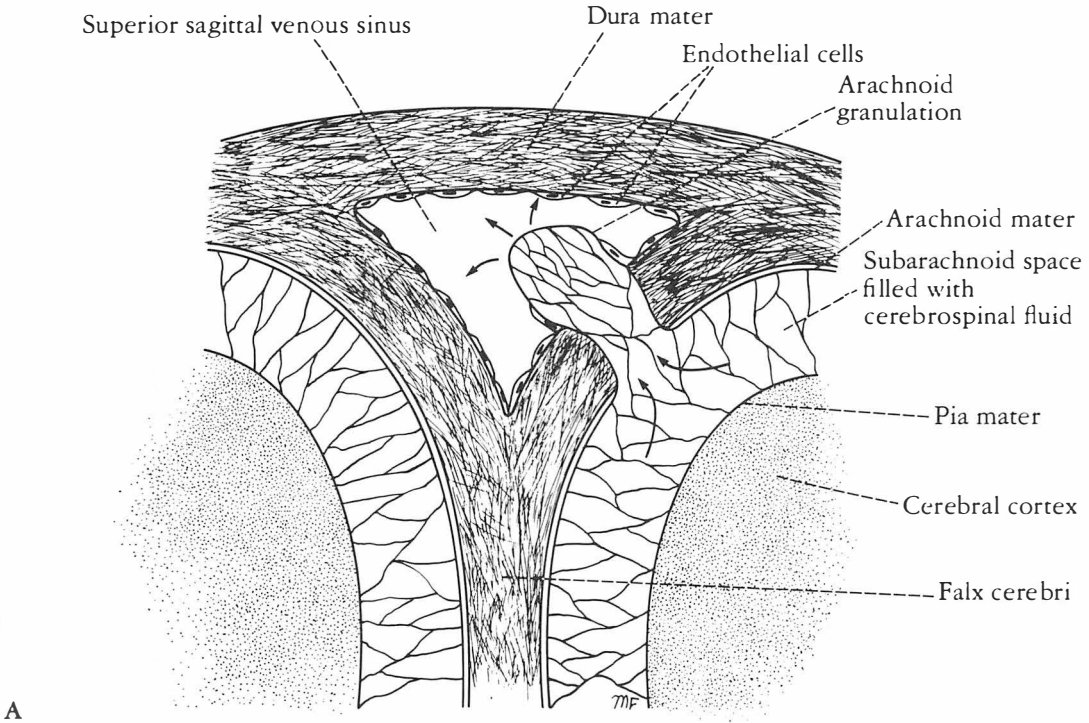
The main sites for the absorption of the cerebrospinal fluid are the *arachnoid villi* that project into the dural venous sinuses, especially the *superior sagittal sinus* (Figs. 17-10). The arachnoid villi tend to be grouped together to form elevations known as *arachnoid granulations*. Structurally, each arachnoid villus is a diverticulum of the subarachnoid space that pierces the dura mater. The arachnoid diverticulum is capped by a thin cellular layer, which in turn is covered by the endothelium of the venous sinus. The arachnoid granulations increase in number and size with age and tend to become calcified with advanced age.

The absorption of cerebrospinal fluid into the venous sinuses occurs when the cerebrospinal fluid pressure exceeds that in the sinus. Electron-microscopic studies of the arachnoid villi seem to indicate that fine tubules lined with endothelium permit a direct flow of fluid from the subarachnoid space into the lumen of the venous sinuses. Should the venous pressure rise and exceed the cerebrospinal fluid pressure, compression of the tips of the villi closes the tubules and prevents the reflux of blood into the subarachnoid space.

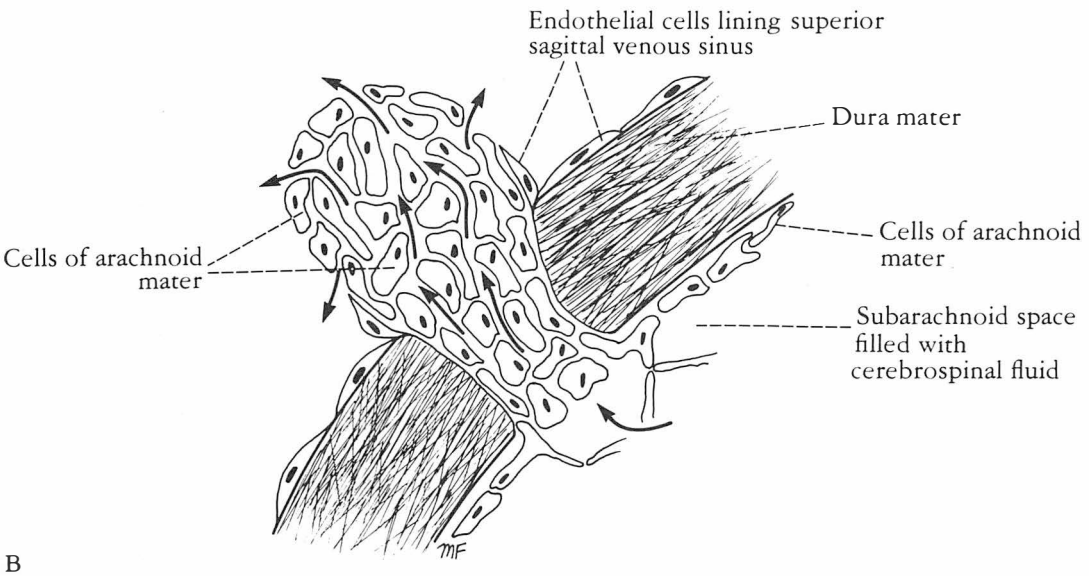
Some of the cerebrospinal fluid probably is absorbed directly into the veins in the subarachnoid space and some possibly escapes through the perineural lymphatic vessels of the cranial and spinal nerves.

Extensions of the Subarachnoid Space

A sleeve of the subarachnoid space extends around the optic nerve to the back of the eyeball (Fig. 17-11). Here the arachnoid mater and pia mater fuse with the sclera. The central artery and vein of the retina cross this extension of the subarachnoid space to enter the optic nerve and they may be compressed in patients with raised cerebrospinal fluid pressure.



A



B

Fig. 17-10. A. Coronal section of superior sagittal sinus, showing an arachnoid granulation. B. Magnified view of arachnoid granulation, showing path taken by cerebrospinal fluid into venous system.

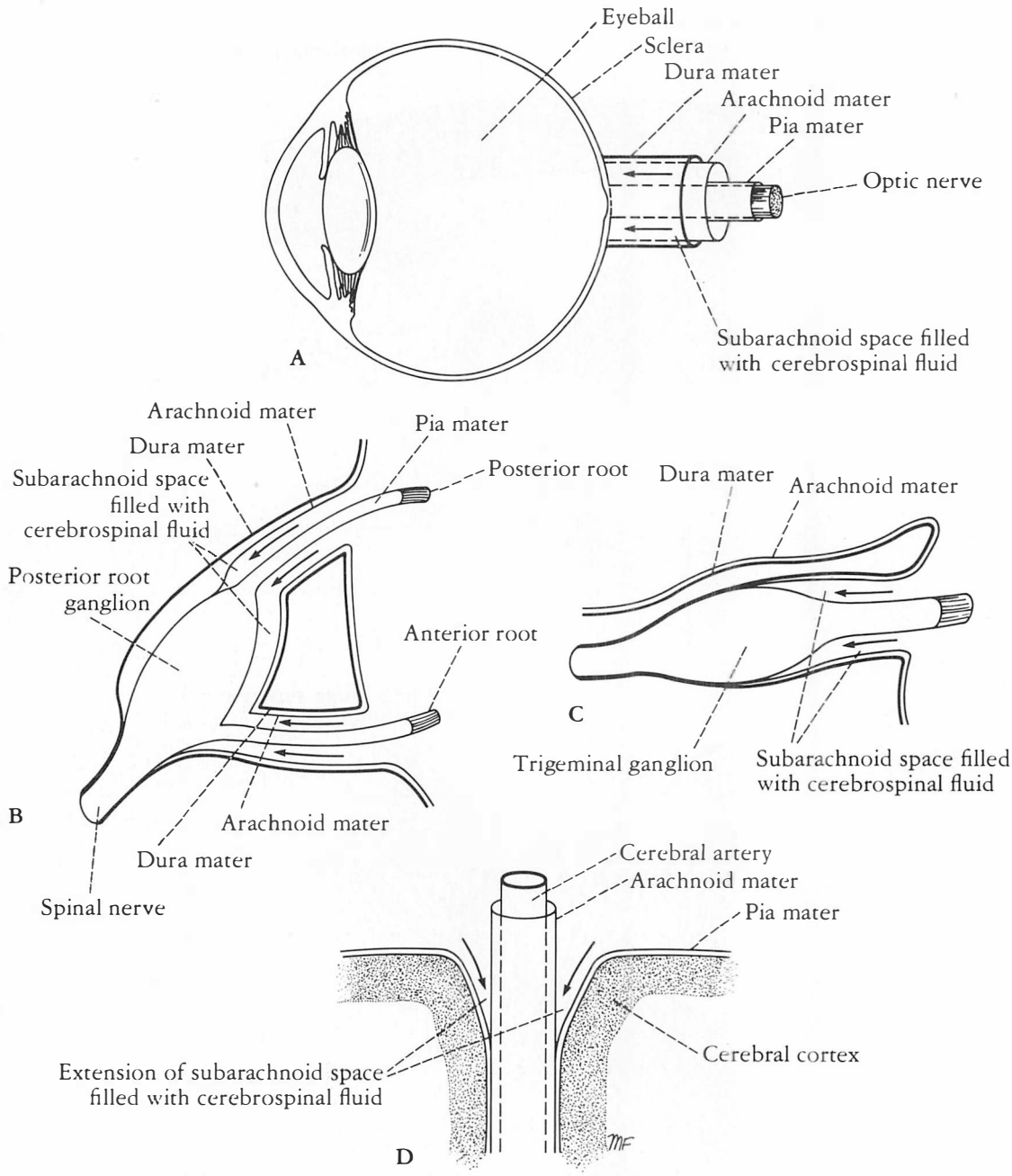


Fig. 17-11. Course taken by cerebrospinal fluid around:
A. The optic nerve.
B. The roots of a spinal nerve.
C. The trigeminal nerve.
D. A cerebral artery.
Note the attachments of the meninges to each of these structures.

Small extensions of the subarachnoid space also occur around the other cranial and spinal nerves (Fig. 17-11). Some authorities believe that it is here that some communication may occur between the subarachnoid space and the perineural lymphatic vessels.

The subarachnoid space also extends around the arteries and veins of the brain and spinal cord at points where they penetrate the nervous tissue (Fig. 17-11). The pia mater and arachnoid mater, however, quickly fuse with each other below the surface of the brain and spinal cord.

Clinical Notes

General Considerations

The cerebrospinal fluid is a clear, colorless fluid that fills the ventricles of the brain and bathes the external surface of the brain and spinal cord. It is formed from the choroid plexuses within the ventricles and circulates through the three openings in the roof of the fourth ventricle to reach the subarachnoid space. The fluid is produced continuously at a rate of about 0.5 ml per minute and with a total volume of about 140 ml; this corresponds to a turnover time of about 5 hours.

Once the cerebrospinal fluid has escaped from the fourth ventricle it flows upward through the tentorial notch of the tentorium cerebelli and slowly spreads over the surface of the cerebral hemisphere to the arachnoid granulations of the venous sinuses. This diffuse spread over the hemispheres is assisted by the pulsations of the brain and the cerebral arteries. It is important to realize that the cerebrospinal fluid not only bathes the ependymal and pial surfaces of the brain and spinal cord but penetrates into the nervous tissue along the blood vessels.

There does not appear to be a substantial flow of fluid, either up or down, around the spinal cord and cauda equina. Here a slow process of mixing occurs that depends on the movements of the vertebral column, respiration, coughing, and the changing positions of the body.

The functions of the cerebrospinal fluid are: protection of the central nervous system from trauma, regulation of the intracranial pressure, nourishment of the nervous tissue, and removal of waste products.

Hydrocephalus

Hydrocephalus is an abnormal increase in the volume of the cerebrospinal fluid within the skull. If the hydrocephalus is accompanied by a raised cerebrospinal fluid pressure, then it is due to either (1) an abnormal increase in the formation of the fluid, (2) a blockage of the circulation of the fluid, or (3) a diminished absorption of the fluid. Rarely, hydrocephalus occurs with a normal cerebrospinal fluid pressure and in these patients there is a compensatory hypoplasia or atrophy of the brain substance.

Hydrocephalus resulting from excessive formation of cerebrospinal fluid. This condition is rare and may occur when there is a tumor of the choroid plexuses.

Hydrocephalus resulting from blockage of the circulation of cerebrospinal fluid. An obstruction of the interventricular foramen by a tumor will block the drainage of the lateral ventricle on that side. The continued production of cerebrospinal fluid by the choroid plexus of that ventricle will cause distention of that ventricle and atrophy of the surrounding neural tissue.

An obstruction in the cerebral aqueduct may be congenital or result from inflammation or pressure from a tumor. This causes a symmetrical distention of both lateral ventricles and distention of the third ventricle.

Obstruction of the median aperture (foramen of Magendie) in the roof of the fourth ventricle and the two lateral apertures (foramina of Luschka) in the lateral recesses of the fourth ventricle by inflammatory exudate, or by tumor growth, will produce symmetrical dilatation of both lateral ventricles and the third and fourth ventricle.

Sometimes inflammatory exudate secondary to meningitis will block the subarachnoid space and obstruct the flow of cerebrospinal fluid over the outer surface of the cerebral hemispheres. Here, again, the entire ventricular system of the brain will become distended.

Hydrocephalus resulting from diminished absorption of cerebrospinal fluid. Interference with the absorption of cerebrospinal fluid at the arachnoid granulations may be caused by inflammatory exudate, venous thrombosis or pressure on the venous sinuses, or obstruction of the internal jugular vein.

Clinical Investigation of the Cerebral Ventricles

The size of the cerebral ventricles may be investigated clinically by the use of (1) computerized axial tomography and (2) intracranial pneumography.

Computerized axial tomography is safe and easy to perform. Essentially it consists of scanning the head in successive layers with a narrow beam of x-rays. The transmission of x-ray photons in each layer is measured and fed into a computer that transcribes them into absorption coefficients. The outline of the ventricles may be demonstrated by using this method. Apart from ventricular distention or distortion, the cerebral tumor causing the condition also may be demonstrated.

Intracranial pneumography is essentially the replacement of cerebrospinal fluid within the ventricles and subarachnoid space with air or oxygen. Because the air or gas is less dense than the fluid or neural tissue, the ventricles and cerebral gyri can be visualized. In an *encephalogram*, the air or oxygen is introduced through a lumbar puncture. The skull is then x-rayed. In a *ventriculogram*, the air or oxygen is introduced into the lateral ventricle through a needle inserted through a hole in the skull (in a young child the needle may be inserted through a suture). The skull then is x-rayed. In ventriculography, only the ventricles will be visualized.

Cerebrospinal Fluid Pressure and Composition

The clinical measurement of cerebrospinal fluid pressure by means of a lumbar puncture is described on page 33. The normal composition of cerebrospinal fluid is described on page 163.

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 493.

1. Using your knowledge of the anatomical pathways along which the cerebrospinal fluid flows, name the sites at which pathological blockage is most likely to occur.

2. During the examination of a patient who had just been admitted to the emergency room following an automobile accident, the resident asked the student what role the cerebrospinal fluid plays in protecting the brain from trauma.

3. A 55-year-old man was being investigated for signs and symptoms that suggested the presence of a cerebral tumor. Examination of the computerized axial tomogram showed gross enlargement and distortion of the left lateral ventricle. What other investigation might be carried out in this patient to display the ventricles of the brain? Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, can you accurately position the tumor in this case?

4. A 3-year-old child had been referred to the children's hospital because the circumference of his head greatly exceeded the normal limit for his age. After a careful history had been taken and a detailed physical examination had been performed, a diagnosis of hydrocephalus was made. What is your definition of hydrocephalus? Name three common causes of hydrocephalus in young children.

Additional Reading

Alksne, J. F., and Lovings, E. T. Functional ultrastructure of the arachnoid villus. *Arch. Neurol.* 27:371, 1972.

Bowsher, D. *Cerebrospinal Fluid Dynamics in Health and Disease.* Springfield, Ill.: Thomas, 1960.

Cserr, H. F. Physiology of the choroid plexus. *Physiol. Rev.* 51:273, 1971.

Cserr, H. F. Relationship between cerebrospinal fluid and interstitial fluid of brain. *Fed. Proc.* 33:2075, 1974.

Davson, H. *Physiology of the Cerebrospinal Fluids.* London: Churchill Livingstone, 1970.

Millen, J. W., and Woollam, D. H. M. *The Anatomy of the Cerebrospinal Fluid.* New York and London: Oxford University Press, 1962.

Pollay, M. Transport mechanisms in the choroid plexus. *Fed. Proc.* 33:2064, 1974.

Wolstenholme, G. E. W., and O'Connor, C. M. (Eds.). *Production, Circulation and Absorption* (a Ciba Foundation Symposium). London: Churchill Livingstone, 1958.

18
Blood-Brain and Blood-Cerebrospinal Fluid Barriers

The central nervous system requires a very stable environment in order to function normally. This stability is provided by the existence of the so-called blood-brain barrier and the blood-cerebrospinal fluid barrier.

Blood-Brain Barrier

The experiments of Paul Ehrlich in 1882 showed that animals injected intravascularly with vital dyes, such as trypan blue, demonstrated staining of all the tissues of the body except the brain and spinal cord. Later, it was demonstrated that although most of the brain is not stained by the intravenous injection of trypan blue the following areas do in fact become stained: the pineal gland, the posterior lobe of the pituitary, the tuber cinereum, the wall of the optic recess, and the vascular area postrema at the lower end of the fourth ventricle. These observations led to the concept of a blood-brain barrier (for which blood-brain spinal cord barrier would be a more accurate name).

It is now known that trypan blue quickly binds to albumin in the bloodstream so that the barrier is impermeable to the albumin dye complex. Subsequently it has been shown that other substances such as gases, water, glucose, electrolytes, and amino acids can pass freely from the bloodstream into the neural tissue.

Structure of the Blood-Brain Barrier

Examination of an electron micrograph of the central nervous system shows that the lumen of a blood capillary is separated from the extracellular spaces about the neurons and neuroglia by the following structures: (1) the endothelial cells in the wall of the capillary, (2) a continuous basement membrane surrounding the capillary outside the endothelial cells, and (3) the foot processes of the astrocytes that adhere to the outer surface of the capillary wall (Fig. 18-1).

The most recent work using electron dense markers such as lanthanum and horseradish peroxidase (Brightman and Reese, 1969) has shown that these substances do not penetrate between the endothelial cells of the capillaries because of the presence of tight junctions that form belts around the cells. When the dense markers are introduced into the extracellular spaces of the neuropil they pass between the perivascular foot processes of the astrocytes as far as the basement membrane of the capillary. Based on this evidence, it is believed that the tight junctions between the endothelial cells of the blood capillaries are largely responsible for the blood-brain barrier (Fig. 18-1).

Although the blood-brain barrier exists in the newborn, there is evidence that it is more permeable to certain substances than it is in the adult.

The structure of the blood-brain barrier is not identical in all regions of the central nervous system. In fact, in those areas where the blood-brain barrier appears to be absent, the capillary endothelium contains fenestrations across which proteins and small organic molecules may pass from the blood to the nervous tissue (Fig. 18-2). It has been suggested that areas such as the area postrema of the floor of the fourth ventricle and the hypothalamus may serve as sites where neuronal receptors may sample the chemical content of the plasma directly. The hypothalamus, which is involved in the regulation of the metabolic activity of the body, might bring about appropriate modifications of activity and so protect the nervous tissue.

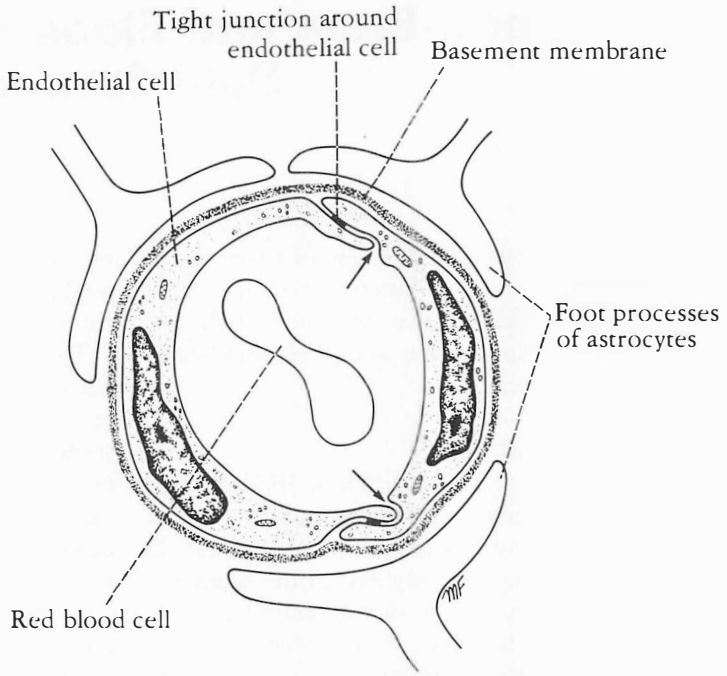


Fig. 18-1. Cross section of blood capillary of central nervous system in area where blood-brain barrier exists.

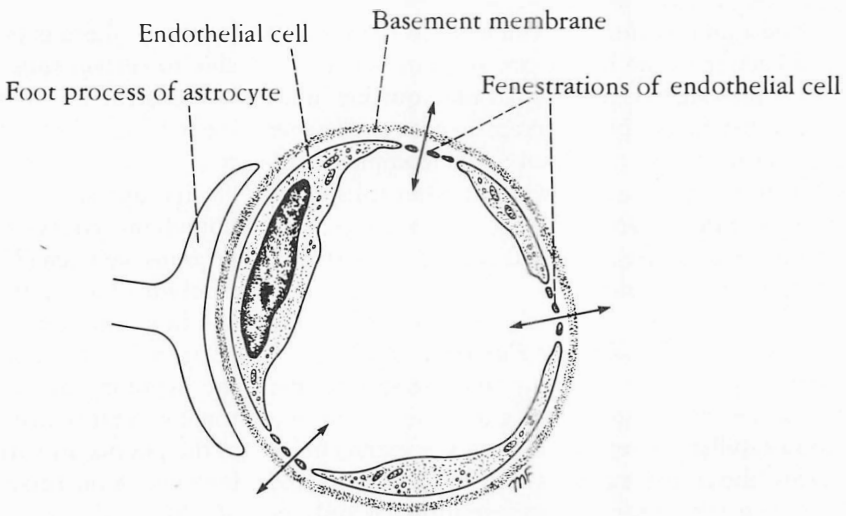


Fig. 18-2. Cross section of blood capillary of central nervous system where blood-brain barrier appears to be absent. Note presence of fenestrations in endothelial cells.

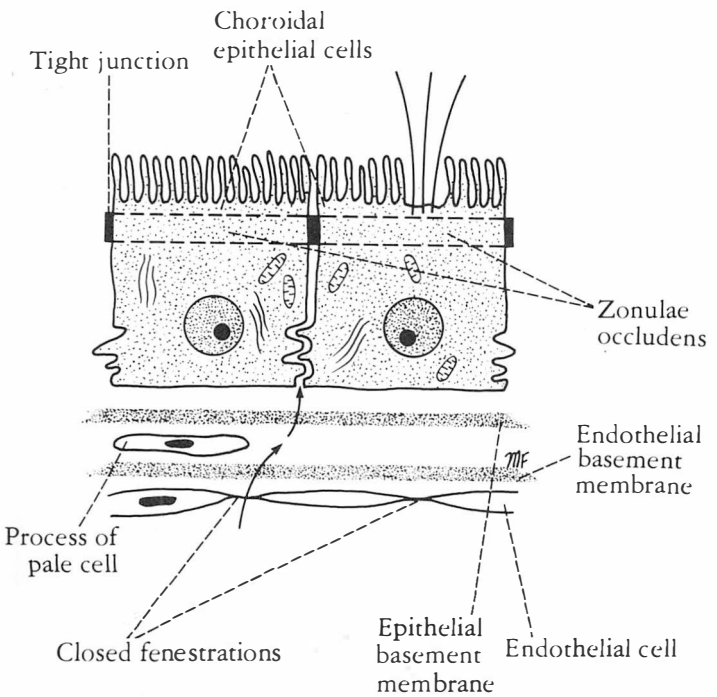


Fig. 18-3. Section of villus of choroid plexus.

Blood-Cerebrospinal Fluid Barrier

There is free passage of water, gases, and lipid-soluble substances from the blood to the cerebrospinal fluid. Macromolecules such as proteins and most hexoses other than glucose are unable to enter the cerebrospinal fluid. It has been suggested that a barrier similar to the blood-brain barrier exists in the choroid plexuses.

Structure of the Blood-Cerebrospinal Fluid Barrier

Electron-microscopic examination of a villus of a choroid plexus shows that the lumen of a blood capillary is separated from the lumen of the ventricle by the following structures: (1) the endothelial cells, which are fenestrated and have very thin walls (the fenestrations are not true perforations but are filled by a thin diaphragm), (2) a continuous basement membrane surrounding the capillary outside the endothelial cells, (3) scattered pale cells with flattened processes, and (4) a continuous basement membrane, upon which rest (5) the choroidal epithelial cells (Fig. 18-3). The use of electron dense markers has not been entirely successful in localizing the barrier precisely. Horseradish peroxidase injected intravenously appears as a coating on the luminal surface of the endothelial cells and in many areas examined it did pass between the endothelial cells. It is probable that the tight junctions between the choroidal epithelial cells serve as the barrier (Fig. 18-3).

Cerebrospinal Fluid-Brain Interface

Although vital dyes given by intravenous injection do not gain access to most brain tissues, if the dyes are injected into the subarachnoid space or into the ventricles they soon enter the extracellular spaces around the neurons and glial cells. Thus there is no comparable physiological barrier between the cerebrospinal fluid and the extracellular compartment of the central nervous system. It is,

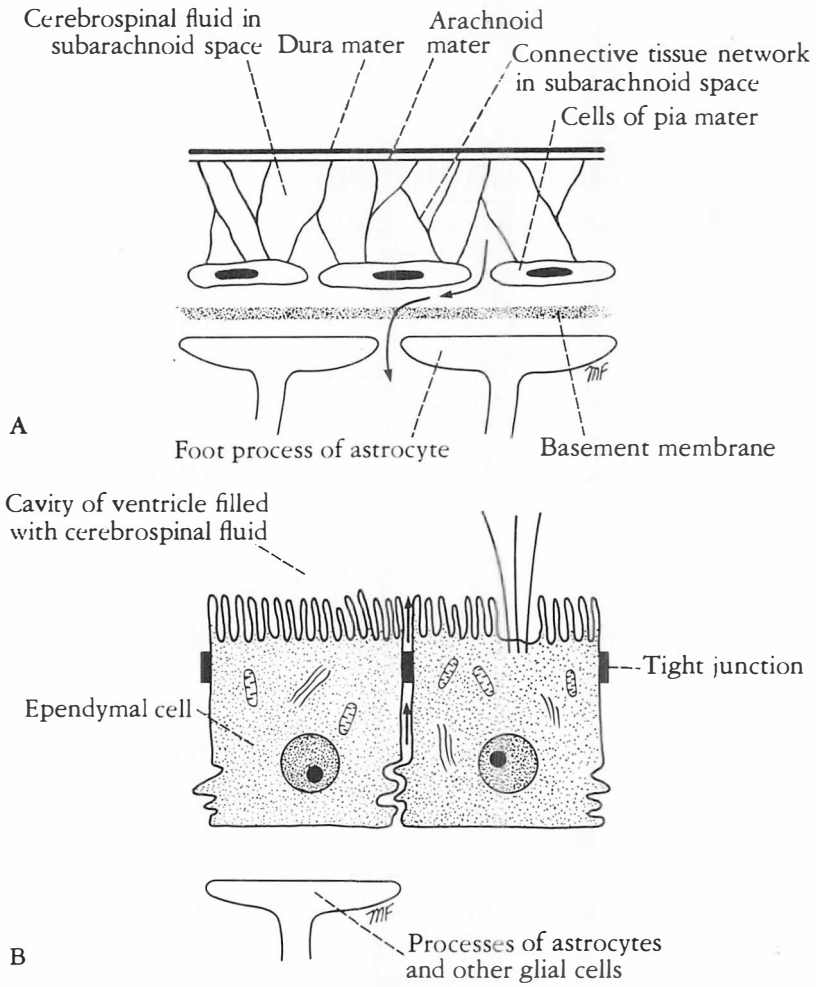


Fig. 18-4. Section of cerebrospinal fluid-brain interface. A. Outer surface of brain. B. Ventricular surface of brain.

however, interesting to consider the structures that separate the cerebrospinal fluid from the nervous tissue. Three sites must be examined: (1) the pia-covered surface of the brain and spinal cord, (2) the perivascular extensions of the subarachnoid space into the nervous tissue, and (3) the ependymal surface of the ventricles (Fig. 18-4).

The pia-covered surface of the brain consists of a loosely arranged layer of pial cells resting on a basement membrane (Fig. 18-4). Beneath the basement membrane are the astrocytic foot processes. No intercellular junctions exist between adjacent pial cells or between adjacent astrocytes, so that the extracellular spaces of the nervous tissue are in almost direct continuity with the subarachnoid space.

The prolongation of the subarachnoid space into the central nervous tissue quickly ends below the surface of the brain, where the fusion of the arachnoid covering of the blood vessel with the pial covering of the nervous tissue occurs (see Fig. 17-11). The combined layers form a sheath around the larger vessels, but it is absent from the capillaries.

The ventricular surface of the brain is covered with columnar ependymal cells with localized tight junctions (Fig. 18-4). Intercellular channels exist that permit free communication between the ventricular cavity and the extracellular neuronal space. The ependyma does not have a basement membrane and there are no specialized astrocytic foot processes because the neuroglial cells are loosely arranged.

Functional Significance of the Blood-Brain and Blood-Cerebrospinal Fluid Barriers

In normal conditions, these two important semipermeable barriers protect the brain and spinal cord from potentially harmful substances while permitting gases and nutriments to enter the nervous tissue.

Clinical Notes

In no other organ is the regulation of the composition of the extracellular fluid between fine limits as important as in the brain and spinal cord. The functions of the blood-brain and blood-cerebrospinal fluid barriers are so important in this respect because they protect the brain from variations in blood composition and especially from toxic compounds. In the newly born child or premature infant, where these barriers are not fully developed, toxic substances such as bilirubin can readily enter the central nervous system and produce yellowing of the brain and kernicterus. This is not possible in the adult.

Brain Trauma and the Blood-Brain Barrier

Any injury to the brain, whether it be due to direct trauma or to inflammatory or chemical toxins, causes a breakdown of the blood-brain barrier, allowing the free diffusion of large molecules into the nervous tissue. It is believed that this is brought about by actual destruction of the vascular endothelial cells or disruption of their tight junctions.

Drugs and the Blood-Brain Barrier

The systemic administration of *penicillin* results in only a small amount entering the central nervous system. This is fortunate, because penicillin in high concentrations is toxic to nervous tissue. In the presence of meningitis, however, the meninges become more permeable locally, at the site of inflammation, thus permitting sufficient antibiotic to reach the infection. *Chloramphenicol* and the *tetracyclines* readily cross the blood-brain barrier and enter the nervous tissue. The *sulfonamide* drugs also easily pass through the blood-brain barrier.

Lipid-soluble substances such as the anesthetic agent *thiopentone* rapidly enter the brain after intravenous injection. On the other hand, water-soluble substances such as exogenous *noradrenaline* cannot cross the blood-brain barrier. *Phenylbutazone* is a drug that becomes bound to plasma protein and the large drug protein molecule is unable to cross the barrier. Most tertiary amines are lipid-soluble, such as *atropine,* and quickly enter the brain, whereas the quaternary compounds, such as *atropine methylnitrate,* do not.

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 494.

1. A 5-year-old girl was admitted to the children's hospital with symptoms of headache, general malaise, and vomiting. On examination, the body temperature was found to be 104° F and the pulse rate was rapid. Attempts to flex the neck produced pain and resulted in the patient's flexing her hip and knee joints. A lumbar puncture was performed and the cerebrospinal fluid was seen to be cloudy, and the pressure was raised to 190 mm of water. Microscopic examination of the fluid

showed a large number of polymorphonuclear leukocytes. A diagnosis of meningitis was made. Subsequent culture revealed the infection to be a meningococcal meningitis. The resident vaguely remembered reading in a textbook the importance of the blood-brain barrier in the use of antibiotics for the treatment of meningitis. What is the blood-brain barrier? Does the presence of the blood-brain barrier influence your choice and dose of antibiotics to be used in this patient?

2. During a ward round in the children's hospital, the pediatrician informed the students that the 4-day-old baby with jaundice had a serum indirect bilirubin level of 45 mg per 100 ml and that by now the bile pigment was staining the brain a yellow color (kernicterus). The neuronal damage was revealed clinically by lethargy and poor feeding habits and by occasional muscle spasms. He said the prognosis was very poor. One of the students observed that he could not understand why the bile pigment was having such a dramatic effect on the baby. Recently he had examined a patient who was dying of inoperable carcinoma of the head of the pancreas with total obstruction of the common bile duct. In that patient the skin was a deep yellow color, but, apart from complaints of the intense skin irritation owing to the high concentration of bile salts in the blood, and loss of weight, the patient had no symptoms and no neurological abnormalities. Can you explain why the baby had neuronal damage and the adult did not?

3. Name five areas of the brain where the blood-brain barrier appears to be absent. What do you think is the significance of the fact that in a few areas of the brain the barrier is absent?

Additional Reading

Brightman, M. W. The distribution within the brain of ferritin injected into cerebrospinal fluid compartments: II. Parenchymal distribution. *Am. J. Anat.* 117:193, 1965.

Brightman, M. W., and Reese, T. W. Junctions between intimately apposed cell membranes in the vertebrate brain. *J. Cell Biol.* 40:648, 1969.

Broadwell, R. D., and Brightman, M. W. Entry of peroxidase into neurons of the central and peripheral nervous systems from extracerebral and cerebral blood. *J. Comp. Neurol.* 166:257, 1976.

Broman, T., and Steinwall, O. The Blood Brain Barrier. In J. Minckler (Ed.), *Pathology of the Nervous System.* New York: McGraw-Hill, 1968. Vol. 1, p. 406.

Davson, H. The Blood Brain Barrier. In G. H. Bourne (Ed.), *The Structure and Function of the Nervous System.* New York: Academic, 1972. Vol. 4, p. 548.

Fleischlauer, K. Ependyma and the Subependymal Layer. In G. H. Bourne (Ed.), *The Structure and Function of Nervous Tissue.* New York: Academic, 1972. Vol. 6, p. 1.

Lewis, A. J. *Mechanisms of Neurological Disease.* Boston: Little, Brown, 1976.

Woodbury, D. M. Blood-Cerebrospinal Fluid–Brain Fluid Relations. In T. C. Ruch, and H. D. Patton (Eds.), *Physiology and Biophysics.* Philadelphia: Saunders, 1965. P. 942.

19
The Ascending Tracts of the Spinal Cord

On entering the spinal cord, the sensory nerve fibers of different sizes and functions are sorted out and segregated into nerve bundles or *tracts* (Fig. 19-1). Some of the nerve fibers serve to link different segments of the spinal cord, while others ascend from the spinal cord to higher centers and, thus, connect the spinal cord with the brain. It is the bundles of the ascending fibers that are referred to as the *ascending tracts*. The white matter of the spinal cord is composed of ascending and descending tracts embedded in neuroglia.

The ascending tracts conduct afferent information, which may or may not reach consciousness. The information may be divided into two main groups: (1) *exteroceptive* information, which originates from outside the body, such as pain, temperature, and touch, and (2) *proprioceptive* information, which originates from inside the body, for example, from muscles and joints.

Anatomical Organization

General information from the peripheral sensory endings is conducted through the nervous system by a series of neurons. In its simplest form, the ascending pathway to consciousness consists of three neurons (Fig. 19-1). The first neuron, the *first-order neuron,* has its cell body in the *posterior root ganglion* of the spinal nerve. A peripheral process connects with a sensory receptor ending (see Chapter 5), whereas a central process enters the spinal cord through the posterior root to synapse on the *second-order neuron.* The second-order neuron gives rise to an axon that decussates (crosses to the opposite side) and ascends to a higher level of the central nervous system, where it synapses with the *third-order neuron* (Fig. 19-1). The third-order neuron is usually in the thalamus and gives rise to a projection fiber that passes to a sensory region of the cerebral cortex (Fig. 19-1). The three-neuron chain described is the most common arrangement, but some afferent pathways use more or fewer neurons. It also should be recognized that many of the neurons branch and participate in reflex activity.

Functions of the Ascending Tracts

Painful and thermal sensations ascend in the lateral spinothalamic tract; light touch and pressure ascend in the anterior spinothalamic tract (Fig. 19-2). Discriminative touch, that is, the ability to localize accurately the area of the body touched and also to be aware that two points are touched simultaneously, even though they are close together (two-point discrimination), ascends in the posterior white columns (Fig. 19-2). Also ascending in the posterior white columns is information from muscles and joints pertaining to movement and position of different parts of the body. In addition, vibratory sensations ascend in the posterior white column. Unconscious information from muscles, joints, the skin, and subcutaneous tissue reaches the cerebellum by way of the anterior and posterior spinocerebellar tracts and by the cuneocerebellar tract (Fig. 19-2). Pain, thermal, and tactile information is passed to the superior colliculus of the midbrain through the spinotectal tract for the purpose of spinovisual reflexes (Fig. 19-2). The spinoreticular tract provides a pathway from the muscles, joints, and skin to the reticular formation, while the spino-olivary tract provides an indirect pathway for further afferent information to reach the cerebellum (Fig. 19-2).

PAIN AND TEMPERATURE PATHWAYS. *Lateral spinothalamic tract.* The axons entering the spinal cord from the posterior root ganglion proceed to

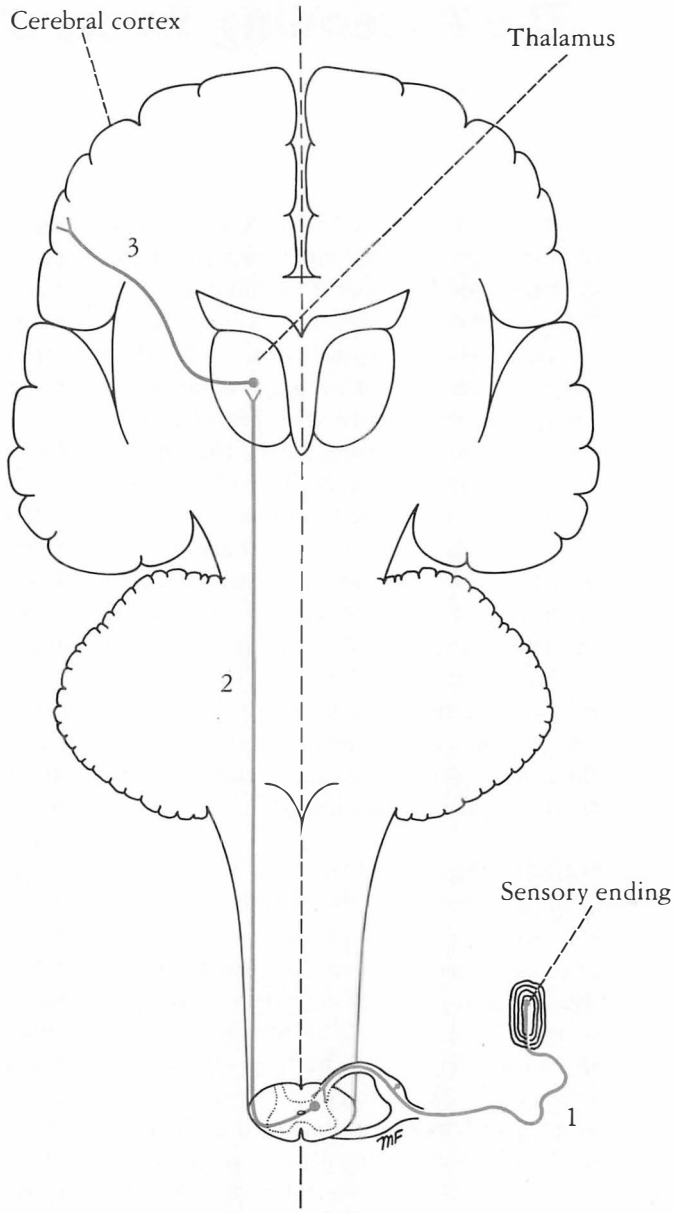


Fig. 19-1. Simplest form of ascending sensory pathway from the sensory nerve ending to the cerebral cortex. Note the three neurons involved.

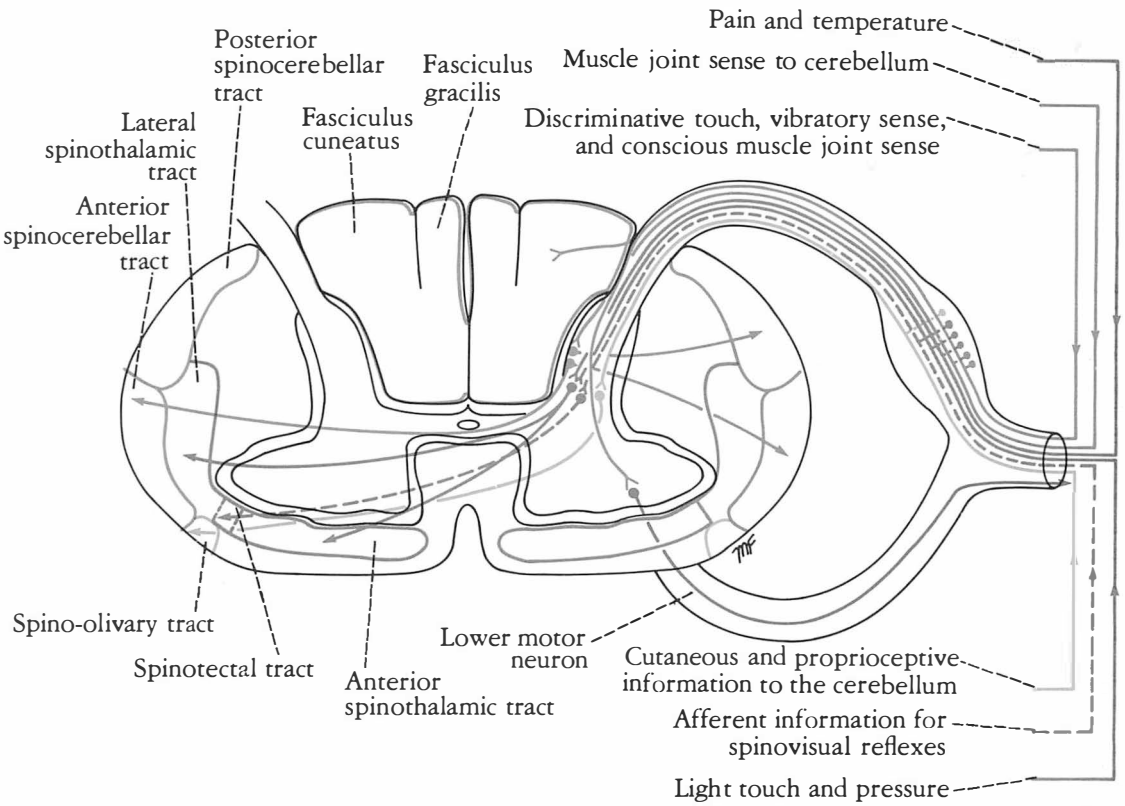


Fig. 19-2. Transverse section of spinal cord, showing origin of main ascending sensory tracts.

the tip of the posterior gray column and divide into ascending and descending branches (Fig. 19-3). These branches travel for a distance of one or two segments of the spinal cord and form the *posterolateral tract of Lissauer* (Fig. 19-3). It is believed that these fibers of the first-order neuron terminate by synapsing with cells in the *substantia gelatinosa group* in the posterior gray column (Fig. 19-3).

The axons of the second-order neurons now cross obliquely to the opposite side in the anterior gray and white commissures within one spinal segment of the cord and ascend in the contralateral white column as the lateral spinothalamic tract (Fig. 19-3). The lateral spinothalamic tract lies medial to the anterior spinocerebellar tract. As the lateral spinothalamic tract ascends through the spinal cord, new fibers are added to the anteromedial aspect of the tract, so that in the upper cervical segments of the cord the sacral fibers are posterolateral and the cervical segments are anteromedial. The fibers carrying pain are situated slightly anterior to those conducting temperature.

As the lateral spinothalamic tract ascends through the medulla oblongata, it lies near the lateral surface and between the inferior olivary nucleus and the nucleus of the spinal tract of the trigeminal nerve. It is now accompanied by the anterior spinothalamic tract and the spinotectal tract, which all together form the *spinal lemniscus* (Fig. 19-3).

The spinal lemniscus continues to ascend through the posterior part of the pons (Fig. 19-3). In the midbrain it lies in the tegmentum lateral to

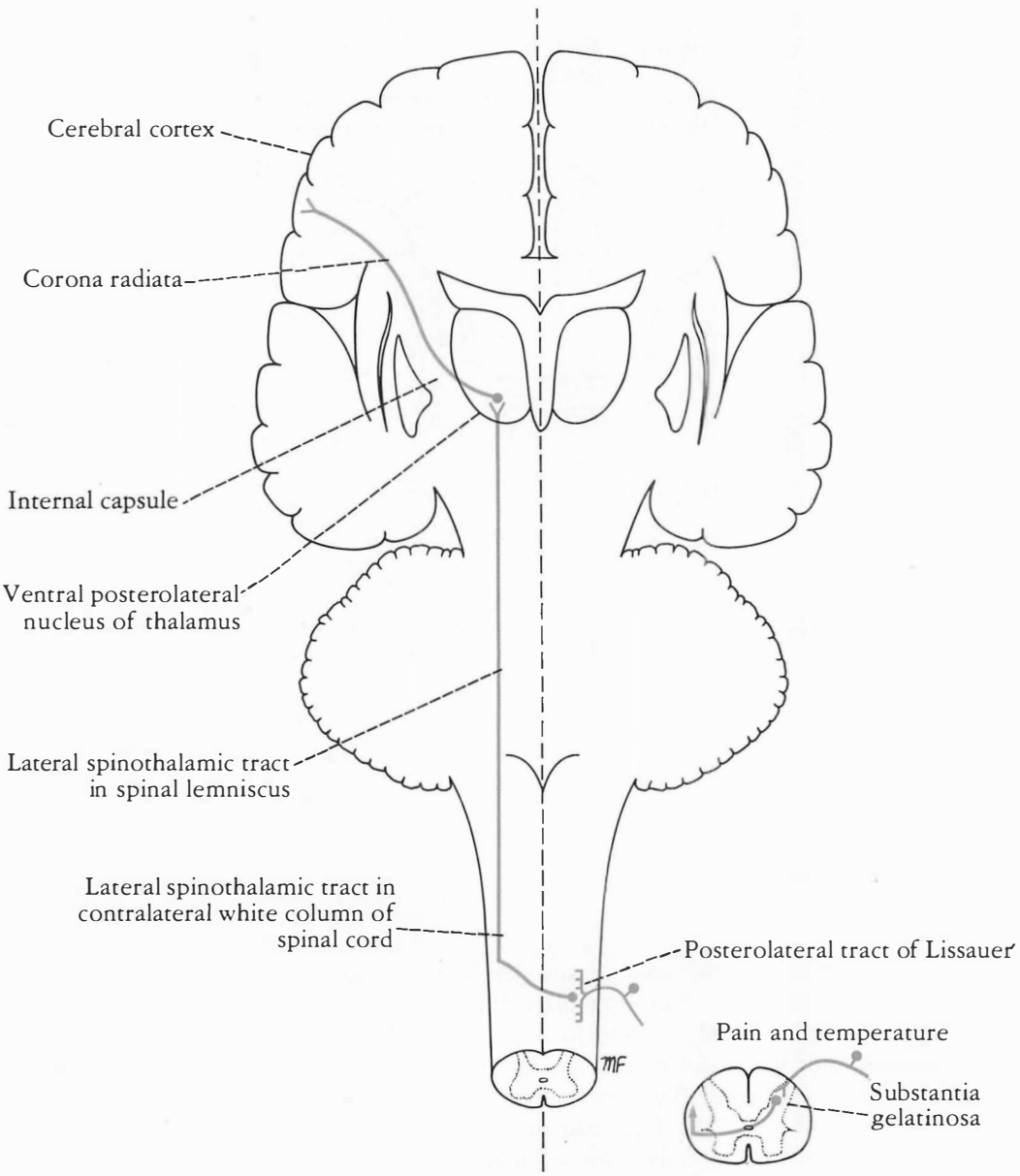


Fig. 19-3. Pain and temperature pathways.

the medial lemniscus. The fibers of the lateral spinothalamic tract end by synapsing with the third-order neuron in the ventral posterolateral nucleus of the thalamus (Fig. 19-3). It is believed that here crude pain and temperature sensations are appreciated and emotional reactions are initiated.

The axons of the third-order neurons in the ventral posterolateral nucleus of the thalamus now pass through the posterior limb of the *internal capsule* and the *corona radiata* to reach the somesthetic area in the postcentral gyrus of the cerebral cortex (Fig. 19-3). The contralateral half of the body is represented as inverted, with the hand and mouth situated inferiorly and the leg situated superiorly, and with the foot and anogenital region on the medial surface of the hemisphere. (For details, see p. 265.) From here, the information is transmitted to other regions of the cerebral cortex to be used by motor areas and the parietal association area. The role of the cerebral cortex is the interpretation of the sensory information at the level of consciousness.

LIGHT TOUCH AND PRESSURE PATHWAYS. *Anterior spinothalamic tract.* The axons enter the spinal cord from the posterior root ganglion and proceed to the tip of the posterior gray column, where they divide into ascending and descending branches (Fig. 19-4). These branches travel for a distance of one or two segments of the spinal cord, contributing to the *posterolateral tract of Lissauer.* It is believed that these fibers of the first-order neuron terminate by synapsing with cells in the substantia gelatinosa group in the posterior gray column (Fig. 19-4).

The axons of the second-order neuron now cross very obliquely to the opposite side in the anterior gray and white commissures within several spinal segments, and ascend in the opposite anterolateral white column as the anterior spinothalamic tract (Fig. 19-4). As the anterior spinothalamic tract ascends through the spinal cord, new fibers are added to the medial aspect of the tract, so that in the upper cervical segments of the cord the sacral fibers are mostly lateral and the cervical segments are mostly medial.

As the anterior spinothalamic tract ascends through the medulla oblongata it accompanies the lateral spinothalamic tract and the spinotectal tract, all of which form the *spinal lemniscus* (Fig. 19-4).

The spinal lemniscus continues to ascend through the posterior part of the pons, and the tegmentum of the midbrain and the fibers of the anterior spinothalamic tract terminate by synapsing with the third-order neuron in the ventral posterolateral nucleus of the thalamus (Fig. 19-4). Crude awareness of touch and pressure is believed to be appreciated here.

The axons of the third-order neurons in the ventral posterolateral nucleus of the thalamus pass through the posterior limb of the *internal capsule* (Fig. 19-4) and the *corona radiata* to reach the somesthetic area in the postcentral gyrus of the cerebral cortex. The contralateral half of the body is represented inverted, with the hand and mouth situated inferiorly, as described previously. (For details, see p. 265.) The conscious appreciation of touch and pressure depends on the activity of the cerebral cortex.

DISCRIMINATIVE TOUCH, VIBRATORY SENSE, AND CONSCIOUS MUSCLE JOINT SENSE. *Posterior white column: fasciculus gracilis and fasciculus cuneatus.* The axons enter the spinal cord from the posterior root ganglion and pass directly to the posterior white column of the same side (Fig. 19-5). Here the fibers divide into long ascending and short descending branches. The descending branches pass down a variable number of segments, giving off collateral branches that synapse with cells in the posterior gray horn, with internuncial neurons, and with anterior horn cells (Fig. 19-5). It is clear that these short descending fibers are involved with intersegmental reflexes.

The long ascending fibers may also end by synapsing with cells in the posterior gray horn, with internuncial neurons, and with anterior horn cells. This distribution may extend over numerous

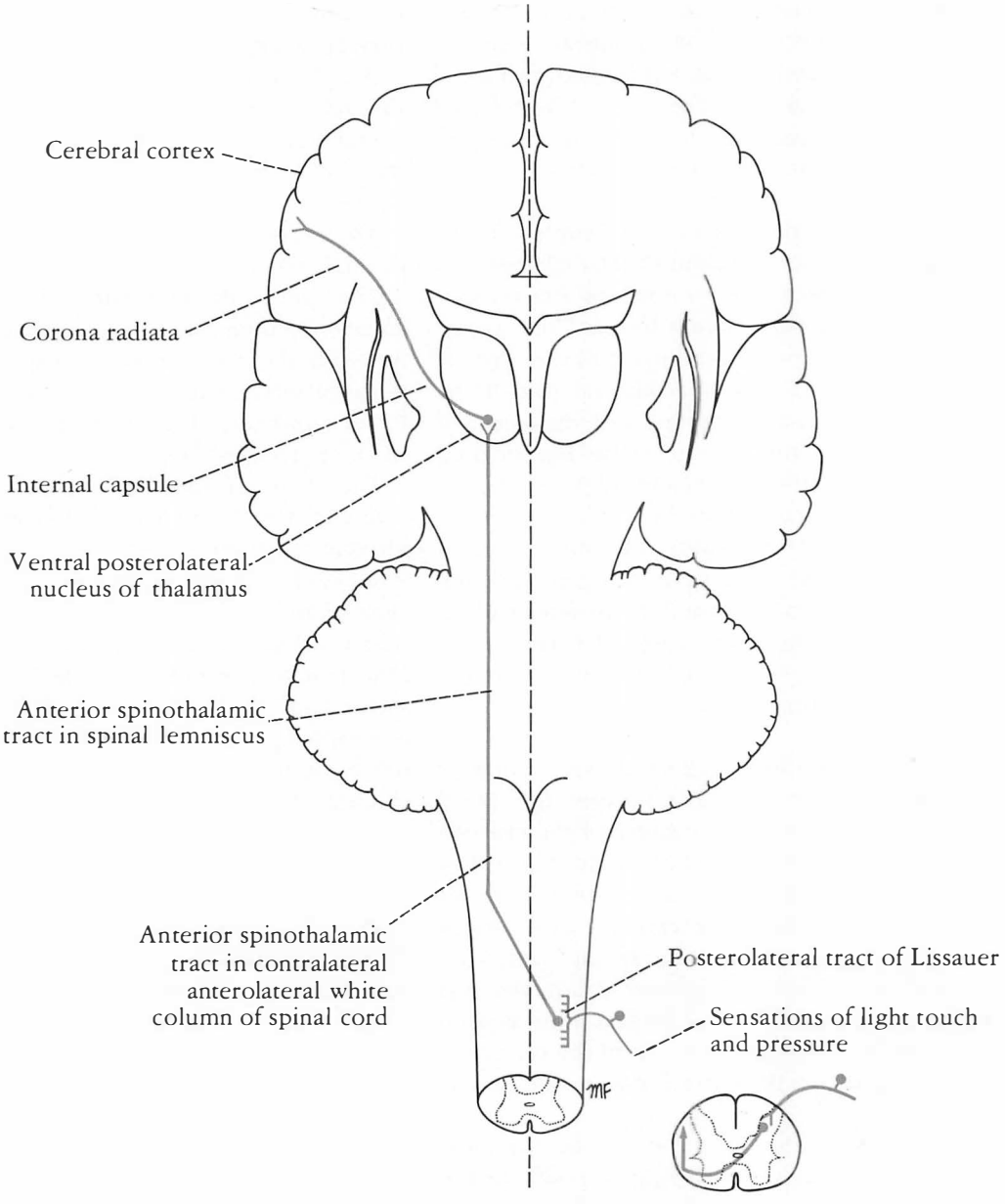


Fig. 19-4. Light touch and pressure pathways.

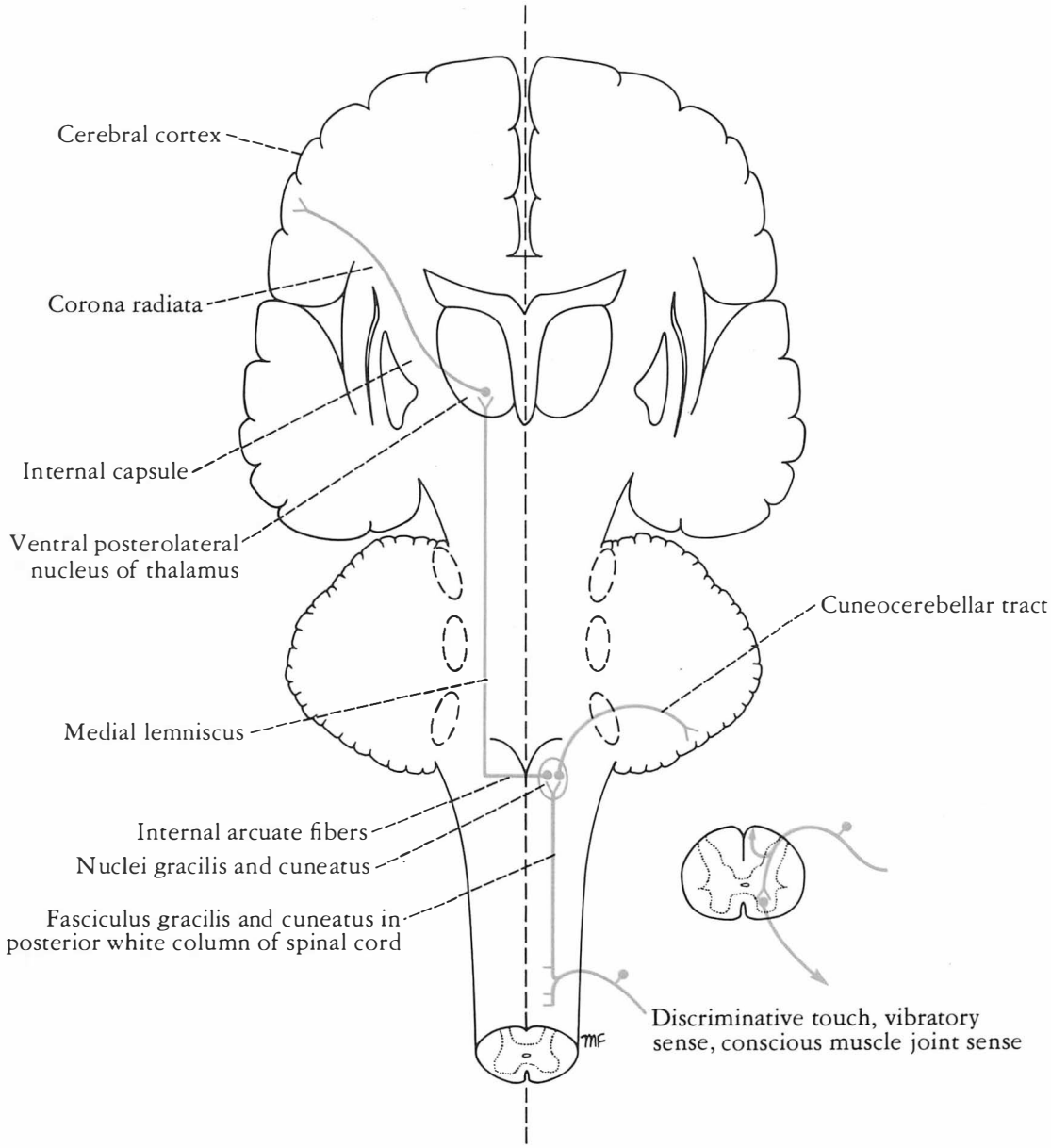


Fig. 19-5. Discriminative touch, vibratory sense, and conscious muscle joint sense pathways.

segments of the spinal cord (Fig. 19-5). As in the case of the short descending fibers, they are involved with intersegmental reflexes.

Many of the long ascending fibers travel upward in the posterior white column as the *fasciculus gracilis* and *fasciculus cuneatus* (Fig. 19-5). The fasciculus gracilis is present thoughout the length of the spinal cord and contains the long ascending fibers from the sacral, lumbar, and lower six thoracic spinal nerves. The fasciculus cuneatus is situated laterally in the upper thoracic and cervical segments of the spinal cord and is separated from the fasciculus gracilis by a septum. The fasciculus cuneatus contains the long ascending fibers from the upper six thoracic and all the cervical spinal nerves.

The fibers of the fasciculus gracilis and cuneatus ascend ipsilaterally and terminate by synapsing on the second-order neurons in the *nuclei gracilis and cuneatus* of the medulla oblongata (Fig. 19-5). The axons of the second-order neurons, called the *internal arcuate fibers,* sweep anteromedially around the central gray matter and cross the median plane, decussating with the corresponding fibers of the opposite side in the *sensory decussation* (Fig. 19-5). The fibers then ascend as a single compact bundle, the *medial lemniscus,* through the medulla oblongata, the pons, and the midbrain (Fig. 19-5). The fibers terminate by synapsing on the third-order neurons in the ventral posterolateral nucleus of the thalamus.

The axons of the third-order neuron leave and pass through the posterior limb of the *internal capsule* and *corona radiata* to reach the somesthetic area in the postcentral gyrus of the cerebral cortex (Fig. 19-5). The contralateral half of the body is represented inverted, with the hand and mouth situated inferiorly, as described previously. (For details, see p. 265.) In this manner, the impressions of discriminative touch, vibratory sense, and muscle joint sense are appreciated by consciousness.

It should be mentioned that a number of fibers in the fasciculus cuneatus from the cervical and upper thoracic segments, having terminated on the second-order neuron of the nucleus cuneatus, are relayed and travel as the axons of the second-order neurons to enter the cerebellum through the inferior cerebellar peduncle of the same side (Fig. 19-5). The pathway is referred to as the *cuneocerebellar tract* and the fibers are known as the *posterior external arcuate fibers.* The function of these fibers is to convey information of muscle joint sense to the cerebellum.

MUSCLE JOINT SENSE PATHWAYS TO THE CEREBELLUM. *Posterior spinocerebellar tract.* The axons entering the spinal cord from the posterior root ganglion enter the posterior gray column and terminate by synapsing on the second-order neurons at the base of the posterior gray column (Fig. 19-6). These neurons are known collectively as the *nucleus dorsalis (Clark's column).* The axons of the second-order neurons enter the posterolateral part of the lateral white column on the same side and ascend as the posterior spinocerebellar tract to the medulla oblongata. Here the tract joins the inferior cerebellar peduncle and terminates in the cerebellar cortex (Fig. 19-6). Note that it does not ascend to the cerebral cortex. Since the nucleus dorsalis (Clark's column) extends only from the eighth cervical segment caudally to the third or fourth lumbar segments, axons entering the spinal cord from the posterior roots of the lower lumbar and sacral segments ascend in the posterior white column until they reach the third or fourth lumbar segments, where they enter the nucleus dorsalis.

The posterior spinocerebellar fibers receive muscle joint information, mainly from the muscle spindles and tendon organs of the trunk and lower limbs.

Anterior spinocerebellar tract. The axons entering the spinal cord from the posterior root ganglion terminate by synapsing with the second-order neurons in the *nucleus dorsalis* at the base of the anterior gray column (Fig. 19-6). The majority of the axons of the second-order neurons cross to the opposite side and ascend as the anterior spinocerebellar tract in the contralateral white column; the minority of the axons ascend as the anterior spinocerebellar tract in the lateral white column of the same side (Fig. 19-6). The fibers,

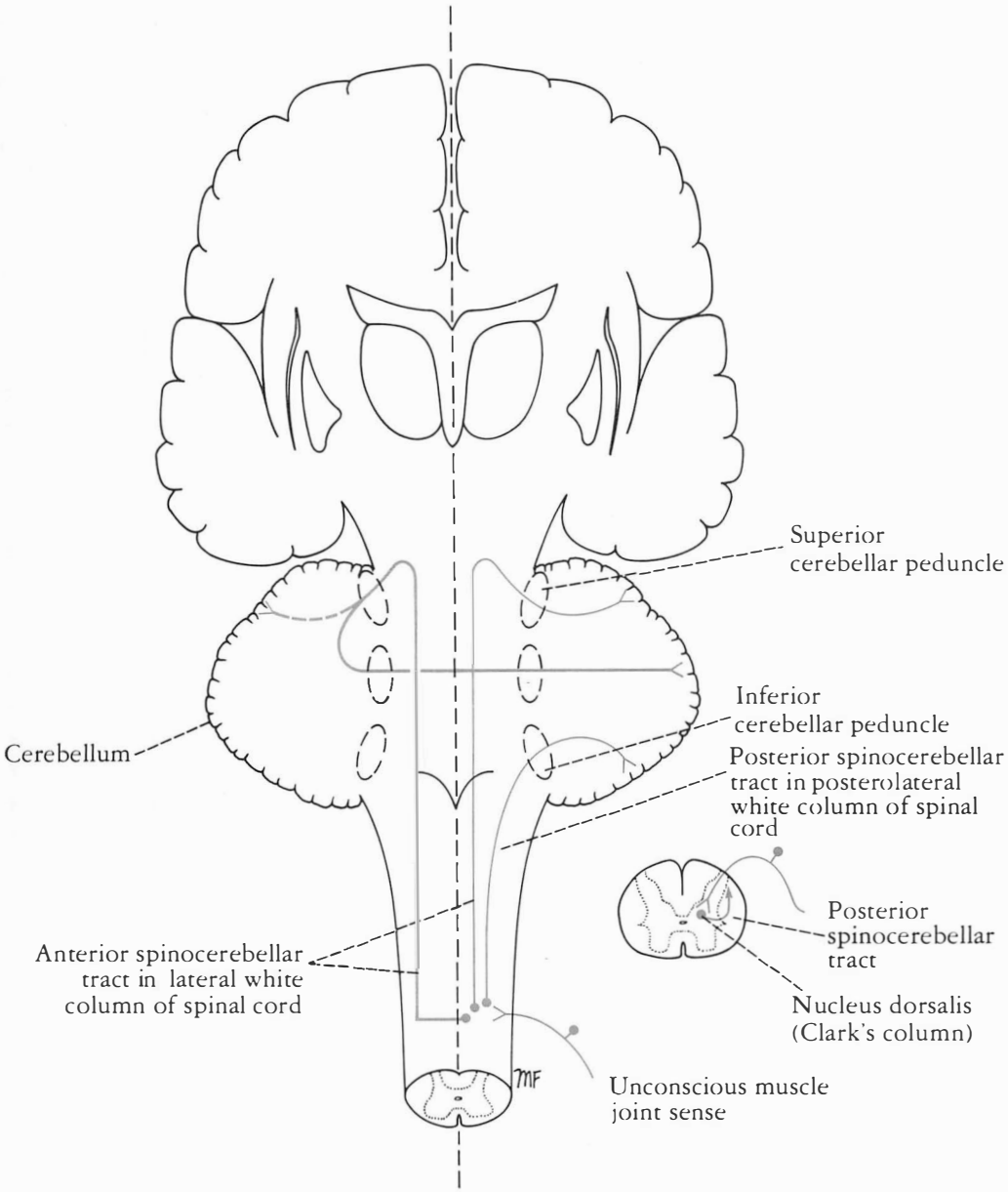


Fig. 19-6. Muscle joint sense pathways to cerebellum.

having ascended through the medulla oblongata and pons, enter the cerebellum through the superior cerebellar peduncle and terminate in the cerebellar cortex. It is believed that those fibers that crossed over to the opposite side in the spinal cord cross back within the cerebellum (Fig. 19-6). The anterior spinocerebellar tract is found at all spinal segments of the cord and its fibers convey muscle joint information from the muscle spindles and tendon organs of the upper and lower limbs. It is also believed that the cerebellum receives information from the skin and superficial fascia by this tract.

Cuneocerebellar tract. These fibers have already been described on page 312. They originate in the nucleus cuneatus and enter the cerebellum through the inferior cerebellar peduncle of the same side (Fig. 19-5). The fibers are known as the *posterior external arcuate fibers* and their function is to convey information of muscle joint sense to the cerebellum.

OTHER ASCENDING PATHWAYS. *Spinotectal tracts.* The axons enter the spinal cord from the posterior root ganglion and travel to the gray matter where they synapse on unknown second-order neurons (Fig. 19-7). The axons of the second-order neurons cross the median plane and ascend as the spinotectal tract in the anterolateral white column lying close to the lateral spinothalamic tract. After they pass through the medulla oblongata and pons, they terminate by synapsing with neurons in the superior colliculus of the midbrain (Fig. 19-7). This pathway provides afferent information for spinovisual reflexes and brings about movements of the eyes and head toward the source of the stimulation.

Spinoreticular tract. The axons enter the spinal cord from the posterior root ganglion and terminate on unknown second-order neurons in the gray matter (Fig. 19-7). The axons from these second-order neurons ascend the spinal cord as the spinoreticular tract in the lateral white column mixed with the lateral spinothalamic tract. The majority of the fibers are uncrossed and terminate by synapsing with neurons of the reticular formation in the medulla oblongata, pons, and midbrain (Fig. 19-7). The spinoreticular tract provides an afferent pathway for the reticular formation, which plays an important role in influencing levels of consciousness. (For details, see p. 270.)

Spino-olivary tract. The axons enter the spinal cord from the posterior root ganglion and terminate on unknown second-order neurons in the posterior gray column (Fig. 19-7). The axons from the second-order neurons cross the midline and ascend as the spino-olivary tract in the white matter at the junction of the anterior and lateral columns. The axons end by synapsing on third-order neurons in the inferior olivary nuclei in the medulla oblongata (Fig. 19-7). The axons of the third-order neurons cross the midline and enter the cerebellum through the inferior cerebellar peduncle. The spino-olivary tract conveys information to the cerebellum from cutaneous and proprioceptive organs.

VISCERAL SENSORY TRACTS. Sensations that arise in viscera located in the thorax and abdomen enter the spinal cord through the posterior roots. The cell bodies of the first-order neuron are situated in the posterior root ganglia. The peripheral processes of these cells receive nerve impulses from pain and stretch receptor endings in the viscera. The central processes, having entered the spinal cord, synapse with second-order neurons in the gray matter, probably in the posterior or lateral gray columns.

The axons of the second-order neurons are believed to join the spinothalamic tracts and ascend and terminate on the third-order neurons in the ventral posterolateral nucleus of the thalamus. The final destination of the axons of the third-order neurons has not been established, but it may well be in the postcentral gyrus of the cerebral cortex.

It has been reported that sensations from a full rectum and a full urinary bladder experienced prior to defecation and micturition are carried by ascending tracts located in the posterior white columns of the spinal cord.

Many of the visceral afferent fibers that enter the spinal cord branch and participate in reflex activity.

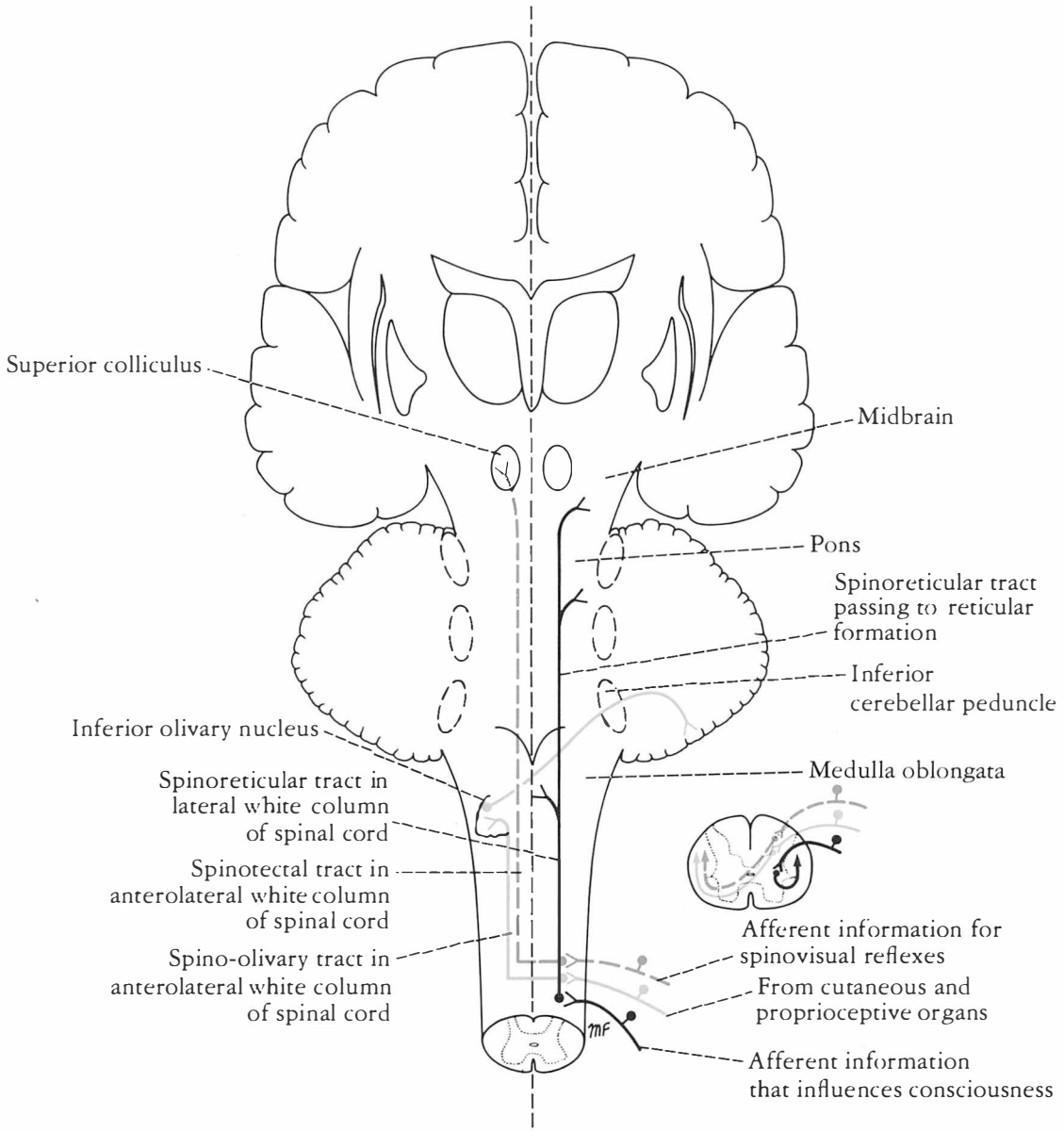


Fig. 19-7. Spinotectal, spinoreticular, and spino-olivary tracts.

Clinical Notes

General Considerations

Two main types of sensory information enter the spinal cord through the posterior roots: (1) conscious sensory information, which is conveyed to the cerebral cortex for interpretation through the thalamus, and (2) unconscious sensory information, which is conveyed to the cerebellum and assists in coordinating muscle activity. Other sensory information is conducted to the midbrain for the purpose of activating visual reflexes and to the reticular formation to activate this system. Some of the unconscious sensory information takes part in local spinal reflex activity.

Summary of the Principal Sensory Pathways

Conscious sensory information. The pain and temperature sensations ascend in the lateral spinal thalamic tract on the contralateral side of the spinal cord and eventually reach the postcentral gyrus of the cerebral cortex on the opposite side of the body (see Fig. 19-3).

Discriminative touch, vibratory sense, and muscle joint sense ascend in the fasciculus gracilis and the fasciculus cuneatus on the ipsilateral side of the spinal cord and eventually reach the postcentral gyrus on the opposite side of the body, the pathway having crossed the midline in the medulla oblongata (see Fig. 19-5).

Light touch and pressure sensations ascend in the anterior spinothalamic tract on the contralateral side of the spinal cord and eventually reach the postcentral gyrus on the opposite side of the body (see Fig. 19-4).

Unconscious sensory information. Sensations from the muscles, tendons, and joints ascend in the posterior spinocerebellar tracts on the ipsilateral side of the spinal cord and in the anterior spinocerebellar tracts on both sides of the cord (see Fig. 19-6). Although the majority of the fibers in the anterior spinocerebellar tracts have crossed from the opposite side, there is clinical evidence to suggest that the fibers cross back to their original side within the cerebellum. Thus, the above proprioceptive information is conveyed ultimately to the cerebellar hemisphere of the same side of the body. Additional proprioceptive information is carried to the cerebellar cortex of the same side through the cuneocerebellar tracts (see Fig. 19-5), and indirectly through the spino-olivary tract (Fig. 19-7).

The spinotectal tract carries afferent information from the opposite side of the body to the superior colliculus of the midbrain for spinovisual reflexes (Fig. 19-7). Other afferent information is conveyed to the reticular formation in the brainstem for the purpose of alerting this system.

Neurons of the Sensory Pathways

It is interesting to note that those pathways that travel the farthest, i.e., from the spinal cord to the cerebral cortex, have three orders of neurons. The first-order neuron has its cell body in the posterior root ganglion; the second-order neuron has its cell body either in the posterior gray column of the spinal cord or in the nucleus gracilis or nucleus cuneatus in the medulla oblongata; the third-order neuron has its cell body in the ventral posterolateral nucleus of the thalamus.

Those pathways that ascend from the spinal cord to the cerebellum or midbrain have two orders of neurons. The first-order neuron has its cell body in the posterior root ganglion. The second-order neuron has its cell body in the gray matter of the spinal cord or in the nucleus cuneatus (cuneocerebellar tract).

Injury to the Ascending Tracts within the Spinal Cord

Lateral spinothalamic tract. Destruction of this tract produces contralateral loss of pain and thermal sensibilities below the level of the lesion. The patient will not, therefore, respond to pin prick or recognize hot and cold objects placed in contact with the skin.

Anterior spinothalamic tract. Destruction of this tract produces contralateral loss of light touch and pressure sensibilities below the level of the lesion. Remember that discriminative touch will still be present, because this information is conducted

through the fasciculus gracilis and fasciculus cuneatus. The patient will not feel the light touch of a piece of cotton placed against the skin or feel pressure from a blunt object placed against the skin.

Fasciculus gracilis and fasciculus cuneatus. Destruction of these tracts cuts off the supply of information from the muscles and joints to consciousness; thus, the individual does not know about the position and movements of his ipsilateral limbs below the level of the lesion. With the patient's eyes closed, he is unable to tell you where his limb or part of his limb is in space. For example, if you passively dorsiflex his big toe, he is unable to tell you whether the toe is pointing upward or downward. The patient has impaired muscular control and his movements are jerky or ataxic.

The patient also has loss of vibration sense below the level of the lesion on the same side. This is easily tested by applying a vibrating tuning fork to a bony prominence such as the lateral malleolus of the fibula or the styloid process of the radius.

There will also be a loss of tactile discrimination on the side of the lesion. This is tested most easily by gradually separating the two points of a compass until the patient can appreciate them as two separate points, not as one, when they are applied to the skin surface. In a normal individual, the points have to be separated by about 3 to 4 mm before they are recognized as separate points on the tips of the fingers.

The sense of general light touch would be unaffected, because these impulses ascend in the anterior spinothalamic tracts.

It should be pointed out that it is extremely rare for a lesion of the spinal cord to be so localized as to affect one sensory tract only. It is more usual to have several ascending and descending tracts involved.

Relief of Pain by Rhizotomy or Cordotomy

Surgical relief of pain has been used extensively in patients with terminal cancer. Posterior rhizotomy or division of the posterior root of a spinal nerve effectively severs the conduction of pain into the central nervous system. It is a relatively simple procedure, but, unfortunately, the operation deprives the patient of other sensations besides pain. Moreover, if the pain sensation is entering the spinal cord through more than one spinal nerve, it may be necessary to divide several posterior roots.

Thoracic cordotomy has been performed with success in patients with severe pain originating from the lower abdomen or pelvis. Essentially, the operation consists of dividing the lateral spinothalamic tracts by inserting a knife into the anterolateral quadrant of the spinal cord. It is important to remember that the lateral spinothalamic fibers have originated in cells of the substantia gelatinosa in the opposite posterior gray column, and that they cross the spinal cord obliquely and reach their tract in the white column three or four segments higher than their posterior root of entry. Cervical cordotomy has been performed successfully in patients with intractable pain in the neck or thorax.

Tabes Dorsalis

Tabes doralis is due to syphilis. The organism causes a selective destruction of nerve fibers at the point of entrance of the posterior root into the spinal cord, especially in the lower thoracic and lumbosacral regions (Fig. 19-8). The following symptoms and signs may be present: (1) stabbing pains in the lower limbs, which may be very severe; (2) paresthesia, with numbness in the lower limbs; (3) hypersensitivity of skin to touch, heat, and cold; (4) loss of sensation in the skin of parts of the trunk and lower limbs; loss of awareness that the urinary bladder is full; (5) loss of appreciation of posture or passive movements of the limbs, especially the legs; (6) loss of deep pain sensation, such as when the muscles are forcibly compressed or when the tendo Achillis is compressed between the finger and thumb; (7) loss of pain sensation in the skin in certain areas of the body, such as the side of the nose or the medial border of the forearm, or the thoracic wall between the nipples, or the lateral border of the leg; (8) ataxia of the lower limbs as the result of loss of proprioceptive sensibility (the unsteadiness in gait is compensated

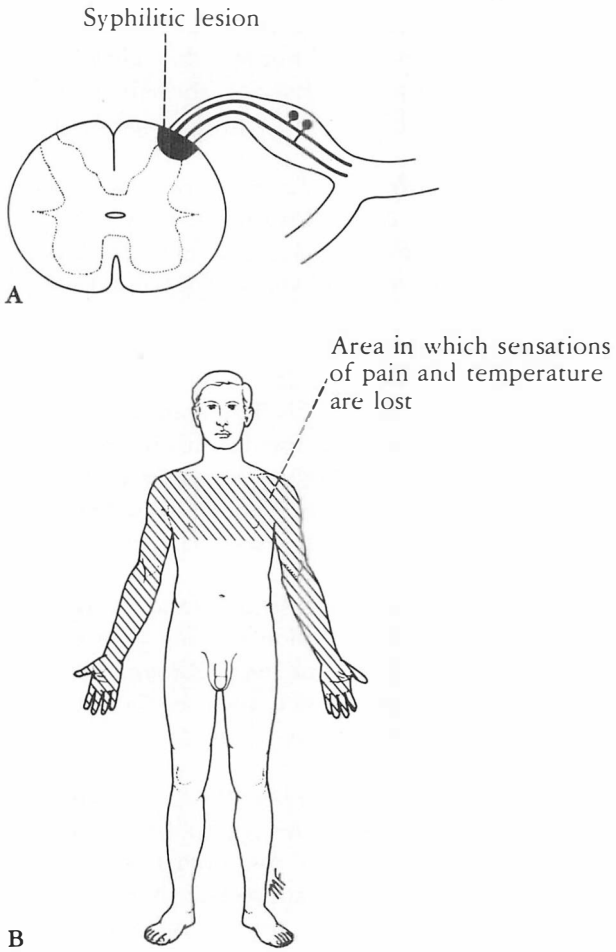


Fig. 19-8. A. Site of syphilitic lesion on spinal cord. B. Skin area in which sensations of pain and temperature are lost in syringomyelia.

to some extent by vision; however, in the dark, or if the eyes are closed, the ataxia becomes worse and the person may fall); (9) hypotonia as the result of loss of proprioceptive information that arises from the muscles and joints; and (10) loss of tendon reflexes, owing to degeneration of the afferent fiber component of the reflex arc (the knee and ankle tendon jerks are lost early in the disease).

Syringomyelia

This disease of unknown cause is accompanied by gliosis and cavitation of the cervical segments of the spinal cord and brainstem (Fig. 19-8). It occasionally occurs at other levels of the spinal cord. The condition interrupts the lateral and anterior spinothalamic tracts as they cross the spinal cord in the anterior gray and white commissures. The patient has segmental losses of pain and thermal sensibility, which are often bilateral, and some impairment of touch sensation. As the cavitation expands, other tracts and nerve cells become involved.

Pernicious anemia and multiple sclerosis may also produce extensive sensory losses owing to involvement of the ascending tracts of the spinal cord.

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 494.

1. A 20-year-old male student celebrated the passing of an examination by drinking several beers at a party. On the way home, he drove his car head-on into a bridge abutment. On examination in the emergency room, he was found to have a fracture dislocation of the ninth thoracic vertebra with signs and symptoms of severe damage to the spinal cord. On physical examination, he had an upper motor neuron paralysis of the left leg. He also had loss of muscle joint sense of the left leg. On testing of cutaneous sensibility, he had a band of cutaneous hyperesthesia extending around the abdominal wall on the left side at the level of the umbilicus. Just below this, he had a narrow band of anesthesia and analgesia. On the right side, there was total analgesia, thermoanesthesia, and partial loss of tactile sense of the skin of the abdominal wall below the level of the umbilicus and involving the whole of the right leg. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, state the level at which the spinal cord was damaged. Was the spinal cord completely sectioned? If not, on which side did the hemisection occur? Explain the sensory losses found on examination in this patient.

2. A 35-year-old woman was admitted to the hospital for investigation. She had symptoms of analgesia and thermoanesthesia on the medial side of the left hand of 6 months duration. Three weeks prior to her admittance, she had severely burned the little finger of her left hand on a hot stove, and was unaware that the burn had occurred until she smelled the burning skin. On physical examination, she was found to have considerably reduced pain and temperature sense involving the eighth cervical and first thoracic dermatomes of the left hand. However, her sense of tactile discrimination was perfectly normal in these areas. Examination of the right arm showed a similar but much less severe dissociated sensory loss involving the same areas. No further abnormal signs were discovered. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, can you state which tract or tracts were involved in this pathological process? Do you know the name of this disease?

3. A 60-year-old man walked into the neurology clinic and the physician paid particular attention to his gait. The patient raised his feet unnecessarily high and brought them to the ground in a stamping manner. While he was waiting for the physician, it was noticed that he stood with his feet wide apart. On questioning, the patient said that he was finding it increasingly difficult to walk, and was starting to use a stick, especially when he went out for walks in the dark. The physician asked the patient to stand with his toes and heels together and to close his eyes. The patient immediately started to sway and the nurse had to steady him to prevent him from falling. On further examination, the patient was found to have loss of muscle joint sense of both legs and was unable to detect any feeling of vibration when a vibrating tuning fork was placed on the medial malleolus of either leg. No other sensory losses were noted. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, name the ascending pathways that are involved, by disease, in this patient. Can you name a disease that could be responsible for these findings?

4. A 68-year-old man had an advanced inoperable carcinoma of the prostate with multiple metastases in the lumbar vertebrae and innominate bones. Apart from the severe intractable pain, the patient was still able to enjoy life among his family. After a full discussion of the prognosis with the patient and his wife she turned to the physician and said, "Can't you do something to stop this terrible pain, so that my husband can die happy?" What can a physician do to help his patient under these circumstances?

Additional Reading

Guttmann, L. *Spinal Cord Injuries* (2nd ed.). Oxford: Blackwell, 1976.

Jennett, W. B. *An Introduction to Neurosurgery* (2nd ed.). St. Louis: Mosby, 1970.

Walton, J. N. *Brain's Diseases of the Nervous System* (8th ed.). New York and London: Oxford University Press, 1977.

Warwick, R., and Williams, P. L. *Gray's Anatomy* (35th Brit. ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders, 1973.

Youmans, J. R. *Neurological Surgery,* Vol. 3. Philadelphia: Saunders, 1973.

20
The Descending Tracts of the Spinal Cord and Skeletal Muscle Activity

The motor neurons situated in the anterior gray columns of the spinal cord send axons to innervate skeletal muscle through the anterior roots of the spinal nerves. These motor neurons are sometimes referred to as the *lower motor neurons* and constitute the final common pathway to the muscles (Fig. 20-1).

The lower motor neurons are constantly bombarded by nervous impulses that descend from the medulla, pons, midbrain, and cerebral cortex, as well as those that enter along sensory fibers from the posterior roots. The nerve fibers that descend in the white matter from different supraspinal nerve centers are segrated into nerve bundles called the *descending tracts*. These supraspinal neurons and their tracts sometimes are referred to as the *upper motor neurons* and they provide numerous separate pathways that can influence motor activity.

Anatomical Organization

Control of skeletal muscle activity from the cerebral cortex and other higher centers is conducted through the nervous system by a series of neurons (Fig. 20-1). The descending pathway from the cerebral cortex is often made up of three neurons. The first neuron, the *first-order neuron,* has its cell body in the cerebral cortex. Its axon descends to synapse on the *second-order neuron,* an internuncial neuron, situated in the anterior gray column of the spinal cord (Fig. 20-1). The axon of the second-order neuron is short and synapses with the *third-order neuron,* the lower motor neuron, in the anterior gray column (Fig. 20-1). The axon of the third-order neuron innervates the skeletal muscle through the anterior root and spinal nerve. In some instances, the axon of the first-order neuron terminates directly on the third-order neuron (as in reflex arcs).

Functions of the Descending Tracts

The corticospinal tracts (Fig. 20-2) are the pathways concerned with voluntary, discrete, skilled movements, especially those of the distal parts of the limbs. The *reticulospinal tracts* (Fig. 20-2) may facilitate or inhibit the activity of the alpha and gamma motor neurons in the anterior gray columns and may, therefore, facilitate or inhibit voluntary movement or reflex activity. The *tectospinal tract* (Fig. 20-2) is concerned with reflex postural movements in response to visual stimuli. Those fibers that are associated with the sympathetic neurons in the lateral gray column are concerned with the pupillodilation reflex in response to darkness. The *rubrospinal tract* (Fig. 20-2) acts on both the alpha and gamma motor neurons in the anterior gray columns, and facilitates the activity of flexor muscles and inhibits the activity of extensor or antigravity muscles. The *vestibulospinal tract* (Fig. 20-2), by acting on the motor neurons in the anterior gray columns, facilitates the activity of the extensor muscles, inhibits the activity of the flexor muscles, and is concerned with the postural activity associated with balance. The *olivospinal tract* (Fig. 20-2) may play a role in muscular activity, but its precise function is unknown. The *descending autonomic fibers* are concerned with the control of visceral activity.

Corticospinal Tracts

Fibers of the corticospinal tract arise as axons of pyramidal cells situated in the fifth layer of the cerebral cortex (Fig. 20-3). About one-third of the

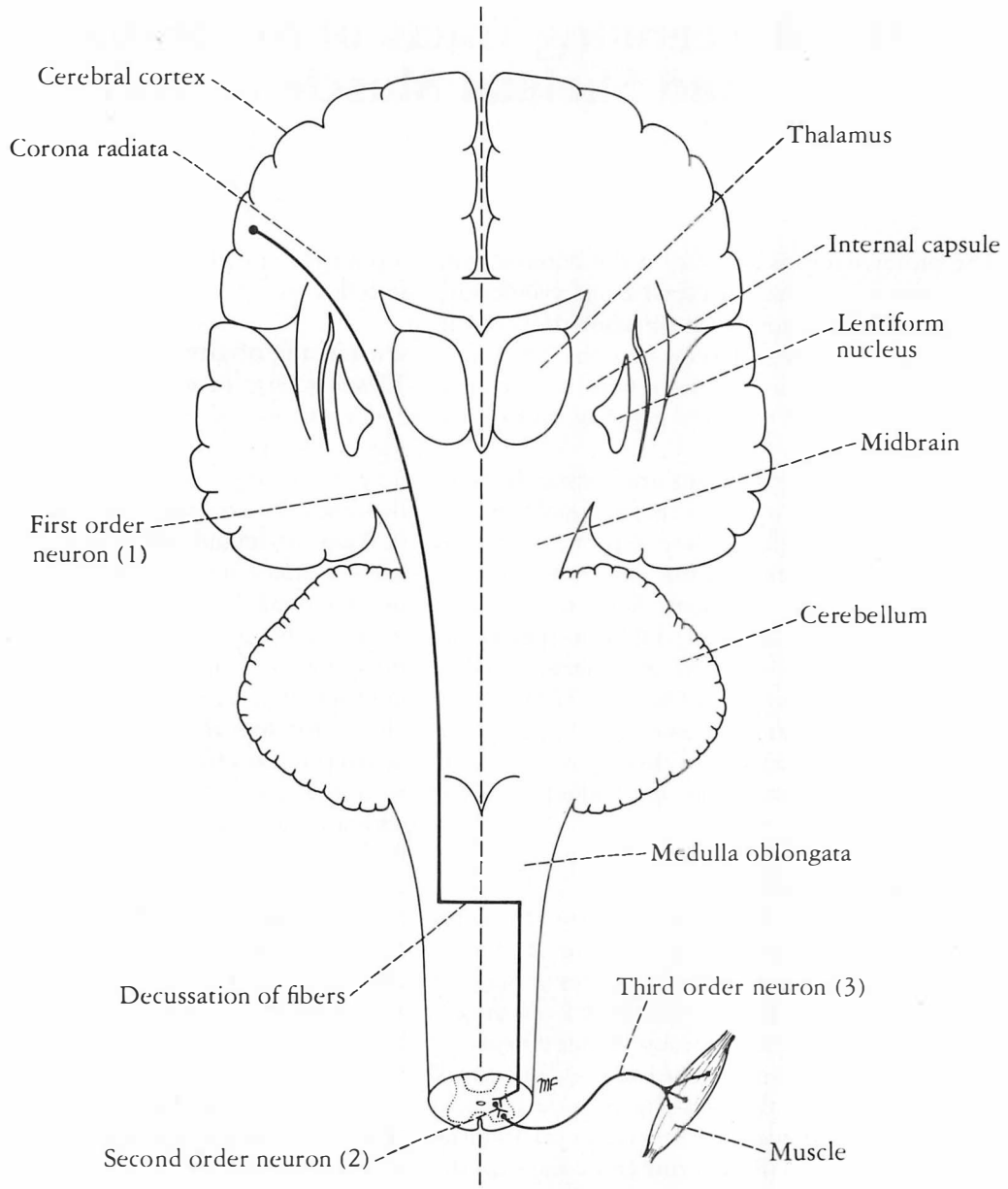


Fig. 20-1. Simple form of descending motor pathway from the cerebral cortex to the skeletal muscle. Note the three neurons involved.

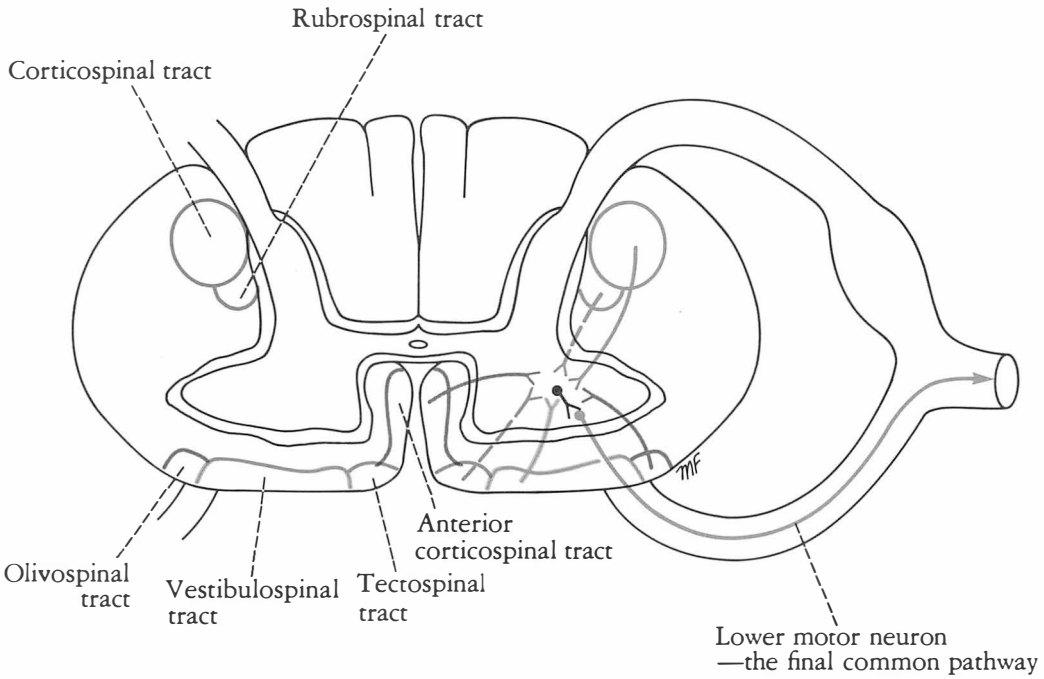


Fig. 20-2. Transverse section of spinal cord, showing termination of main descending motor tracts.

fibers originate from the primary motor cortex (area 4), one-third from the secondary motor cortex (area 6), and one-third from the parietal lobe (areas 3, 1, and 2); thus, two-thirds of the fibers arise from the precentral gyrus and one-third from the postcentral gyrus. Since electrical stimulation of different parts of these areas of the cerebral cortex produces movements of different parts of the opposite side of the body, we can represent the parts of the body in this area of the cortex. Such a homunculus is shown in Figure 20-3. Note that the region controlling the face is situated inferiorly and the lower limb is situated superiorly and on the medial surface of the hemisphere. The homunculus is a distorted picture of the body, with the various parts having a size proportional to the area of the cerebral cortex devoted to their control. It is interesting to find that the majority of the corticospinal fibers are myelinated and are relatively slow-conducting, small fibers.

The descending fibers converge in the *corona radiata* and then pass through the posterior limb of the *internal capsule* (Fig. 20-3). Here the fibers are organized so that those closest to the genu are concerned with cervical portions of the body, while those situated more posteriorly are concerned with the lower extremity. The tract then continues through the middle three-fifths of the *basis pedunculi of the midbrain* (Fig. 20-3). Here, the fibers concerned with cervical portions of the body are situated medially, while those concerned with the leg are placed laterally.

On entering the pons, the tract is broken into many bundles by the *transverse pontocerebellar fibers* (see Figs. 9-3, 9-5, and 9-6). In the medulla oblongata, the bundles become grouped together along the anterior border to form a swelling known as the *pyramid* (hence the alternative name, *pyramidal tract*) (see Fig. 8-1). At the junction of the medulla oblongata and the spinal cord, the majority of the fibers cross the midline at the *decussation of the pyramids* (Fig. 20-3) and enter the lateral white column of the spinal cord to form the *lateral*

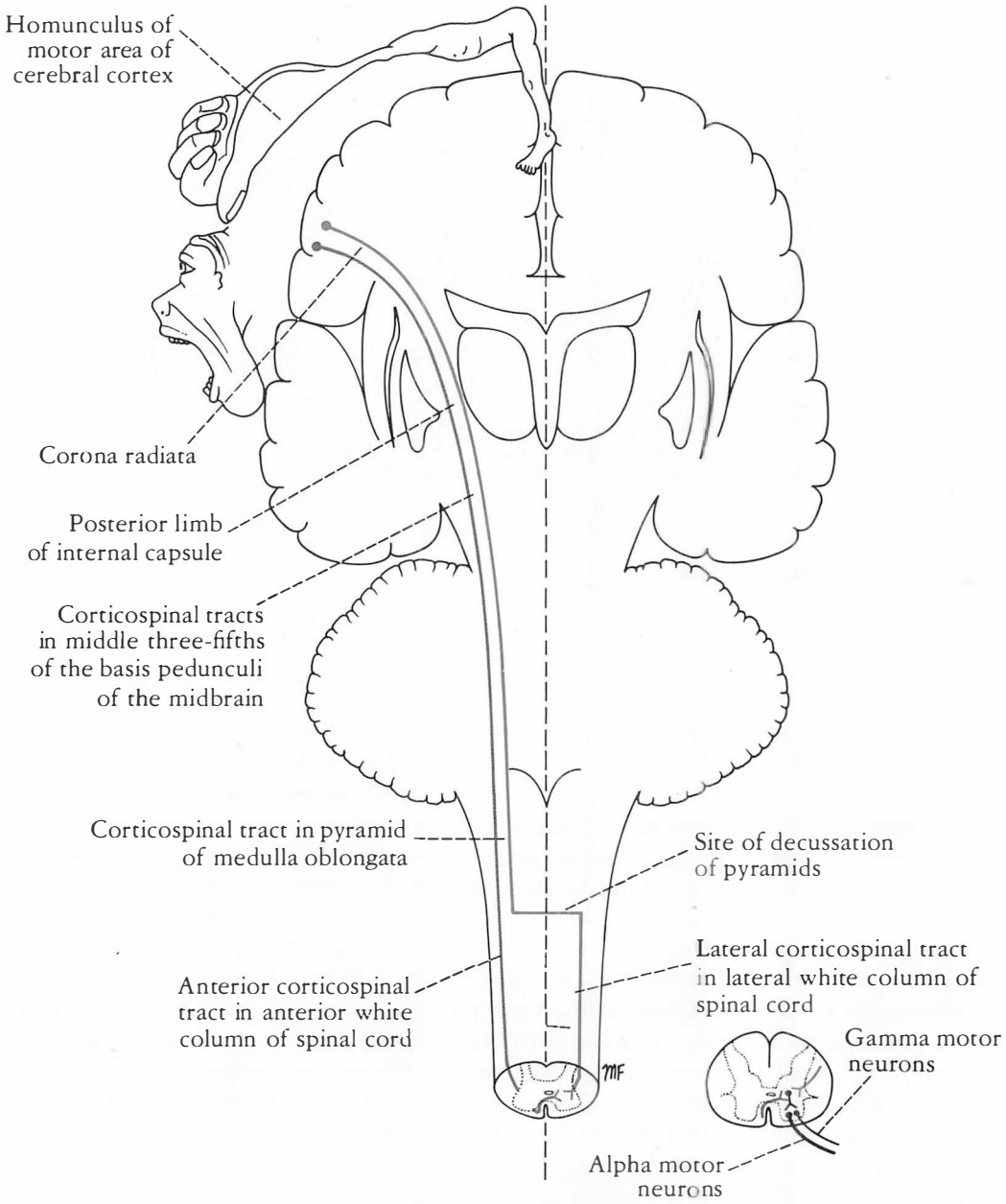


Fig. 20-3. Corticospinal tracts.

corticospinal tract (Fig. 20-2). The remaining fibers do not cross in the decussation, but descend in the anterior white column of the spinal cord as the *anterior corticospinal tract* (Figs. 20-2 and 20-3). These fibers eventually cross the midline and terminate in the anterior gray column of the spinal cord segments in the cervical and upper thoracic regions.

The lateral corticospinal tract descends the length of the spinal cord and its fibers terminate in the anterior gray column of all the spinal cord segments.

The majority of the corticospinal fibers synapse with internuncial neurons, which in turn synapse with alpha motor neurons and some gamma motor neurons. Only the largest corticospinal fibers synapse directly with the motor neurons.

It is important to understand that the corticospinal tracts are not the sole pathway for serving voluntary movement. Rather, they form the pathway that confers speed and agility to voluntary movements and is thus used in performing rapid skilled movements. Many of the simple, basic voluntary movements are believed to be mediated by other descending tracts.

Reticulospinal Tracts

Throughout the midbrain, pons, and medulla oblongata groups of scattered nerve cells and nerve fibers exist that are collectively known as the *reticular formation.* From the pons, these neurons send axons, which are mostly uncrossed, down into the spinal cord and form the *pontine reticulospinal tract* (Fig. 20-4). From the medulla, similar neurons send axons, which are crossed and uncrossed, to the spinal cord and form the *medullary reticulospinal tract.*

The reticulospinal fibers from the pons descend through the anterior white column, while those from the medulla oblongata descend in the lateral white column (Fig. 20-4). Both sets of fibers enter the anterior gray columns of the spinal cord and may facilitate or inhibit the activity of the alpha and gamma motor neurons. By this means the reticulospinal tracts influence voluntary movements and reflex activity.

Tectospinal Tract

Fibers of this tract arise from nerve cells in the *superior colliculus* of the midbrain (Fig. 20-5). The majority of the fibers cross the midline soon after their origin and descend through the brainstem close to the *medial longitudinal fasciculus*. The tectospinal tract descends through the anterior white column of the spinal cord close to the anterior median fissure (see Figs. 20-2 and 20-5). The majority of the fibers terminate in the anterior gray column in the upper cervical segments of the spinal cord by synapsing with internuncial neurons. These fibers are believed to be concerned with reflex postural movements in response to visual stimuli. Some of the fibers synapse with sympathetic neurons in the lateral gray column in the upper thoracic levels of the spinal cord and participate in reflex activity associated with pupillodilatation in response to darkness.

Rubrospinal Tract

The *red nucleus* is situated in the tegmentum of the midbrain at the level of the superior colliculus (Fig. 20-6). The axons of neurons in this nucleus cross the midline at the level of the nucleus and descend as the rubrospinal tract through the pons and medulla oblongata to enter the lateral white column of the spinal cord (see Figs. 20-2 and 20-6). The fibers terminate by synapsing with internuncial neurons in the anterior gray column of the cord.

The neurons of the red nucleus recieve afferent impulses through connections with the cerebral cortex and the cerebellum. This is believed to be an important indirect pathway by which the cerebral cortex and the cerebellum can influence the activity of the alpha and gamma motor neurons of the spinal cord. The tract facilitates the activity of the flexor muscles and inhibits the activity of the extensor or antigravity muscles.

Vestibulospinal Tract

The *vestibular nuclei* are situated in the pons and medulla oblongata beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle (Fig. 20-7). The vestibular nuclei receive

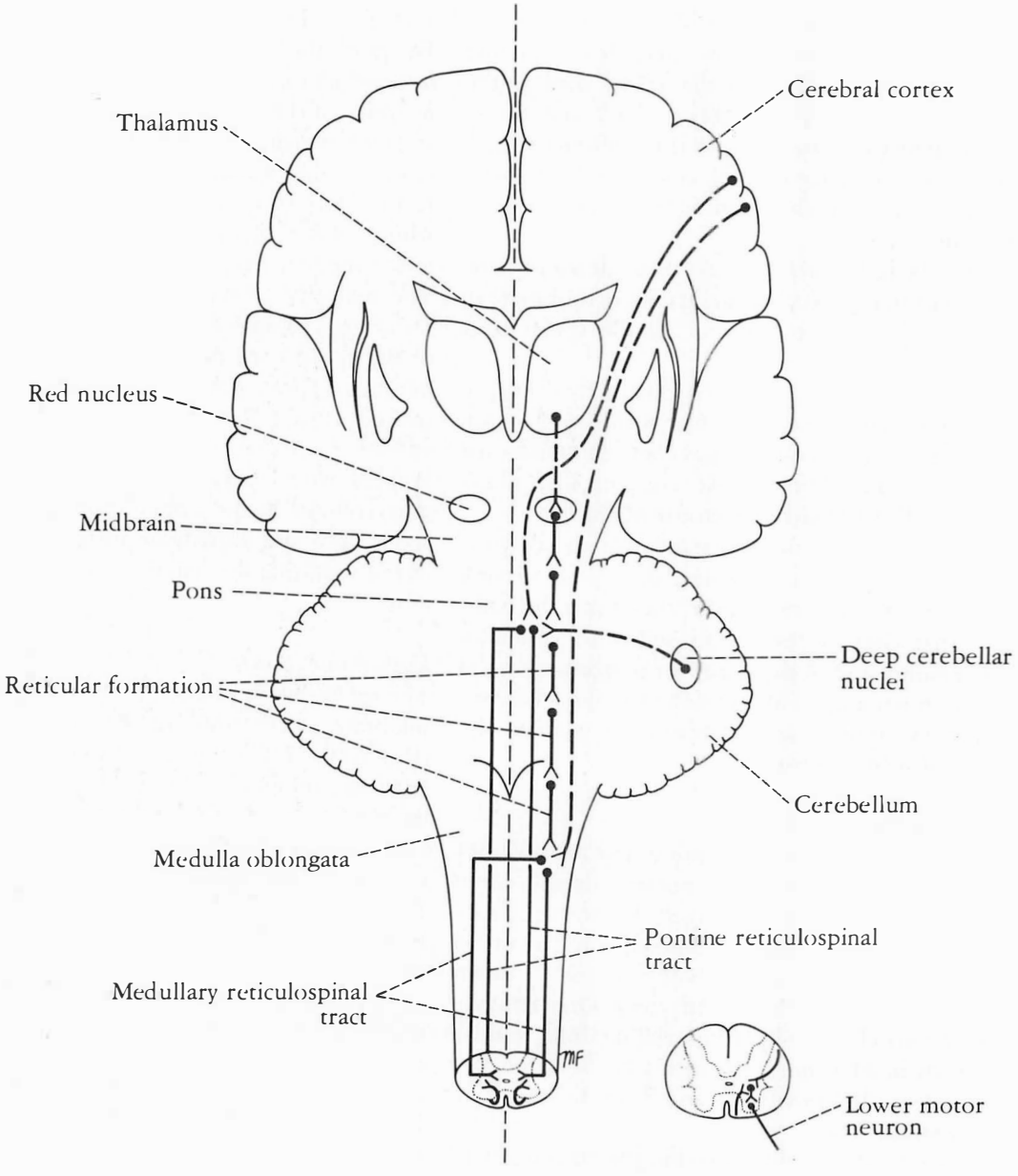


Fig. 20-4. Reticulospinal tracts.

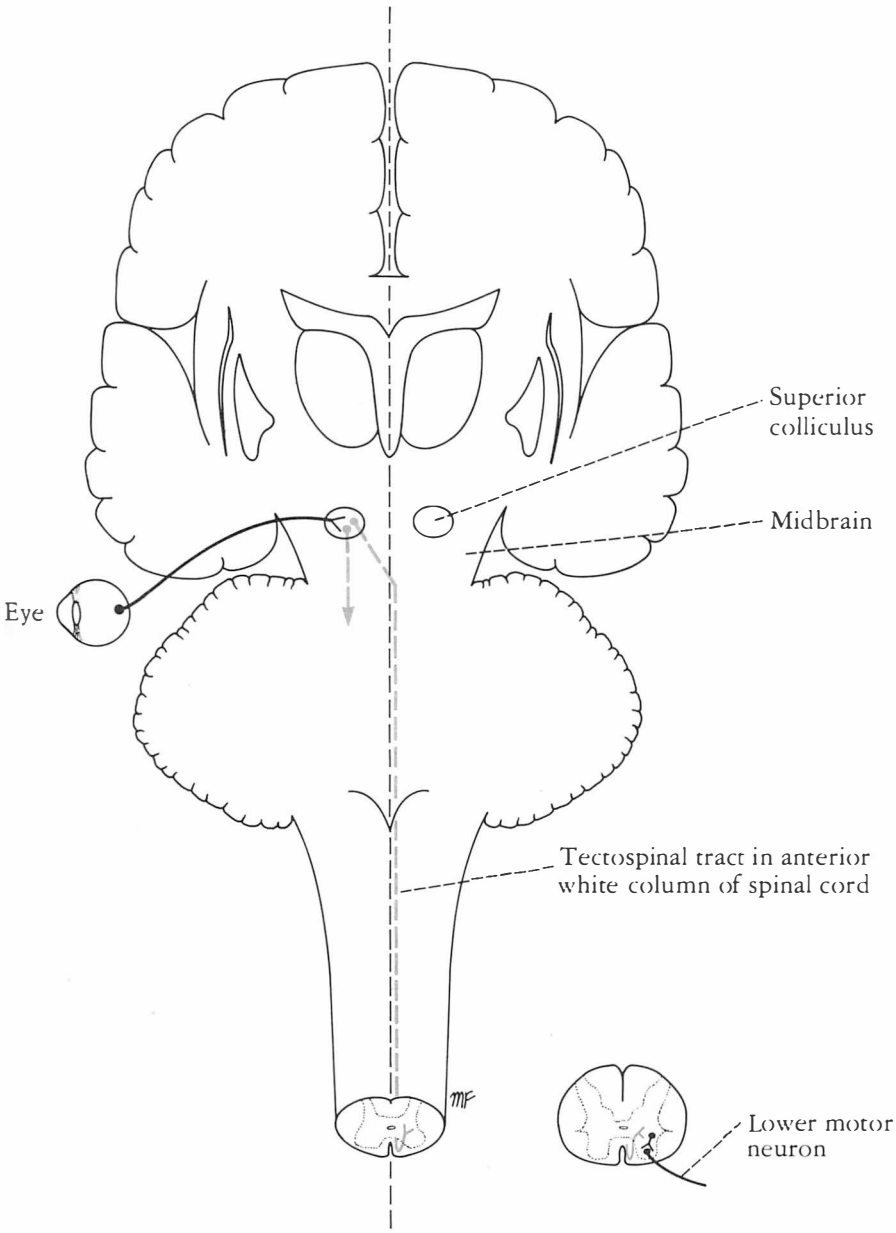


Fig. 20-5. Tectospinal tract.

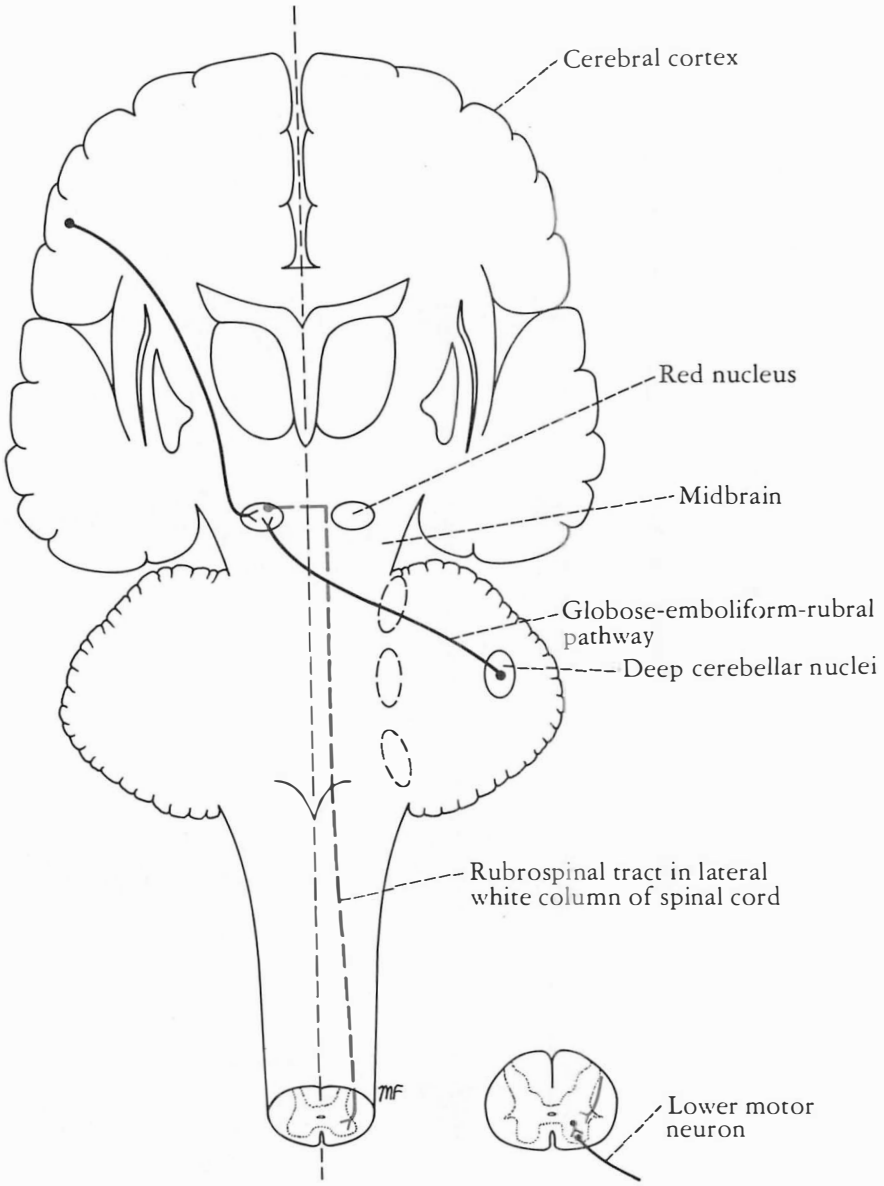


Fig. 20-6. Rubrospinal tract.

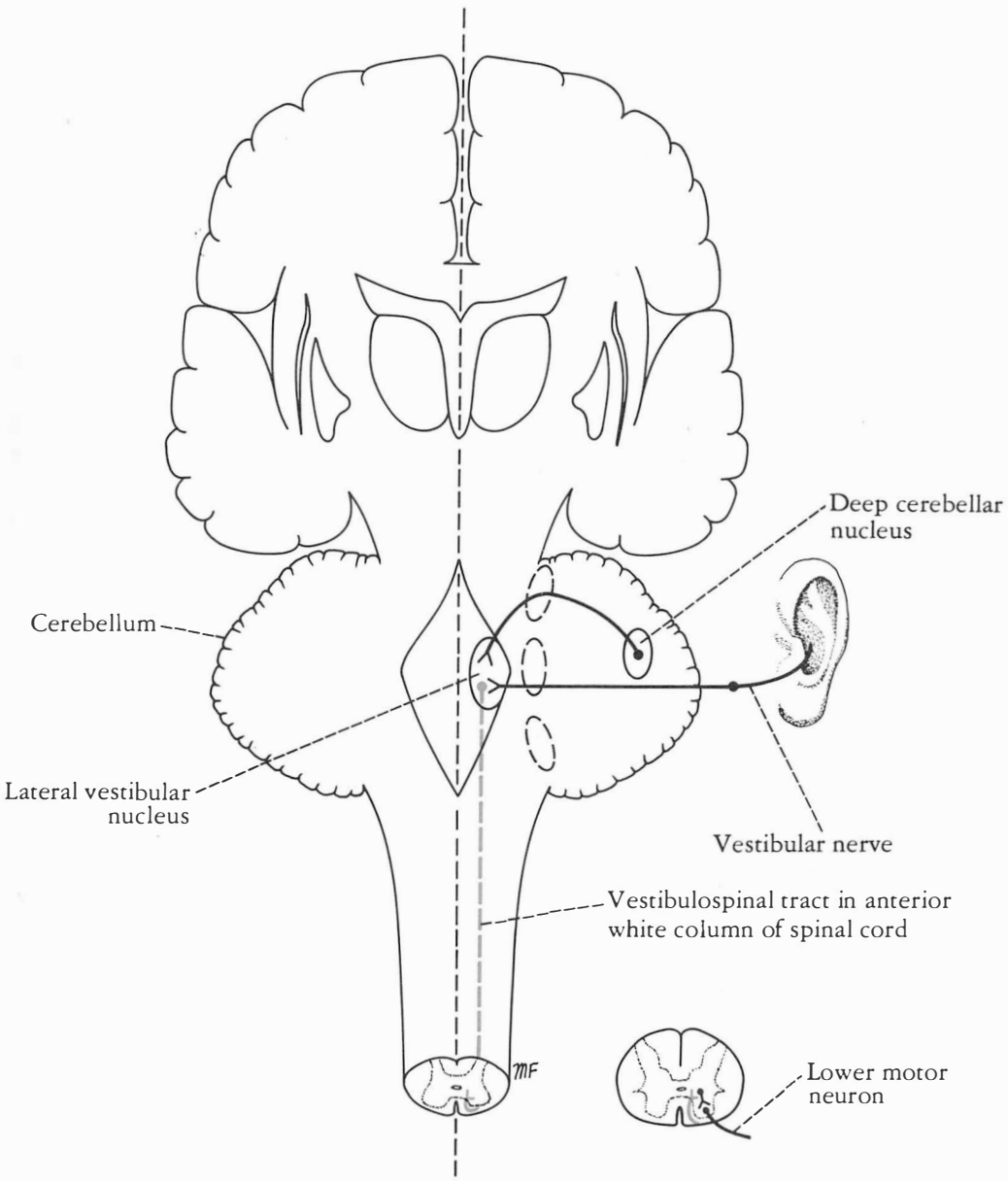


Fig. 20-7. Vestibulospinal tract.

afferent fibers from the inner ear through the vestibular nerve and from the cerebellum. The neurons of the lateral vestibular nucleus give rise to the axons that form the vestibulospinal tract. The tract descends uncrossed through the medulla and through the length of the spinal cord in the anterior white column (see Figs. 20-2 and 20-7). The fibers terminate by synapsing with internuncial neurons of the anterior gray column of the spinal cord.

The inner ear and the cerebellum, by means of this tract, facilitate the activity of the extensor muscles and inhibit the activity of the flexor muscles in association with the maintenance of balance.

Olivospinal Tract

The *inferior olivary nucleus* is situated in the medulla oblongata (Fig. 20-8). The neurons of the nucleus give rise to axons that form the olivospinal tract. The tract crosses the midline and descends in the lateral white column of the spinal cord (Fig. 20-8). The fibers are believed to terminate by synapsing with motor neurons in the anterior gray column of the spinal cord. The inferior olivary nucleus receives afferent fibers from the cerebral cortex, the corpus striatum, the red nucleus, and the spinal cord (spino-olivary tract). It is thought to influence muscular activity.

Descending Autonomic Fibers

The higher centers of the central nervous system associated with the control of autonomic activity are situated in the cerebral cortex, hypothalamus, amygdaloid complex, and reticular formation. Although distinct tracts have not been recognized, it is known, as the result of study of spinal cord lesions, that descending autonomic tracts do exist.

The fibers arise from neurons in the higher centers and cross the midline in the brainstem. They are believed to descend in the lateral white column of the spinal cord and to terminate by synapsing on the autonomic motor cells in the lateral gray columns in the thoracic and upper lumbar (sympathetic outflow) and midsacral (parasympathetic) levels of the spinal cord.

Intersegmental Tracts

Short ascending and descending tracts, which originate and end within the spinal cord, exist in the anterior, lateral, and posterior white columns. The function of these pathways is to interconnect the neurons of different segmental levels, and they are particularly important in intersegmental spinal reflexes.

Reflex Arc

A *reflex* may be defined as an involuntary response to a stimulus. It depends on the integrity of the reflex arc (Fig. 20-9). In its simplest form, a reflex arc consists of the following anatomical structures: (1) a receptor organ, (2) an afferent neuron, (3) an effector neuron, and (4) an effector organ. Such a reflex arc involving only one synapse is referred to as a *monosynaptic reflex arc*. Interruption of the reflex arc at any point along its course would abolish the response.

In the spinal cord, reflex arcs play an important role in maintaining muscle tone, which is the basis for body posture. The receptor organ is situated in the skin, muscle, or tendon. The cell body of the afferent neuron is located in the posterior root ganglion, and the central axon of this first-order neuron terminates by synapsing on the effector neuron. Since the afferent fibers are of large diameter and are rapidly conducting, and because of the presence of only one synapse, a very quick response is possible.

Physiological study of the electrical activity of the effector neuron shows that following the very quick monosynaptic discharge there is a prolonged asynchronous discharge. The reason for this later discharge is that the afferent fibers entering the spinal cord frequently branch, and the branches synapse with many internuncial neurons, which ultimately synapse with the effector neuron (Fig. 20-10). These additional neuronal circuits prolong the bombardment of the effector neurons after the initial stimulation by the afferent neuron has ceased. The presence of internuncial neurons also results in the spread of the afferent stimulus to neurons at different segmental levels of the spinal cord.

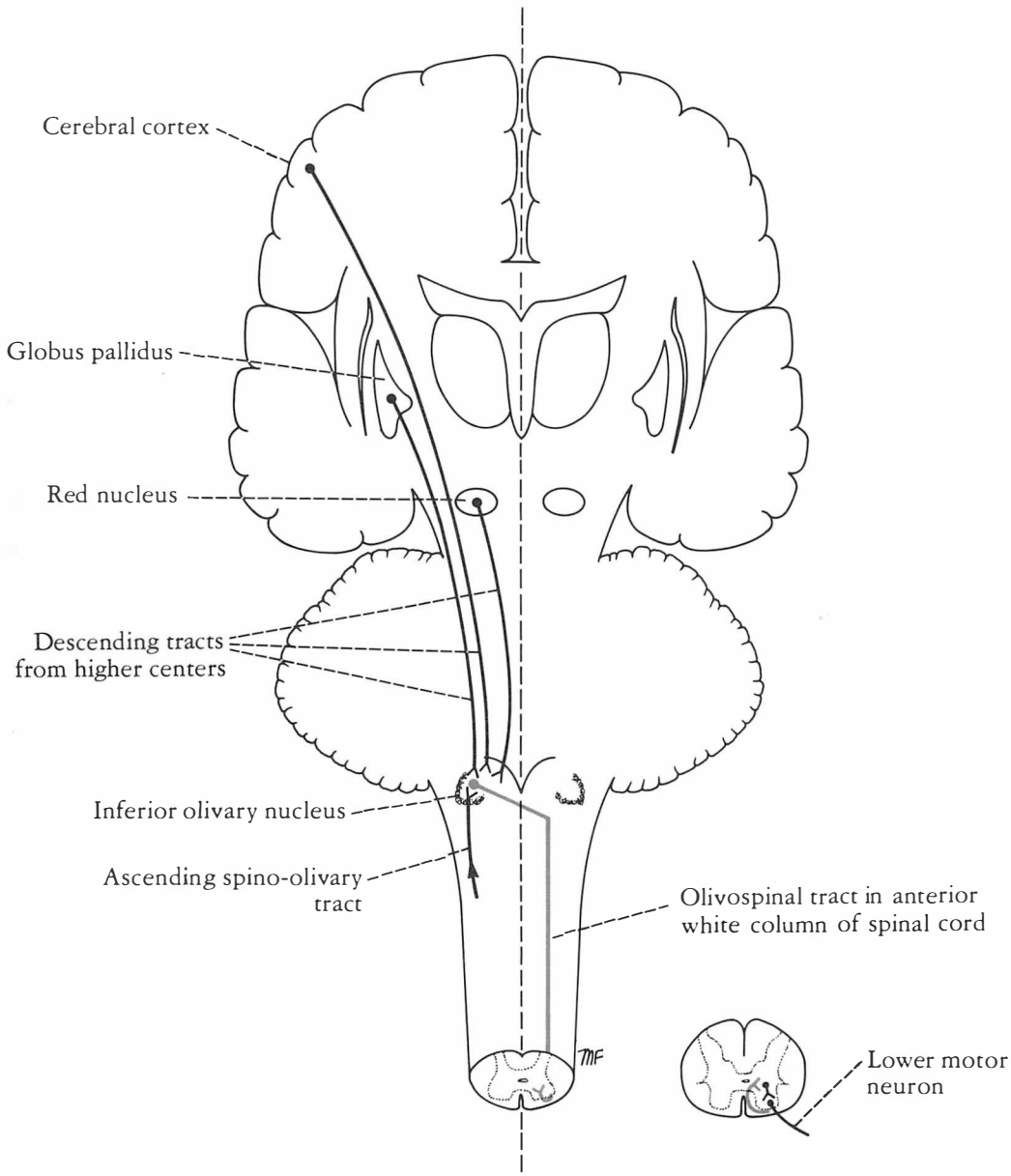


Fig. 20-8. Olivospinal tract.

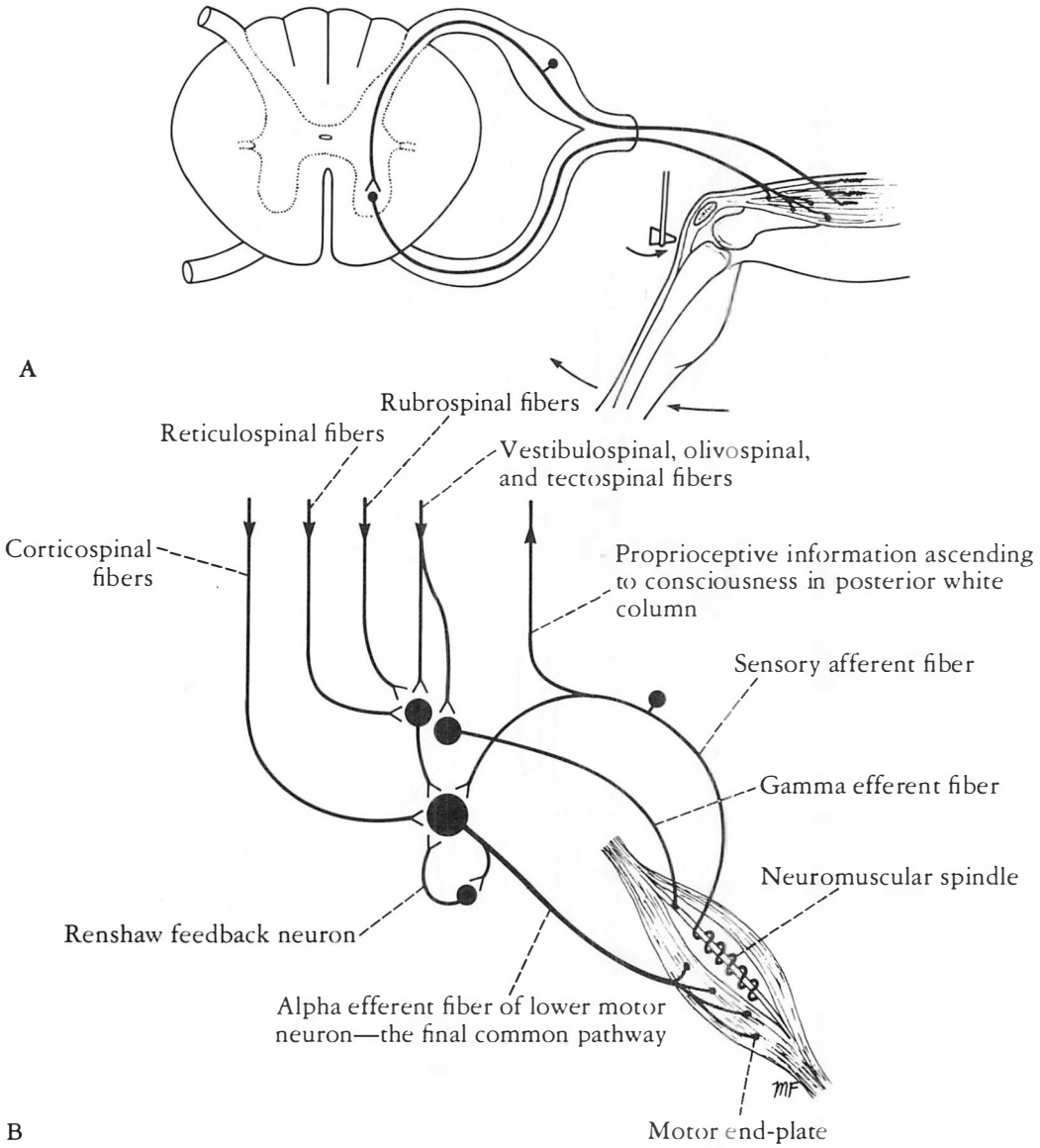


Fig. 20-9. A. A monosynaptic reflex arc.
B. Multiple neurons synapsing with the lower motor neuron.
Note the presence of the Renshaw feedback neuron.

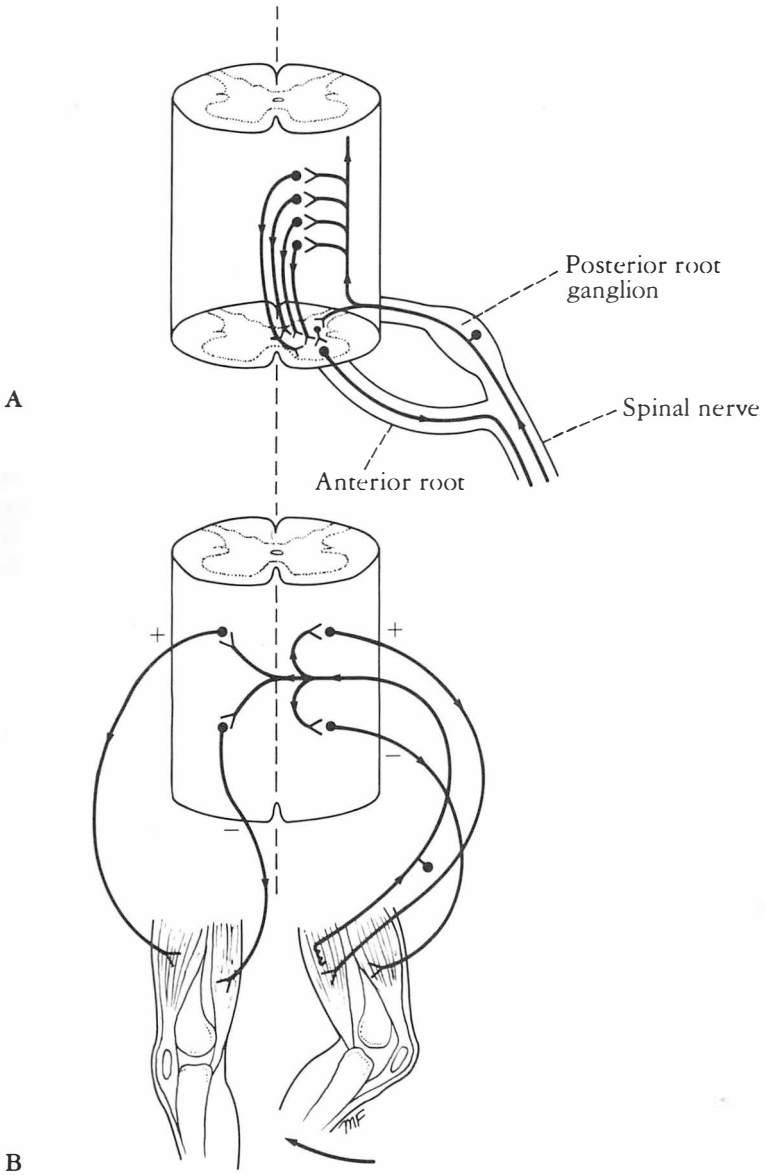


Fig. 20-10. A. Multiple branching of afferent fibers entering spinal cord and the presence of many internuncial neurons that synapse with the effector neuron.
B. Law of reciprocal innervation and the crossed extensor reflex.

In considering reflex skeletal muscle activity it is important to understand the *law of reciprocal innervation* (Fig. 20-10). Simply stated, it means that the flexor and extensor reflexes of the same limb cannot be made to contract simultaneously. For this law to work, the afferent nerve fibers responsible for flexor reflex muscle action must have branches that synapse with the extensor motor neurons of the same limb, causing them to be inhibited.

Another interesting property of spinal reflexes should be pointed out. The evocation of a reflex on one side of the body causes opposite effects on the limb of the other side of the body. This *crossed extensor reflex* (Fig. 20-10) may be demonstrated as follows. Afferent stimulation of the reflex arc that causes the ipsilateral limb to flex results in the contralateral limb being extended.

Influence of Higher Neuronal Centers on the Activities of Spinal Reflexes

The spinal segmental reflex arc involving motor activity is greatly influenced by higher centers in the brain. These influences are mediated through the corticospinal, reticulospinal, tectospinal, rubrospinal, vestibulospinal, and olivospinal tracts. In the clinical condition known as spinal shock, which follows the sudden removal of these influences by severance of the spinal cord, the segmental spinal reflexes are depressed. This may be due in part to the uncontrolled input of the sensory information through the posterior roots and spinal nerves. When the so-called spinal shock disappears in a few weeks, the segmental spinal reflexes return and the muscle tone is increased. This so-called *decerebrate rigidity* is due to the overactivity of the gamma efferent nerve fibers to the muscle spindles, which results from the release of these neurons from the higher centers (see p. 141). The next stage may be *paraplegia in extension* with domination of the increased tone of the extensor muscles over the flexor muscles. Some neurologists believe that this condition is due to incomplete severance of all the descending tracts with persistence of the vestibulospinal tract. Should all the descending tracts be severed, the condition of *paraplegia in flexion* occurs. In this condition, the reflex responses are flexor in nature and the tone of the extensor muscles is diminished.

Renshaw Cells and Lower Motor Neuron Inhibition

Lower motor neuron axons give off collateral branches as they pass through the white matter to reach the anterior roots of the spinal nerve. These collaterals synapse on neurons described by Renshaw, which in turn synapse on the lower motor neurons (Fig. 20-9). These internuncial neurons are believed to provide feedback on the lower motor neurons, inhibiting their activity.

Clinical Notes

General Considerations

Muscle Tone

As has been described previously (see p. 140), muscle tone is a state of continuous partial contraction of a muscle and is dependent on the integrity of a monosynaptic reflex arc. The receptor organs are the muscle spindles and tendon organs. The afferent neuron enters the spinal cord through the posterior root and synapses with the effector neuron or lower motor neuron in the anterior gray column. The lower motor neuron supplies the muscle fibers by traveling through the anterior roots, the spinal nerves, and peripheral nerves. Muscle tone is abolished if any part of that simple reflex arc is destroyed. An atonic muscle feels soft and flabby and atrophies rapidly.

Normal muscle tone exhibits a certain resilience or elasticity, and when a muscle is passively stretched by moving a joint, a certain degree of resistance is felt. Normal muscle tone depends on the integrity of the monosynaptic reflex arc described above, and the control superimposed upon it by impulses received through the descending tracts from supraspinal levels.

Voluntary Movement

Voluntary movement is initiated by the individual. A series of different muscles are made to contract for the purpose of reaching a goal. This would suggest that the descending tracts that influence the activity of the lower motor neurons are driven by information received by the sensory systems, the eyes, the ears, and the muscles themselves, and are affected further by past afferent information that has been stored in the memory. Moreover, the whole process may be colored by past and present emotional input. The limbic structures appear to play a role in emotion, motivation, and memory and they may influence the initiation process of voluntary movement by their projections to the cerebral cortex.

The descending pathways from the cerebral cortex and the brainstem, i.e., the upper motor neurons, influence the activity of the lower motor neurons either directly or through internuncial neurons. Most of the tracts originating in the brainstem that descend to the spinal cord also are receiving input from the cerebral cortex.

The corticospinal tracts are believed to control the prime mover muscles, especially those responsible for the highly skilled movements of the distal parts of the limbs. The other supraspinal descending tracts play a major role in the simple basic voluntary movements, and in addition bring about an adjustment of the muscle tone, so that easy and rapid movements of the joints can take place.

It is interesting to note that the basal ganglia and the cerebellum do not give rise directly to descending tracts that influence the activities of the lower motor neuron, and yet we know that these parts of the nervous system greatly influence voluntary movements. This influence is accomplished indirectly by fibers that project to the cerebral cortex and brainstem nuclei that are the sites of origin of the descending tracts.

Pyramidal and Extrapyramidal Tracts

The term *pyramidal tract* is used commonly by clinicians and refers specifically to the corticospinal tracts. The term came into common usage when it was learned that the corticospinal fibers become concentrated on the anterior part of the medulla oblongata in an area referred to as the *pyramids*.

The term *extrapyramidal tracts* refers to all the descending tracts other than the corticospinal tracts.

Lesions of the Corticospinal Tracts

Lesions that are restricted to the corticospinal tracts produce the following clinical signs:

1. The *Babinski sign* is present. The great toe becomes dorsally flexed in response to scratching the skin along the lateral aspect of the sole of the foot. The normal response is plantar flexion of the toes. Remember that the Babinski sign normally is present during the first year of life, because the corticospinal tract is not myelinated until the end of the first year of life.
2. The *superficial abdominal reflexes* are absent. The abdominal muscles fail to contract when the skin of the abdomen is scratched. The reason that this reflex is dependent on the integrity of the corticospinal tracts is not understood.
3. The *cremasteric reflex* is absent. The cremaster muscle fails to contract when the skin on the medial side of the thigh is stroked. This reflex arc passes through the first lumbar segment of the spinal cord. The reason that this reflex is dependent on the integrity of the corticospinal tracts is not understood.
4. There is *loss of performance of fine skilled voluntary movements*. This occurs especially at the distal end of the limbs.

Lesions of the Descending Tracts (Other than the Corticospinal Tracts)

The following clinical signs are present in lesions of the descending tracts:

1. *Severe paralysis* with little or no muscle atrophy (except secondary to disuse).
2. *Spasticity or hypertonicity* of the muscles. The lower limb is maintained in extension and the upper limb is maintained in flexion.

3. *Exaggerated deep muscle reflexes* and clonus may be present in the flexors of the fingers, the quadriceps femoris, and the calf muscles.
4. *Clasp-knife reaction*. When passive movement of a joint is attempted there is resistance owing to spasticity of the muscles. The muscles, on stretching, suddenly give way; hence the name.

Lesions of the Lower Motor Neuron

Trauma, infection (poliomyelitis), vascular disorders, degenerative diseases, and neoplasms may all produce a lesion of the lower motor neuron by destroying the cell body in the anterior gray column or its axon in the anterior root or spinal nerve. The following clinical signs are present in the lower motor neuron lesions:

1. *Flaccid paralysis* of muscles supplied.
2. *Atrophy* of muscles supplied.
3. *Loss of reflexes* of muscles supplied.
4. *Muscular fasciculation*. This is twitching of muscles seen only when there is slow destruction of the lower motor neuron cell.
5. *Muscular contracture*. This is a shortening of the paralyzed muscles. It occurs more often in the antagonist muscles whose action is no longer opposed by the paralyzed muscles.
6. *Reaction of degeneration*. Normally innervated muscles respond to stimulation by the application of faradic (interrupted) current and the contraction continues as long as the current is passing. Galvanic or direct current causes contraction only when the current is turned on or turned off. When the lower motor neuron is cut, a muscle will no longer respond to interrupted electrical stimulation 7 days after nerve section, although it still will respond to direct current. After 10 days, the response to direct current also ceases. This change in muscle response to electrical stimulation is known as the *reaction of degeneration*.

TYPES OF PARALYSIS

Hemiplegia is a paralysis of one side of the body and includes the upper limb, one side of the trunk, and the lower limb.

Monoplegia is a paralysis of one limb only.

Diplegia is a paralysis of two corresponding limbs (i.e., arms or legs).

Paraplegia is a paralysis of the two lower limbs.

Quadriplegia is a paralysis of all four limbs.

Relationship of Muscular Signs and Symptoms to Lesions of the Nervous System

Abnormal Muscle Tone

HYPOTONIA. This condition exists when the muscle tone is diminished or absent. It occurs when any part of the monosynaptic stretch reflex arc is interrupted. It also occurs in cerebellar disease as the result of diminished influence on the gamma motor neurons from the cerebellum.

HYPERTONIA (Spasticity, Rigidity). This condition exists when the muscle tone is increased. It occurs when lesions exist that involve supraspinal centers or their descending tracts but *not* the corticospinal tract. It also may occur at the local spinal segmental level and be produced by local excitation of the stretch reflex by sensory irritation (e.g., spasm of back muscles secondary to prolapsed intervertebral disc, spasm of abdominal muscles secondary to peritonitis).

TREMORS. Tremors are rhythmic involuntary movements that result from the contraction of opposing muscle groups. These may be slow, as in *parkinsonism*, or fast, as in toxic tremors from thyrotoxicosis. They may occur at rest, as in parkinsonism, or with action, the so-called intention tremor, as seen in cerebellar disease.

SPASMS. Spasms are sudden involuntary contractions of large groups of muscles. Examples of spasms are seen in paraplegia and are due to lesions involving the descending tracts but not the corticospinal tract.

ATHETOSIS. Athetosis means continuous, slow, involuntary, arrhythmic movements that are always the same in the same patient and disappear

during sleep. They impede voluntary movement. Athetosis occurs in lesions of the corpus striatum.

CHOREA. Chorea consists of a series of continuous, rapid, involuntary, jerky, coarse, purposeless movements, which may occur during sleep. Chorea occurs in lesions of the corpus striatum.

DYSTONIA. Dystonia consists of frequent, maintained contractions of hypertonic muscles, leading to bizarre postures. It occurs in lesions of the lentiform nucleus.

MYOCLONUS. Myoclonus is a sudden contraction of an isolated muscle or part of a muscle. It occurs irregularly and commonly involves a muscle of a limb. It may be present in diseases that involve the reticular formation and the cerebellum. Normal myoclinic jerks sometimes occur in individuals as they are falling asleep and are believed to be due to a sudden temporary reactivation of the reticular formation.

HEMIBALLISMUS. Hemiballismus is a rare form of involuntary movement confined to one side of the body. It usually involves the proximal extremity musculature and the limb involved is made to fly about in all directions. The lesion responsible occurs in the opposite subthalamic nucleus.

Common Clinical Syndromes Affecting the Motor Systems

Hemisection of the Spinal Cord (Brown-Séquard Syndrome)

Hemisection of the spinal cord may be caused by bullet or stab wounds, or by an expanding tumor. Incomplete hemisection is common; complete hemisection is rare. The following characteristic clinical features (Fig. 20-11) will be seen in patients with a complete hemisection of the cord after the period of spinal shock has ended:

1. Ipsilateral lower motor neuron paralysis in the segment of the lesion and muscular atrophy. These signs are caused by damage to the neurons in the anterior gray column and possibly by damage to the nerve roots of the same segment.

2. Ipsilateral spastic paralysis below the level of the lesion. There is an ipsilateral Babinski sign present, and, depending on the segment of the cord damaged, there are an ipsilateral loss of superficial abdominal reflexes and an ipsilateral loss of the cremasteric reflex. All these signs are due to loss of the corticospinal tracts on the side of the lesion. The spastic paralysis is produced by the interruption of the descending tracts other than the corticospinal tracts.

3. Ipsilateral band of cutaneous anesthesia in the segment of the lesion. This is due to the destruction of the posterior root and its entrance into the spinal cord at the level of the lesion.

4. Ipsilateral loss of tactile discrimination and of vibratory and proprioceptive sense below the level of the lesion. These signs are caused by the destruction of the ascending tracts in the posterior white column on the same side of the lesion.

5. Contralateral loss of pain and temperature sense below the lesion. This is due to destruction of the crossed lateral spinothalamic tracts on the same side of the lesion. Because the tracts cross obliquely, the sensory loss occurs two or three segments below the lesion distally.

6. Contralateral but not complete loss of tactile sense below the lesion. This condition is brought about by the destruction of the crossed anterior spinothalamic tracts on the side of the lesion. Here again, because the tracts cross obliquely, the sensory impairment occurs two or three segments below the lesion distally.

Complete Transection of the Spinal Cord

This transection results in complete loss of all sensibility and voluntary movement below the level of the lesion. It may be caused by fracture dislocation of the vertebral column, by a bullet or stab wound, or by an expanding tumor. The following characteristic clinical features will be seen after the period of spinal shock has ended:

1. Bilateral lower motor neuron paralysis in the segment of the lesion and muscular atrophy. This

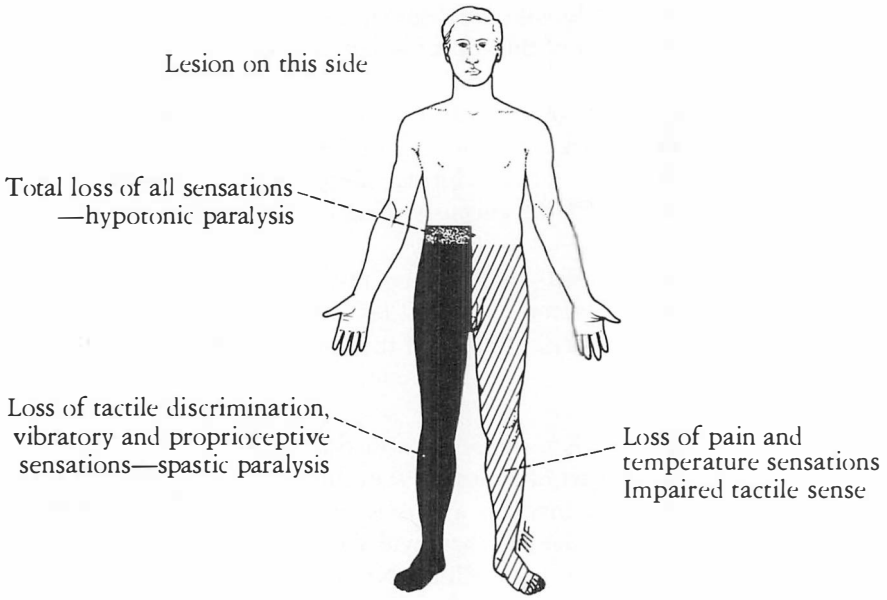


Fig. 20-11. Brown-Séquard syndrome with spinal cord lesion at right tenth thoracic level.

is due to damage to the neurons in the anterior gray columns and possibly to damage to the nerve roots of the same segment.

2. Bilateral spastic paralysis below the level of the lesion. A bilateral Babinski sign is present and, depending on the level of the segment of the spinal cord damaged, there is bilateral loss of the superficial abdominal and cremaster reflexes. All these signs are caused by an interruption of the corticospinal tracts on both sides of the cord. The bilateral spastic paralysis is produced by the cutting of the descending tracts other than the corticospinal tracts.

3. Bilateral loss of all sensation below the level of the lesion. The loss of tactile discrimination and vibratory and proprioceptive sense is due to bilateral destruction of the ascending tracts in the posterior white columns. The loss of pain, temperature, and light touch is caused by the section of the lateral and anterior spinothalamic tracts on both sides. Because these tracts cross obliquely, the loss of thermal sensations and light touch occurs two or three segments below the lesion distally.

4. Bladder and bowel functions are not under voluntary control, which causes serious difficulties in the management of these patients.

Parkinson's Disease

This disease commences between the ages of 45 and 55 and is associated with neuronal degeneration in the *substantia nigra* and to a lesser extent in the *globus pallidus, putamen,* and *caudate nucleus.* The patients have the following characteristic signs and symptoms:

1. Tremor. This is the result of the alternating contraction of agonists and antagonists. The tremor is slow and occurs most obviously when the limbs are at rest. It disappears during sleep.

2. Rigidity. This differs from the rigidity caused by lesions of the upper motor neurons in that it is present to an equal extent in opposing muscle groups. If the tremor is absent, the rigidity is felt as resistance to passive movement and is sometimes referred to as *plastic rigidity*. If the tremor is

present, the muscle resistance is overcome as a series of jerks, called *cog-wheel rigidity*.

3. Bradykinesis. There is a difficulty in initiating and performing new movements. The movements are slow, the face is expressionless, and the voice is slurred and unmodulated. Swinging of the arms in walking is lost.

4. Postural disturbances. The patient stands with a stoop and his arms are flexed. He walks by taking short steps and often is unable to stop. In fact, he may break into a shuffling run to maintain his balance.

5. There is no loss of muscle power and no loss of sensibility. Since the corticospinal tracts are normal, the superficial abdominal reflexes are normal and there is no Babinski response. The deep tendon reflexes are normal. The signs and symptoms are due to disease of those supraspinal centers, especially the substantia nigra, that influence the neurons that give origin to descending tracts other than the corticospinal tracts.

Syringomyelia

This condition, of unknown origin, most often affects the brainstem and cervical region of the spinal cord. At the site of the lesion there is cavitation and gliosis in the central region of the neuroaxis. The following characteristic signs and symptoms are found:

1. Loss of pain and temperature sensations in dermatomes on both sides of the body related to the affected segments of the cord. This loss commonly has a shawllike distribution, caused by the interruption of the lateral spinothalamic tracts as they cross the midline in the anterior gray and white commissures.

2. Tactile discrimination, vibratory sense, and proprioceptive sense are normal. The reason is that the ascending tracts in the posterior white column are unaffected.

3. Lower motor neuron weakness is present in the small muscles of the hand. It may be bilateral or one hand may suffer before the other. As the lesion expands in the lower cervical and upper thoracic region it destroys the anterior horn cells of these segments. Later, the other muscles of the arm and shoulder girdles undergo atrophy.

4. Bilateral spastic paralysis of both legs may occur, with exaggerated deep tendon reflexes and the presence of a positive Babinski response. These signs are produced by the further expansion of the lesion laterally into the anterior white column to involve the descending tracts.

5. A Horner's syndrome (for details, see p. 428) may be present. This is caused by the interruption of the descending autonomic fibers in the lateral white column by the expanding lesion.

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 495.

1. During the first physiology lecture to the freshman medical class on the functions of the spinal cord, the professor repeatedly referred to the *lower motor neurons, internuncial neurons,* the *final common pathway*, and the *upper motor neurons*. This is basic terminology. Do you understand what is meant by these terms?

2. A third-year medical student attended a lecture on the effects of trauma on the vertebral column. The orthopedic surgeon described very superficially the different neurological deficits that may follow injury to the spinal cord. At the end of the lecture, the student said he did not understand what was meant by the term *spinal shock*. He could not understand what was the underlying mechanism for this condition. He also asked the surgeon to explain what was meant by paraplegia in extension and paraplegia in flexion. Could the surgeon explain why one condition sometimes passes into the other? These are good questions. Can you answer them?

3. The terms *pyramidal* and *extrapyramidal tracts* are commonly used clinically. Why are students now being urged not to use these terms?

4. While examining a patient with a right-sided hemiplegia caused by a cerebrovascular accident, the neurologist asked the student which clinical signs could be attributed to an interruption of the corticospinal tracts and which signs could be attributed to damage to other descending tracts. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, how would you have answered this question?

5. A large civilian aircraft was forced to abort its takeoff because three tires had burst as the plane sped along the runway. The pilot miraculously managed to halt the plane as it veered off the runway and came to an abrupt halt in a ditch. All the passengers escaped injury, but one of the stewardesses was admitted to the emergency room with suspected spinal cord injury. On questioning, the 25-year-old patient said that although she had her seat belt fastened she was thrown violently forward on impact. She said she could not feel anything in either leg and could not move her legs. On examination, there was complete motor and sensory loss of both legs below the inguinal ligament and absence of all deep tendon reflexes of both legs. Twelve hours later it was noted that she could move the toes and ankle of her left lower limb and she had a return of sensations to her right leg except for loss of tactile discrimination, vibratory sense, and proprioceptive sense. She had a band of complete anesthesia over her right inguinal ligament. Her left leg showed a total analgesia, thermoanesthesia, and partial loss of tactile sense. Her right leg was totally paralyzed and the muscles were spastic. There was a right-sided Babinski response and it was possible to demonstrate right-sided ankle clonus. The right knee jerk was exaggerated. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, explain the symptoms and signs found in this patient. Which vertebra was damaged?

6. Why is it dangerous to move a patient who is suspected of having a fracture or dislocation of the vertebral column?

7. An 18-year-old boy was admitted to the hospital following a severe automobile accident. After a complete neurological investigation, his family was told that he would be paralyzed from the waist downward for the rest of his life. The neurologist outlined to the medical personnel the importance of preventing complications in these cases. The common complications are the following: (a) urinary infection, (b) bedsores, (c) nutritional deficiency, (d) muscular spasms, and (e) pain. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, explain the underlying reasons for these complications. How long after the accident do you think it would be possible to give an accurate prognosis in this case?

8. A 68-year-old man was brought to the neurology clinic by his daughter because she had noticed that his right arm had a tremor. Apparently this had started about 6 months previously and was becoming steadily worse. When questioned, the patient said he noticed that the muscles of his limbs sometimes felt stiff but he had put this down to old age. While talking, it was noticed, the patient rarely smiled and then only with difficulty. It was also noted that he infrequently blinked his eyes. The patient tended to speak in a low, faint voice.

When he was asked to walk, the patient was seen to have normal posture and gait, although he tended to hold his right arm flexed at the elbow joint. When he was sitting, it was noted that the fingers of the right hand were alternately contracting and relaxing and there was a fine tremor involving the wrist and elbow on the right side. It was particularly noticed that the tremor was worse when the arm was at rest. When he was asked to hold a book in his right hand, the tremor stopped momentarily, but it started again immediately after the book was placed on the table. The daughter said that when her father falls asleep the tremor stops immediately. On examination, it was found that the passive movements of the right elbow and wrist showed an increase in tone and there was some cog-wheel rigidity. There was no sensory loss, either cutaneous or deep sensibility, and the reflexes were normal. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, can you make a diagnosis? Which regions of the brain are diseased?

9. Name a center in the central nervous system that may be responsible for the following clinical signs: (a) intention tremor, (b) athetosis, (c) chorea, (d) dystonia, and (e) hemiballismus.

Additional Reading

Austin, G. *The Spinal Cord, Basic Aspects and Surgical Considerations* (2nd ed.). Springfield, Ill.: Thomas, 1972.

Guttmann, L. *Spinal Cord Injuries* (2nd ed.). Oxford: Blackwell, 1976.

Pierce, D. S., and Nickel, V. H. *The Total Care of Spinal Cord Injuries*. Boston: Little, Brown, 1977.

Walton, J. N. *Brain's Diseases of the Nervous System* (8th ed.). New York and Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1977.

Warwick, R., and Williams, P. L. *Gray's Anatomy* (35th Brit. ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders, 1973.

21
Connections of the Cerebellum

In Chapter 10, the gross anatomy and microscopic structure of the cerebellum were described and the function of the cerebellum was discussed briefly. In this chapter, the detailed connections of the cerebellum to other parts of the nervous system will be considered and the functional significance of this organ in relation to posture and voluntary movement will be discussed.

Organization of the Cerebellum

Essentially, the cerebellum consists of two *cerebellar hemispheres* joined by a *median vermis* (Fig. 21-1). The gray matter of the cerebellum forms the *cerebellar cortex* and the *intracerebellar nuclei*. The white matter is made up of the *intrinsic fibers,* which never leave the cerebellum, the *afferent fibers,* which bring information to the cerebellum, and the *efferent fibers,* which pass to other parts of the central nervous system. The afferent and efferent fibers are grouped together on each side into three large *cerebellar peduncles*.

The afferent fibers to the cerebellum enter the cerebellar cortex, lose their myelin sheath, and end as either *climbing* or *mossy fibers* (Fig. 21-2). The efferent fibers commence as the axons of the Purkinje cells of the cerebellar cortex. The majority of these axons synapse with the neurons of the cerebellar nuclei. The axons of these neurons then leave the cerebellum. A few Purkinje cell axons bypass the nuclei and leave the cerebellum without synapsing.

Interconnections of the Neurons of the Cerebellar Cortex

Two types of afferent fibers enter the cerebellar cortex, the *climbing fibers* and the *mossy fibers*. The climbing fibers are the terminal fibers of the olivocerebellar tracts (Fig. 21-2). They enter the molecular layer of the cortex, where they branch and make multiple synaptic contacts with one Purkinje cell. A few side branches leave each climbing fiber and synapse with adjacent stellate and basket cells.

The mossy fibers are the terminal fibers of all other cerebellar afferent tracts. They have multiple branches, so a single mossy fiber may stimulate thousands of Purkinje cells through the granule cells (Fig. 21-2). For further details concerning the cerebellar cortical mechanisms, see page 196.

Cerebellar Afferent Fibers from the Cerebral Cortex

The cerebral cortex sends information to the cerebellum by three pathways: (1) the corticopontocerebellar pathway, (2) the cerebro-olivocerebellar pathway, and (3) the cerebro-reticulocerebellar pathway.

Corticopontocerebellar pathway. The corticopontine fibers arise from nerve cells in the frontal, parietal, temporal, and occipital lobes of the cerebral cortex and descend through the corona radiata and internal capsule and terminate upon the pontine nuclei (Fig. 21-3). The pontine nuclei give rise to the *transverse fibers of the pons,* which cross the midline and enter the opposite cerebellar hemisphere as the middle cerebellar peduncle (see Figs. 9-4, 9-5, and 9-6).

Cerebro-olivocerebellar pathway. The cortico-olivary fibers arise from nerve cells in the frontal, parietal, temporal, and occipital lobes of the cerebral cortex and descend through the corona radiata and internal capsule to terminate bilaterally upon the inferior olivary nuclei (Fig. 21-3). The inferior olivary nuclei give rise to fibers that cross the midline and enter the opposite cerebellar hemisphere through the inferior cerebellar

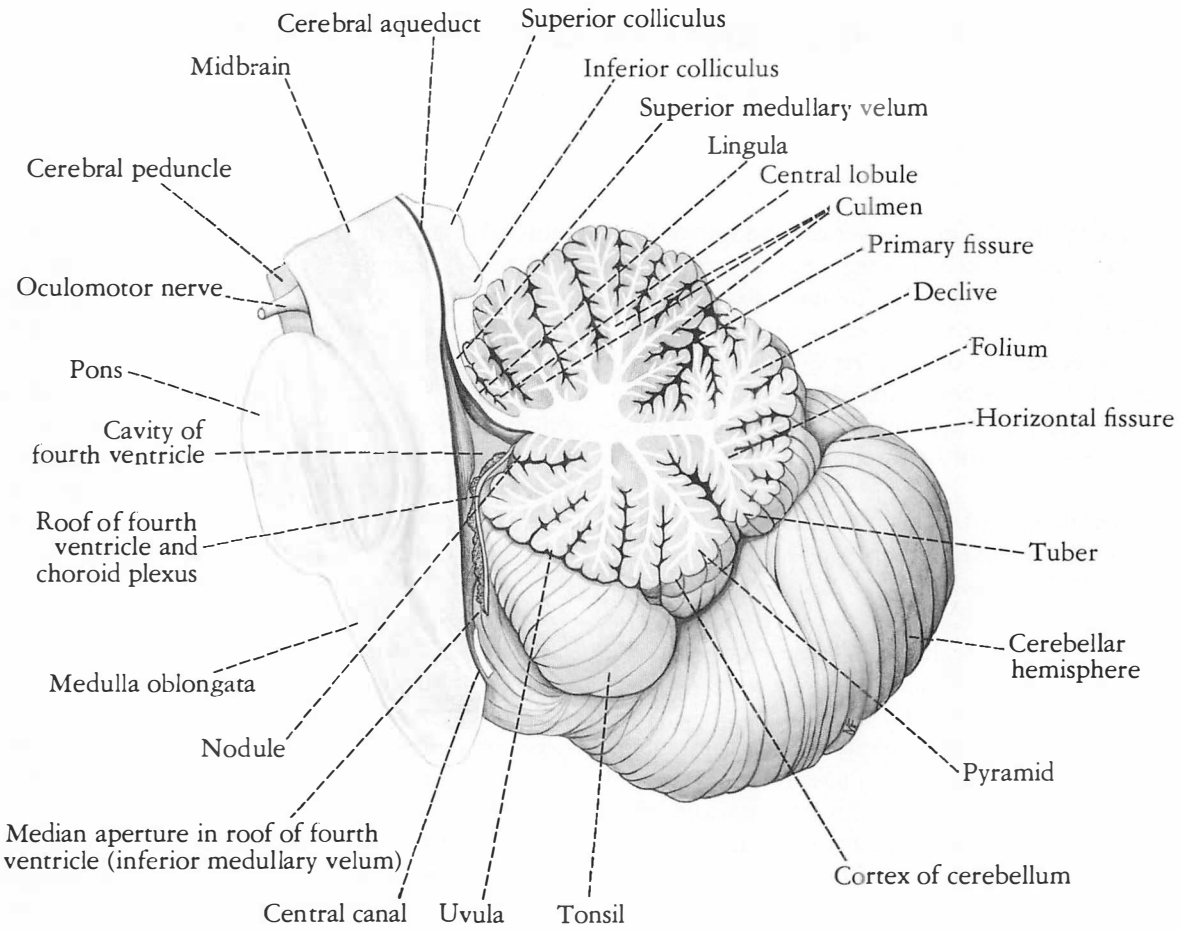


Fig. 21-1. Sagittal section through the brainstem and the vermis of the cerebellum.

peduncle. These fibers terminate as the climbing fibers in the cerebellar cortex.

Cerebroreticulocerebellar pathway. The corticoreticular fibers arise from nerve cells from many areas of the cerebral cortex, particularly the sensorimotor areas. They descend to terminate in the reticular formation on the same side and on the opposite side in the pons and medulla (Fig. 21-3). The cells in the reticular formation give rise to the reticulocerebellar fibers that enter the cerebellar hemisphere on the same side through the inferior and middle cerebellar peduncles.

This connection between the cerebrum and the cerebellum is important in the control of voluntary movement. Information regarding the initiation of movement in the cerebral cortex is probably transmitted to the cerebellum so that the movement can be monitored and appropriate adjustments in the muscle activity can be made.

Cerebellar Afferent Fibers from the Spinal Cord

The spinal cord sends information to the cerebellum by three pathways: (1) the anterior spinocerebellar tract, (2) the posterior spinocerebellar tract, and (3) the cuneocerebellar tract.

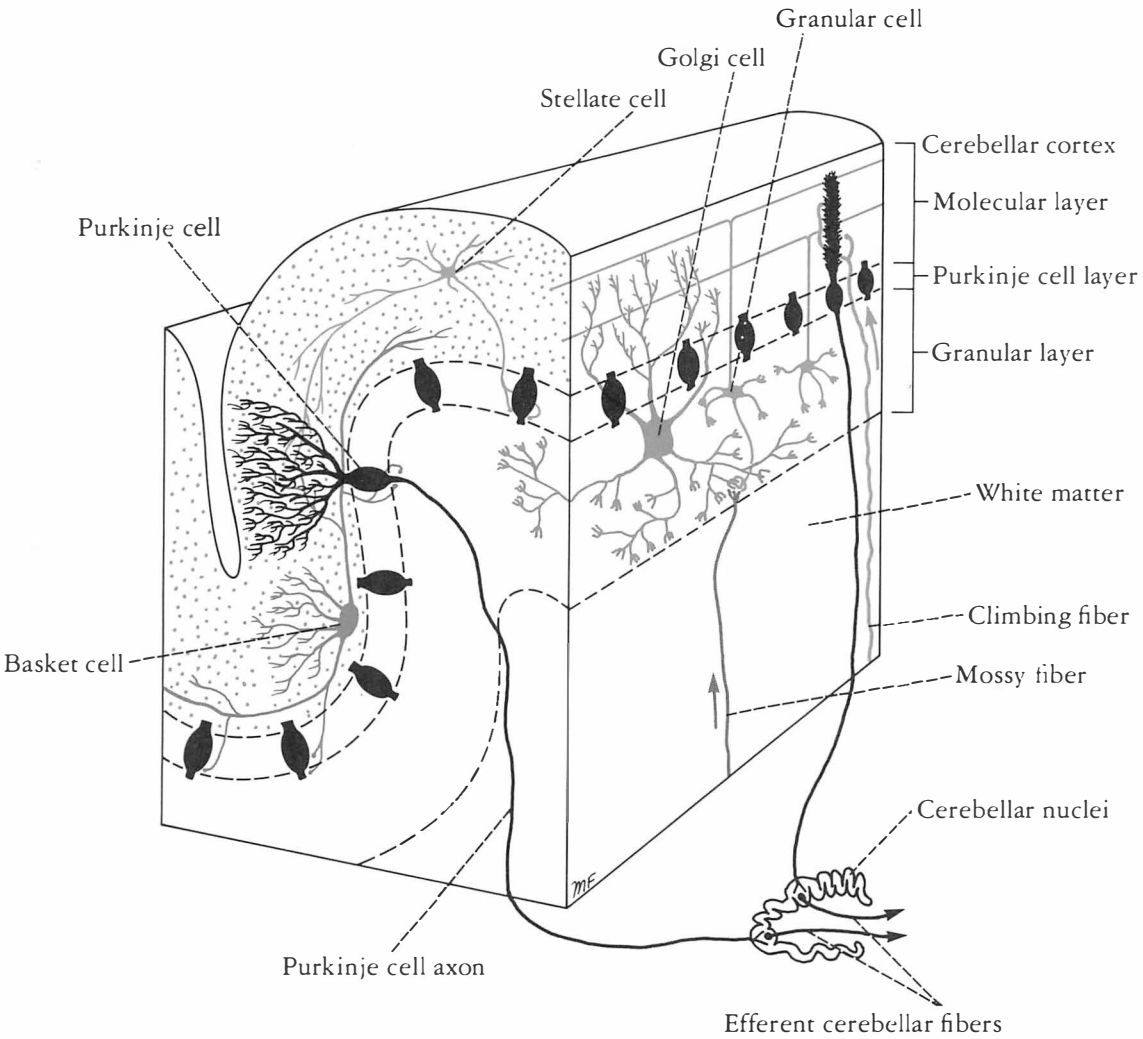


Fig. 21-2. Cellular organization of the cerebellar cortex. Note the afferent and efferent fibers.

Anterior spinocerebellar tract. The axons entering the spinal cord from the posterior root ganglion terminate by synapsing with the neurons in the *nucleus dorsalis* (Clark's column) at the base of the posterior gray column. The majority of the axons of these neurons cross to the opposite side and ascend as the *anterior spinocerebellar tract* in the contralateral white column; the minority of the axons ascend as the anterior spinocerebellar tract in the lateral white column of the same side (Fig. 21-4). The fibers enter the cerebellum through the superior cerebellar peduncle and terminate as mossy fibers in the cerebellar cortex. Collateral branches that end in the deep cerebellar nuclei are also given off. It is believed that those fibers that crossed over to the opposite side in the spinal cord cross back within the cerebellum.

The anterior spinocerebellar tract is found at all segments of the spinal cord and its fibers convey muscle joint information from the muscle spindles

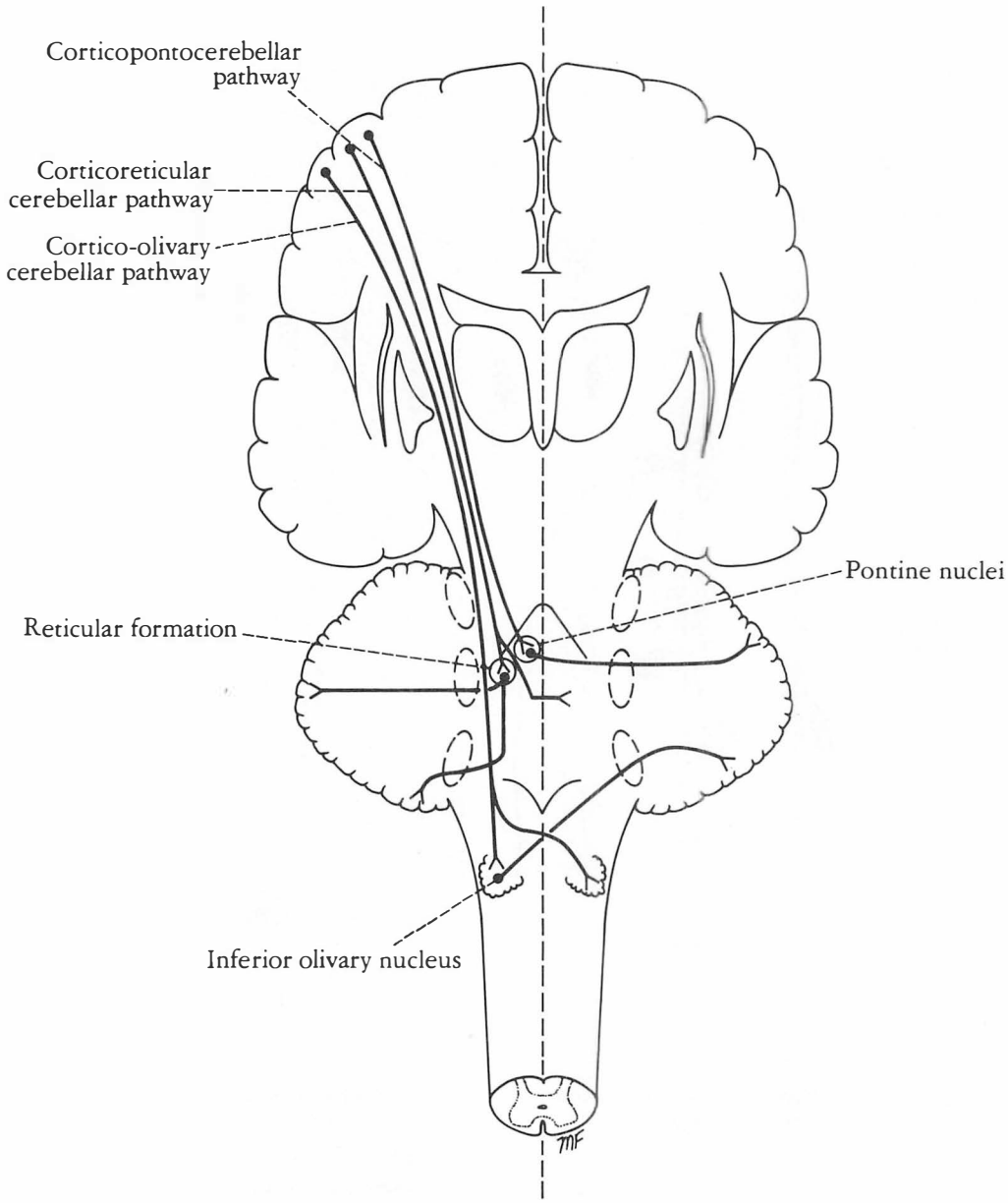


Fig. 21-3. Cerebellar afferent fibers from the cerebral cortex.

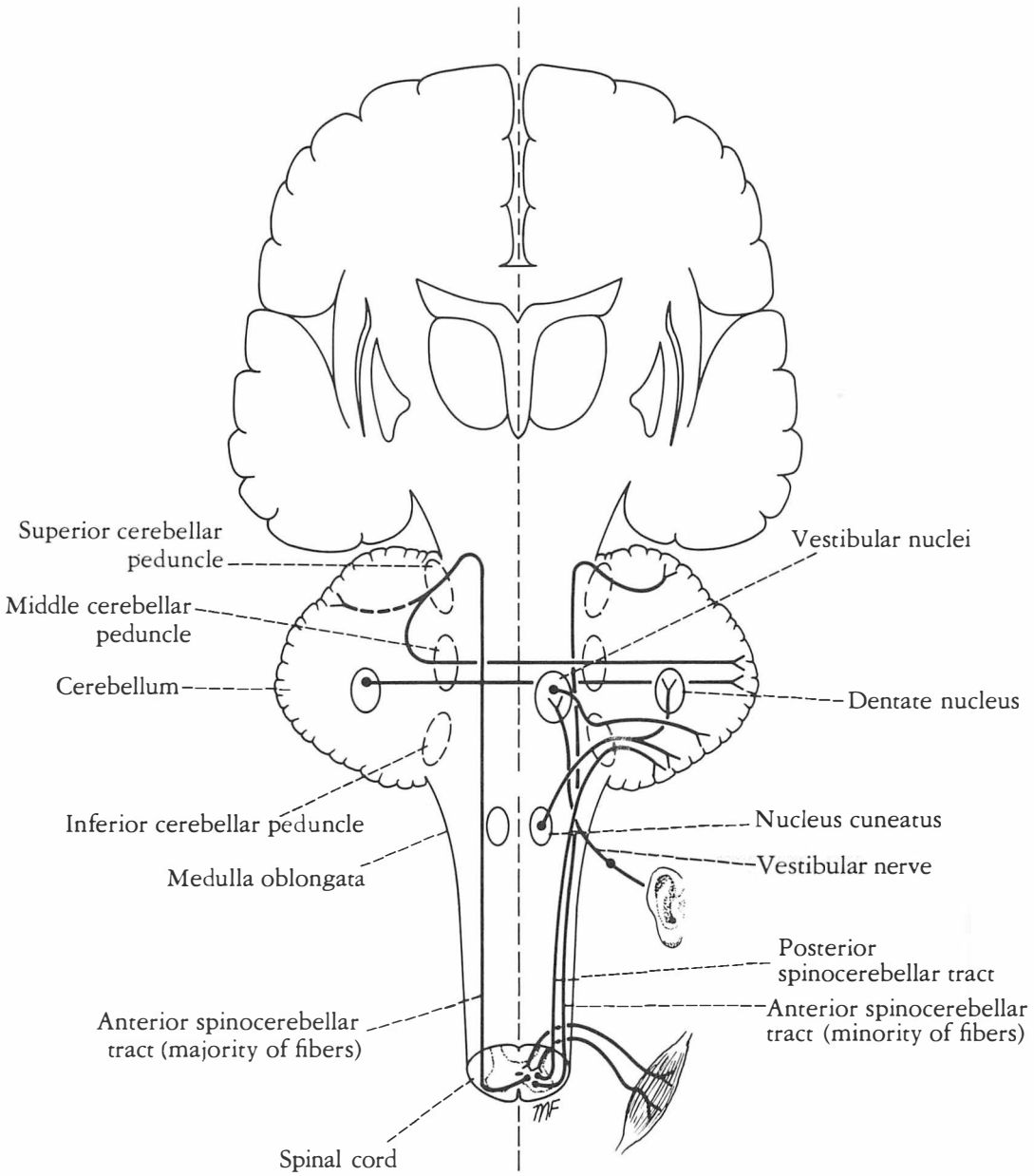


Fig. 21-4. Cerebellar afferent fibers from the spinal cord and internal ear.

and tendon organs of the upper and lower limbs. It is also believed that the cerebellum receives information from the skin and superficial fascia by this tract.

Posterior spinocerebellar tract. The axons entering the spinal cord from the posterior root ganglion enter the posterior gray column and terminate by synapsing on the neurons at the base of the posterior gray column. These neurons are known collectively as the nucleus dorsalis (Clark's column). The axons of these neurons enter the posterolateral part of the lateral white column on the same side and ascend as the *posterior spinocerebellar tract* to the medulla oblongata (Fig. 21-4). Here the tract enters the cerebellum through the inferior cerebellar peduncle and terminates as mossy fibers in the cerebellar cortex. Collateral branches that end in the deep cerebellar nuclei are also given off. The posterior spinocerebellar tract receives muscle joint information from the muscle spindles and tendon organs of the trunk and lower limbs.

Cuneocerebellar tract. These fibers originate in the nucleus cuneatus of the medulla oblongata and enter the cerebellar hemisphere on the same side through the inferior cerebellar peduncle (Fig. 21-4). The fibers terminate as mossy fibers in the cerebellar cortex. Collateral branches that end in the deep cerebellar nuclei are also given off. The cuneocerebellar tract receives muscle joint information from the muscle spindles and tendon organs of the upper limb and upper part of the thorax.

Cerebellar Afferent Fibers from the Vestibular Nerve

The vestibular nerve sends many afferent fibers directly to the cerebellum through the inferior cerebellar peduncle on the same side. Other vestibular afferent fibers pass first to the vestibular nuclei in the brainstem, where they synapse and are relayed to the cerebellum (Fig. 21-4). They enter the cerebellum through the inferior cerebellar peduncle on the same side. All the afferent fibers from the inner ear terminate as mossy fibers in the flocculonodular lobe of the cerebellum.

Other Afferent Fibers

In addition, the cerebellum receives small bundles of afferent fibers from the red nucleus and the tectum.

Cerebellar Efferent Fibers

The entire output of the cerebellar cortex is through the axons of the Purkinje cells. The majority of the axons of the Purkinje cells end by synapsing on the neurons of the deep cerebellar nuclei (see Fig. 21-2). The axons of the neurons that form the cerebellar nuclei constitute the efferent outflow from the cerebellum. A few Purkinje cell axons pass directly out of the cerebellum to the lateral vestibular nucleus. The efferent fibers from the cerebellum connect with the red nucleus, thalamus, vestibular complex, and reticular formation.

Globose-emboliform-rubral pathway. Axons of neurons in the globose and emboliform nuclei travel through the superior cerebellar peduncle and cross the midline to the opposite side in the *decussation of the superior cerebellar peduncles* (Fig. 21-5). The fibers end by synapsing with cells of the contralateral red nucleus, which give rise to axons of the *rubrospinal tract* (Fig. 21-5). Thus it is seen that this pathway crosses twice, once in the decussation of the superior cerebellar peduncle, and again in the rubrospinal tract close to its origin. By this means, the globose and emboliform nuclei influence motor activity on the same side of the body.

Dentothalamic pathway. Axons of neurons in the dentate nucleus travel through the superior cerebellar peduncle and cross the midline to the opposite side in the *decussation of the superior cerebellar peduncle* (Fig. 21-5). The fibers end by synapsing with cells in the contralateral *ventrolateral nucleus of the thalamus*. The axons of the thalamic neurons ascend through the internal capsule and corona radiata and terminate in the primary motor area of the cerebral cortex. By this pathway, the dentate nucleus can influence motor activity by acting upon the motor neurons of the opposite cerebral cortex; impulses from the motor cortex are trans-

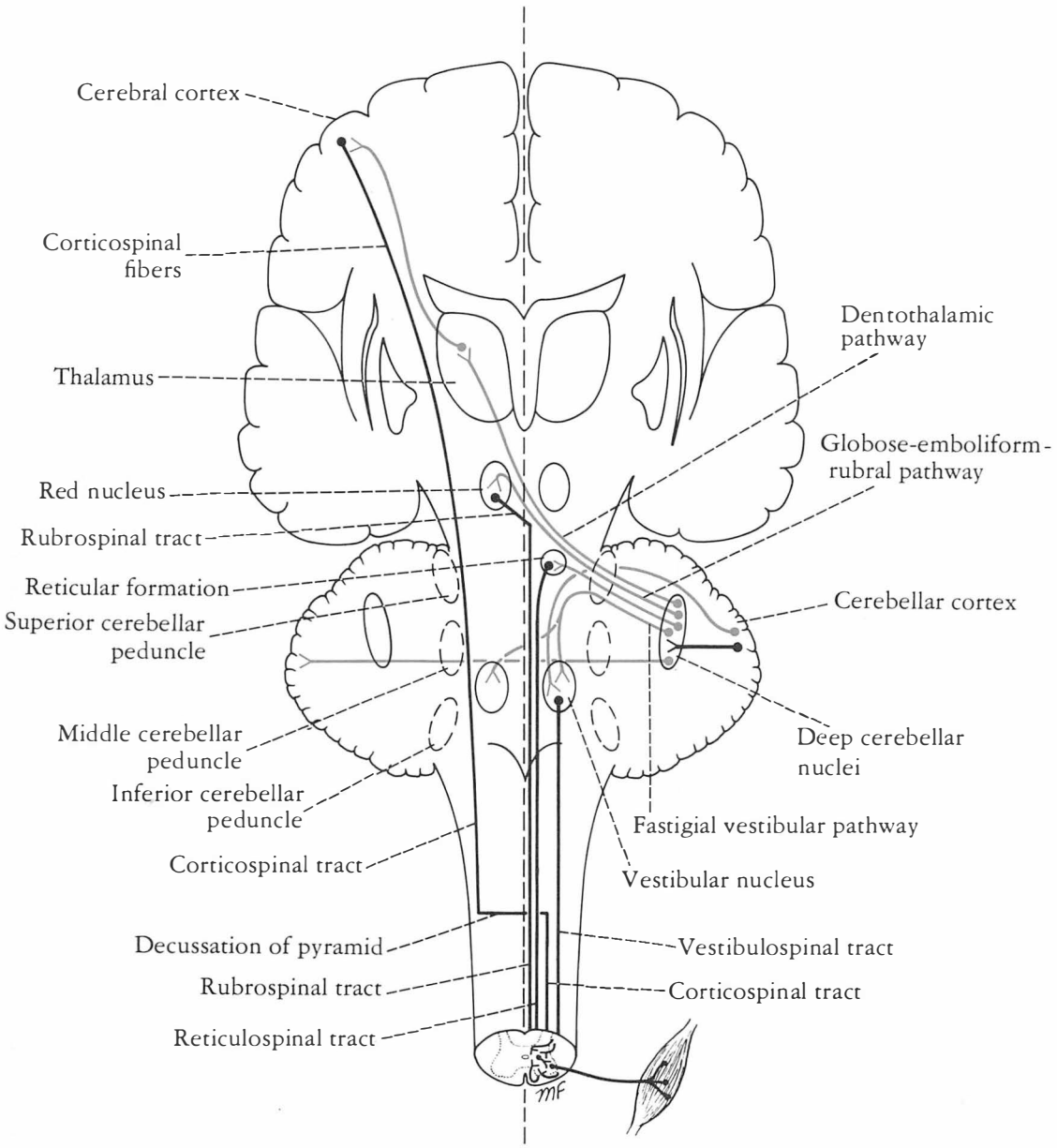


Fig. 21-5. Cerebellar efferent fibers.

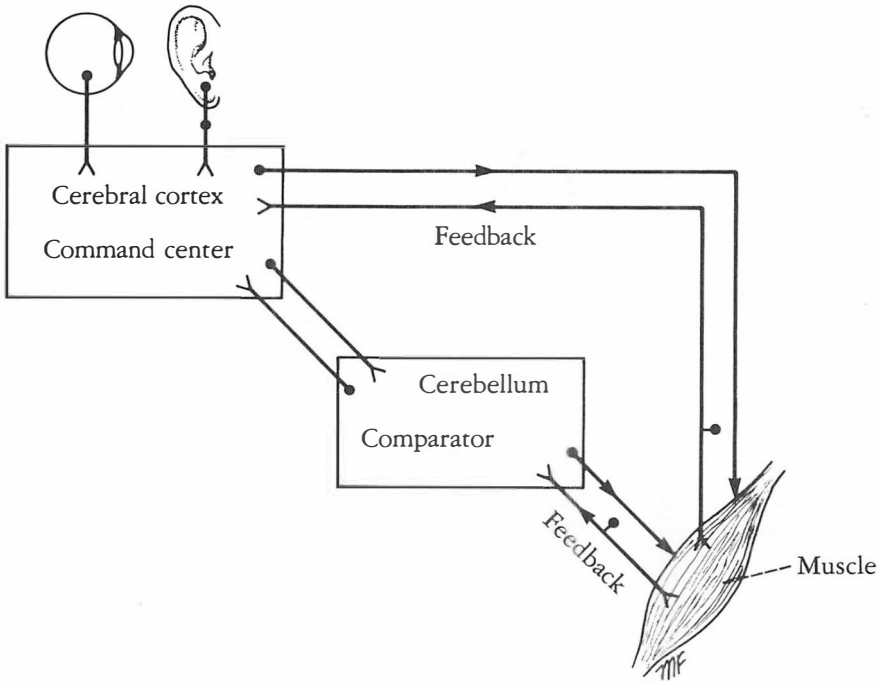


Figure 21-6. Cerebellum serving as a comparator.

mitted to spinal segmental levels through the corticospinal tract. It will be remembered that the majority of the fibers of the corticospinal tract cross to the opposite side in the decussation of the pyramids or later at the spinal segmental levels. The dentate nucleus thus is able to coordinate muscle activity on the same side of the body.

Fastigial vestibular pathway. The axons of neurons in the fastigial nucleus travel through the superior cerebellar peduncle and end by projecting on the neurons of the *lateral vestibular nucleus* on both sides (Fig. 21-5). It will be remembered that some Purkinje cell axons project directly to the lateral vestibular nucleus. The neurons of the lateral vestibular nucleus form the *vestibulospinal tract.* The fastigial nucleus exerts a facilitatory influence mainly on the ipsilateral extensor muscle tone.

Fastigial reticular pathway. The axons of neurons in the fastigial nucleus travel through the superior cerebellar peduncle and end by synapsing with neurons of the reticular formation (Fig. 21-5). Axons of these neurons influence spinal segmental motor activity through the reticulospinal tract.

Functions of the Cerebellum

The cerebellum receives afferent information concerning voluntary movement from the cerebral cortex and from the muscle spindles and tendon organs. It also receives information concerning balance from the vestibular nerve and possibly concerning sight through the tectocerebellar tract. All this information is fed into the cerebellar cortical circuitry by the mossy fibers and the climbing fibers (see Fig. 10-9). After several synaptic relays in the cerebellar cortex, the afferent impulses converge on the Purkinje cells. The axons of the Purkinje cells project with few exceptions on the deep cerebellar nuclei. The output of the lateral cerebellar hemisphere projects to the dentate nu-

cleus, the vermis projects to the fastigial nucleus, and the intermediate regions of the cortex project to the globose and emboliform nuclei. A few Purkinje cell axons pass directly out of the cerebellum and end on the lateral vestibular nucleus in the brainstem. Now it is generally believed that the Purkinje axons exert an inhibitory influence on the neurons of the cerebellar nuclei and the lateral vestibular nuclei.

The cerebellar output is conducted to the sites of origin of the descending pathways that influence motor activity at the segmental spinal level. In this respect, it is interesting to note that the cerebellum has no direct neuronal connections with the lower motor neurons, but exerts its influence indirectly through the cerebral cortex and brainstem.

Physiologists have postulated that the cerebellum functions as a coordinator of precise movements by continually comparing the output of the motor area of the cerebral cortex with the proprioceptive information received from the site of muscle action; it is then able to bring about the necessary adjustments by influencing the activity of the lower motor neurons (Fig. 21-6). This is accomplished by controlling the sequence of firing of the alpha and gamma motor neurons.

The function of the cerebellum in relation to its phylogenetic development is discussed on page 197.

Clinical Notes

General Considerations

The cortex of the cerebellum, unlike that of the cerebrum, has a uniform microscopic structure and physiological investigations show that the activities that occur are identical in all regions. The only fibers that leave the cerebellar cortex are the axons of Purkinje cells and they exert an inhibitory influence on the neurons of the deep cerebellar nuclei and the vestibular nuclei. Each cerebellar hemisphere is connected principally with the same side of the body by nervous pathways, so that a lesion in one cerebellar hemisphere gives rise to signs and symptoms that are limited to the same side of the body.

The cerebellum, unlike the cerebrum, has no direct pathway to the lower motor neurons in the spinal cord. It exerts its influence on motor activity indirectly through connections with the cerebral cortex and with nerve centers in the brainstem. The cerebellum regulates muscle tone and postural reflexes. It assists in the performance of smoothly coordinated muscle actions such as walking.

Disturbances of Cerebellar Function

A detailed description of the signs and symptoms of cerebellar disease is given in Chapter 10, page 200. The many manifestations of cerebellar disease may be reduced to two basic defects: hypotonia, and loss of influence of the cerebellum on the activities of the cerebral cortex.

Clinical Problem

For the answer to this problem, see page 497.

1. A 10-year-old girl was taken to a neurologist because her parents had noticed that her gait was becoming awkward. Her teacher had commented that in the physical education class she did not seem to be as agile as other children of her age. Six months previously, the child had complained that she felt her right arm was clumsy and she had inadvertently knocked a teapot off the table. More recently, her family had noticed that her hand movements were becoming jerky and awkward; this was particularly obvious when she was eating with a knife and fork. The mother commented

that her daughter had had problems with her right foot since birth and that she had a clubfoot. She also had scoliosis and was attending an orthopedic surgeon for treatment. The mother said she was particularly worried about her daughter because two other members of the family had similar signs and symptoms.

On physical examination, the child was found to have a lurching gait with a tendency to reel over to the right. Intention tremor was present in the right arm and the right leg. When the strength of the limb muscles was tested, those of the right leg were found to be weaker than those of the left leg. The muscles of the right arm and right lower leg were also hypotonic. She had severe pes cavus of the right foot and a slight pes cavus of the left foot. Kyphoscoliosis of the upper part of the thoracic vertebral column also was present.

On examination of her sensory system, she was found to have loss of muscle joint sense and vibratory sense of both legs. She also had loss of two-point discrimination of the skin of both legs. Her knee jerks were found to be exaggerated, but her ankle jerks were absent. The biceps and triceps jerks of both arms were normal. She had bilateral Babinski responses. Slight nystagmus was present in both eyes. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, can you explain the symptoms and signs listed above? Did the disease process involve more than one area of the central nervous system?

Now review the Clinical Problems at the end of Chapter 10.

Additional Reading

Angevine, J. B., Mancall, E. L., and Yakovlev, P. I. *The Human Cerebellum.* Boston: Little, Brown, 1961.

Bloomfield, S., and Marr, D. How the cerebellum may be used. *Nature* (London) 227:1224, 1970.

Braitenberg, V., and Atwood, R. P. Morphological observations on the cerebellar cortex. *J. Comp. Neurol.* 109:1, 1958.

Carpenter, M. B., and Stevens, G. H. Structural and functional relationships between the deep cerebellar nuclei and the brachium conjunctivum in the Rhesus monkey. *J. Comp. Neurol.* 107:109, 1957.

Eccles, J. C., Ito, M., and Szentágothai, J. *The Cerebellum as a Neuronal Machine.* Berlin and Vienna: Springer, 1967.

Fields, W. D., and Willis, W. D., Jr. *The Cerebellum in Health and Disease.* St. Louis: Warren H. Green, 1970.

Fox, C. A., and Barnard, J. W. A quantitative study of the Purkinje cell dendritic branches and their relations to afferent fibers. *J. Anat.* 91:299, 1957.

Gilman, S. The mechanisms of cerebellar hypotonia. *Brain* 92:621, 1969.

Jansen, J., and Brodal, A. *Aspects of Cerebellar Anatomy.* Oslo: Johan Grundt Tanum Forlag, 1954.

Lewis, A. J. *Mechanisms of Neurological Disease.* Boston: Little, Brown, 1976.

Llinas, R. R. The cortex of the cerebellum. *Sci. Am.* 232:56, 1975.

Palay, S. L., and Chan-Palay, V. Cerebellar Cortex. In *Cortex and Organization.* Berlin and Vienna: Springer, 1974.

22
The Cranial Nerve Nuclei and Their Central Connections

There are 12 pairs of cranial nerves, which leave the brain and pass through foramina in the skull. All the nerves are distributed in the head and neck except the tenth, which also supplies structures in the thorax and abdomen. The cranial nerves are named as follows:

1. Olfactory
2. Optic
3. Oculomotor
4. Trochlear
5. Trigeminal
6. Abducent
7. Facial
8. Vestibulocochlear
9. Glossopharyngeal
10. Vagus
11. Accessory
12. Hypoglossal

Anatomical Organization

The olfactory, optic, and vestibulocochlear nerves are entirely sensory nerves; the trigeminal, facial, glossopharyngeal, and vagus nerves are both sensory and motor nerves; the oculomotor, trochlear, abducent, accessory, and hypoglossal nerves are entirely motor nerves.

The motor or efferent parts of a cranial nerve are the axons of nerve cells situated within the brain. These nerve cell groups form their *nuclei of origin.* Each nerve cell with its processes is referred to as the *lower motor neuron.* Such a nerve cell is, therefore, equivalent to the motor cells found in the anterior gray columns of the spinal cord.

The motor nuclei of origin of the cranial nerves receive impulses from the cerebral cortex through the *corticonuclear tracts.* These tracts originate from the pyramidal cells in the inferior part of the precentral gyrus (area 4) and from the adjacent part of the postcentral gyrus. The corticonuclear fibers descend through the *corona radiata* and the *genu of the internal capsule.* They pass through the midbrain just medial to the corticospinal fibers in the *basis pedunculi.* The fibers end by synapsing either directly with the lower motor neurons within the cranial nerve nuclei or indirectly through the *internuncial neurons.* The corticonuclear tract thus constitutes the *first-order neuron* of the descending pathway, the internuncial neuron constitutes the *second-order neuron,* and the lower motor neuron constitutes the *third-order neuron.*

The majority of the corticonuclear fibers to the motor cranial nerve nuclei cross the median plane before reaching the nuclei. Bilateral connections are present for all the cranial motor nuclei except that part of the facial nucleus that supplies the muscles of the lower part of the face and that part of the hypoglossal nucleus that supplies the genioglossus muscle.

The sensory or afferent parts of a cranial nerve are the axons of nerve cells outside the brain and are situated in ganglia on the nerve trunks (equivalent to posterior root ganglion of a spinal nerve) or may be situated in a sensory organ such as the nose, eye, or ear. These cells and their processes form the *first-order neuron.* The central processes of these cells enter the brain and terminate by synapsing with cells that are grouped together to form the *nuclei of termination.* These cells and their processes form the *second-order neuron.* Axons from these nuclear cells now cross the midline and ascend to other sensory nuclei, e.g., the thalamus, where they synapse. The nerve cells of these nuclei form the *third-order neuron* and their axons terminate in the cerebral cortex.

Olfactory Nerves

The olfactory mucous membrane is situated in the upper part of the nasal cavity and lines the upper surface of the superior concha. It also lines a corresponding area on the nasal septum and lines the roof (Fig. 22-1). The *olfactory receptors* are situated in this mucous membrane and are scattered among supporting cells. Each receptor consists of a small nerve cell with a coarse peripheral process that passes to the surface of the membrane and a fine central process. From the coarse peripheral process a number of short cilia arise, the *olfactory hairs,* which project into the mucus covering the surface of the mucous membrane.

The fine central processes form the *olfactory nerve fibers* (Fig. 22-1). Bundles of these nerve fibers pass through the openings of the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone to enter the olfactory bulb. The olfactory nerve fibers are unmyelinated and are covered with Schwann cells.

Olfactory Bulb. This ovoid structure possesses several types of nerve cells, the largest of which is the *mitral cell* (Fig. 22-1). The incoming olfactory nerve fibers synapse with the dendrites of the mitral cells and form rounded areas known as *synaptic glomeruli.* Smaller nerve cells called *tufted cells* and *granular cells* also synapse with the mitral cells. The olfactory bulb, in addition, receives axons from the contralateral olfactory bulb through the olfactory tract.

Olfactory Tract. This is a narrow band of white matter that runs from the posterior end of the olfactory bulb beneath the inferior surface of the frontal lobe of the brain (Fig. 22-1). It consists of the central axons of the mitral and tufted cells of the bulb and some centrifugal fibers from the opposite olfactory bulb.

As the olfactory tract reaches the *anterior perforated substance,* it divides into *medial and lateral olfactory striae.* The lateral stria carries the axons to the *olfactory area of the cerebral cortex,* namely, the *periamygdaloid* and *prepiriform areas* (Fig. 22-1). The medial olfactory stria carries the fibers that cross the median plane in the anterior commissure to pass to the olfactory bulb of the opposite side.

The periamygdaloid and prepiriform areas of the cerebral cortex are often known as the *primary olfactory cortex.* The *entorrhinal area (area 28)* of the parahippocampal gyrus, which receives numerous connections from the primary olfactory cortex, is called the *secondary olfactory cortex.* These areas of the cortex are responsible for the appreciation of olfactory sensations (Fig. 22-1). Note that, in contrast to all other sensory pathways, the olfactory afferent pathway has only two neurons and reaches the cerebral cortex without synapsing in one of the thalamic nuclei.

It should also be noted that the primary olfactory cortex sends nerve fibers to many other centers within the brain to establish connections for emotional and autonomic responses to olfactory sensations.

Optic Nerve

Origin of the Optic Nerve

The fibers of the optic nerve are the axons of the cells in the *ganglionic layer* of the retina. They converge on the *optic disc* and exit from the eye, about 3 or 4 mm to the nasal side of its center, as the optic nerve (Fig. 22-2). The fibers of the optic nerve are myelinated, but the sheaths are formed from oligodendrocytes rather than Schwann cells, since the optic nerve is comparable to a tract within the central nervous system.

The optic nerve leaves the orbital cavity through the optic canal and unites with the optic nerve of the opposite side to form the *optic chiasma.*

Optic Chiasma

The optic chiasma is situated at the junction of the anterior wall and floor of the third ventricle. Its anterolateral angles are continuous with the optic nerves and the posterolateral angles are continuous with the optic tracts (Fig. 22-2). In the chiasma, the fibers from the nasal half of each retina, including the nasal half of the *macula,* cross the midline and enter the optic tract of the opposite side, while the fibers from the temporal half of each retina, including the temporal half of the *macula,* pass posteriorly in the optic tract of the same side.

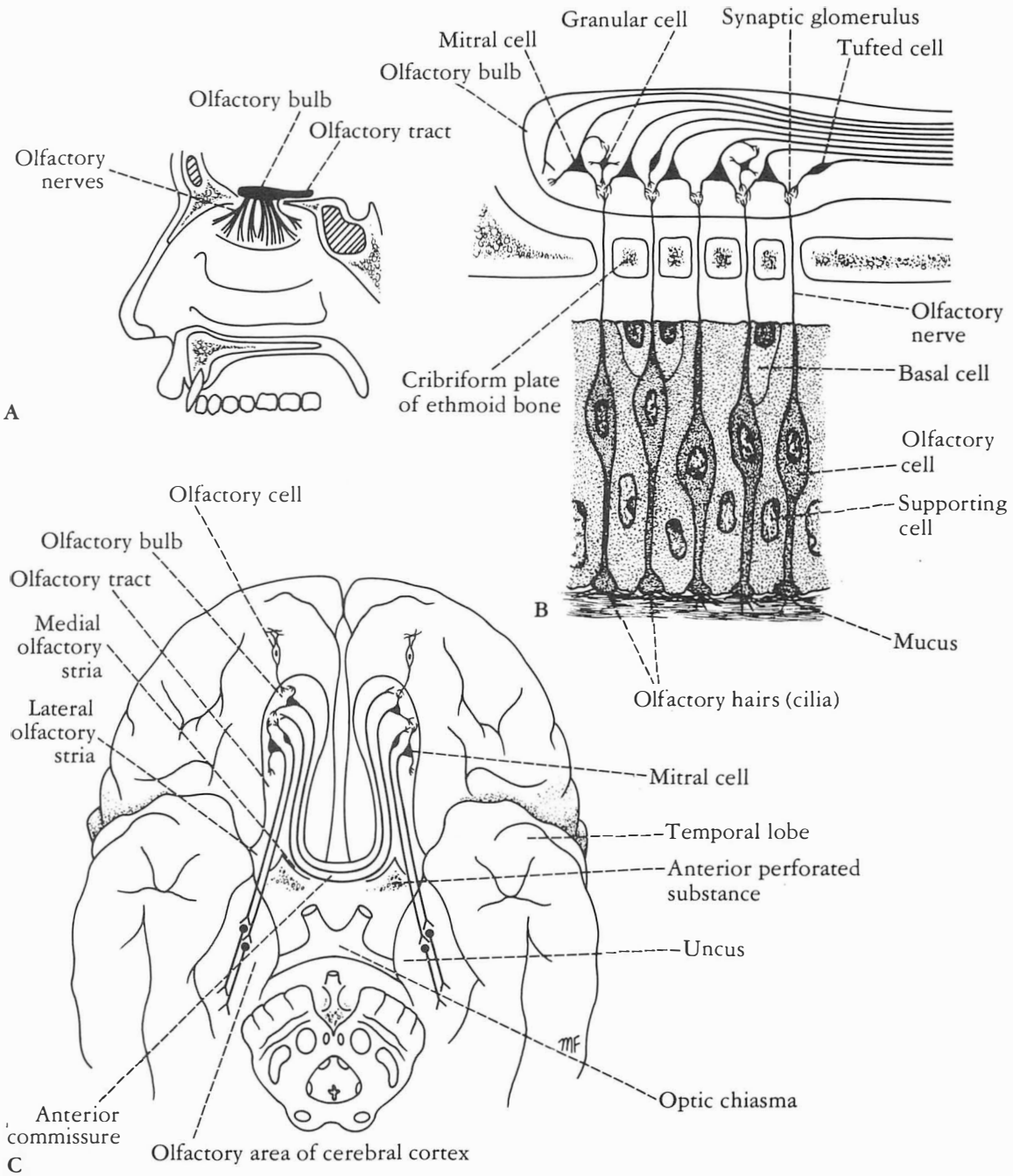


Fig. 22-1. A. Distribution of olfactory nerves on lateral wall of nose.
B. Connections between olfactory cells and neurons of olfactory bulb.
C. Connections between the olfactory cell and the rest of the olfactory system.

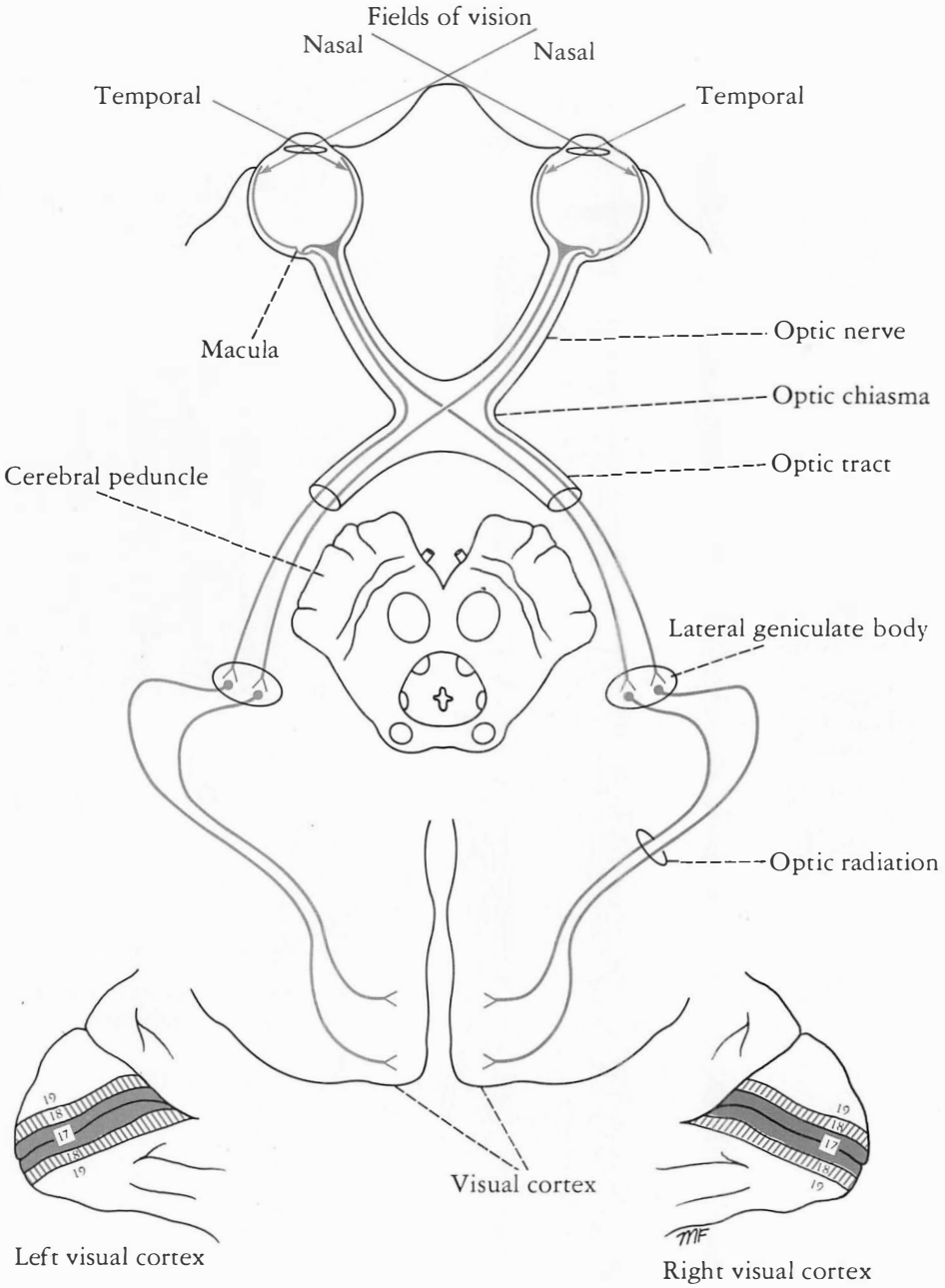


Fig. 22-2. The optic pathway.

Optic Tract

The optic tract emerges from the optic chiasma and passes posterolaterally around the cerebral peduncle. Most of the fibers now terminate by synapsing with nerve cells in the *lateral geniculate body*. A few of the fibers pass to the *pretectal nucleus* and the *superior colliculus* and are concerned with light reflexes (Fig. 22-2).

Lateral Geniculate Body

The lateral geniculate body is a small, oval swelling projecting from the *pulvinar of the thalamus*. It consists of six layers of cells upon which synapse the axons of the optic tract. The axons of the nerve cells within the geniculate body leave it to form the *optic radiation* (Fig. 22-2).

OPTIC RADIATION. The fibers of the optic radiation are the axons of the nerve cells of the lateral geniculate body. The tract passes posteriorly through the retrolenticular part of the *internal capsule* and terminates in the *visual cortex (area 17)*, which occupies the upper and lower lips of the calcarine sulcus on the medial surface of the cerebral hemisphere (Fig. 22-2). The visual association cortex (areas 18 and 19) is responsible for recognition of objects and perception of color.

Neurons of the Visual Pathway and Binocular Vision

There are four neurons involved in the conduction of visual impulses to the visual cortex: (1) *rods and cones*, which are specialized receptor neurons in the retina; (2) *bipolar neurons*, which connect the rods and cones to the ganglion cells; (3) the *ganglion cells*, whose axons pass to the lateral geniculate body; and (4) the *neurons of the lateral geniculate body*, whose axons pass to the cerebral cortex.

In binocular vision, the right and left fields of vision are projected on portions of both retinae (Fig. 22-2). The image of an object in the right field of vision is projected on the nasal half of the right retina and the temporal half of the left retina. In the optic chiasma, the axons from these two retinal halves are combined to form the left optic tract. The lateral geniculate body neurons now project the complete right field of vision upon the visual cortex of the left hemisphere, and the left visual field on the visual cortex of the right hemisphere (Fig. 22-2). The lower retinal quadrants (upper field of vision) project on the lower wall of the calcarine sulcus, while the upper retinal quadrants (lower field of vision) project on the upper wall of the sulcus. Note also that the *macula lutea* is represented on the posterior part of area 17, and the periphery of the retina is represented anteriorly.

Visual Reflexes

Direct and Consensual Light Reflexes

If a light is shone into one eye, the pupils of both eyes normally constrict. The constriction of the pupil upon which the light is shone is called the *direct light reflex;* the constriction of the opposite pupil even though no light fell upon that eye is called the *consensual light reflex* (Fig. 22-3).

The afferent impulses travel through the optic nerve, optic chiasma, and optic tract (Fig. 22-3). Here a small number of fibers leave the optic tract and synapse on nerve cells in the *pretectal nucleus*, which lies close to the superior colliculus. The impulses are passed by axons of the pretectal nerve cells to the parasympathetic nuclei (*Edinger-Westphal nuclei*) of the third cranial nerve on both sides. Here the fibers synapse and the parasympathetic nerves travel through the third cranial nerve to the *ciliary ganglion* in the orbit (Fig. 22-3). Finally, postganglionic parasympathetic fibers pass through the *short ciliary nerves* to the eyeball and the *constrictor pupillae muscle* of the iris. Both pupils constrict in the consensual light reflex because the pretectal nucleus sends fibers to the parasympathetic nuclei on both sides of the midbrain (Fig. 22-3). The fibers that cross the median plane do so close to the cerebral aqueduct or in the posterior commissure.

Accommodation Reflex

When the eyes are directed from a distant to a near object, contraction of the medial recti brings about convergence of the ocular axes, the lens thickens to increase its refractive power by contraction of the ciliary muscle, and the pupils constrict to restrict the light waves to the thickest

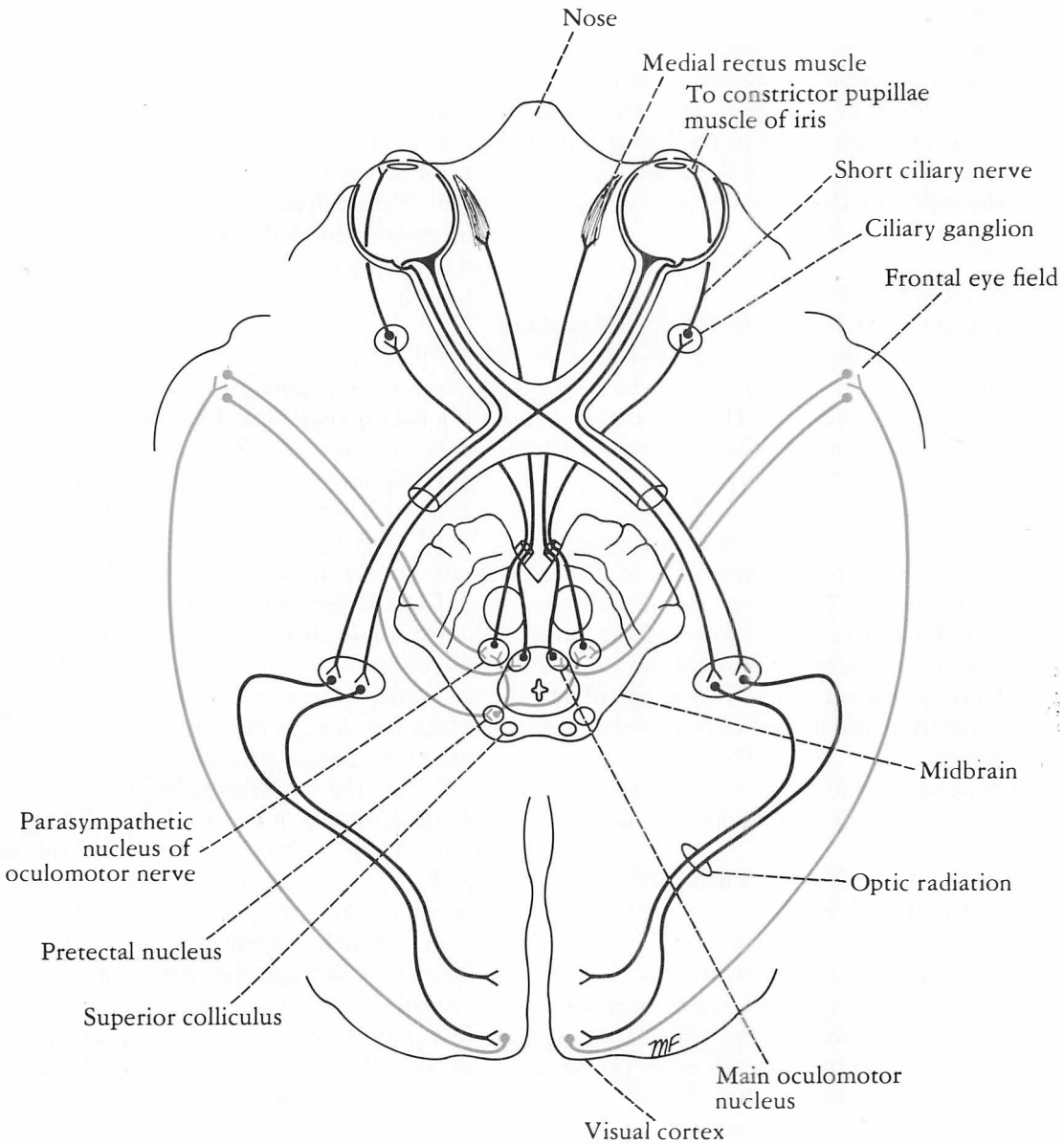


Fig. 22-3. The optic pathway and the visual reflexes.

central part of the lens. The afferent impulses travel through the optic nerve, the optic chiasma, the optic tract, the lateral geniculate body, and the optic radiation to the visual cortex. The visual cortex is connected to the eye field of the frontal cortex (Fig. 22-3). From here, cortical fibers descend through the internal capsule to the oculomotor nuclei in the midbrain. The oculomotor nerve travels to the medial recti muscles. Some of the descending cortical fibers synapse with the parasympathetic nuclei (Edinger-Westphal nuclei) of the third cranial nerve on both sides. Here the fibers synapse and the parasympathetic nerves travel through the third cranial nerve to the ciliary ganglion in the orbit. Finally, postganglionic parasympathetic fibers pass through the short ciliary nerves to the *ciliary muscle* and the *constrictor pupillae muscle* of the iris (Fig. 22-3).

Corneal Reflex

Light touching of the cornea or conjunctiva results in blinking of the eyelids. Afferent impulses from the cornea or conjunctiva travel through the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve to the sensory nucleus of the trigeminal nerve (Fig. 22-4A). Internuncial neurons connect with the motor nucleus of the facial nerve on both sides through the medial longitudinal fasciculus. The facial nerve and its branches supply the orbicularis oculi muscle, which causes closure of the eyelids.

Visual Body Reflexes

The automatic scanning movements of the eyes and head made when reading, the automatic movement of the eyes, head, and neck toward the source of the visual stimulus, and the protective closing of the eyes and even the raising of the arm for protection are reflex actions that involve the following reflex arcs (Fig. 22-4B). The visual impulses follow the optic nerves, optic chiasma, and optic tracts to the superior colliculi. Here the impulses are relayed to the tectospinal and tectobulbar (tectonuclear) tracts and to the neurons of the anterior gray columns of the spinal cord and cranial motor nuclei.

Pupillary Skin Reflex

The pupil will dilate if the skin is painfully stimulated by pinching (Fig. 22-4). The afferent sensory fibers are believed to have connections with the efferent preganglionic sympathetic neurons in the lateral gray columns of the first and second thoracic segments of the spinal cord. The *white rami communicantes* of these segments pass to the sympathetic trunk and the preganglionic fibers ascend to the superior *cervical sympathetic ganglion.* The postganglionic fibers pass through the *internal carotid plexus* and the *long ciliary nerves* to the dilator pupillae muscle of the iris.

Oculomotor Nerve

The oculomotor nerve has two motor nuclei: (1) the main motor nucleus and (2) the accessory parasympathetic nucleus. The *main oculomotor nucleus* is situated in the anterior part of the gray matter that surrounds the *cerebral aqueduct of the midbrain* (Fig. 22-5). It lies at the level of the *superior colliculus.* The nucleus consists of groups of nerve cells that supply all the extrinsic muscles of the eye except the superior oblique and the lateral rectus. The outgoing nerve fibers pass anteriorly through the red nucleus and emerge on the anterior surface of the midbrain in the *interpeduncular fossa.* The main oculomotor nucleus receives corticonuclear fibers from both cerebral hemispheres. It receives tectobulbar fibers from the superior colliculus and through this route receives information from the visual cortex. It also receives fibers from the medial longitudinal fasciculus, by which it is connected to the nuclei of the fourth, sixth, and eighth cranial nerves.

The *accessory parasympathetic nucleus (Edinger-Westphal nucleus)* is situated posterior to the main oculomotor nucleus (Fig. 22-5). The axons of the nerve cells, which are preganglionic, accompany the other oculomotor fibers to the orbit. Here they synapse in the *ciliary ganglion* and postganglionic fibers pass through the *short ciliary nerves* to the constrictor pupillae of the iris and the ciliary muscles. The accessory parasympathetic nucleus receives corticonuclear fibers for the accommodation reflex and fibers from the pretectal

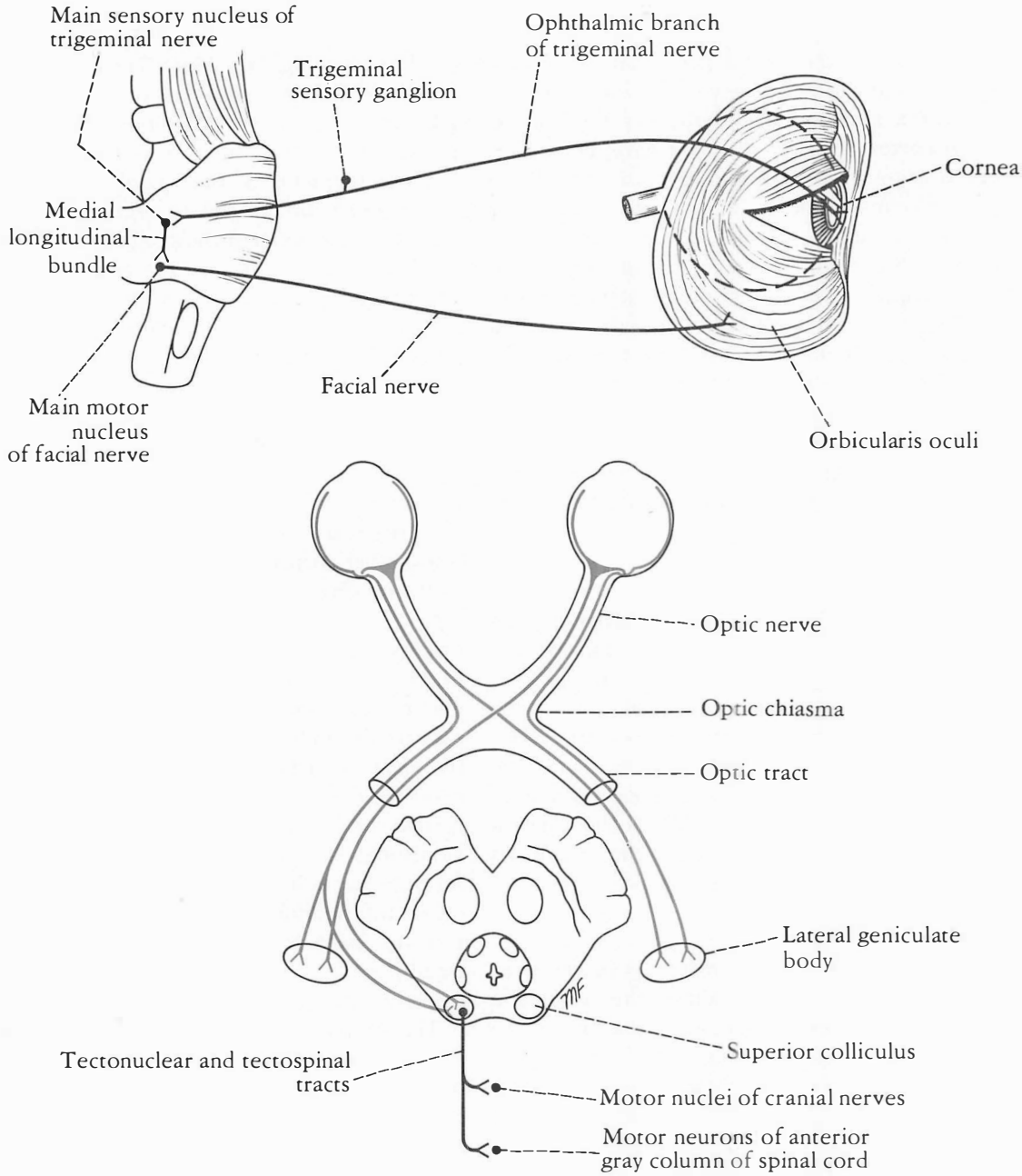


Fig. 22-4. A. Corneal reflex.
B. Visual body reflex.

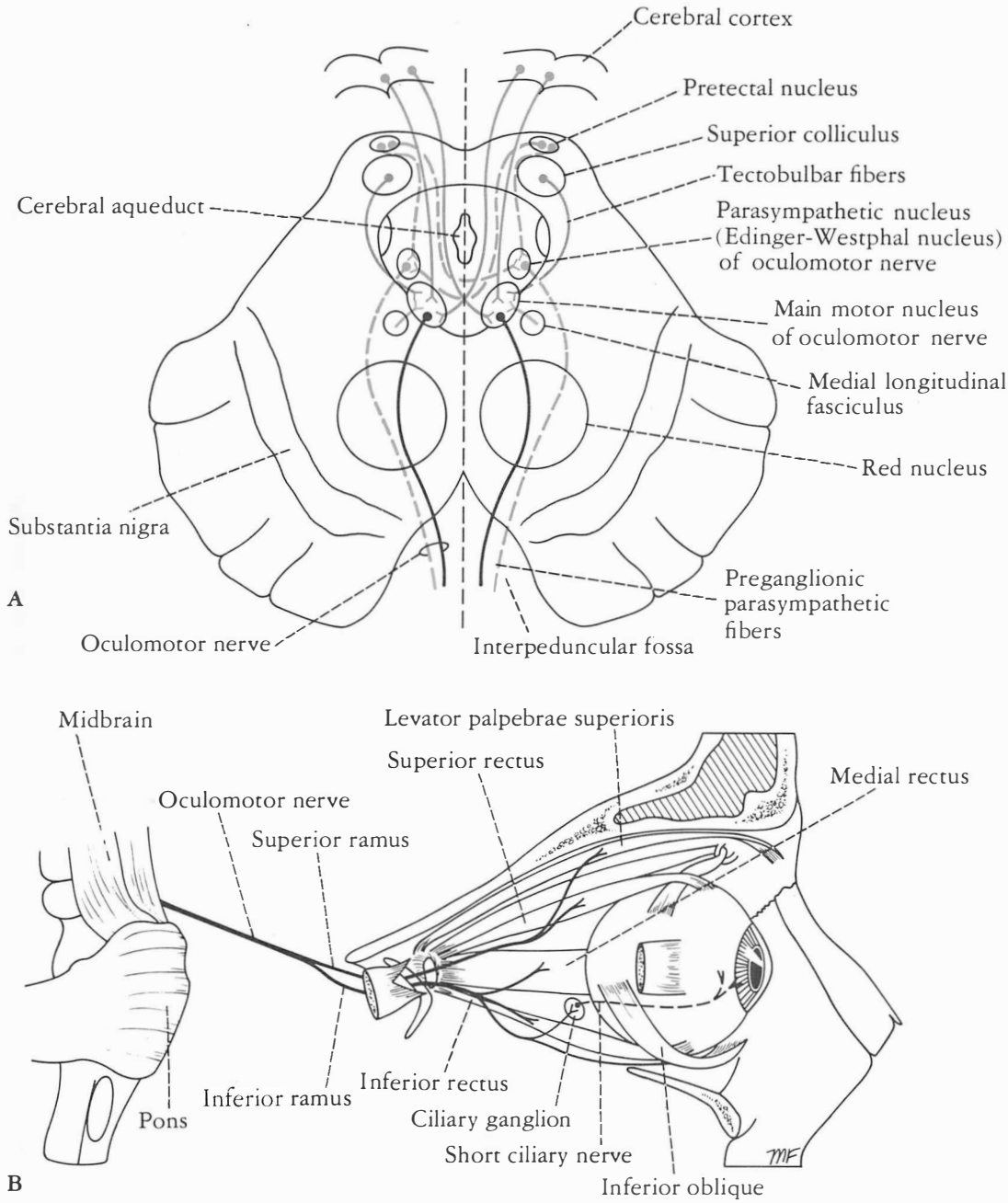


Fig. 22-5. A. Oculomotor nerve nuclei and their central connections.
B. The distribution of the oculomotor nerve.

nucleus for the direct and consensual light reflexes (see Fig. 22-3).

Trochlear Nerve

The *trochlear nucleus* is situated in the anterior part of the gray matter that surrounds the *cerebral aqueduct of the midbrain* (Fig. 22-6). It lies inferior to the oculomotor nucleus at the level of the *inferior colliculus.* The nerve fibers, after leaving the nucleus, pass posteriorly around the central gray matter and, on reaching the posterior surface of the midbrain, *decussate* in the *superior medullary velum* with the fibers from the nucleus of the opposite side. The slender nerve, which may be found just inferior to the inferior colliculus, then passes anteriorly and enters the orbit and supplies the *superior oblique muscle* (Fig. 22-6).

The trochlear nucleus receives corticonuclear fibers from both cerebral hemispheres. It receives the tectobulbar fibers, which connect it to the visual cortex through the superior colliculus (Fig. 22-6). It also receives fibers from the *medial longitudinal fasciculus,* by which it is connected to the nuclei of the third, sixth, and eighth cranial nerves.

Trigeminal Nerve

The trigeminal nerve is the largest cranial nerve. It is the sensory nerve to the greater part of the head and the motor nerve to several muscles, including the muscles of mastication (Fig. 22-8). It has four nuclei: (1) the main sensory nucleus, (2) the spinal nucleus, (3) the mesencephalic nucleus, and (4) the motor nucleus.

Main Sensory Nucleus. This nucleus lies in the posterior part of the pons, anterolateral to the motor nucleus (Fig. 22-7A). It is continuous below with the spinal nucleus.

Spinal Nucleus. This nucleus is continuous superiorly with the main sensory nucleus in the pons and extends inferiorly through the whole length of the medulla oblongata and into the upper part of the spinal cord as far as the second cervical segment (Fig. 22-7B).

Mesencephalic Nucleus. This nucleus is composed of a column of unipolar nerve cells situated in the lateral part of the gray matter around the cerebral aqueduct. It extends inferiorly into the pons as far as the main sensory nucleus (Fig. 22-7).

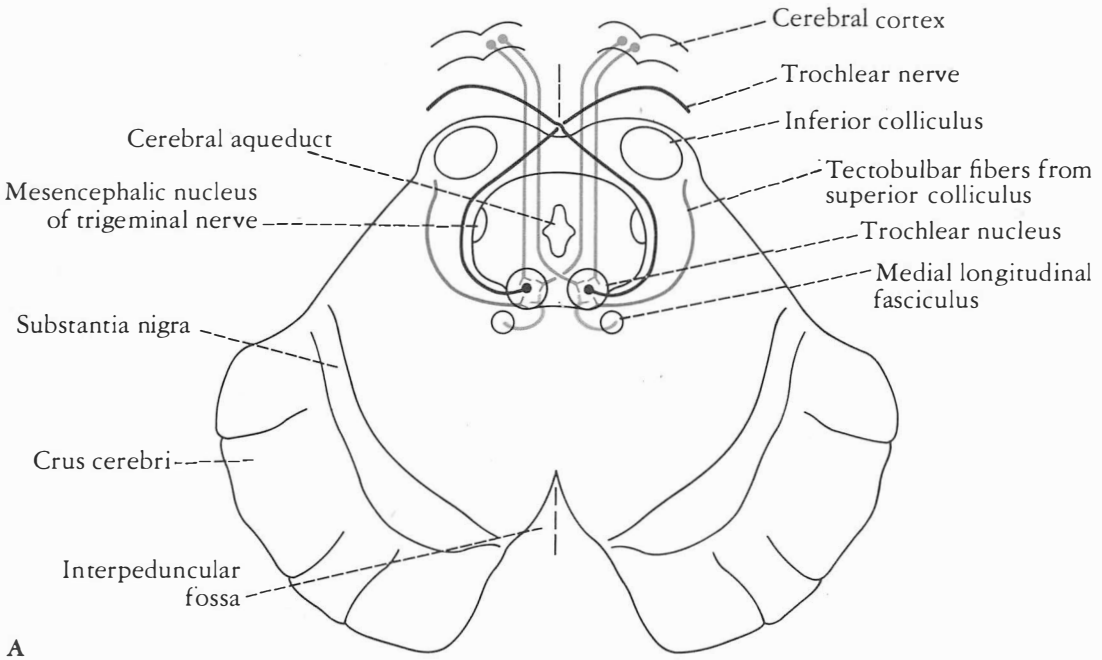
Motor Nucleus. This nucleus is situated in the pons medial to the main sensory nucleus (Fig. 22-7).

Sensory Components of the Trigeminal Nerve

The sensations of pain and temperature and touch and pressure travel along axons whose cell bodies are situated in the *semilunar or trigeminal sensory ganglion* (Fig. 22-7B). The central processes of these cells form the large sensory root of the trigeminal nerve. About half the fibers divide into ascending and descending branches when they enter the pons; the remainder ascend or descend without division (Fig. 22-7B). The ascending branches terminate in the main sensory nucleus and the descending branches terminate in the spinal nucleus. The sensations of touch and pressure are conveyed by nerve fibers that terminate in the main sensory nucleus. The sensations of pain and temperature pass to the spinal nucleus (Fig. 22-7B). It is interesting to note that the sensory fibers from the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve terminate in the inferior part of the spinal nucleus; fibers from the maxillary division terminate in the middle of the spinal nucleus; and fibers from the mandibular division end in the superior part of the spinal nucleus.

Proprioceptive impulses from the muscles of mastication and from the facial and extraocular muscles are carried by fibers in the sensory root of the trigeminal nerve that have bypassed the semilunar or trigeminal ganglion (Fig. 22-7B). The fibers' cells of origin are the unipolar cells of the mesencephalic nucleus (Fig. 22-7).

The axons of the neurons in the main sensory and spinal nuclei, and the central processes of the cells in the mesencephalic nucleus, now cross the median plane and ascend as the *trigeminal lemniscus* to terminate on the nerve cells of the *ventral posteromedial nucleus of the thalamus.* The axons of these cells now travel through the internal capsule to the postcentral gyrus (areas 3, 1, and 2) of the cerebral cortex.



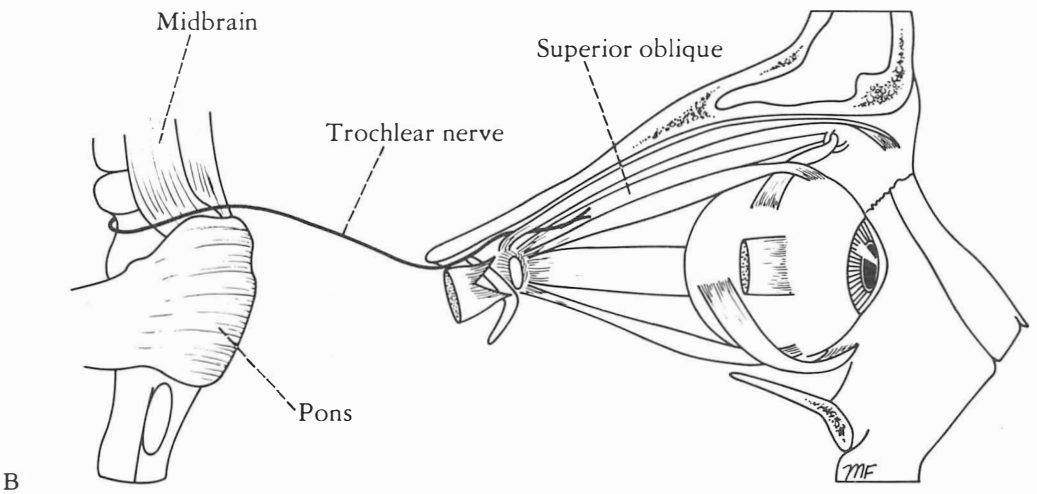


Fig. 22-6. A. Trochlear nerve nucleus and its central connections.
B. Distribution of the trochlear nerve.

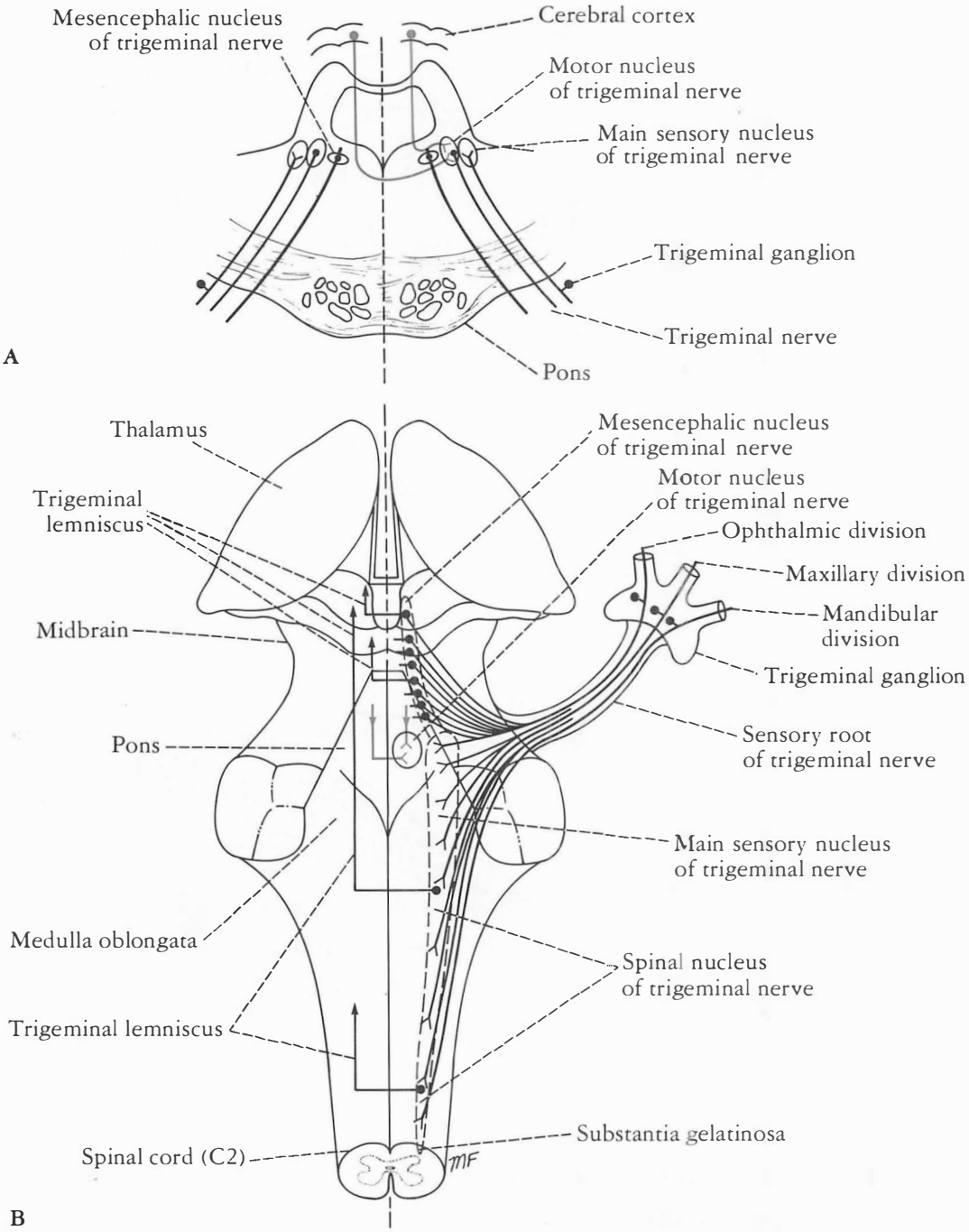


Fig. 22-7. A. Trigeminal nerve nuclei seen in coronal section of pons.
B. Trigeminal nerve nuclei in the brainstem and their central connections.

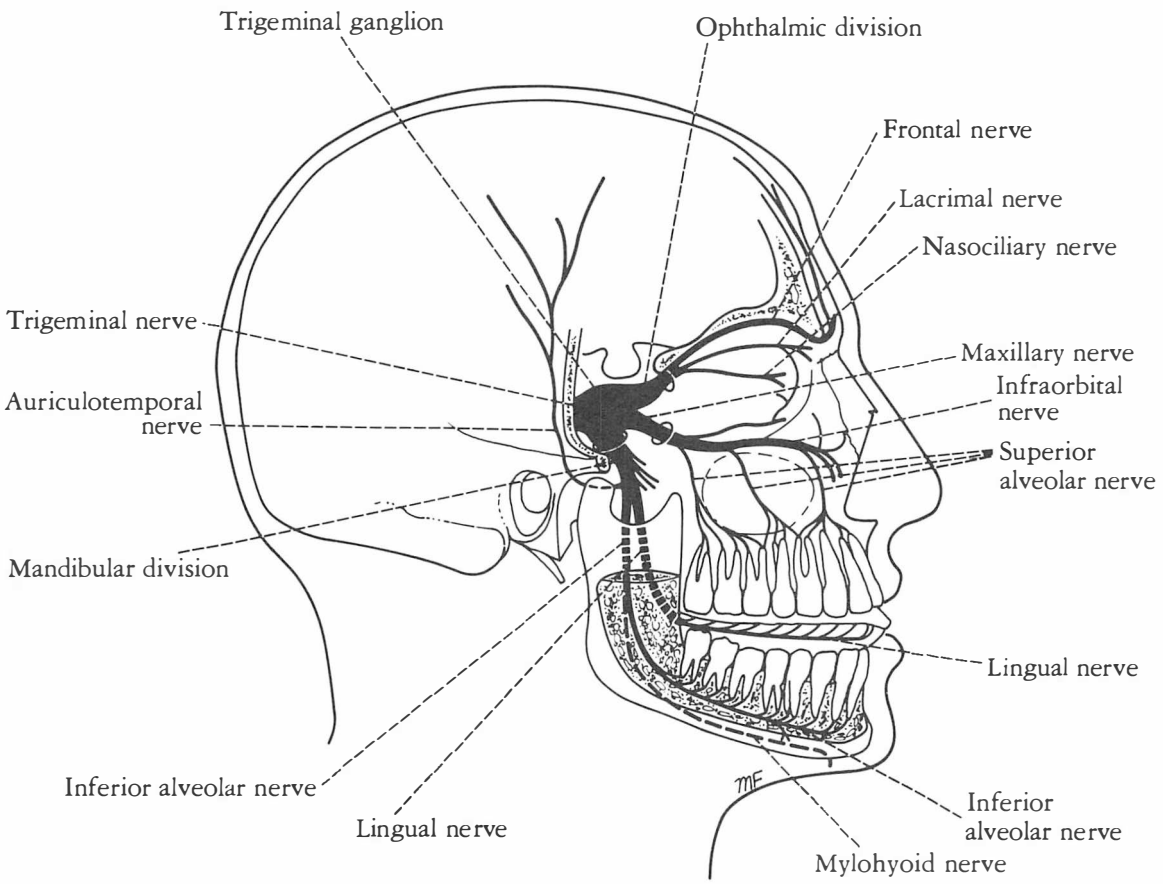


Fig. 22-8. Distribution of trigeminal nerve.

Motor Component of the Trigeminal Nerve

The motor nucleus receives corticonuclear fibers from both cerebral hemispheres (Fig. 22-7). It also receives fibers from the reticular formation, the red nucleus, the tectum, and the medial longitudinal fasciculus. In addition, it is believed to receive fibers from the mesencephalic nucleus, thereby forming a monosynaptic reflex arc.

The cells of the motor nucleus give rise to the axons that form the motor root. The motor nucleus supplies the *muscles of mastication,* the *tensor tympani,* the *tensor veli palatini,* and the *mylohyoid* and the *anterior belly of the digastric muscle* (Fig. 22-8).

Abducent Nerve

The abducent nerve is a small nerve that supplies the *lateral rectus muscle* of the eyeball. The small motor nucleus is situated beneath the floor of the upper part of the fourth ventricle, close to the midline and beneath the *colliculus facialis* (Fig. 22-9A).

The nucleus receives afferent corticonuclear fibers from both cerebral hemispheres. It receives the tectobulbar tract from the superior colliculus, by which the visual cortex is connected to the nucleus. It also receives fibers from the medial longitudinal fasciculus, by which it is connected to the nuclei of the third, fourth, and eighth cranial nerves (Fig. 22-9A).

The fibers of the abducent nerve pass anteriorly through the pons and emerge in the groove be-

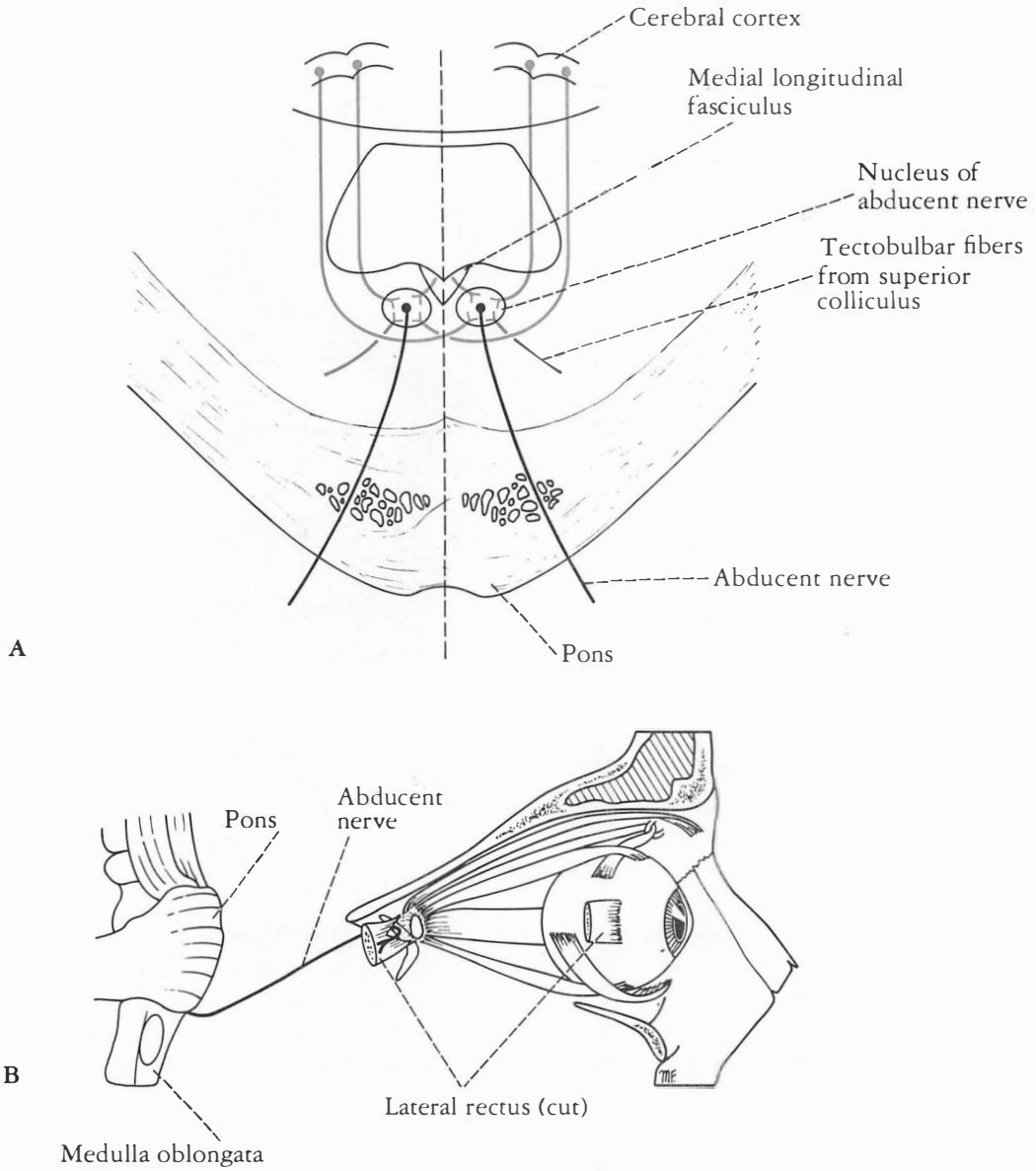


Fig. 22-9. A. Abducent nerve nucleus and its central connections.
B. Distribution of the abducent nerve.

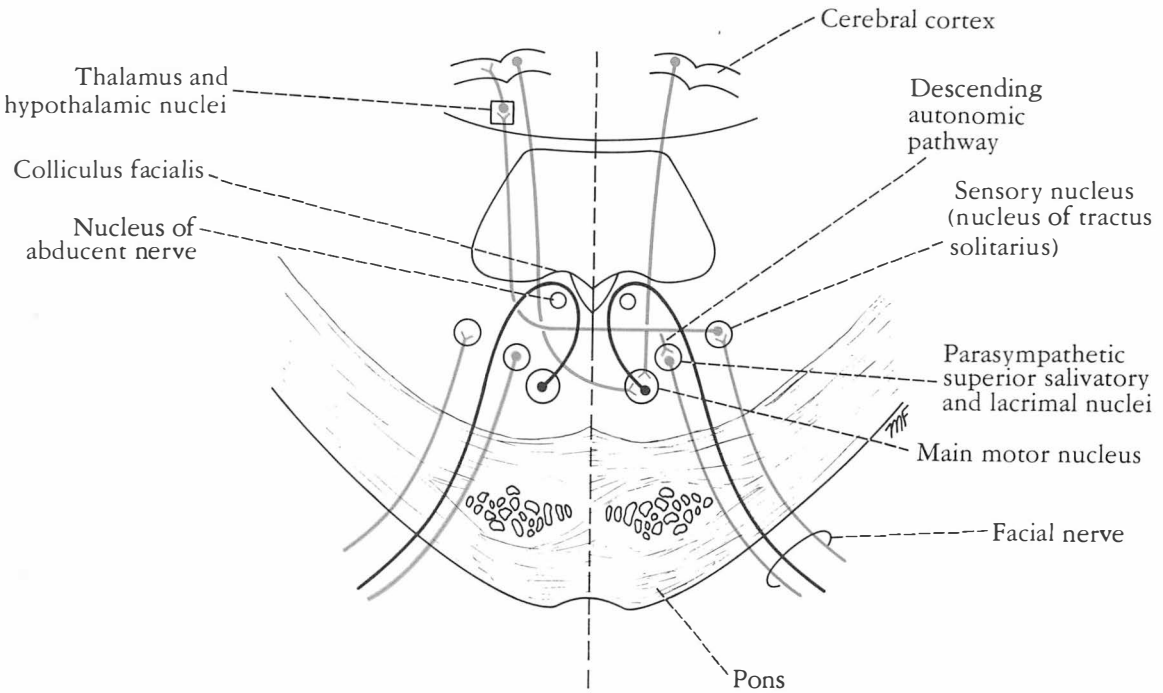


Fig. 22-10. Facial nerve nuclei and their central connections.

tween the lower border of the pons and the medulla oblongata (Fig. 22-9B).

Facial Nerve

The facial nerve has three nuclei: (1) the main motor nucleus, (2) the parasympathetic nuclei, and (3) the sensory nucleus.

Main Motor Nucleus. This nucleus lies deep in the reticular formation of the lower part of the pons (Fig. 22-10). The part of the nucleus that supplies the muscles of the lower part of the face receives corticonuclear fibers from the opposite cerebral hemisphere. The part of the nucleus that supplies the muscles of the upper part of the face receives corticonuclear fibers from both cerebral hemispheres.

Parasympathetic Nuclei. These nuclei lie posterolateral to the main motor nucleus. They are sometimes referred to as the *superior salivatory* and *lacrimal nuclei* (Fig. 22-10). The superior salivatory nucleus is believed to receive afferent fibers from the hypothalamus through the *descending autonomic pathways.* It is also thought to receive information from the olfactory system through the reticular formation. Information concerning taste also is received from the *nucleus of the solitary tract* from the mouth cavity.

The lacrimal nucleus also is believed to receive afferent fibers from the hypothalamus for emotional responses and from the sensory nuclei of the trigeminal nerve for reflex lacrimation secondary to irritation of the cornea or conjunctiva.

Sensory Nucleus. This nucleus is the upper part of the *nucleus of the tractus solitarius* and lies close to the motor nucleus (Fig. 22-10). Sensations of taste travel through the peripheral axons of nerve cells situated in the *geniculate ganglion* on the seventh cranial nerve. The central processes of these cells synapse on nerve cells in the nucleus. Efferent fibers cross the median plane and ascend to the ventral group of nuclei of the opposite thalamus and also a number of hypothalamic nuclei. From

the thalamus, the axons of the thalamic cells pass through the internal capsule and corona radiata to end in the lower part of the postcentral gyrus (Fig. 22-10).

Facial Nerve. The facial nerve leaves the anterior surface of the brain in the groove between the lower border of the pons and the medulla oblongata. It consists of *a motor and a sensory root.* The fibers of the motor root first travel posteriorly around the medial side of the *abducent nucleus* (Fig. 22-10). Then they pass around the nucleus beneath the *colliculus facialis* in the floor of the fourth ventricle and finally pass anteriorly to emerge from the brainstem (Fig. 22-10).

The sensory root (*nervus intermedius*) is formed of the central processes of the unipolar cells of the *geniculate ganglion.* It also contains the efferent preganglionic parasympathetic fibers from the parasympathetic nuclei.

Distribution of the Facial Nerve

The *motor nucleus* supplies the *muscles of facial expression,* the *auricular muscles,* the *stapedius,* the *posterior belly of the digastric,* and the *stylohyoid muscles* (Fig. 22-11).

The *superior salivatory nucleus* supplies the *submandibular and sublingual salivary glands* and the *nasal and palatine glands.* The *lacrimal nucleus* supplies the *lacrimal gland.*

The *sensory nucleus* receives taste fibers from the *anterior two-thirds of the tongue,* the *floor of the mouth,* and the *soft palate.*

Vestibulocochlear Nerve

This nerve consists of two distinct parts, the *vestibular nerve* and the *cochlear nerve,* which are concerned with the transmission of afferent information from the internal ear to the central nervous system (Fig. 22-14).

The Vestibular Nerve. The fibers of the vestibular nerve are the central processes of nerve cells located in the *vestibular ganglion,* which is situated in the *internal acoustic meatus.* They enter the anterior surface of the brainstem in a groove between the lower border of the pons and the upper part of the medulla oblongata (Fig. 22-12). When they enter the vestibular nuclear complex, the fibers divide into short ascending and long descending fibers; a small number of fibers pass directly to the cerebellum through the inferior cerebellar peduncle, thus bypassing the vestibular nuclei.

The Vestibular Nuclear Complex. This complex consists of a group of nuclei situated beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle (Fig. 22-12). Four nuclei may be recognized: (1) the *lateral vestibular nucleus,* (2) the *superior vestibular nucleus,* (3) the *medial vestibular nucleus,* and (4) the *inferior vestibular nucleus* (see Fig. 8-6).

The vestibular nuclei receive afferent fibers from the *utricle* and *saccule* and the *semicircular canals* through the vestibular nerve, and fibers from the cerebellum through the inferior cerebellar peduncle (Fig. 22-12). Efferent fibers from the nuclei pass to the cerebellum through the inferior cerebellar peduncle. Efferent fibers also descend to the spinal cord from the lateral vestibular nucleus and form the *vestibulospinal tract* (Fig. 22-12). In addition, efferent fibers pass to the nuclei of the oculomotor, trochlear, and abducent nerves through the medial longitudinal fasciculus.

These connections enable the internal ear to influence the movements of the eyes and maintain balance by influencing the muscle tone of the limbs and trunk.

The Cochlear Nerve. The fibers of the cochlear nerve are the central processes of nerve cells located in the *spiral ganglion of the cochlea* (Fig. 22-14). They enter the anterior surface of the brainstem at the lower border of the pons on the lateral side of the emerging facial nerve and are separated from it by the vestibular nerve (Fig. 22-13). On entering the pons the nerve fibers divide, one branch entering the *posterior cochlear nucleus* and the other branch entering the *anterior cochlear nucleus.*

Cochlear Nuclei. The anterior and posterior cochlear nuclei are situated on the surface of the inferior cerebellar peduncle (Fig. 22-13). They receive afferent fibers from the cochlea through the cochlear nerve. The cochlear nuclei send axons (second-order neuron fibers) that run medially

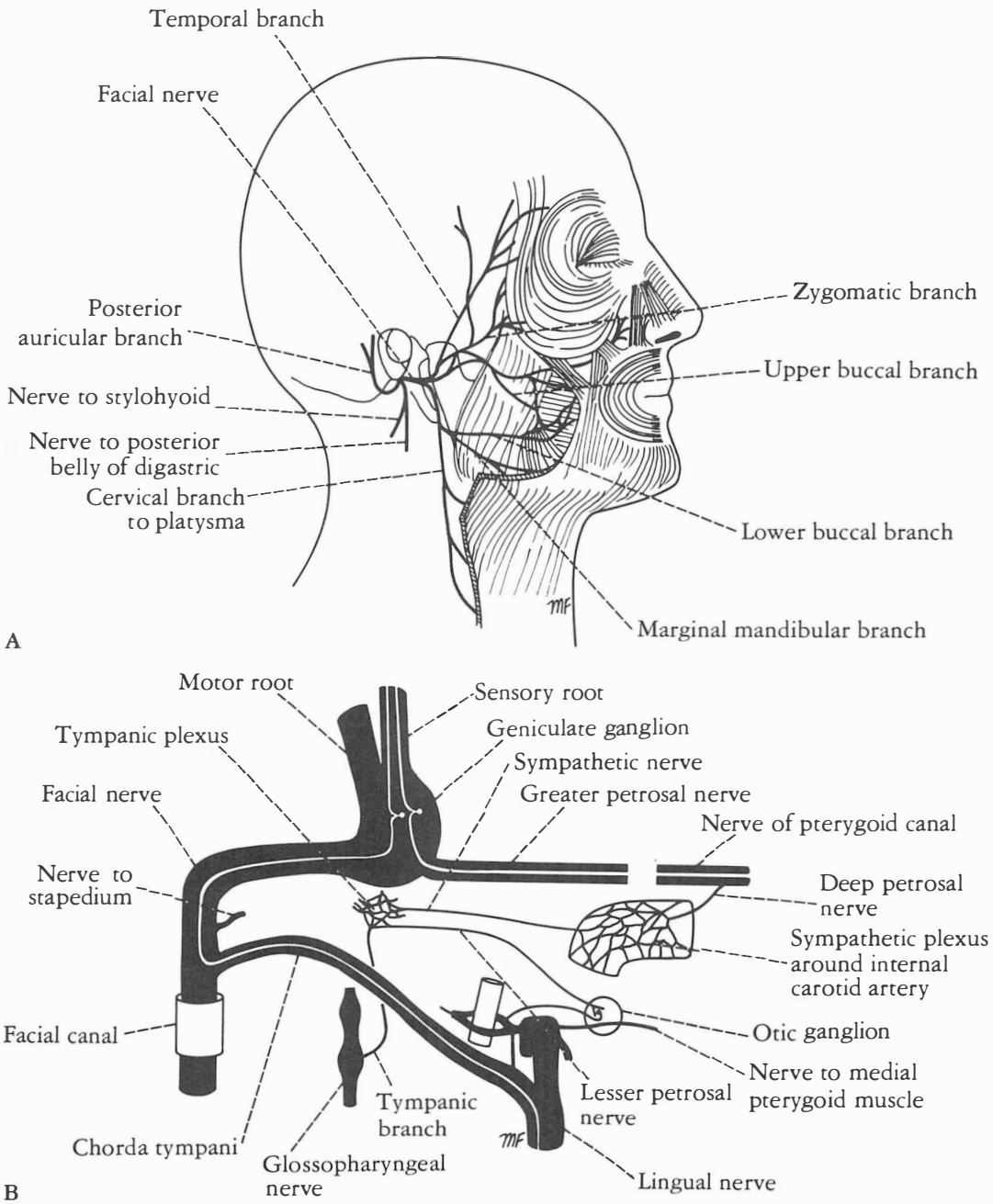


Fig. 22-11. A. Distribution of facial nerve. B. Branches of facial nerve within petrous part of the temporal bone; the taste fibers are shown in white. The glossopharyngeal nerve is also shown.

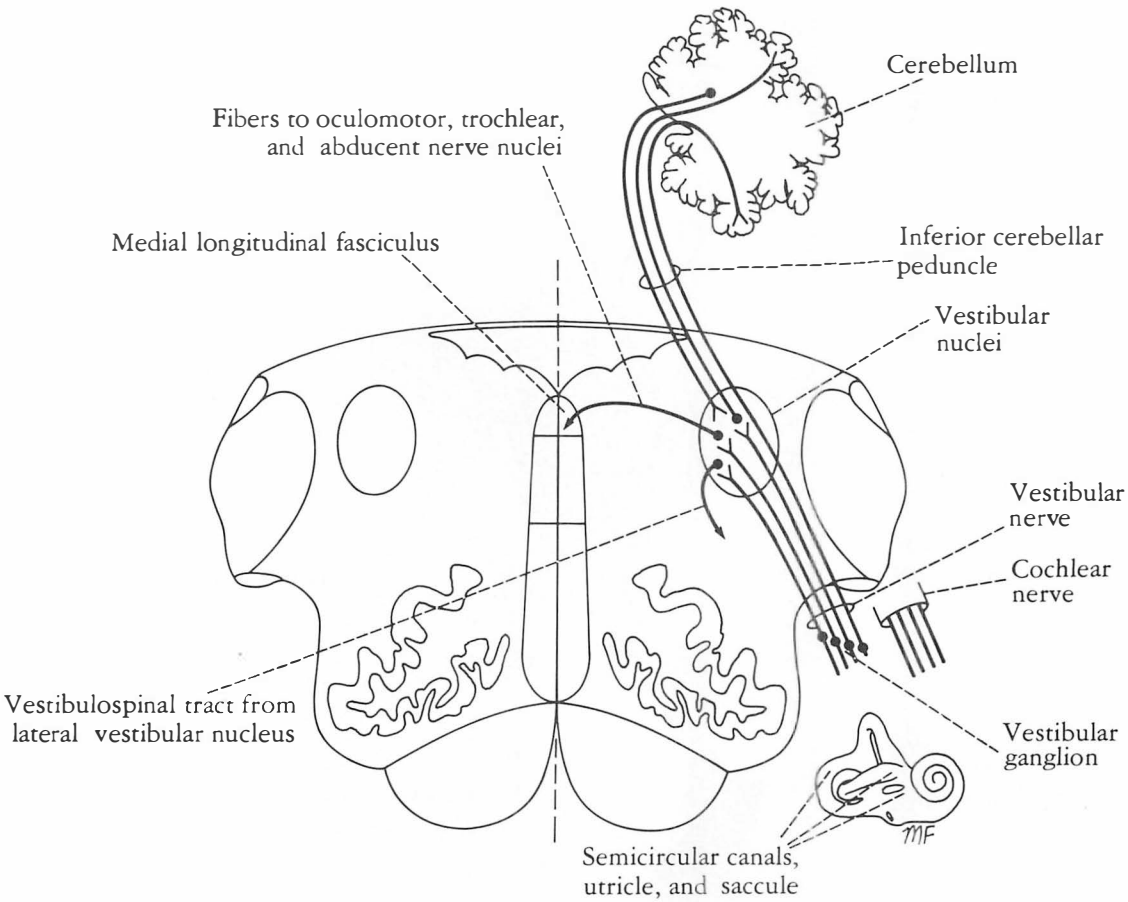


Fig. 22-12. Vestibular nerve nuclei and their central connections.

through the pons to end in the *trapezoid body*. Here they are relayed in the *posterior nucleus of the trapezoid body* on the same or the opposite side. The axons now ascend through the posterior part of the pons and midbrain and form a tract known as the *lateral lemniscus* (Fig. 22-13). Each lateral lemniscus, therefore, consists of third-order neurons from both sides. As these fibers ascend, some of them relay in small groups of nerve cells, which collectively are known as the *nucleus of the lateral lemniscus* (Fig. 22-13).

On reaching the midbrain, the fibers of the lateral lemniscus either terminate in the *nucleus of the inferior colliculus* or are relayed in the *medial geniculate body* and pass to the *auditory cortex* of the cerebral hemisphere through the *acoustic radiation of the internal capsule* (Fig. 22-13).

Glossopharyngeal Nerve

The glossopharyngeal nerve has three nuclei: (1) the main motor nucleus, (2) the parasympathetic nucleus, and (3) the sensory nucleus.

Main Motor Nucleus. This nucleus lies deep in the reticular formation of the medulla oblongata and is formed by the superior end of the nucleus ambiguus (Fig. 22-15). It receives corticonuclear fibers from both cerebral hemispheres. The efferent fibers supply the *stylopharyngeus muscle.*

Parasympathetic Nucleus. This nucleus is also called the *inferior salivatory nucleus* (Fig. 22-15). It receives afferent fibers from the hypothalamus

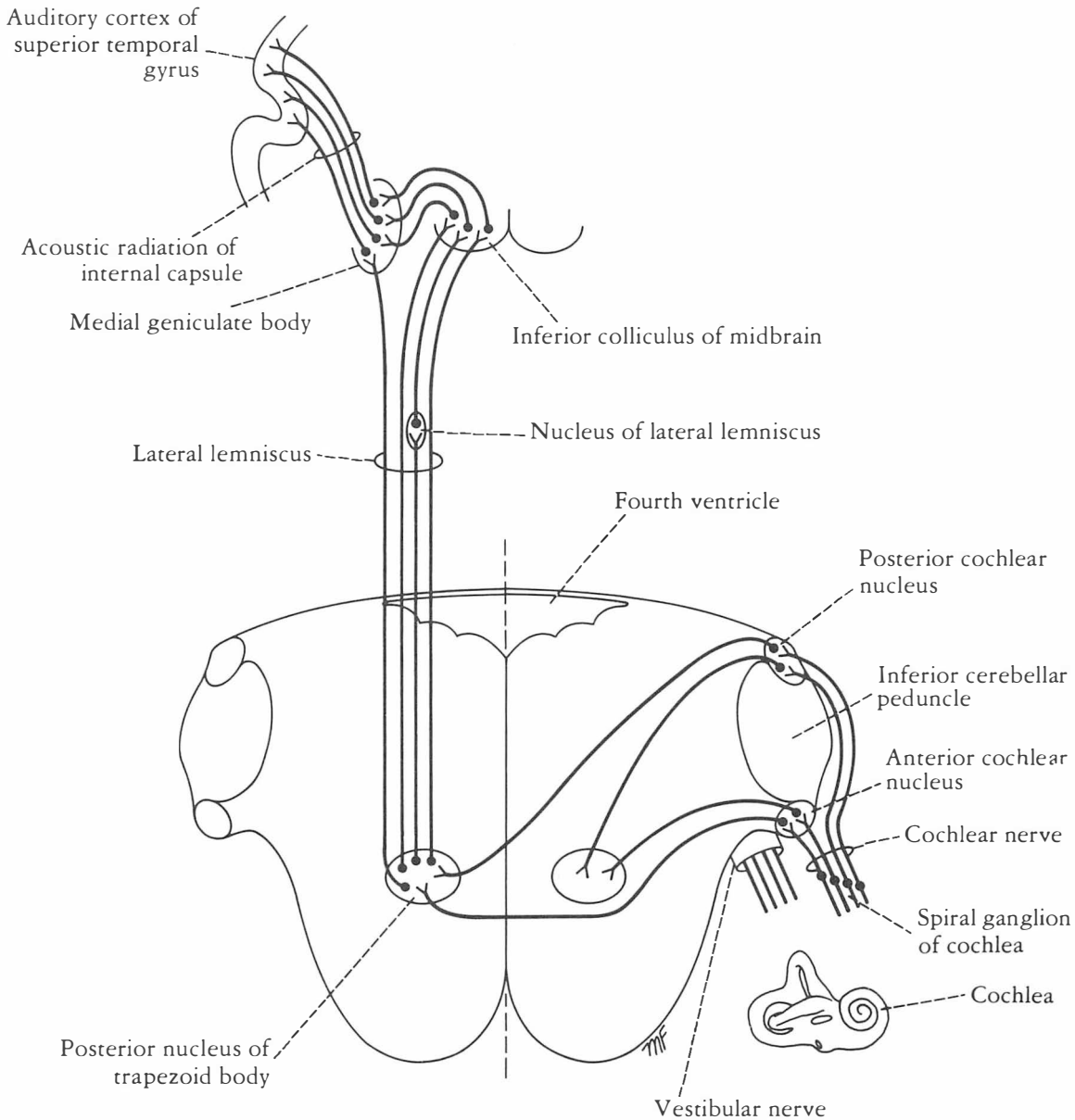


Fig. 22-13. Cochlear nerve nuclei and their central connections.

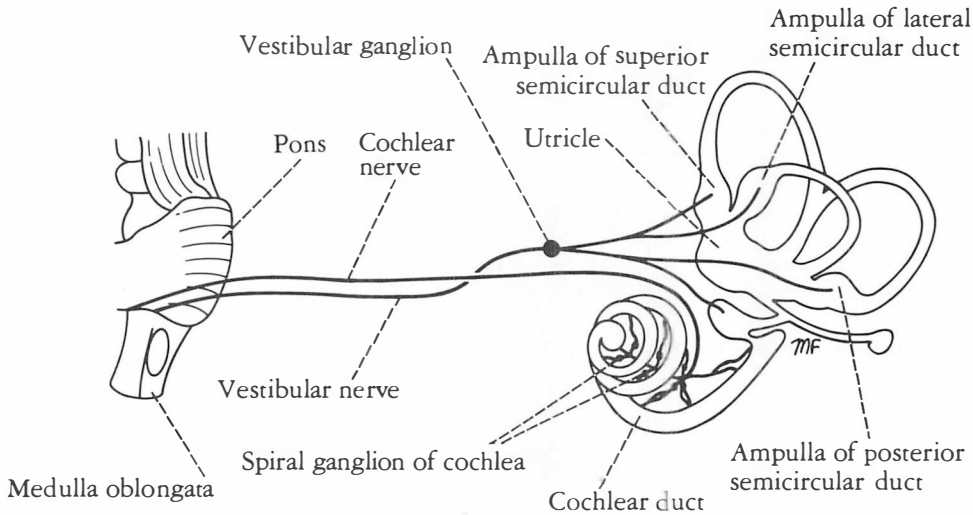


Fig. 22-14. Distribution of the vestibulocochlear nerve.

through the *descending autonomic pathways.* It also is thought to receive information from the olfactory system through the reticular formation. Information concerning taste also is received from the nucleus of the solitary tract from the mouth cavity.

The efferent preganglionic parasympathetic fibers reach the otic ganglion through the *tympanic branch of the glossopharyngeal nerve,* the *tympanic plexus,* and the *lesser petrosal nerve* (Fig. 22-16). The postganglionic fibers pass to the *parotid salivary gland.*

Sensory Nucleus. This is part of the *nucleus of the tractus solitarius* (Fig. 22-15). Sensations of taste travel through the peripheral axons of nerve cells situated in the *ganglion* on the glossopharyngeal nerve. The central processes of these cells synapse on nerve cells in the nucleus. Efferent fibers cross the median plane and ascend to the ventral group of nuclei of the opposite thalamus, and also a number of hypothalamic nuclei. From the thalamus, the axons of the thalamic cells pass through the internal capsule and corona radiata to end in the lower part of the postcentral gyrus.

It is interesting to note that afferent information that concerns common sensation enters the brainstem through the superior ganglion of the glossopharyngeal nerve, but ends in the *spinal nucleus of the trigeminal nerve.* Afferent impulses from the *carotid sinus,* a baroreceptor, situated at the bifurcation of the common carotid artery, also travel with the glossopharyngeal nerve. They terminate in the *dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus nerve.* The carotid sinus reflex that involves the glossopharyngeal and vagus nerves assists in the regulation of arterial blood pressure.

Glossopharyngeal Nerve. The glossopharyngeal nerve leaves the anterolateral surface of the upper part of the medulla oblongata as a series of rootlets in a groove between the olive and the inferior cerebellar peduncle (Fig. 22-15).

Vagus Nerve

The vagus nerve has three nuclei: (1) the main motor nucleus, (2) the parasympathetic nucleus, and (3) the sensory nucleus.

Main Motor Nucleus. This nucleus lies deep in the reticular formation of the medulla oblongata and is formed by the nucleus ambiguus (Fig. 22-17). It receives corticonuclear fibers from both cerebral hemispheres. The efferent fibers supply the constrictor muscles of the pharynx and the intrinsic muscles of the larynx (Fig. 22-18).

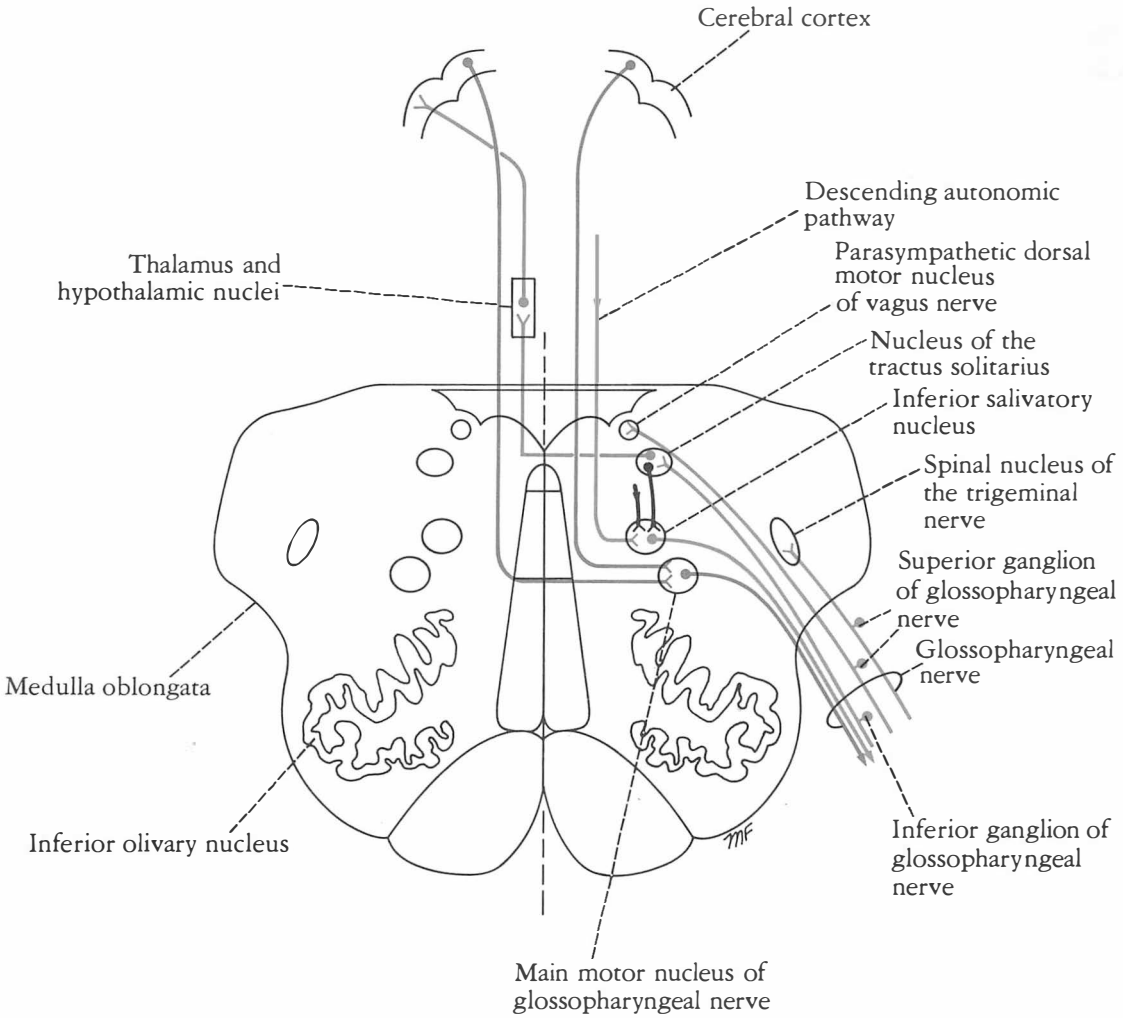


Fig. 22-15. Glossopharyngeal nerve nuclei and their central connections.

Parasympathetic Nucleus. This nucleus forms the dorsal nucleus of the vagus and lies beneath the floor of the lower part of the fourth ventricle posterolateral to the hypoglossal nucleus (Fig. 22-17). It receives afferent fibers from the hypothalamus through the descending autonomic pathways. It also receives other afferents, including those from the glossopharyngeal nerve (carotid sinus reflex). The efferent fibers are distributed to the involuntary muscle of the bronchi, heart, esophagus, stomach, small intestine, and large intestine as far as the distal one-third of the transverse colon (Fig. 22-18).

Sensory Nucleus. This nucleus is the lower part of the *nucleus of the tractus solitarius.* Sensations of taste travel through the peripheral axons of nerve cells situated in the *inferior ganglion on the vagus nerve.* The central processes of those cells synapse on nerve cells in the nucleus (Fig. 22-17). Efferent fibers are believed to cross the median plane and ascend to the ventral group of nuclei of the opposite thalamus and also to a number of

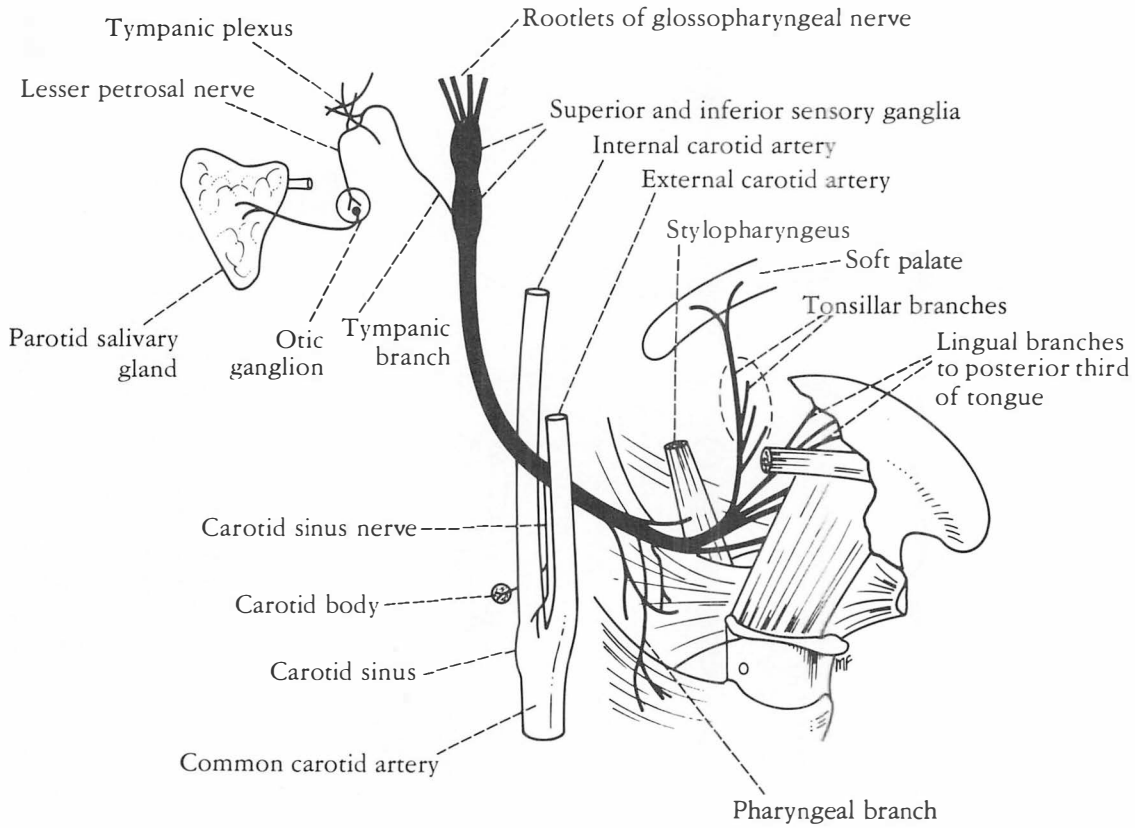


Fig. 22-16. The distribution of the glossopharyngeal nerve.

hypothalamic nuclei. From the thalamus, the axons of the thalamic cells pass through the internal capsule and corona radiata to end in the postcentral gyrus.

It is interesting to note that afferent information concerning common sensation enters the brainstem through the superior ganglion of the vagus nerve but ends in the *spinal nucleus of the trigeminal nerve.*

Vagus Nerve. The vagus nerve leaves the anterolateral surface of the upper part of the medulla oblongata as a series of rootlets in a groove between the olive and the inferior cerebellar peduncle (Fig. 22-17).

Accessory Nerve

The accessory nerve is formed by the union of a cranial and a spinal root.

Cranial Root. The cranial root is formed from the axons of nerve cells in the most inferior part of the nucleus ambiguus (Fig. 22-19). The nucleus receives corticonuclear fibers from both cerebral hemispheres. The efferent fibers of the nucleus join the vagus nerve and are distributed through the pharyngeal and recurrent laryngeal branches (Fig. 22-18). They probably supply some of the muscles of the soft palate and larynx.

Spinal Root (Part). The spinal root is formed from axons of nerve cells in the *spinal nucleus*, which is situated in the anterior gray column of the spinal cord in the upper five cervical segments (Fig. 22-19). The nerve fibers pass through the lat-

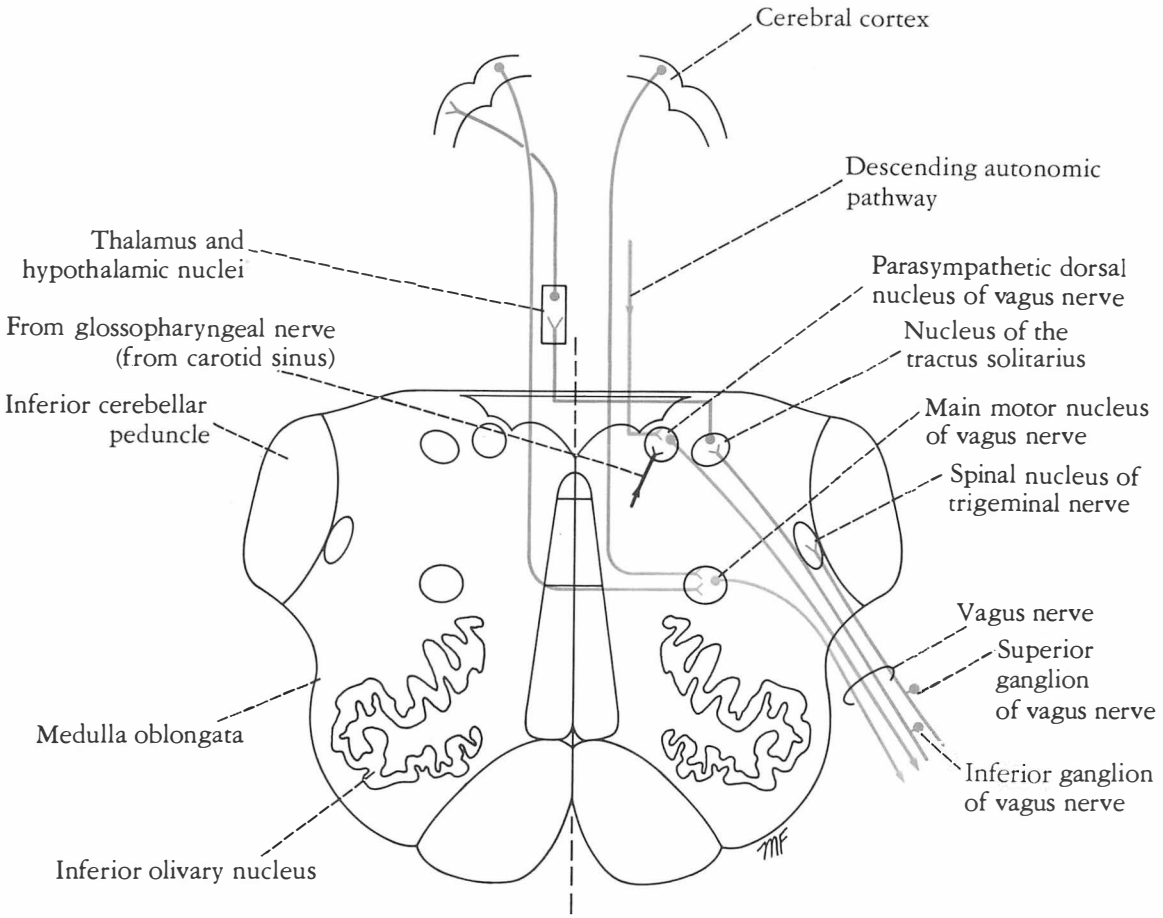


Fig. 22-17. Vagus nerve nuclei and their central connections.

eral white column of the spinal cord and emerge midway between the anterior and posterior nerve roots of the cervical spinal nerves. The fibers then form a nerve trunk that ascends into the skull through the foramen magnum. The spinal root then passes laterally and joins the cranial root as they pass through the jugular foramen. After a short distance, the spinal part separates from the cranial root and supplies the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles (Fig. 22-20).

The spinal nucleus is thought to receive corticospinal fibers from both cerebral hemispheres.

Hypoglossal Nerve

The hypoglossal nerve supplies all the intrinsic muscles of the tongue and, in addition, the styloglossus, the hyoglossus, and the genioglossus muscles (Fig. 22-22).

The *hypoglossal nucleus* is situated close to the midline immediately beneath the floor of the lower part of the fourth ventricle (Fig. 22-21). It receives corticonuclear fibers from both cerebral hemispheres. However, the cells responsible for supplying the genioglossus muscle (Fig. 22-22) only receive corticonuclear fibers from the opposite cerebral hemisphere.

The hypoglossal nerve fibers pass anteriorly through the medulla oblongata and emerge as a series of roots in the groove between the pyramid and the olive (Fig. 22-21).

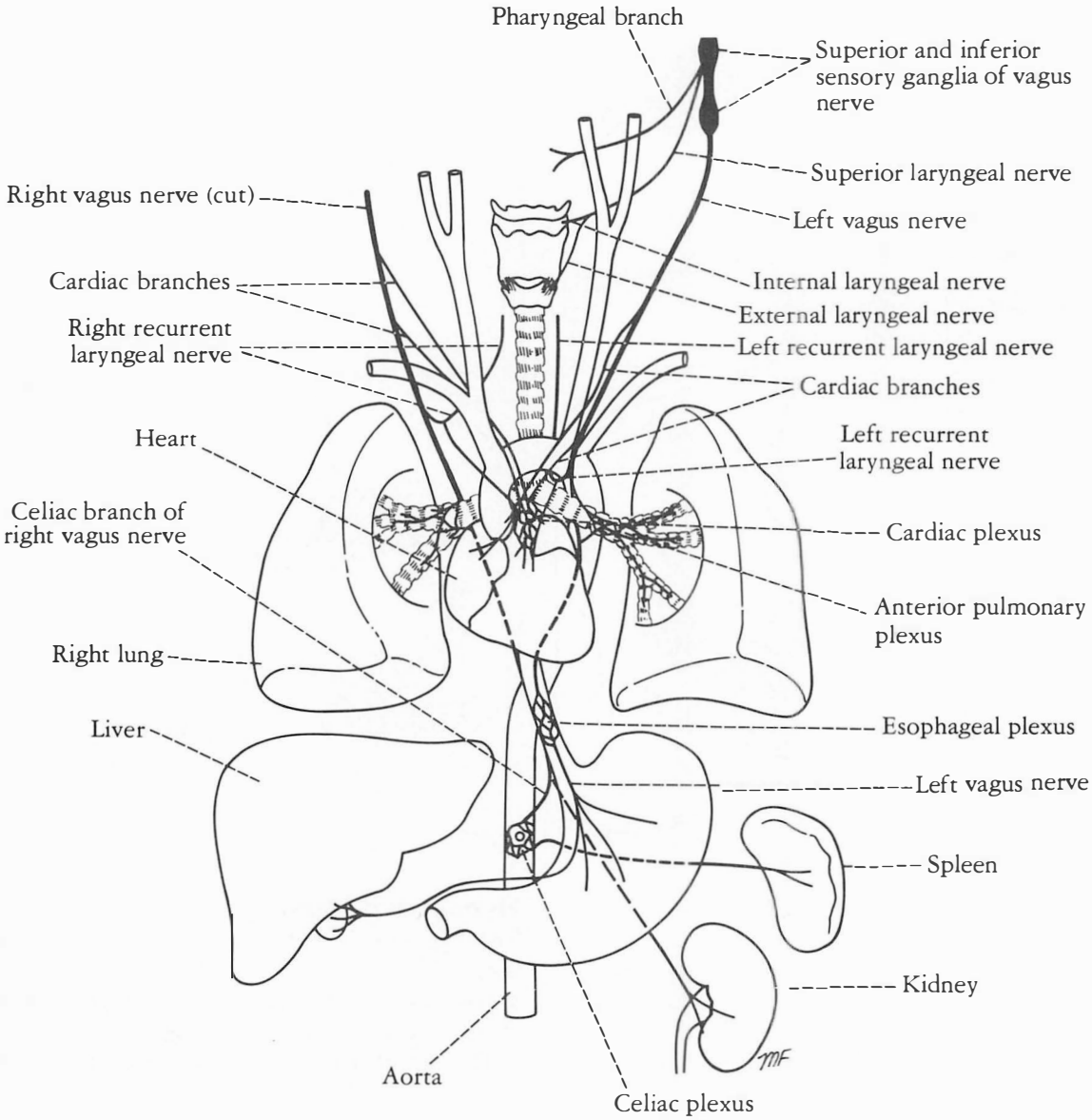


Fig. 22-18. Distribution of the vagus nerve.

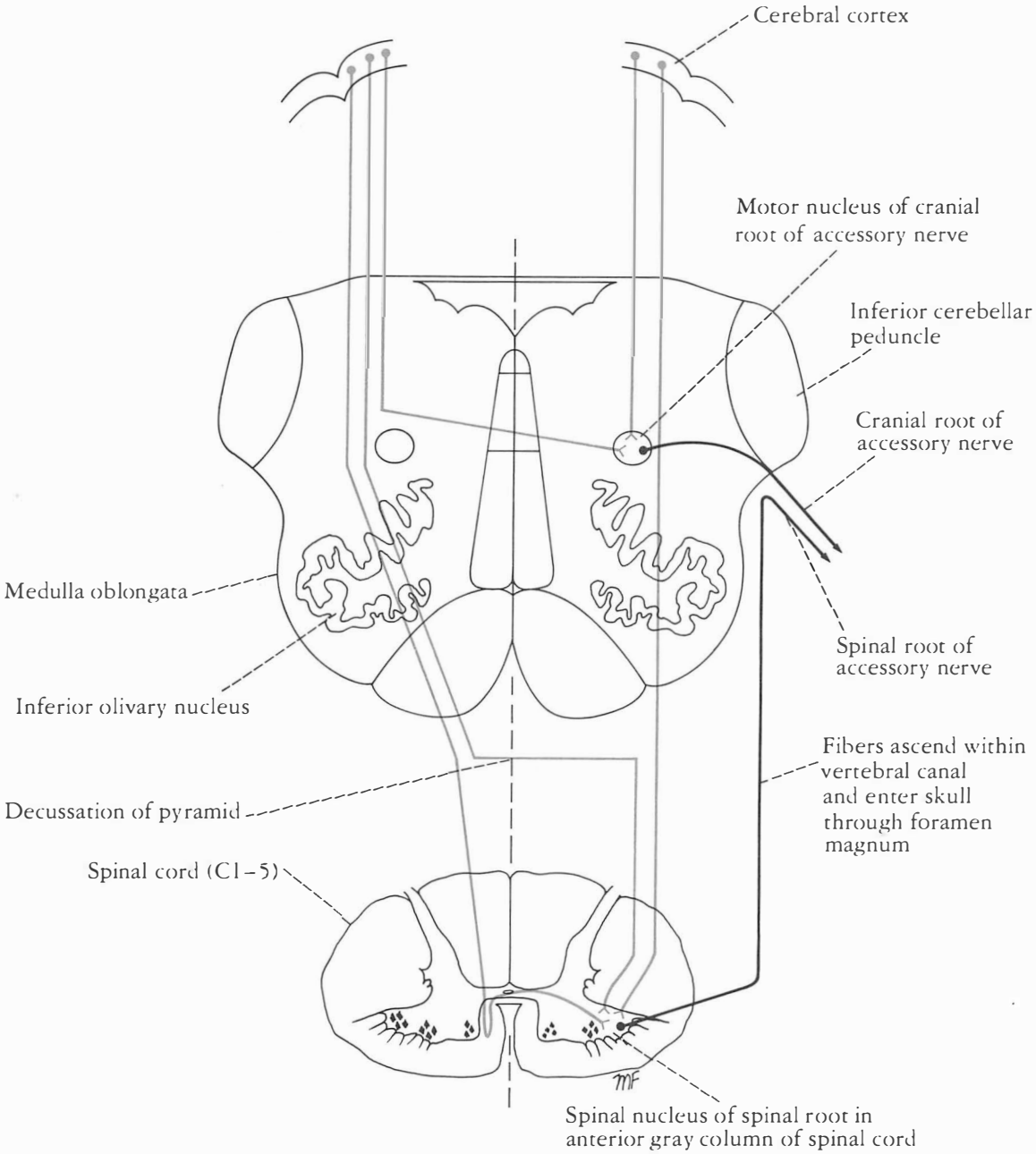


Fig. 22-19. Cranial and spinal nuclei of the accessory nerve and their central connections.

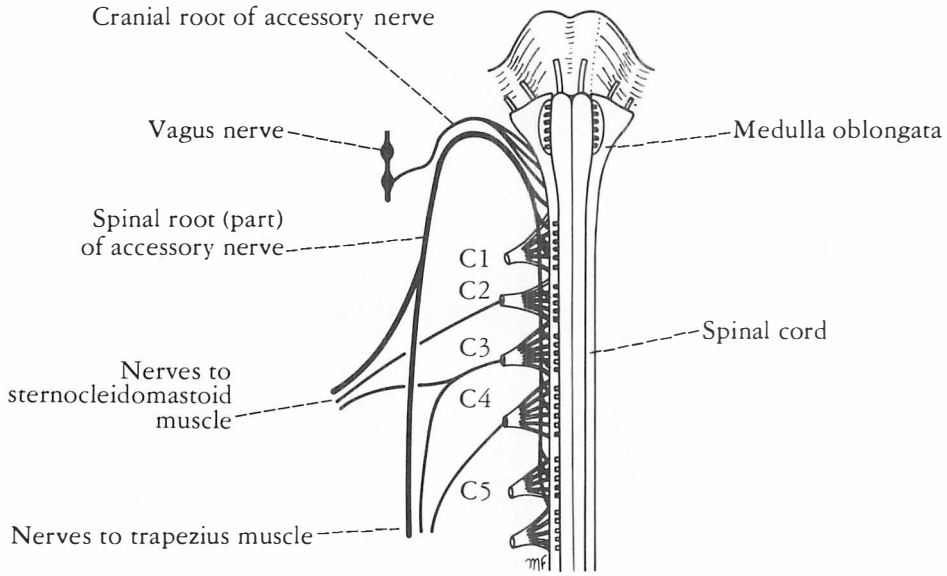


Fig. 22-20. Distribution of the accessory nerve.

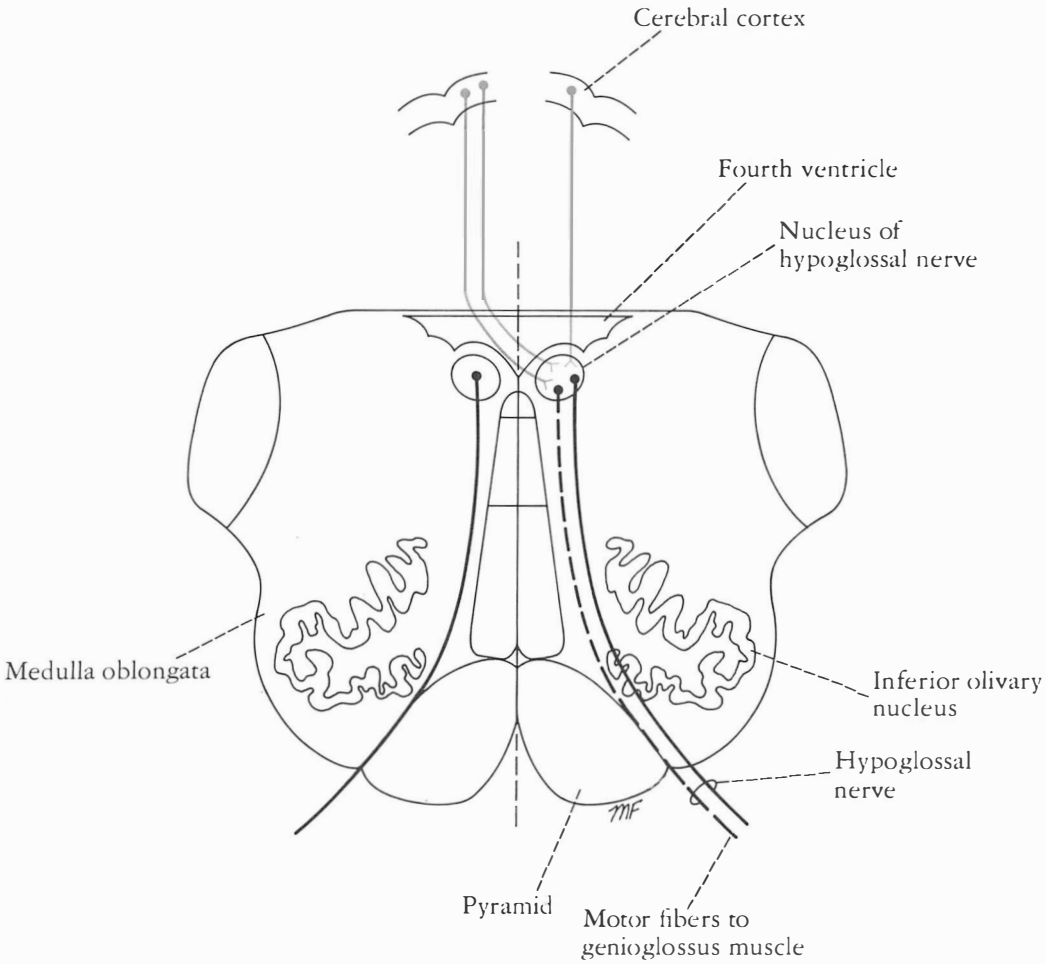


Fig. 22-21. Hypoglossal nucleus and its central connections.

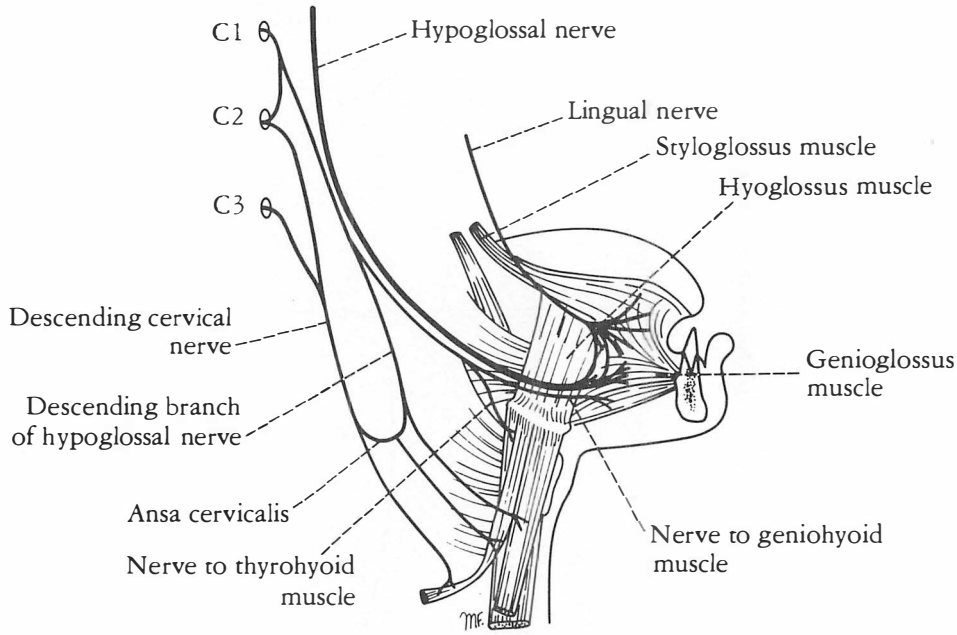


Fig. 22-22. Distribution of hypoglossal nerve.

Clinical Notes

General Considerations

The 12 pairs of cranial nerves supply information to the brain from outlying receptor organs and bring about changes in peripheral effector organs by means of appropriate motor nerves. Unfortunately for the student, the nerve cells are not arranged simply, as in the spinal cord, but are grouped together to form *nuclei* that are found in different situations at different levels of the brainstem. Moreover, whereas spinal nerves possess afferent somatic fibers, afferent visceral fibers, efferent somatic fibers, and efferent visceral fibers, cranial nerves, in addition, possess special afferent fibers (e.g., visual and auditory) and special visceral afferent fibers (e.g., taste).

When the central connections of the different cranial nerve nuclei were discussed in the previous section a simplified practical version was given, since many of the precise connections of the cranial nerve nuclei are still not known. Because the delicate movements of the eyes, the larynx, and the face require carefully integrated muscle action and the fine control of muscle tone, it must be assumed that the motor nuclei of the various cranial nerves receive input from the cerebellum, the red nucleus, the reticular formation, and the corpus striatum in the same manner as the lower motor neurons of the spinal cord.

Three points of clinical value should be remembered. (1) Bilateral corticonuclear connections are present for all the cranial motor nuclei except that part of the facial nucleus that supplies the muscles of the lower part of the face and that part of the hypoglossal nucleus that supplies the genioglossus muscle. (2) The cranial nerves that possess afferent sensory fibers have cell bodies that are found in ganglia along the course of the nerves; these are equivalent to the posterior root ganglia. In the case of the olfactory nerves the cells are the olfactory receptors. (3) In situations where the cra-

nial nerve nuclei are close together it is very rare for a disease process to affect one nucleus only. For example, the cell groups of the nucleus ambiguus serve the glossopharyngeal, the vagus, and the cranial root of the accessory nerve, and functional loss involving all three nerves is a common finding.

Clinical Examination of Cranial Nerves

The systematic examination of the 12 cranial nerves is an important part of the examination of every neurological patient. It may reveal a lesion of a cranial nerve nucleus, or its central connections, or it may show an interruption of the lower motor neurons.

The Olfactory Nerve. First determine that the nasal passages are clear. Then apply some easily recognizable aromatic substance, such as oil of peppermint, oil of cloves, or tobacco, to each nostril in turn. Ask the patient whether he can smell anything; then ask him to identify the smell. It should be remembered that food flavors depend on the sense of smell and not on the sense of taste. Fractures of the anterior cranial fossa or cerebral tumors of the frontal lobes may produce lesions of the olfactory nerves, with consequent loss of the sense of smell (*anosmia*).

A lesion of the olfactory cortex on one side is unlikely to produce complete anosmia because fibers from each olfactory tract travel to both cerebral hemispheres.

Optic Nerve. First ask the patient whether or not he has noted any change in his eyesight. *Visual acuity* should be tested for near and distant vision. Near vision is tested by asking the patient to read a card with a standard size of type. Each eye is tested in turn, with or without spectacles. Distant vision is tested by asking the patient to read Snellen's type at a distance of 6 meters.

The *visual fields* should then be tested. The patient and the examiner sit facing each other at a distance of 2 feet. The patient is asked to cover his right eye and the examiner covers his own left eye. The patient is asked to look into the pupil of the examiner's right eye. A small object is then moved in an arc around the periphery of the field of vision, and the patient is asked whether or not he can see the object. The extent of his field of vision is compared with the normal examiner's field. The other eye then is tested. It is important not to miss loss or impairment of vision in the central area of the field (*central scotoma*).

Circumferential blindness may be due to hysteria or optic neuritis (Fig. 22-23A).

Total blindness of one eye would follow complete section of one optic nerve (Fig. 22-23B).

Blindness in one half of each visual field is called *hemianopia*. Lesions of the optic tract and optic radiation (Fig. 22-23E and F) produce the same hemianopia for both eyes, i.e., homonymous hemianopia.

Bitemporal hemianopia is a loss of the lateral halves of the fields of vision of both eyes (Fig. 22-23D). This condition is most commonly produced by a tumor of the pituitary gland exerting pressure on the optic chiasma.

Fundi. The ocular fundus should be examined with an ophthalmoscope. The patient is asked to look at a distant object. When the right eye is examined, the physician should use his right eye and hold the ophthalmoscope in his right hand. He should systematically examine the fundus, looking first at the optic disc, then at the retina, then at the blood vessels, and finally at the macula.

The *optic disc* is creamy pink in color and the lateral margin is seen clearly. The center of the disc is paler in color and hollowed out.

The retina is pinkish red in color and there should be no hemorrhages or exudates.

The *blood vessels* should consist of four main arteries with their accompanying veins. Carefully examine the arteriovenous crossings. The veins should not be indented by the arteries.

The *macula* is examined by asking the patient to look directly at the light of the ophthalmoscope. It should look slightly darker than the surrounding retina.

The oculomotor, trochlear, and abducent nerves innervate the muscles that move the eyeball and usually are examined at the same time.

The oculomotor nerve supplies all the orbital

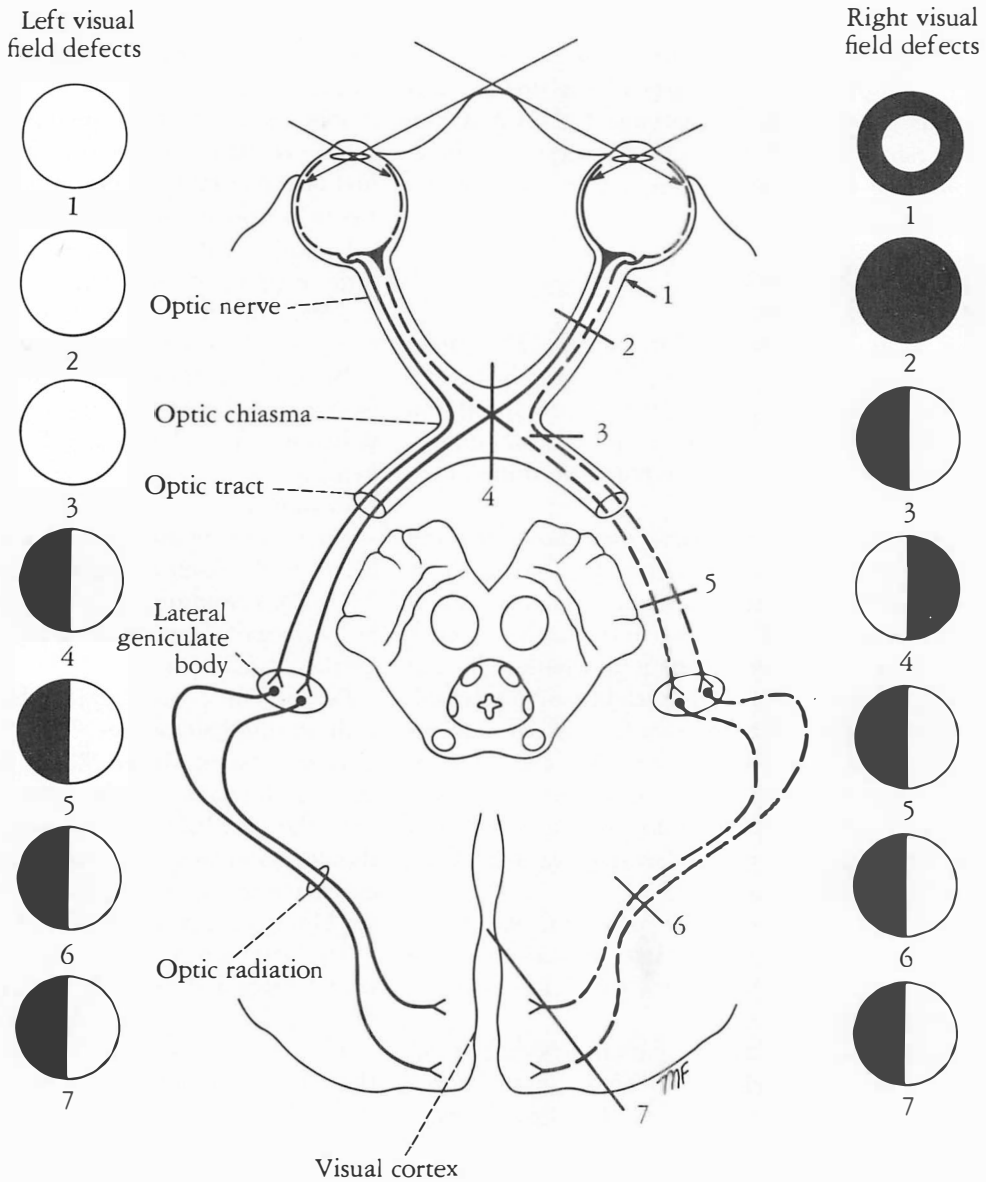


Fig. 22-23. Visual field defects associated with lesions of optic pathways.
A. Right-sided circumferential blindness due to retrobulbar neuritis.
B. Total blindness of right eye due to division of right optic nerve.
C. Right nasal hemianopia due to partial lesion of right side of optic chiasma.
D. Bitemporal hemianopia due to complete lesion of optic chiasma.
E. Left temporal hemianopia and right nasal hemianopia due to lesion of right optic tract.
F. Left temporal and right nasal hemianopia due to lesion of right optic radiation.
G. Left temporal and right nasal hemianopia due to lesion of right visual cortex.

muscles except the superior oblique and the lateral rectus. It also supplies the striated muscle of the levator palpebrae superioris and the smooth muscles concerned with accommodation, namely, the sphincter pupillae and the ciliary muscle. The trochlear nerve supplies the superior oblique muscle, and the abducent nerve supplies the lateral rectus.

To examine the extraocular muscles, the patient's head is fixed, and he is asked to move the eyes, in turn, to the left, to the right, upward, and downward, as far as possible in each direction. He should then be asked to look upward and laterally, upward and medially, downward and medially, and downward and laterally.

In complete oculomotor paralysis the eye cannot be moved upward, downward, or inward. At rest the eye looks laterally (external strabismus) owing to the activity of the lateral rectus and downward owing to the activity of the superior oblique. The patient sees double (*diplopia*). There is drooping of the upper eyelid (*ptosis*) owing to paralysis of the levator palpebrae superioris. The pupil is widely dilated owing to paralysis of the sphincter pupillae and the unopposed action of the dilator (supplied by the sympathetic). Accommodation of the eye is paralyzed.

In trochlear nerve paralysis, the patient complains of double vision on looking straight downward. This is because the superior oblique is paralyzed, and the eye turns medially as well as downward. In fact, the patient has great difficulty in turning the eye downward and laterally.

In abducent nerve paralysis, the patient cannot turn the eyeball laterally. When the patient is looking straight ahead, the lateral rectus is paralyzed, and the unopposed medial rectus pulls the eyeball medially, causing *internal strabismus*.

The pupillary reactions to convergence associated with accommodation and the direct and consensual pupillary reactions to light are then tested. The nervous pathways involved in the pupillary reflexes are described on page 357.

The trigeminal nerve has sensory and motor roots. The sensory root passes to the trigeminal ganglion, from which emerge the ophthalmic, maxillary, and mandibular divisions. The motor root joins the mandibular division.

The sensory function may be tested by using cotton and a pin over each area of the face that is supplied by the divisions of the trigeminal nerve. In lesions of the ophthalmic division, the cornea and conjunctiva will be insensitive to touch.

The motor function may be tested by asking the patient to clench his teeth. The masseter and the temporalis muscles can be palpated and felt to contract.

The *facial nerve* supplies the muscles of facial expression, supplies the anterior two-thirds of the tongue with taste fibers, and is secretomotor to the lacrimal, submandibular, and sublingual glands.

The anatomical relationship of this nerve to other structures enables a physician to localize accurately lesions of the nerve. If the abducent and facial nerves are not functioning, this would suggest a lesion within the pons of the brain. If the vestibulocochlear and facial nerves are not functioning, this would suggest a lesion in the internal acoustic meatus. If the patient is excessively sensitive to sound in one ear, the lesion probably involves the nerve to the stapedius. Loss of taste over the anterior two-thirds of the tongue implies that the facial nerve is damaged proximal to the point where it gives off the chorda tympani.

To test the facial nerve, the patient is asked to show the teeth by separating the lips with the teeth clenched, and then to close the eyes firmly. Taste on each half of the anterior two-thirds of the tongue can be tested with sugar, salt, vinegar, and quinine for the sweet, salt, sour, and bitter sensations.

It should be remembered that the part of the facial nerve nucleus that controls the muscles of the upper part of the face receives corticonuclear fibers from both cerebral hemispheres. Therefore it follows that with a lesion involving the upper motor neurons only the muscles of the lower part of the face will be paralyzed (Fig. 22-24). However, in patients with a lesion of the facial nerve motor nucleus or the facial nerve itself, i.e., a lower motor neuron lesion, all the muscles on the affected side of the face will be paralyzed (Fig.

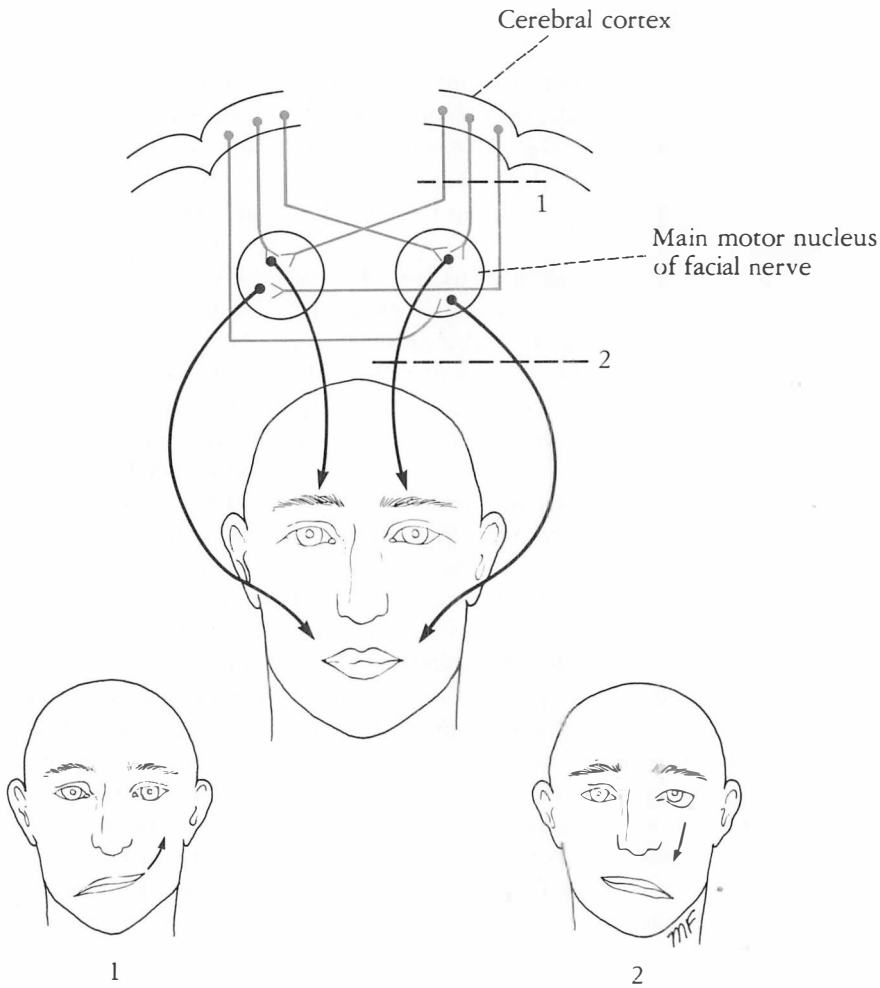


Fig. 22-24. Facial expression defects associated with lesions of:
1. Upper motor neurons.
2. Lower motor neurons.

22-24). The lower eyelid will droop, and the angle of the mouth will sag. Tears will flow over the lower eyelid, and saliva will dribble from the corner of the mouth. The patient will be unable to close the eye and will be unable to expose the teeth fully on the affected side.

The *vestibulocochlear nerve* innervates the utricle and saccule, which are sensitive to static changes in equilibrium; the semicircular canals, which are sensitive to changes in dynamic equilibrium; and the cochlea, which is sensitive to sound.

Disturbances of vestibular function include giddiness (*vertigo*) and nystagmus. Vestibular nystagmus is an uncontrollable rhythmic oscillation of the eyes and the fast phase is away from the side of the lesion. Nystagmus is essentially a disturbance in the reflex control of the extraocular muscles, which is mainly a function of the semicircular canals.

Vestibular function may be investigated with *caloric tests*. These involve the raising or lowering of the temperature in the external auditory meatus, which induces convection currents in the

semicircular canals and stimulates the vestibular nerve endings.

Disturbances of cochlear function reveal themselves as deafness and tinnitus. The patient's ability to hear a voice or a vibrating tuning fork should be tested; each ear should be tested separately.

The *glossopharyngeal nerve* supplies the stylopharyngeus muscle and sends secretomotor fibers to the parotid gland. Sensory fibers innervate the posterior one-third of the tongue.

The integrity of this nerve may be evaluated by testing the patient's sensation of taste on the posterior third of the tongue.

The *vagus nerve* innervates many important organs, but the examination of this nerve depends upon testing the function of the branches to the pharynx, soft palate, and larynx. The pharyngeal reflex may be tested by touching the lateral wall of the pharynx with a spatula. This should immediately cause the patient to gag, i.e., the pharyngeal muscles will contract.

The innervation of the soft palate may be tested by asking the patient to say "ah." Normally, the soft palate rises and the uvula moves backward in the midline.

All the muscles of the larynx are supplied by the recurrent laryngeal branch of the vagus, except the cricothyroid muscle, which is supplied by the external laryngeal branch of the superior laryngeal branch of the vagus. Hoarseness or absence of the voice may occur as a symptom of vagal nerve palsy. The movements of the vocal cords may be tested by means of a laryngoscopic examination.

The *accessory nerve* supplies the sternocleidomastoid and the trapezius muscles by means of its spinal root. The patient should be asked to rotate his head to one side against resistance, when the sternocleidomastoid of the opposite side will be brought into action. Then he should be asked to shrug his shoulders, when the trapezius muscles come into action.

The *hypoglossal nerve* supplies the intrinsic muscles of the tongue and the styloglossus, hyoglossus, and genioglossus muscles. The patient is asked to put out his tongue, and if there is a lower motor neuron lesion, it will be noted that the tongue deviates toward the paralyzed side. The tongue will be smaller on the side of the lesion, owing to muscle atrophy, and fasciculation may accompany or precede the atrophy. Remember that the greater part of the hypoglossal nucleus receives corticonuclear fibers from both cerebral hemispheres. However, the part of the nucleus that supplies the genioglossus receives corticonuclear fibers only from the opposite cerebral hemisphere. If a patient has a lesion of the corticonuclear fibers, there will be no atrophy or fibrillation of the tongue and on protrusion the tongue will deviate to the side opposite the lesion. (Note that the genioglossus is the muscle that pulls the tongue forward.)

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 497.

1. A 60-year-old woman was seen as an outpatient because she had suddenly developed double vision. She was watching her favorite television program the day before, when it suddenly occurred. She had no other symptoms. After a complete physical examination it was found that her right eye, when at rest, was turned medially and she was unable to turn it laterally. A moderate amount of glucose was found in her urine and she had an abnormally elevated blood glucose level. When closely questioned, she admitted that recently she had noticed having to pass water more frequently, especially at night. She also said she often felt thirsty and had lost 28 pounds during the last 2 years. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, can you explain the problem in her right eye? Do you think there is any connection between her glucosuria, high blood glucose, polyuria, polydipsia, and weight loss and her eye condition?

2. An 18-year-old boy was admitted to the hospital unconscious after a serious motor-cycle acci-

dent. After a complete physical examination and lateral and anteroposterior x-rays of the skull, it was found that he had a fracture involving the anterior cranial fossa. It also was noted that he had a slight but continuous blood-stained watery discharge from his left nostril. Three days later he recovered consciousness and a further physical examination revealed that he could no longer smell. This was tested by asking him to recognize the smell of coffee, oil of cloves, or oil of peppermint. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, can you diagnose what is wrong with this patient? Is it possible for normal individuals with an acute sense of smell to be an unable to recognize common scents? Could a tumor that had destroyed the olfactory cortex of one cerebral hemisphere be responsible for the anosmia in this patient?

3. A 72-year-old man with a known history of cerebrovascular problems visited his physician because 3 days previously he had started to have trouble reading the paper. He said the print started to tilt and he began to see double. He also said that he found it difficult to see the steps when he descended the staircase to the physician's office. On physical examination, the patient had weakness of movement of the right eye downward and laterally. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, explain this patient's signs and symptoms. If we assume that a cranial nerve nucleus is the site of the lesion, is it the right one or the left one that is involved?

4. A 73-year-old man consulted his physician because he was becoming deaf. His only other complaints were that he didn't think he was as tall as he used to be and he was annoyed to find that each year he had to buy a size larger hat. The physician diagnosed osteitis deformans (Paget's disease) and explained to the medical students that this is a disease of bones in which there are bone absorption and new bone formation. These bony changes lead to enlargement of the skull, deformities of the vertebral column, and bowing of the long bones of the legs. The physician asked the students whether there was any connection between the bone disease and the patient's deafness and which other cranial nerve they would be particularly interested in testing. How would you have answered these questions?

5. A neurologist was visited by a 25-year-old man who complained of a feeling of heaviness in both legs and giddiness on walking. On examination, it was found that the patient had widely disseminated lesions involving the corticospinal tracts, the posterior white column, and the optic nerves. A diagnosis of multiple sclerosis was made. This disease of unknown origin primarily involves the white matter of the brain and spinal cord. Do you think this patient's symptoms of vertigo could be accounted for by this disease?

6. A 54-year-old woman with left-sided hemiplegia was examined by a fourth-year medical student. He very carefully tested each cranial nerve and noted any defects. During the examination, he stood behind the patient and gently grasped the trapezius muscles between his fingers and thumbs and asked the patient to shrug her shoulders against resistance. He was surprised to find that there was no evidence of weakness in either trapezius muscle and there was no muscle wasting. Would you expect to find evidence of weakness or wasting in the trapezius muscles of a patient with hemiplegia?

7. A 35-year-old man was admitted to the hospital with a complaint of severe pain of the right forehead and right eye. The pain had started 3 weeks previously and had progressively increased since then. One week ago he started to see double and this morning his wife had noticed that his right eye was turning out laterally. The physician in charge made a careful neurological workup on this patient and found a lateral deviation of the right eye, dilatation of the right pupil with loss of direct and consensual light reflexes, paralysis of accommodation on the right, and paralysis of all right-sided ocular movement except laterally. He advised the patient to have a right-sided carotid arteriogram. The film showed an aneurysm of the internal carotid artery on the right side. Can you explain the signs and symptoms of this pa-

tient? Can you relate the signs and symptoms to the aneurysm?

8. During ward rounds, the neurologist demonstrated the signs and symptoms of neurosyphilis to a group of students. The patient was a 62-year-old man. The physician asked the students to note that both the patient's pupils were small and fixed and were not altered by shining a light in the eyes or shading the eyes. It was noted, however, that the pupils narrowed when the patient was asked to look from a distant object to the tip of his nose. Moreover, the pupils dilated again when he looked in the distance. "This is a good example of the Argyll Robertson pupil," said the physician. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, can you explain this curious pupillary reaction?

9. Describe the effects of a lesion at the following points along the visual pathway of the right eye:

a. Section of the right optic nerve
b. Midline section of the optic chiasma
c. Section of the right optic tract
d. Section of the right optic radiation
e. Destruction of the cortex of the right occipital pole

10. A 58-year-old woman was diagnosed as having an advanced carcinoma of the nasopharynx with neoplastic infiltration of the posterior cranial fossa. How would you test for the integrity of the ninth, tenth, and eleventh cranial nerves?

11. A 32-year-old woman with syringomyelia was found on physical examination to have impairment of appreciation of pain and temperature of the face but preservation of light touch. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, can you explain this dissociated sensory loss in the face?

12. A 64-year-old man was seen as an outpatient. When he was asked to protrude his tongue, it turned to the right. The right half of the tongue was wrinkled and wasted. He attended his physician because he had a chronic cough and was rapidly losing weight. A diagnosis of right-sided bronchogenic carcinoma was made. How can you explain the tongue findings? Is there a possible connection between the paralysis of the tongue and the bronchogenic carcinoma?

13. A 55-year-old man woke up one morning to find the right side of his face paralyzed. When examined by his physician, he was found to have complete paralysis of the entire right side of the face. He was also found to have severe hypertension. The patient talked with a slightly slurred speech. The physician told the patient that he thought he had suffered a mild stroke and that he should be treated in bed. Do you think that the physician's diagnosis was correct?

14. A physician turned to a group of students and said, "I think this patient has an advanced neoplasm in the posterior cranial fossa with involvement of the medulla oblongata and in particular the nuclei of the vagus nerve." What are the nuclei of the vagus nerve? Is it possible to have abnormal movements of the vocal cords in a patient with hemiplegia? Is it possible to have a solitary lesion of the vagal nuclei without involvement of other cranial nerve nuclei?

Additional Reading

Crosby, E. C., Humphrey, T., and Lauer, E. W. *Correlative Anatomy of the Nervous System.* New York: Macmillan, 1962.

Judge, R. D., and Zuidema, G. D. *Physical Diagnosis: A Physiologic Approach to Clinical Examination* (2nd ed.). Boston: Little, Brown, 1968.

Merritt, H. H. *A Textbook of Neurology* (5th ed.). Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger, 1973.

Snell, R. S. *Clinical Anatomy for Medical Students.* Boston: Little, Brown, 1973.

Spillane, J. D. *An Atlas of Clinical Neurology* (2nd ed.). New York and London: Oxford University Press, 1975.

Walton, J. N. *Brain's Diseases of the Nervous System.* New York and London: Oxford University Press, 1977.

Warwick, R., and Williams, P. L. (Eds.). *Gray's Anatomy* (35th Brit. ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders, 1973.

23
The Thalamus and Its Connections

The thalamus is a large, ovoid mass of gray matter that forms the major part of the diencephalon. It is situated on each side of the third ventricle (Figs. 23-1 and 13-3). The anterior end of the thalamus is narrow and rounded and forms the posterior boundary of the interventricular foramen. The posterior end is expanded to form the *pulvinar*, which overhangs the superior colliculus (Fig. 23-2). The inferior surface is continuous with the tegmentum of the midbrain. The medial surface of the thalamus forms part of the lateral wall of the third ventricle and is usually connected to the opposite thalamus by a band of gray matter, the *interthalamic connection* (Fig. 23-2).

Subdivisions of the Thalamus

The thalamus is covered on its superior surface by a thin layer of white matter, called the *stratum zonale* (Fig. 23-1), and on its lateral surface by another layer, the *external medullary lamina* (Fig. 23-1). The gray matter of the thalamus is divided by a vertical sheet of white matter, the *internal medullary lamina,* into medial and lateral halves (Figs. 23-1 and 23-3). Anterosuperiorly, the internal medullary lamina splits so that it is Y-shaped. The thalamus thus is subdivided into three main parts; the *anterior part* lies between the limbs of the Y, and the *medial and lateral parts* lie on the sides of the stem of the Y (Fig. 23-3).

Each of the three parts of the thalamus contains a group of thalamic nuclei (Fig. 23-3). Moreover, smaller nuclear groups are situated within the internal medullary lamina, and some are located on the medial and lateral surfaces of the thalamus.

Anterior Part of Thalamus. This part of the thalamus contains the *anterior thalamic nuclei* (Fig. 23-3). They receive the mammillothalamic tract from the mammillary nuclei. These anterior thalamic nuclei also receive reciprocal connections with the cingulate gyrus and hypothalamus. The function of the anterior thalamic nuclei is closely associated with that of the limbic system and is concerned with emotional tone and the mechanisms of recent memory.

Medial Part of the Thalamus. This part of the thalamus contains the large *dorsomedial nucleus* and several smaller nuclei (Fig. 23-3). The dorsomedial nucleus has two-way connections with the whole prefrontal cortex of the frontal lobe of the cerebral hemisphere. It also has similar connections with the hypothalamic nuclei. It is interconnected with all other groups of thalamic nuclei. The medial part of the thalamus is responsible for the integration of a large variety of sensory information, including somatic, visceral, and olfactory information, and the relation of this information to one's emotional feelings and subjective states.

Lateral Part of the Thalamus. The nuclei are subdivided into a dorsal tier and a ventral tier (Fig. 23-3).

Dorsal Tier of the Nuclei. This tier includes the *lateral dorsal nucleus,* the *lateral posterior nucleus,* and the *pulvinar.* The details of the connections of these nuclei are not clear. However, they are known to have interconnections with other thalamic nuclei, and with the parietal lobe, cingulate gyrus, and occipital and temporal lobes.

Ventral tier of nuclei, consisting of the following in a craniocaudal sequence:

1. *Ventral anterior nucleus* (Fig. 23-3). This nucleus is connected to the reticular formation, the

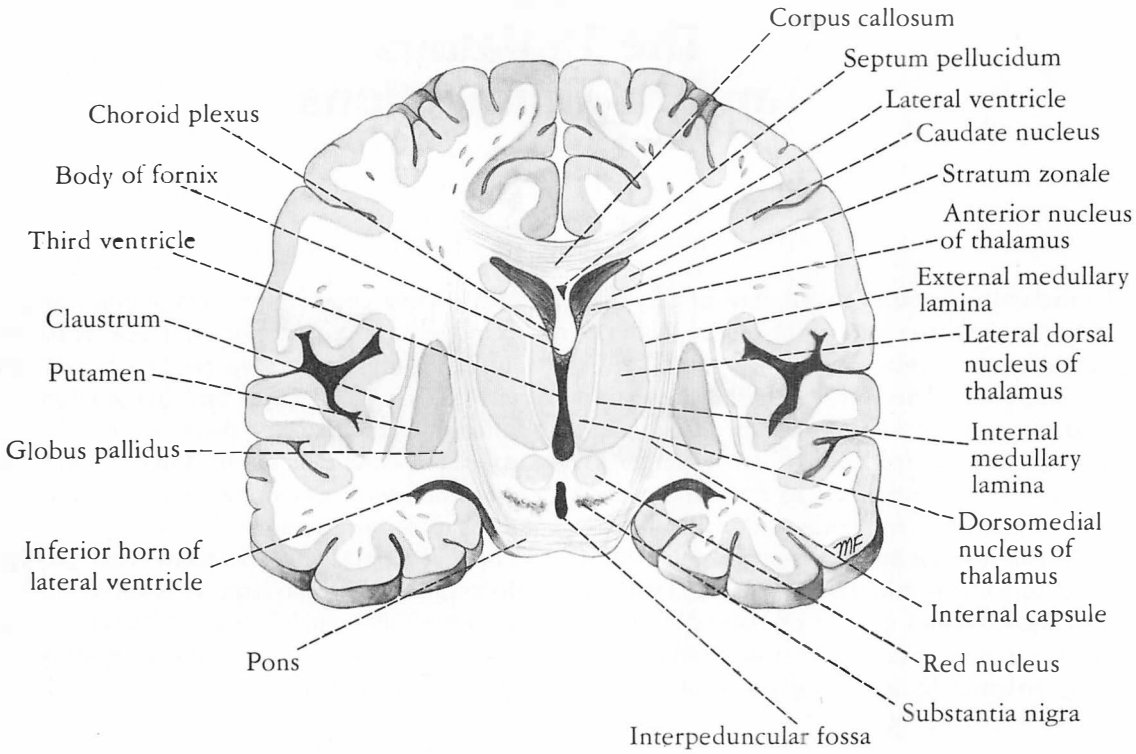


Fig. 23-1. Coronal section of the cerebral hemispheres, showing the position and relations of the thalamus.

substantia nigra, the corpus striatum, and the premotor cortex as well as to many of the other thalamic nuclei. Since this nucleus lies on the pathway between the corpus striatum and the motor areas of the frontal cortex, it probably influences the activities of the motor cortex.

2. *Ventral lateral nucleus* (Fig. 23-3). This nucleus has connections similar to those of the ventral anterior nucleus, but, in addition, has a major input from the cerebellum, and a minor input from the red nucleus. Its main projections pass to the motor and premotor regions of the cerebral cortex. Here again this thalamic nucleus probably influences motor activity.

3. *Ventral posterior nucleus.* This nucleus is subdivided into the *ventral posteromedial nucleus* and the *ventral posterolateral nucleus* (Fig. 23-3). The ventral posteromedial nucleus receives the ascending trigeminal and gustatory pathways, while the ventral posterolateral nucleus receives the ascending medial and spinal lemnisci.

The thalamocortical projections from these important nuclei pass through the posterior limb of the internal capsule and corona radiata to the primary somatic sensory areas of the cerebral cortex and the postcentral gyrus (areas 1, 2 and 3).

Other Nuclei of the Thalamus

These nuclei include the intralaminar nuclei, the midline nuclei, the reticular nucleus, and the medial and lateral geniculate bodies.

The *intralaminar nuclei* are small collections of

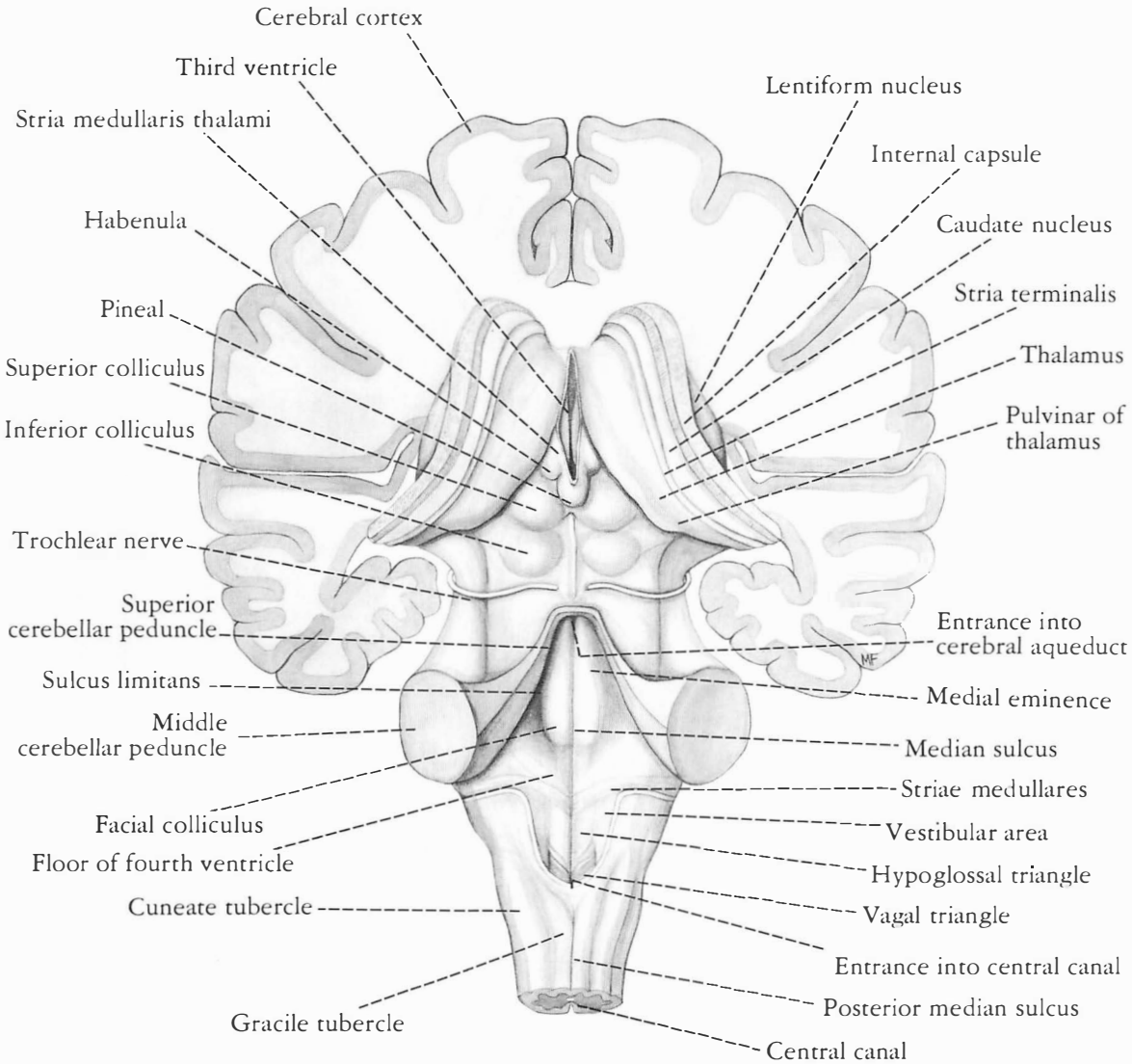


Fig. 23-2. Posterior view of the brainstem, showing the thalamus and the tectum of the midbrain.

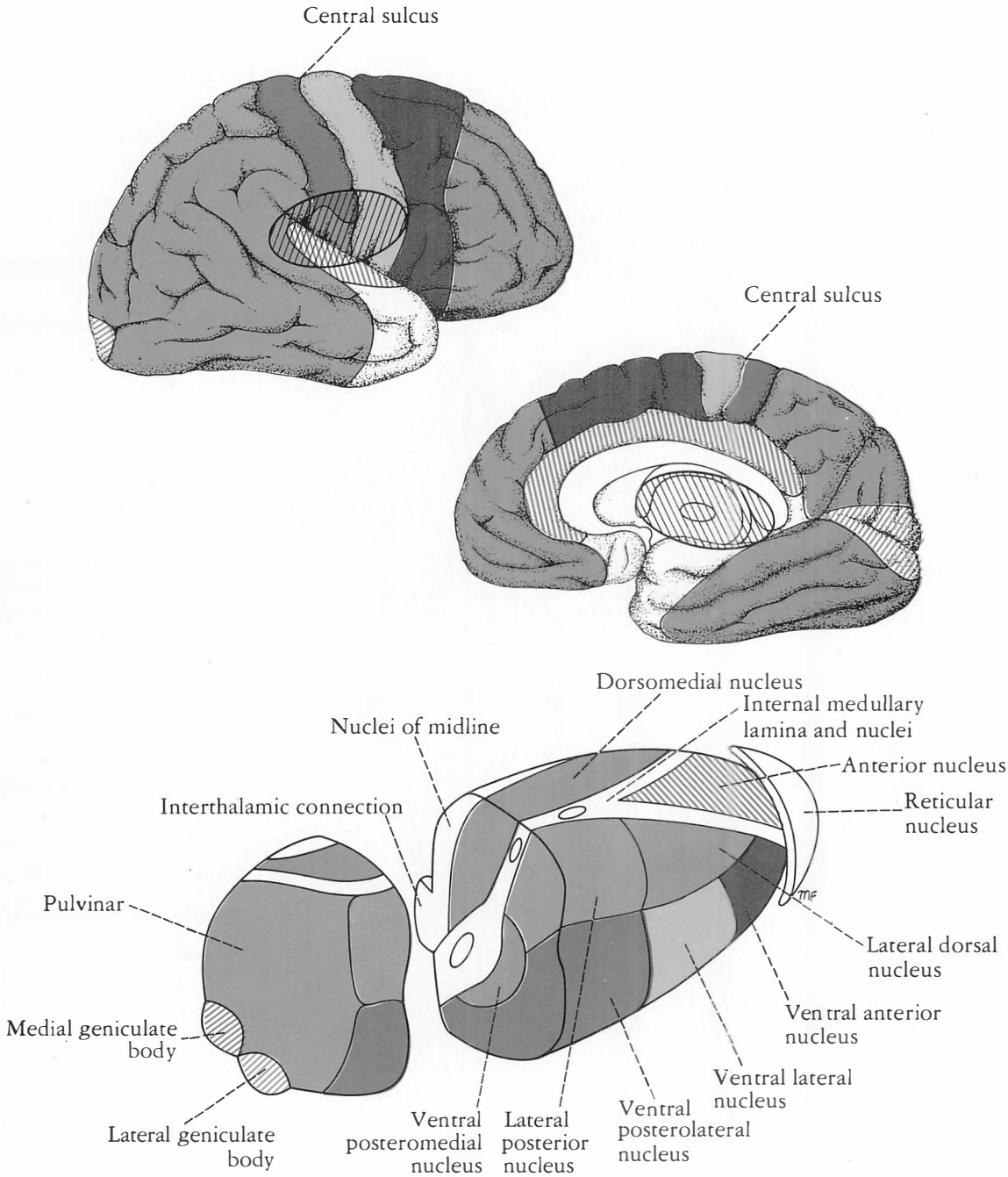


Fig. 23-3. Important thalamocortical projections. Adapted from an original painting by Frank H. Netter, M.D., from The CIBA Collection of Medical Illustrations, *copyright by CIBA Pharmaceutical Company, Division of CIBA-GEIGY Corporation.*

nerve cells within the internal medullary lamina (Fig. 23-3). They receive afferent fibers from the reticular formation and send efferent fibers to other thalamic nuclei and the corpus striatum. Their function is unknown.

The *midline nuclei* consist of groups of nerve cells adjacent to the third ventricle and in the interthalamic connection (Fig. 23-3). Their exact connections and precise functions are unknown.

The *reticular nucleus* is a thin layer of nerve cells sandwiched between the external medullary lamina and the posterior limb of the internal capsule (Fig. 23-3). Afferent fibers converge on this nucleus from the cerebral cortex and the reticular formation and its output is mainly to other thalamic nuclei. The function of this nucleus is not fully understood, but it may be concerned with a mechanism by which the cerebral cortex regulates thalamic activity.

The *medial geniculate body* forms a swelling on the posterior surface of the thalamus beneath the pulvinar (Fig. 23-3). Afferent fibers to the medial geniculate body form the *inferior brachium* and come from the inferior colliculus. It will be remembered that the inferior colliculus receives the termination of the fibers of the lateral lemniscus. The medial geniculate body receives auditory information from both ears but predominantly from the opposite ear.

The efferent fibers leave the medial geniculate body to form the auditory radiation, which passes to the auditory cortex of the superior temporal gyrus. The *lateral geniculate body* forms a swelling on the undersurface of the pulvinar of the thalamus (Fig. 23-3). The nucleus consists of six layers of nerve cells and is the terminus of all but a few fibers of the optic tract (except the fibers passing to the pretectal nucleus). The fibers are the axons of the ganglion cell layer of the retina and come from the temporal half of the ipsilateral eye and from the nasal half of the contralateral eye, the latter fibers crossing the midline in the optic chiasma. Each lateral geniculate body, therefore, receives visual information from the opposite field of vision.

The efferent fibers leave the lateral geniculate body to form the visual radiation, which passes to the visual cortex of the occipital lobe.

The main connections of the various thalamic nuclei are summarized in Figure 23-4.

Function of the Thalamus

It is not considered essential for a practicing physician to have a detailed knowledge of all the thalamic nuclei and their connections. Although an enormous amount of research has been devoted to this area, we still know very little about the functional significance of many of the nuclei.

The following basic principles should be committed to memory:

1. The thalamus is made up of complicated collections of nerve cells that are centrally placed in the brain and are interconnected.

2. A vast amount of sensory information of all types (except smell) converges on the thalamus and presumably is integrated through the interconnections between the nuclei. The resulting information pattern is distributed to other parts of the central nervous system. It is probable that olfactory information is first integrated at a lower level with taste and other sensations and is relayed to the thalamus from the amygdaloid complex and hippocampus through the mammillothalamic tract.

3. Anatomically and functionally, the thalamus and the cerebral cortex are closely linked. The fiber connections have been established, and it is known that following removal of the cortex the thalamus can appreciate crude sensations. However, the cerebral cortex is required for the interpretation of sensations based on past experiences.

4. The thalamus possesses certain very important nuclei whose connections have been clearly established. These include the ventral posteromedial nucleus, the ventral posterolateral nucleus, the medial geniculate body, and the lateral geniculate body. Their positions and connections should be learned.

5. The large dorsomedial nucleus has extensive connections with the frontal lobe cortex and

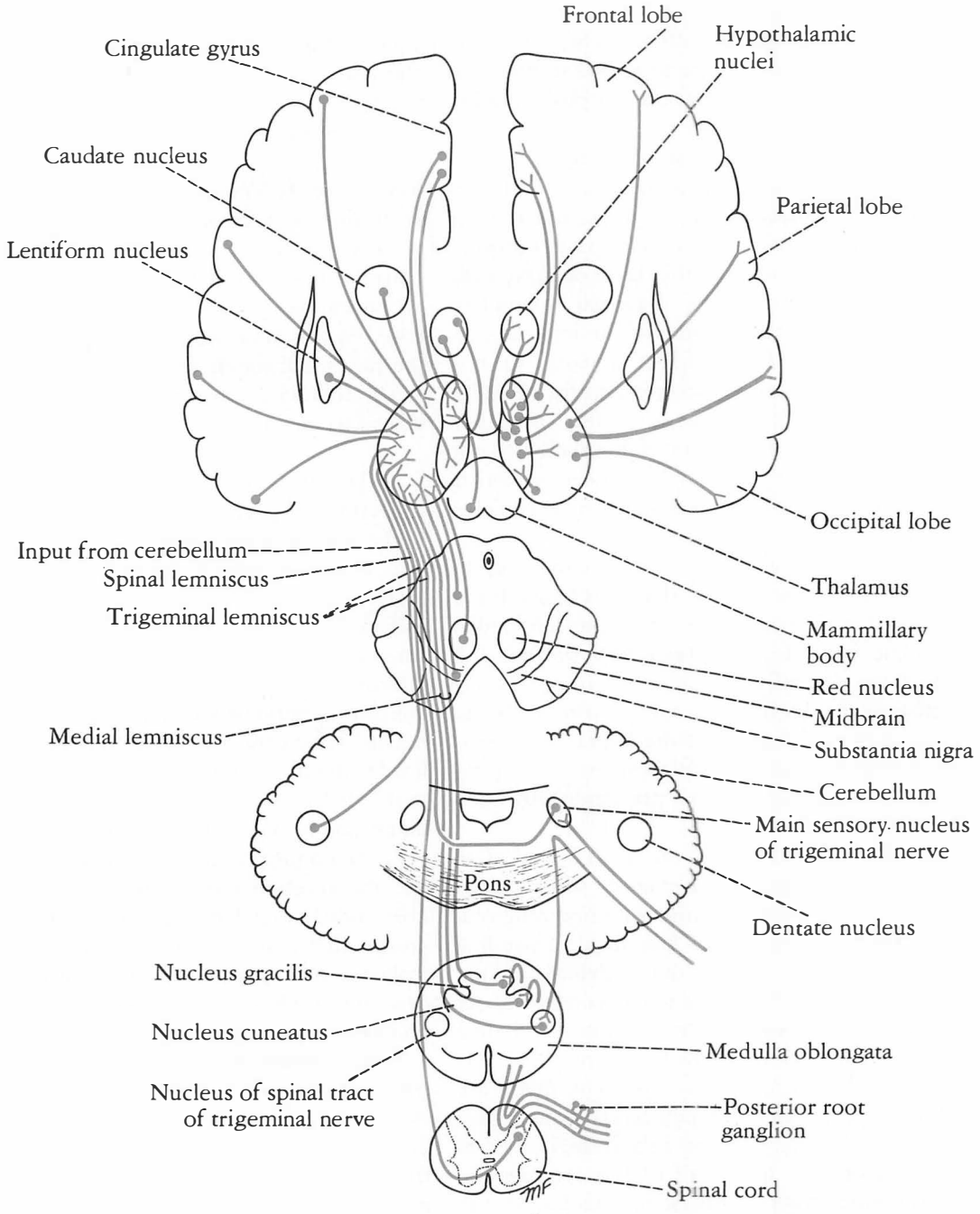


Fig. 23-4. Main connections of the thalamus. On the left are shown the afferent fibers and on the right the efferent fibers.

hypothalamus. There is considerable evidence that this nucleus lies on the pathway that is concerned with subjective feeling states and the personality of the individual.

Clinical Notes

Since the thalamus is such an important relay and integrative center, it follows that disease of this area of the central nervous system will have profound effects. The thalamus may be invaded by neoplasm, undergo degeneration following disease of its arterial supply, or be damaged by hemorrhage.

Lesions of the Thalamus

Sensory Loss

These lesions usually result from thrombosis or hemorrhage of one of the arteries supplying the thalamus. Damage to the ventral posteromedial nucleus and the ventral posterolateral nucleus will result in the loss of all forms of sensation, including light touch, tactile localization and discrimination, and muscle joint sense from the opposite side of the body.

Thalamic Syndrome

This syndrome may occur as the patient is recovering from a thalamic infarct. Spontaneous pain, which is often excessive and unpleasant, occurs on the opposite side of the body. The painful sensation may be aroused by light touch or cold and may fail to respond to powerful analgesic drugs.

Abnormal involuntary movements and the *thalamic hand* are described on page 230.

Clinical Problems

For clinical problems concerning the thalamus, see page 231.

Additional Reading

Ajmone Marsan, C. The thalamus: Data on its functional anatomy and on some aspects of thalamocortical integration. *Arch. Ital. Biol.* 103:847, 1965.

Angevine, J. B., Jr., Locke, S., and Yakovlev, P. Limbic nuclei of thalamus and connections of limbic cortex; thalamocortical projections of the magnocellular medial dorsal nucleus in man. *Arch. Neurol.* 10:165, 1964.

Bertrand, G., Jasper, H. H., and Wong, A. Microelectrode study of the human thalamus, functional organization in the ventrobasal complex. *Confin. Neurol.* 29:81, 1967.

Carpenter, M. B. Ventral Tier Thalamic Nuclei. In D. Williams (Ed.), *Modern Trends in Neurology.* London and Washington: Butterworth, 1967. P. 1.

Hassler, R. Anatomy of the Thalamus. In G. Schaltenbrand and P. Bailey (Eds.), *Introduction to Stereotaxis with an Atlas of the Human Brain.* Stuttgart: Thieme, 1959.

Purpura, D., and Yahr, M. D. *The Thalamus.* New York: Columbia University Press, 1966.

Rose, J. E., and Woolsey, C. N. Organization of the mammalian thalamus and its relationships to the cerebral cortex. *Electroencephalogr. Clin. Neurophysiol.* 1:391, 1949.

Scheibel, M. A., and Scheibel, A. B. The organization of the nucleus reticularis thalami; a Golgi study. *Brain Res.* 1:43, 1966.

Van Buren, J. M., and Borke, R. C. *Variations and Connections of the Human Thalamus.* Berlin and Vienna: Springer, 1972.

24
The Hypothalamus and Its Connections

The hypothalamus is that part of the diencephalon that extends from the region of the optic chiasma to the caudal border of the mammillary bodies. It lies below the thalamus and forms the floor and the inferior part of the lateral walls of the third ventricle (Fig. 24-1). Anterior to the hypothalamus is an area that for functional reasons is often included in the hypothalamus. Because it extends forward from the optic chiasma to the lamina terminalis and the anterior commissure, it is referred to as the preoptic area. Caudally, the hypothalamus merges into the tegmentum of the midbrain. The lateral boundary of the hypothalamus is formed by the internal capsule.

When observed from below (Fig. 24-2), the hypothalamus is seen to be made up of the following structures, from anterior to posterior: (1) the optic chiasma, (2) the tuber cinereum and the infundibulum, and (3) the mammillary bodies.

Hypothalamic Nuclei

The following principal groups of nuclei are present. For purposes of description, the nuclei are divided by an imaginary parasagittal plane into medial and lateral zones. Lying within the plane are the columns of the fornix and the mammillothalamic tract, which serve as markers (Figs. 24-3 and 24-4).

Medial Zone

In the medial zone, the following hypothalamic nuclei may be recognized, from anterior to posterior: (1) the *preoptic nucleus,* (2) the *paraventricular nucleus,* (3) the *dorsomedial nucleus,* (4) the *ventromedial nucleus,* (5) the *infundibular nucleus,* and (6) the *posterior nucleus.*

Lateral Zone

In the lateral zone, the following hypothalamic nuclei may be recognized, from anterior to posterior: (1) the *supraoptic nucleus,* (2) the *large lateral nucleus,* (3) the *tuberomammillary nucleus,* and (4) the *lateral tuberal nuclei.*

Some of the nuclei, for example, the preoptic nucleus, extend into both the medial and lateral zones. The mammillary body with its medial and lateral mammillary nuclei overlaps both zones. It should be emphasized that most of the hypothalamic nuclei have ill-defined boundaries.

Afferent Connections of the Hypothalamus

The afferent connections of the hypothalamus are numerous and complex, and only the main pathways (Fig. 24-5) are described here:

1. *Visceral and somatic afferents* reach the hypothalamus through collateral branches of the lemniscal afferent fibers and through the reticular formation.
2. *Olfaction* travels through the medial forebrain bundle.
3. *Corticohypothalamic fibers* arise from the frontal lobe of the cerebral cortex and pass directly to the hypothalamus.
4. *Hippocampohypothalamic fibers* pass from the hippocampus through the fornix to the mammillary body.
5. *Amygdalohypothalamic fibers* pass from the amygdaloid complex to the hypothalamus through the stria terminalis and by a route that passes inferior to the lentiform nucleus.

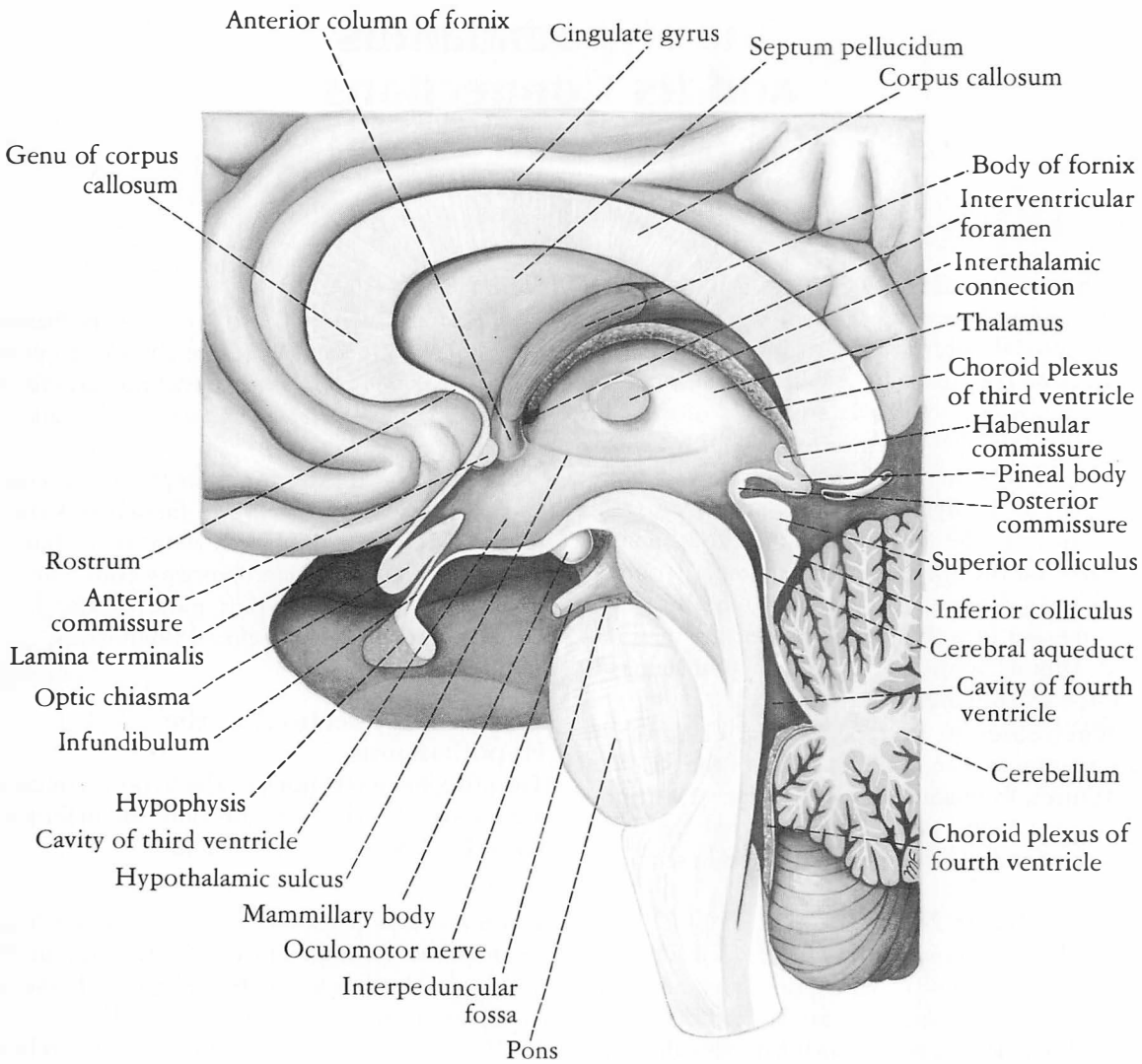


Fig. 24-1. Sagittal section of the brain, showing position of the hypothalamus.

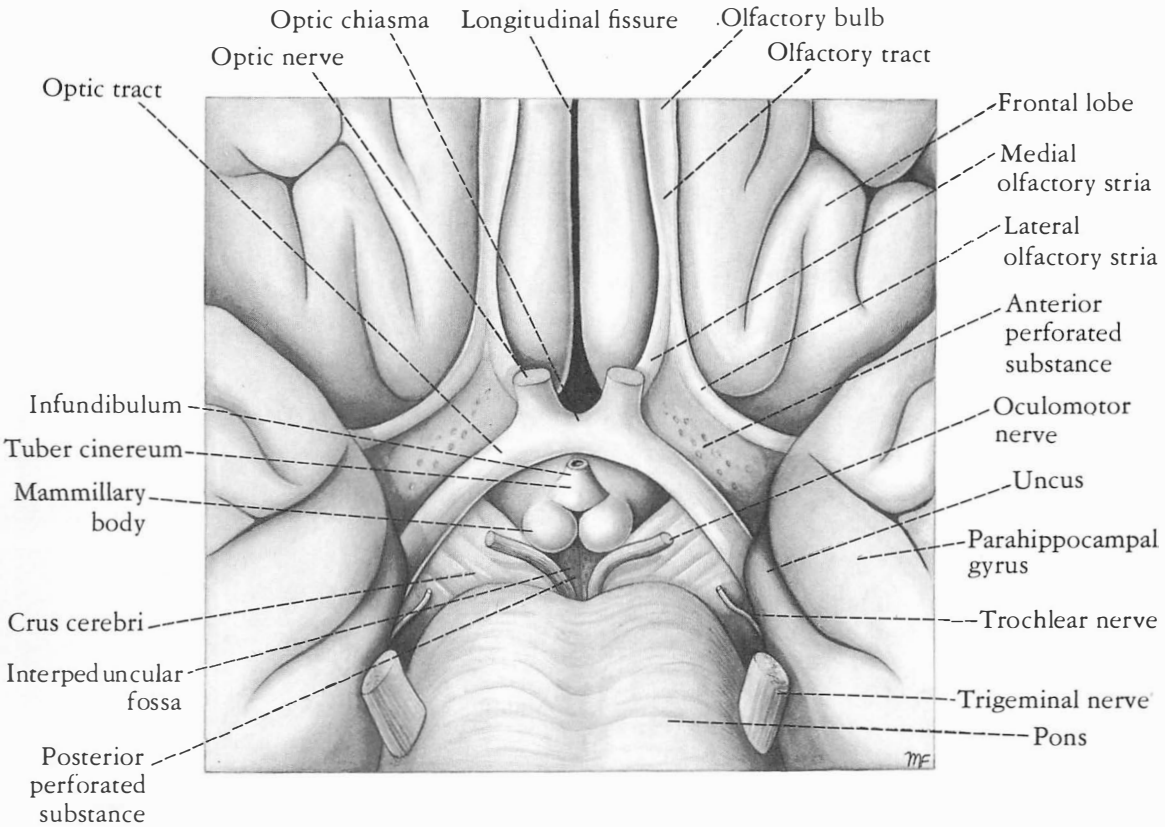


Fig. 24-2. Inferior surface of the brain, showing parts of the hypothalamus.

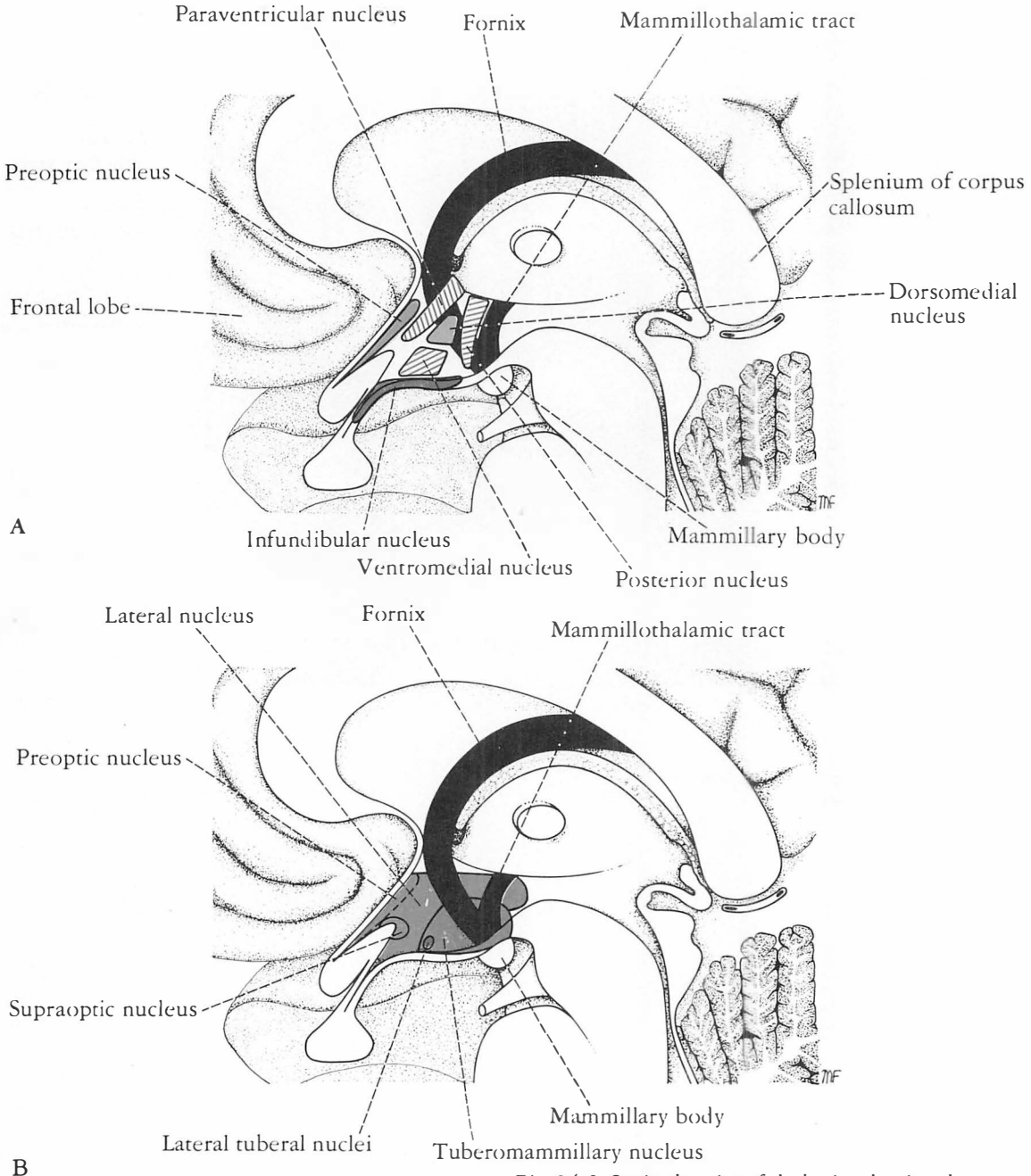


Fig. 24-3. Sagittal section of the brain, showing the hypothalamic nuclei.
A. Medial zone nuclei lying medial to the plane of the fornix and the mammillothalamic tract.
B. Lateral zone nuclei lying lateral to the plane of the fornix and the mammillothalamic tract.

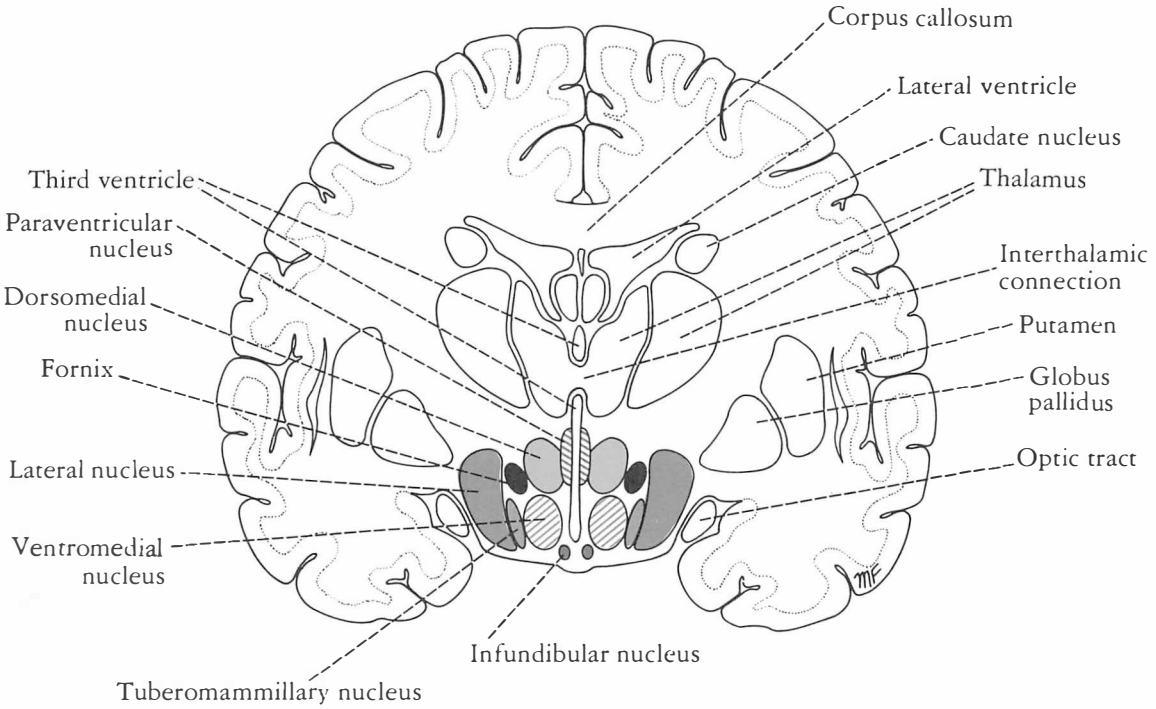


Fig. 24-4. Coronal section of cerebral hemispheres, showing position of hypothalamic nuclei.

6. *Thalamohypothalamic fibers* arise from the dorsomedial and midline thalamic nuclei.
7. *Tegmental fibers* arise from the midbrain.

Efferent Connections of the Hypothalamus

The efferent connections of the hypothalamus are also numerous and complex, and only the main pathways (Fig. 24-6) are described here:

1. The *mammillothalamic tract* arises in the mammillary body and terminates in the anterior nucleus of the thalamus. Here the pathway is relayed to the cingulate gyrus.

2. The *mammillotegmental tract* arises from the mammillary body and terminates in the cells of the reticular formation in the tegmentum of the midbrain.

3. *Descending fibers to the brainstem and spinal cord* influence the peripheral neurons of the autonomic nervous system. It is believed that, through a series of neurons in the reticular formation, the hypothalamus is connected to the parasympathetic nuclei of the oculomotor, facial, glossopharyngeal, and vagus nerves in the brainstem. In a similar manner, the reticulospinal fibers probably connect the hypothalamus with sympathetic cells of origin in the lateral gray horns of the first thoracic segment to the second lumbar segment of the spinal cord and the sacral parasympathetic outflow at the level of the second, third, and fourth sacral segments of the spinal cord.

Connections of the Hypothalamus with the Hypophysis Cerebri

The hypothalamus is connected to the hypophysis cerebri (pituitary gland) by two pathways: (1) nerve fibers that travel from the supraoptic and

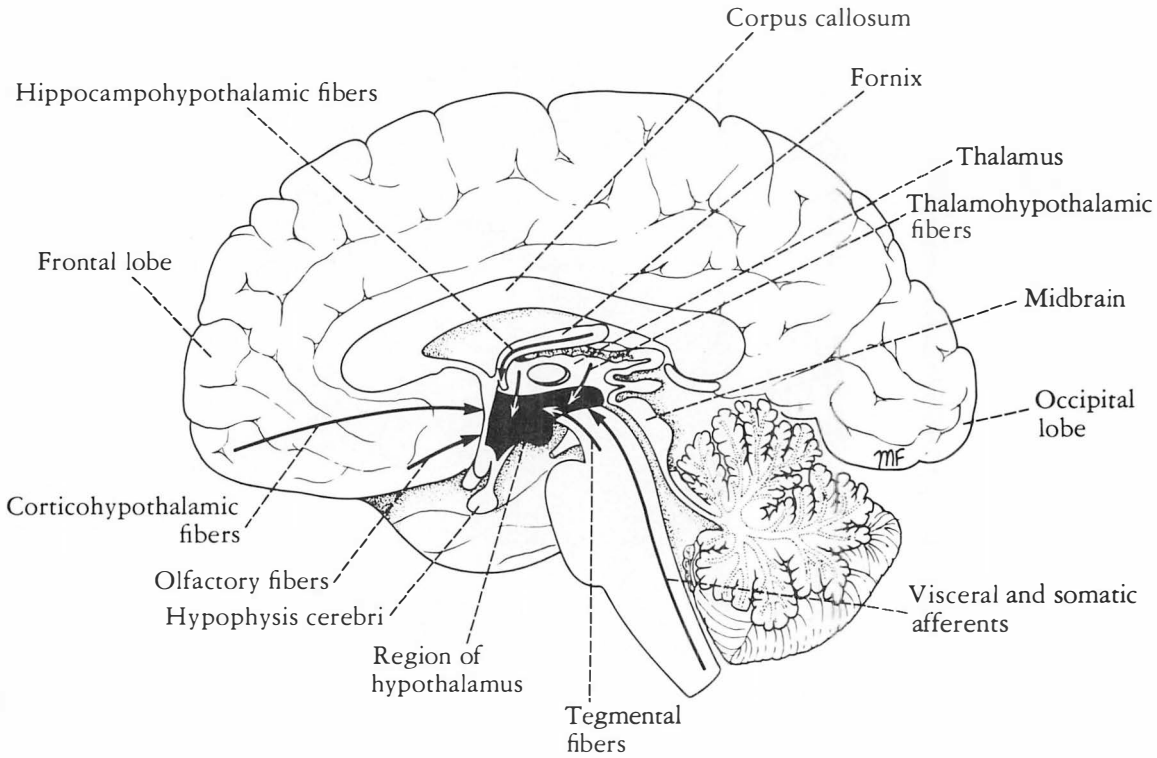


Fig. 24-5. Sagittal section of brain, showing main afferent pathways entering hypothalamus.

paraventricular nuclei to the posterior lobe of the hypophysis, and (2) long and short portal blood vessels that connect sinusoids in the median eminence and infundibulum with capillary plexuses in the anterior lobe of the hypophysis (Fig. 24-7). These pathways enable the hypothalamus to influence the activities of the endocrine glands.

Hypothalamohypophyseal Tract

Neurosecretory material that is the precursor to the hormones *vasopressin* and *oxytocin* is synthesized in the nerve cells of the supraoptic and paraventricular nuclei. The material is passed along the axons and is released at the axon terminals (Fig. 24-7). Here the hormone material is absorbed into the bloodstream in the capillaries of the posterior lobe of the hypophysis. The hormone vasopressin is produced mainly in the nerve cells of the supraoptic nucleus. Its function is to cause *vasoconstriction*. It also has an important *antidiuretic function,* causing an increased absorption of water in the distal convoluted tubules of the kidney. The other hormone is oxytocin, which is mainly produced in the paraventricular nucleus. Oxytocin stimulates the contraction of the smooth muscle of the uterus and causes contraction of the myoepithelial cells that surround the alveoli of the mammary gland.

The supraoptic nucleus, which produces vasopressin, acts as an *osmoreceptor*. Should the osmotic pressure of the blood circulating through the nucleus be too high, the nerve cells increase their production of vasopressin and the antidiuretic effect of this hormone will increase the reabsorption of water from the kidney. By this means, the osmotic pressure of the blood will return to normal limits.

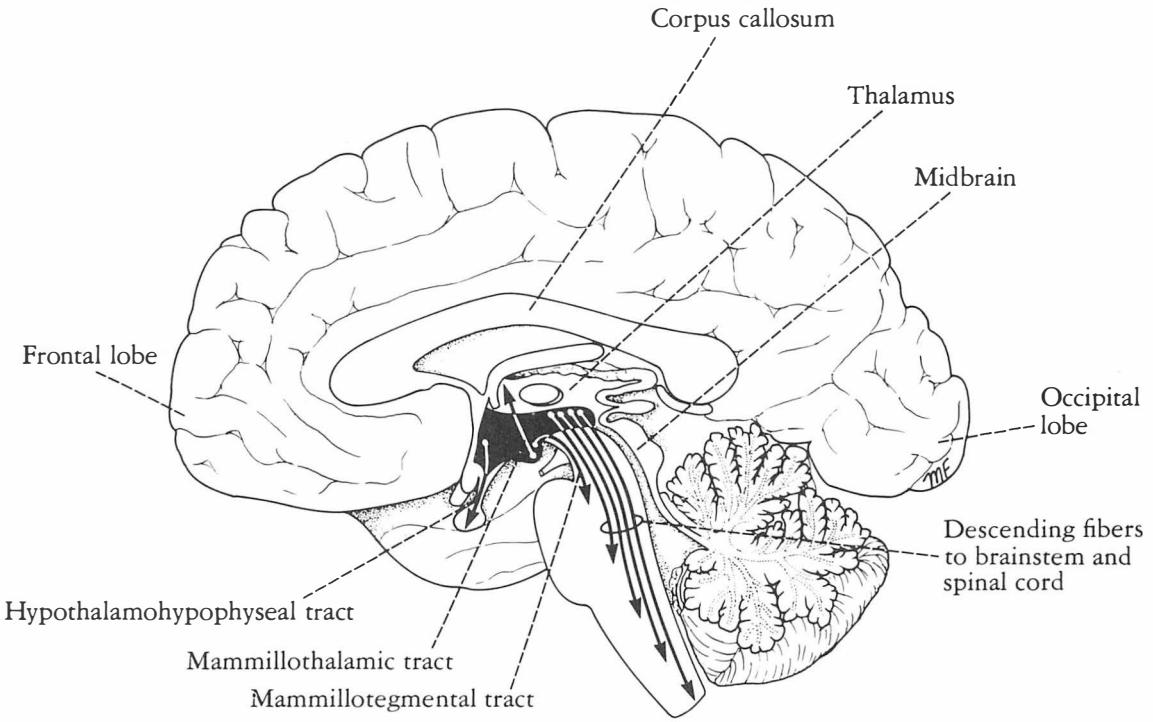


Fig. 24-6. Sagittal section of brain, showing main efferent pathways leaving hypothalamus.

Hypophyseal Portal System

The hypophyseal portal system is formed on each side from the superior hypophyseal artery, which is a branch of the internal carotid artery (Fig. 24-7). The artery enters the median eminence and divides into tufts of capillaries. These capillaries drain into long and short descending vessels that end in the anterior lobe of the hypophysis by dividing into vascular sinusoids that pass between the secretory cells of the anterior lobe.

The portal system carries *releasing hormones* and *release-inhibiting hormones,* which are produced in the neurons of the hypothalamus, to the secretory cells of the anterior lobe of the hypophysis. The releasing hormones stimulate the production and release of *adrenocorticotropic hormone* (ACTH), *follicle-stimulating hormone* (FSH), *luteinizing hormone* (LH), *thyrotropic hormone* or *thyroid-stimulating hormone* (TSH), and *somatotropic or growth hormone* (STH). The release of inhibiting hormones inhibits the release of the *melanocyte-stimulating hormone* (MSH) and *luteotropic hormone* (LTH). LTH (also known as the *lactogenic hormone* or *prolactin*) stimulates the corpus luteum to secrete progesterone and the mammary gland to produce milk.

The neurons of the hypothalamus that are responsible for the production of the releasing hormones and the release-inhibiting hormones are influenced by the afferent fibers passing to the hypothalamus. They also are influenced by the level of the hormone produced by the target organ controlled by the hypophysis. Should the level of thyroxin in the blood, for example, fall, then the releasing factor for the thyrotropic hormone would be produced in increased quantities.

Functions of the Hypothalamus

Autonomic Control. The hypothalamus has a controlling influence on the autonomic nervous sys-

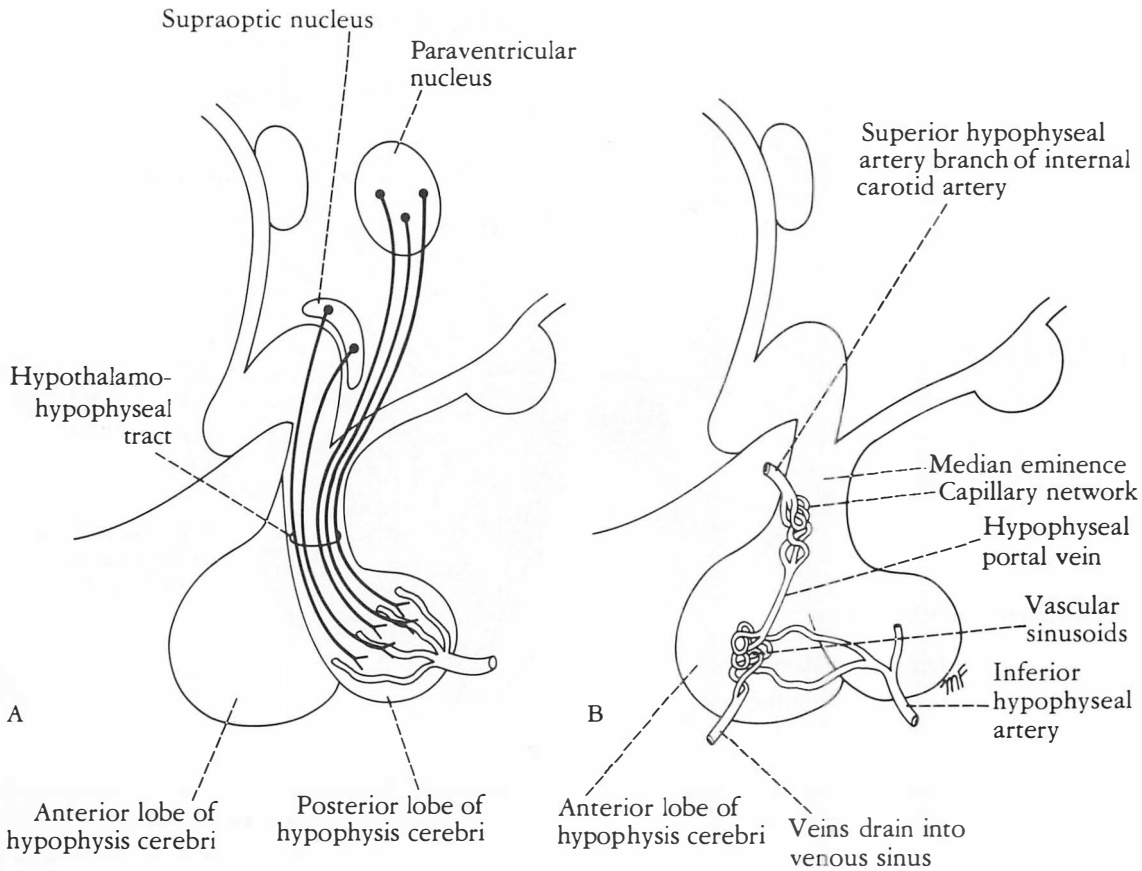


Fig. 24-7. A. Hypothalamohypophyseal tract. B. Hypophyseal portal system.

tem and appears to integrate the autonomic and neuroendocrine systems, thus preserving body homeostasis. Essentially, the hypothalamus should be regarded as a higher nervous center for the control of lower autonomic centers in the brainstem and spinal cord (Fig. 24-8).

Electrical stimulation of the hypothalamus in animal experiments shows that the anterior hypothalamic area and the preoptic area influence parasympathetic responses; these include lowering of the blood pressure, slowing of the heart rate, contraction of the bladder, increased motility of the gastrointestinal tract, increased acidity of the gastric juice, salivation, and pupillary constriction.

Stimulation of the posterior and lateral nuclei causes sympathetic responses, which include: elevation of blood pressure, acceleration of the heart rate, cessation of peristalsis in the gastrointestinal tract, pupillary dilation, and hyperglycemia.

Endocrine Control. The nerve cells of the hypothalamus, by producing the *releasing factors* or *release-inhibiting factors*, control the production of *ACTH, FSH, LH, TSH, STH, MSH,* and *LTH.* Some of these hormones act directly on body tissues, while others, such as *ACTH,* act through an endocrine organ, which in turn produces further hormones that influence the activities of general body tissues. It should be pointed out that each stage is controlled by negative or positive feedback mechanisms.

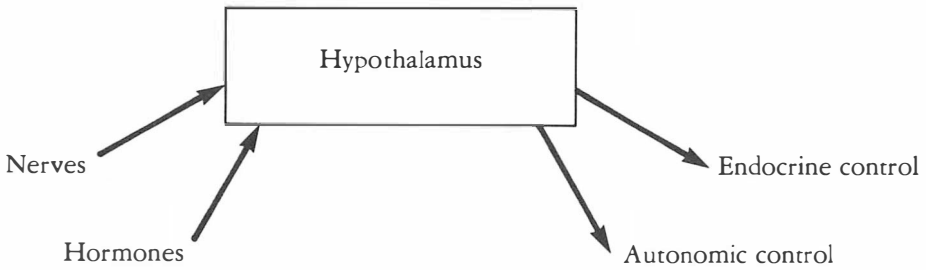


Fig. 24-8. Diagram depicting the hypothalamus as the chief center of the brain for controlling the internal milieu of the body.

Temperature Regulation. The anterior portion of the hypothalamus controls those mechanisms that dissipate heat loss. Experimental stimulation of this area causes dilatation of skin blood vessels and sweating, which lower the body temperature. Stimulation of the posterior portion of the hypothalamus results in vasoconstriction of the skin blood vessels and inhibition of sweating; there also may be shivering, in which the skeletal muscles produce heat.

Regulation of Food and Water Intake. Stimulation of the lateral region of the hypothalamus initiates eating and increases food intake. This lateral region sometimes is referred to as the *hunger center.* Stimulation of the medial region of the hypothalamus inhibits eating and reduces food intake. This area is referred to as the *satiety center.*

Experimental stimulation of other areas in the lateral region of the hypothalamus causes an immediate increase in water intake; this area is referred to as the *thirst center.* In addition, the hypothalamus exerts a careful control on the osmolarity of the blood through the secretion of vasopressin by the posterior lobe of the hypophysis and its influence on the distal convoluted tubules of the kidneys.

Emotion and Behavior. Emotion and behavior are a function of the hypothalamus, the limbic system, and the prefrontal cortex. Some authorities believe that the hypothalamus is the integrator of afferent information received from other areas of the nervous system, and brings about the physical expression of emotion; it can produce an increase in the heart rate, elevate the blood pressure, cause dryness of the mouth, flushing or pallor of the skin, and sweating, and can often produce a massive peristaltic activity of the gastrointestinal tract.

Control of Circadian Rhythms. The hypothalamus controls many circadian rhythms, including body temperature, adrenocortical activity, eosinophil count, and renal secretion. Sleeping and wakefulness, although dependent on the activities of the thalamus, the limbic system, and the reticular activating system, are also controlled by the hypothalamus. Lesions of the anterior part of the hypothalamus seriously interfere with the rhythm of sleeping and waking.

Clinical Notes

It is clear that the hypothalamus consists of a number of complex, ill-defined nuclei situated in the floor and lower lateral walls of the third ventricle. The activities of the hypothalamus are modified by information received along numerous afferent pathways from different parts of the central nervous system (especially from the limbic system and the prefrontal cortex) and by the plasma levels of circulating hormones. It exerts its influence on bodily functions through the autonomic nervous system and the endocrine system.

Although small in size, the hypothalamus should not be interpreted as a structure of little

importance. It is the chief center of the brain for maintaining the internal milieu of the body (Fig. 24-8). There is hardly a tissue in the body that escapes its influence.

The connections of the hypothalamus are extremely complicated and only the major pathways should be committed to memory for use in clinical work.

Clinical Disorders Associated with Hypothalamic Lesions

The hypothalamus may be the site of inflammation, neoplasm, or vascular disorder. Because of its deep-seated central position, it can be pressed upon by tumors of the surrounding brain tissue or may be compressed as the result of the development of internal hydrocephalus. Its widespread influence on many homeostatic and behavioral functions means that a lesion of the hypothalamus will produce a large number of different syndromes. Thus, it is important to remember that an acute lesion is more likely to produce signs and symptoms than a slowly growing tumor.

Obesity and Wasting

Severe obesity can occur as the result of hypothalamic lesions. It is generally associated with genital hypoplasia or atrophy.

Wasting is less common than obesity in hypothalamic disease. Severe cachexia is suggestive of damage to the hypophysis (pituitary gland).

Sexual Disorders

In children there may be sexual retardation and, rarely, sexual precocity with hypothalamic lesions. After puberty the patient with hypothalamic disease may have impotence or amenorrhea.

Hyperthermia and Hypothermia

Hyperthermia can follow lesions of the hypothalamus caused by head injury or following surgical operations in the region of the hypothalamus. The patient with hyperthermia is otherwise normal and has no signs of malaise, which occurs with pyrexia secondary to infections.

Hypothermia also can follow a lesion of the hypothalamus.

Diabetes Insipidus

This disease results from a lesion of the supraoptic nucleus or from the interruption of the nervous pathway to the posterior lobe of the hypophysis. Characteristically, the patient passes large volumes of urine of low specific gravity. As a result, the patient is extremely thirsty and drinks large quantities of fluids. The condition must be distinguished from diabetes mellitus, in which there is glucosuria.

Disturbances of Sleep

The occurrence of either frequent short periods of sleep during the waking hours or insomnia has been observed in patients with hypothalamic lesions.

Emotional Disorders

Attacks of unexplained weeping or laughter, uncontrollable rage, depressive reactions, or even maniacal outbursts all have been observed in patients with hypothalamic lesions.

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 499.

1. A 17-year-old boy was admitted into the medical ward for observation. The tentative diagnosis was *Frohlich's syndrome.* He had a 3-month history of severe headaches. More recently, he had had attacks of vomiting and one week ago he had noticed problems with his eyesight. He said that he had difficulty seeing objects on the lateral side of both eyes. His parents were concerned that he was putting on weight, because he was especially fat over the lower part of the trunk. On physical examination, the boy was found to be 6 feet 3 inches tall; he had excessive trunk obesity. The testes and penis were small, and the pubic and axillary hair was absent. A lateral x-ray of the skull

showed enlargement of the sella turcica with erosion of the dorsum sellae. An examination of the eye fields confirmed that the patient had partial bitemporal hemianopia. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, explain the symptoms and signs of this patient.

2. A 55-year-old woman was diagnosed as having carcinoma of the right breast with multiple secondary metastases. Since the disease itself was inoperable, it was decided to treat the patient by performing a hypophysectomy. The rationale for this treatment was that many such tumors are hormone-dependent and removal of the anterior lobe of the hypophysis would, it was hoped, slow down the spread of the malignant tumor. The operation was performed without incident, and 6 months later the patient was examined and the rate of spread of the tumor had been slowed. In fact, some of the metastases were smaller than when first seen. The patient, however, now complained that she had frequency of micturition and was passing very large quantities of pale urine. She also said that she always seemed thirsty and would often drink 10 glasses of water in one morning. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy and neurophysiology, do you think there is any connection between the urinary symptoms and her hypophysectomy operation?

3. Do you think it is possible that a patient with hydrocephalus could have a malfunctioning hypothalamus? If so, can you explain the connection?

4. Sherrington once stated in a scientific publication in 1947 that the hypothalamus should be regarded as the "head ganglion" of the autonomic nervous system. What is the relationship that exists between the hypothalamus and the autonomic nervous system?

5. Explain what is meant by the terms the *hypothalamohypophyseal tract* and the *hypophyseal portal system.*

Additional Reading

Adams, J. H., Daniel, P. M., and Prichard, M. Observations on the portal circulation of the pituitary gland. *Neuroendocrinol.* 1:193, 1966.

Bauer, H. G. Endocrine and other clinical manifestations of hypothalamic disease. *J. Clin. Endocrinol. Metab.* 14:13, 1954.

Bisset, G. W., Hilton, S. M., and Poisner, A. M. Hypothalamic pathways for the independent release of vasopressin and oxytocin. *Proc. R. Soc. B.* 166:422, 1966.

Brown-Grant, K., and Cross, B. A. Recent studies on the hypothalamus. *Br. Med. Bull.* 22:195, 1966.

Burgus, R., and Guillemin, R. Hypothalamic releasing factors. *Ann. Rev. Biochem.* 39:499, 1970.

Emmers, R. Interaction of neural systems which control body water. *Brain Res.* 49:323, 1973.

Glusman, M. The hypothalamic "savage" syndrome. *Publ. Assoc. Res. Nerv. Ment. Dis.* 52:52, 1974.

Harris, G. W., and George, R. Neurohumoral Control of the Adenohypophysis and Regulation of the Secretion of TSH, ACTH and Growth Hormone. In W. Haymaker et al. (Eds.), *The Hypothalamus.* Springfield, Ill.: Thomas, 1969.

Haymaker, W., Anderson, E., and Nauta, W. J. H. *The Hypothalamus.* Springfield, Ill.: Thomas, 1969.

Knigge, K. M., and Silverman, A. J. Anatomy of the Endocrine Hypothalamus. In R. O. Greep and E. B. Astwood (Eds.), *Handbook of Physiology, Endocrinology,* Section 7. Washington, D.C.: American Physiological Society, 1974. Vol. 6.

McCann, S. M., and Porter, J. C. Hypothalamic pituitary stimulating and inhibiting hormones. *Physiol. Rev.* 49:240, 1969.

Morton, R. A quantitative analysis of the normal neuron population of the hypothalamic magnocellular nuclei in man and of their projections to the neurohypophysis. *J. Comp. Neurol.* 136:143, 1969.

Raisman, G. W., and Field, P. M. Anatomical Considerations Relevant to the Interpretation of Neuroendocrine Experiments. In L. Martini and W. F. Ganong (Eds.), *Frontiers in Neuroendocrinology.* London: Oxford University Press, 1971. P. 3.

Saper, C. B., et al. Direct hypothalamo-autonomic connections. *Brain Res.* 117:305, 1976.

Swaab, D. F., and Schade, J. P. (Eds.). Integrative Hypothalamic Activity. In *Progress in Brain Research.* Vol. 41. New York: American Elsevier, 1974.

25
The Autonomic Nervous System

The autonomic nervous system is the part of the nervous system concerned with the innervation of involuntary structures such as the heart, smooth muscle, and glands throughout the body. It is distributed throughout the central and peripheral nervous systems. The autonomic system may be divided into two parts, the *sympathetic* and the *parasympathetic*, and in both parts there are afferent and efferent nerve fibers.

The activities of the sympathetic part of the autonomic system prepare the body for an emergency. They accelerate the heart rate, cause constriction of the peripheral blood vessels, and raise the blood pressure. The sympathetic part of the autonomic system brings about a redistribution of the blood so that it leaves the areas of the skin and intestine and becomes available to the brain, heart, and skeletal muscle. At the same time, it inhibits peristalsis of the intestinal tract and closes the sphincters.

The activities of the parasympathetic part of the autonomic system aim at conserving and restoring energy. They slow the heart rate, increase peristalsis of the intestine and glandular activity, and open the sphincters.

Sympathetic Part of the Autonomic System

Efferent Nerve Fibers. The gray matter of the spinal cord, from the first thoracic segment to the second lumbar segment (sometimes third lumbar segment), possesses a lateral column or horn in which are located the cell bodies of the sympathetic connector neurons (Fig. 25-1). The myelinated axons of these cells leave the spinal cord in the anterior nerve roots and then pass through the *white rami communicantes* to the *paravertebral ganglia* of the *sympathetic trunk* (Fig. 25-1). The connector cell fibers are called *preganglionic* as they pass to a peripheral ganglion. Once the preganglionic fibers reach the ganglia in the sympathetic trunk, they may pass to the following destinations:

1. They may terminate in the ganglion they have entered by synapsing with an excitor neuron in the ganglion (Fig. 25-1). It will be remembered that a *synapse* may be defined as the site where two neurons come into close proximity but not into anatomical continuity. The gap between the two neurons is bridged by a neurotransmitter substance, *acetylcholine*. The axons of the excitor neurons leave the ganglion and are nonmyelinated. These postganglionic nerve fibers now pass to the thoracic spinal nerves as *gray rami communicantes* and are distributed in the branches of the spinal nerves to supply the smooth muscle in the walls of blood vessels, the sweat glands, and the arrector pili muscles of the skin.
2. Those fibers entering the ganglia of the sympathetic trunk high up in the thorax may travel up in the sympathetic trunk to the ganglia in the cervical region, where they synapse with excitor neurons (Figs. 25-1 and 25-2). Here again, the postganglionic nerve fibers leave the sympathetic trunk as gray rami communicantes, and most of them join the cervical spinal nerves.

Many of the preganglionic fibers entering the lower part of the sympathetic trunk from the lower thoracic and upper two lumbar segments of the spinal cord travel down to ganglia in the lower lumbar and sacral regions, where they synapse with excitor cells (Fig. 25-2). The postganglionic fibers leave the sympathetic trunk as gray rami communicantes that join the lumbar, sacral, and coccygeal spinal nerves.

3. The preganglionic fibers may pass through

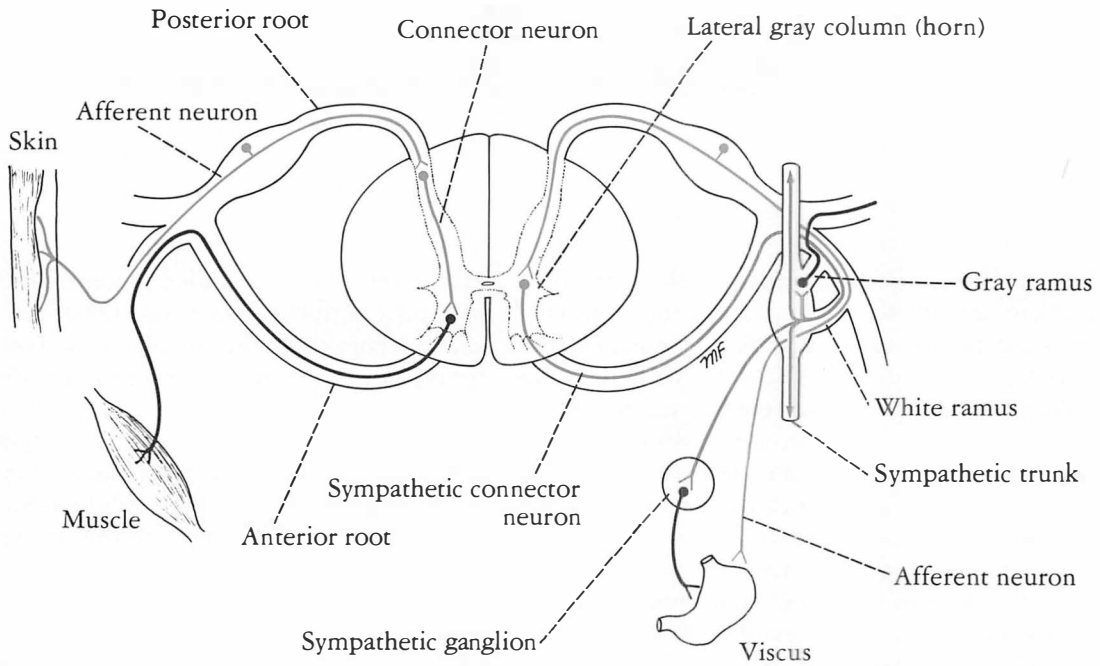


Fig. 25-1. General arrangement of somatic part of nervous system (on left) *compared with autonomic part of nervous system* (on right).

the ganglia on the thoracic part of the sympathetic trunk without synapsing. These myelinated fibers form the *splanchnic nerves* (Fig. 25-2), of which there are three. The *greater splanchnic nerve* arises from the fifth to the ninth thoracic ganglia, pierces the diaphragm, and synapses with excitor cells in the ganglia of the *celiac plexus*. The *lesser splanchnic nerve* arises from the tenth and eleventh ganglia, pierces the diaphragm, and synapses with excitor cells in the ganglia of the lower part of the *celiac plexus*. The *lowest splanchnic nerve* (when present) arises from the twelfth thoracic ganglion, pierces the diaphragm, and synapses with excitor neurons in the ganglia of the *renal plexus*. The splanchnic nerves, therefore, are composed of preganglionic fibers. The postganglionic fibers arise from the excitor cells in the peripheral plexuses, previously noted, and are distributed to the smooth muscle and glands of the viscera. A few preganglionic fibers, traveling in the greater splanchnic nerve, end directly on the cells of the *suprarenal medulla*. These medullary cells may be regarded as modified sympathetic excitor neurons.

Afferent Nerve Fibers. The afferent myelinated nerve fibers travel from the viscera through the sympathetic ganglia without synapsing (Fig. 25-1). They enter the spinal nerve through the white rami communicantes and reach their cell bodies in the posterior root ganglion of the corresponding spinal nerve. The central axons then enter the spinal cord and may form the afferent component of a local reflex arc. Others may pass up to higher autonomic centers such as the hypothalamus in the brain.

Parasympathetic Part of the Autonomic Nervous System

Efferent Nerve Fibers. The connector nerve cells of this part of the system are located in the brainstem and the sacral segments of the spinal cord (Fig. 25-2). Those nerve cells located in the brainstem form parts of the nuclei of origin of the following cranial nerves: the *oculomotor* (parasympathetic or Edinger-Westphal nucleus), the *facial* (superior salivatory nucleus), the glossopharyngeal

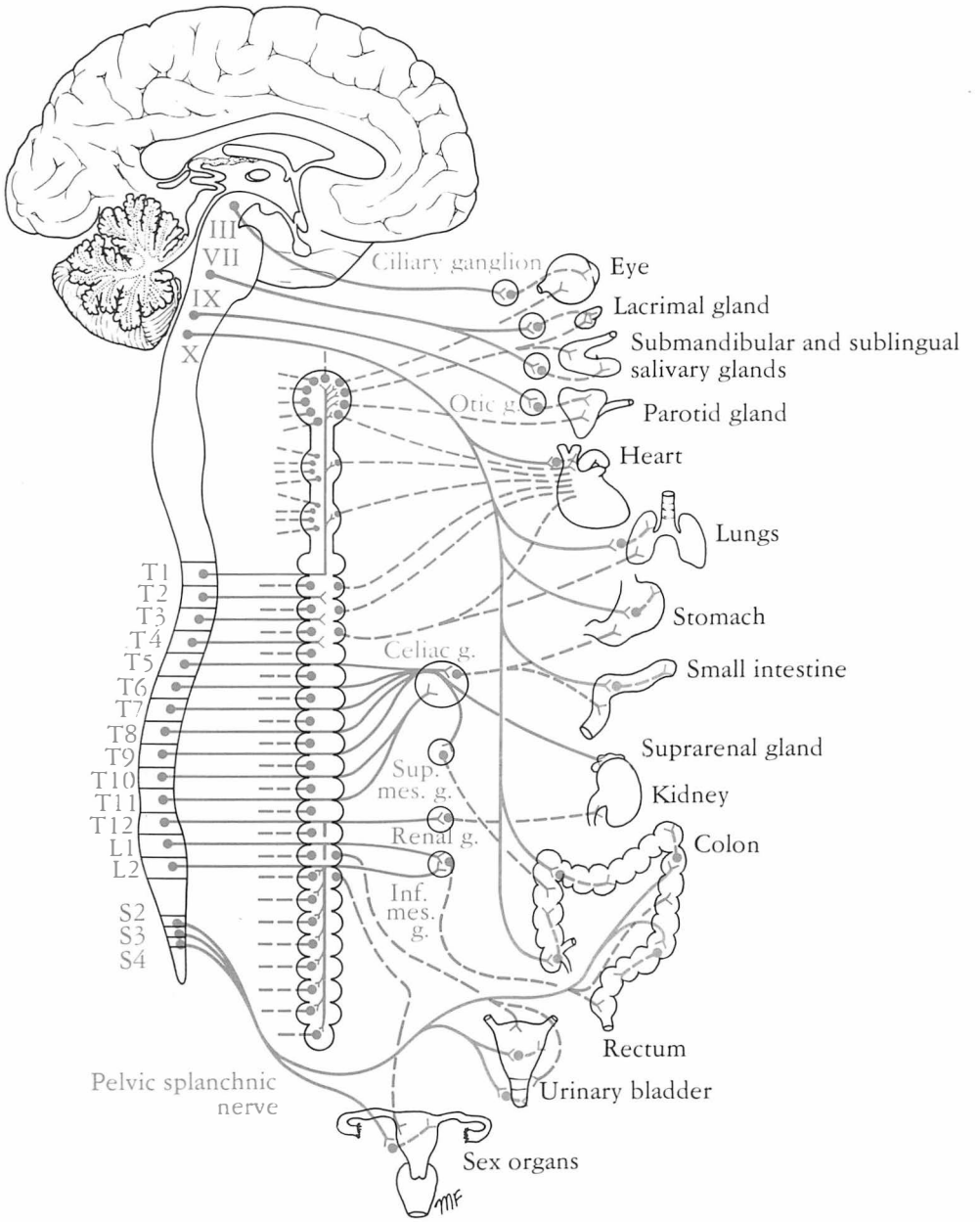


Fig. 25-2. Efferent part of autonomic nervous system. Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers are shown in solid blue, postganglionic parasympathetic fibers in interrupted blue. Preganglionic sympathetic fibers are shown in solid red, postganglionic sympathetic fibers in interrupted red.

(inferior salivatory nucleus), and the *vagus* nerves (dorsal nucleus of vagus). The axons of these connector nerve cells emerge from the brain contained in the cranial nerves.

The sacral connector nerve cells are found in the gray matter of the *second, third, and fourth sacral segments of the cord*. These cells are not sufficiently numerous to form a lateral gray horn, as do the sympathetic connector neurons in the thoracolumbar region. The myelinated axons leave the spinal cord in the anterior nerve roots of the corresponding spinal nerves. They then leave the sacral nerves and form the *pelvic splanchnic nerves*.

All the efferent fibers described so far are preganglionic, and they synapse with excitor neurons in the peripheral ganglia, which are usually situated close to the viscera they innervate. The cranial preganglionic fibers relay in the *ciliary, pterygopalatine, submandibular,* and *otic ganglia* (Fig. 25-2). The preganglionic fibers in the pelvic splanchnic nerves relay in ganglia in the *pelvic plexuses*. In certain situations, the ganglion cells are diffusely arranged in nerve plexuses such as the *cardiac plexus*, the *pulmonary plexus*, and in the *myenteric* and *mucosal plexuses* of the gastrointestinal tract. Characteristically, the postganglionic fibers are nonmyelinated and are of relatively short length as compared with sympathetic postganglionic fibers.

Afferent Nerve Fibers. The afferent myelinated fibers travel from the viscera to their cell bodies, located either in the sensory ganglia of the cranial nerves or in the posterior root ganglia of the sacrospinal nerves. The central axons then enter the central nervous system and take part in the formation of local reflex arcs, or pass to higher centers of the autonomic nervous system, such as the hypothalamus.

It is important to realize that the afferent component of the autonomic system is identical to the afferent component of somatic nerves, and that it forms part of the general afferent segment of the entire nervous system. The nerve endings in the autonomic afferent component may not be activated by such sensations as heat or touch, but, rather, by stretch or lack of oxygen. Once the afferent fibers gain entrance to the spinal cord or brain, they are thought to travel alongside, or mixed with, the somatic afferent fibers.

Higher Control of the Autonomic Nervous System

The hypothalamus has a controlling influence on the autonomic nervous system and appears to integrate the autonomic and neuroendocrine systems, thus preserving body homeostasis (Fig. 25-3). Essentially, the hypothalamus should be regarded as a higher nervous center for the control of lower autonomic centers in the brainstem and spinal cord.

Stimulation of the anterior region of the hypothalamus can influence parasympathetic responses, whereas stimulation of the posterior part of the hypothalamus gives rise to sympathetic responses. In addition, lower brainstem centers such as *vasopressor, vasodilator, cardioaccelerator, cardiodecelerator,* and *respiratory centers* have been found in the reticular formation as the result of experimental stimulation in lower animals. It is believed that the various levels of control are exerted as the result of interconnections of the different regions by ascending and descending pathways. The neurons of the thoracolumbar outflow of the sympathetic part of the system and the neurons of the craniosacral outflow of the parasympathetic part of the system receive their control through the descending tracts of the reticular formation.

It has long been known that stimulation of different parts of the cerebral cortex can produce autonomic effects and it is assumed that this is brought about through the hypothalamus. In this connection, the work of Miller et al. in 1970 is of interest. They suggest that the autonomic nervous system can be brought under voluntary control to some extent and that patients with hypertension, for example, possibly can be trained to reduce their blood pressure.

Structure of Autonomic Ganglia

Autonomic ganglia, which are often irregular in shape, are situated along the course of efferent

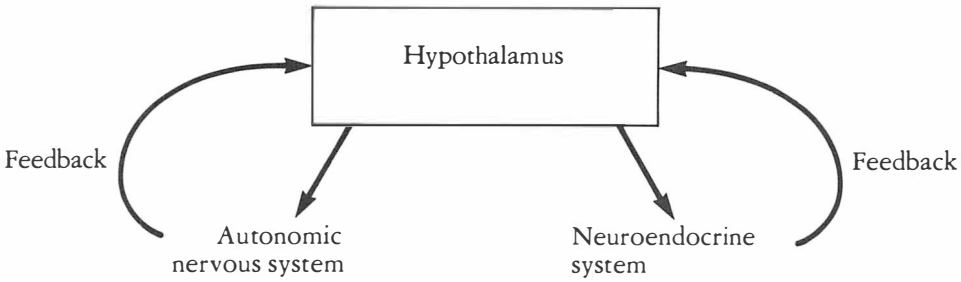


Fig. 25-3. The hypothalamus as the control center for the autonomic nervous system and the neuroendocrine system.

nerve fibers of the autonomic nervous system. The structure of sympathetic and parasympathetic ganglia is similar (Fig. 25-4). Sympathetic ganglia form part of the sympathetic trunk or are prevertebral in position. Parasympathetic ganglia, on the other hand, are situated close to the viscera they serve or the ganglion cells are scattered within the walls of the viscera as parasympathetic plexuses.

An autonomic ganglion consists of a collection of multipolar neurons together with capsular or satellite cells and a connective tissue capsule. Nerve bundles are attached to each ganglion and consist of preganglionic nerve fibers that enter the ganglion, postganglionic nerve fibers that have arisen from neurons within the ganglion and are leaving the ganglion, and afferent and efferent nerve fibers that pass through the ganglion without synapsing. The preganglionic fibers are small and myelinated; the postganglionic fibers are smaller and unmyelinated.

An autonomic ganglion is the site where preganglionic fibers synapse on postganglionic neurons. However, the presence of interneurons and collateral branches suggests that a ganglion may play a greater role than just relaying information and that it probably serves some integrative function (Fig. 25-4).

The synaptic transmitter that excites the postganglionic neurons in both sympathetic and parasympathetic ganglia is *acetylcholine* (Fig. 25-4B). The action of acetycholine in autonomic ganglia is terminated by hydrolysis by acetylcholinesterase. The structure of synapses in autonomic ganglia shows the characteristic membrane thickening and small clear vesicles. In addition, there are some larger granular vesicles. The smaller vesicles contain acetylcholine; the content of the granular vesicles is not known.

Pharmacology of Autonomic Ganglia

As the preganglionic nerve fibers approach their termination they wind around and between the dendritic processes of the postganglionic neuron, making multiple synaptic contacts. When the wave of excitation reaches the synaptic contacts the synaptic transmitter, acetylcholine, is liberated, crosses the synaptic cleft, and excites the postganglionic neuron (Figs. 25-4B and 25-5). The action of the transmitter is quickly terminated by hydrolysis by acetylcholinesterase.

There are two types of ganglion-blocking agents. *Nicotine* acts as a blocking agent in high concentrations, first by stimulating the postganglionic neuron by causing depolarization, and then by maintaining depolarization of the excitable membrane. *Hexamethonium* and *tetraethylammonium* block ganglia by competing with acetylcholine at the receptor sites.

Structure of Postganglionic Nerve Endings

The postganglionic fibers terminate on the effector cells without special discrete endings. The axons run between the gland cells and the smooth and cardiac musle cells and lose their covering of

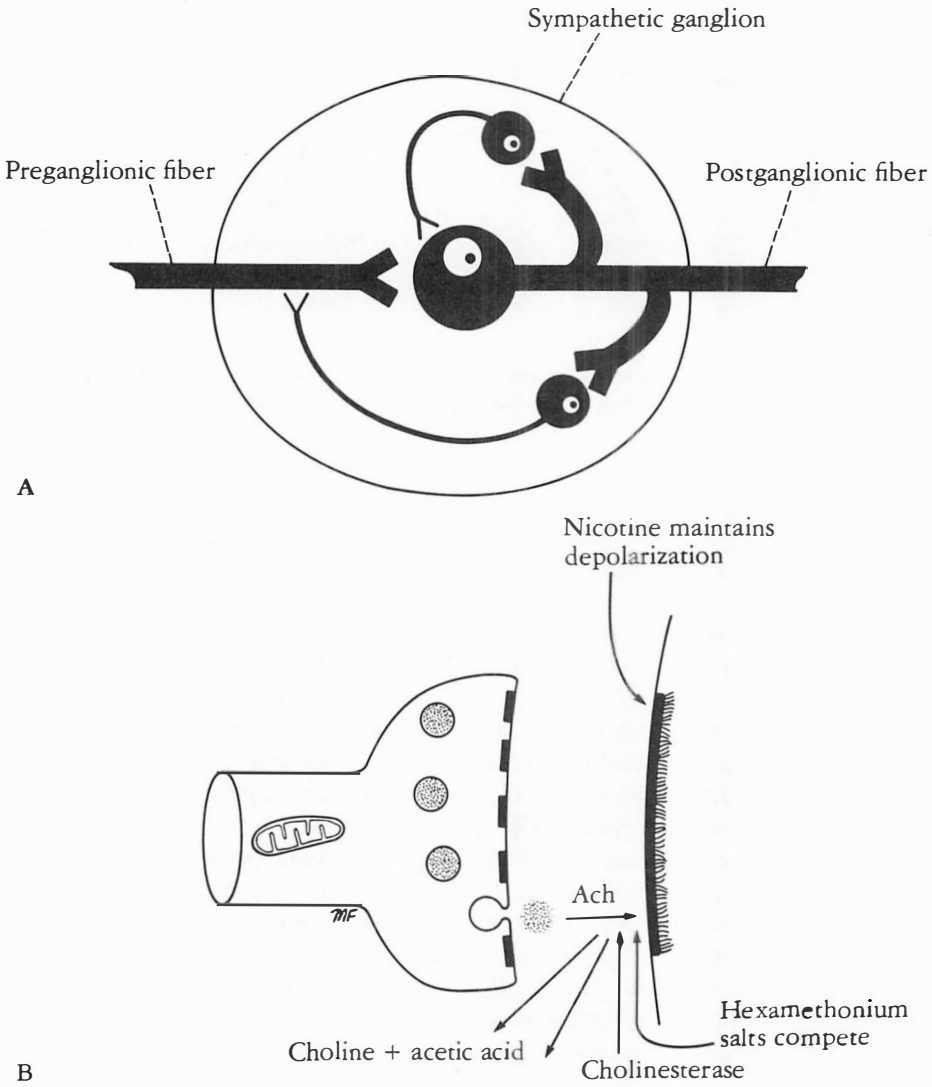


Fig. 25-4. A. An autonomic ganglion as an integrator.
B. The liberation of acetylcholine at an autonomic synapse.

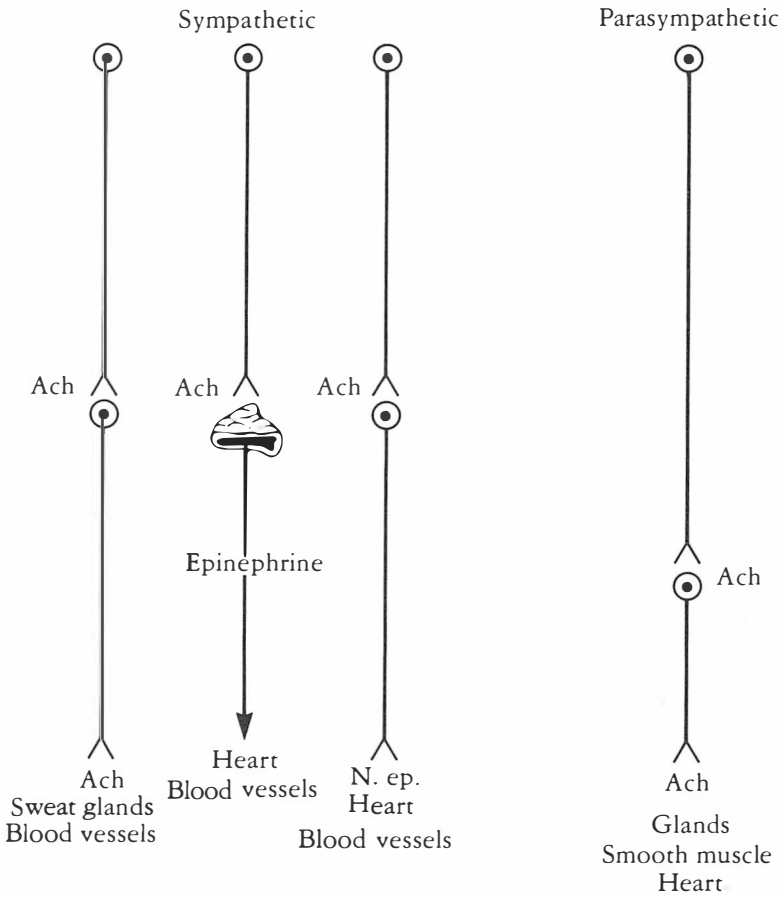


Fig. 25-5. The efferent parts of the autonomic nervous system and the chemical transmitter substances released at the nerve endings.

Schwann cells. At sites where transmission occurs clusters of vesicles are present within the axoplasm (see Fig. 5-19). The absence of the Schwann cell or its retraction at this point forms a free path for the diffusion of the transmitter substance to the effector cell. The transmission site on the axon may lie at some distance from the effector cell so that the transmission time may be slow at these endings. The diffusion of the transmitter through the large extracellular distance also permits a given nerve to have an action on a large number of effector cells.

Pharmacology of Postganglionic Nerve Endings

Parasympathetic postganglionic nerve endings liberate *acetylcholine* as their transmitter substance (Fig. 25-5). The receptors on the effector cells are *muscarinic* and, therefore, the action can be blocked by *atropine*.

Most sympathetic postganglionic nerve endings liberate *norepinephrine* as their transmitter substance. In addition, some sympathetic postganglionic nerve endings, such as those that end on cells of sweat glands, release *acetylcholine*. Sympathetic endings that use norepinephrine are called *adrenergic endings*. There are two kinds of receptors, called *alpha* and *beta receptors*, for adrenergic endings. Norepinephrine has a greater

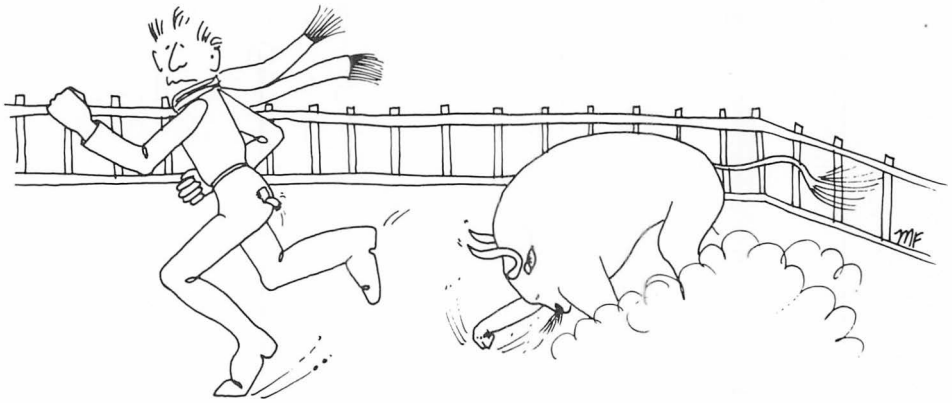


Fig. 25-6. This man is making good use of the sympathetic part of his autonomic nervous system.

effect on alpha receptors than beta receptors. On the other hand, beta receptors are more strongly stimulated by other adrenergic drugs such as *isoproterenol*.

Sympathetic postganglionic endings can be blocked by certain drugs. For example, the alpha adrenergic receptor can be blocked by *phenoxybenzamine* and the beta adrenergic receptor can be blocked by *propranolol*. The sympathetic postganglionic endings that liberate acetylcholine can be blocked by atropine.

Functions of the Autonomic Nervous System

The autonomic nervous system, along with the endocrine system, maintains the stability of the internal environment of the body. By means of its fine control it brings about the internal adjustments that are necessary for the optimal internal environment of the body. The endocrine control is slower and exerts its influence by means of hormones, which are transported in the bloodstream.

The autonomic nervous system functions for the most part at the subconscious level. We are not aware, for example, that our pupils are dilating or that our arteries are constricting. The system should not be regarded as an isolated portion of the nervous system, for we know that it can play a role with somatic activity in expressing emotion, and that certain autonomic activities, such as micturition, can be brought under voluntary control. The various activities of the autonomic and endocrine systems are integrated within the hypothalamus.

The sympathetic and parasympathetic components of the autonomic system cooperate in maintaining the stability of the internal environment. The sympathetic part prepares and mobilizes the body in an emergency (Fig. 25-6), when there is sudden severe exercise, fear, or rage. The parasympathetic part aims at conserving and storing energy, for example, in the promotion of digestion and the absorption of food by increasing the secretions of the glands of the gastrointestinal tract and stimulating peristalsis (Fig. 25-7).

The sympathetic and parasympathetic parts of the autonomic system usually have antagonistic control over a viscus. For example, the sympathetic activity will increase the heart rate, whereas the parasympathetic will cause slowing of the heart rate. The sympathetic activity will make the bronchial smooth muscle relax but it is contracted by the parasympathetic.

It should be pointed out, however, that many viscera do not possess this fine dual control from the autonomic system. The smooth muscle of the hair follicles (the arrector pili muscle) is made to contract by the sympathetic activity and there is no parasympathetic control.

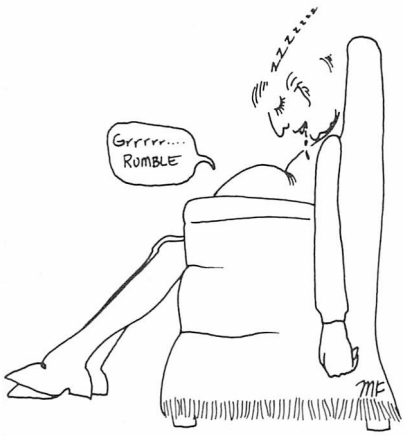


Fig. 25-7. There is nothing like a good, large meal and a comfortable armchair to facilitate the activities of the parasympathetic part of the autonomic nervous system.

The activities of some viscera are kept under a constant state of inhibition by one or the other components of the autonomic nervous system. The heart in a trained athlete is maintained at a slow rate by the activities of the parasympathetic system. This is of considerable importance, because the heart is a more efficient pump when contracting slowly than when contracting very quickly.

Important Anatomical, Physiological, and Pharmacological Differences between the Sympathetic and Parasympathetic Parts of the Autonomic System

1. The sympathetic efferent nerve fibers originate (see Fig. 25-2) from nerve cells in the lateral gray column of the spinal cord between the first thoracic and second lumbar segments (the *thoracic outflow*). The parasympathetic efferent nerve fibers originate from nerve cells in the third, seventh, ninth, and tenth cranial nerves and in the gray matter of the second, third, and fourth sacral segments of the cord (the *craniosacral outflow*).

2. The sympathetic ganglia are located either in the paravertebral sympathetic trunks or in the prevertebral ganglia, such as the celiac ganglion (see Fig. 25-2). The parasympathetic ganglion cells are located as small ganglia close to the viscera or within plexuses within the viscera.

3. The sympathetic part of the autonomic system has long postganglionic fibers, whereas the parasympathetic system has short fibers (see Fig. 25-5).

4. The sympathetic part of the system has a widespread action on the body as the result of the preganglionic fibers synapsing on many postganglionic neurons and the suprarenal medulla releasing the sympathetic transmitters epinephrine and norepinephrine, which are distributed throughout the body through the bloodstream (see Fig. 25-5). The parasympathetic part of the autonomic system has a more discrete control, since the preganglionic fibers synapse on only a few postganglionic neurons and there is no comparable organ to the suprarenal medulla.

5. The sympathetic postganglionic endings liberate norepinephrine at most endings and acetylcholine at a few endings (e.g., sweat glands). The parasympathetic postganglionic endings liberate acetylcholine (see Fig. 25-5).

6. The sympathetic part of the autonomic system prepares the body for emergencies and severe muscular activity, whereas the parasympathetic part conserves and stores energy.

To assist with the learning of the different actions of these two components of the autonomic system it might be helpful to imagine the sympathetic activity to be maximal in a man who finds himself suddenly alone in a field with a bull who is about to charge (Fig. 25-6). His hair will stand on end with fear; his skin will be pale as the result of vasoconstriction, which causes a redistribution of blood away from the skin and viscera to the heart muscle and skeletal muscle. His upper eyelids will be raised and his pupils widely dilated so that he can see where to run. His heart rate will rise and the peripheral resistance of the arterioles will be increased, causing a rise in blood pressure. His bronchi will dilate to permit maximum respiratory flow of air. His peristaltic activity will be inhibited and his gut sphincters will be contracted. His vesi-

cal sphincter will also be contracted (this is certainly not the time to be thinking of defecation or micturition). Glycogen will be converted into glucose for energy and he will sweat to lose body heat.

On the other hand, the parasympathetic activity will be great in a man who has fallen asleep in an armchair after a satisfying meal (Fig. 25-7). His heart rate will be slow and his blood pressure will not be high. His upper eyelids will droop or be closed and his pupils will be constricted. His breathing will be noisy owing to bronchial constriction. His abdomen may rumble owing to excessive peristaltic activity. He may feel the inclination to defecate or micturate.

Some Important Autonomic Innervations

Eye

Upper Lid. The upper lid is raised by the levator palpebrae superioris muscle. The major part of this muscle is formed by skeletal muscle and this receives its innervation from the oculomotor nerve. A small part of the muscle is composed of smooth muscle fibers that are innervated by sympathetic postganglionic fibers from the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion (Fig. 25-9). Division of the cervical sympathetic nerve fibers paralyzes the smooth muscle and causes drooping of the upper lid (ptosis).

Iris. The smooth muscle fibers of the iris consist of circular and radiating fibers. The circular fibers form the sphincter pupillae and the radial fibers form the dilator pupillae.

The sphincter pupillae is supplied by parasympathetic fibers from the parasympathetic nucleus (Edinger-Westphal nucleus) of the oculomotor nerve (Fig. 25-8). After synapsing in the *ciliary ganglion*, the postganglionic fibers pass forward to the eyeball in the *short ciliary nerves*. (The ciliary muscle of the eye is also supplied by the short ciliary nerves; see p. 359).

The dilator pupillae is supplied by postganglionic fibers from the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion (Fig. 25-8). The postganglionic fibers reach the orbit along the internal carotid and ophthalmic arteries. They pass uninterrupted through the ciliary ganglion and reach the eyeball in the *short ciliary nerves*. Other sympathetic fibers reach the eyeball in the long ciliary nerves.

Salivary Glands

Submandibular and Sublingual Glands. Parasympathetic secretomotor supply originates in the *superior salivary nucleus* of the facial nerve (Fig. 25-8). The preganglionic fibers pass to the *submandibular ganglion* and other small ganglia close to the duct through the *chorda tympani nerve* and the *lingual nerve*. Postganglionic fibers reach the submandibular gland either directly or along the duct. Postganglionic fibers to the sublingual gland travel through the lingual nerve.

Sympathetic postganglionic fibers arise from the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion and reach the glands as a plexus of nerves around the external carotid, facial, and lingual arteries. They function as vasoconstrictor fibers.

Parotid Gland. Parasympathetic secretomotor fibers from the *inferior salivary nucleus* of the glossopharyngeal nerve supply the gland (Fig. 25-9). The preganglionic nerve fibers pass to the otic ganglion through the *tympanic branch of the glossopharyngeal nerve* and the *lesser petrosal nerve*. Postganglionic fibers reach the gland through the auriculotemporal nerve.

Sympathetic postganglionic fibers arise from the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion and reach the gland as a plexus of nerves around the external carotid artery.

Lacrimal Gland

The parasympathetic secretomotor nerve supply to the lacrimal gland originates in the *lacrimatory nucleus* of the facial nerve (Fig. 25-9). The preganglionic fibers reach the *pterygopalatine ganglion* through the *nervus intermedius* and its *great petrosal branch* and through the *nerve of the pterygoid canal*. The postganglionic fibers leave the ganglion and join the maxillary nerve. They then pass into its *zygomatic branch* and the *zygomaticotemporal nerve*. They reach the lacrimal gland within the *lacrimal nerve*.

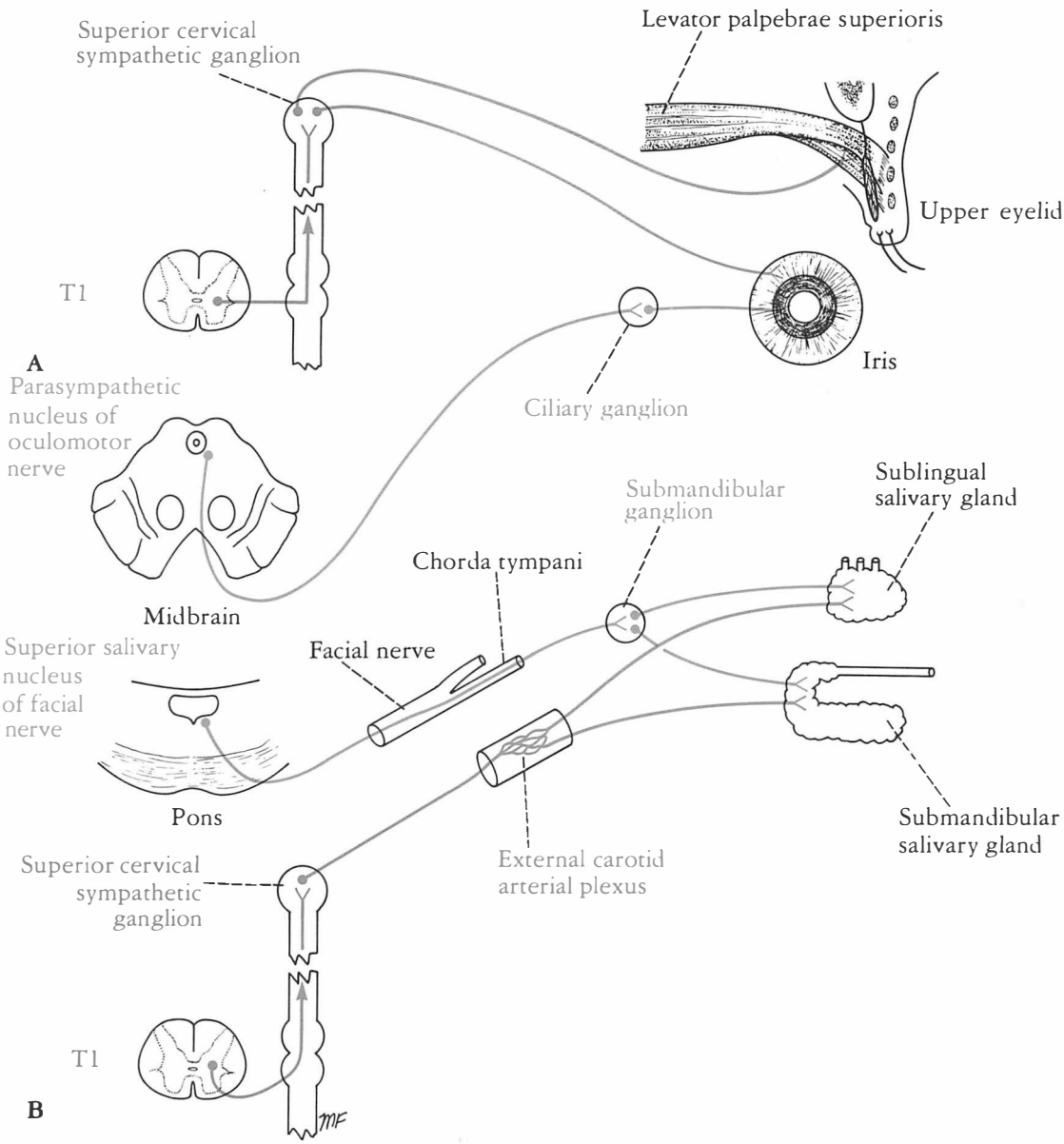


Fig. 25-8. The autonomic innervation of:
A. The upper eyelid and iris.
B. The sublingual and submandibular salivary glands.

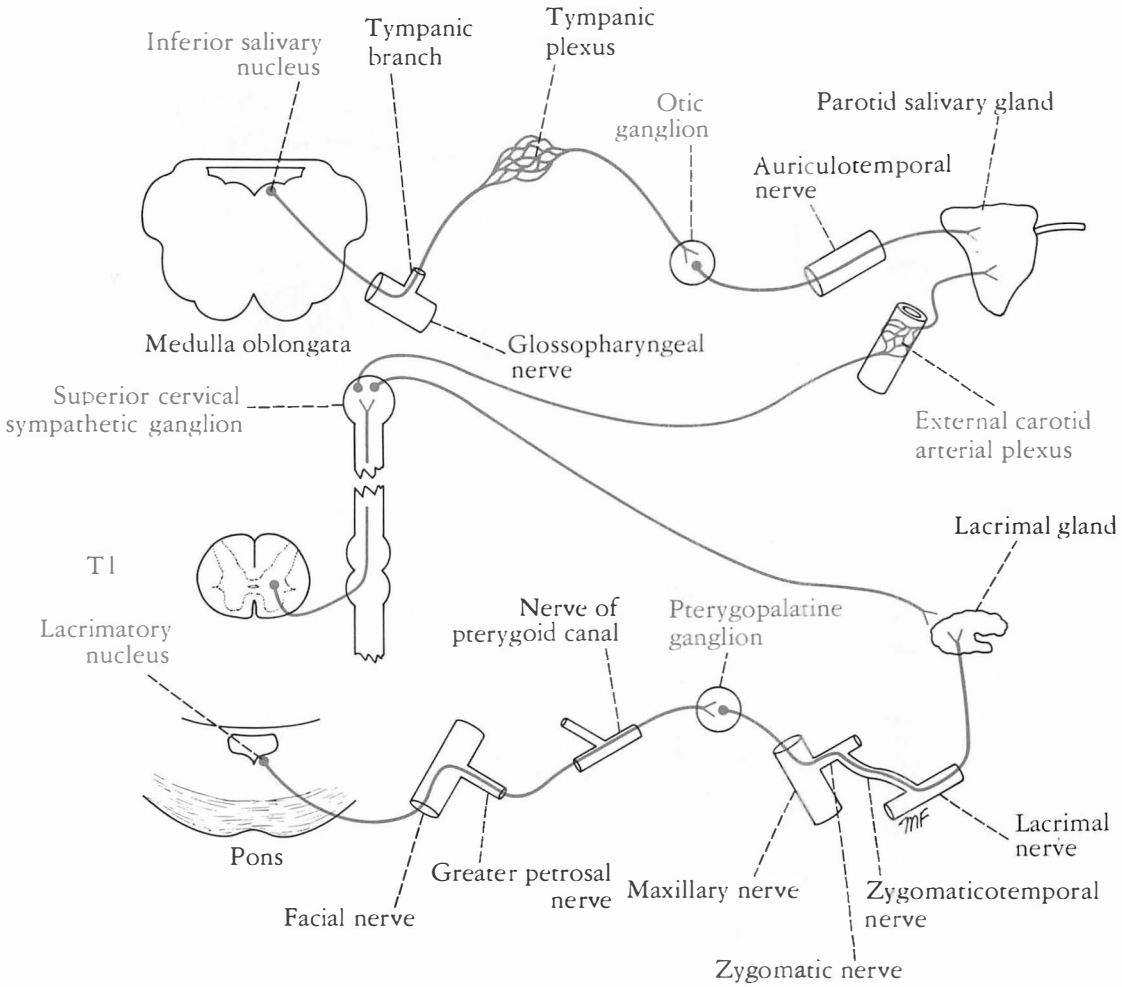


Fig. 25-9. The autonomic innervation of the parotid salivary gland and the lacrimal gland.

The sympathetic postganglionic fibers arise from the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion and travel in the plexus of nerves around the internal carotid artery. They join the *deep petrosal nerve,* the *nerve of the pterygoid canal,* the *maxillary nerve,* the *zygomatic nerve,* and *zygomaticotemporal nerve,* and, finally, the lacrimal nerve.

Heart

The sympathetic postganglionic fibers arise from the cervical and upper thoracic portions of the sympathetic trunks (Fig. 25-10). Postganglionic fibers reach the heart by way of the *superior, middle,* and *inferior cardiac branches* of the cervical portion of the sympathetic trunk and a number of *cardiac branches* from the thoracic portion of the sympathetic trunk. The fibers pass through the *cardiac plexuses* and terminate on the *sinoatrial* and *atrioventricular nodes*, on cardiac muscle fibers, and on coronary arteries. Activation of these nerves results in cardiac acceleration and dilatation of the coronary arteries.

The parasympathetic preganglionic fibers originate in the *dorsal nucleus of the vagus nerve* and de-

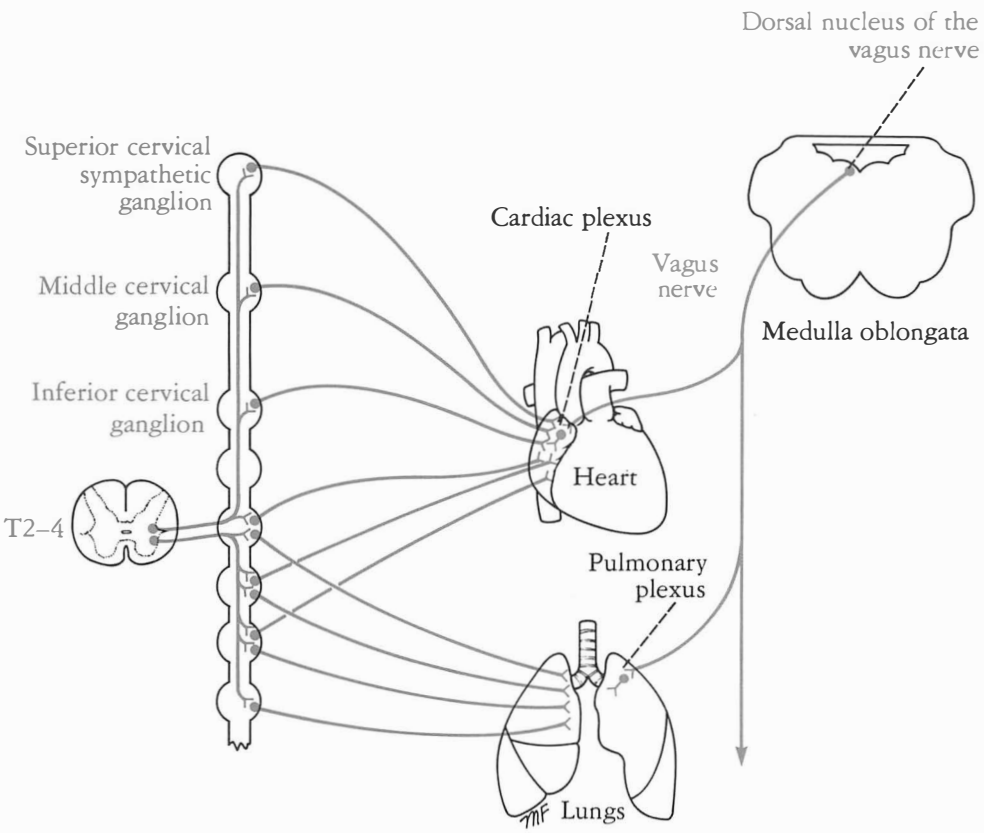


Fig. 25-10. The autonomic innervation of the heart and lungs.

scend into the thorax in the vagus nerves. The fibers terminate by synapsing with postganglionic neurons in the *cardiac plexuses*. Postganglionic fibers terminate on the *sinoatrial* and *atrioventricular nodes* and on the coronary arteries. Activation of these nerves results in a reduction in the rate and force of contraction of the heart and a constriction of the coronary arteries.

Lungs

The sympathetic postganglionic fibers arise from the second to the fifth thoracic ganglia of the sympathetic trunk (Fig. 25-10). The fibers pass through the pulmonary plexuses and enter the lung, where they form networks around the bronchi and blood vessels. The sympathetic fibers produce bronchodilatation and are vasoconstrictor.

The parasympathetic preganglionic fibers arise from the dorsal nucleus of the vagus and descend to the thorax within the vagus nerves. The fibers terminate by synapsing with postganglionic neurons in the pulmonary plexuses. The postganglionic fibers enter the lung, where they form networks around the bronchi and blood vessels. The parasympathetic fibers produce bronchoconstriction and vasodilatation and increase glandular secretion.

Gastrointestinal Tract

Stomach and Intestine as far as the Splenic Flexure. Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers enter the abdomen in the *anterior (left)* and *posterior (right)*

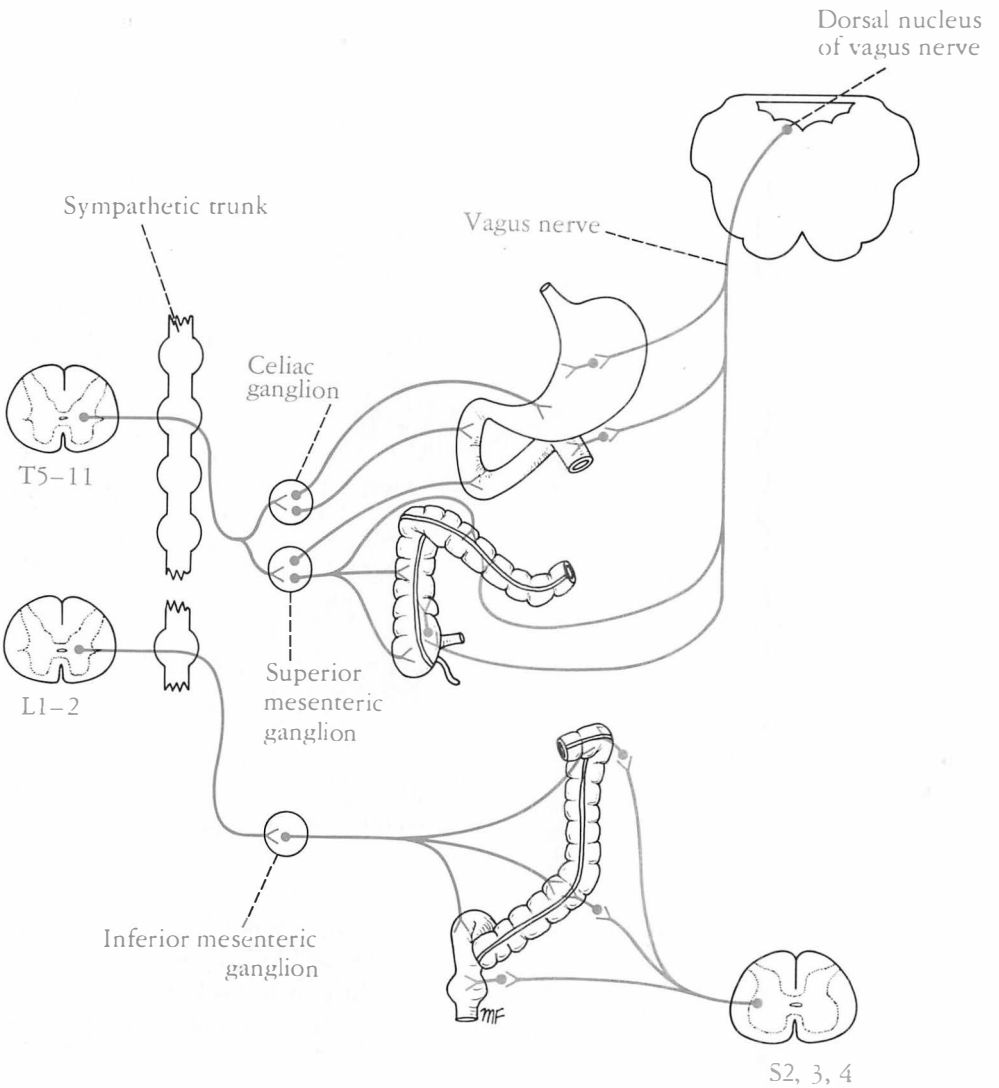


Fig. 25-11. The autonomic innervation of the gastrointestinal tract.

vagal trunks (Fig. 25-11). The fibers are distributed to many abdominal viscera and to the gastrointestinal tract from the stomach to the splenic flexure of the colon. The fibers that pass to the gastrointestinal tract terminate on postganglionic neurons in the *myenteric (Auerbach's)* and *submucosal (Meissner's) plexuses*. The postganglionic fibers supply the smooth muscle and glands. The parasympathetic nerves stimulate peristalsis and relax the sphincters; they also stimulate secretion.

Sympathetic preganglionic nerve fibers pass through the thoracic part of the sympathetic trunk and enter the *greater* and *lesser splanchnic nerves*. These descend into the abdomen and synapse with postganglionic neurons in the *celiac* and *superior mesenteric ganglia*. The postganglionic nerve fibers are distributed to the stomach and intestine as nerve plexuses around the branches of the celiac

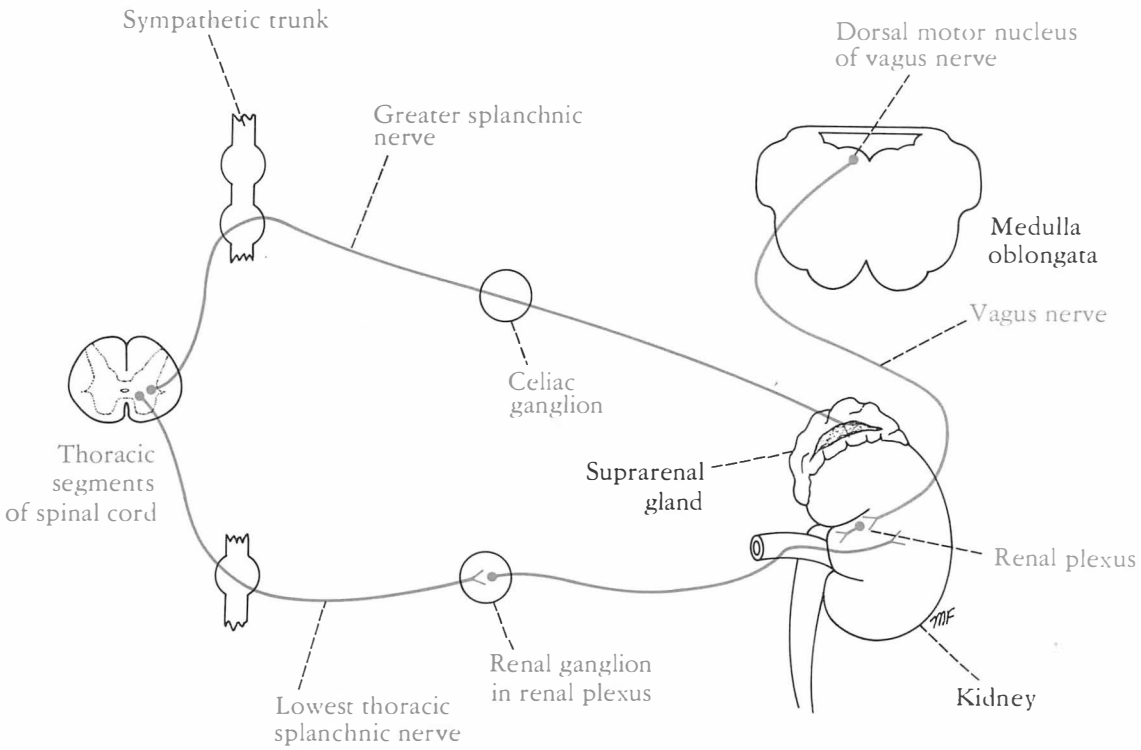


Fig. 25-12. The autonomic innervation of the kidney and suprarenal gland.

and superior mesenteric arteries. The sympathetic nerves inhibit peristalsis and cause contraction of the sphincters; they also inhibit secretion.

Descending Colon, Pelvic Colon, and Rectum. The preganglionic parasympathetic fibers originate in the gray matter of the spinal cord from the second to the fourth sacral segments (Fig. 25-11). The fibers pass through the *pelvic splanchnic nerves* and the nerve plexuses around the branches of the inferior mesenteric artery. They terminate on postganglionic neurons in the myenteric (Auerbach's) and submucosal (Meissner's) plexuses. The postganglionic fibers supply the smooth muscle and glands. The parasympathetic nerves stimulate peristalsis and secretion.

The sympathetic preganglionic nerve fibers pass through the lumbar part of the sympathetic trunk and synapse with postganglionic neurons in the *inferior mesenteric plexus*. Postganglionic fibers are distributed to the bowel as nerve plexuses around the branches of the inferior mesenteric arteries. The sympathetic nerves inhibit peristalsis and secretion.

Kidney

Preganglionic sympathetic fibers pass through the lower thoracic part of the sympathetic trunk and the lowest thoracic splanchnic nerve to join the *renal plexus* around the renal artery (Fig. 25-12). The preganglionic fibers synapse with postganglionic neurons in the renal plexus. The postganglionic fibers are distributed to the branches of the renal artery. The sympathetic nerves are vasoconstrictor to the renal arteries within the kidney.

Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers enter the renal plexus from the vagus. Here they synapse

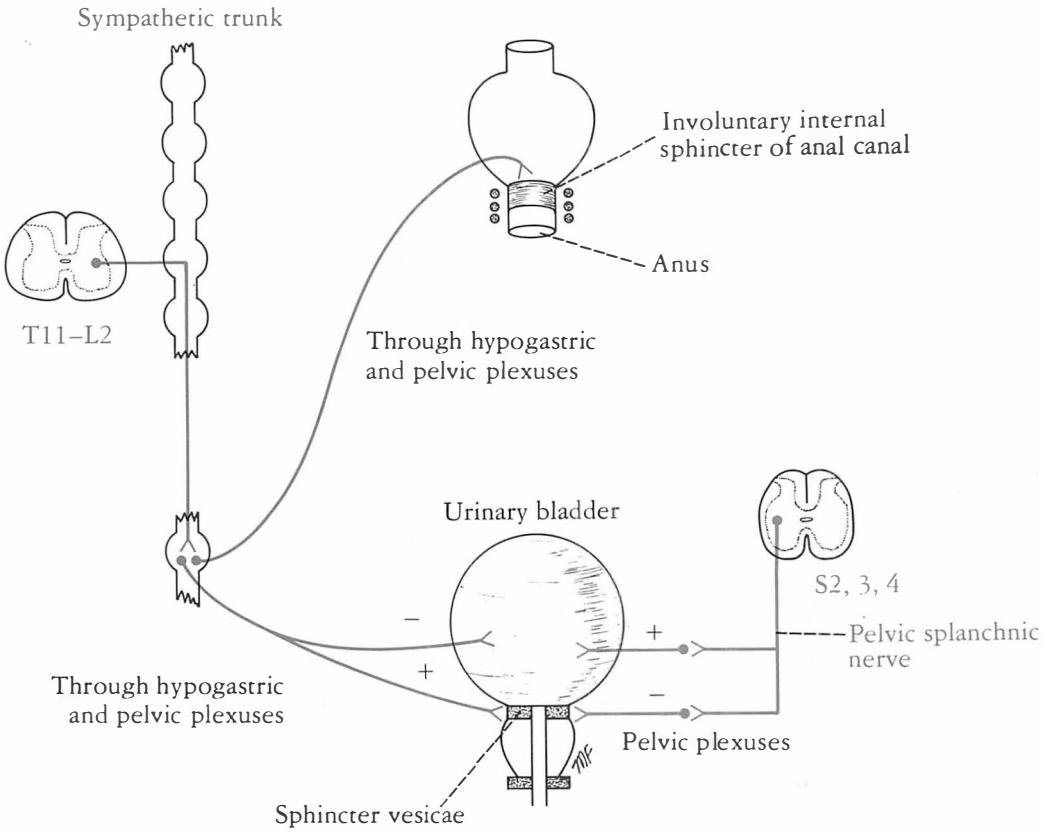


Fig. 25-13. The autonomic innervation of the sphincters of the anal canal and urinary bladder.

with postganglionic neurons whose fibers are distributed to the kidney along the branches of the renal artery. The parasympathetic nerves are thought to be vasodilator in action.

Medulla of Suprarenal Gland

Preganglionic sympathetic fibers descend to the gland in the *greater splanchnic nerve*, a branch of the thoracic part of the sympathetic trunk (Fig. 25-12). The nerve fibers terminate on the secretory cells of the medulla, which are comparable to postganglionic neurons. Acetylcholine is the transmitter substance between the nerve endings and the secretory cells, as at any other preganglionic endings. The sympathetic nerves stimulate the secretory cells of the medulla to increase the output of epinephrine and norepinephrine. There is no parasympathetic innervation of the medulla of the suprarenal gland.

Involuntary Internal Sphincter of the Anal Canal

The circular smooth muscle coat is thickened at the upper end of the anal canal to form the involuntary internal sphincter. The sphincter is innervated by postganglionic sympathetic fibers from the *pelvic plexuses* (Fig. 25-13). Each pelvic plexus receives sympathetic fibers from the *aortic plexus* and from the lumbar and pelvic parts of the sympathetic trunks. The sympathetic nerves cause the internal anal sphincter to contract.

Urinary Bladder

The muscular coat of the bladder is composed of smooth muscle, which at the bladder neck is

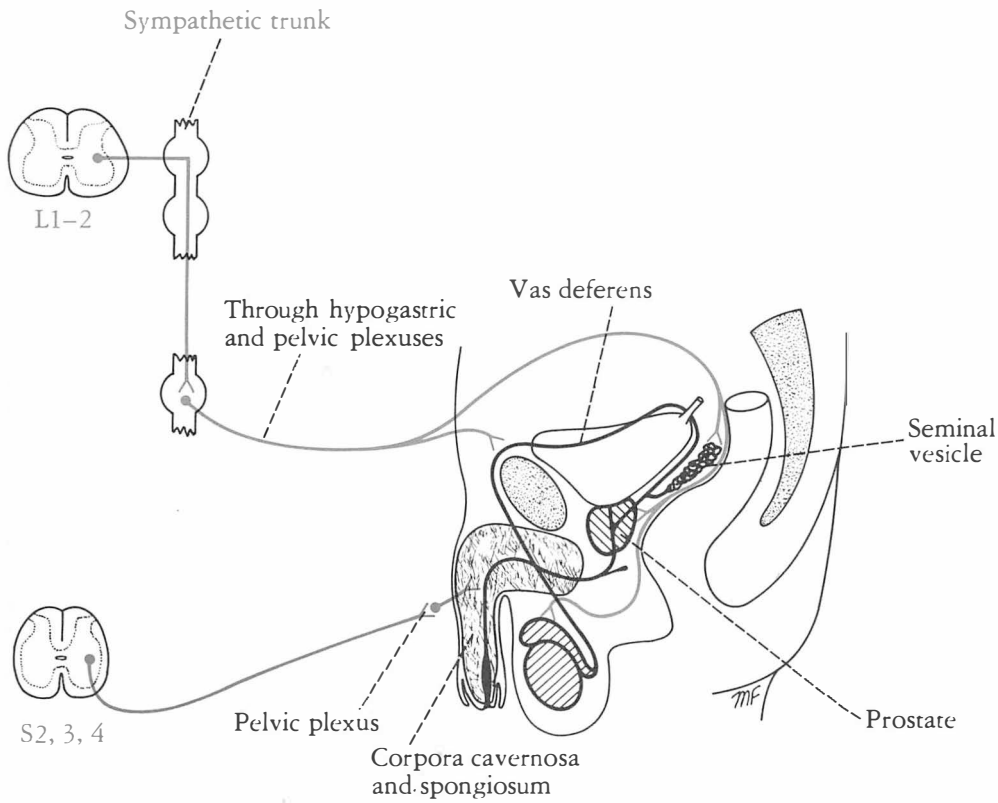


Fig. 25-14. The autonomic innervation of the male reproductive tract.

thickened to form the *sphincter vesicae*. The nerve supply of the smooth muscle is from the pelvic plexuses (Fig. 25-13). The sympathetic postganglionic fibers originate in the first and second lumbar ganglia of the sympathetic trunk and reach the pelvic plexuses through the hypogastric plexus. The parasympathetic preganglionic fibers arise as the pelvic splanchnic nerves from the second, third, and fourth sacral nerves; they pass through the pelvic plexuses to reach the bladder wall, where they synapse with postganglionic neurons.

The sympathetic nerves are believed to inhibit contraction of the smooth muscle of the bladder wall and stimulate the contraction of the sphincter vesicae. The parasympathetic nerves stimulate the contraction of the smooth muscle of the bladder wall and in some way inhibit the contraction of the sphincter vesicae.

Erection of the Penis and Clitoris

In erection, the genital *erectile tissue* becomes engorged with blood. The initial vascular engorgement is controlled by the parasympathetic part of the autonomic nervous system. The parasympathetic preganglionic fibers originate in the gray matter of the second, third, and fourth sacral segments of the spinal cord (Fig. 25-14). The fibers enter the pelvic plexuses and synapse on the postganglionic neurons. The postganglionic fibers join the internal pudendal arteries and are distributed along their branches, which enter the erectile tissue. The parasympathetic nerves cause vasodilatation of the arteries and greatly increase the blood flow to the erectile tissue.

Ejaculation

The nervous impulses that pass to the genital organs are thought to leave the spinal cord at the first and second lumbar segments in the preganglionic sympathetic fibers (Fig. 25-14). Many of these fibers synapse with postganglionic neurons in the first and second lumbar ganglia. Other fibers may synapse in ganglia in the lower lumbar or pelvic parts of the sympathetic trunks. The postganglionic fibers are then distributed to the *vas deferens*, the *seminal vesicles*, and the *prostate* through the *hypogastric* and *pelvic plexuses*. The sympathetic nerves stimulate the contractions of the smooth muscle in the walls of these structures and cause the spermatozoa, together with the secretions of the seminal vesicles and prostate, to be discharged into the urethra.

Arteries of the Upper Limb

The arteries of the upper limb are innervated by sympathetic nerves. The preganglionic fibers originate from cell bodies in the second to the eighth thoracic segments of the spinal cord (Fig. 25-15). They pass to the sympathetic trunk through white rami and ascend in the trunk to synapse in the middle cervical, inferior cervical, first thoracic, or stellate ganglia. The postganglionic fibers join the nerves that form the brachial plexus and are distributed to the arteries within the branches of the plexus. The sympathetic nerves cause vasoconstriction of cutaneous arteries and vasodilatation of arteries that supply skeletal muscle.

Arteries of the Lower Limb

The arteries of the lower limb are also innervated by sympathetic nerves (Fig. 25-15). The preganglionic fibers originate from cell bodies in the lower three thoracic and upper two or three lumbar segments of the spinal cord. The preganglionic fibers pass to the lower thoracic and upper lumbar ganglia of the sympathetic trunk through white rami. The fibers synapse in the lumbar and sacral ganglia, and the postganglionic fibers reach the arteries through branches of the lumbar and sacral plexuses.

Some Important Physiological Reflexes Involving the Autonomic Nervous System

Visual Reflexes

DIRECT AND CONSENSUAL LIGHT REFLEXES. Afferent nervous impulses travel from the retina through the optic nerve, optic chiasma, and optic tract (see Fig. 22-3). A small number of fibers leave the optic tract and synapse on nerve cells in the *pretectal nucleus*, which lies close to the superior colliculus. The impulses are passed by axons of the pretectal nerve cells to the parasympathetic nuclei (Edinger-Westphal nuclei) of the oculomotor nerve on both sides. Here the fibers synapse and the parasympathetic nerves travel through the oculomotor nerve to the *ciliary ganglion* in the orbit. Finally, postganglionic parasympathetic fibers pass through the *short ciliary nerves* to the eyeball and the constrictor pupillae muscle of the iris. Both pupils constrict in the consensual light reflex, since the pretectal nucleus sends fibers to the parasympathetic nuclei on both sides of the midbrain.

ACCOMMODATION REFLEX. When the eyes are directed from a distant to a near object, contraction of the medial recti brings about convergence of the ocular axes, the lens thickens to increase its refractive power by contraction of the ciliary muscle, and the pupils constrict to restrict the light waves to the thickest central part of the lens. The afferent impulses travel through the optic nerve, the optic chiasma, the optic tract, the lateral geniculate body, and the optic radiation to the visual cortex (see Fig. 22-3). The latter is connected to the eyefield of the frontal cortex. From here, cortical fibers descend through the internal capsule to the oculomotor nuclei in the midbrain. The oculomotor nerve travels to the medial recti muscles. Some of the descending cortical fibers synapse with the parasympathetic nuclei (Edinger-Westphal nuclei) of the oculomotor nerve on both sides. Here the fibers synapse and the parasympathetic preganglionic fibers travel through the oculomotor nerve to the *ciliary ganglion* in the orbit. Finally, postganglionic parasym-

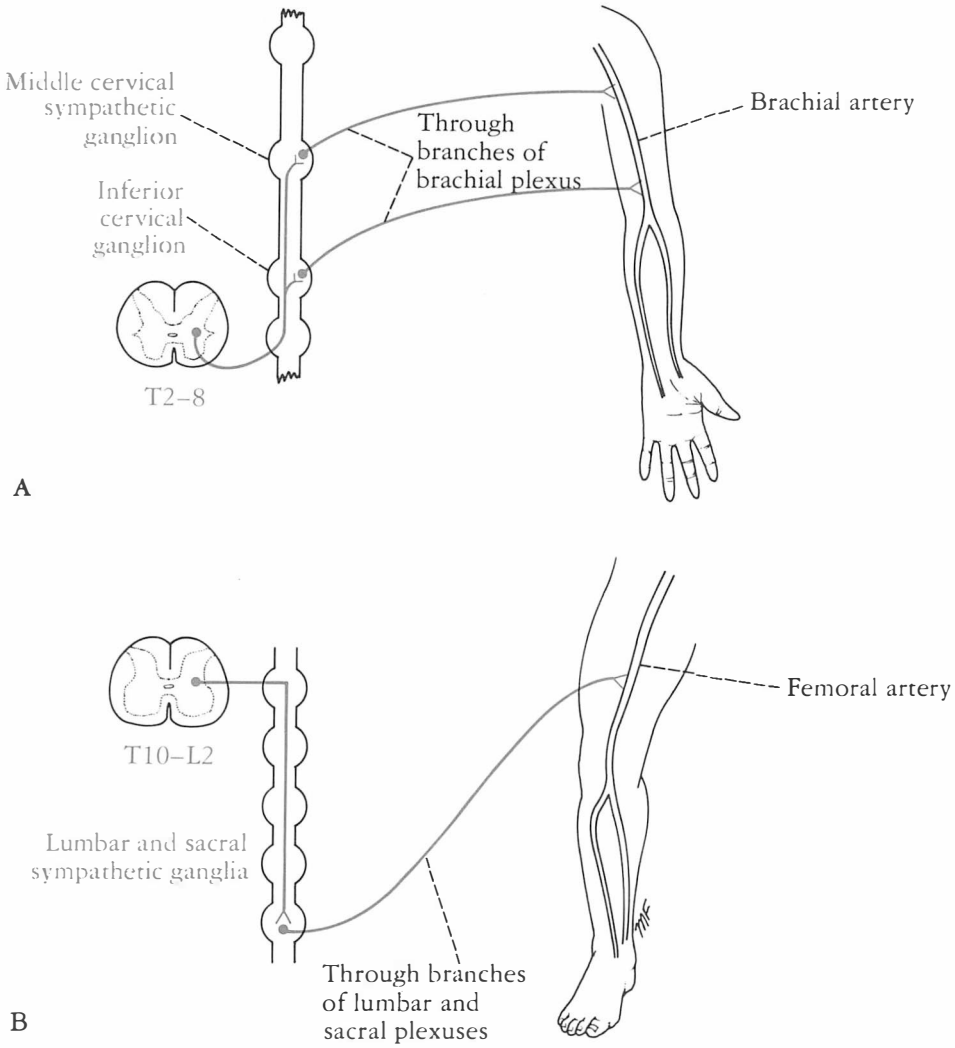


Fig. 25-15. The sympathetic innervation of the arteries of:
A. The upper limb.
B. The lower limb.

pathetic fibers pass through the *short ciliary nerves* to the ciliary muscle and the constrictor pupillae muscle of the iris.

CARDIOVASCULAR REFLEXES. The *carotid sinus* and the *aortic arch* serve as baroreceptors. As the blood pressure rises; nerve endings situated in the walls of these vessels are stimulated. The afferent fibers from the carotid sinus ascend in the glossopharyngeal nerve and terminate in the *nucleus solitarius* (see Figs. 22-15 and 22-16). The afferent fibers from the aortic arch ascend in the vagus nerve. Connector neurons in the medulla oblongata activate the parasympathetic nucleus (dorsal nucleus) of the vagus, which slows the heart rate. At the same time, reticulospinal fibers descend to the spinal cord and inhibit the preganglionic sympathetic outflow to the heart and cutaneous arterioles. The combined effect of stimulation of the

parasympathetic action on the heart and inhibition of the sympathetic action on the heart and peripheral blood vessels reduces the rate and force of contraction of the heart and reduces the peripheral resistance of the blood vessels. As a consequence of this effect, the blood pressure falls. The blood pressure of the individual is thus established by the afferent information received from the baroreceptors and the modulator of the autonomic nervous system, namely, the hypothalamus; the latter, in turn, can be influenced by other, higher centers in the central nervous system.

The *Bainbridge right atrial reflex* is another example of a cardiovascular reflex. The nerve endings are situated in the wall of the right atrium and in the walls of the venae cavae. These endings are stimulated by a rise of venous pressure. The afferent fibers ascend in the vagus to the medulla oblongata and terminate on the *nucleus of the tractus solitarius* (see Fig. 22-17). Connector neurons inhibit the parasympathetic nucleus (dorsal) of the vagus, and reticulospinal fibers stimulate the thoracic sympathetic outflow to the heart, resulting in cardiac acceleration.

Clinical Notes

From the foregoing description, it must now be clear to the reader that the autonomic nervous system is not an isolated part of the nervous system. It should be regarded as the part of the nervous system that, with the endocrine system, is particularly involved in maintaining the stability of the internal environment of the body. Its activities are modified by the hypothalamus, whose function is to integrate vast amounts of afferent information received from other areas of the nervous system, and to translate changing hormonal levels of the bloodstream into appropriate nervous and hormonal activities.

Degeneration and Regeneration of Autonomic Nerves

The structural changes are identical to those found in other areas of the peripheral and central parts of the nervous system. Functional recoveries following sympathectomy operations can be explained only by the assumption either that the operative procedure was inadequate and nerve fibers were left intact or that alternative nervous pathways existed and were left undisturbed.

The denervation of viscera supplied by autonomic nerves is followed by their increased sensitivity to the agent that was previously the transmitter substance. One explanation is that following nerve section there may be an increase in the number of receptor sites on the postsynaptic membrane. Another possibility, which applies to endings where norepinephrine is the transmitter, is that the reuptake of the transmitter by the nerve terminal is interfered with in some way.

Diseases Involving the Autonomic Nervous System

Horner's Syndrome

This syndrome comprises: (1) constriction of the pupil, (2) drooping of the upper lid, and (3) enophthalmos, and is caused by an interruption of the sympathetic nerve supply to the orbit. The lesions responsible may occur in the brainstem or cervical part of the spinal cord, and interrupt the reticulospinal tracts descending from the hypothalamus to the sympathetic outflow in the lateral gray column of the first thoracic segment of the spinal cord. Such lesions include *multiple sclerosis* and *syringomyelia*. Traction on the stellate ganglion from a *cervical rib*, or involvement of the ganglion in a metastatic lesion, may interrupt the peripheral part of the sympathetic pathway.

Argyll-Robertson Pupil

This condition is characterized by a small pupil, which is of fixed size and does not react to light, but contracts with accommodation. It is usually due to a syphilitic lesion interrupting the fibers that run from the pretectal nucleus to the parasympathetic nuclei (Edinger-Westphal nuclei) of the oculomotor nerve on both sides. The fact that the pupil constricts with accommodation im-

plies that the connections between the parasympathetic nuclei and the constrictor pupillae muscle of the iris are intact.

Frey's Syndrome

Frey's syndrome is an interesting complication that sometimes follows penetrating wounds of the parotid gland. During the process of healing, the postganglionic parasympathetic secretomotor fibers traveling in the auriculotemporal nerve grow out and join the distal end of the great auricular nerve, which supplies the sweat glands of the overlying facial skin. By this means, a stimulus intended for saliva production instead produces sweat secretion.

Hirschsprung's Disease (Megacolon)

Hirschsprung's disease is a congenital condition in which there is a failure of development of the myenteric plexus (Auerbach's plexus) in the distal part of the colon. The involved part of the colon possesses no parasympathetic ganglion cells and peristalsis is absent. This effectively blocks the passage of feces and the proximal part of the colon becomes enormously distended.

Urinary Bladder following Spinal Cord Injuries

Injuries to the spinal cord are followed by disruption of the nervous control of micturition. The normal bladder is innervated as follows:

Sympathetic innervation is from the first and second lumbar segments of the spinal cord.

Parasympathetic innervation is from the second, third, and fourth sacral segments of the spinal cord.

Sensory nerve fibers enter the spinal cord at the above segments.

The *atonic bladder* occurs during the phase of spinal shock immediately following the injury and may last from a few days to several weeks. The bladder wall muscle is relaxed, the sphincter vesicae tightly contracted (loss of inhibition from higher levels), and the sphincter urethrae relaxed. The bladder becomes greatly distended and finally overflows. Depending on the level of the cord injury, the patient either will or will not be aware that the bladder is full.

The *automatic reflex bladder* occurs after the patient has recovered from spinal shock, provided that the cord lesion lies above the level of the parasympathetic outflow (S2, 3, and 4). This is the type of bladder normally found in infancy. The bladder fills and empties reflexly. Stretch receptors in the bladder wall are stimulated as the bladder fills, and the afferent impulses pass to the spinal cord (S2, 3, and 4). Efferent impulses pass down to the bladder muscle, which contracts; the sphincter vesicae and the urethral sphincter both relax. This simple reflex occurs every 1 to 4 hours.

The *autonomous bladder* is the condition that occurs if the sacral segment of the spinal cord is destroyed. The bladder is without any external reflex control. The bladder wall is flaccid, and the capacity of the bladder is greatly increased. It merely fills to capacity and overflows; continual dribbling is the result. The bladder may be partially emptied by manual compression of the lower part of the anterior abdominal wall, but infection of the urine and back pressure effects on the ureters and kidneys are inevitable.

Act of Defecation following Spinal Cord Injuries

The act of defecation involves a coordinated reflex that results in the emptying of the descending colon, pelvic colon, rectum, and anal canal. It is assisted by a rise in the intraabdominal pressure brought about by contraction of the muscles of the anterior abdominal wall. The involuntary internal sphincter of the anal canal normally is innervated by postganglionic sympathetic fibers from the pelvic plexuses and the voluntary external sphincter of the anal canal is innervated by the inferior rectal nerve. The desire to defecate is initiated by stimulation of the stretch receptors in the wall of the rectum.

Following severe spinal cord injuries the patient is not aware of rectal distention. Moreover, the parasympathetic influence on the peristaltic activ-

ity of the descending colon, pelvic colon, and rectum is lost. In addition, control over the abdominal musculature and sphincters of the anal canal may be severely impaired. The rectum, now an isolated structure, responds by contracting when the pressure within its lumen rises. This local reflex response is much more efficient if the sacral segments of the spinal cord are intact. At best, however, the force of the contractions of the rectal wall is small and constipation and impaction are the usual outcome. The treatment of patients with spinal cord injuries is to empty the rectum with biweekly enemas; the use of suppositories also may be helpful.

Erection and Ejaculation following Spinal Cord Injuries

As described previously, erection of the penis or clitoris is controlled by the parasympathetic nerves that originate from the second, third, and fourth sacral segments of the spinal cord. Bilateral damage to the reticulospinal tracts in the spinal cord above the second sacral segment of the spinal cord will result in loss of erection. Later, when the effects of spinal shock have disappeared, spontaneous or reflex erection may occur if the sacral segments of the spinal cord are intact.

Ejaculation is thought to be controlled by sympathetic nerves that originate in the first and second lumbar segments of the spinal cord. Ejaculation brings about a flow of seminal fluid into the prostatic urethra. The final ejection of the fluid from the penis is the result of the rhythmic contractions of the bulbospongiosus muscles, which compress the urethra. The bulbospongiosus muscles are innervated by the pudendal nerve (S2, 3, and 4). Discharge of the seminal fluid into the bladder is prevented by the contraction of the sphincter vesicae, which is innervated by the sympathetic nerves (L1 and 2). As in the case of erection, severe bilateral damage to the spinal cord results in loss of ejaculation. Later, reflex ejaculation may be possible in patients with spinal cord transections in the thoracic or cervical regions. Some individuals have a normal ejaculation without external emission and the seminal fluid passes into the bladder, owing to paralysis of the sphincter vesicae.

Sympathectomy as a Method of Treating Arterial Disease

Raynaud's Disease. This is a vasospastic disorder involving the digital arteries of the upper limb. The disorder is usually bilateral and an attack is provoked by exposure to cold. There is pallor or cyanosis of the fingers and severe pain. Gangrene of the tips of the fingers may occur. Cervicothoracic preganglionic sympathectomy is followed by arterial vasodilatation, with consequent increase in blood flow to the fingers.

Intermittent Claudication. This condition, which is common in men, is due to arterial occlusive disease of the leg. Ischemia of the muscles produces a cramplike pain on exercise. Lumbar preganglionic sympathectomy may be advocated as a form of treatment, in order to bring about vasodilatation and an increase in blood flow through the collateral circulation. Preganglionic sympathectomy is performed by removing the upper three lumbar ganglia and the intervening parts of the sympathetic trunk.

Hypertension. In the past severe essential hypertension was treated by bilateral thoracolumbar sympathectomy to reduce the vasomotor control over the peripheral resistance and thus lower the blood pressure. Today, chemical blocking agents of the sympathetic ganglia are used widely with great success and the resulting vasodilatation reduces the arterial blood pressure.

Referred Pain

Most viscera are innervated only by autonomic nerves. It therefore follows that visceral pain is conducted along afferent autonomic nerves. Visceral pain is diffuse and poorly localized, whereas somatic pain is intense and discretely localized. Visceral pain frequently is referred to skin areas that are innervated by the same segments of the spinal cord as the painful viscus. The explanation

for referred pain is not known. One theory is that the nerve fibers from the viscus and the dermatome ascend in the central nervous system along a common pathway and the cerebral cortex is incapable of distinguishing between the sites of origin. Another theory is that under normal conditions the viscus does not give rise to painful stimuli, whereas the skin area repeatedly receives noxious stimuli. Since both afferent fibers enter the spinal cord at the same segment, the brain interprets the information as coming from the skin rather than the viscus.

Inadequate blood supply to the myocardium (myocardial ischemia) results in the patient's experiencing severe pain over the middle of the sternum, often spreading to one or both arms, the root of the neck, and even the jaw. The pain is assumed to be caused by the accumulation of metabolites and by oxygen deficiency, which stimulate the sensory nerve endings in the myocardium. The afferent nerve fibers ascend to the central nervous system through the cardiac branches of the sympathetic trunk and enter the spinal cord through the posterior roots of the upper four thoracic nerves. Note that the cardiac pain is not felt in the heart, but is referred to the skin areas supplied by the corresponding spinal nerves. The skin areas supplied by the upper four intercostal nerves and by the intercostal brachial nerve (T2) are therefore affected. A certain amount of spread of nervous information must occur within the central nervous system, for the pain is sometimes felt in the neck and jaw.

Another common example of referred pain is found in the early stages of an acute appendicitis. Initially, visceral pain in the appendix is produced by distention of its lumen or spasm of its muscle. The afferent pain fibers enter the spinal cord at the level of the tenth thoracic segment, having ascended through the superior mesenteric plexus and the lesser splanchnic nerve. A vague referred pain is felt in the region of the umbilicus, which is innervated by the tenth intercostal nerve. Later, the pain shifts to the right iliac fossa, where the inflamed appendix irritates the parietal peritoneum, which is innervated by the twelfth thoracic and first lumbar spinal nerves. Here, the pain is precise, severe, and localized.

Causalgia

Causalgia is a painful condition of the arm or leg accompanied by trophic changes in the affected skin and nails. It commonly follows crushing or partial division of the median nerve in the arm or the tibial nerve in the leg. It is thought that the descending impulses in the sympathetic postganglionic fibers in some way evoke ascending impulses in the afferent pain fibers at the site of injury. In many instances sympathectomy has relieved the pain of causalgia.

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 500.

1. A 35-year-old man was getting off the back of a truck when it started to move. Having placed his feet on the ground, he grabbed a rail on the truck with his right hand and held on. The truck continued along the road for one block before it stopped. In the meantime, the man had been dragged along the road as he held onto the truck. He was seen in the emergency room in a state of shock, with cuts and abrasions to his legs. On careful examination of his right arm, the following muscles were found to be paralyzed: the flexor carpi ulnaris, the flexor digitorum profundus, the palmar and dorsal interossei, and the thenar and hypothenar muscles. There was also loss of sensation on the medial side of the arm, forearm, and hand. The deep tendon reflex for the biceps brachii was present but the triceps reflex was absent. It also was noted that the pupil of the right eye was constricted and that there was drooping of the right upper eyelid. The right eyeball seemed to be less prominent than the left. The skin of the right cheek felt warmer and drier and was redder

in color than the left cheek. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, can you explain the clinical findings?

2. A 3-year-old boy was taken to a pediatrician with a history since infancy of chronic constipation and abdominal distention. The child's mother said that the constipation was getting progressively worse. It was not responding to laxatives and she was finding it necessary to give him an enema once a week to relieve his abdominal distention. On physical examination, the child's abdomen was obviously distended and a doughlike mass could be palpated along the course of the descending colon in the left iliac fossa. Examination of the rectum showed it to be empty and not dilated. Following an enema and repeated colonic irrigation with saline solution, the patient was given a barium enema followed by a radiographic examination. The x-ray showed a grossly distended descending colon and an abrupt change in lumen diameter where the descending colon joined the pelvic colon. It was interesting to note that the child failed to empty the colon of the barium enema. Using your knowledge of the autonomic nerve supply to the colon, what is the diagnosis? How would you treat this patient?

3. A nervous 25-year-old woman attended her physician because she was experiencing attacks of painful discoloration of the fourth and fifth fingers of both hands. She said that her symptoms had started 2 years previously, during the winter, and affected first her right hand and in subsequent attacks, her left hand also. Initially, her fingers turned white on exposure to cold and then became deep blue in color. The color change was confined to the distal half of each finger and was accompanied by an aching pain. Holding her hands over a hot stove or going into a hot room was the only treatment that relieved the pain. As the pain disappeared, she said, her fingers became red and swollen. She told her physician that she had noticed that her fingers were moist with sweat during some of the attacks. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, make the diagnosis. What is the autonomic nerve supply to the blood vessels of the upper limb? How would you treat this patient?

4. An obese 45-year-old female with six children was examined by her physician because her symptoms were suggestive of gallbladder disease. She complained of having severe attacks of colicky pain beneath the right costal margin, which often radiated through to the back beneath the right scapula. The physician turned to a medical student and said, "Note that the patient complains of referred pain to the back." What did he mean by that statement? Explain the phenomenon of referred pain to the back and sometimes the right shoulder in gallbladder disease.

5. A patient with neurosyphilis was examined and it was noted that the pupil of her left eye was small and fixed and did not react to light, but contracted when the patient was asked to look at a near object. What is the innervation of the iris? Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, state where you believe the neurological lesion to be situated to account for these defects.

6. A 36-year-old man was admitted to the emergency room following a gunshot wound to the lower back. X-ray examination revealed that the bullet was lodged in the vertebral canal at the level of the third lumbar vertebra. A complete neurological examination revealed the symptoms and signs that indicate a complete lesion of the cauda equina. What is the autonomic nerve supply to the bladder? Is this patient going to have any interference with bladder function?

7. A professor of physiology, during the course of his lecture, repeatedly referred to the *sympathetic outflow* and the *parasympathetic outflow*. What is meant by these terms?

8. A 40-year-old black male was found, on routine medical examination, to have essential hypertension. His blood pressure readings were 180 systolic and 100 diastolic in mm of mercury. How would you treat this patient medically? What is the action of the various types of drugs that are commonly used in the treatment of hypertension?

9. What transmitter substances are liberated at the following nerve endings? (a) preganglionic sympathetic, (b) preganglionic parasympathetic, (c) postganglionic parasympathetic, (d) postganglionic sympathetic fibers to the heart muscle, and (e) postganglionic sympathetic fibers to the sweat glands of the hand.

10. What is meant by the terms *alpha* and *beta receptors* at sympathetic postganglionic nerve endings?

Additional Reading

Axelrod, J. The metabolism of catecholamines *in vivo* and *in vitro*. *Pharmacol. Rev.* 11:402, 1959.

Birks, R., and MacIntosh, F. C. Acetylcholine metabolism of a sympathetic ganglion. *Can. J. Biochem.* 39:787, 1961.

Bors, E., and Porter, R. W. Neurosurgical considerations in bladder dysfunction. *Urol. Int.* 25:114, 1970.

Eccles, J. C. *The Physiology of Synapses.* Berlin and Vienna: Springer, 1964.

Goodman, L. S., and Gilman, A. *The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics.* New York and London: Macmillan, 1965.

Hirsch, E. F., and Borghard-Erdle, A. M. The innervation of the human heart. *Arch. Pathol.* 71:384, 1961.

Kuntz, A. *The Autonomic Nervous System.* Philadelphia: Lea & Febiger, 1953.

Kuru, M. Nervous control of micturition. *Physiol. Rev.* 45:425, 1965.

Merritt, H., and Moore, M. The Argyll Robertson pupil. *Arch. Neurol. Psychiatry* 30:357, 1933.

Miller, N. E., et al. Learned modifications of autonomic functions: A review and some new data. *Circ. Res.* (Suppl. 1, Hypertension) 27, 1970.

Mitchell, G. A. G. *Anatomy of the Autonomic Nervous System.* Edinburgh: Livingstone, 1953.

Mitchell, G. A. G. *Cardiovascular Innervation.* Edinburgh: Livingstone, 1956.

Pick, J. *The Autonomic Nervous System: Morphological, Comparative, Clinical and Surgical Aspects.* Philadelphia: Lippincott, 1970.

Snell, R. S. The histochemical appearances of cholinesterase in the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion and the changes which occur after preganglionic nerve section. *J. Anat.* (Lond.) 92:408, 1958.

Snell, R. S. The histochemical appearances of cholinesterase in the parasympathetic nerves supplying the submandibular and sublingual salivary glands of the rat. *J. Anat.* (Lond.) 92:534, 1958.

Snell, R. S. *Clinical Anatomy for Medical Students.* Boston: Little, Brown, 1973.

White, J. C., Smithwick, R. H., and Simeone, F. A. *The Autonomic Nervous System: Anatomy, Physiology and Surgical Applications.* New York and London: Macmillan, 1952.

26
The Meninges of the Brain

The brain and spinal cord are surrounded by three membranes, or meninges: the dura mater, the arachnoid mater, and the pia mater.

Dura Mater of the Brain

The dura mater is conventionally described as two layers, the endosteal layer and the meningeal layer (Fig. 26-1). These are closely united except along certain lines, where they separate to form *venous sinuses*.

The *endosteal layer* is nothing more than the ordinary periosteum covering the inner surface of the skull bones. At the foramen magnum it does *not* become continuous with the dura mater of the spinal cord. Around the margins of all the foramina in the skull it becomes continuous with the *periosteum* on the outside of the skull bones. At the sutures, it is continuous with the *sutural ligaments* (Fig. 26-1). It is most strongly adherent to the bones over the base of the skull.

The *meningeal layer* is the dura mater proper. It is a dense, strong fibrous membrane covering the brain (Fig. 26-2) and is continuous through the foramen magnum with the dura mater of the spinal cord. It provides tubular sheaths for the cranial nerves as the latter pass through the foramina in the skull. Outside the skull, the sheaths fuse with the epineurium of the nerves (Fig. 26-2).

The meningeal layer sends inward four septa, which divide the cranial cavity into freely communicating spaces that lodge the subdivisions of the brain (see Figs. 26-1 and 26-3). The function of these septa is to restrict the rotatory displacement of the brain.

The *falx cerebri* is a sickle-shaped fold of dura mater that lies in the midline between the two cerebral hemispheres (see Figs. 26-1 and 26-3). Its narrow anterior end is attached to the internal frontal crest and the crista galli. Its broad posterior part blends in the midline with the upper surface of the *tentorium cerebelli*. The *superior sagittal sinus* runs in its upper fixed margin; the *inferior sagittal sinus* runs in its lower concave free margin; and the *straight sinus* runs along its attachment to the tentorium cerebelli.

The *tentorium cerebelli* is a crescent-shaped fold of dura mater that roofs over the posterior cranial fossa (see Figs. 26-1 and 26-4). It covers the upper surface of the cerebellum and supports the occipital lobes of the cerebral hemispheres. In the anterior edge there is a gap, the *tentorial notch,* for the passage of the midbrain (Fig. 26-4), which produces an inner free border and an outer attached or fixed border. The fixed border is attached to the posterior clinoid processes, the superior borders of the petrous bones, and the margins of the grooves for the transverse sinuses on the occipital bone. The free border runs forward at its two ends, crosses the attached border, and is affixed to the anterior clinoid process on each side. At the point where the two borders cross, the third and fourth cranial nerves pass forward to enter the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus (Fig. 26-4).

Close to the apex of the petrous part of the temporal bone, the lower layer of the tentorium is pouched forward beneath the superior petrosal sinus, to form a recess for the trigeminal nerve and the trigeminal ganglion.

The falx cerebri and the falx cerebelli are attached to the upper and lower surfaces of the tentorium, respectively. The straight sinus runs along its attachment to the falx cerebri; the superior petrosal sinus, along its attachment to the petrous bone; and the *transverse sinus*, along its attachment to the occipital bone (see Figs. 26-1 and 26-4).

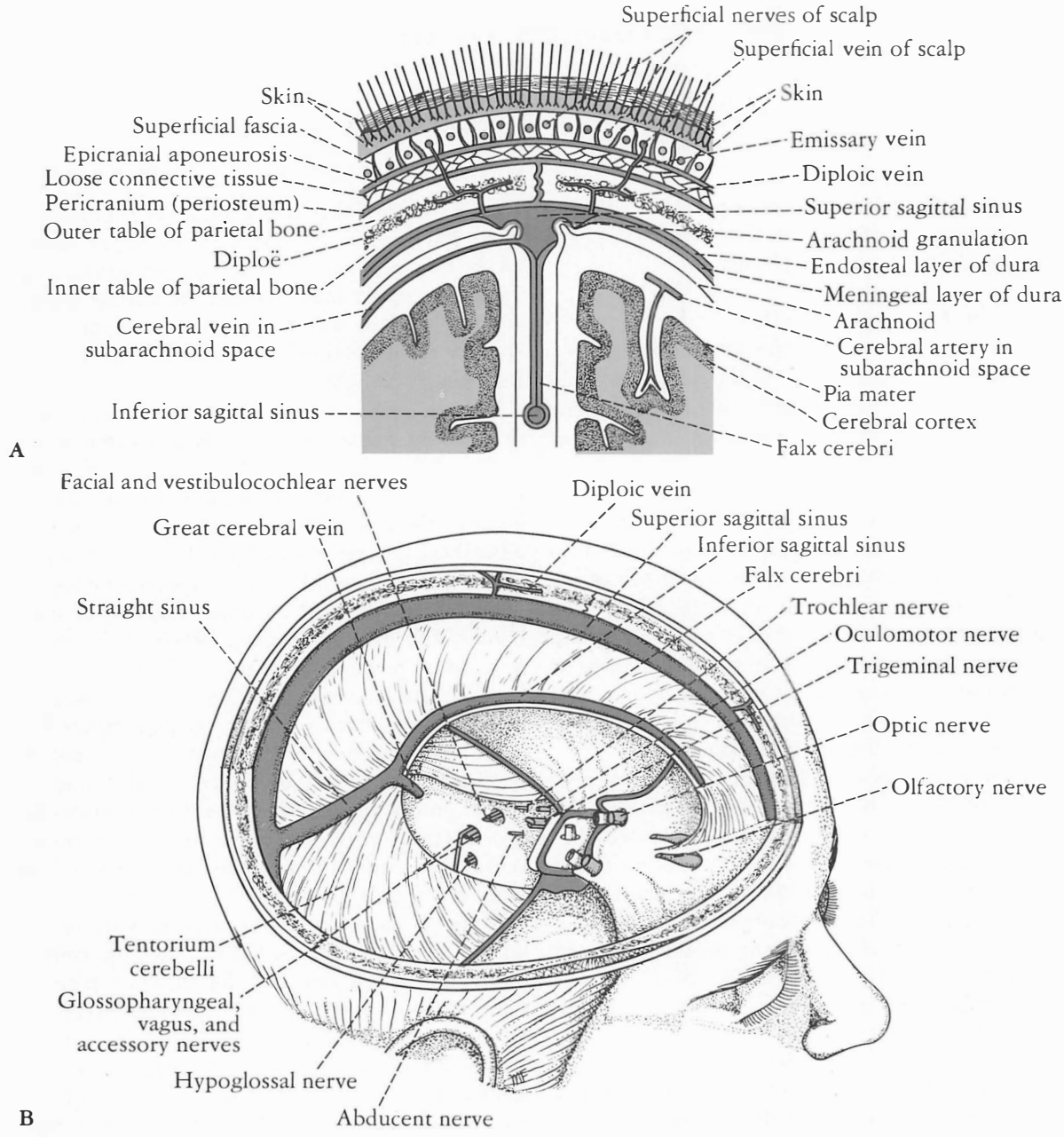


Fig. 26-1. A. Coronal section of upper part of head showing: layers of scalp, sagittal suture of skull, falx cerebri, venous sinuses, arachnoid granulations, emissary veins, and relation of cerebral blood vessels to subarachnoid space.
B. Interior of skull, showing dura mater and its contained venous sinuses.

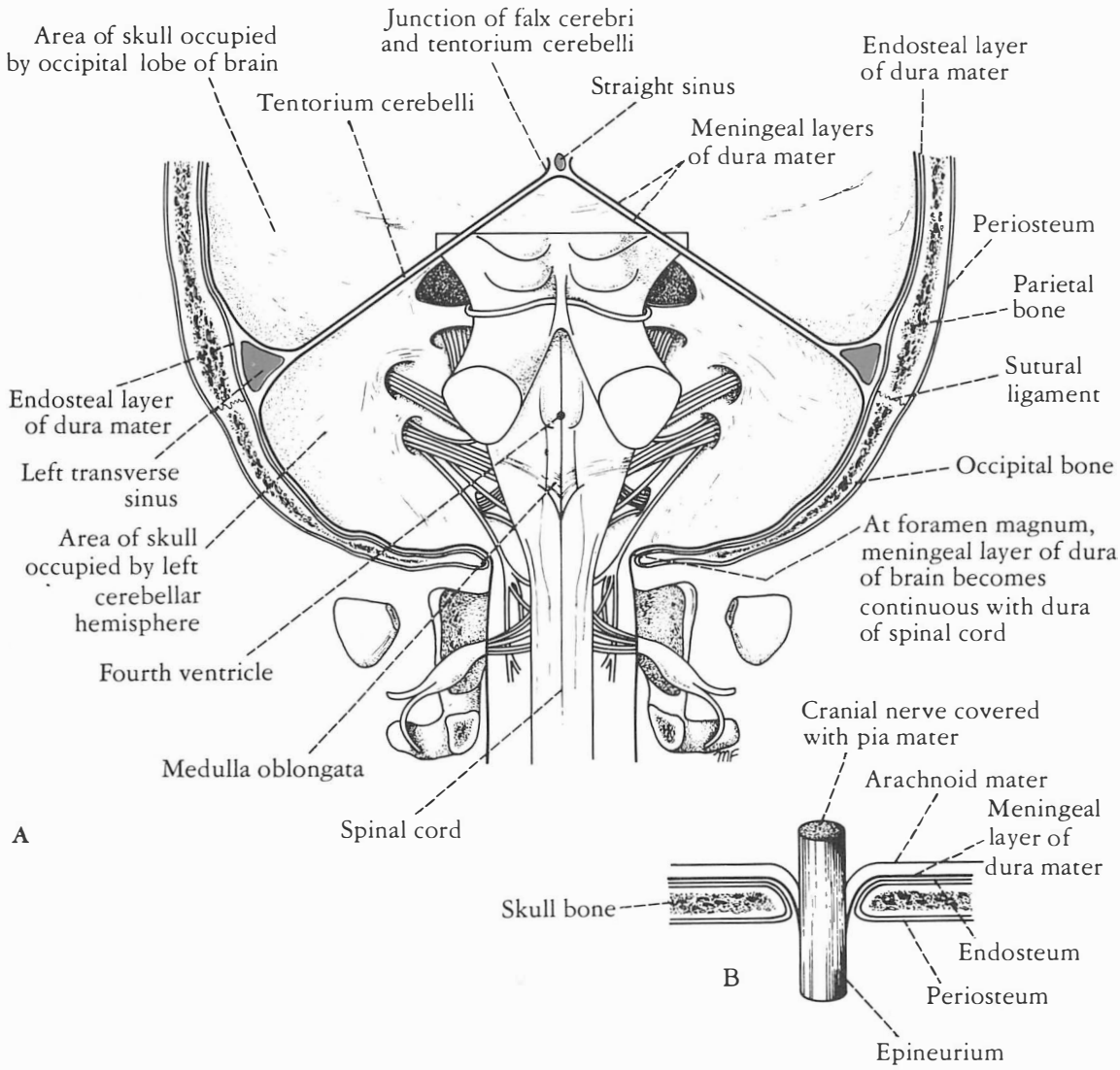


Fig. 26-2. A. Posterior view of interior of skull after removal of the occipital and parietal bones. Shows the arrangement of the endosteal and meningeal layers of the dura mater. The brainstem has been left in situ. B. The arrangement of the meninges as a cranial nerve passes through a foramen in the skull.

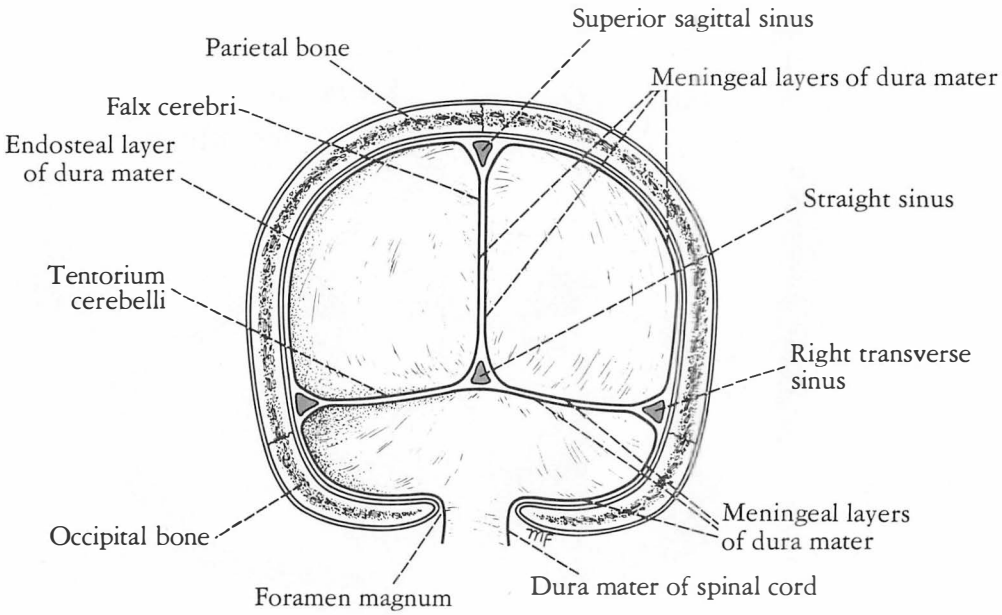


Fig. 26-3. The falx cerebri and the tentorium cerebelli. Note the continuity between the meningeal layer of dura mater within the skull and the dura mater of the spinal cord at the foramen magnum.

The *falx cerebelli,* a small, sickle-shaped fold of dura mater that is attached to the internal occipital crest, projects forward between the two cerebellar hemispheres. Its posterior fixed margin contains the *occipital sinus*.

The *diaphragma sellae* is a small, circular fold of dura mater that forms the roof for the sella turcica (Figs. 26-4 and 26-6). A small opening in its center allows passage of the stalk of the *hypophysis cerebri* (Fig. 26-6).

Dural Nerve Supply. This nerve supply is mainly derived from branches of the *trigeminal nerve*, the *upper three cervical nerves*, the *cervical part of the sympathetic trunk*, and the *vagus nerve*.

Dural Arterial Supply. Numerous arteries supply the dura mater from the *internal carotid*, *maxillary*, *ascending pharyngeal*, *occipital*, and *vertebral arteries*. From the clinical standpoint, the most important is the *middle meningeal artery*, which is commonly damaged in head injuries (Fig. 26-5).

The *middle meningeal artery* arises from the maxillary artery in the infratemporal fossa. It enters the cranial cavity through the *foramen spinosum* and then lies between the meningeal and endosteal layers of dura. The artery then runs forward and laterally in a groove on the upper surface of the squamous part of the temporal bone. The anterior (frontal) branch deeply grooves or tunnels the anterior-inferior angle of the parietal bone (Fig. 26-5), and its course corresponds roughly to the line of the underlying precentral gyrus of the brain. The posterior (parietal) branch curves backward and supplies the posterior part of the dura mater (Fig. 26-7).

The *meningeal veins* lie in the endosteal layer of dura (Fig. 26-5). The middle meningeal vein follows the branches of the middle meningeal artery and drains into the pterygoid venous plexus or the sphenoparietal sinus. The veins lie lateral to the arteries.

Dural Venous Sinuses

The venous sinuses of the cranial cavity are situated between the layers of the dura mater (see

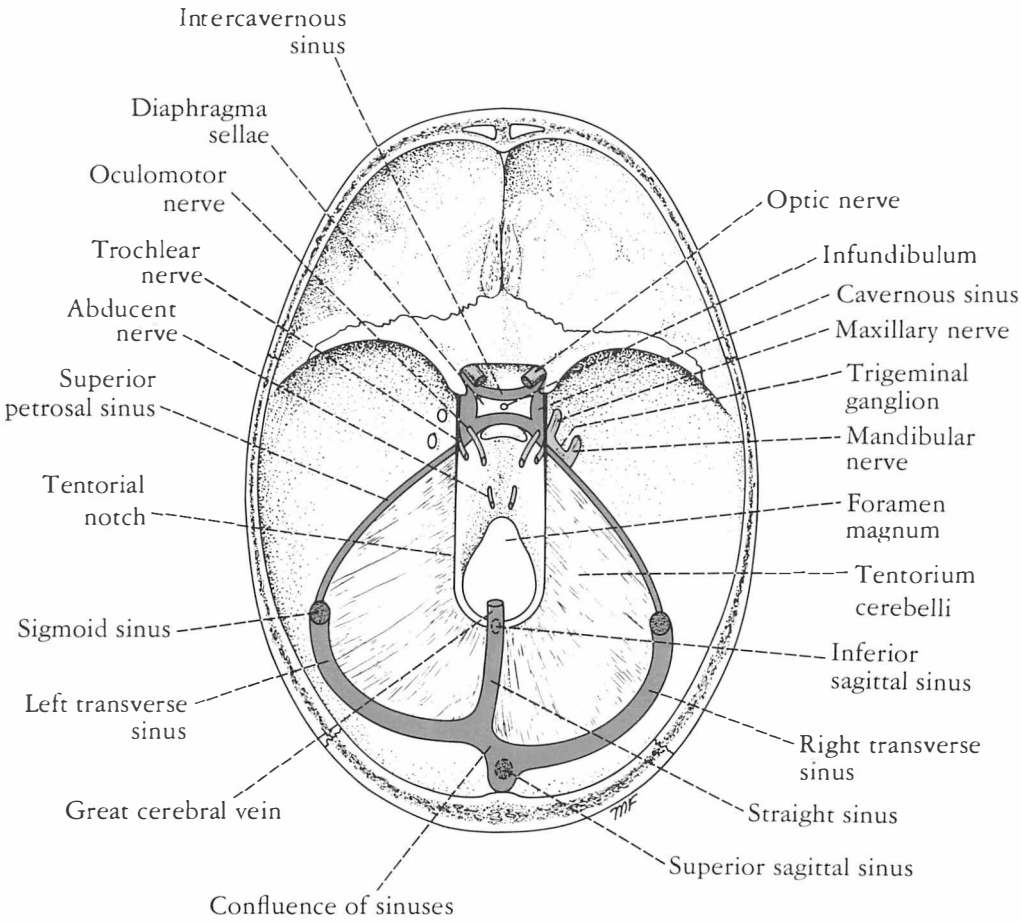


Fig. 26-4. Superior view of diaphragma sellae and tentorium cerebelli. Note the position of the cranial nerves and venous sinuses.

Figs. 26-1, 26-3, 26-4, 26-6, and 26-7). Their main function is to receive blood from the brain through the cerebral veins and the cerebrospinal fluid from the subarachnoid space through the *arachnoid villi* (see Figs. 17-1 and 17-10). The blood in the dural sinuses ultimately drains into the internal jugular veins in the neck. The dural sinuses are lined by endothelium, and their walls are devoid of muscular tissue. They contain no valves. *Emissary veins*, which are also valveless, connect the dural venous sinuses with the *diploic veins* of the skull and with the veins of the scalp (see Fig. 26-1).

The *superior sagittal sinus* occupies the upper fixed border of the falx cerebri (see Figs. 26-1 and 26-4). It begins anteriorly at the foramen cecum, where it occasionally receives a vein from the nasal cavity. It runs posteriorly, grooving the vault of the skull, and at the internal occipital protuberance it deviates to one or the other side (usually the right) and becomes continuous with the corresponding *transverse sinus*. The sinus communicates through small openings with two or three irregularly shaped *venous lacunae* on each side (Fig. 26-7). Numerous arachnoid villi and granulations project into the lacunae, which also receive the diploic and meningeal veins (see Fig. 26-1).

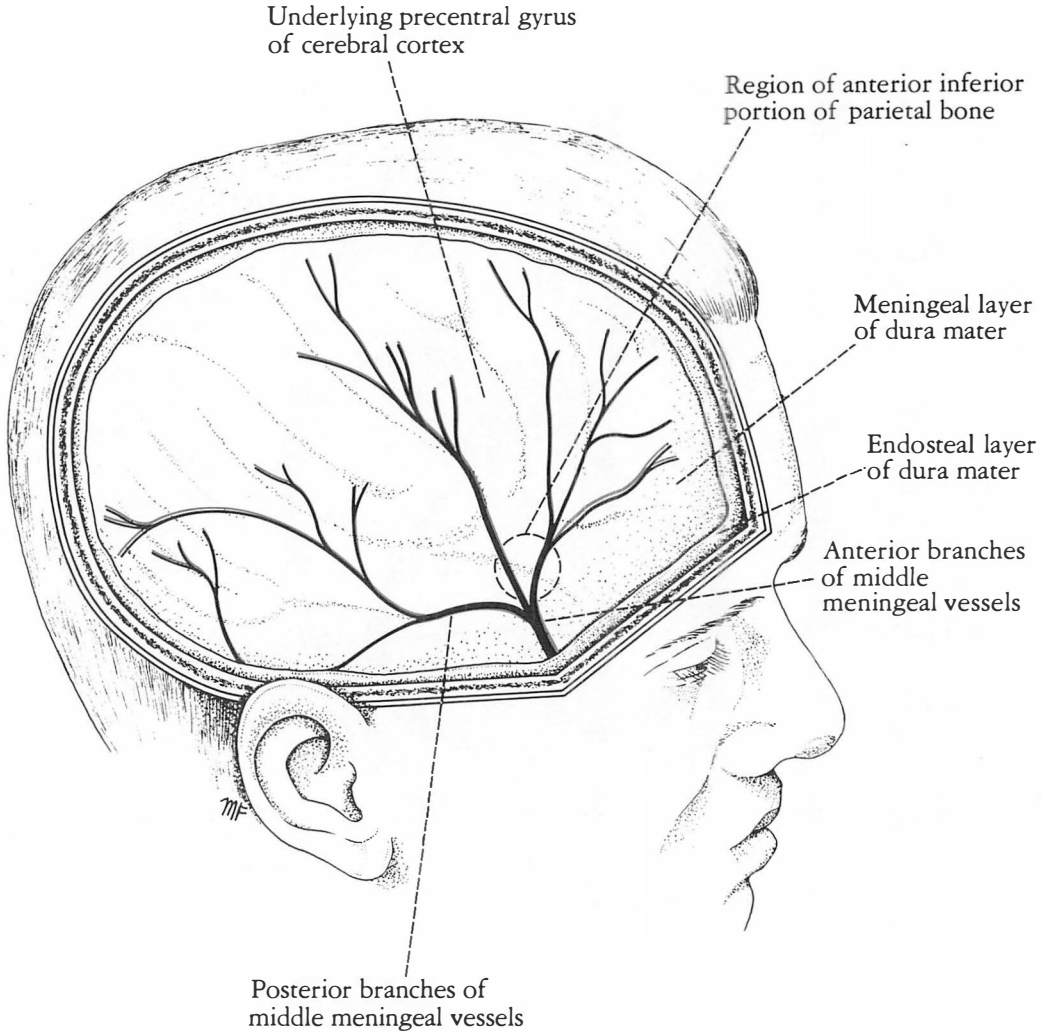


Fig. 26-5. Right side of head, showing relations of middle meningeal vessels to layers of dura mater and skull.

The superior sagittal sinus receives in its course the *superior cerebral veins* (Figs. 26-1 and 27-5). At the internal occipital protuberance it is dilated to form the *confluence of the sinuses* (Fig. 26-4). Here, the superior sagittal sinus usually becomes continuous with the right transverse sinus; it is connected to the opposite transverse sinus and receives the *occipital sinus*.

The *inferior sagittal sinus* occupies the free lower margin of the falx cerebri (see Fig. 26-1). It runs backward and joins the *great cerebral vein* at the free margin of the tentorium cerebelli, to form the straight sinus (see Figs. 26-1 and 26-4). It receives a few cerebral veins from the medial surface of the cerebral hemispheres.

The *straight sinus* occupies the line of junction of the falx cerebri with the tentorium cerebelli (see Figs. 26-1 and 26-4). It is formed by the union of the *inferior sagittal sinus* with the *great cerebral*

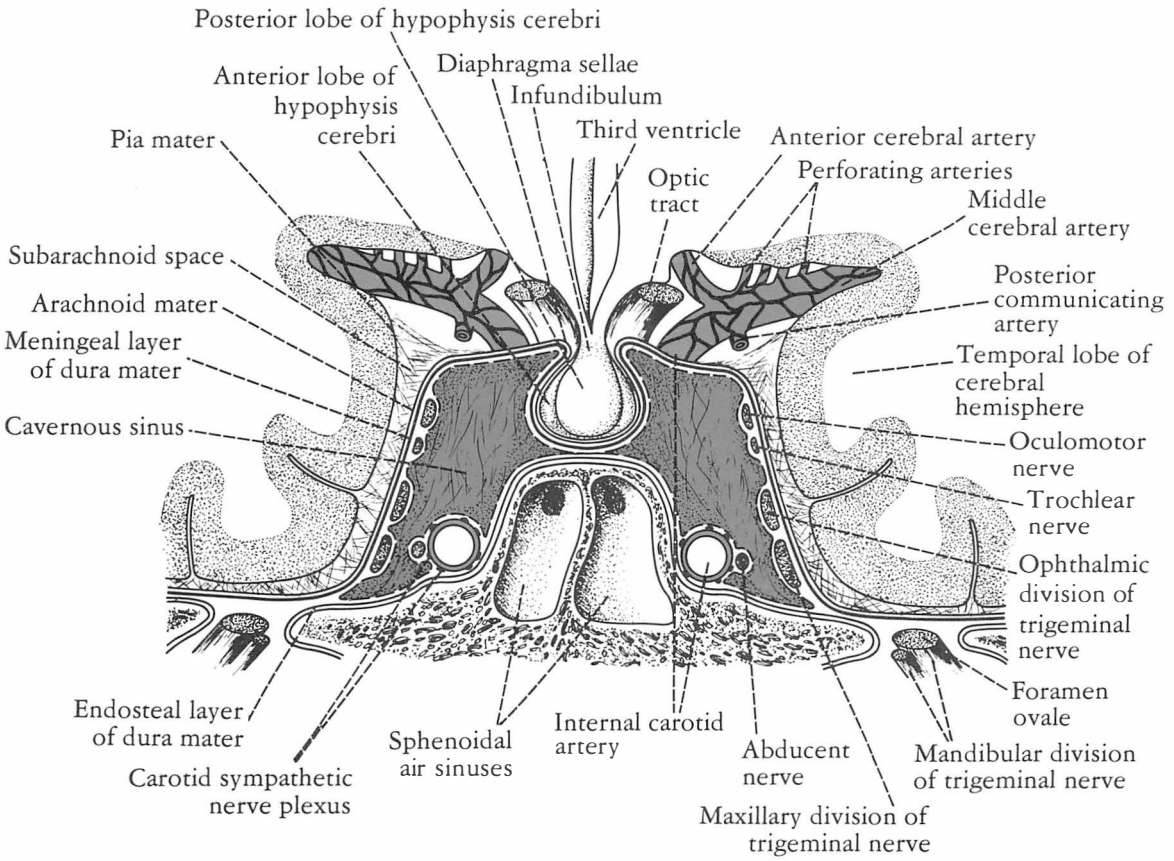


Fig. 26-6. Coronal section through body of sphenoid bone, showing hypophysis cerebri and cavernous sinuses. Note the position of the internal carotid artery and the cranial nerves.

vein. It ends by turning to the left (sometimes to the right) to form the *transverse sinus*.

The *transverse sinuses* are paired structures and they begin at the internal occipital protuberance (see Figs. 26-3 and 26-4). The right sinus is usually continuous with the superior sagittal sinus, and the left is continuous with the straight sinus. Each sinus occupies the attached margin of the tentorium cerebelli, grooving the occipital bone and the posteroinferior angle of the parietal bone. They receive the *superior petrosal sinuses*, the *inferior cerebral* and *cerebellar veins*, and the *diploic veins*. They end by turning downward as the *sigmoid sinuses* (Fig. 26-4).

The *sigmoid sinuses* are a direct continuation of the transverse sinuses. Each sinus turns downward and medially and grooves the mastoid part of the temporal bone (Fig. 26-4). It is here that the sinus lies posterior to the mastoid antrum. The sinus then turns forward and then inferiorly through the posterior part of the jugular foramen, to become continuous with the *superior bulb* of the *internal jugular vein*.

The *occipital sinus* is a small sinus occupying the attached margin of the falx cerebelli. It commences near the foramen magnum, where it communicates with the *vertebral veins* and drains into the *confluence of sinuses*.

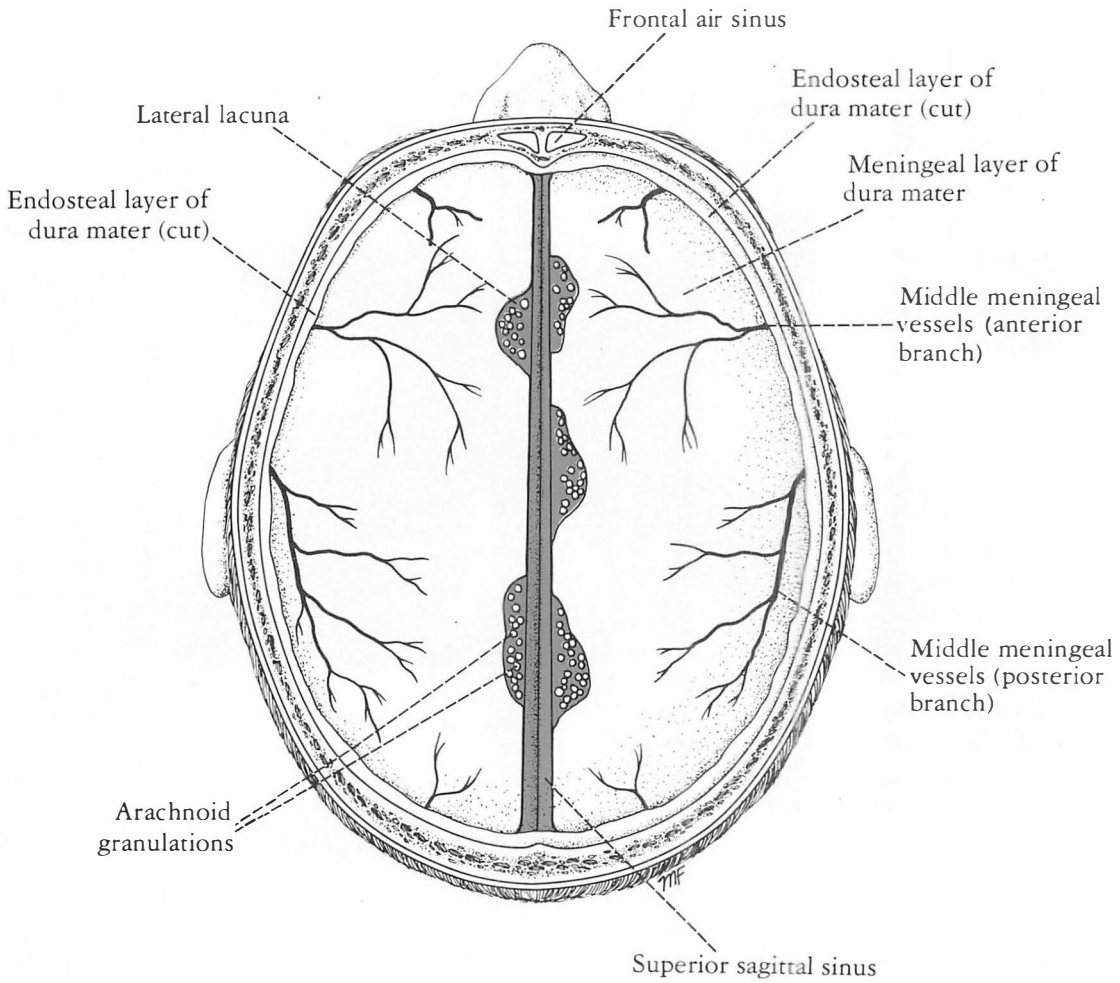


Fig. 26-7. Superior view of the head with the calvarium removed. The greater part of the endosteal layer of dura mater has been removed, exposing the underlying meningeal layer of dura and the interior of the superior sagittal venous sinus.

The *cavernous sinuses* are situated in the middle cranial fossa on each side of the body of the sphenoid bone (Fig. 26-6). Numerous trabeculae cross their interior, giving them a spongy appearance; hence the name. Each sinus extends from the superior orbital fissure in front to the apex of the petrous part of the temporal bone behind.

The *internal carotid artery*, surrounded by its *sympathetic nerve plexus*, runs forward through the sinus (Fig. 26-6). The *abducent nerve* also passes through the sinus. The internal carotid artery and the nerves are separated from the blood by an endothelial covering.

The *third and fourth cranial nerves,* and the *ophthalmic and maxillary divisions of the trigeminal nerve*, run forward in the lateral wall of the sinus (Fig. 26-6). They lie between the endothelial lining and the dura mater. The tributaries are the *superior and inferior ophthalmic veins,* the *inferior*

cerebral veins, the *sphenoparietal sinus,* and the *central vein of the retina.*

The sinus drains posteriorly into the *superior and inferior petrosal sinuses*, and inferiorly into the *pterygoid venous plexus.*

The two sinuses communicate with each other by means of the *anterior and posterior intercavernous sinuses*, which run in the diaphragma sellae anterior and posterior to the stalk of the hypophysis cerebri (Fig. 26-5). Each sinus has an important communication with the facial vein through the superior ophthalmic vein. (This is a route by which infection can travel from the facial skin to the cavernous sinus.)

The *superior and inferior petrosal sinuses* are small sinuses situated on the superior and inferior borders of the petrous part of the temporal bone on each side of the skull (Fig. 26-4). Each superior sinus drains the cavernous sinus into the transverse sinus, and each inferior sinus drains the cavernous sinus into the internal jugular vein.

Arachnoid Mater of the Brain

The arachnoid mater is a delicate, impermeable membrane covering the brain and lying between the pia mater internally and the dura mater externally (see Fig. 26-1). It is separated from the dura by a potential space, the *subdural space*, filled by a film of fluid; it is separated from the pia by the *subarachnoid space,* which is filled with *cerebrospinal fluid*. The outer and inner surfaces of the arachnoid are covered with flattened mesenchymal epithelium.

The arachnoid bridges over the sulci on the surface of the brain, and in certain situations the arachnoid and pia are widely separated to form the *subarachnoid cisternae*. The *cisterna cerebellomedullaris* lies between the inferior surface of the cerebellum and the roof of the fourth ventricle. The *cisterna interpeduncularis* lies between the two cerebral peduncles. All the cisternae are in free communication with one another and with the remainder of the subarachnoid space.

In certain areas, the arachnoid projects into the venous sinuses to form *arachnoid villi*. The arachnoid villi are most numerous along the superior sagittal sinus. Aggregations of arachnoid villi are referred to as *arachnoid granulations* (Fig. 26-7). Arachnoid villi serve as sites where the cerebrospinal fluid diffuses into the bloodstream (see page 292).

The arachnoid is connected to the pia mater across the fluid-filled subarachnoid space by delicate strands of fibrous tissue.

It is important to remember that structures passing to and from the brain to the skull or its foramina must pass through the subarachnoid space. All the cerebral arteries and veins lie in the space, as do the cranial nerves (see Figs. 26-1 and 26-6). The arachnoid fuses with the epineurium of the nerves at their point of exit from the skull (see Fig. 26-2B). In the case of the *optic nerve,* the arachnoid forms a sheath for the nerve, which extends into the orbital cavity through the optic canal and fuses with the sclera of the eyeball (Fig. 26-8). Thus, the subarachnoid space extends around the optic nerve as far as the eyeball.

The *cerebrospinal fluid* is produced by the *choroid plexuses* within the lateral, third, and fourth ventricles of the brain. It escapes from the ventricular system of the brain through the three foramina in the roof of the fourth ventricle and so enters the subarachnoid space. It now circulates both upward over the surfaces of the cerebral hemispheres and downward around the spinal cord. The spinal subarachnoid space extends down as far as the *second sacral vertebra* (see page 288). Eventually, the fluid enters the bloodstream by passing into the arachnoid villi and diffusing through their walls.

In addition to removing waste products associated with neuronal activity, the cerebrospinal fluid provides a fluid medium in which the brain floats. This mechanism effectively protects the brain from trauma.

Pia Mater of the Brain

The pia mater is a vascular membrane covered by flattened mesothelial cells. It closely invests the brain, covering the gyri and descending into the deepest sulci (see Fig. 26-1). It extends out over

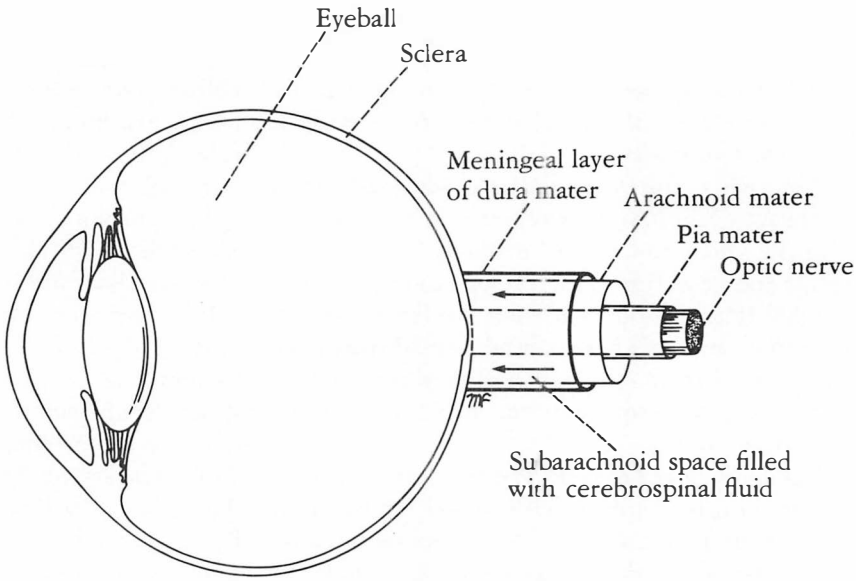


Fig. 26-8. Sagittal section of the eyeball, showing the attachment of the meninges to the sclera. Note the extension of the subarachnoid space around the optic nerve to the eyeball.

the cranial nerves and fuses with their epineurium. The cerebral arteries entering the substance of the brain carry a sheath of pia with them.

The pia mater forms the *tela choroidea* of the roof of the third and fourth ventricles of the brain, and it fuses with the ependyma to form the choroid plexuses in the lateral, third, and fourth ventricles of the brain.

Clinical Notes

Functional Significance of the Meninges

The brain and spinal cord have been shown to be enclosed within three concentric membranous sheaths. The outermost is thick, tough, and fibrous and is called the *dura mater*; the middle membrane is thin and delicate and is known as the *arachnoid mater*; the innermost is delicate and vascular and closely applied to the surfaces of the brain and spinal cord and is known as the *pia mater*.

The dura mater of the brain has an outer *endosteal layer*, which serves as the periosteum of the bones of the skull, and an inner *meningeal layer*, which by virtue of its toughness serves to protect the underlying nervous tissue. The meningeal layer also protects the cranial nerves by forming a sheath that covers each cranial nerve for a short distance as it passes through foramina in the skull. It is in the dura that the large venous sinuses are located. These convey venous blood from the brain and meninges to the internal jugular vein in the neck.

The sickle-shaped partition of dura called the *falx cerebri*, which is positioned vertically between the cerebral hemispheres, and the horizontal sheet, the *tentorium cerebelli*, which projects forward between the cerebrum and cerebellum, serve to limit excessive movements of the brain within the skull. The small vertical sheet, the falx cerebelli, extends forward in the cleft between the

cerebellar hemispheres and performs a similar function.

The arachnoid mater is a much thinner membrane than the dura and forms a loose covering for the brain. It bridges over the sulci and dips down into the deep fissure between the cerebral hemispheres. The interval between the arachnoid and pia mater is known as the *subarachnoid space* and is filled with *cerebrospinal fluid*. The cerebrospinal fluid gives buoyancy to the brain and protects the nervous tissue from mechanical forces applied to the skull. The *arachnoid granulations* are essentially small diverticula of the subarachnoid space; they have a covering of arachnoid, a thin layer of dura, and an outer covering of endothelium and project into the venous sinuses. They serve as sites where the cerebrospinal fluid diffuses into the bloodstream.

The pia mater is a vascular membrane that closely invests and supports the brain. A sheath of pia accompanies the branches of the cerebral arteries as they enter the substance of the brain.

Clinically, the dura mater is commonly called the *pachymeninx* and the arachnoid and pia mater, the *leptomeninges*.

Movements of the Brain in Relation to the Meninges in Head Injuries

When a moving patient's head is suddenly halted, the momentum of the brain causes it to travel onward until its movement is resisted by the skull or the strong septa of dura mater. In lateral movements, the lateral surface of one hemisphere hits the side of the skull and the medial surface of the opposite hemisphere hits the side of the falx cerebri. In superior movements, the superior surfaces of the cerebral hemispheres hit the vault of the skull and the superior surface of the corpus callosum hits the sharp free edge of the falx cerebri; the superior surface of the cerebellum presses against the inferior surface of the tentorium cerebelli.

Movements of the brain relative to the skull and dural septa may seriously injure the cranial nerves that are tethered as they pass through the various foramina. Furthermore, the fragile cortical veins that drain into the dural sinuses may be torn, resulting in severe *subdural or subarachnoid hemorrhage*. The tortuous arteries, with their strong walls, are rarely damaged.

Intracranial Hemorrhage and the Meninges

Extradural hemorrhage results from injuries to the meningeal arteries or veins. The most common artery to be damaged is the *anterior division of the middle meningeal artery*. A comparatively minor blow to the side of the head, resulting in fracture of the skull in the region of the anterior-inferior portion of the parietal bone, may sever the artery. Arterial or venous injury is especially liable to occur if the vessels enter a bony canal in this region. Bleeding occurs and strips up the meningeal layer of dura from the internal surface of the skull. The intracranial pressure rises, and the enlarging blood clot exerts local pressure on the underlying motor area in the precentral gyrus. Blood also passes laterally through the fracture line, to form a soft swelling under the temporalis muscle.

In order to stop the hemorrhage, the torn artery or vein must be ligated or plugged. The burr hole through the skull wall should be placed about 1½ inches (4 cm) above the midpoint of the zygomatic arch.

Subdural hemorrhage results from tearing of the *superior cerebral veins* at their point of entrance into the superior sagittal sinus. The cause is usually a blow on the front or the back of the head, causing excessive anteroposterior displacement of the brain within the skull.

This condition, which is much more common than middle meningeal hemorrhage, can be produced by a sudden minor blow. Once the vein is torn, blood under low pressure begins to accumulate in the potential space between the dura and the arachnoid. In about half the cases the condition is bilateral.

Acute and chronic forms of the clinical condition occur, depending on the speed of accumulation of fluid in the subdural space. For example, if the patient starts to vomit, the venous pressure will rise as the result of a rise in the intrathoracic pressure. Under these circumstances, the ex-

tradural blood clot will rapidly increase in size and produce acute symptoms. In the chronic form, over a course of several months, the small blood clot will attract fluid by osmosis, so that a hemorrhagic cyst is formed, which gradually expands and produces pressure symptoms. In both forms, the blood clot must be removed through burr holes in the skull.

Subarachnoid and cerebral hemorrhages are described on page 466.

Intracranial Hemorrhage in the Infant

Intracranial hemorrhage may occur during birth and may result from excessive molding of the head. Bleeding may occur from the cerebral veins or the venous sinuses. Excessive anteroposterior compression of the head often tears the anterior attachment of the falx cerebri from the tentorium cerebelli. Bleeding then takes place from the great cerebral veins, the straight sinus, or the inferior sagittal sinus.

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 502.

1. A visiting neurologist concluded his lecture on the "late effects of head injuries" by saying that the disabilities experienced by a patient are likely to be greater following damage to the dominant hemisphere than to the opposite hemisphere, and that the effect would be much greater in adults than in children. There is no question that this statement is true, but have you thought of the structures that exist within the skull that are clearly there to limit damage to the cerebral hemispheres and other parts of the brain? Which blood vessels are damaged more commonly, the cerebral arteries or the cerebral veins? Are cranial nerves likely to be damaged in head injuries? If so, which ones are damaged most commonly and what is the reason for their increased susceptibility?

2. While performing an autopsy on a patient who had died of a meningioma, the pathologist explained to a group of students that these tumors arise from the arachnoid mater. He said that they occur in those areas where the arachnoid pierces the dura to form the arachnoid villi that project into the dural venous sinuses. He then asked the students where they would expect to find meningiomas? Could you answer that question?

3. A 10-year-old girl was admitted to hospital for surgical correction of medial strabismus of the right eye. Twenty-four hours after the successful completion of the operation it was noted that her right eyeball was projecting forward excessively (proptosis) and the conjunctiva of the right eye was inflamed. A watery, purulent discharge could be expressed from beneath the eyelids. The ophthalmologist was greatly concerned, because he did not want the complication of cavernous sinus thrombosis to occur. What is the connection between infection of the eye and cavernous sinus thrombosis? Do you think that cavernous sinus thrombosis is a serious condition?

4. A 41-year-old man was found, on examination, to have paralysis of the lateral rectus muscle of his left eye; the left pupil was dilated but reacted slowly to light, and there was some anesthesia of the skin over the left forehead. A carotid arteriogram revealed the presence of an aneurysm of the right internal carotid artery situated in the cavernous sinus. Using your knowledge of anatomy, can you explain the clinical findings on physical examination?

5. A 45-year-old woman was found on ophthalmoscopic examination to have edema of both optic discs (*bilateral papilledema*) and congestion of the retinal veins. The cause of the condition was found to be a rapidly growing intracranial tumor. Using your knowledge of anatomy, explain the papilledema. Why does the patient exhibit bilateral papilledema?

6. A pediatrician was observing a 6-year-old boy playing with his toys. He noted that the child had perfectly normal use of his arms but his legs were stiff and when he walked he tended to cross his legs and had a scissorlike gait. A diagnosis of cere-

bral diplegia secondary to birth injuries was made. Apparently the child was born prematurely and he was a breech presentation. Using your knowledge of anatomy, explain what happens to the fetal skull bones during delivery. Why are the dural venous sinuses likely to be damaged at birth? Why is cerebral hemorrhage more likely to occur in a premature baby with a malpresentation?

7. A 25-year-old woman was admitted to the emergency room unconscious. She had apparently been hit on the side of the head by a car while crossing the road. Within an hour, her state of unconsciousness deepened. On examination, she was found to have a large, doughlike swelling over the right temporalis muscle. She also had the signs of right-sided hemiplegia. Later, she developed a right-sided, fixed, dilated pupil. A lateral x-ray of the skull showed a fracture line across the groove for the anterior division of the right middle meningeal artery. Her coma deepened and she died 4 hours after the accident. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, make a diagnosis in this case. Explain the clinical findings. How could you account for the homolateral hemiplegia?

8. A 50-year-old woman visited her physician complaining of a severe headache of 3 days' duration. She said that the headache had started getting very severe about 1 hour after she had hit her head on the mantelpiece after bending down to poke the fire. She was admitted to the hospital for observation. Three hours later it was noticed that she was becoming mentally confused and also that she was developing a right-sided hemiplegia on the side of the body opposite the head injury. She had exaggeration of the deep reflexes and a positive Babinski response on the right side. Examination of the cerebrospinal fluid with a lumbar puncture showed a raised pressure with the presence of blood in the fluid. X-ray examination showed no fracture of the skull. A diagnosis of subdural hematoma was made. What exactly is a subdural hematoma?

Additional Reading

Snell, R. S. *Clinical Anatomy for Medical Students.* Boston: Little, Brown, 1973.

27
The Blood Supply of the Brain

Arteries of the Brain

The brain is supplied by the two internal carotid and the two vertebral arteries. The four arteries lie within the subarachnoid space and their branches anastomose on the inferior surface of the brain to form the *circulus arteriosus*.

Internal Carotid Artery

The internal carotid artery begins at the bifurcation of the common carotid artery (Fig. 27-1), where it usually possesses a localized dilatation, called the *carotid sinus*. It ascends the neck and perforates the base of the skull by passing through the carotid canal of the temporal bone. The artery then runs horizontally forward through the cavernous sinus and emerges on the medial side of the anterior clinoid process by perforating the dura mater. It now enters the subarachnoid space by piercing the arachnoid mater and turns posteriorly to the region of the anterior perforated substance of the brain at the medial end of the lateral cerebral sulcus. Here, it divides into the *anterior* and *middle cerebral arteries* (Figs. 27-1 and 27-2).

BRANCHES OF THE CEREBRAL PORTION OF THE INTERNAL CAROTID ARTERY

1. The *ophthalmic artery* arises as the internal carotid artery emerges from the cavernous sinus (Fig. 27-1). It enters the orbit through the optic canal below and lateral to the optic nerve. It supplies the eye and other orbital structures and its terminal branches supply the frontal area of the scalp, the ethmoid and frontal sinuses, and the dorsum of the nose.

2. The *posterior communicating artery* is a small vessel that originates from the internal carotid artery close to its terminal bifurcation (Figs. 27-1 and 27-2). The posterior communicating artery runs posteriorly above the oculomotor nerve to join the posterior cerebral artery, thus forming part of the *circulus arteriosus*.

3. The *choroidal artery*, a small branch, also originates from the internal carotid artery close to its terminal bifurcation. The choroidal artery passes posteriorly close to the optic tract, enters the inferior horn of the lateral ventricle, and ends in the choroid plexus. It gives off numerous small branches to surrounding structures, including the crus cerebri, the lateral geniculate body, the optic tract, and the internal capsule.

4. The *anterior cerebral artery* is the smaller terminal branch of the internal carotid artery (Fig. 27-2). It runs forward and medially superior to the optic nerve and enters the longitudinal fissure of the cerebrum. Here, it is joined to the anterior cerebral artery of the opposite side by the *anterior communicating artery*. It curves backward over the corpus callosum, and, finally, anastomoses with the posterior cerebral artery (Figs. 27-3 and 27-7). The *cortical branches* supply all the medial surface of the cerebral cortex as far back as the parieto-occipital sulcus (Fig. 27-3). They also supply a strip of cortex about 1 inch (2.5 cm) wide on the adjoining lateral surface. The anterior cerebral artery thus supplies the "leg area" of the precentral gyrus. A group of *central branches* pierce the anterior perforated substance and help to supply parts of the lentiform and caudate nuclei and the internal capsule.

5. The *middle cerebral artery*, the largest branch of the internal carotid, runs laterally in the lateral cerebral sulcus (Fig. 27-2). *Cortical branches* supply the entire lateral surface of the hemisphere, except for the narrow strip supplied by the anterior cerebral artery, the occipital pole, and the inferolateral surface of the hemisphere, which are

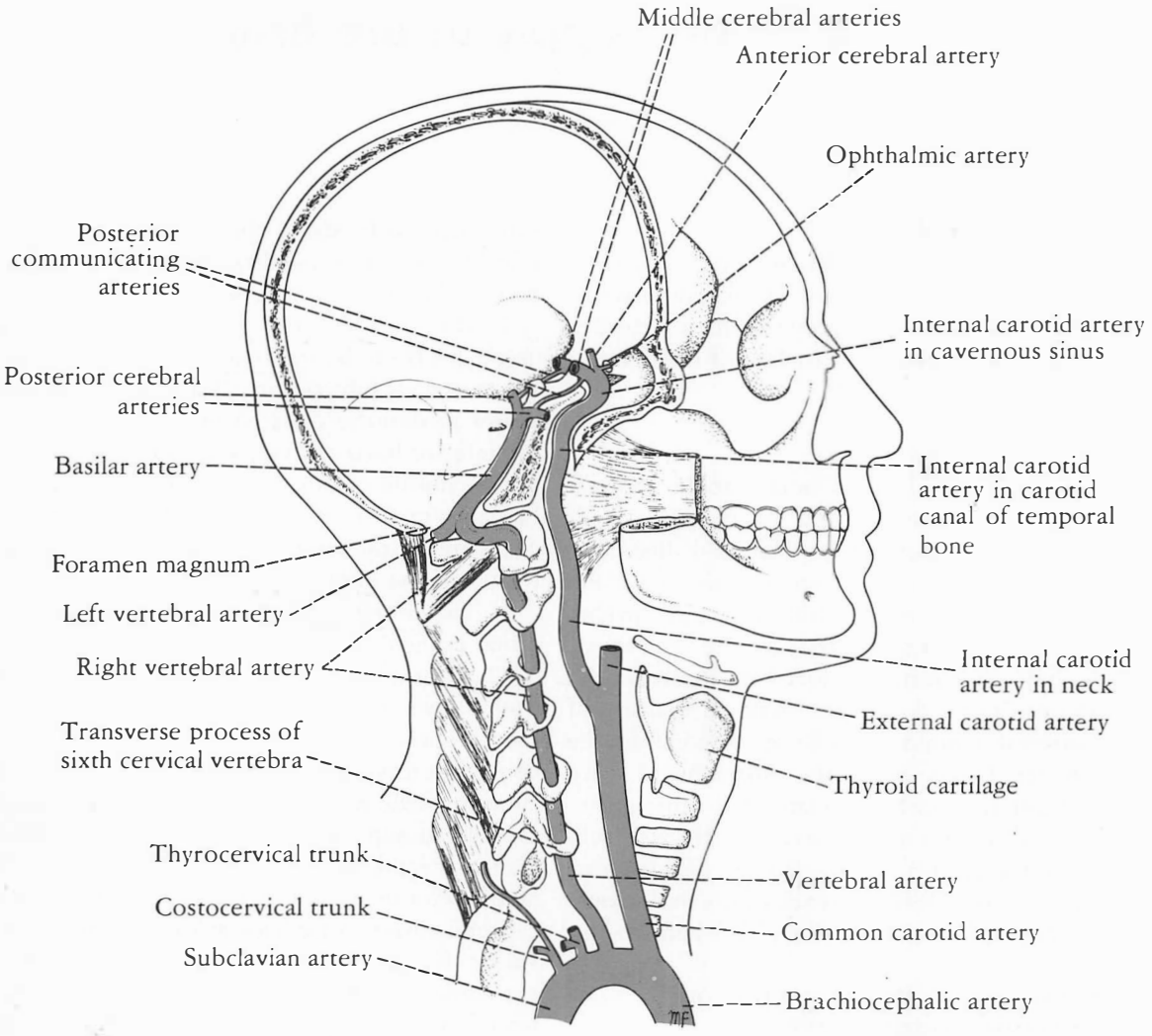


Fig. 27-1. The origin and courses of the internal carotid and vertebral arteries as they ascend the neck to enter the skull.

supplied by the posterior cerebral artery (Fig. 27-3). This artery thus supplies all the motor area except the "leg area." *Central branches* enter the anterior perforated substance and supply the lentiform and caudate nuclei and the internal capsule (Fig. 27-4).

Vertebral Artery

The vertebral artery, a branch of the first part of the subclavian artery, ascends the neck by passing through the foramina in the transverse processes of the upper six cervical vertebrae (see Fig. 27-1). It enters the skull through the foramen magnum and pierces the dura mater and arachnoid to enter the subarachnoid space. It then passes upward, forward, and medially on the medulla oblongata (see Fig. 27-2). At the lower border of the pons, it joins the vessel of the opposite side to form the *basilar artery*.

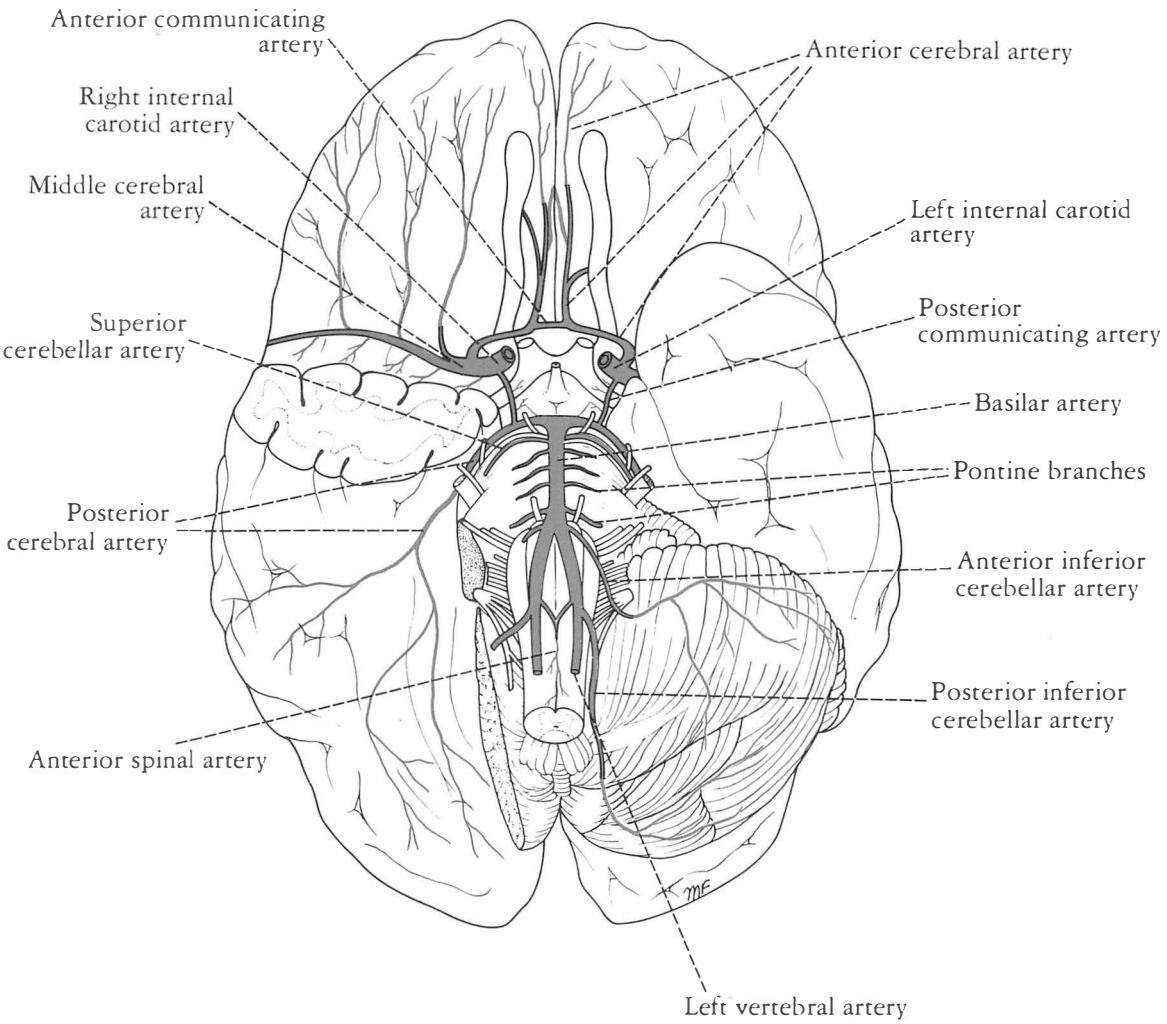


Fig. 27-2. The arteries on the inferior surface of the brain. Note the formation of the circulus arteriosus.

BRANCHES OF THE CRANIAL PORTION OF THE VERTEBRAL ARTERY

1. The *meningeal branches* are small and supply the bone and dura in the posterior cranial fossa.

2. The *posterior spinal artery* may arise from the vertebral artery or the posterior inferior cerebellar artery. It descends as two branches, one anterior to and one posterior to the posterior roots of the spinal nerves. The branches are reinforced by radicular arteries that enter the vertebral canal through the intervertebral foramina. For the detailed distribution of this artery, see page 161.

3. The *anterior spinal artery* is formed from a contributory branch from each vertebral artery near its termination (see Fig. 27-2). The single artery descends on the anterior surface of the medulla oblongata and spinal cord and is embedded in the pia mater along the anterior median fissure. The artery is reinforced by radicular arteries that enter the vertebral canal through the intervertebral foramina. For the detailed distribution of this artery, see page 161.

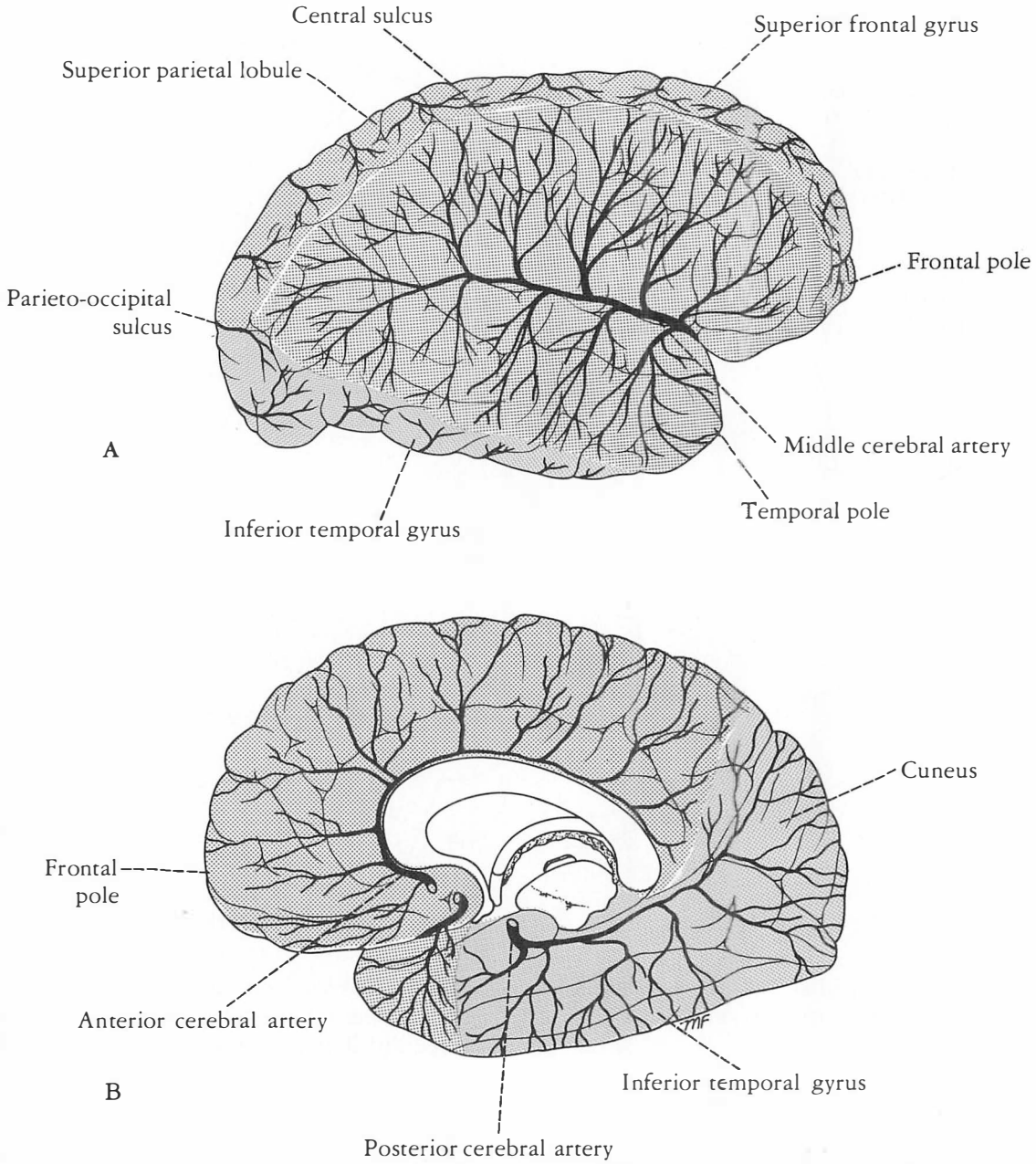


Fig. 27-3. Areas supplied by the cerebral arteries.
A. The lateral surface of the right cerebral hemisphere.
B. The medial surface of the right cerebral hemisphere. The area supplied by the anterior cerebral artery is colored blue, that supplied by the middle cerebral artery is red, and that supplied by the posterior cerebral artery is green.

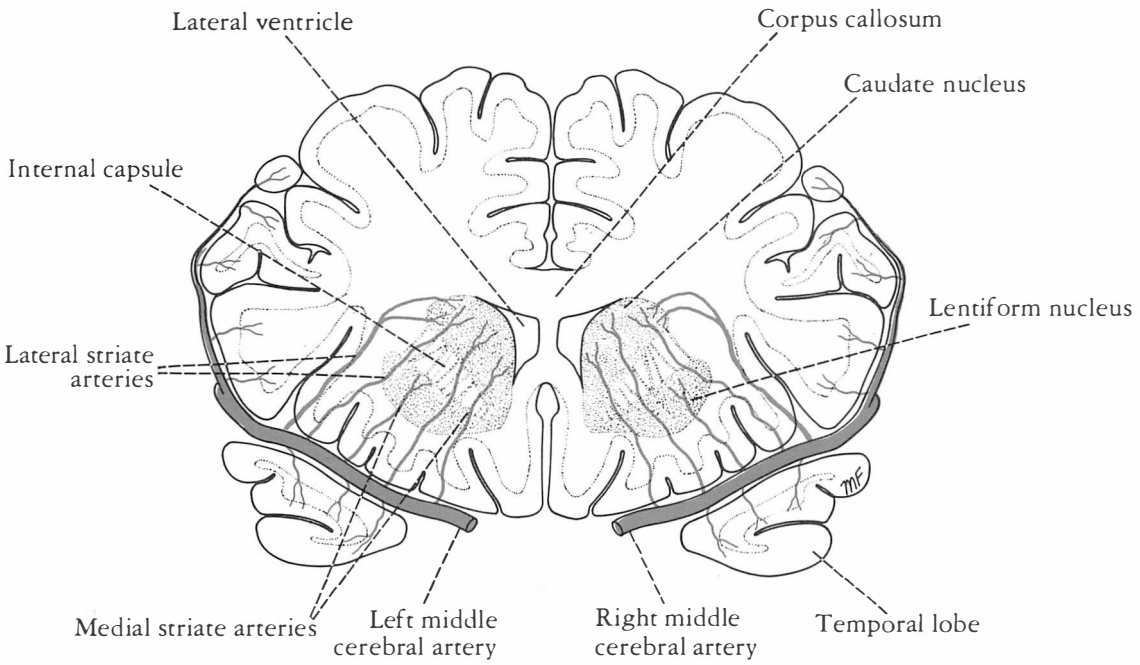


Fig. 27-4. Coronal section of cerebral hemispheres, showing arterial supply to deep cerebral structures from the middle cerebral artery.

4. The *posterior inferior cerebellar artery*, the largest branch of the vertebral artery, passes on an irregular course between the medulla and the cerebellum (see Figs. 27-2, 27-11, and 27-12). It supplies the inferior surface of the vermis, the central nuclei of the cerebellum, and the undersurface of the cerebellar hemisphere; it also supplies the medulla oblongata and the choroid plexus of the fourth ventricle.

5. The *medullary arteries* are very small branches that are distributed to the medulla oblongata.

Basilar Artery

The basilar artery, formed by the union of the two vertebral arteries (see Fig. 27-1), ascends in a groove on the anterior surface of the pons (see Figs. 27-2, 27-12, and 27-13). At the upper border of the pons, it divides into the two posterior cerebral arteries.

BRANCHES OF THE BASILAR ARTERY

1. The *pontine arteries* are numerous small vessels that enter the substance of the pons (see Figs. 27-2, 27-12, and 27-13).

2. The *labyrinthine artery* is a long, narrow artery that accompanies the facial and the vestibulocochlear nerves into the internal acoustic meatus and supplies the internal ear. It often arises as a branch of the anterior inferior cerebellar artery.

3. The *anterior inferior cerebellar artery* passes posteriorly and laterally and supplies the anterior and inferior parts of the cerebellum (see Figs. 27-2, 27-12, and 27-13). A few branches pass to the pons and the upper part of the medulla oblongata.

4. The *superior cerebellar artery* arises close to the termination of the basilar artery (see Figs. 27-2 and 27-10 through 27-13). It winds around the cerebral peduncle and supplies the superior surface of the cerebellum. It also supplies the pons, the pineal body, and the superior medullary velum.

5. The *posterior cerebral artery* curves laterally

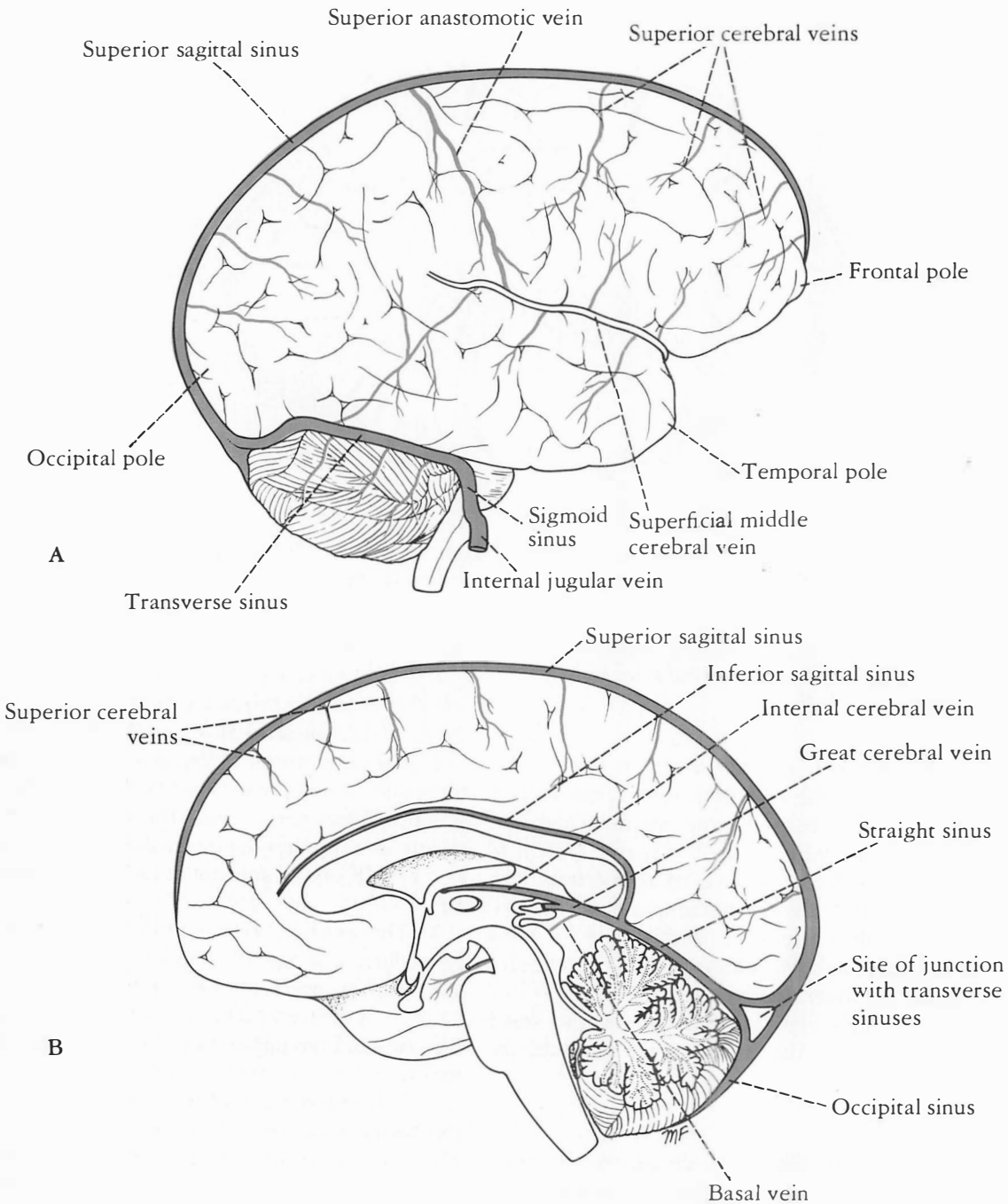


Fig. 27-5. The venous drainage of the right cerebral hemisphere.
A. Lateral surface.
B. Medial surface.

and backward around the midbrain and is joined by the posterior communicating branch of the internal carotid artery (see Figs. 27-1, 27-2, and 27-10 through 27-13). *Cortical branches* supply the inferolateral surface of the temporal lobe and the lateral and medial surfaces of the occipital lobe (Fig. 27-3). Thus the posterior cerebral artery supplies the visual cortex. *Central branches* pierce the brain substance and supply parts of the thalamus and the lentiform nucleus, and the midbrain, the pineal, and the medial geniculate bodies. A *choroidal branch* enters the inferior horn of the lateral ventricle and supplies the choroid plexus; it also supplies the choroid plexus of the third ventricle.

The *circulus arteriosus* lies in the interpeduncular fossa at the base of the brain. It is formed by the anastomosis between the two internal carotid arteries and the two vertebral arteries (see Fig. 27-2). The anterior communicating, anterior cerebral, internal carotid, posterior communicating, posterior cerebral, and basilar arteries all contribute to the circle. The circulus arteriosus allows blood that enters by either internal carotid or vertebral arteries to be distributed to any part of both cerebral hemispheres. Cortical and central branches arise from the circle and supply the brain substance.

Arteries to Specific Brain Areas

The *corpus striatum* and the *internal capsule* are supplied mainly by the medial and lateral striate central branches of the middle cerebral artery (Fig. 27-4); the central branches of the anterior cerebral artery supply the remainder of these structures.

The *thalamus* is supplied mainly by branches of the posterior communicating, basilar, and posterior cerebral arteries.

The *midbrain* is supplied by the posterior cerebral, superior cerebellar, and basilar arteries.

The *pons* is supplied by the basilar and the anterior, inferior, and superior cerebellar arteries.

The *medulla oblongata* is supplied by the vertebral, anterior and posterior spinal, posterior inferior cerebellar, and basilar arteries.

The *cerebellum* is supplied by the superior cerebellar, anterior inferior cerebellar, and posterior inferior cerebellar arteries.

Veins of the Brain

The veins of the brain have no muscular tissue in their very thin walls and they possess no valves. They emerge from the brain and lie in the subarachnoid space. They pierce the arachnoid mater and the meningeal layer of the dura and drain into the cranial venous sinuses (Fig. 27-5).

External Cerebral Veins

The *superior cerebral veins* pass upward over the lateral surface of the cerebral hemisphere and empty into the superior sagittal sinus (Fig. 27-5).

The *superficial middle cerebral vein* drains the lateral surface of the cerebral hemisphere. It runs inferiorly in the lateral sulcus and empties into the cavernous sinus (Fig. 27-5).

The *deep middle cerebral vein* drains the insula and is joined by the *anterior cerebral* and *striate veins* to form the *basal vein*. The basal vein ultimately joins the great cerebral vein, which in turn drains into the straight sinus (Fig. 27-5).

Internal Cerebral Veins

There are two internal cerebral veins and they are formed by the union of the *thalamostriate vein* and the *choroid vein* at the interventricular foramen. The two veins run posteriorly in the tela choroidea of the third ventricle and unite beneath the splenium of the corpus callosum to form the great cerebral vein, which empties into the straight sinus.

Veins of Specific Brain Areas

The *midbrain* is drained by veins that open into the basal or great cerebral veins.

The *pons* is drained by veins that open into the basal vein, cerebellar veins, or neighboring venous sinuses.

The *medulla oblongata* is drained by veins that open into the spinal veins and neighboring venous sinuses.

The *cerebellum* is drained by veins that empty into the great cerebral vein or adjacent venous sinuses.

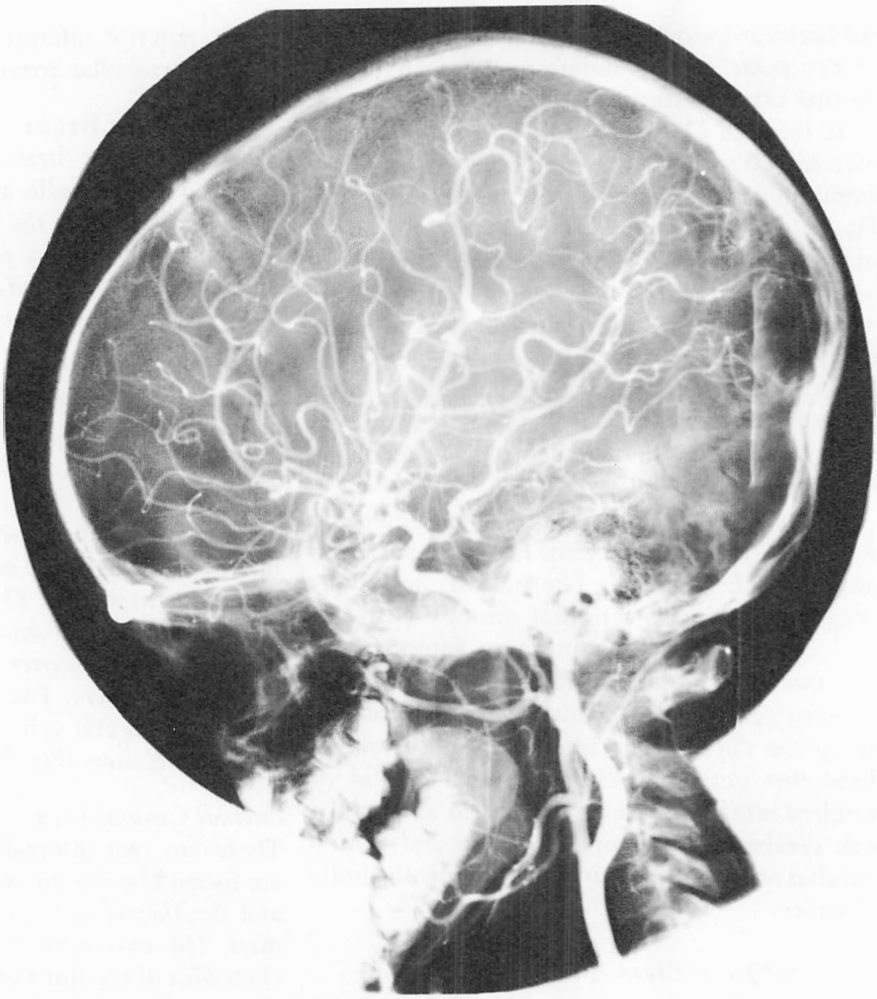


Fig. 27-6. Lateral internal carotid arteriogram. Male aged 20 years. (From R. S. Snell and A. C. Wyman, An Atlas of Normal Radiographic Anatomy. *Boston: Little, Brown, 1976.)*

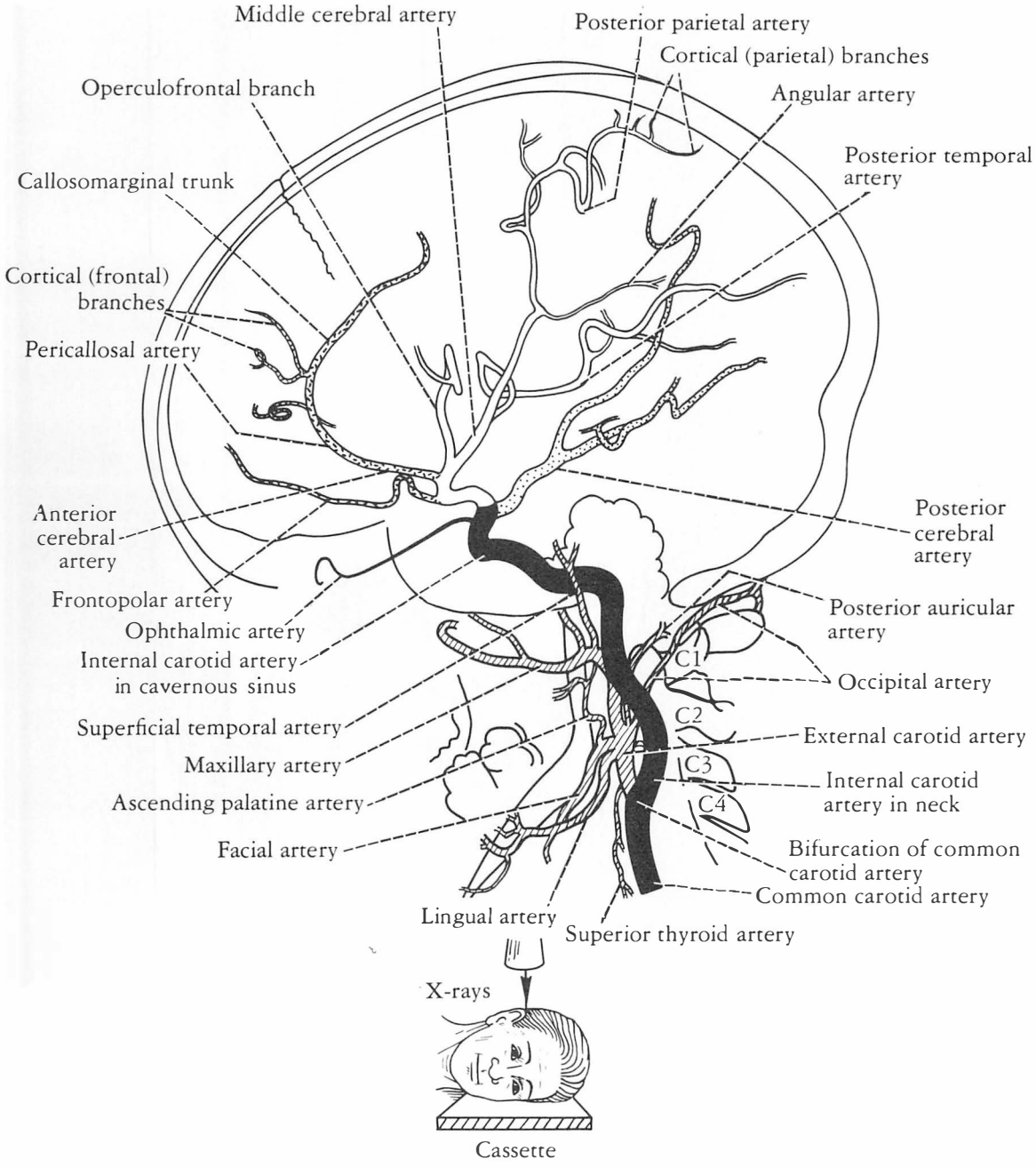


Fig. 27-7. Main features seen in radiograph in Figure 27-6.

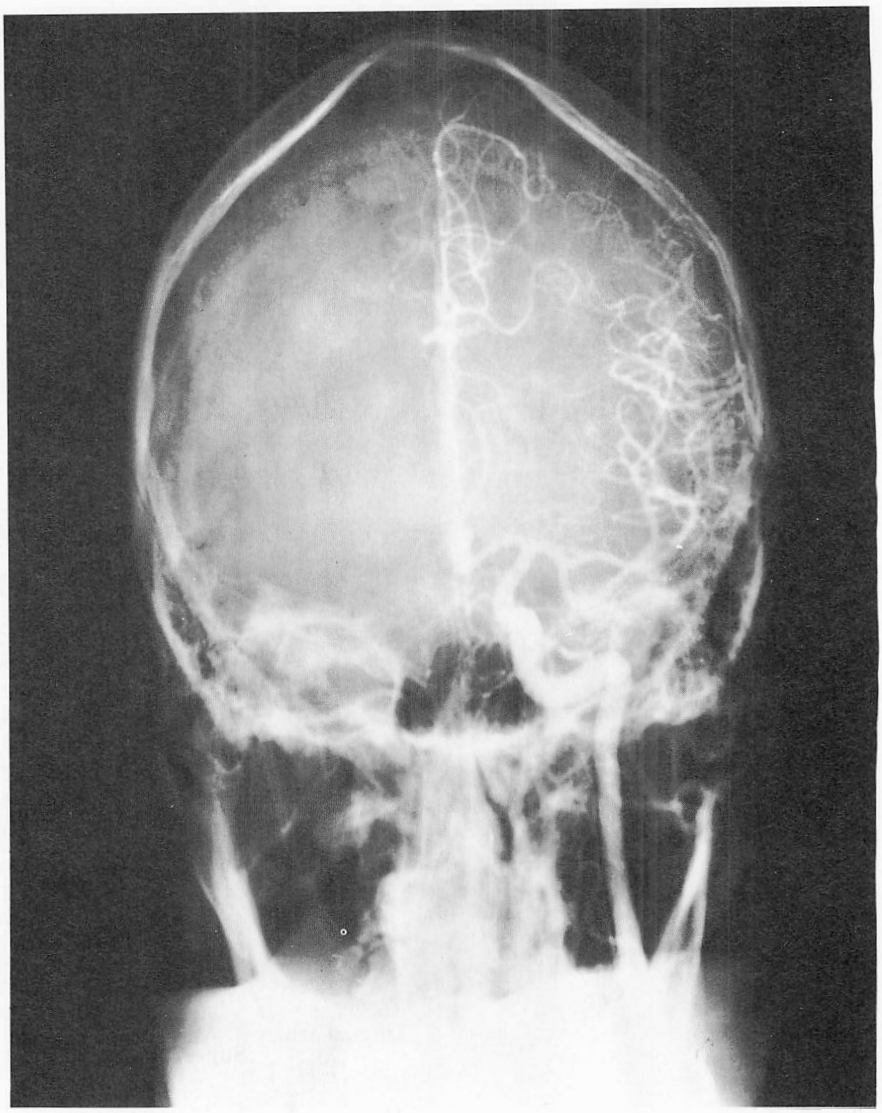


Fig. 27-8. Anteroposterior internal carotid arteriogram. Male aged 20 years. (From R. S. Snell and A. C. Wyman, An Atlas of Normal Radiographic Anatomy. *Boston: Little, Brown, 1976.)*

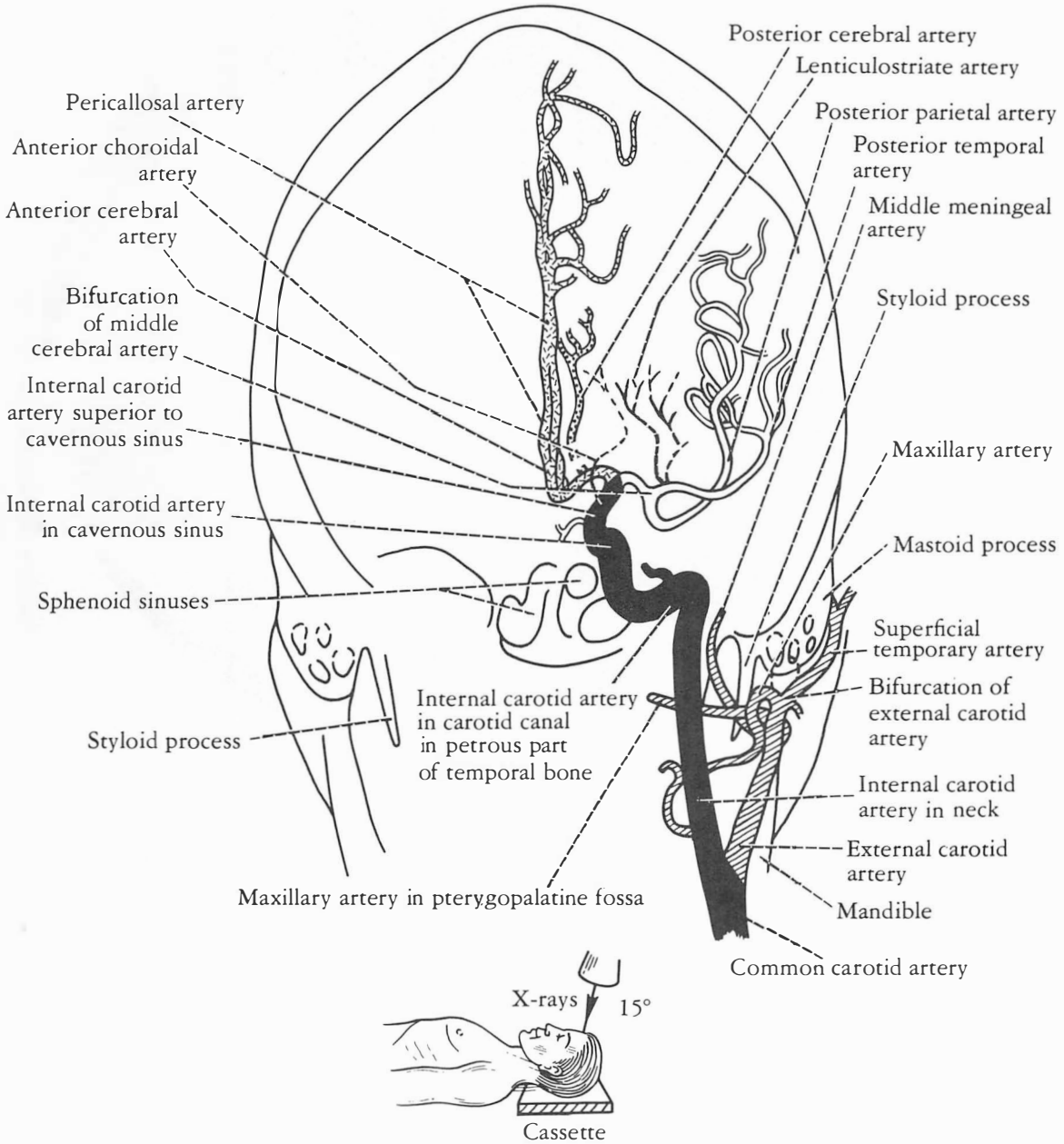


Fig. 27-9. Main features seen in radiograph in Figure 27-8.

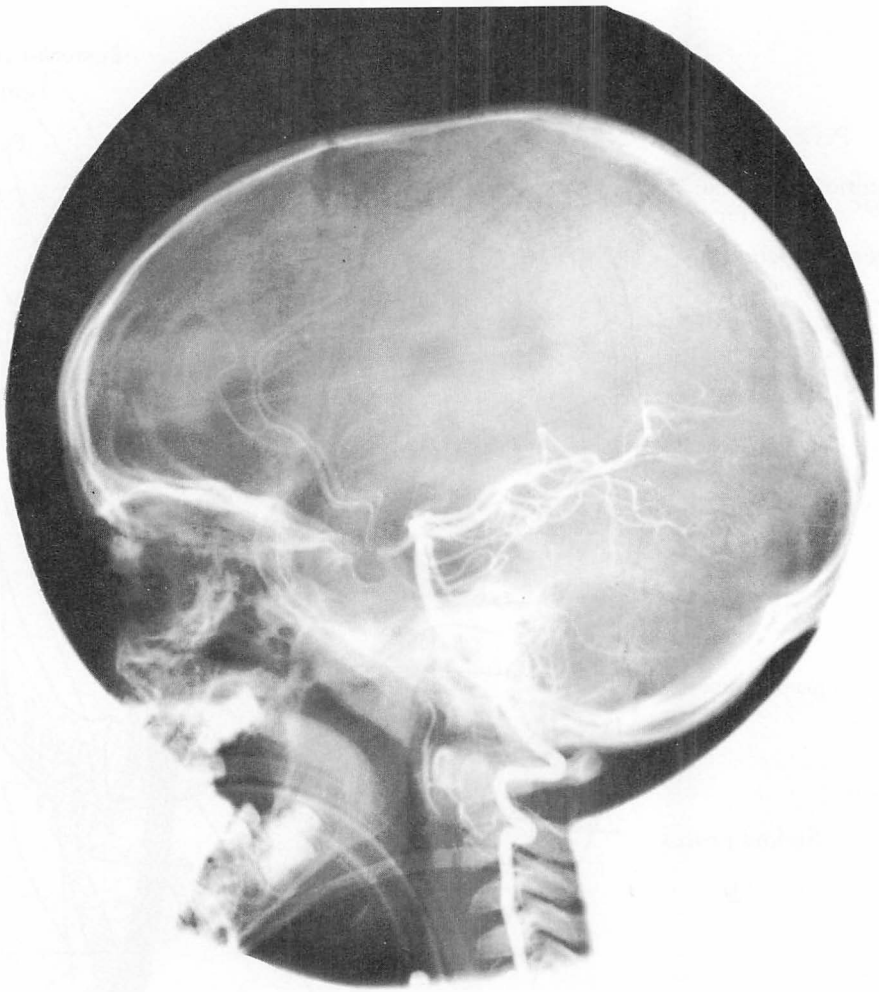


Fig. 27-10. Lateral vertebral arteriogram. Male aged 20 years. (From R. S. Snell and A. C. Wyman, An Atlas of Normal Radiographic Anatomy. *Boston: Little, Brown, 1976.)*

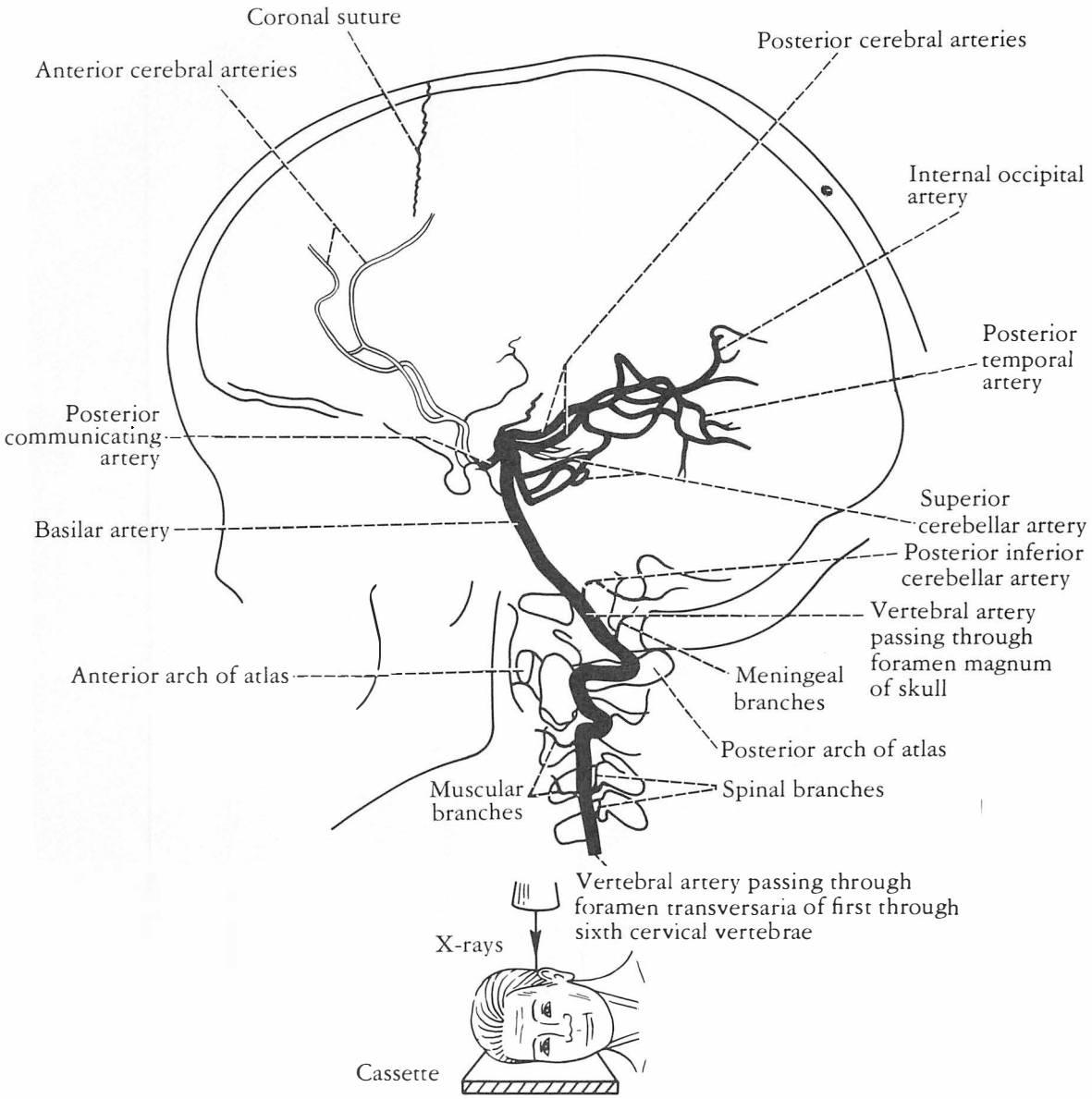


Fig. 27-11. Main features seen in radiograph in Figure 27-10.

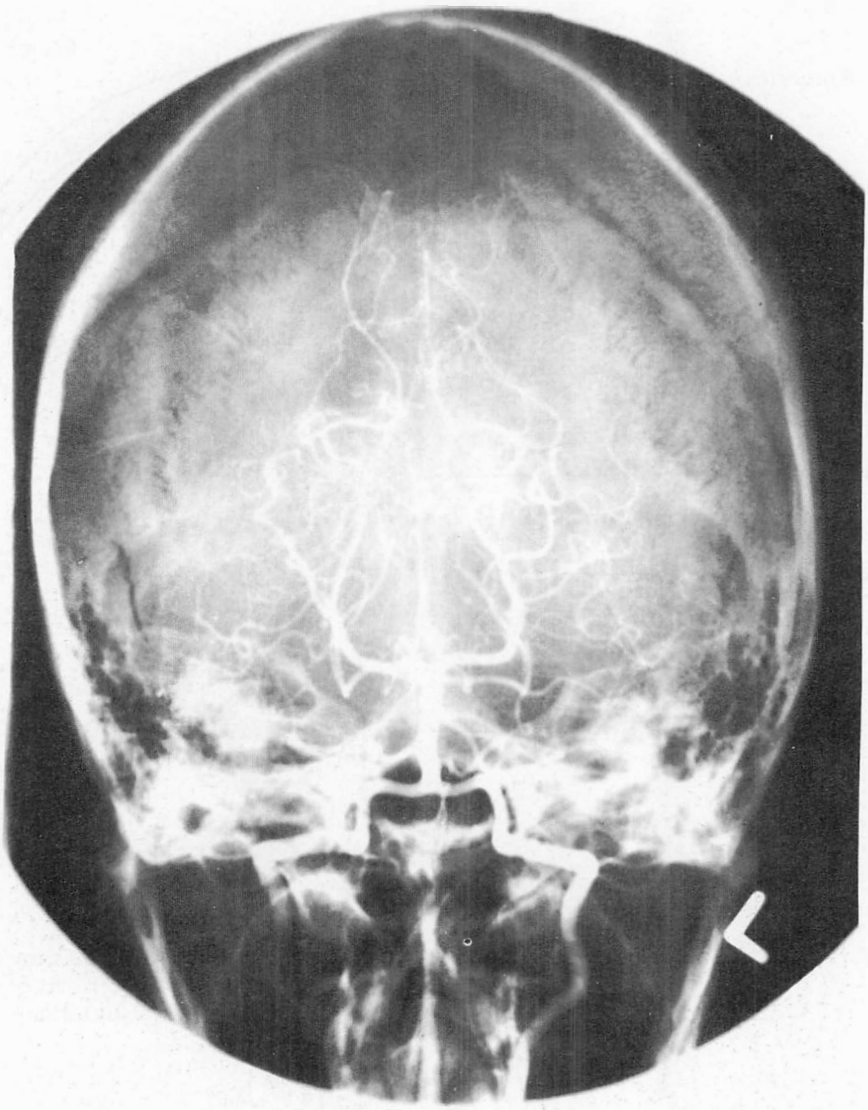


Fig. 27-12. Anteroposterior (angled) vertebral arteriogram. Female aged 35 years. (From R. S. Snell and A. C. Wyman, An Atlas of Normal Radiographic Anatomy. *Boston: Little, Brown, 1976.)*

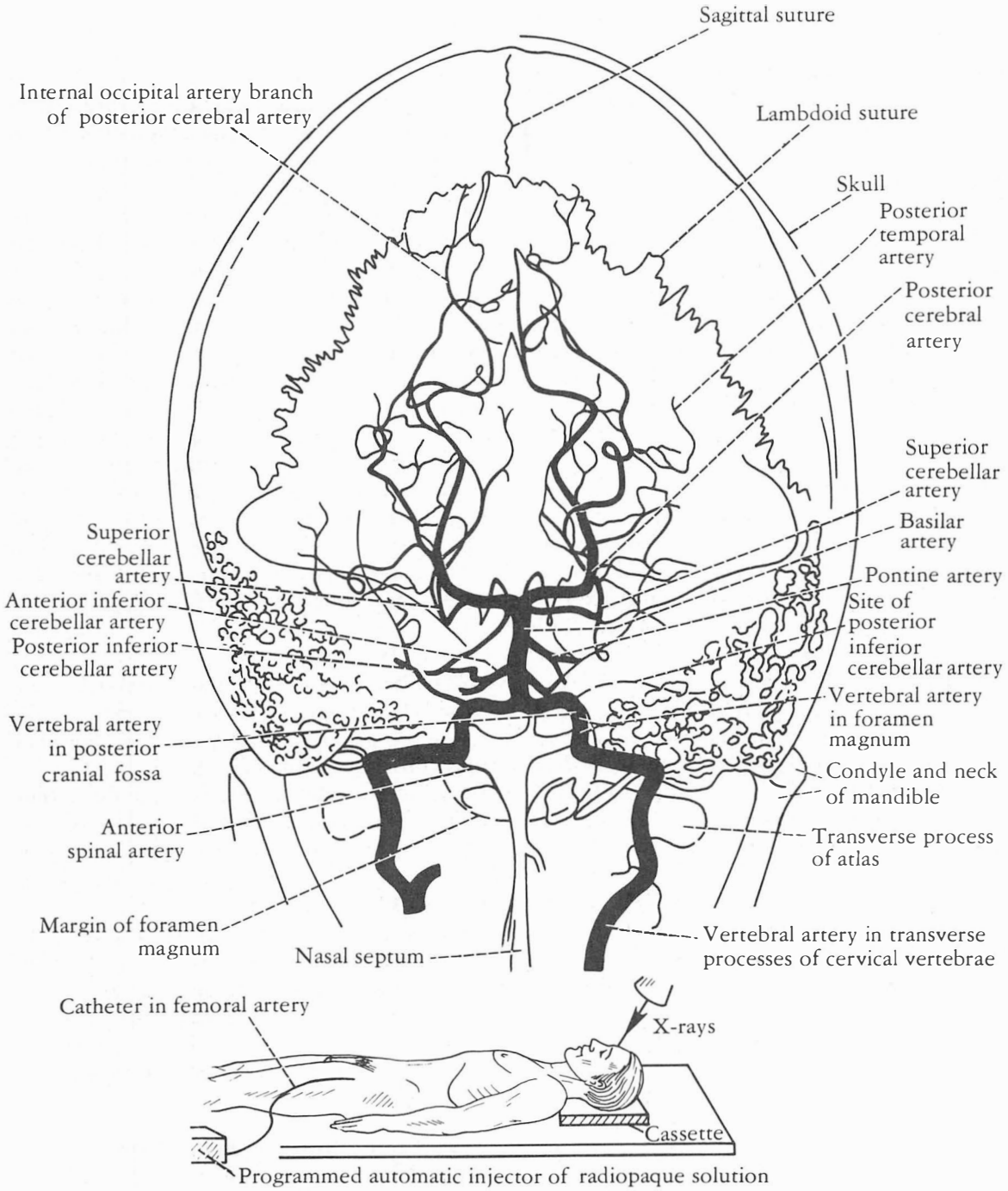


Fig. 27-13. Main features seen in radiograph in Figure 27-12.

Clinical Notes

Cerebrovascular disease is responsible for about 50 percent of all adult neurologic hospital admissions (Fisher, Mohr, and Adams, 1974).

Cerebral Circulation

The brain has been shown to be supplied with arterial blood from the two internal carotid arteries and the two vertebral arteries, which unite anteriorly to form the basilar artery. The circulus arteriosus (*circle of Willis*), which lies in the interpeduncular fossa at the base of the brain, is formed by anastomoses between the internal carotid arteries, the basilar artery, and their branches.

In 1951, McDonald and Potter showed that the blood supply to half of the brain is provided by the internal carotid and vertebral arteries on that side, and that their respective streams come together in the posterior communicating artery at a point where the pressure of the two is equal and they do not mix. If, however, the internal carotid or vertebral artery is occluded, the blood passes forward or backward across that point to compensate for the reduction in blood flow. The circulus arteriosus also permits the blood to flow across the midline, as shown when the internal carotid or vertebral artery on one side is occluded. It also has been shown that the two streams of blood from the vertebral arteries remain separate and on the same side of the lumen of the basilar artery and do not mix.

Although the cerebral arteries anastomose with one another at the circulus arteriosus and by means of branches on the surface of the cerebral hemispheres, once they enter the brain substance no further anastomoses occur.

The most important factor in forcing the blood through the brain is the arterial blood pressure. This is opposed by such factors as a raised intracranial pressure, increased blood viscosity, and narrowing of the vascular diameter. Cerebral blood flow remains remarkably constant in spite of changes in the general blood pressure. This autoregulation of the circulation (Best and Taylor, 1973) is accomplished by a compensatory lowering of the cerebral vascular resistance when the arterial pressure is lowered and a raising of the vascular resistance when the arterial pressure is raised. Needless to say, this autoregulation fails to maintain an adequate blood flow should the arterial blood pressure fall to a very low level.

The diameter of the cerebral blood vessels is the main factor contributing to the cerebral vascular resistance. While it is known that they are innervated by sympathetic postganglionic nerve fibers and that they respond to norepinephrine, they apparently play no part in the control of cerebral vascular resistance in human beings. The most powerful vasodilator substance for cerebral blood vessels is carbon dioxide; the action of oxygen is directly opposite. It is interesting to note that intellectual activity or anxiety has no effect on cerebral blood flow (Sokoloff et al., 1955; Scheinberg and Stead, 1949). In sleep, there is a slight increase in blood flow resulting from cerebral vasodilation (Mangold et al., 1955).

Cerebral Ischemia

Vascular lesions of the brain are extremely common and the resulting neurological defect will depend on the size of the artery occluded, the state of the collateral circulation, and the area of the brain involved. Clinical studies and the examination of postmortem material have focused attention on the high frequency of lesions in the common carotid, internal carotid, and vertebral arteries in the neck.

Impairment of cerebral blood flow may be caused by a large number of conditions, and the more important may be considered under the following headings: (1) diseases that produce alteration in blood pressure, (2) diseases of arterial walls, and (3) diseases that result in blockage of the arterial lumen.

Diseases that Produce Alteration in Blood Pressure

Interruption of Cerebral Circulation

Irreversible brain damage with death of nervous tissue rapidly follows complete arrest of cerebral blood flow. It has been estimated that irreversible

changes start to occur after about 2 minutes, although this time may be longer if the patient's body has been cooled. Cardiac arrest due to coronary thrombosis is the most common cause of this condition.

Postural Hypotension
Patients who get up after being confined to bed for several days, soldiers who stand at attention for long periods on a hot day, and worshipers kneeling in church—all may experience the accumulation of venous blood in the limbs or impaired venous return to the heart, with a consequent fall in the cardiac output and a lowered arterial blood pressure. As has been mentioned previously, the general arterial pressure has to be lowered considerably before the cerebral blood flow is diminished.

Physical and Psychological Shock
The profound and prolonged fall in blood pressure that may follow physical trauma such as an automobile accident or extensive surgery, especially in the elderly in whom the cerebral arteries are already narrowed by disease, may cause the patient to lose consciousness. Hyperventilation in anxiety states (McHenry, Fazekas, and Sullivan, 1961) may reduce the cerebral blood flow by lowering the carbon dioxide content of the blood.

Change in Blood Viscosity
In polycythemia vera, the cerebral blood flow is considerably reduced as the result of an increase in the viscosity of the blood (Brain and Walton, 1969).

Carotid Sinus Syndrome
The carotid sinus, situated at the proximal end of the internal carotid artery, is extremely sensitive to changes in arterial blood pressure. Distention of the arterial wall causes a reflex slowing of the heart rate and a fall in blood pressure. This occurs as the result of an increased number of nervous impulses passing up the sinus nerve, a branch of the glossopharyngeal nerve, which connects with the cardioinhibitory and vasomotor centers. Hypersensitivity of the reflex or external pressure may cause the blood pressure to fall suddenly and produce cerebral ischemia and loss of consciousness.

Diseases of the Heart
Any severe cardiac disease, such as coronary thrombosis, auricular fibrillation, or heart block, that results in a marked fall in cardiac output will result in a severe fall in general arterial blood pressure and reduction in cerebral blood flow.

Diseases of the Arterial Walls
The most common cause of narrowing of the lumen of the arteries that supply the brain is atheroma. This disease may affect the main arteries supplying the brain in their course through the neck as well as their course within the skull. Moreover, the impairment of the cerebral circulation may be worsened by an attack of coronary thrombosis, with its associated hypotension, shock due to surgical procedures, severe anemia, or even rotation of the head with external pressure on the carotid arteries.

Atheromatous degeneration of the cerebral arteries occurs most commonly in middle or old age and often complicates diabetes and hypertension. When actual blockage of an artery occurs, the effect will depend on the size and location of the vessel. The nerve cells and their fibers will degenerate in the avascular area and the surrounding neuroglia will proliferate and invade the area. In patients with generalized narrowing of the cerebral arteries without blockage of a single artery, the brain will undergo a diffuse atrophy. It should be remembered that a very narrow atheromatous artery may be blocked by a thrombus, thus totally closing the lumen.

Diseases that Result in Blockage of the Arterial Lumen

Embolism of a cerebral artery may occur in two forms: (1) by far the most common, a thrombus, and (2) fat globules. The thrombus may develop anywhere on the endothelial lining from the left side of the heart to the parent vessels of the cere-

bral arteries. A common site of origin is an atheromatous plaque on the internal carotid, common carotid, or vertebral artery. Another area is the site of endocarditis on the mitral or aortic valve or the endocardial lining of a myocardial infarction following a coronary thrombosis.

Fat embolism usually follows severe fractures of one of the long bones. Fat globules from the macerated yellow marrow enter the nutrient veins, pass through the pulmonary circulation, and end up blocking multiple small cerebral end arteries.

Cerebral Aneurysms

Congenital Aneurysms

Congenital aneurysms occur most commonly at the site where two arteries join in the formation of the circulus arteriosus. Here there is a deficiency in the tunica media, and, according to Carmichael (1950), this is complicated by the development of atheroma, which so weakens the arterial wall that a local dilatation occurs. The aneurysm may press on neighboring structures, such as the optic nerve or the third, fourth, or sixth cranial nerve, and produce signs or symptoms, or may suddenly rupture into the subarachnoid space. In the latter case, the patient suddenly develops a severe pain in the head followed by mental confusion. Death may quickly occur, or the patient may survive the first bleeding only to die a few days or weeks later. Clipping or ligating the neck of the aneurysm offers the best chance of recovery.

Other types of aneurysms are rare and include those due to softening of the arterial wall following the lodging of an infected embolus, those due to damage of the internal carotid artery as it lies within the cavernous sinus following a fracture of the skull, and those that are associated with disease of the arterial wall such as atheroma.

Intracranial Hemorrhage

Intracranial hemorrhage may result from trauma or cerebral vascular lesions. Four varieties will be considered: (1) extradural, (2) subdural, (3) subarachnoid, and (4) cerebral. Extradural and subdural hemorrhage are described on page 36.

Subarachnoid Hemmorrhage

Subarachnoid hemorrhage usually results from leakage or rupture of a congenital aneurysm on the cerebral arterial circle or, less commonly, from an angioma or contusion and laceration of the brain and meninges. The symptoms, which are sudden in onset, will include severe headache, stiffness of the neck, and loss of consciousness. The diagnosis is established by withdrawing heavily blood-stained cerebrospinal fluid through a lumbar puncture.

Cerebral Hemorrhage

Cerebral hemorrhage generally is due to rupture of an atheromatous artery and is most common in patients with hypertension. It usually occurs in individuals of middle age and often involves a rupture of the thin-walled lenticulostriate artery, a branch of the middle cerebral artery. The important corticonuclear and corticospinal fibers in the internal capsule are damaged, producing hemiplegia on the opposite side of the body. The patient immediately loses consciousness, and the paralysis is evident when consciousness is regained. In some cases, the hemorrhage bursts into the lateral ventricle, resulting in deeper unconsciousness and corticospinal lesions on both sides of the body. Hemorrhage may also occur into the pons and cerebellum.

Cerebral Angiography

The technique of cerebral angiography is used for the detection of abnormalities of the blood vessels, the detection and localization of space-occupying lesions such as tumors, hematomas, or abscesses, or the determination of the vascular pattern of tumors to aid in the diagnosis of their pathology. Under general anesthesia, with the patient in the supine position, the head is centered on a radiographic apparatus that will take repeated radiographs at 2-second intervals. Both anteroposterior and lateral projections are obtained. A radiopaque medium is injected rapidly into the lumen of the common carotid or vertebral artery or is indirectly introduced into one of these arteries through a catheter inserted into the radial or

femoral artery. As the radiopaque material is rapidly introduced, a series of films are exposed. By this means, the cerebral arteries, the capillary flush, and the veins may be demonstrated. Examples of normal carotid and vertebral angiograms are shown in Figures 27-6 through 27-13.

Clinical Problems

For the answers to these problems, see page 503.

1. While examining a patient who was admitted to the emergency room following a stroke, the neurologist turned to the medical student and asked him what the circulus arteriosus of Willis is, and what functions it normally performs. How would you have answered that question?

2. A distinguished neurosurgeon, while giving a lecture on cerebral vascular accidents, made the following statement: "It is generally agreed that there are no anastomoses of clinical importance between the terminal end arteries within the brain substance, but there are many important anastomoses between the large arteries, both within and outside the skull, and these may play a major role in determining the extent of brain damage in cerebral vascular disease." Would you comment on this statement and name the sites where important arterial anastomoses take place.

3. During examination of a carotid angiogram, it was noted that the contrast medium had filled the anterior and middle cerebral arteries but had failed to fill the posterior cerebral artery. On careful following of the contrast medium, it was seen to enter the posterior communicating artery but to extend no farther. Can you explain this phenomenon in a normal person?

4. A 58-year-old man, while sitting quietly eating his evening meal, suddenly complained of a very severe headache. A few moments later, he slumped forward over the table and lost consciousness. He was immediately admitted to the hospital and the examining physician detected the following physical signs. The patient was in deep coma, his face was flushed and his breathing was deep and slow (14 per minute), and the right cheek blew out during expiration. Periodically, the breathing would become rapid and deep (hyperpnea), alternating with intervals of complete cessation of respiration (apnea). The pulse rate was slow (50 per minute) and the pupils did not react to light. The corneal reflex was absent on the right side. The patient lay quietly with his head and eyes turned to the left, he had urinary incontinence, and his temperature was normal.

When the patient was examined for alteration of muscle tone, the right side of the face looked somewhat flattened, the right corner of the mouth was sagging, and saliva was drooling out of that side of the mouth. The muscle tone of the limbs appeard to be less on the right side than on the left, and the tone on the left appeared to be within normal limits; the change in muscle tone was greater in the right arm than in the right leg. The right abdominal reflexes were absent and there was also a positive Babinski response on the right side.

Three days later, the patient slowly regained consciousness; the right arm and, to a lesser extent, the right leg were paralyzed, but movements on the left side were normal. As the days passed, it was clear that the lower part of the right side of the face was paralyzed, the patient had some difficulty in swallowing, and he was unable to speak. During the next 2 weeks, the muscles of the limbs on the right side became hypertonic and the tendon reflexes were hyperactive. It was observed that the patient had some sensory loss on the right side. What is your diagnosis?

5. A 65-year-old woman collapsed in the street and was admitted to the emergency room in a coma. Twenty-four hours later she recovered consciousness and was found to have paralysis on the left side of the body, mainly involving the lower limb. There was also some sensory loss on the left side of the body. She was able to swallow normally

and did not appear to have difficulty with her speech. What is your diagnosis?

6. A 45-year-old man was admitted to the hospital after collapsing in his home 3 days previously. He was found by a friend on the floor of his sitting room in a partial state of unconsciousness. On physical examination, he was found to have right-sided homonymous hemianopia, although careful examination of the fields of vision showed that the macular regions were normal. Right-sided hemianesthesia and hemianalgesia also were present, although the patient complained of severe burning pain in the right leg. During the first 24 hours in the hospital, the patient demonstrated mild right-sided hemiparesis of the flaccid type, which disappeared within 2 days. What is your diagnosis? Be specific in describing the branches of the artery that are involved.

7. During the course of an autopsy on a patient who had recently died of cerebrovascular disease, the pathologist made the comment that in atherosclerosis of the cerebral arteries, the atheromatous plaques tend to occur where the main arteries divide or where the arteries suddenly curve. It is thought that at these sites the pressure flow changes may be a factor in the causation of the disease process. Using your knowledge of anatomy, name as many sites as you can where the main cerebral arteries divide or undergo abrupt change in their course.

8. Having carefully examined a male patient with cerebrovascular disease, the physician met with the family to discuss the nature of the illness, the course of treatment, and the prognosis. The daughter asked the physician what was meant by the term *stroke* and what the common causes are. He was also asked why the clinical findings vary so much from patient to patient. Using your knowledge of the anatomy and physiology of cerebral blood flow, can you explain why patients with cerebrovascular disease present such a variety of syndromes?

9. The classic sign of cerebrovascular disease is hemiplegia, and yet we know that most patients also exhibit sensory deficits of different types. Using your knowledge of the anatomical distribution of the cerebral arteries, discuss the main types of sensory loss that you may find in such patients.

10. During the discussion of the symptoms and signs of a 70-year-old female who had been admitted to the hospital for the treatment of cerebrovascular disease, a fourth-year medical student made the comment that he was surprised to find in this patient that many of the signs and symptoms were bilateral. He said that the three previous patients he had examined had displayed only unilateral signs and symptoms. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, explain why some patients exhibit bilateral signs and symptoms while in others the syndrome is clearly unilateral.

11. Neurologists speak frequently of the dominant hemisphere, and if cerebrovascular disease should involve that hemisphere one would expect the patient possibly to have global or total sensorimotor aphasia. Can you explain this phenomenon?

12. Can you explain why patients with a thrombosis of the middle cerebral artery often present with homonymous hemianopia as well as hemiplegia and hemianesthesia?

13. During the neurobiology course, the professor of neuroanatomy emphasized the importance of knowing the structure and blood supply of the internal capsule. He explained the arrangement of the ascending and descending tracts within the capsule and showed how they were concentrated into a small area between the thalamus and caudate nucleus medially and the lentiform nucleus laterally. Clearly, an interruption of the blood supply to this vital area would produce widespread neurological defects. What is the blood supply to the internal capsule?

14. A 36-year-old male visited his physician with a complaint that on three occasions during the past 6 months he had fainted at work. During careful questioning, the patient stated that on each occasion he had fainted while sitting at his desk and

while interviewing office personnel; he added that the person being interviewed sat on a chair immediately to the right of the desk. He said that prior to each fainting attack he felt dizzy; then he lost consciousness, only to recover in a few moments. On the previous evening he had a similar dizzy spell when he turned his head quickly to the right to talk to a friend in the street. The physician noted that the patient wore a stiff collar that was rather close-fitting. When the physician commented on this, the patient stated that he always wore this type of collar to work. No abnormal physical signs were found. Using your knowledge of anatomy and physiology, you would make what diagnosis?

15. A 45-year-old male, a company director, rose to give his annual after-dinner speech to the board when he suddenly experienced an "agonizing, crushing" pain over the sternum. Feeling giddy and weak, he fell back in his chair. A few moments later, he lapsed into unconsciousness. An attendant at the dinner, who had received some training in resuscitation therapy while a member of the armed forces, ran forward and noted that the patient had stopped breathing. He quickly started mouth-to-mouth resuscitation and kept going until ambulance personnel arrived to take the patient to the hospital. The physician in the intensive care unit at the hospital later told the patient that his life had been saved by the alertness and competence of the attendant at the dinner. Using your knowledge of neurophysiology, state how long brain tissue can survive when there is complete cardiac arrest and breathing has ceased.

16. A 62-year-old male, with a history of hypertension, visited his physician because the day before he had temporarily lost the sight of his right eye. He explained that the sight loss was partial and lasted about half an hour. On close questioning, the patient admitted that he had had similar episodes of blindness in the same eye during the previous 6 months, but they had lasted only a few minutes. The patient also mentioned that there were days when he could not remember the names of people and things. He also had experienced recently severe right-sided headaches. When asked about his activities, he said that he could not walk as well as he used to and his left leg sometimes felt weak and numb. While performing a careful physical examination, the physician heard with his stethoscope a distinct systolic bruit over the right side of the neck. Given that the patient has vascular disease of the brain, which artery is likely to be involved in the disease process? What special clinical investigations could you perform in order to confirm the diagnosis?

17. A 39-year-old male was admitted to the hospital with a history of a sudden excruciating, generalized headache while gardening. This was followed, 10 minutes later, by the patient's collapsing to the ground in a state of unconsciousness. After being carried indoors and placed on a settee, the patient regained consciousness but appeared confused. He complained of a severe headache and a stiff neck. Physical examination revealed some rigidity of the neck but nothing further. A careful neurological examination 3 days later revealed some loss of tone in the muscles of the left leg. Using your knowledge of anatomy, make the diagnosis. What is the reason for the neck rigidity?

18. A 26-year-old male, on leaving a bar after a few drinks, stepped into the road at 1:00 A.M. and was struck by a passing car. Fortunately, the car was traveling slowly and struck the patient's head a glancing blow. One hour later, the patient was found by a policeman, unconscious on the sidewalk. Physical examination at the local hospital found that the patient had recovered consciousness for a few minutes, but then he had quickly relapsed into an unconscious state. The right pupil was dilated and the muscle tone of the left leg was found to be less than normal. A positive Babinski sign was obtained on the left side. A lumbar puncture examination revealed a raised cerebrospinal fluid pressure and the fluid was very slightly blood-stained. Examination of the scalp showed a severe bruise over the right temple and a lateral x-ray of the skull showed a fracture of the anterior inferior angle of the parietal bone. What is the diagnosis?

19. A 50-year-old woman visited her physician complaining of headaches, drowsiness, and mental confusion. On close questioning, the patient distinctly remembered striking her head against a closet door when bending down 3 weeks previously. A computerized axial tomogram revealed the presence of a large space-occupying lesion over the right frontal lobe of the brain. What is the possible diagnosis in this case?

20. A 55-year-old man with a history of hypertension collapsed in the street while walking to work. He complained of a sudden severe headache. After 5 minutes, his face began to sag on the right side and his speech became slurred. On admission to the hospital, his right arm and leg were found to be weaker than the left, and the muscles were hypotonic. The eyes were deviated to the left. Later, the right arm and leg showed complete paralysis and were insensitive to pinprick. A positive Babinski sign was present on the right side. Two hours later, the patient relapsed into a deep coma with bilateral dilated fixed pupils. Later, the respiration became deep and irregular and the patient died 6 hours later. Using your knowledge of neuroanatomy, make the diagnosis.

Additional Reading

Adams, G. F., and Merrett, J. W. Prognosis and survival in the aftermath of hemiplegia. *Br. Med. J.* 1:309, 1961.

Best, C. H., and Taylor, N. B. *Physiological Basis of Medical Practice* (9th ed.). Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins, 1973.

Brain, W. R. Order and disorder of the cerebral circulation. *Lancet* 2:857, 1957.

Brain, W. R., and Walton, J. N. *Brain's Diseases of the Nervous System* (7th ed.). New York and London: Oxford University Press, 1969.

Carmichael, R. The pathogenesis of non-inflammatory cerebral aneurysms. *J. Pathol. Bacteriol.* 62:1, 1950.

Davidoff, L. M., Jacobson, H. G., and Zimmerman, H. M. *Neuroradiology Workshop,* Vol. 3, *Non-Neoplastic Intracranial Lesions.* New York: Grune & Stratton, 1968.

Denny-Brown, D. Recurrent cerebro-vascular episodes. *Arch. Neurol.* (Chicago) 2:194, 1960.

Fisher, C. M., Mohr, J. P., and Adams, R. Cerebrovascular Diseases. In *Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine* (7th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill, 1974.

Krayenbühl, H. A., and Yasargil, M. G. *Cerebral Angiography.* Philadelphia: Lippincott, 1968.

Mangold, R., et al. The effects of sleep and lack of sleep on the cerebral circulation and metabolism of normal young men. *J. Clin. Invest.* 34:1092, 1955.

McDonald, D. A., and Potter, J. M. The distribution of blood to the brain. *J. Physiol.* (Lond.) 114:356, 1951.

McHenry, L. C., Jr., Fazekas, J. K., and Sullivan, J. F. Cerebral haemodynamics of syncope. *Am. J. Med. Sci.* 241:173, 1961.

Scheinberg, P., and Stead, E. A., Jr. The cerebral blood flow in male subjects as measured by the nitrous oxide technique. Normal values for blood flow, oxygen utilization, glucose utilization and peripheral resistance with observations on the effect of tilting and anxiety. *J. Clin. Invest.* 28:1163, 1949.

Snell, R. S. *Clinical Anatomy for Medical Students.* Boston: Little, Brown, 1973.

Snell, R. S., and Wyman, A. C. *An Atlas of Normal Radiographic Anatomy.* Boston: Little, Brown, 1976.

Sokoloff, L., et al. The effect of mental arithmetic on cerebral circulation and metabolism. *J. Clin. Invest.* 34:1101, 1955.

Spillane, J. D. *An Atlas of Clinical Neurology.* New York and London: Oxford University Press, 1975.

Taveras, J. M., and Wood, E. H. *Diagnostic Neuroradiology* (2nd ed.). Vol. 2. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins, 1976.

Warwick, R., and Williams, P. L. (Eds.). *Gray's Anatomy* (35th Brit. ed.). Philadelphia: Saunders, 1973.

Answers to Clinical Problems

Chapter 1

1. Very often a physician thinks he knows what these terms mean but to his embarrassment he finds out that he has forgotten. (a) *Neuron* is the name given to a nerve cell and all its processes. (b) *Neuroglia* is the term used to describe the specialized supporting tissue found within the central nervous system. (For details, see p. 73.) (c) Gray matter consists of nerve cells and the proximal portions of their processes embedded in neuroglia. (d) White matter consists of nerve fibers embedded in neuroglia. It is white in color because of the presence of myelin around the nerve fibers. (For details, see p. 87.) (e) Cerebrospinal fluid is the fluid found within the ventricular system of the brain and spinal cord and within the subarachnoid space.

2. The white matter of the spinal cord is divided, for purposes of description, into anterior, lateral, and posterior white columns. The posterior column lies between the entry of the posterior nerve roots and the midline posteriorly; the lateral column lies between the emergence of the anterior nerve roots and the entry of the posterior nerve roots. In the spinal cord there is an inner core of gray matter that is surrounded by an outer covering of white matter.

3. The autonomic nervous system is distributed throughout the central and peripheral nervous systems. Historically, the tendency has been to regard it as a special part of the nervous system because, anatomically, physiologically, and pharmacologically, it has been shown to be concerned with the control of involuntary structures. The autonomic system possesses both afferent and efferent nervous pathways.

4. Although the spinal cord is roughly cylindrical in shape throughout its length, in the cervical region, where it gives origin to the brachial plexus, and in the lower thoracic and lumbar regions, where it gives origin to the lumbosacral plexus, there are fusiform enlargements, called the cervical and lumbar enlargements. The spinal cord tapers off inferiorly into the conus medullaris. At this particular operation the cervical enlargement of the cord had been exposed.

5. Carcinoma of the thyroid, breast, kidney, lung, and prostate commonly gives rise to metastases in bone. (a) The pain in the back was caused by the carcinoma invading and destroying the tenth thoracic vertebral body. (b) Compression of the posterior nerve root of the tenth thoracic spinal nerve by the carcinoma of the vertebral column produced the hyperesthesia and hyperalgesia over the right tenth intercostal space. (c) Muscular weakness of the legs was caused by pressure on the descending motor nerve fibers in the spinal cord by the carcinoma's invasion of the vertebral canal. (d) Although there is disproportionate growth in length of the vertebral column during development compared with that of the spinal cord, the upper cervical segments of the spinal cord still lie posterior to the vertebral bodies of the same number; however, the spinal cord in the adult terminates inferiorly at the level of the lower border of the first lumbar vertebra and, therefore, the first and second lumbar segments of the spinal cord lie at the level of the tenth thoracic vertebral body.

6. This patient had a severe fracture dislocation between the seventh and eighth thoracic vertebrae. The vertical arrangement of the articular processes and the low mobility of this region because of the thoracic cage mean that a dislocation can occur in this region only if the articular processes

are fractured by a great force. The small circular vertebral canal leaves little space around the spinal cord, so that severe cord injuries are certain.

7. Each spinal nerve is formed by the union of a posterior sensory root and an anterior motor root and leaves the vertebral canal by traveling through an intervertebral foramen. Each foramen is bounded superiorly and inferiorly by the pedicles of adjacent vertebrae, anteriorly by the lower part of the vertebral body and by the intervertebral disc, and posteriorly by the articular processes and the joint between them. In this patient the fifth thoracic vertebral body had collapsed and the intervertebral foramina on both sides had been considerably reduced in size, causing compression of the posterior sensory roots and the spinal nerves. The consequent irritation of the sensory fibers was responsible for the pain.

8. This patient had symptoms suggestive of irritation of the left sixth cervical posterior nerve root. The radiograph revealed narrowing of the space between the fifth and sixth cervical vertebral bodies, suggesting a herniation of the nucleus pulposus of the intervertebral disc at this level.

9. The herniation occurred on the right side and was relatively small, hence the absence of radiological evidence. The pain occurred in the distribution of the fifth lumbar and first sacral segments of the spinal cord, and the posterior sensory roots of these segments of the cord were pressed upon on the right side.

10. In a 5-year-old child, the spinal cord terminates inferiorly at about the level of the second lumbar vertebra (certainly no lower than the third lumbar vertebra). With the child lying on his side and comforted by a nurse, and with the operator using an aseptic technique, the skin is anesthetized in the midline just below the fourth lumbar spine. The fourth lumbar spine lies on an imaginary line joining the highest points on the iliac crests. The lumbar puncture needle, fitted with a stylet, is then passed carefully into the vertebral canal. The needle will pass through the following anatomical structures before it enters the subarachnoid space: (a) skin, (b) superficial fascia, (c) supraspinous ligament, (d) interspinous ligament, (e) ligamentum flavum, (f) areolar tissue containing the internal vertebral venous plexus, (g) dura mater, and (h) arachnoid mater.

11. Caudal analgesia (anesthesia) is very effective in producing a painless labor if it is performed skillfully. The anesthetic solutions are introduced into the sacral canal through the sacral hiatus. Sufficient solution is given so that the nerve roots up as far as T11 and 12 and L1 are blocked. This will make the uterine contractions painless during the first stage of labor. If the nerve fibers of S2, 3, and 4 are also blocked, the perineum will be anesthetized.

12. A blow on the side of the head may easily fracture the thin anterior part of the parietal bone. The anterior branch of the middle meningeal artery commonly enters a bony canal in this region and is sectioned at the time of the fracture. The resulting hemorrhage causes gradual accumulation of blood under high pressure outside the meningeal layer of the dura mater. The pressure is exerted on the underlying brain as the blood clot enlarges, and the symptoms of confusion and irritability become apparent. This is followed later by drowsiness. Pressure on the lower end of the motor area of the cerebral cortex (the right precentral gyrus) causes twitching of the facial muscles and, later, twitching of the left arm muscles. As the blood clot progressively enlarges, the intracranial pressure rises and the patient's condition deteriorates.

13. The cerebral aqueduct is the narrow channel in the midbrain that connects the third ventricle to the fourth ventricle; it is filled with cerebrospinal fluid. The cerebrospinal fluid produced in the lateral ventricles and the third ventricle is unable to escape into the fourth ventricle if the cerebral aqueduct is blocked. The increased volume of cerebrospinal fluid accumulated in the third and lat-

eral ventricles produces the clinical condition of hydrocephalus, which is accompanied by enlargement of the head.

14. A detailed account of the various changes that occur in the skull in patients with an intracranial tumor is given on page 38. A patient suspected of having an intracranial tumor should not undergo a lumbar puncture. The withdrawal of cerebrospinal fluid may lead to a sudden displacement of the cerebral hemisphere through the opening in the tentorium cerebelli into the posterior cranial fossa, or herniation of the medulla oblongata and cerebellum through the foramen magnum.

15. The brain is floating in the cerebrospinal fluid within the skull, so that blows to the head or sudden deceleration leads to displacement of the brain. This may produce severe cerebral damage, stretching or distortion of the brainstem, avulsion of cranial nerves, and, commonly, rupture of tethering cerebral veins. (For further details, see p. 36.) A crash helmet helps to protect the brain by cushioning the blow and thus slowing up the brain's rate of deceleration.

16. (a) Contrecoup injury to the brain is an injury to the pole of the brain opposite the site of impact, where the brain is thrown against the skull wall. (b) Subarachnoid hemorrhage—a hemorrhage into the subarachnoid space—results from leakage or rupture of a congenital aneurysm on the cerebral arterial circle or, less commonly, a tumor of an artery (angioma). (c) Subdural hemorrhage is a hemorrhage into the space between the meningeal layer of dura and the arachnoid mater. It results from tearing of the superior cerebral veins at their point of entrance into the superior sagittal sinus. (d) Cerebral hemorrhage is a hemorrhage into the substance of the brain.

17. The brain and spinal cord are enclosed by the skull and vertebrae. The meninges, the cerebrospinal fluid in the subarachnoid space, and a large number of blood vessels and venous sinuses are also contained within these bony structures. Expanding intracranial lesions, because of their bulk, increase the intracranial pressure and compress the ventricular system. The ventricular circulation of cerebrospinal fluid will or will not be interfered with, depending on the site of the lesion. The raised intracranial pressure is initially compensated for by a reduction in cerebrospinal fluid volume, as the result of an increased rate of absorption. A continued rise in intracranial pressure ultimately compresses the cerebral veins and venous sinuses, causing an accumulation of tissue fluid in the brain (cerebral edema) and reduced absorption of cerebrospinal fluid (see p. 38). At this point, a vicious circle has been established and the intracranial pressure continues to rise. Arterial blood is continually being pumped into the rigid bony case from the outside, but the veins and sinuses, which drain the cerebrospinal fluid and blood from the case, are being pressed upon.

18. In the newborn the bones of the vault of the skull are not closely knit at sutures, as in the adult, but are separated by unossified membranous intervals called *fontanelles*. The anterior and posterior fontanelles are clinically the most important. The anterior fontanelle is bounded by the two halves of the frontal bone anteriorly and the two parietal bones posteriorly. By the age of 18 months it is very small and no longer clinically palpable. The posterior fontanelle is bounded by the two parietal bones anteriorly and the occipital bone posteriorly. By the end of the first year it can no longer be palpated. Palpation of the fontanelles enables the physician to determine the state of intracranial pressure. For example, a bulging fontanelle indicates raised intracranial pressure.

The adult skull may be likened to an eggshell because it possesses a certain limited resilience, beyond which it splinters. A young child's skull, on the other hand, may be likened to a table tennis ball because a localized blow produces a depression without splintering. (For further details, see p. 33.)

19. The cerebellum is part of the hindbrain and is

situated posterior to the fourth ventricle (the cavity of the hindbrain) and posterior to the pons and medulla oblongata. A medulloblastoma is a common tumor found in children, especially in the cerebellum. It is a rapidly growing malignant tumor. The cerebellum is situated in the posterior cranial fossa of the skull.

20. The surface layer of each cerebral hemisphere is called the cortex. The cerebral cortex is thrown into folds or gyri, separated by fissures or sulci. The larger sulci are used arbitrarily to subdivide the surface of each hemisphere into lobes. The lobes are named from the bones of the cranium under which they lie. The frontal lobe lies beneath the frontal bone of the skull and is situated anterior to the central sulcus and superior to the lateral sulcus.

Chapter 2

1. The following are some of the pathogenic mechanisms that may influence the neuron and thus initiate mental deficiency:

(a) Abnormal chromatin. Down's syndrome or mongolism is one of the most common examples of mental retardation. Nearly all who have Down's syndrome have an extra chromosome of number 21, making a total of 47 chromosomes. A few have a translocation of one of the parts of a 21 chromosome. A single genetic defect may result in errors of metabolism. A failure of development of the enzyme required to form the hormone thyroxin will result in lack of normal brain development. The enzymatic defect resulting in the failure of hydroxylation of phenylalanine to tyrosine produces phenylketonuria. The accumulation of phenylalanine in the body fluids causes mental retardation. Galactosemia is a further example of an inborn error in metabolism.

(b) Maternal and fetal infection with the rubella virus, fetal cytomegalovirus, and *Toxoplasma gondii*, a protozoan infection, can all produce mental deficiency.

(c) Atomic radiations and x-ray therapy of the gravid uterus can inhibit the normal development of the nervous system.

(d) Maternal ingestion of drugs such as thalidomide can cause fetal brain defects.

(e) Autoimmune diseases. In Hashimoto's disease, for example, the thyroid gland fails to develop adequately owing to the formation of autoantibodies to thyroid tissue. Athyrotic cretins result, with accompanying mental deficiency.

(f) Excessive amounts of bilirubin in the blood (hyperbilirubinemia), associated with hemolytic disease of the newborn, can produce severe cerebral injury (kernicterus). The mental deficiency is usually associated with other neurological defects, including cranial nerve palsies, convulsive disorders, and aphasias.

It is clear from the above list that the pediatrician can treat and prevent the maldevelopment of neurons, and thus reduce the incidence of mental deficiency, by knowing what drugs the mother is taking, by knowing the genetic history of the family, by making an early diagnosis of cretinism, and by recognizing phenylketonuria and galactosemia.

2. The radial nerve is made up of nerve fibers derived from motor, sensory, and autonomic neurons. By definition the nerve fibers, or nerve cell processes, are referred to as neurites. The short neurites are called dendrites and the long neurites are called axons. It is customary to refer to those neurites that conduct the nervous impulse toward the cell body as the dendrites and to those that conduct the impulses away from the cell body as the axons. However, in the case of the unipolar sensory neurons found in the posterior root ganglia, the neurite carrying nervous information toward the cell body has all the structural characteristics of an axon and is referred to as an axon. Thus the radial nerve, which is composed of sensory and motor fibers, is made up of axons.

3. The nucleolus in any cell is concerned with the synthesis of ribonucleic acid (RNA). The large size is probably related to the very large volume of cytoplasm possessed by certain neurons. For example, the axons of the motor nerve cells that supply the muscles of the sole of the foot are situated in the lumbar and sacral regions of the

spinal cord; thus the axons may measure as much as 4 feet long.

4. (a) It is a general rule that all reparative phenomena throughout the body occur more readily in the young than in the old. (b) As the distal end of a peripheral nerve is approached, fewer branches remain and thus there are fewer structures yet to innervate; consequently, there are fewer possibilities of nerve fibers innervating the wrong structure during the process of regeneration. Moreover, the more distal the injury the less the metabolism of the proximal nerve cell body is affected by the injury. (c) This is a physiological fact. A very severe nerve injury close to its nerve cell body may result in the death of the entire neuron. (d) The physiology of sensory neurons is more susceptible to change by retrograde phenomena than that of motor neurons.

5. If the wound is not infected, the best time to perform a nerve suture is about 3 weeks after the injury. Satisfactory results have been obtained after a delay of as much as 14 months, provided that paralyzed muscles have not been overstretched and joint adhesions have been avoided by passive movements of the joints. In other words, the neuron still retains the ability to regenerate its processes even after 14 months, but the degree of recovery of function will depend a great deal on the care that the denervated structures have received in the intervening time.

6. Golgi type I neurons have long axons that form the long fiber tracts of the brain and spinal cord and form the nerve fibers of peripheral nerves. Golgi type II neurons have short axons that terminate in the neighborhood of the cell body or are entirely absent. There are many more type II neurons in the nervous system than type I.

7. (a) Nissl substance is composed of vesicles, tubules, or stacks of flat cisternae. Associated with the vesicles are dense granules measuring 100 to 300 Å in diameter and containing ribonucleoprotein. The Nissl substance is responsible for synthesizing protein. (b) Golgi apparatus is composed of clusters of flattened cisternae and vesicles made up of smooth-surfaced endoplasmic reticulum. It is thought to serve as an intracellular storage area, and to be active in lysosome production. It may also be involved in the synthesis of cell membranes. (c) Lysosomes are dense spherical bodies that are membrane-bound, measuring about 0.25 to 2μ in diameter. They contain acid phosphatase and other hydrolytic enzymes. They serve as intracellular scavengers. (d) Membranous vesicles do not come under the above heading. Some contain engulfed substances that move through the cytoplasm until they fuse with a lysosome. Such vesicles are often termed phagosomes.

8. In 1949, Barr and Bertram noticed the presence of a small, stainable body of chromatin (Barr body) situated at the inner surface of the nuclear envelope in the female that could not be seen in cells of the male. The presence or absence of the Barr body enables one to readily determine the sex of the individual from whom the tissue was removed.

9. With the electron microscope it is possible to resolve within the cytoplasm of a neuron small tubules that measure about 200 to 300 Å in diameter; they extend throughout the cell body and its processes. Some researchers have shown that wavelike movements occur along the microtubules and it is possible that these structures are responsible for axoplasmic flow.

10. The central nervous system is made up of the following tissues: (a) neurons, (b) neuroglia, (c) blood vessels, and (d) meninges. The peripheral nervous system is composed of the following tissues: (a) neurons, (b) Schwann cells, (c) connective tissue, and (d) blood vessels.

11. The plasma membrane is composed of lipid and protein molecules and has a coat of glycoprotein on its outer surface. When a neuron is excited, the permeability of the plasma membrane to Na^+ ions is increased and these diffuse from the

tissue fluid into the neuron cytoplasm. Local analgesics act as membrane stabilizers and inhibit the increase in permeability to Na^+ ions in response to stimulation. It is not exactly understood how this stabilization is brought about. One theory is that the analgesic agent becomes attached to receptor sites on the protein layer of the plasma membrane, reducing the permeability to Na^+ ions and preventing depolarization from taking place. Small-diameter nerve fibers are more readily blocked than large fibers, and nonmyelinated more readily blocked than myelinated. For these reasons, nerve fibers that conduct pain and temperature are most easily blocked and the large motor fibers are the least easily blocked. The small autonomic nerve fibers are blocked early and account for the rapid appearance of vasodilatation.

12. (a) *Synapse* is the name given to the site where two neurons come into close proximity and where functional interneuronal communication occurs. (b) Synaptic spines are extensions of the surface of a neuron and form receptive sites for synaptic contact with afferent boutons. (c) *Synaptic cleft* is the name given to the space that exists between the presynaptic and postsynaptic membrane at a synapse. It measures about 200 Å wide. (d) Presynaptic vesicles are small membrane-bound structures situated in the neuronal cytoplasm close to the presynaptic membrane. They are believed to store and be involved in the release of neurotransmitter substances. (e) Acetylcholine, norepinephrine, epinephrine, and dopamine are examples of important neurotransmitter substances at synapses.

13. (a) Tetraethylammonium salts and (b) hexamethonium salts. These salts closely resemble acetylcholine in structure and compete with acetylcholine at the postsynaptic membrane. By this means they successfully block a ganglion, although the amount of acetylcholine released is unaffected.

14. (a) Acetylcholine, (b) norepinephrine, and (c) dopamine.

15. The neuroblastoma is a tumor of primitive neuroblasts and arises either in the suprarenal medulla or upper abdominal sympathetic ganglia. It is very malignant and is confined to children. The tumor metastasizes early and the metastasis may be the reason the child receives medical attention, as in this case. The bones of the orbit are a common site for a neuroblastoma to metastasize.

Chapter 3

1. Neuroglia comprises about half the total volume of the central nervous system. Neuroglial cells outnumber neurons by 5 to 10 times.

2. *Macroglia* is the term commonly used to collectively name astrocytes and oligodendrocytes. Microglial cells are smaller than astrocytes and oligodendrocytes. They are scattered throughout the central nervous system and closely resemble connective tissue macrophages in function. Neuroglia consists of several varieties of nonexcitable cells found within the central nervous system. Neuroglial cells, which serve to support the neurons, are of four main types: (1) astrocytes, (2) oligodendrocytes, (3) microglia, and (4) ependyma.

3. The different functions of neuroglia are fully discussed on page 73. Researchers increasingly feel that neuroglial cells probably play a far greater role in the function of the central nervous system than has been determined so far.

4. The reaction of tissue of the central nervous system to injury is characterized by the hyperplasia and hypertrophy of the astrocytes. The proliferation of the astrocytes is often referred to as *astrocytosis* or *gliosis*. The degree of gliosis is much greater in the presence of residual damaged brain tissue than with a clean surgical incision. The resulting scar tissue, so-called *gliotic scar,* in the case of a penetrating gunshot wound, may be extensive and may give rise to focal or generalized epileptic attacks. The majority of such patients who become epileptic do so within two years (Miller and Stern, 1965). After careful examination of these patients, including the perfor-

mance of radiography, encephalography, and electroencephalography, the trauma site should be explored with a view to removing the gliotic scar. Such a scar will be replaced by a much smaller surgical scar. This operative intervention cures many of these patients.

5. A history of severe headaches and nausea and the finding of a choked optic disc (swelling of the optic disc, congestion of the retinal veins, and retinal hemorrhages) are not always diagnostic of a brain tumor. However, the finding of weakness of the lateral rectus muscle of the right eye owing to compression of the right sixth cranial nerve against the floor of the skull, together with the positive radiological and other laboratory tests, made the diagnosis certain. The glioma (tumor of neuroglia) is the most common type of tumor found in such a patient. Unfortunately, gliomas tend to infiltrate the brain tissue and cannot be completely removed surgically. A biopsy is taken to establish the diagnosis, as much of the tumor is removed as is clinically feasible, and the area is treated by deep x-ray therapy postoperatively.

Chapter 4

1. The median nerve is a mixed peripheral nerve and contains motor, sensory, and autonomic nerve fibers. The nerve fibers are axons of nerve cells and the majority are myelinated. The nerve fibers are arranged in parallel bundles and each fiber is supported by delicate connective tissue called *endoneurium*. Bundles of nerve fibers are surrounded by a connective tissue sheath called the *perineurium*. Several bundles are surrounded by a dense connective tissue sheath called the *epineurium*.

2. Nervous tracts are bundles of nerve fibers found in the brain and spinal cord and the majority are myelinated. Some of the main structural differences between a nervous tract and a peripheral nerve fiber are as follows:

Nervous Tract
oligodendrocyte
mesaxon absent in mature fibers
Schmidt-Lanterman incisures present
nerve fibers supported by neuroglia

Peripheral Nerve Fiber
Schwann cell
mesaxon present in mature fibers
Schmidt-Lanterman incisures present
nerve fibers supported by connective tissue sheaths, endoneurium, perineurium, and epineurium

3. (a) The myelin sheath is not part of a neuron; it is formed by a supporting cell, the oligodendrocyte in the central nervous system, and the Schwann cell in the peripheral nervous system. The myelin sheath serves as an insulator and separates the axolemma from the surrounding tissue fluid; it thus plays an important role in nerve conduction (see p. 99). The sheath is formed from the plasma membrane of the supporting cell (oligodendrocyte or Schwann cell) and consists of a series of laminae of lipoprotein. (For further details, see p. 87.) (b) The node of Ranvier is the gap that exists between two adjacent Schwann cells (or oligodendrocytes, in the central nervous system) in a myelinated nerve; nodes of Ranvier do not exist in a nonmyelinated nerve. A myelinated nerve can be stimulated only at a node of Ranvier. (c) Schmidt-Lanterman incisures are seen on longitudinal sections of myelinated nerve fibers. They represent areas of localized persistence of Schwann cell cytoplasm. They involve all the layers of the myelin and there is thus a continuous spiral of cytoplasm from the outermost region of the Schwann cell to the region of the axon. It may serve as a pathway for the conduction of metabolites from the surface region of the Schwann cell to the axon. Schmidt-Lanterman incisures also occur in myelinated nerve fibers of the central nervous system. (d) Satellite cells in sensory and autonomic ganglia envelop the neuron cell bodies. They should be regarded as modified Schwann cells and probably serve to insulate the neurons from adjacent nervous activity.

4. Myelination is fully described on page 87. Myelin sheaths begin to be formed during the last

part of fetal development and during the first year postnatally.

5. In the central nervous system a single oligodendrocyte may be responsible for the formation of myelin for as many as 60 nerve fibers. Clearly, it would not be possible for an oligodendrocyte to rotate on each axon as did the Schwann cell in the peripheral nervous system. It is believed that in the central nervous system the mesaxon grows in length and wraps itself around the axon.

6. (a) The smaller axons in the central nervous system, (b) postganglionic axons of the autonomic part of the nervous system, and (c) fine sensory pain fibers.

7. Peripheral nerve fibers may be classified into groups according to their size and speed of conduction. Group or type A fibers are 1 to 22 μ in diameter and they conduct at the rate of 5 to 120 meters per second. They are myelinated somatic efferent and afferent fibers. Group or type B fibers are 1 to 3 μ in diameter and they conduct at 3 to 15 meters per second. They are myelinated, efferent, preganglionic, autonomic fibers.

The resting membrane potential is the potential difference across the axolemma when a nerve fiber is at rest. A typical resting potential is 80 mV.

The absolute refractory period is the short period of time that immediately follows the passage of a nerve impulse when a second stimulus, however strong, is unable to excite the nerve.

Conduction velocity and saltatory conduction are fully explained on page 102.

8. (a) The microscopic changes that occur in the proximal and distal segments of a divided peripheral nerve are fully described on page 103. Remember that in the proximal segment the changes occur only as far proximally as the next node of Ranvier, whereas the changes spread distally from the site of the lesion and include its terminations. (b) If one bears in mind the considerations outlined on pages 106–110 and that the surgeon has the experience to perform nerve suture, the following treatment should be instituted. If the knife was clean the nerve should be immediately sutured and any arterial damage repaired. On the other hand, if the knife was contaminated or the wound was more than 6 hours old, the wound should be treated and the nerve ignored. In the latter case, when the wound has healed and there is no sign of residual infection the nerve ends should be explored and sutured together without tension. In either case, the paralyzed muscles are protected with a suitable splint and the joints are gently exercised daily. (c) Once the regenerating axons have entered the distal segment, the nerve distal to the section becomes very sensitive to mechanical stimulation (Tinel's sign). (d) Sensory recovery occurs first. Deep pressure sensation is the first sign of recovery. This is followed by the return of superficial cutaneous pain and vasomotor control of blood vessels, later the sensations of heat and cold return, and later still light touch and tactile discrimination reappear. Sensory recovery occurs before there is return of voluntary movement. (e) For clinical purposes a figure of 1.5 mm daily is the average rate of regeneration. It is possible, using this figure, to determine approximately how long it will take for a regenerating nerve to reach its end organs.

9. (a) *Wallerian degeneration* is the term used to describe the changes that occur in the distal segment of an axon following its section. The details are fully described on page 103. (b) The band fiber is the endoneurial sheath and the contained cords of Schwann cells that replace the degenerated peripheral nerve following nerve section. The band fiber will serve to guide regenerating axons to their end organs. A band fiber is not formed in the central nervous system. (c) Transneuronal degeneration occurs in the central nervous system when one group of neurons is injured and a second group, farther along the pathway and serving the same function, undergoes degeneration.

10. Bell's palsy is caused by an inflammatory swelling of the seventh cranial nerve (facial nerve)

in the facial nerve canal of the skull. Since the canal is bony, the nerve cannot expand and consequently becomes compressed and ischemic. In severe cases the muscles of facial expression are paralyzed on one side of the face and there is loss of taste sensation in the anterior part of the tongue on the same side. Apart from giving steroids to reduce the inflammatory reaction and massage of the paralyzed muscles, no further treatment is necessary. The majority recover completely. There existed in this patient a serious residual palsy after 3 years. A treatment that has been successful in many cases is to section the hypoglossal nerve below and behind the angle of the mandible and the anastomosis of its proximal end to the distal end of the facial nerve. Although the right half of the tongue would be paralyzed, this causes little disability. A reasonable return of facial movement can be expected. Note that both the hypoglossal and facial nerves are peripheral nerves and therefore regeneration is possible. The prognosis is especially good since the hypoglossal nerve is purely a motor nerve.

11. Lead causes neuronal degeneration in the central nervous system and demyelination in the tracts of the spinal cord and peripheral nerves. The treatment is to remove the child from the source of the lead and to aid rapid excretion by administering a chelating agent, calcium disodium versenate. Nontoxic lead versenate is excreted in the urine.

12. The cauda equina consists of the anterior and posterior roots of the spinal nerves below the level of the first lumbar segment of the spinal cord. These are peripheral nerves with endoneurial sheaths and Schwann cells and therefore regeneration will take place if adequate treatment is promptly instituted.

13. As the result of experiments in which dyes have been injected into peripheral nerves, spaces have been demonstrated between individual nerve fibers in the endoneurium. These spaces are believed to provide the route for the ascent of the tetanus toxin to the spinal cord.

14. A benign fibroma or a malignant sarcoma may arise in the connective tissue of the endoneurium, perineurium, or epineurium. Neurolemmomas are thought to arise from Schwann cells.

15. Xylocaine is a local anesthetic that, when applied to a nerve fiber, blocks nerve conduction. The anesthetic acts on the axolemma and interferes with the transient increase in permeability of the axolemma to Na^+ ions and in the resting axon reduces the permeability of the axolemma to Na^+, K^+, and other ions. The small diameter pain fibers are more susceptible to the action of this drug.

16. *Neuropraxia* is the term applied to a transient nerve block. Pressure is the most common cause and this case was due to the pressure of the upper edge of the chair back on the brachial plexus in the axilla. The loss of function is probably caused by ischemia of the nerve fibers. There is no microscopic evidence of degeneration. Axonotmesis is the term applied to a nerve lesion where the axons are damaged but the surrounding connective tissue sheaths remain intact. Neurotmesis is the term applied to complete section of the nerve trunk.

The prognosis in this patient is excellent for rapid, complete recovery. It is important that the paralyzed muscles not be stretched by antagonist muscles or by gravity. Therefore, suitable splints should be applied and gentle passive movement of the joints should be performed once daily.

17. Degeneration occurs in the central nervous system in a manner similar to that found in the peripheral nervous system. The axon breaks up into small fragments and the debris is digested by the neighboring microglial cells. The myelin sheath is broken down into lipid droplets, which are also phagocytosed by the microglial cells.

There is an attempt at regeneration of the axons as evidenced by sprouting of the axons, but there is no evidence that restoration of function ever oc-

curs. The reasons for the failure of regeneration are fully described on page 105.

Chapter 5

1. Syringomyelia is a chronic disease of the spinal cord of unknown etiology. It is characterized by the appearance of a fluid-filled cavity within the spinal cord that gradually enlarges, causing destruction of surrounding nervous tissue. In this patient, the cavity or syrinx was located in the lower cervical and upper thoracic segments of the cord, causing destruction of the ascending tracts that serve pain and temperature from the upper limbs. The syrinx was encroaching on the motor anterior horn cells of both sides also, causing weakness of the small muscles of the hands.

Although the exact anatomical structures that are responsible for the reception of pain and temperature are not known, the free nerve endings are the most likely. Some authorities believe that Krause's corpuscles may also be sensitive to changes in temperature. The examination of a patient to test different sensory modalities is discussed on page 132.

2. The only sensory receptors present in the cornea are free nerve endings. The cornea is sensitive to light touch and temperature changes in addition to pain.

3. The Pacinian corpuscles are the largest sensory receptors (excluding the eye and the ear). They measure up to 4.5 mm long and 1 to 2 mm wide.

4. Touch, including pressure, heat, cold, and pain, are the four modalities of cutaneous sensation. The fact that the distribution of these sensitive areas is punctate caused the older anatomists to search for specific receptors. Many researchers, having elicited a particular sensation in a skin area, excised the skin and examined it microscopically. None of the workers were able with certainty to label cold endings, touch endings, and pain endings. In fact, in the cornea the only endings to be found are free nerve endings, and yet we know that the cornea is sensitive to pain, light, touch, and temperature changes. With our present knowledge, we believe that sensory reception is not dependent upon specific histological structures, but rather on the delivery to the brain of large numbers of sensory impulses in a particular pattern.

5. All hair follicles possess a rich innervation. Free nerve endings are found as a branching network that winds around the follicle below the entrance of the sebaceous duct. Merkel's discs also are found in the epidermis of the follicle. The hair shaft acts as a lever, so that the slightest movement of the hair readily stimulates the nerve endings in the hair follicle. In this patient, who was suffering from trigeminal neuralgia, the temporal region of the scalp was the trigger area, which on stimulation initiated the intense stabs of pain in the distribution of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve.

6. Numerous free nerve endings are found in the connective tissue of tendons and the testes. Normally, squeezing of these structures elicits an aching type of pain. In tabes dorsalis the disease process affects the sensory neurons in the posterior roots of the spinal nerves and not the receptor endings.

7. The intrafusal fibers are stretched when the entire muscle is stretched. The annulospiral and the flower spray endings are stimulated, and impulses reach the spinal cord through afferent neurons. The large alpha motor neurons situated in the anterior gray horns of the spinal cord are stimulated and nerve impulses reach the extrafusal fibers, which form the main muscle mass, and the muscle contracts.

Thus it is seen that the intrafusal fibers play an important role in the control of skeletal muscle activity. There are two types of intrafusal fibers: (a) nuclear bag fibers, which are associated with position and velocity of contraction, and (b) nuclear chain fibers, which are concerned with static, slow contractions. Nerve impulses traveling in the gamma efferent motor fibers reach the intrafusal

fibers. They cause the polar regions of the intrafusal fibers to contract, thus stretching the equatorial region. If the stretching process is sufficiently great, the annulospiral and flower spray endings will be stimulated. This mechanism allows the extrapyramidal motor system (see p. 124) to influence voluntary muscle activity.

8. Within all tendons of skeletal muscle there are neurotendinous spindles. Each spindle consists of a fibrous capsule and intrafusal tendon fibers. (See p. 124.) Club-shaped nerve endings are situated between the intrafusal fibers. Stretching of the tendon results in deformation and consequent stimulation of the nerve endings and afferent nerve impulses pass up the femoral nerve to enter the spinal cord at the level of L2, 3, and 4.

9. (a) Annulospiral endings that are associated with the intrafusal muscle fibers of neuromuscular spindles in skeletal muscle; these are sensitive to stretch. (b) Flower spray endings that are associated with intrafusal muscle fibers of neuromuscular spindles in skeletal muscle; these are also probably sensitive to stretch. (c) Neurotendinous spindles with club-shaped nerve endings; these are sensitive to stretch. (d) Free nerve endings found in the connective tissue of muscle; these are probably sensitive to pain.

10. (a) A motor unit consists of a single motor neuron and the group of muscle fibers that it supplies. (b) A neurovascular hilus is in a more or less constant position and is where the nerve supply and blood supply enter a skeletal muscle. (c) A sole plate is a slightly elevated site on a skeletal muscle fiber at the neuromuscular junction; it constitutes the muscular element of the junction. The elevation is due to the local accumulation of granular sarcoplasm beneath the sarcolemma and the presence of numerous nuclei and mitochondria. (d) The junctional folds of a neuromuscular junction are folds of sarcolemma in the floor of the surface groove in which lies the naked axon of the motor nerve; they serve to increase the surface area of the sarcolemma that lies close to the axon. (e) The synaptic cleft of a neuromuscular junction is the space that is situated between the plasma membrane of the axon (axolemma) and the plasma membrane of the muscle fiber (sarcolemma); it measures about 200 to 500 Å wide.

11. To test position sense, the patient is placed in the supine position and asked to close his eyes. The big toe is grasped at the sides between the thumb and index finger and extended and flexed. The patient is asked, on completion of each movement, the position of the toe — is it pointing up or down? Another simple test is to ask the patient, again with the eyes closed, to place his right heel on his left shin and run it down the shin to the dorsum of the left foot. The patient is then asked to repeat the performance with the left heel on the right shin.

Vibratory sense may be tested by placing the handle of a vibrating tuning fork on the tibial tuberosity, the anterior border of the tibia, and the medial or lateral malleoli. The patient is asked to indicate when he first feels the vibration and when it ceases. Symmetrical points on the two limbs may be compared and the physician can use his own limbs as a control. In the normal individual the sense of position depends on the central nervous system's receiving adequate information from the pressure receptors (Pacinian corpuscles) in the joint capsules and ligaments; touch receptors (free nerve endings) in the tissues in and around joints; and the stretch receptors in the muscles and tendons (especially the neurotendinous spindles).

Vibration sense is normally believed to be due to the stimulation of superficial and deep pressure receptors (Pacinian corpuscles).

The appreciation of the passive movements of joints, postural sensibility, and vibration sense are often lost in tabes dorsalis due to syphilitic destruction of the posterior columns of the spinal cord and degeneration of the posterior roots.

12. D-tubocurarine, dimethyl tubocurarine, gallamine, and benzoquinonium are examples of competitive blocking agents. These drugs compete with the neurotransmitter acetylcholine. The

competitive blocking agents are believed to combine with the same sites at the postjunctional membrane (sarcolemma) of the motor end-plate normally used by acetylcholine.

13. Decamethonium and succinylcholine paralyze skeletal muscle by causing depolarization of the motor end-plate.

14. *C. botulinum* produces a toxin that inhibits the release of acetylcholine at the motor end-plate. Death results from paralysis of the respiratory muscles.

15. Skeletal muscles that are not used, for example in a limb fitted with a plaster cast immobilizing a fracture, undergo disuse atrophy. The longer the muscles are not used, the greater the degree of atrophy, and in severe cases, it may amount to as much as a quarter of the muscle mass. The muscle fibers rapidly atrophy following section of a motor nerve, so that the total mass of the muscle may be reduced by as much as three-quarters in as little as 3 months. The precise reason for this severe atrophy is not understood, but apparently the maintenance of normal muscle depends on the continued reception of acetylcholine at the postjunctional membrane at the neuromuscular junction. The latter mechanism would, of course, be impossible if the motor nerve were sectioned and the distal end had degenerated.

16. This patient is suffering from myasthenia gravis. The insidious onset of muscle fatigue, with early involvement of the extraocular muscles, the facial muscles, then the pharyngeal and palatal muscles, with acerbations and remissions is characteristic. The intramuscular injection of an anticholinesterase drug, such as neostigmine, results in prompt relief of the muscular weakness. The possible causes of myasthenia gravis are fully discussed on page 134.

17. The smooth muscle of the bladder wall (the detrusor muscle) receives its innervation from the postganglionic parasympathetic fibers of the pelvic plexus. Each nerve fiber branches extensively, so that a single neuron exerts control over a large number of muscle fibers. The nerve fibers are nonmyelinated and terminate as varicosed branches. An interval of 100 Å to 1000 Å may exist between the axon and the muscle fiber. The Schwann cell is retracted so that the axon lies within a shallow groove on its surface. Thus part of the axon is naked, permitting the free diffusion of acetylcholine from the axon to the muscle cell. Acetylcholine is the neurotransmitter that brings about depolarization of the smooth muscle fiber and its contraction. Because acetylcholine is rapidly destroyed by the cholinesterases, it cannot be used clinically to bring about contraction of the detrusor muscle. Methylcholine chloride and carbechol chloride are less susceptible to destruction by the cholinesterases and could therefore be used in clinical practice.

Chapter 6

1. Your knowledge of the dermatomes of the lower limb will enable you to ascertain that the patient's pain was felt in the area of distribution of the fifth lumbar and first sacral nerve roots. The involvement of these roots is usually due to herniation of the fourth or fifth lumbar intervertebral disc.

2. Herpes zoster is a viral infection of the posterior root ganglia (or sensory ganglia of the cranial nerves), the posterior root, or the posterior gray horn of the spinal cord. This patient experienced pain and had a skin eruption in the area of distribution of the fifth left intercostal nerve. The virus was producing an acute inflammation at some point along the course of the sensory neurons of the fifth segment of the spinal cord on the left side.

3. The trigeminal (fifth cranial) nerve innervates the skin of the greater part of the face. The next dermatome that occurs inferior to this is that of the second cervical nerve. The sixth to the twelfth cranial nerves do not innervate the skin of the face. At the junction of the neck with the thorax,

the fourth cervical dermatome is contiguous with the second thoracic dermatome; the anterior rami of the lower cervical and first thoracic spinal nerves have lost their cutaneous distribution on the neck and trunk during the development of the upper limb.

4. (a) The physical examination revealed weakness of the rhomboid, deltoid, and biceps brachii muscles, which are innervated by the fifth and sixth cervical segments of the spinal cord. These spinal cord segments lie within the vertebral foramina of the sixth and seventh cervical vertebrae, respectively. (b) The fifth and sixth cervical segments of the spinal cord are being pressed upon. (c) The biceps brachii reflex arc involves the fifth and sixth segments of the spinal cord. (d) The rhomboids and deltoid muscles showed diminished muscle tone because the reflex arcs upon which their tone depends travel through the compressed segments of the spinal cord, i.e., the reflex arcs were no longer functioning normally. Because of the pressure of the tumor on the cervical region of the spinal cord, the nervous pathways passing down to lower segments of the spinal cord were interrupted. This resulted in the motor anterior gray column cells of the segments of the cord below the level of compression receiving diminished information from the higher centers, with a consequent increase in muscle tone.

5. Any disease process that can interrupt the normal functioning of the basic spinal reflex arc upon which skeletal muscle tone is dependent will cause loss of muscle tone. Some examples are: spinal shock following trauma to the spinal cord; section of or pressure upon a spinal nerve, a posterior root, or an anterior root; syringomyelia; and poliomyelitis.

6. Tabes dorsalis, which is a syphilitic infection of the brain and spinal cord, produces degeneration of the central processes of the posterior root ganglion cells and also, usually, the ganglion cells themselves. The lower thoracic and lumbar sacral segments of the cord are involved first, and the interruption of the proprioceptive fibers results in impairment of appreciation of posture, and the tendency to fall down if one closes the eyes while standing.

7. In a normal individual standing and walking are largely automatic but, as you have read in this chapter, these activities are highly complex and require the proper integration of neural mechanisms at all levels of the spinal cord and brain. The basic mechanism underlying muscle tone is the spinal segmental reflex. In order to maintain normal posture, these reflex arcs must receive adequate nervous input from higher levels of the nervous system. Diseases involving the corpus striatum (caudate and lentiform nuclei) or the substantia nigra result in an alteration in the pattern of nervous impulses impinging on the anterior horn cells of the spinal cord; hence the abnormal muscle tone. The increased tone is equal in extent in opposing muscle groups. The tremor of the parkinsonian syndrome is produced by the alternating movements of the agonist and antagonist muscles of a joint. The tremor is most prominent when the limb is at rest, ceases temporarily when voluntary movement is performed, and then starts again when the movement is completed. The tremor ceases when the patient is asleep. The exact cause of the tremor is unknown, but some authorities believe that it is due to the release of the activity of the lentiform nucleus (globus pallidus) as the result of interruption of its inhibitory connections. Surgical damage to the globus pallidus or its connections, in these patients, can reduce the tremor and muscle rigidity.

8. The syndrome of petit mal commonly has three sets of symptoms: (a) myoclonic jerks, in which the patient experiences sudden involuntary contraction of the muscles of the trunk and extremities, (b) akinetic seizures, in which there is a sudden loss of tone in all muscles of the body, and (c) brief losses of consciousness, in which the patient loses contact with his environment for a few seconds.

9. Destruction of the anterior gray column cells in the lumbar and sacral regions of the spinal cord resulted in paralysis and atrophy of the muscles of both legs. The twitching of groups of muscle fibers is referred to as muscular fasciculation and is commonly seen in patients with chronic disease affecting the anterior horn cells.

10. (a) Muscular hypotonia is present on the same side of the body as the lesion. Passively move the joints on the right side of the body and then on the left side and compare the resistance to these movements by the muscles on the two sides of the body. (b) Posture. The shoulder girdle on the affected side drops, because of loss of muscle tone. With the patient disrobed ask him to stand up straight with his back toward you. With a unilateral cerebellar lesion the shoulder on the affected side may be lower than that on the opposite, normal side. (c) Disorders of voluntary movement (ataxia) due to loss of muscle coordination. The finger-nose test and the heel-knee test are described on page 147. These tests will reveal ataxia on the side of the body in which the lesion is situated. (d) Nystagmus. This may be defined as an involuntary to-and-fro movement of the eyes. It is commonly demonstrated in cerebellar disease and is due to lack of muscle coordination. When the eyes are turned horizontally laterally there are quick, rhythmic jerks in the direction of gaze. In unilateral cerebellar lesions, the amplitude of nystagmus is greater and its rate slower when the eyes are rotated toward the side of the lesion than when they are displaced to the opposite side.

Chapter 7

1. This patient was suffering from cervical spondylosis with pressure on the anterior and posterior roots of the fifth and sixth spinal nerves. As the result of repeated trauma and of aging, degenerative changes occurred at the articulating surfaces of the fourth, fifth, and sixth cervical vertebrae. Extensive spur formation, owing to new bone growth, resulted in narrowing of the intervertebral foramina with pressure on the nerve roots. The burning pain, hyperesthesia, and partial analgesia were due to pressure on the posterior roots, and the weakness, wasting, and fasciculation of the deltoid and biceps brachii muscles were due to pressure on the anterior roots. Movements of the neck presumably intensified the symptoms by exerting further traction or pressure on the nerve roots. Coughing or sneezing raised the pressure within the vertebral canal and resulted in further pressure on the nerve roots.

2. The patient was operated on and a laminectomy of the third, fourth, and fifth thoracic vertebrae was carried out. At the level of the fourth thoracic vertebra a small swelling was seen on the posterior surface of the spinal cord; it was attached to the dura mater. Histological examination showed that it was a meningioma. The tumor was easily removed and the patient successfully recovered from the operation. There was a progressive recovery in the power of the lower limbs, and the patient is now walking without a stick. This patient emphasizes the importance of making an early, accurate diagnosis, because benign extramedullary spinal tumors are readily treatable. The lateral spinal thalamic tracts are responsible for the conduction of pain impulses up the spinal cord. These tracts are situated in the lateral white columns of the spinal cord (see p. 157). Postural sense and vibration sense are conducted up the spinal cord in the posterior white column through the fasciculus cuneatus from the upper limbs and the upper part of the thorax, and in the fasciculus gracilis from the lower part of the trunk and the leg. The difficulty in walking was due to pressure on the corticospinal tracts in the lateral white column. The exaggeration in the tendon reflexes of the lower limbs and the bilateral extensor plantar responses were due to the pressure on the descending tracts in the spinal cord at the level of the tumor. This also resulted in spastic paralysis of the muscles of the lower limbs.

3. A detailed description of the procedures for performing a lumbar puncture are given on page 33. The pressure of fluid can be measured and this is raised in patients, for example, with intra-

cranial tumor or hemorrhage, hydrocephalus, meningitis, and encephalitis. The normal pressure is between 50 and 150 mm of water. A sample of cerebrospinal fluid may be obtained so that cytological and chemical analysis can be performed. For details of the normal composition of cerebrospinal fluid, see page 163. Normal cerebrospinal fluid is clear and colorless. Substances may be inserted into the subarachnoid space, e.g., antibiotics and anesthetics, and opaque media may be introduced in order to perform myelography.

4. Queckenstedt's sign is positive if the cerebrospinal fluid pressure, measured by means of a lumbar puncture, does not rise promptly following the application of pressure to the internal jugular veins in the neck. It indicates that the subarachnoid space is blocked. (For details, see p. 33.)

5. The blood supply to the spinal cord is fully described on page 161. The anterior spinal artery supplies the anterior two-thirds of the spinal cord. The thoracic segments of the spinal cord have a relatively poor supply of blood, because only a few radicular arteries join the anterior spinal artery in this region.

6. Compare your diagram with that shown in Figure 7-2. Also read the description of the gray matter of this region on page 151.

7. Compare your diagram with that shown in Figure 7-7. Also read the descriptions of the white matter and the arrangement of the major ascending and descending tracts on page 157. In syringomyelia, a long cavity or cavities surrounded by gliosis appear close to the central canal in the upper cervical region of the spinal cord. The patients exhibit, principally, pain and thermal sensory loss with muscular wasting, especially in the small muscles of the hand. Later, involvement of the lateral white column results in loss of function in the corticospinal and other descending tracts, with spastic paralysis of the lower limbs. Involvement of the descending fibers of the sympathetic part of the autonomic system may produce a Horner's syndrome. (See p. 428.)

8. The lack of filling with radiopaque material of the lateral extension of the subarachnoid space around the fourth left thoracic spinal nerve in the myelogram would indicate that this extension was being pressed upon by a space-occupying lesion in the lateral part of the vertebral canal or within the intervertebral foramen. The lesion may have been a tumor or a herniated intervertebral disc. The lateral extension of the subarachnoid space around each spinal nerve is due to the meninges being prolonged laterally around the anterior and posterior spinal nerve roots. Within the intervertebral foramen the meninges fuse with the epineurium around the spinal nerve.

9. The statement is correct. Unfortunately, many students, on examining thin transverse sections of the spinal cord, forget that the sections enable them to see the cells in only two dimensions, while in fact these cell groups extend up and down the spinal cord as columns of cells.

10. (a) The ligamentum denticulatum is formed as a thickening of pia mater. The ligamenta denticulata are situated on both sides of the spinal cord between the spinal nerve roots of adjacent segments of the spinal cord. They extend laterally, where they terminate as toothlike attachments to the dura. They suspend the spinal cord within the dural sheath. (b) The filum terminale is a fibrous cord that is a prolongation of the pia mater extending from the apex of the conus medullaris to be attached inferiorly to the back of the coccyx. Its function is to anchor the spinal cord inferiorly. (c) The substantia gelatinosa is a group of nerve cells situated at the apex of the posterior gray column throughout the length of the spinal cord. The nerve cells are concerned mainly with the conduction of the sensations of pain, temperature, and touch. (d) The nucleus proprius is a group of large nerve cells situated in the posterior gray horn anterior to the substantia gelatinosa throughout the length of the spinal cord. They are associated with

the proprioception, tactile discrimination, and vibration senses. (e) The anterior gray commissure is that part of the gray matter located anterior to the central canal of the spinal cord. The anterior and posterior gray commissures together constitute what is known as the gray commissure of the spinal cord.

Chapter 8

1. Until involvement of one of the last four cranial nerves occurs, localization of a lesion to the medulla oblongata remains uncertain. For example, involvement of the main ascending sensory pathways or descending pathways may be caused by a lesion in the medulla, the pons, the midbrain, or the spinal cord. Involvement of the glossopharyngeal nerve can be detected by inadequacy of the gag reflex and loss of taste sensation on the posterior third of the tongue. Involvement of the vagus nerve can be assumed if the patient demonstrates some of, or all, the following symptoms: impairment of pharyngeal sensibility, difficulty in swallowing, nasal regurgitation of fluids with asymmetry of movement of the soft palate, and hoarseness of the voice with paralysis of the laryngeal muscles. The cranial part of the accessory nerve is distributed within the vagus nerve so that it is not possible to test for this nerve alone. The spinal part of the accessory nerve, which supplies the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles, arises from the spinal cord (see p. 374) and, therefore, is unaffected by tumors of the medulla. The hypoglossal nerve involvement may be tested by looking for wasting, fasciculation, and paralysis of one-half of the tongue.

2. The malformation in which the cerebellum and the medulla oblongata are found in the cervical part of the vertebral canal is known as the Arnold-Chiari malformation. This condition is a common cause of infantile hydrocephalus. The hydrocephalus may be due to distortion or malformation of the openings in the roof of the fourth ventricle, which normally allow the cerebrospinal fluid to escape into the subarachnoid space. A myelocele is commonly associated with this malformation. The reason for this is not exactly known, although several authors believe that the myelocele is the primary cause and that it tethers the lower part of the spinal cord to the surrounding tissues at the time when disproportionate growth of the spinal cord and the vertebral column occurs. This would serve to pull the medulla oblongata and the cerebellum inferiorly through the foramen magnum into the vertebral canal.

3. This patient is suffering from a thrombosis of the posterior inferior cerebellar artery on the right side. The vertigo is due to the involvement of the cerebellum. The hot, painful skin sensations are due to the involvement of the spinal tract and nucleus of the trigeminal nerve on the right side. The abnormal movement of the soft palate and the fixation of the right vocal cord are due to involvement of the nucleus of the vagus and accessory nerve on the right side. The ptosis, enophthalmos, and myosis (Horner's syndrome) are due to involvement of the descending fibers of the sympathetic part of the autonomic nervous system. The pointing of the tongue to the right is caused by involvement of the right hypoglossal nucleus. The loss of pain and temperature sensations on the opposite side of the body are due to involvement of the ascending lateral spinothalamic tracts. This characteristic clinical syndrome results from cutting off the arterial supply to a wedge-shaped area in the posterolateral part of the medulla oblongata and the inferior surface of the cerebellum.

4. The ninth, tenth, and cranial part of the eleventh cranial nerves emerge from the medulla oblongata in a groove between the olives and the inferior cerebellar peduncles.

Chapter 9

1. This 10-year-old girl later was found to have an astrocytoma of the pons. The right unilateral facial weakness, together with weakness of the right lateral rectus muscle of the eye, was due to involvement of the right facial and abducent nuclei by the tumor. The absence of paresthesia of the face indicated that the principal sensory nucleus of the

trigeminal nerve was intact on both sides. The weakness in the movements of the left arm and left leg was due to the involvement of the corticospinal fibers in the pons. (Remember that the majority of these fibers cross over to the opposite side at the decussation of the pyramids in the medulla.)

2. "Pinpoint" pupils indicate that the constrictor pupillae muscles are strongly contracted and the dilator pupillae muscles are paralyzed. The dilator pupillae muscles are supplied by the sympathetic fibers, which descend through the pons (position not precisely known) to the lateral gray columns of the thoracic part of the spinal cord. Here the fibers synapse and the thoracolumbar sympathetic outflow occurs (see p. 409).

3. The deafness and vertigo were due to lesions in the cochlear and vestibular nuclei in the upper part of the pons. The double vision (diplopia) was produced by the involvement of the abducent nerve nucleus on the right side of the pons. The history of severe headaches and vomiting was due to a progressive rise in intracranial pressure caused by a tumor of the pons. The right unilateral facial palsy was due to the involvement of the right facial nerve nucleus. The sensory impairment of the skin of the middle and lower part of the right side of the face was due to the tumor involvement of the principal sensory nucleus of the right trigeminal nerve.

Chapter 10

1. This man, at operation, was found to have an astrocytoma of the right cerebellar hemisphere. This fact explains the occurrence of unilateral symptoms and signs. The lesion was on the right side and the clumsiness, tremor, muscle incoordination, and hypotonia occurred on the right side of the body. The progressive worsening of the clinical condition could be explained on the basis that more and more of the cerebellum was becoming destroyed as the tumor rapidly expanded. The flaccidity of the muscles of the right arm and leg was due to hypotonia, i.e., a removal of the influence of the cerebellum on the simple stretch reflex involving the muscle spindles and tendon organs. The clumsiness, tremor, and overshooting on the finger-nose test were due to lack of cerebellar influence on the process of coordination between different groups of muscles. The falling to the right side, the tilting of the head, and the drooping of the right shoulder were due to loss of muscle tone and fatigue.

2. A diagnosis was made of medulloblastoma of the brain in the region of the roof of the fourth ventricle, with involvement of the vermis of the cerebellum. The child died 9 months later after extensive deep x-ray therapy. The sudden onset of vomiting, the increased size of the head beyond normal limits, the sutural separation, and the severe bilateral papilledema could all be accounted for by the rapid rise in intracranial pressure owing to the rapid increase in size of the tumor. The broad-based, unsteady gait and the tendency to fall backward (or forward), and not to one side, indicate a tumor involving the vermis. The presence of bilateral hypotonia, especially during the later stages, was due to involvement of both cerebellar hemispheres. At autopsy the tumor was found to have extensively invaded the fourth ventricle, and there was evidence of internal hydrocephalus because the cerebrospinal fluid had been unable to escape through the foramina in the roof of the fourth ventricle.

3. Nystagmus, an involuntary oscillation of the eyeball, may occur physiologically, as when a person watches rapidly moving objects, or by rapid rotation of the body. It commonly occurs in diseases of the nervous system, eye, and inner ear. In cerebellar disease, nystagmus is due to ataxia of the muscles moving the eyeball. There is lack of coordination between the agonists and antagonists involved in the eyeball movement. For full understanding of the different forms of nystagmus, a textbook of neurology should be consulted.

4. The different types of neurons found in the cerebellar cortex are fully described on pages

189–194. The functions of these different cells are fully discussed on page 196 under Cerebellar Cortical Mechanisms. Remember that a great deal more research is required into the fine structure and physiology of these cells before we shall fully understand the functions of this interesting, computerlike organ.

5. Acute lesions, such as those resulting from a thrombosis of a cerebellar artery or a rapidly growing tumor, produce sudden severe symptoms and signs owing to the sudden withdrawal of the influence of the cerebellum on muscular activity. Patients can recover quickly from large cerebellar injuries, and this can be explained on the basis that the cerebellum influences muscular activity not directly but indirectly through the vestibular nuclei, reticular formation, red nucleus, tectum, and corpus striatum and the cerebral cortex; it may well be that these other areas of the central nervous system take over this function. In chronic lesions, the symptoms and signs are much less severe and there is enough time to allow the other areas of the central nervous system to compensate for loss of cerebellar function.

6. The climbing fibers are one set of afferent fibers to the cerebellar cortex. They originate in the olives and pass into the cortex "climbing" through the granular and Purkinje layers to end by synapsing on the dendrites of a single Purkinje cell.

The mossy fibers are the second set of afferent fibers to the cerebellar cortex. They originate from many areas of the central nervous system (see p. 343) except the olives, and pass into the granular layer of the cortex. They terminate by synapsing with many granular cell processes. Their mode of termination closely resembles the branching of the small leafy plant called moss.

7. The cerebellar peduncles, of which there are three pairs, superior, middle, and inferior, are composed of bundles of nerve fibers that pass to and from the cerebellum, connecting it with the remainder of the nervous system. The fiber content of each is described on page 196.

The middle cerebellar peduncle is the largest of the peduncles and is made up entirely of the corticopontocerebellar fibers that originate in the neurons of the pontine nuclei. The fibers then cross the midline as the transverse fibers of the pons and pass through the middle cerebellar peduncle to reach the cortex of the neocerebellum of the contralateral hemisphere. These fibers constitute an important link between the cerebral cortex and the cerebellum.

8. The intracerebellar nuclei are situated in each cerebellar hemisphere. They are, from lateral to medial: the dentate, the emboliform, the globose, and the fastigial nuclei. The axons of the neurons of these nuclei form the main outflow from the cerebellum to the remainder of the central nervous system. It follows, therefore, that if these nuclei are destroyed, the cerebellum is totally cut off from influencing the rest of the nervous system (except connections that pass directly from the Purkinje cells to the vestibular nuclei). If the cortex and the nuclei both are destroyed, clearly, the cerebellum is no longer functioning.

9. A person who has a unilateral lesion involving one cerebellar hemisphere demonstrates absence of coordination between different groups of muscles on the same side of the body. This disturbance affects not only agonists and antagonists in a single joint movement, but all associated muscle activity. For example, a normal person when walking swings his arms at both sides; in cerebellar disease this activity would be lost on the side of the lesion.

Chapter 11

1. This man was operated on and found to have a large astrocytoma of the vermis of the cerebellum. The tumor had severely encroached upon the cavity of the fourth ventricle, producing internal hydrocephalus and pressure on the floor of the ventricle.

The symptoms of headache and persistent vomiting were produced by a raised intracranial pressure caused by the enlarging tumor. The tumor also blocked off the median and lateral apertures in the roof of the fourth ventricle, causing an

internal hydrocephalus, which further raised the intracranial pressure. The bilateral papilledema was secondary to the raised intracranial pressure. The inability to sit up in bed (truncal ataxia) and the loss of equilibrium on standing were due to the tumor involvement of the vermis of the cerebellum. The loss of tone of the muscles of the right limbs indicated spread of the tumor to involve the right cerebellar hemisphere. Central deafness on the right side was due to involvement of the right eighth cranial nerve nuclei by the tumor mass. The patient died 6 months after neurosurgical exploration.

2. Steroid hormones (e.g., prednisone) inhibit the normal inflammatory reaction and thereby reduce the incidence of fibrous adhesions. Such adhesions may block the openings in the roof of the fourth ventricle, thus preventing the escape of cerebrospinal fluid into the subarachnoid space from within the ventricular system. Adhesions also may prevent the flow of cerebrospinal fluid over the cerebral hemispheres or reduce the absorption of the fluid into the arachnoid granulations. Thus it is seen that adhesions of the meninges may result in hydrocephalus.

3. (a) Central aperture in roof (foramen of Magendie), (b) two lateral apertures in roof (foramina of Luschka), (c) central canal of medulla oblongata and spinal cord (there is no opening into the subarachnoid space from this canal), and (d) cerebral aqueduct of midbrain (leads into the third and lateral ventricles but there is no opening into the subarachnoid space).

4. The superior medullary velum is a thin sheet of white matter connecting the two superior cerebellar peduncles. It is covered on the outside by pia mater and is lined on the inside by ependyma. It forms the superior part of the roof of the fourth ventricle. The function of the white matter is not known.

The inferior medullary velum has no nervous tissue within it and consists of a layer of pia mater lined with ependyma. It forms the lower part of the roof of the fourth ventricle and stretches between the inferior cerebellar peduncles. It has a large aperture in the midline, the *median aperture,* and the choroid plexus is suspended from the inferior medullary velum (see p. 210). The important function of the median aperture and the function of the choroid plexus are described on page 210.

5. The important structures that lie beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle are as follows:

Beneath the superior half and within the pons are the abducent nerve nucleus, part of the seventh cranial nerve, which loops around it to form the facial colliculus, and the vestibular nuclei.

Beneath the inferior half and within the medulla oblongata are the hypoglossal nucleus, the dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus, and the vestibular nuclei.

Chapter 12

1. The herniated uncus and the subdural hemorrhage caused pressure of the opposite crus cerebri of the midbrain against the sharp edge of the tentorium. The distortion of the midbrain caused narrowing of the cerebral aqueduct, further raising the supratentorial pressure by blocking the passage of cerebrospinal fluid from the third to the fourth ventricle. Under these circumstances, severe hemorrhage may occur within the midbrain and affect the third and fourth cranial nerve nuclei and various important descending and ascending tracts.

2. This child had hydrocephalus. The physical examination and the special tests showed that the third and lateral ventricles of the brain were grossly dilated owing to the accumulation of cerebrospinal fluid in these cavities. Mechanical obstruction to the flow of cerebrospinal fluid from the third into the fourth ventricle through the cerebral aqueduct was present. After the possibility of the presence of cysts or resectable tumors had been excluded, it was assumed that the cause of the obstruction was a congenital atresia or malformation of the cerebral aqueduct. If the condition were progressing, i.e., the block in the aqueduct was complete and the head continued to

increase in size at an abnormal rate, some form of neurosurgical procedure should have been performed whereby the cerebrospinal fluid would be shunted from the third or lateral ventricles into the subarachnoid space, or into the venous system of the neck.

3. Two years later the patient died. At autopsy a large astrocytoma was found that involved the central part of the tegmentum at the level of the superior colliculi. The patient had exhibited all signs and symptoms associated with a raised intracranial pressure. The raised pressure was due in part to the expanding tumor, but the problem was compounded by the developing hydrocephalus resulting from blockage of the cerebral aqueduct.

The symptoms and signs exhibited by the patient when he was first seen by the neurologist could be explained by the presence of the tumor in the central gray matter at the level of the superior colliculi, and involving the third cranial nerve nuclei on both sides. This resulted in bilateral ptosis, bilateral ophthalmoplegia, and bilateral fixed, dilated pupils. The resting position of the eyes in a downward and lateral position was due to the action of the superior oblique muscle (trochlear nerve) and lateral rectus muscle (abducent nerve).

4. The patient had a hemorrhage into the right side of the tegmentum of the midbrain that involved the right third cranial nerve. The ascending tracts of the left trigeminal nerve also were involved. After emerging from the sensory nuclei of the left trigeminal nerve, they cross the midline and ascend through the trigeminal lemniscus on the right side. The loss of sensation seen in the left upper and lower limbs was due to involvement of the right medial lemniscus. The athetoid movements of the left leg could be explained on the basis of the involvement of the right red nucleus. The absence of spasticity of the left arm and leg would indicate that the lesion did not involve the right descending tracts. For further clarification, consult the descriptions of the various tracts (see pp. 268 and 335).

5. Autopsy later revealed a vascular lesion involving a branch of the posterior cerebral artery. Considerable brain softening was found in the region of the substantia nigra and crus cerebri on the left side of the midbrain. The left oculomotor nerve was involved as it passed through the infarcted area. The corticonuclear fibers that pass to the facial nerve nucleus and the hypoglossal nucleus were involved as they descended through the left crus cerebri (they cross the midline at the level of the nuclei). The corticospinal fibers on the left side were also involved (they cross in the medulla oblongata); hence the spastic paralysis of the right arm and leg. The left trigeminal and left medial lemnisci were untouched, which explains the absence of sensory changes on the right side of the body. This is a good example of Weber's syndrome.

Chapter 13

1. This man had a thrombosis of the thalamogeniculate branch of the right posterior cerebral artery. This resulted in a degenerative lesion within the right thalamus causing the impairment of superficial and deep sensations on the left side of the body. The contralateral hemiparesis, involving the left leg and left arm with increased muscle tone, was produced by edema in the nearby posterior limb of the right internal capsule causing blocking of the corticospinal fibers. As the edema resolved, the paralysis and spasticity improved. The choreoathetoid movements of the left leg and the intention tremor of the left arm were probably due to damage to the right thalamus or to the right dentatothalamic nerve fibers.

The development of the agonizing pain of the left leg—characteristic of the thalamic syndrome—was due to the lesion in the right thalamus.

2. This woman exhibited continuous uncoordinated activity of the proximal musculature of the right arm and right leg, resulting in the limbs being flung violently about. The muscles of the right side of the face were also slightly affected. This condi-

tion is known as *hemiballism*. It was caused by hemorrhage into the left subthalamic nucleus.

3. During the third decade, calcareous concretions appear in the neuroglia and connective tissue of the pineal gland. This provides a useful midline landmark to the radiologist. A lateral displacement of such a landmark would indicate the presence of an intracranial mass. In this patient, the pineal gland shadow was in the midline and all the other investigations, including computerized axial tomography, showed no evidence of a cerebral tumor.

4. Melatonin has been shown to cause the aggregation of melanin granules within the melanophores of amphibian skin. It has no action on the melanocytes of mammallian skin. Melatonin is produced in large quantities in the pineal gland by the enzyme hydroxymethyltransferase; the gland also is capable of converting serotonin into melatonin.

5. Adiposity alone or associated with genital dystrophy can occur with disease of the hypothalamus.

Chapter 14

1. The right middle frontal gyrus is located on the lateral surface of the frontal lobe of the right cerebral hemisphere. It is bounded superiorly and inferiorly by the superior and inferior frontal sulci, respectively. The right middle frontal gyrus is overlaid by the frontal bone of the skull.

2. The important central sulcus is large and runs downward and forward across the lateral aspect of each hemisphere. Superiorly, it indents the superior medial border of the hemisphere about 1 cm behind the midpoint; it lies between two parallel gyri. It is the only sulcus of any length that indents the superior medial border. The arrangement of the sulci and gyri is very similar on both sides of the brain. There are, however, great individual variations in the details of their arrangement.

3. The lateral ventricle is a C-shaped cavity situated within each cerebral hemisphere. The lateral ventricle wraps itself around the thalamus, the lentiform nucleus, and the caudate nucleus. It is divided into a body that occupies the parietal lobe, an anterior horn that extends into the frontal lobe, a posterior horn that extends into the occipital lobe, and an inferior horn that runs forward and inferiorly into the temporal lobe. The cerebrospinal fluid is produced in the choroid plexus of the lateral ventricle and drains through the small interventricular foramen into the third ventricle. In later life, the choroid plexus, especially in its posterior part, sometimes shows calcified deposits, which are occasionally revealed on radiographs, as in this case. This patient later was found to have a cerebral tumor that was compressing the left interventricular foramen; hence the enlarged left ventricle.

4. The corpus callosum occasionally fails to develop and in those patients no definite neurological signs and symptoms appear. If however, the corpus callosum is divided during a surgical procedure in the adult, the loss of interconnections between the two hemispheres becomes apparent (see p. 251).

5. The *corpus striatum* is the collective term for the caudate nucleus and the lentiform nucleus. The name is derived from the gross appearance of the horizontal brain slice of this region, which shows strands of gray matter connecting the head of the caudate nucleus through the white matter of the internal capsule to the putamen of the lentiform nucleus.

The basal ganglia comprise the caudate nucleus, the lentiform nucleus, and the amygdaloid nucleus (to which may be added the claustrum). The basal nuclei are the same structures as those that form the basal ganglia.

Chapter 15

1. The cerebral cortex is made up of six identifiable layers. In the motor cortex in the precentral gyrus, there is a lack of granular cells in the

second and fourth layers, and in the somesthetic cortex in the postcentral gyrus, there is a lack of pyramidal cells in the third and fifth layers. The motor cortex is thicker than the sensory cortex.

2. This patient had a cerebral tumor involving the left parietal lobe, with advanced destruction of the superior parietal lobule. This is the somesthetic association area, where the sensations of touch, pressure, and proprioception are integrated. It is essential that the patient be allowed to finger the object so that these different sensations can be appreciated.

3. This patient had a cerebrovascular lesion involving the left precentral gyrus. The damage to the pyramidal cells that give origin to the corticospinal fibers was responsible for the right-sided paralysis. The increased tone of the paralyzed muscles was due to the loss of inhibition caused by involvement of the extrapyramidal fibers (see p. 268).

4. Destructive lesions of the frontal eye field of the left cerebral hemisphere caused the two eyes to deviate to the side of the lesion and an inability to turn the eyes to the opposite side. The frontal eye field is considered to control voluntary scanning movements of the eye and is independent of visual stimuli.

5. A small discrete lesion of the primary motor cortex results in little change in muscle tone. Larger lesions involving the primary and secondary motor areas, which are the most common, result in muscle spasm. The explanation for this is fully given on page 268.

6. This patient is suffering from Jacksonian epileptic seizures, which in this case are caused by cerebral scarring secondary to the automobile injury. The weakness of the right leg immediately following the accident was due to damage to the superior part of the left precentral gyrus. Her initial attacks of epilepsy were of the partial variety and were caused by irritation of the leg area of the left precentral gyrus. In her last attack, the epileptiform seizure spread to other areas of the left precentral gyrus, thus involving most of the right side of her body, and she lost consciousness.

7. As the result of the patient and extensive histological researches of Brodmann, Campbell, Economo, and the Vogts, it has been possible to divide the cerebral cortex into areas that have a different microscopic arrangement and different types of cells. These cortical maps are fundamentally similar and the one proposed by Brodmann is used widely. Because the functional significance of many areas of the human cerebral cortex is not known, it has not been possible to closely correlate structure with function. In general, it can be said that the motor cortices are thicker than the sensory cortices, and that the motor cortex has less prominent second and fourth granular layers and has large pyramidal cells in the fifth layer. Other areas with a different structure may have similar functional roles. More recent studies using electrophysiological techniques have indicated that it is more accurate to divide the cerebral cortex according to its thalamocortical projections. The vertical chain mechanism of the cerebral cortex is fully described on page 261.

8. In this patient, the persistence of coarse voluntary movements of the right shoulder, hip, and knee joints can be explained only on the basis that the movements are performed by the ipsilateral cerebral hemisphere. Proof of this can be seen in patients in whom both precentral cortices have been destroyed; then both arms and both legs are completely paralyzed.

9. The professor's altered behavior was due to a severe lesion involving both frontal lobes of the cerebrum secondary to the depressed fracture of the frontal bone. While destruction of the prefrontal cortex does not cause a marked loss of intelligence, it does result in the individual's losing initiative and drive, and often the patient no longer conforms to the accepted modes of social behavior.

10. The understanding of spoken speech requires the normal functioning of the secondary auditory area, which is situated posterior to the primary auditory area in the lateral sulcus and in the superior temporal gyrus. This area is believed to be necessary for the interpretation of sounds.

11. The understanding of written speech requires the normal functioning of the secondary visual area of the cerebral cortex, which is situated in the walls of the posterior part of the calcarine sulcus on the medial and lateral surfaces of the cerebral hemisphere. The function of the secondary visual area is to relate visual information received by the primary visual area to past visual experiences.

12. *Coma* is the term applied to an unconscious patient. The patient will not speak and will respond only reflexly to painful stimuli or, in deeply comatose individuals, there will be no response. The eyes are closed and do not move.

Sleep is a changed state of consciousness and is discussed on page 271.

An electroencephalogram (EEG) is a recording of the electrical activity of the cerebral cortex made by placing electrodes on the scalp. Detection of abnormalities of the alpha, beta, and delta rhythms may assist in the diagnosis of cerebral tumors, epilepsy, and cerebral abscesses.

Chapter 16

1. The Kluver-Bucy syndrome consists of the signs and symptoms found in monkeys following bilateral removal of the temporal lobe. The monkeys become docile and unresponsive and display no signs of fear or anger. They have an increased appetite and increased sexual activity, which is often perverse. They are unable to recognize objects seen. Human subjects in whom the amygdaloid area is destroyed do not usually demonstrate this syndrome. It has, however, been described in humans following the bilateral removal of large areas of the temporal lobes.

2. The olfactory aura that preceded the general convulsions of the epileptic attack would indicate that the temporal lobe of the cerebral cortex was initially involved.

3. An autopsy study revealed extensive invasion of the hippocampus, fornix, and mammillary bodies in both cerebral hemispheres. It appears that the hippocampus is involved in the storage and categorizing of afferent information related to recent memory.

Chapter 17

1. The common sites for blockage of the flow of cerebrospinal fluid are where the passages are narrowest, namely, the interventricular foramina (foramina of Monro), the cerebral aqueduct, the median aperture in the roof of the fourth ventricle (foramen of Magendie), and the aperture in each lateral recess of the fourth ventricle (foramen of Luschka). It is possible for inflammatory exudate secondary to meningitis or a cerebral tumor to narrow down or even obliterate the opening in the tentorial notch so that the passage of the cerebrospinal fluid to the outer surface of the cerebral hemispheres is impeded or stopped.

2. The cerebrospinal fluid serves as a cushion between the brain and the surrounding skull bones. It permits pressure applied at one point on the skull to be evenly distributed over the brain surface. Unfortunately, the brain is suspended in the fluid and is free to move, so that damage due to distortion, or as the result of momentum, can still occur. For a discussion of these problems, see Chapter 36.

3. A ventriculogram may be obtained. This procedure consists of the introduction of air or oxygen into the lateral ventricle through a needle inserted through a burr hole in the skull.

Since the left lateral ventricle was the only part of the ventricular system that showed distention and distortion on the computerized axial tomogram, one can assume that the tumor had closed off the left interventricular foramen and therefore was in the vicinity of that foramen.

4. Hydrocephalus is a condition in which there is an abnormal increase in the volume of cerebrospinal fluid within the skull. Congenital atresia of the cerebral aqueduct, meningitis, tumors, and blockage of the arachnoid granulations by subarachnoid bleeding or inflammatory exudate are common causes of this condition in young children.

Chapter 18

1. The blood-brain barrier is a semipermeable barrier that exists between the blood and the extracellular spaces of the nervous tissue of the brain. It permits the passage of water, gases, glucose, electrolytes, and amino acids but it is impermeable to substances with a large molecular weight.

The antibiotic penicillin, when injected intramuscularly into a normal individual, is found in much lower concentrations in the cerebrospinal fluid than in the blood and this is due to the existence of the blood-brain barrier and the blood-cerebrospinal fluid barrier. Inflammation of the meninges results in an increased permeability of the meningeal blood vessels, and consequently the concentration of penicillin rises in the cerebrospinal fluid. It is important, however, for the treatment to be effective in patients with meningitis, to give very large doses of penicillin intravenously.

Sulfonamides, on the other hand, are less toxic to nervous tissue and rapidly cross the blood-brain and blood-cerebrospinal fluid barriers, so that an adequate concentration in the cerebrospinal fluid can easily be maintained.

2. The blood-brain barrier in the newborn child is more permeable than in the adult and indirect bilirubin readily crosses the barrier. Once the bile pigment reaches the extracellular spaces of the brain tissue it passes into the neurons and neuroglial cells. This results in abnormal cell function and eventually neuronal death.

3. The pineal gland, the posterior lobe of the pituitary, the tuber cinerium, the wall of the optic recess, and the vascular area postrema at the inferior end of the fourth ventricle are parts of the brain where the capillary endothelium contains open fenestrations across which proteins and small organic molecules may pass. It is in these areas that the blood-brain barrier appears to be absent.

The reason for the absence of the barrier in the pineal gland is not understood. It is possible that the pinealocytes, in order to function normally, require a close relationship with the blood plasma in order to sample the concentrations of melatonin, serotonin, sex hormones, and the pituitary hormones.

The absence of the blood-brain barrier in the region of the hypothalamus may allow this area of the brain to sample the chemical content of the plasma, so that appropriate modifications of metabolic activity may take place, thus protecting the nervous tissue as a whole.

Chapter 19

1. A fracture dislocation of the ninth thoracic vertebra would result in severe damage to the tenth thoracic segment of the spinal cord. The unequal sensory and motor losses on the two sides indicate a left hemisection of the cord. The narrow band of hyperesthesia on the left side was due to the irritation of the cord immediately above the site of the lesion. The band of anesthesia and analgesia was due to the destruction of the cord on the left side at the level of the tenth thoracic segment—i.e., all afferent fibers entering the cord at that point were interrupted. The loss of pain and thermal sensibilities and the loss of light touch below the level of the umbilicus on the right side were caused by the interruption of the lateral and anterior spinothalamic tracts on the left side of the cord.

2. This patient has the early signs and symptoms of syringomyelia. The gliosis and cavitation had resulted in interruption of the lateral and anterior spinothalamic tracts as they decussated in the anterior gray and white commissures of the spinal cord at the level of the eighth cervical and first thoracic segments of the spinal cord. Due to u

even growth of the cavitation, the condition was worse on the left than on the right side. Since tactile discrimination was normal in both upper limbs, the fasciculus cuneatus in both posterior white columns was unaffected. This dissociated sensory loss is characteristic of this disease.

3. The peculiar stamping gait and the swaying posture on closing the eyes are the characteristic signs of loss of appreciation of proprioceptive sensation from the lower limbs. These, together with the inability to detect the vibrations of a tuning fork placed on the medial malleoli of both legs, indicated that the patient had a lesion involving the fasciculus gracilis in both posterior white columns. Further questioning of this patient indicated that he had been treated for syphilis. The diagnosis was tabes dorsalis.

4. The treatment of intractable pain in terminal cancer is a difficult problem. The narcotic drugs with their strong analgesic action are usually used. The likelihood that these drugs will be habit-forming is accepted in a dying patient. An alternative treatment is surgical section of the nerve fibers carrying the sensations of pain into the nervous system. The techniques of posterior rhizotomy and cordotomy are described on page 317.

Chapter 20

1. The lower motor neuron in the spinal cord has its cell body and dendrites situated in the anterior gray column. The axon leaves the gray matter, crosses the white matter, and enters the anterior root of the spinal nerve. It then travels through the spinal nerve and peripheral nerve to innervate skeletal muscle.

Internuncial neurons are sometimes referred to as interneurons, or connector neurons. Large numbers are found in the anterior gray columns of the spinal cord in close relation to the lower motor neurons. Their function is to receive the descending fibers of the many descending tracts and other afferent sensory fibers, and to relay the information to the lower motor neurons. The part that these cells play in the production of the prolonged asynchronous discharge is discussed on page 330. The Renshaw cell is a special member of this group and inhibits the activity of the lower motor neuron (see p. 334).

The *final common pathway* is a term used to describe the lower motor neuron. It is the neuron that receives multiple impulses from different levels of the central nervous system and channels them along this common pathway to the muscle. The upper motor neurons have cell bodies situated at supraspinal levels. They give rise to nerve fibers that descend through the brainstem as corticonuclear fibers that end on cranial motor nerve nuclei, or as corticospinal fibers that descend in the spinal cord and influence the lower motor neurons in the cord.

2. Spinal shock is a temporary interruption of the physiological function of the spinal cord following injury. It may in part be a vascular phenomenon involving the gray matter of the spinal cord; on the other hand, some authorities believe it is due to the sudden interruption of the influence of the higher centers on the local segmental reflexes. Whatever the cause, it usually disappears after 1 to 4 weeks. The condition is characterized by a flaccid paralysis and loss of sensation and reflex activity below the level of the lesion; this includes paralysis of the bladder and rectum.

Paraplegia in extension and paraplegia in flexion follow severe injury to the spinal cord. Paraplegia in extension indicates an increase in the extensor muscle tone owing to the overactivity of the gamma efferent nerve fibers to the muscle spindles as the result of the release of these neurons from the higher centers. However, some neurologists believe that the vestibulospinal tracts are intact in these cases. Should all the descending tracts be severed, the condition of paraplegia in flexion occurs where the reflex responses are flexor in nature when a noxious stimulus is applied. It should be emphasized that paraplegia in extension and paraplegia in flexion occur only after spinal shock has ceased. Paraplegia in extension may change to paraplegia in flexion if the

damage to the spinal cord becomes more extensive and the vestibulospinal tracts are destroyed.

3. The term *pyramidal tract* simply means those corticospinal fibers that are grouped together in the medulla oblongata to form a visible swelling known as the pyramid. Clinicians often use the term too loosely and include the corticonuclear fibers (see p. 353) and even all the upper motor neurons under this term.

The term *extrapyramidal tracts* is used loosely by clinicians to include all descending pathways in the spinal cord other than those that are descending directly from the primary motor area of the cerebral cortex. The term is imprecise and should be dropped.

4. If it is assumed that this patient had a lesion in the left internal capsule following a cerebral hemorrhage, the corticospinal fibers would have been interrupted as they descended through the posterior limb of the internal capsule. Since the majority of these fibers crossed to the right side at the decussation of the pyramids, or lower down at the segmental level of the spinal cord, the muscles of the opposite side would have been affected. Interruption of these corticospinal fibers would have produced the following clinical signs: (a) Babinski sign positive, (b) loss of superficial abdominal and cremasteric reflexes, and (c) loss of performance of fine, skilled voluntary movements, especially at the distal ends of the limbs.

In patients with severe hemorrhage into the internal capsule, subcortical connections between the cerebral cortex and the caudate nucleus and the globus pallidus and other subcortical nuclei may be damaged. Moreover, some of the nuclei themselves may be destroyed. The interruption of other descending tracts from these subcortical centers would produce the following clinical signs: (a) severe paralysis on the opposite side of the body; (b) spasticity of the paralyzed muscles; (c) exaggerated deep muscle reflexes on the opposite side of the body to the lesion (clonus may be demonstrated); and (d) clasp-knife reaction, which may be felt in the paralyzed muscles.

5. A lateral radiograph of the thoracic part of the vertebral column showed a fracture dislocation involving the ninth thoracic vertebra. The first lumbar segment of the spinal cord is related to this vertebra. The first lumbar dermatome overlies the inguinal ligament and the total anesthesia over the right ligament would suggest a partial lesion of the spinal cord involving the total sensory input at that level. The loss of tactile discrimination and vibratory and proprioceptive sense in the right leg was caused by the interruption of the ascending tracts in the posterior white column on the right side of the spinal cord. The loss of pain and temperature sense in the skin of the left leg was due to destruction of the crossed lateral spinothalamic tracts on the right side at the level of the lesion. The loss of tactile sense in the skin of the left leg was caused by the destruction of the crossed anterior spinothalamic tracts on the right side. The spastic paralysis of the right leg and the right-sided ankle clonus were due to the interruption of the right-sided descending tracts other than the corticospinal tracts. The right-sided Babinski response was brought about by the interruption of the corticospinal fibers on the right side.

The complete motor and sensory loss of both legs and the absence of all deep tendon reflexes of both legs during the first 12 hours were due to spinal shock.

6. The spinal cord occupies the vertebral canal of the vertebral column and under normal circumstances, therefore, is well protected. Unfortunately, once the integrity of the bony protection is destroyed by a fracture dislocation, especially in the thoracic region, where the canal is of small diameter, then the bone can damage the cord and sever it just as a knife cuts through butter. It is essential that all patients suspected of having an injury to the spine be handled with great care to prevent the bones undergoing further dislocation and causing further injury to the cord. The patient should be carefully lifted by multiple supports under the feet, knees, pelvis, back, shoulders, and head and placed on a rigid stretcher or board for transportation to the nearest medical center.

7. Urinary infection secondary to bladder dysfunction is extremely common in paraplegic patients. The patient not only has lost control of the bladder but does not know when it is full. (For details on the autonomic control of the bladder, see p. 424.) An indwelling Foley catheter is placed in the bladder immediately for continuous drainage and antibiotic therapy is instituted.

Bedsores are very common in patients who have lost all sensory perception over their bony points, such as the ischial tuberosities and the sacrum. Bedsores are best prevented by (a) keeping the skin scrupulously clean, (b) frequently changing the position of the patient, and (c) keeping soft padding beneath the bony points.

Nutritional deficiency is common in active individuals who are suddenly confined to their beds and who are paralyzed. Loss of appetite must be combated by giving the patients a high-calorie diet that has all the required ingredients, especially vitamins.

Muscle spasms occur in paraplegia in extension or paraplegia in flexion and may follow only minor stimuli. Warm baths are helpful but occasionally, in extreme cases, nerve section may be necessary.

Pain occurs in the anesthetic areas in about a quarter of patients who have a complete section of the spinal cord. The pain may be burning or shooting and superficial, or deep visceral. Analgesics should be tried, but in some individuals rhizotomy or even chordotomy may be necessary.

An accurate prognosis is not possible until the stage of spinal shock has ended and this may last as long as 4 weeks.

8. The characteristic coarse tremor of the right hand (pill rolling) and right arm, the unsmiling masklike face with unblinking eyes, and the cogwheel rigidity of the involved muscles make the diagnosis of early paralysis agitans certain. Degenerative lesions occur in the substantia nigra and other subcortical nuclei, including the lentiform nucleus. The loss of normal function of these subcortical areas and the absence of their influence on lower motor neurons are responsible for the ased tone and tremor.

9. (a) Intention tremor occurs in cerebellar disease.
(b) Athetosis occurs in lesions of the corpus striatum.
(c) Chorea occurs in lesions of the corpus striatum.
(d) Dystonia occurs in disease of the lentiform nucleus.
(e) Hemiballismus occurs in disease of the opposite subthalamic nucleus.

Chapter 21

1. This 10-year-old girl had the symptoms and signs of Friedreich's ataxia. This is an inherited degenerative disease of the cerebellum and posterior and lateral parts of the spinal cord.

Degeneration of the cerebellum was revealed by the altered gait, clumsy movements of the right arm, tendency to fall to the right, intention tremor of the right arm and leg, hypotonocity of the right arm and right leg, and nystagmus of both eyes.

Involvement of the fasciculus gracilis and cuneatus was evidenced by loss of vibratory sense, loss of two-point discrimination, and loss of muscle joint sense of the lower limbs.

Corticospinal tract degeneration resulted in weakness of the legs and the presence of the Babinski plantar response. The exaggerated knee jerks were due to involvement of the upper motor neurons other than the corticospinal tract.

The loss of the ankle jerks was due to the interruption of the reflex arcs at spinal levels S1 and S2 by the degenerative process.

The clubfoot and scoliosis can be attributed to altered tone of the muscles of the leg and trunk over a period of many years.

Chapter 22

1. The medial strabismus of her right eye, the diplopia, and the inability to turn the right eye laterally were due to paralysis of the right lateral rectus muscle caused by a lesion of the abducent nerve. The glucosuria, high blood glucose, polyuria, polydipsia, and weight loss are the classic signs and symptoms of diabetes mellitus. The lesion of the abducent nerve was an example of *dia-*

betic neuropathy, a complication of untreated or poorly treated diabetes. Once the patient's diabetes was carefully controlled, the right lateral rectus palsy disappeared after 3 months.

2. This boy suffered from anosmia secondary to a lesion involving both olfactory tracts. The watery discharge from the nose was due to a leak of cerebrospinal fluid through the fractured cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone. It was the fracture and the associated hemorrhage that had damaged both olfactory tracts. Many normal individuals with an acute sense of smell cannot name common scents. Since both olfactory tracts communicate with each other through the anterior commissure, it is unlikely that a lesion of one olfactory cortex can produce complete anosmia.

3. This patient has a paralysis of the right superior oblique muscle resulting from a lesion of the trochlear nerve. Since the trochlear nerves decussate on emergence from the midbrain, the left trochlear nucleus is the site of the lesion. This patient had a thrombosis of a small artery supplying the left trochlear nucleus. The difficulty in reading, the diplopia, and the difficulty in walking downstairs were due to the paralysis of the right superior oblique muscle.

4. As the result of the great increase in the thickness of the bones due to new bone formation in osteitis deformans, mental deterioration may occur owing to compression of the cerebral hemispheres. Those cranial nerves that pass through relatively small foramina in the skull are liable to be compressed by the new bone growth. The nerves commonly involved are the vestibulocochlear and facial nerves, following narrowing of the internal acoustic meatus. The olfactory and optic nerves also may be compressed as they pass through the cribriform plate and the optic canal, respectively.

5. Multiple sclerosis may affect white matter in widely disseminated areas of the central nervous system. Although remissions may occur, it is inevitably progressive. Thirty years later, when this patient died, numerous areas of sclerosis were found throughout the brainstem and white matter of the spinal cord. It was noted that the region of the vestibular nuclei beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle was involved in the disease process.

6. The trapezius muscle is supplied by the spinal part of the accessory nerve. The spinal nucleus of this nerve in the upper five cervical segments of the spinal cord receives cortical fibers from both cerebral hemispheres. This would account for the absence of muscular weakness in this patient with a left-sided hemiplegia. For a muscle to atrophy (except for disuse atrophy) the integrity of the monosynaptic reflex arc must be destroyed. This was not the case in this patient.

7. The severe pain over the forehead and the right eye was due to irritation of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve by the slowly expanding aneurysm of the internal carotid artery as it was lying in the cavernous sinus. The double vision (diplopia) and the lateral deviation of the right eye were due to the unopposed action of the lateral rectus muscle (supplied by the abducent nerve). The dilatation of the right pupil, with loss of direct and consensual light reflexes, paralysis of accommodation, and paralysis of all right-sided ocular movement except laterally, were due to pressure on the right oculomotor nerve by the aneurysm. The nerve at this point is situated in the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus. Note that the lateral movement of the eyeball was accomplished by contracting the lateral rectus muscle (abducent nerve) and the inferolateral movement was due to the contraction of the superior oblique muscle (trochlear nerve).

8. The Argyll Robertson pupil is a common finding in neurosyphilis, although it may occur in other diseases. The lesion is believed to be located where the pretectal fibers pass to the oculomotor nuclei on both sides of the midbrain. This lesion effectively destroys the direct and consensual

reflexes of both eyes but leaves the pathway for the accommodation reflex intact. (For detail of pathway, see p. 357.)

9. a. Complete blindness of the right eye
   b. Bitemporal hemianopia
   c. Left homonymous hemianopia
   d. Left homonymous hemianopia
   e. Left homonymous hemianopia, usually with some macular sparing owing to the very large area of the cortex allotted to the macula

10. The glossopharyngeal nerve supplies the posterior one-third of the tongue with fibers that subserve common sensations and taste. This may be tested easily. The vagus nerve, by means of its pharyngeal branch, supplies many muscles of the soft palate and these may be tested by asking the patient to say "ah" and observing that the uvula is elevated in the midline. Additional tests may be carried out by observing the movements of the vocal cords through a laryngoscope.

The spinal part of the accessory nerve may be tested by asking the patient to shrug his shoulders by using the trapezius muscles or to rotate his head so that he looks upward to the opposite side by contracting the sternocleidomastoid muscles. Both these muscles are innervated by the spinal part of the accessory nerve.

11. It will be remembered that the afferent fibers entering the central nervous system through the trigeminal nerve pass either to the main sensory nucleus in the pons or to the spinal nucleus situated in the medulla oblongata and the first two cervical segments of the spinal cord. The sensations of touch and pressure are served by the main sensory nucleus, while those of pain and temperature are served by the more inferiorly placed spinal nucleus. In this patient, the lesion of syringomyelia was situated in the medulla oblongata and the cervical part of the spinal cord.

The wrinkled, wasted right half of the tongue [illegible]e pointing of the protruded tongue to the right indicated a lesion of the right hypoglossal nerve at some point between its nucleus in the medulla oblongata and the tongue muscles supplied. This patient had advanced bronchogenic carcinoma of the right lung with numerous metastases in the deep cervical lymph nodes. One of the metastases had invaded the right hypoglossal nerve.

13. The physician grouped together the facial paralysis, the slurred speech, and the hypertension, and, in the absence of other findings, made the erroneous diagnosis of cerebral hemorrhage. Unfortunately, the physician had forgotten his neuroanatomy. A lesion of the corticonuclear fibers on one side of the brain will cause paralysis only of the muscles of the lower part of the opposite side of the face. This patient had a complete paralysis of the entire right side of the face, which could be due only to a lesion of the lower motor neuron. The correct diagnosis was Bell's palsy, an inflammation of the connective tissue sheath of the facial nerve that recovers within 2 weeks in the majority of patients.

14. The vagal nuclei are: (a) main motor nucleus, (b) parasympathetic nucleus, and (c) sensory nucleus. The main motor and parasympathetic nuclei are controlled by both cerebral hemispheres, so that hemiplegia will have no effect on the movement of the vocal cords. The vagal nuclei are practically continuous with the nuclei of the glossopharyngeal and accessory nerves and these usually are involved together in lesions of the medulla oblongata.

Chapter 24

1. This boy was suffering from *Frohlich's syndrome* secondary to a chromophobe adenoma of the anterior lobe of the hypophysis. This space-occupying lesion had gradually eroded the sella turcica of the skull and had compressed the optic chiasma, producing bitemporal hemianopia. The size of the tumor was causing a raised intracranial pressure that was responsible for the headaches and attacks of vomiting. Pressure on the hypo-

thalamus interfered with its function and resulted in the characteristic accumulation of fat in the trunk, especially the lower part of the abdomen. The hypogonadism and absence of secondary sex characteristics could have been due to pressure of the tumor on the hypothalamic nuclei and the consequent loss of control on the anterior lobe of the hypophysis, or it may have been due to the direct effect of the tumor pressing on the neighboring cells of the anterior lobe of the hypophysis.

2. This patient is now suffering from diabetes insipidus. The condition was caused either by damage to the posterior lobe of the hypophysis during removal of the anterior lobe or by surgical damage to the supraoptic nucleus of the hypothalamus or the hypothalamohypophyseal tract. In any event, production of vasopressin was inhibited. It should be pointed out that surgical removal of the posterior lobe of the hypophysis is usually not followed by diabetes insipidus, since the vasopressin produced by the supraoptic nucleus escapes directly into the bloodstream from the supraoptic nucleus. The action of vasopressin on the distal convoluted tubules of the kidney is fully explained on page 402.

3. Hydrocephalus, caused by blocking the three foramina in the roof of the fourth ventricle or by blocking the cerebral aqueduct, will result in a rise in pressure in the third ventricle, with pressure on the hypothalamus. This pressure on the hypothalamus, which is situated in the floor and lower part of the lateral walls of the third ventricle, if great enough, could easily cause malfunctioning of the hypothalamus.

4. The hypothalamus is the main subcortical center regulating the parasympathetic and sympathetic parts of the autonomic system. It exerts its influence through descending pathways in the reticular formation.

5. The hypothalamohypophyseal tract is described on page 402 and the hypophyseal portal system is described on page 403. Remember that the hypothalamus exerts its control over metabolic and visceral functions through the hypophysis cerebri and the autonomic system.

Chapter 25

1. As the result of holding onto the moving truck with the right hand, this man had sustained a severe traction injury of the eighth cervical and first thoracic roots of the brachial plexus. The various paralyzed forearm and hand muscles together with the sensory loss were characteristic of Klumpke's paralysis. In this case, the pull on the first thoracic nerve was so severe that the white ramus communicantes to the inferior cervical sympathetic ganglion was torn. This effectively cut off the preganglionic sympathetic fibers to the right side of the head and neck, causing a right-sided Horner's syndrome. This was exemplified by (a) constriction of the pupil, (b) drooping of the upper lid, and (c) enophthalmos. The arteriolar vasodilatation, due to loss of sympathetic vasonconstrictor fibers, was responsible for the red, hot cheek on the right side. The dryness of the skin of the right cheek also was due to loss of the sympathetic secretomotor supply to the sweat glands.

2. This 3-year-old boy has Hirschsprung's disease. This is a congenital condition in which there is a failure of development of the myenteric plexus (Auerbach's plexus) in the distal part of the colon. The proximal part of the colon is normal but becomes greatly distended due to the accumulation of feces. In this patient, the lower pelvic colon, later at operation, was shown to have no parasympathetic ganglion cells. Thus, this segment of the bowel had no peristalsis and effectively blocked the passage of feces. Once the diagnosis had been confirmed by taking a biopsy of the distal segment of the bowel, the treatment was to remove the aganglionic segment of the bowel by surgical resection.

3. This patient has given a classic history of Raynaud's disease. The disease is much more common in women than in men, especially those who have a nervous disposition. The initial

of the fingers is due to spasm of the digital arterioles. The cyanosis that follows is due to local capillary dilatation due to accumulation of metabolites. Since there is no blood flow through the capillaries, there is an accumulation of deoxygenated hemoglobin within them. It is during this period of prolonged cyanosis that the patient experiences severe aching pain. On exposing the fingers to warmth, the vasospasm disappears and oxygenated blood flows back into the very dilated capillaries. There is now a reactive hyperemia and an increase in the formation of tissue fluid that is responsible for the swelling of the affected fingers. The sweating of the fingers during the attack probably is due to the excessive sympathetic activity, which may be responsible in part for the arteriolar vasospasm.

The arteries of the upper limb are innervated by sympathetic nerves. The preganglionic fibers originate from the cell bodies in the second to the eighth thoracic segments of the spinal cord. They ascend in the sympathetic trunk to synapse in the middle cervical, inferior cervical, and first thoracic or stellate ganglia. The postganglionic fibers join the nerves that form the brachial plexus and are distributed to the digital arteries within the branches of the brachial plexus.

In this patient the attacks were relatively mild. The patient should be reassured and told to keep her hands warm as much as possible. However, should the condition worsen and should there develop a possibility of gangrene of the fingertips, the operation of cervicothoracic preganglionic sympathectomy should be carried out. This would be followed by arterial vasodilatation with consequent increase in blood flow to the fingers.

4. This patient was suffering from gallstone colic. The visceral pain originated from the cystic duct or common bile duct and was due to stretching or spasm of the smooth muscle in its wall. The pain afferent fibers pass through the celiac ganglia and ascend in the greater splanchnic nerve to enter the fifth to the ninth thoracic segments of the spinal cord. The pain was referred to the fifth through ninth thoracic dermatomes on the right side, i.e., to the skin over and inferior to the right scapula. For a full discussion of referred pain, see page 430.

5. This patient has an Argyll-Robertson pupil, which is a small fixed pupil that does not react to light, but contracts with accommodation. The condition usually is due to a syphilitic lesion. The innervation of the iris is described on page 418. The neurological lesion in this patient interrupted the fibers running from the pretectal nucleus to the parasympathetic nuclei of the oculomotor nerve on both sides.

6. The urinary bladder is innervated by sympathetic fibers from the first and second lumbar segments of the spinal cord and by parasympathetic fibers from the second, third, and fourth sacral segments of the spinal cord. In this patient, the cauda equina was sectioned at the level of the third lumbar vertebra. This meant that the preganglionic sympathetic fibers that descend in the anterior roots of the first and second lumbar nerves were left intact since they leave the vertebral canal to form the appropriate spinal nerves above the level of the bullet. The preganglionic parasympathetic fibers were, however, sectioned as they descended in the vertebral canal within the anterior roots of the second, third, and fourth sacral nerves. The patient would, therefore, have an autonomous bladder and would be without any external reflex control. The bladder would fill to capacity and then overflow. Micturition could be activated by powerful contraction of the abdominal muscles by the patient, assisted by manual pressure on his anterior abdominal wall in the suprapubic region.

7. The sympathetic outflow refers to the origin of the preganglionic sympathetic fibers from the spinal cord from the first thoracic to the second lumbar segments. The parasympathetic outflow refers to the origin of the preganglionic parasympathetic fibers in the cranial nerves 3, 7, 9, and 10, and the gray matter of the spinal cord at the level of the second, third, and fourth sacral segments.

8. The precise cause of essential hypertension is unknown. Nevertheless, the objective of the treatment is to lower the blood pressure and keep it, if possible, within normal limits before the complications of cerebral hemorrhage, renal failure, or heart failure develop. The best way to accomplish this is to bring about vasodilatation and lower the peripheral resistance of the circulatory system. Ganglion blocking agents, such as hexamethonium, act on parasympathetic and sympathetic ganglia and remove the vasoconstrictor influence of the sympathetic part of the autonomic nervous system on the peripheral arterioles. They also reduce the tone of the smooth muscle in the walls of the veins, causing venous pooling and thus diminishing the return of the blood to the right side of the heart. The undesirable side effects are due to the blocking of the parasympathetic ganglia, which causes paralysis of ocular accommodation, impotence, dryness of the mouth, and constipation.

Guanethidine is a sympathetic blocking agent. It becomes concentrated at the postganglionic sympathetic endings and blocks the release of norepinephrine from the nerve endings. Unfortunately, it has side effects, such as inducing sleepiness.

9. (a) Acetylcholine, (b) acetylcholine, (c) acetylcholine, (d) norepinephrine, and (e) acetylcholine.

10. Sympathetic endings that use norepinephrine as a transmitter substance are called *adrenergic endings*. There are two kinds of receptors called *alpha* and *beta receptors* for adrenergic endings. For details, see page 415.

Chapter 26

1. Loss of function of the dominant hemisphere results in not only the loss of acquired skills of the dominant hand but also the loss of certain mental functions. The degree of disability depends on the degree of dominance of one hemisphere over the other. A child's brain possesses a degree of flexibility that is not present in the adult, so that good recoveries can be expected in the young child.

The meninges and the cerebrospinal fluid afford a remarkable degree of protection to the delicate brain. The dural partitions limit the extent of brain movement within the skull.

The thin-walled cerebral veins are liable to be damaged during excessive movements of the brain relative to the skull, especially at the point where the veins join the dural venous sinuses. The thick-walled cerebral arteries are rarely damaged.

The small diameter cranial nerves of long length are particularly prone to damage during head injuries. The trochlear, abducent, and oculomotor nerves are commonly injured.

2. Meningiomas arise from the arachnoid villi found along the dural venous sinuses. They are, therefore, most commonly found along the superior sagittal sinus and the sphenoparietal sinuses. They are rare below the tentorium cerebelli.

3. The anterior facial vein, the ophthalmic veins, and the cavernous sinus are in direct communication with one another. Infection of the skin of the face alongside the nose, ethmoidal sinusitis, and infection of the orbital contents may lead to thrombosis of the veins and ultimately cavernous sinus thrombosis. If untreated with antibiotics, this condition may be fatal, since the cavernous sinus drains many cerebral veins from the inferior surface of the brain.

4. The internal carotid artery passes forward on the lateral surface of the body of the sphenoid within the cavernous sinus. An aneurysm of the artery may press on the abducent nerve and cause paralysis of the lateral rectus muscle. Further expansion of the aneurysm may cause compression of the oculomotor nerve and the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve as they lie in the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus. This patient had left lateral rectus paralysis and paralysis of the left pupillary constrictor muscle owing to involvement of the abducent and oculomotor nerves respectively. The slight anesthesia of the skin over left forehead was due to pressure on the ophthalmic division of the left trigeminal nerve.

5. The optic nerves are surrounded by sheaths derived from the pia mater, arachnoid mater, and dura mater. There is an extension of the intracranial subarachnoid space forward around the optic nerve to the back of the eyeball. A rise in cerebrospinal fluid pressure due to an intracranial tumor will compress the thin walls of the retinal vein as it crosses the extension of the subarachnoid space. This will result in congestion of the retinal vein and bulging of the optic disc, involving both eyes.

6. During the descent of the fetal head through the birth canal in labor, the bones of the calverium overlap, a process known as molding. If this process is excessive or takes place too rapidly, as in malpresentations or in premature deliveries (when there is rapid birth of a small fetus), an abnormal strain is put on the falx cerebri. This stress involves the superior sagittal sinus, especially if the anteroposterior compression is excessive, and the sinus may tear where it joins the transverse sinus. The great cerebral vein also may tear. The result is either a subarachnoid or subdural hemorrhage with accompanying brain damage.

7. The initial loss of consciousness was due to concussion or cerebral trauma. The swelling over the right temporalis and the X-ray finding of a fracture over the right middle meningeal artery were due to hemorrhage from the artery into the overlying muscle and soft tissue. This patient had an extradural hemorrhage. The right homolateral hemiplegia was due to the compression of the left cerebral peduncle against the edge of the tentorium cerebelli. This is unusual. A left hemiplegia due to pressure on the right precentral gyrus is more common. The right-sided, fixed, dilated pupil was due to the pressure on the right oculomotor nerve by the hippocampal gyrus, which had herniated through the tentorial notch.

8. A subdural hematoma is an accumulation of blood clot in the interval between the meningeal layer of dura and the arachnoid mater. It results from tearing of the superior cerebral veins at their point of entrance into the superior sagittal sinus. The cause is usually a blow on the front or the back of the head, causing excessive anteroposterior displacement of the brain within the skull.

Chapter 27

1. The circulus arteriosus lies within the subarachnoid space at the base of the brain and essentially is formed by the anastomosis of the two internal carotid and two vertebral arteries and their branches. The anterior communicating, the anterior cerebral, the internal carotid, the posterior communicating, the posterior cerebral, and the basilar arteries all contribute to the circle. The functional importance of the circle is that it provides a collateral circulation should one of the main arteries to the brain be temporarily or permanently occluded. The size of the various components of the circle is subject to considerable variation, but small vessels can enlarge if there is a demand for an increased blood supply (see Cerebral Circulation for more detail, on p. 464).

2. Once the terminal branches of the cerebral arteries enter the brain substance, no further anastomoses occur. Blockage of such end arteries by disease is quickly followed by neuronal death and necrosis. The surrounding neuroglia then usually proliferates and invades the area, producing a neuroglial scar or forming a cystic cavity. The following important anastomoses exist between the cerebral arteries: (1) the circulus arteriosus of Willis, (2) anastomoses between the branches of the cerebral arteries on the surface of the cerebral hemispheres and the cerebellar hemispheres, and (3) anastomoses between the branches of the internal and external carotid arteries: (a) at their origin at the common carotid artery, (b) at the anastomosis between the branches of the ophthalmic artery within the orbit and the facial and maxillary arteries, and (c) between the meningeal branches of the internal carotid artery and the middle meningeal artery.

3. The work of McDonald and Potter in 1951 showed that the posterior communicating artery is the site where the streams of blood from the internal carotid and vertebral arteries on the same side come together, and since their pressures at

this point are equal, they do not mix. Nevertheless, in clinical practice, good filling of the posterior cerebral artery with radiopaque material with carotid angiography occurs in about 25 percent of patients. Slight filling also may be seen in other normal individuals. The variable results can be explained on the basis that the size of the arteries making up the arterial circle is subject to considerable variation and consequently the blood flow in different individuals may vary.

4. The sudden severe headache followed by loss of consciousness is a common clinical finding in patients with a blockage of a cerebral artery. Intraventricular hemorrhage associated with this condition is often responsible for the severe headache. The depth of coma is related to the extent of the arterial blockage. The following signs indicate that the cerebral lesion occurred on the left side of the brain: (a) paralysis of the lower part of the face on the right side, (b) the corneal reflex absent on the right side, (c) the patient's head and eyes turned to the side of the lesion, i.e., to the left, (d) the muscle tone in the limbs initially diminished on the right side and then increased above normal as the weeks pass, (e) the loss of the right abdominal reflexes and the presence of a positive Babinski response on the right side, and (f) the presence of right hemianesthesia.

The following physical signs strongly suggested involvement of the left middle cerebral artery or its branches: (a) The paralysis of the right side of the face and the right arm was more severe than that of the right leg; (b) aphasia. It will be remembered that the middle cerebral artery supplies the entire lateral surface of the hemisphere, except for the narrow strip supplied by the anterior cerebral artery, the occipital pole, and the inferolateral surface of the hemisphere, which are supplied by the posterior cerebral artery. Central branches supply the lentiform and caudate nuclei and the internal capsule.

5. A history of a sudden collapse in an elderly woman, followed by coma and recovery of consciousness 24 hours later, with left-sided hemiplegia (mainly involving the leg) and left-sided hemianesthesia, is strongly suggestive of cerebrovascular disease with a lesion involving the right cerebral hemisphere. The paralysis mainly involving the leg would indicate that the right anterior cerebral artery or one of its branches was blocked by a thrombus or embolus.

6. The occlusion of the cortical branches of the left posterior cerebral artery will give rise to right-sided homonymous hemianopia because of the ischemia of the primary visual area in the calcarine fissure. The escape of the macular region could be accounted for by the overlapping of the arterial supply of this area of the occipital lobe by the left posterior and left middle cerebral arteries. The right-sided hemianesthesia and the severe burning pain in the right leg are referred to clinically as the thalamic syndrome and are due to occlusion of one of the central branches of the left posterior cerebral artery that supplies the sensory nuclei of the left thalamus. The presense of a mild fleeting right-sided hemiparesis could be explained by a temporary occlusion of a branch of the left posterior cerebral artery to the left cerebral peduncle.

7. Atheromatous plaques tend to occur at the following sites: (a) carotid sinus of the internal carotid artery at or just beyond the bifurcation of the common carotid artery, (b) the first main bifurcation of the middle cerebral artery, (c) where the vertebral arteries join to form the basilar artery, (d) where the anterior cerebral artery curves superiorly and posteriorly over the genu of the corpus callosum, (e) where the posterior cerebral artery passes around the lateral side of the cerebral peduncle.

8. A stroke may be defined as a sudden development of a neurological defect, usually associated with the development of some degree of hemiplegia and sometimes accompanied by unconsciousness; it is usually caused by a cerebrovascular accident. The symptoms and signs will depend on the cause of the interruption of cerebral blood flow and the size of the artery involved. For exam-

ple, cerebral embolism or cerebral hemorrhage is a sudden event, whereas the development of atherosclerosis in a patient with hypertension is a slow process that suddenly may become worse when thrombosis occurs at the site of the atheromatous plaque. Hemiplegia is the most common sign, but many additional sensory defects may develop that will depend on the artery blocked, for example, hemianesthesia, hemianopia, dysphasia, and dysarthria.

9. Occlusion of the middle cerebral artery or its branches can produce, in addition to paralysis of the muscles of the opposite side of the body, contralateral hemianesthesia owing to ischemia of the postcentral gyrus and homonymous hemianopia owing to ischemia of the optic radiation.

Occlusion of the anterior cerebral artery or its branches may produce contralateral sensory loss of the leg, feet, and toes owing to ischemia of the leg area of the cerebral cortex. Occlusion of the posterior cerebral artery or its branches may produce contralateral homonymous hemianopia owing to ischemia of the primary visual area in the region of the calcarine fissure. If the branches to the thalamus also are blocked, there will, in addition, be contralateral hemianesthia and possibly the development of severe pain in the same areas.

The above sensory deficits are the main ones seen. The degree of sensory involvement will depend on the size and number of branches of the artery occluded.

10. The internal carotid and the basilar arteries are equally affected by disease. The internal carotid artery supplies predominantly one cerebral hemisphere through the anterior cerebral and middle cerebral branches and, therefore, occlusion of the internal carotid artery will produce contralateral hemiplegia, hemianesthesia, hemianopia, and aphasia and agnosia, depending on whether the dominant hemisphere is involved. On the other hand, the basilar artery contributes to the blood supply of both sides of the brain through the two posterior cerebral arteries and the many branches to both sides of the brainstem. Consequently, occlusion of the basilar artery will result in bilateral motor and sensory losses and involvement of the cranial nerves and cerebellum on both sides of the body.

11. The dominant hemisphere possesses the language function. In right-handed individuals (and in some left-handed persons) language is a function of the left hemisphere. A cerebrovascular accident involving the middle cerebral artery on the left side will, therefore, be more serious than one on the right side, since it will involve the cortical speech area and cause a total sensory motor aphasia. In the individuals who have a dominant right hemisphere, the reverse occurs.

12. The middle cerebral artery, in addition to giving off cortical branches, gives off central branches that supply part of the posterior limb of the internal capsule and the optic radiation. Occlusion of these branches will cause contralateral homonymous hemianopia.

13. Since so many important ascending and descending tracts travel in the internal capsule, an occlusion of its blood supply would produce a widespread neurological deficit. The internal capsule is supplied by the medial and lateral striate central branches of the middle cerebral artery and by the central branches of the anterior cerebral artery.

14. This patient has the symptoms of the carotid sinus syndrome. For a full description of this syndrome, see page 465.

15. It has been estimated that irreversible changes start to occur in the cerebral nervous tissue about 2 minutes following the complete arrest of cerebral blood flow. (This figure may be larger if the patient's body has been cooled.)

16. The impairment of vision of the right eye with motor symptoms in the left leg strongly suggests partial occlusion of the right internal carotid artery. When these are coupled with impairment of

memory and a systolic bruit over the right internal carotid artery, the diagnosis is almost certain. The right-sided headaches are also common symptoms in this condition. A right-sided carotid angiogram confirmed the presence of extreme narrowing of the internal carotid artery at its origin. Ophthalmodynamometric measurements showed diminished retinal arterial pressure on the right side owing to diminished pressure in the right ophthalmic artery.

17. This patient had a congenital aneurysm of the anterior communicating artery. The sudden onset of a severe headache, which is often so dramatic that the patient feels that he has been hit on the head, is characteristic of rupture of a congenital aneurysm into the subarachnoid space. The stiff or rigid neck is due to meningeal irritation caused by the presence of blood in the subarachnoid space. This patient had no evidence of previous pressure on the optic nerve leading to unilateral visual defect, which sometimes occurs when the aneurysm is situated on the anterior part of the Circle of Willis. The loss of tone in the left leg muscles is difficult to explain, although it may be due to the sudden hemorrhage into the subarachnoid space causing damage to the right cerebral hemisphere.

18. This patient had a right-sided extradural hemorrhage due to a fracture of the anterior part of the parietal bone, which tore the anterior division of the right middle meningeal artery. The history of the patient being found unconscious, then recovering consciousness for a period only to relapse into unconsciousness, is a characteristic finding. The initial trauma usually is responsible for the initial loss of consciousness. The relapse into an unconscious state is due to the accumulation of a large blood clot under arterial pressure outside the meningeal layer of dura. This is responsible for the dilated pupil on the right side due to indirect pressure on the right oculomotor nerve. The pressure on the right precentral gyrus causes the hemiplegia and weakness of the left leg; it also causes the positive Babinski sign on the left side. The presence of a large blood clot in the intracranial cavity is responsible for the raised cerebrospinal fluid pressure. The slight blood staining of the fluid obtained from a lumbar puncture was due to a small leakage of blood from the extradural space into the subarachnoid space at the fracture site.

19. This patient had a chronic subdural hematoma following trauma to the head 3 weeks previously. This resulted from one of the superior cerebral veins tearing at its point of entrance into the superior sagittal sinus. The blood accumulated under low pressure between the dura and the arachnoid. The headaches, drowsiness, and mental confusion were due to the raised intracranial pressure. The blood clot could be seen easily on the computerized axial tomogram. The blood clot was successfully removed through a bur hole in the skull and the patient had no further symptoms.

20. The history of hypertension, sudden onset of severe headache, slurring of speech, right lower facial weakness, right-sided hemiplegia, right positive Babinski sign, right-sided hemianesthesia, and deviation of the eyes to the left side are all diagnostic of a cerebrovascular accident involving the left cerebral hemisphere. The perforating central branches of the left middle cerebral artery were found at autopsy to be extensively affected by atherosclerosis. One of these arteries had ruptured, resulting in a large hemorrhage into the left lentiform nucleus and left internal capsule. The combination of hypertension and atherosclerotic degeneration of the artery was responsible for the fatal hemorrhage. The dilated fixed pupils, the irregularity in breathing, and, finally, death were due to the raised pressure within the hemisphere causing downward pressure effects within the brainstem.

Index

Abdominal muscles, superficial, 140
Abdominal reflexes, with corticospinal tract lesions, 335
Abdominal wall muscles, segmental innervation of, 146
Abducent nerve, 10, 12, 170, 181, 182, 184, 197, 365–367, 436, 439, 441, 442
  clinical examination of, 381, 382
  distribution of, 366
  nucleus of, 177, 181, 184, 186, 187, 210, 366, 367, 368, 370
    central connections of, 366
    fibers to, 370
    motor, 177, 210
    relationship to facial nerve nuclei, 210
Absolute refractory period, in nerve impulse conduction, 102, 111, 478
Accessory nerve, 9, 10, 12, 170, 182, 374–375, 377, 436
  clinical examination of, 385
  cranial part of, 170, 178, 374, 377, 378
  distribution of, 378
    to sternocleidomastoid muscle, 153, 156, 375, 378
    to trapezius muscle, 153, 156, 375, 378
  nuclei of, 155, 156, 374–375, 377
    central connections of, 377
  nucleus ambiguus of, 177
  spinal part of, 9, 12, 170, 173, 197, 374–375, 377, 378, 387, 398, 499
Accessory parasympathetic nucleus, of oculomotor nerve, 217, 357, 358, 359, 361, 362
Accommodation reflex, 357–359, 426–427
Acetic acid, 414
Acetylcholine, 69, 70, 409, 413, 476
Acetylcholine—*Continued*
  acetylcholinesterase affecting, 66
  in autonomic nervous system, 409, 413, 414, 415
  cholinesterases destroying, 134
  distribution of, 66–67
  in skeletal muscle innervation, 128
  in smooth muscle innervation, 130
Acetylcholinesterase, 66
  at motor end-plate, 128
  in sarcolemma, 128
Achilles tendon reflex, 140
Acinus, glandular, nerve fiber ending at, 131, 132
Acoustic meatus, internal, vestibular ganglion in, 368
Acoustic nerve. *See* Vestibulocochlear nerve
Acoustic radiation, of internal capsule, 370, 371
ACTH, 403, 404
Action potential, 57, 100, 103
  of cerebral cortex, 270
Acuity, visual, 381
Adenoma, chromophobe, of pituitary, 231
Adhesions, in subarachnoid space, 211, 489
Adiposogenital dystrophy syndrome, 231
Adrenal gland. *See* Suprarenal gland
Adrenergic nerve endings, 415–416, 502
  alpha receptors for, 415–416, 433
  beta receptors for, 415–416, 433
Adrenocorticotropic hormone, 403, 404
Afferent (sensory) nerve fibers, 26, 97, 144, 171, 305, 316, 332, 399, 410
  of cerebellum, 193, 195, 196, 199–200, 343–348
    from cerebral cortex, 343–344, 346
Afferent (sensory) nerve fibers, of cerebellum—*Continued*
    from spinal cord, 344–348
    from vestibular nerve, 348
  cerebral, 260
  consciousness affected by information from, 305–312, 315, 316
  from cutaneous organs, 315
  endings of receptors, 135–136, 306, 480. *See also* Receptor endings
  entering spinal cord, 305, 333. *See also* Ascending tracts of spinal cord
  ganglia of. *See* Sensory ganglia
  of hippocampus, 278
  of hypothalamus, 397, 401, 402. *See also* Hypothalamus, afferent connections of
  injury of, taste bud atrophy after, 109
  multiple branching of, 333
  to muscles, 125
  nuclei of. *See* Sensory nucleus
  parasympathetic, 412
  in posterior root ganglion, 97, 171, 399. *See also* Posterior root ganglion, spinal
  from proprioceptive organs, 315
  roots of. *See* Sensory root
  in simple reflex arc, 122, 126, 141
  to skin, 148, 482–483
  and spinovisual reflexes, 307, 315
  sympathetic, 410
  of thalamus, 394
  trigeminal nerve components, 360, 362, 364
  to urinary bladder, 429
Aging, neuronal degeneration in, 108
Agnosia, acoustic verbal, 270
Agranular heterotypical areas, of cerebral cortex, 261

Air sinus
  frontal, 442
  sphenoidal, 441
Ala, of cerebellum, 192
Alar plate, 169, 171, 399
Alpha adrenergic receptors, 415–416, 433, 502
Alpha anterior horn cells, in simple reflex arc, 126
Alpha efferent neurons, 151, 324, 332
Alpha rhythm, 270
Alveolar nerve, 365
Alveus, of hippocampus, 242, 246, 275, 276, 278
Ampullae, of semicircular ducts, 372
Amygdalohypothalamic fibers, 397
Amygdaloid body, 276
Amygdaloid nucleus, 23, 242, 243, 244, 275
  destruction of, 280
Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, 149, 484
Anal canal sphincters, autonomic innervation of, 424
Analgesia, caudal, 33, 472
Anastomotic vein, superior, 454
Anemia, pernicious, sensory loss in, 318
Anesthesia
  caudal, 33
  for childbirth, 41, 472
  local, 111
Aneurysms
  carotid artery, internal, 386–387, 446, 498, 502
  cerebral, 466
  congenital, 466, 506
Angiography. *See* Arteriography
Angular artery, 457
Ankle jerk reflex, 140
Ankle joint, flexion of, 32
Annulospiral endings, 121–122, 123, 124
Anosmia, 381, 385–386, 498
Ansa cervicalis, 380
Anterior commissure, cerebral. *See* Commissures, cerebral
Anterior gray column. *See* Gray columns of spinal cord, anterior
Anterior lobe of cerebellum, 189, 191, 192
Anterior nuclei of thalamus, 225, 275, 276, 389, 390, 392
Anterior root. *See* Spinal nerves, root(s) of, anterior or motor
Anterior white column. *See* White columns of spinal cord, anterior
Anterograde transneuronal degeneration, 108
Anticholinesterases, 134
Antidiuretic function, of vasopressin, 402
Anulus fibrosus, 30
  rupture of, 32
Anus, 424
Aorta, 376
Aortic arch, 427
Aortic plexus, 424
Apertures, in roof of fourth ventricle. *See* Fourth ventricle, roof of
Aphasia, expressive, 268
Aponeurosis, epicranial, 10, 436
Apparatus, Golgi, 48, 49, 50, 55, 77, 81
Aqueduct
  cerebral. *See* Cerebral aqueduct of Sylvius. *See* Cerebral aqueduct
Arachnoid mater, 294, 302, 437, 444
  cells of, 293
  cerebral, 4, 5, 10, 284, 288, 290, 293, 294, 436, 441, 443, 444, 445
  at cerebral artery, 294
  at optic nerve, 294, 443, 444
  of spinal cord, 2, 4, 7, 28, 30, 34, 151, 152, 159–160, 284, 294
  at spinal nerve root, 294
  and subarachnoid space. *See* Subarachnoid space
  at trigeminal nerve, 294
Arachnoid villi, 439, 443
  cerebrospinal fluid in, 160, 292
  granulations of, 10, 284, 293, 436, 442, 443, 445
    cerebrospinal fluid absorption through, 292
    magnified view of, 293
Arbor vitae, of cerebellum, 189, 195
Arches
  of atlas, 461
  vertebral, 32, 34, 35, 461
Archicerebellum, 189, 197
Arcuate fibers
  external, 312
    anterior, 169, 177
    posterior, 196, 314
  internal, 172, 173, 174, 311, 312, 398
Arcuate ligament, 30
Arcuate nuclei, of medulla oblongata, 175, 176–177, 400
Area vestibuli, 15, 17, 170, 181, 183, 208, 266, 391
Argyll Robertson pupil, 387, 428–429, 498–499, 501
Arm. *See* Upper limbs
Arnold-Chiari phenomenon, 178, 486
Arrector pili muscle, 118
Arteriography
  carotid, 506
    anteroposterior internal, 458–459
    lateral internal, 456–457
  cerebral, 456–463, 466–467
  vertebral
    anteroposterior, 462–463
    lateral, 460–461
Artery (arteries)
  basilar. *See* Basilar artery
  blockage of lumen of, 465–466
  of brain, 449–455
  carotid. *See* Carotid artery
  cerebellar. *See* Cerebellar artery
  cerebral. *See* Cerebral artery
  choroidal, 250, 449, 459
  communicating, 441, 449, 450, 451, 461, 467, 503–504, 506
  to corpus striatum, 455
  diseases of, 465
    sympathectomy in, 430
  intermittent claudication of, 430
  to internal capsule, 455
  labyrinthine, 451, 453
  lenticulostriate, 459
    rupture of, 38
  of lower limbs, autonomic innervation of, 426, 427
  medullary, 178–179, 453, 455
  meningeal, 438, 445, 459
    hemorrhage from injuries to, 36
  to midbrain, 455
  ophthalmic, 449, 450, 457
  to pons, 187, 451, 453, 455, 463
  radicular, 160, 161, 162

Artery (arteries)—*Continued*
Raynaud's disease of, 39, 430, 500–501
spinal, 160, 161, 162, 451, 463
to thalamus, 455
of upper limb, autonomic innervation of, 426, 427
vertebral. *See* Vertebral arteries
Articular process, vertebral, 30
Ascending artery
palatine, 457
pharyngeal, 438
Ascending tracts of spinal cord, 88, 305–319. *See also* Afferent (sensory) nerve fibers
anatomical organization of, 305–314
in anterior white column, 158
clinical notes on, 316–318
clinical problems on, 319
answers to, 494–495
cuneocerebellar, 311, 312, 314
discriminative touch pathway in, 307, 309, 311, 312
exteroceptive information conducted in, 305
fasciculus cuneatus, 154, 157, 158, 172, 173, 174, 307, 309, 311, 312, 398
injury to, 317
fasciculus gracilis, 154, 157, 158, 172, 173, 174, 307, 309, 311, 312, 398
injury to, 317
first-order neurons in, 305, 353
functions of, 305
injury to, 316–317
in lateral white column, 157–158
light touch and pressure pathways in, 307, 309, 310
muscle sense pathways in, 307, 309, 311, 312–314
pain and temperature pathways in, 305–309
in posterior white column, 157, 309, 311, 312
posterolateral tract of Lissauer, 157, 158, 307, 308, 309, 310
proprioceptive information conducted in, 305, 307
second-order neurons in, 305, 353
simplest form of, 306
Ascending tracts of spinal cord—*Continued*
spinocerebellar. *See* Spinocerebellar tract
spino-olivary, 157, 158, 172, 307, 314, 315, 331
spinoreticular, 158, 314, 315
spinotectal, 157, 158, 172, 307, 314, 315
spinothalamic. *See* Spinothalamic tract
syringomyelia affecting, 318
tabes dorsalis affecting, 317–318
third-order neurons in, 305, 353
in thoracic region, 88
vibratory sense pathway in, 307, 309, 311, 312
visceral, 314
in white matter of spinal cord, 157–158
Association areas, of cerebral cortex, 266–267
lesions of, 269
somesthetic, 265, 269
Association fibers, of cerebral hemispheres, 244, 248–249, 267
long, 248
short, 248
Astereognosis, 269
Astrocytes, 73, 75, 84
cell membrane of, 77
cytoplasm of, 77
fibrous, 73, 74, 75
in gray matter of spinal cord, 75
foot processes of, 75, 300, 302
function of, 73, 76, 84
nucleus of, 77
processes of, 302
protoplasmic, 73, 74, 76, 77
reaction to neuronal injury, 76, 84
in replacement gliosis, 76, 84
tumors of, 84, 187
Astrocytoma, 84, 187
Astrocytosis, 84, 476
Ataxia
in cerebellar dysfunction, 200–201
Friedreich's, 39–40, 497
Atherosclerosis, of cerebral arteries, 468, 504
Athetosis, 147, 336–337, 341, 497
Atlas, 27
Atlas—*Continued*
anterior arch of, 461
posterior arch of, 461
transverse process of, 9, 463
Atonic bladder, 429
Atrioventricular nodes, 420, 421
Atrophy
genital, in hypothalamus dysfunction, 231
muscular, 108–109, 136, 336, 482
Atropine, 415, 416
action on neuromuscular junction, 135
and blood-brain barrier, 303
as synaptic blocking agent, 69
Auditory area, of cerebral cortex, 370, 371, 493
primary, 263, 266
lesions of, 269–270
secondary, 263, 266
lesions of, 270
Auditory radiation, 247, 266
Auerbach plexus, 412, 422
Auricular artery, posterior, 457
Auricular muscles, facial nerve to, 368
Auricular nerve, posterior, 369
Auriculotemporal nerve, 365, 420
Autonomic nervous system, 1, 38–39, 40, 409–433, 471
abnormal function of, 39
acetylcholine release at synapses of, 409, 413, 414, 415
afferent nerve fibers
parasympathetic, 412
sympathetic, 410
causalgia, 431
clinical notes on, 428–431
clinical problems on, 431–433
answers to, 500–502
degeneration and regeneration of, 428
descending fibers of, 321, 330, 367, 372, 373, 375
in lateral white column, 158–159
diseases involving, 428–429
efferent nerve fibers of, 411
parasympathetic, 410–412, 415
sympathetic, 409–410, 415
functions of, 416–417
ganglia of, 26, 29, 99, 412–413
blocking agents affecting, 413, 414

Autonomic nervous system, ganglia of—*Continued*
capsular cells of, 99
as integrator, 414
pharmacology of, 413
satellite cells in, 111, 477
structure of, 412–413
sympathetic, 414
higher control of, 412
hypothalamus controlling, 403–404, 407, 412, 413
important innervations of, 418–426
spinal cord injuries affecting, 429–430
parasympathetic division of, 1, 409, 410–412, 417. *See also* Parasympathetic nervous system
physiological reflexes involving, 426–428
postganglionic nerve fibers of, 410, 411, 412, 414, 433. *See also* Postganglionic nerve fibers
preganglionic nerve fibers of, 361, 409–412, 414, 433
in smooth muscle innervation, 130
sympathetic division of, 1, 409–410, 416. *See also* Sympathetic nervous system or trunk
synaptic blocking agents affecting, 68–69, 70
Autonomic neuromuscular junction, 131
Autonomic reflex bladder, 429
Axillary nerve, 100
Axis, cervical, 27
transverse process of, 9
Axoaxonic synapse, 61, 64
Axodendritic synapse, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65
with dendritic spine, 64
Axolemma, 61, 91
Axon(s), 1, 43, 44, 45, 49, 59, 61, 92, 94, 104
of bulbous corpuscle of Krause, 122
cut, 80, 89
cytoplasm of, 61, 70, 91
expanded ending of, 116
filament of, 104
fragmented, 104, 107
Axon(s)—*Continued*
growing along endoneurial tubes, 107
hillock of neurons, 44, 45, 49, 52, 59
injury of, 68, 103–105
and band fiber formation, 103, 104
cell body changes from, 103–105, 106
chromatolysis after, 105, 106
distal segment changes from, 103, 104
neuroma formation after, 106–107
proximal segment changes from, 103, 104
Wallerian degeneration from, 103
mitochondria of, 65, 130
in motor unit, 141
and cross section of end-plate, 130
multiple fine sprouts or filaments of, 104
myelinated
in central nervous system, 90
electrical changes in, 102
in peripheral nervous system, 91, 93, 96
at neuromuscular junction, 126, 127, 130, 131
new filament of, 104
nonmyelinated, 92–95
in central nervous system, 90, 94–95
electrical changes in, 102
at glandular acini, 131
at neuromuscular junction, 130, 131
in neurotendinous spindle, 125
of Pacinian corpuscle, 121
in peripheral nervous system, 92–94
processes of, 94
plasma membrane of, 61, 91
presynaptic vesicles of, 63, 130
Purkinje cells, 193, 194, 345
regeneration of, 104, 105–108
in central nervous system, 105–106, 113, 479–480
in peripheral nerves, 105, 106–108
terminals or boutons terminaux of, 61, 63, 65, 129
Axon(s)—*Continued*
in trough of folded sarcolemma, 130
Axonotmesis, 109
Axoplasm, 61, 70, 91
Axoplasmic flow, 61, 70
Axosomatic synapses, 61, 64

Back, deep muscles of, in maintaining postural curves, 142
Bacterial toxins, affecting neuromuscular junctions, 134, 136
Baillarger band, 259–260, 261, 265
Bainbridge right atrial reflex, 428
Band fiber, 112
formation after axon injury, 103, 104
Baroreceptors, 115
Barr body, 44, 70, 475
Barrier
blood-brain. *See* Blood-brain barrier
blood-cerebrospinal fluid. *See* Blood-cerebrospinal fluid barrier
Basal cell, 355
Basal nuclei, of cerebral hemispheres, 20, 240, 242–244, 256, 491
clinical notes of, 251
Basal plate, of neural tube, 169, 171, 399
Basal vein, 454, 455
Basement membrane, 291, 300, 302
endothelial, 301
epithelial, 301
filling synaptic cleft, 127, 128
of Schwann cell, 91
Basilar artery, 450, 451, 453–455, 461, 463, 505
branches of, 453–455
anterior inferior cerebellar artery, 453
choroidal, 250, 449, 459
labyrinthine, 451, 453
pontine, 187, 451, 453, 455, 463
posterior cerebral artery, 453–455
superior cerebellar artery, 453
groove for, 181, 182, 184, 186

Basis pedunculi, of midbrain. *See* Crus cerebri
Basivertebral vein, 4
Basket cells, 193, 194, 197, 199, 345
Behavior, hypothalamus affecting, 405
Bell's palsy, 110, 112, 478–479, 499
Benedikt's syndrome, 218, 219
Benzoquinonium, 133, 481–482
Beta receptors, 415–416, 433, 502
Beta rhythm, 270
Betz cells, 257
Biceps brachii muscle, segmental innervation of, 139, 140, 146
Binocular vision, 357
Bipolar neurons, 43, 45
  in vision, 357
Birth
  anesthesia for, 33, 41, 472
  trauma in, 446–447, 503
Bladder, urinary. *See* Urinary bladder
Blindness, 381
  circumferential, 381, 382
  total, from optic nerve division, 381, 382
Blocking agents, 136, 481–482
  ganglionic, 69, 70, 413, 414, 476
  neuromuscular, 133–135
  postganglionic, 416
  synaptic, 68–69, 70
Blood, 291
  red cells in, 300
  viscosity of, changes in, 465
Blood-brain barrier, 299, 303–304, 494
  astrocyte role in, 76
  and brain trauma, 303
  in capillary of central nervous system, 300
  clinical notes on, 303
  clinical problems on, 303–304
    answers to, 494
  drugs in, 303
  functional significance of, 303
  structure of, 299
Blood-cerebrospinal fluid barrier, 301, 494
  clinical notes on, 303
  functional significance of, 303
  structure of, 301
Blood pressure
  diseases affecting, 464–465
  hypertension, 432, 470, 502, 506
    sympathectomy in, 430
  hypotension, postural, 465
Blood supply. *See* Artery (arteries); Capillary; Vein(s)
  of brain, 290, 449–470. *See also* Brain, blood supply of
  of cerebellum, 455
  of choroid plexus, 250, 283, 287
  of corpus striatum, 455
  of dura mater of brain, 438
  of eyes, examination of vessels in, 381
  of internal capsule, 455, 468, 505
    disorders of, 251, 256
  of medulla oblongata, 178, 179, 453, 455
  of midbrain, 218, 455
  of peripheral nerves, 111
  of pons, 187, 455
    disorders of, 187, 188
  of spinal cord, 160, 161–162, 166, 485
  and sympathetic nerve activity, 415
  of tela choroidea, 250, 283
  of thalamus, 455
Body
  amygdaloid, 276
  Barr, 44, 70, 475
  carotid, 374
  cell body of neurons. *See* Neuron(s), cell body of
  dense, of neurons, 49
  of fornix, 224, 241, 242, 246, 276, 286, 289, 390
  geniculate. *See* Geniculate body
  of lateral ventricle, 24, 240, 241, 242, 243, 253, 255, 283, 285
  mammillary, 12, 14, 18, 214, 217, 221, 223, 224, 225, 227, 228, 229, 230, 239, 276, 286, 394
  of nerve cell, 48
  pineal. *See* Pineal body or gland
  trapezoid, 181, 184, 185, 186, 370, 371
  vertebral, 4, 30, 32, 40, 165, 472
Bones
  atlas, 9, 27, 461, 463
  axis, 9, 27
  clavicle, 165
Bones—*Continued*
  coccyx, 7, 27
  ethmoid, cribriform plate of, 355
  frontal, 11, 253, 255
  ilium, spine of, 35
  occipital, 11, 437, 438
  parietal. *See* Parietal bone
  ribs, 28, 165, 428
  sacrum. *See* Sacrum
  temporal. *See* Temporal bone
  vertebral. *See* Vertebrae and vertebral column
Boutons terminaux, of axons, 61, 63, 65, 129
Brachial artery, 427
Brachial nerve plexus, 3, 100, 327
Brachiocephalic artery, 450
Brachioradialis muscle, segmental innervation of, 139, 146
Brachium
  of inferior colliculus, 213, 214, 339
  of superior colliculus, 213, 214
Brain, 1, 5–23
  anterior view of, 24, 285
  -blood barrier. *See* Blood-brain barrier
  blood supply of, 290, 449–470
    angiography of, 456–463, 466–467
    arteries of, 449–455
    and blood pressure alteration, 464–465
    circulation of, 464–465
    clinical notes on, 464–467
    clinical problems on, 467–470
      answers to, 503–506
    disorders of, 464–465. *See also* Cerebrovascular disorders
    veins of, 455
  cavernous sinus of. *See* Cavernous sinus
  -cerebrospinal fluid interface, 301–303
  coronal sections of, 241, 245
  dural venous sinuses of, 438–443
  falx cerebri. *See* Falx cerebri
  of fetus, 6
  forebrain, 5
  hindbrain, 5, 13–14
  horizontal section of, 222, 246
  inferior surface of, 12, 233, 239, 339
    arteries on, 451

Brain—*Continued*
injuries to, 29, 36, 38, 445
and blood-brain barrier, 303
clinical notes on, 29, 33, 36, 37
clinical problems on, 41–42
contrecoup injury in, 36
and movements of brain in head injuries, 36, 37, 38, 41, 445, 473
intercavernous sinus, 439, 443
lateral view of, 11, 13, 285
lobes of. *See specific lobes of brain*
medulla oblongata of, 151. *See also* Medulla oblongata
meninges of, 435–447
arachnoid mater, 4, 5, 10, 284, 288, 290, 293, 294, 436, 441, 443, 444, 445
clinical notes on, 444–446
clinical problems on, 446–447
answers to, 502–503
dura mater, 4, 5, 10, 20, 233, 290, 293, 435–438, 441, 442, 444, 445
functional significance of, 444–446
and head injuries, 445
and intracranial hemorrhage, 445–446
pia mater, 4, 5, 10, 290, 293, 294, 302, 436, 441, 443–444, 445
midbrain. *See* Midbrain
occipital sinus of, 438, 440, 441, 454
petrosal sinus of, 439, 441, 443
posterior aspect of, 7
protective coverings of, 1, 4
sagittal section of, 224, 286, 398, 400, 402
sagittal sinus of. *See* Sagittal venous sinus
sigmoid sinus of, 439, 441, 454
straight sinus of, 10, 38, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 440, 454
superior view of, 24, 245, 285
tentorium cerebelli, 9, 10, 233, 284, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 444
transverse sinus of, 9, 435, 437, 438, 439, 441, 454
tumors of, 38, 41, 180, 473
Brain—*Continued*
ventricles of. *See* Ventricular system of central nervous system
Brain sand, pineal, 226, 227
Brainstem, 5
anterior surface of, 182
cardioaccelerator centers of, 402
cardiodecelerator centers of, 412
cranial nerve nuclei in, 177
descending fibers to, 401, 403
distortion of, 37
posterior surface of, 9, 17, 183, 207, 391
respiratory centers of, 412
sagittal section through, 16, 190, 206, 334
trigeminal nerve nuclei in, 364
vasodilator centers in, 412
vasopressor centers in, 412
Broca motor speech area, 263, 264
lesions of, 268
Bronchogenic carcinoma, 387, 499
Brown-Séquard syndrome, 337, 338
Buccal nerve, 369
Bulb
olfactory. *See* Olfactory bulb
of posterior horn of lateral ventricle, 19, 242
superior, of internal jugular vein, 441
Bulbous corpuscle of Krause, 119, 122, 132
Bundle, longitudinal
inferior, 245
superior, 248

Cajal horizontal cells, of cerebral cortex, 257
Calcar avis, 19, 241, 242
Calcarine sulcus, 14, 233, 236, 237, 238, 239, 241, 242, 260
Callosal sulcus, 236
Callosomarginal trunk, 457
Caloric test, of vestibular function, 384–385
Canal
anal, 424
carotid, of temporal bone, 450, 459
central, of spinal cord. *See* Central canal of spinal cord
facial, 369
Canal—*Continued*
pterygoid, nerve of, 369, 418, 420
sacral, 35
semicircular, 370. *See also* Semicircular canals or ducts
vertebral, 2, 151
vestibular nerve fibers from, 368
Capillary, 74, 75
blood-brain barrier in, 300
absence of, 300
cross section of, 300
endothelium of, 291
Capsular cells, of sensory and autonomic ganglia, 97, 99, 111, 477
Capsule
of bulbous corpuscle of Krause, 122
external, 244, 248
internal. *See* Internal capsule
of Meissner's corpuscle, 120
of neuromuscular spindles, 123
of Pacinian corpuscle, 121
Carbechol chloride, 135, 482
Carcinoma
bronchogenic, 387, 499
terminal, pain relief in, 319, 495
of thyroid gland, 40, 471
Cardiac nerves, 376, 420, 421
Cardiac neuromuscular junctions, 132, 135
Cardiac plexus, 376, 412, 420, 421
Cardioaccelerator center, of brainstem, 412
Cardiodecelerator center, of brainstem, 412
Cardiovascular reflexes, autonomic nervous system in, 427–428
Carotid artery
arteriography of, 506
anteroposterior internal, 458–459
lateral, 456–457
common, 374, 450, 457, 459
bifurcation of, 457
external, 374, 450, 457, 459
bifurcation of, 459
internal, 374, 438, 441, 442, 449, 505
aneurysm of, 386–387, 446, 498, 502

Carotid artery, internal—*Continued*
anterior cerebral artery branch of, 449
branches of cerebral portion of, 449–450
in carotid canal of temporal bone, 450, 459
in cavernous sinus, 450, 457, 459
choroidal branches of, 250, 449
left, 451
middle cerebral artery branch of, 449–450
in neck, 450, 457, 459
occlusion of, 505–506
ophthalmic artery branch of, 449
origin and course of, 450
posterior communicating artery branch of, 449
right, 451
superior to cavernous sinus, 459
sympathetic plexus around, 369
Carotid body, 374
Carotid canal of temporal bone, 450, 459
Carotid plexus, 359, 369, 441, 442
arterial, external, 419, 420
Carotid sinus, 372, 374, 375, 427, 449
Carotid sinus nerve, 374
Carotid sinus syndrome, 465, 505
Cartilaginous joint, 30
Catecholamines, 66
Cauda equina, 7, 26, 28, 30, 32, 34, 112, 288, 479
lesion of, 432
relationship to intervertebral disc, 30
Caudal analgesia, 472
clinical notes of, 33
Caudate nucleus, 21, 22, 23, 225, 243–244, 289, 391, 394, 401, 453
body of, 23, 241, 242, 243
head of, 22, 23, 222, 240, 241, 242, 243, 245, 247
Parkinson's disease affecting, 338
tail of, 22, 23, 240, 242, 243, 278
Causalgia, 431
Cavernous sinus, 439, 441, 442, 446, 502
internal carotid artery in, 450, 457, 459
Cavity
of fourth ventricle. *See* Fourth ventricle, cavity of
of midbrain. *See* Cerebral aqueduct
of neural tube, 171
of septum pellucidum, 222
of third ventricle. *See* Third ventricle, cavity of
Celiac ganglia, 422, 423
Celiac nerve, 376
Celiac plexus, 376, 410
Cell(s)
basket, 193, 194, 197, 199, 345
Betz, 257
body of neurons. *See* Neuron(s), cell body of
capsular, 97, 99, 111, 477
of cerebral cortex, 257, 258, 260
coat of neurons, 57
endothelial. *See* Endothelial cells
ependymal. *See* Ependyma
flattened, of Meissner's corpuscle, 120
fusiform, 257, 258
Golgi. *See* Golgi cells
granular. *See* Granular cells
granule, cerebellar, 47
horizontal, of Cajal, 257
macroglial, 75, 84, 85, 476
of Martinotti, 257, 258
membrane of. *See* Membrane
Merkel's, 117
microglial. *See* Microglia
mitral, of olfactory bulb, 354, 355
nerve. *See* Neuron(s)
pale, process of, 301
polymorphic
of cerebral cortex, 260, 261
of hippocampus, 277, 278
Purkinje. *See* Purkinje cells
pyramid. *See* Pyramidal cells
red blood cells, 300
Renshaw, 67, 69, 144, 332, 334
satellite, 97, 99, 111, 477
Schwann. *See* Schwann cells
stellate. *See* Stellate cells
tactile, of Merkel's disc, 115, 116
tufted, of olfactory bulb, 354, 355
Central canal of spinal cord, 2, 8, 15, 16, 17, 24, 151, 152, 155, 156–157, 169, 170, 171, 173, 174, 190, 206, 284, 285, 344, 398, 399
cerebrospinal descent in, 292
entrance into, 15, 17, 170, 208, 391
ependymal cells in, 82, 157
gray commissure surrounding, 288
in ventricular system, 283, 287–288
Central fissure, 11
Central lobule of cerebellum, 16, 190, 191, 192, 206, 344
Central nervous system, 1, 2–23, 87
axon regeneration in, 105–106, 113, 479–480
brain in, 1, 5–23. *See also* Brain
capillary of, blood-brain barrier in, 300
absence of, 300
divisions of, 2–23
injury of, 108
myelination in, 87, 90, 92, 111, 477–478
neurotransmitters of, 67, 69, 70
nonmyelinated nerve fibers in, 90, 94–95
spinal cord in, 1, 2, 87. *See also* Spinal cord
synaptic blocking agents affecting, 69
tissues in, 70, 475
Central sulcus, cerebral, 14, 19, 20, 233, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 256, 291, 392, 452
Central vein, of retina, 442
Centrosomes, in neurons, 54
Cerebellar artery, 455
anterior inferior, 451, 453, 463
posterior inferior, 287, 451, 453, 461, 463
medulla oblongata supplied by, 179
site of, 463
thrombosis of, 180, 486
superior, 451, 453, 461, 463
Cerebellar veins, 441
Cerebellomedullary cistern, 288
Cerebelloreticular fibers, 196
Cerebellovestibular fibers, 196

Cerebellum, 3, 5, 11, 13–14, 41, 143, 182, 185, 189–202, 214, 224, 286, 288, 313, 322, 326, 329, 347, 394, 473–474
afferent nerve fibers of, 193, 195, 196, 199–200, 343–348
from cerebral cortex, 343–344, 346
from spinal cord, 344–348
from vestibular nerve, 348
ala of, 192
anatomy of, functional, 197–199
arbor vitae of, 189, 195
archicerebellum, 189, 197
arteries of, 455
cerebro-olivocerebellar pathway, 198, 343–344
cerebroreticulocerebellar pathway, 198, 344, 346
climbing fibers of, 193, 196, 199, 200, 202, 343, 345, 488
clinical notes on, 199–201, 351
clinical problems on, 41, 201–202, 351–352
answers to, 487–488, 497
as comparator, 350
connections of, 198, 343–352
cortex of, 13, 14, 16, 189, 190, 194, 199, 200, 202, 206, 343, 344, 349
basket cells in, 93, 194, 197, 199, 345
cellular organization in, 193, 196–197, 199, 345
Golgi cells in, 193, 194, 197, 199, 345
granular layer of, 46, 189, 193, 194, 199, 345
granule cells of, 47
mechanisms in, 196–197
molecular layer of, 46, 189, 193, 194, 199, 345
neurons in, 46, 47, 202, 487–488
interconnections of, 343–350
corticopontocerebellar pathway, 196, 198, 343, 346
cuneocerebellar tract, 196, 198, 311, 312, 314, 348
cut remains of, 208
cutaneous information to, 307
dentothalamic pathway from, 198, 348–350
Cerebellum—*Continued*
dysfunction of, 351
acute lesions in, 200, 202
chronic lesions in, 200, 202
clinical problems on, 201–202
answers to, 487–488
muscular activity in, 200–201
signs and symptoms of, 200–201
efferent fibers of, 193, 195–196, 343, 345, 348–350
feedback to and from, 350
folia of, 16, 189, 190, 192, 194, 206, 344
functions of, 200, 350–351
tests for, 149, 484
globose-emboliform-rubral pathway from, 328, 348, 349
gray matter of, 189–195
gross appearance of, 189
hemispheres of, 12, 15, 16, 22, 189, 190, 192, 195, 199, 200, 206, 208, 209, 240, 343, 344
left, 437
right, 208
syndrome of, 201
horizontal fissure of, 16, 189, 191, 192, 344
inferior view of, 191
input to thalamus, 394
internal structure of, 189–196, 199
intrinsic fibers of, 195, 343
lobes of, 199
anterior, 189, 191, 192
flocculonodular, 12, 189, 191, 192, 208
middle, 189, 191, 192
lobules of
biventral, 191, 192
central, 16, 191, 192, 344
inferior semilunar, 191, 192
superior semilunar, 192
quadrangular, 192
lobulus simplex of, 192
mossy fibers of, 193, 196, 199, 200, 202, 343, 345, 488
muscle joint sense pathways to, 307, 312–314
neocerebellum, 189, 197, 199
nuclei of, 193, 194–195, 198, 199, 200, 202, 343, 345, 488
deep, 326, 328, 329, 349
Cerebellum, nuclei of—*Continued*
dentate, 13, 15, 21, 194, 195, 347, 348, 394
emboliform, 194, 195
fastigial, 194, 195, 350
globose, 194, 195
internal medullary, 225
intracerebellar, 194–195, 202, 343, 488
olivocerebellar tract, 196
organization of, 343
paleocerebellum, 189, 197
parallel fibers of, 194
peduncles of, 196, 197, 198, 199, 200, 202, 343, 488
inferior, 5, 13, 15, 21, 169, 170, 175, 176, 177, 179, 183, 184, 196, 197, 207, 313, 315, 347, 349, 370, 371, 375, 377, 400
middle, 13, 15, 17, 21, 181, 182, 183, 185, 191, 196, 197, 207, 208, 214, 347, 349, 391
superior, 13, 15, 17, 21, 181, 183, 184, 185, 186, 196, 197, 207, 208, 214, 313, 347, 349, 391
decussation of, 18, 186, 215, 216, 348
fibers of, 18, 216
phylogenetic development of, 189, 197
primary fissure of, 16, 189, 191, 192, 344
proprioceptive information to, 307
Purkinje cells of, 46, 47, 189, 193, 194, 196–197, 199, 200, 345
reticulocerebellar tract, 196
rubrocerebellar fibers, 196
sagittal section through, 16, 190, 206
spinocerebellar tract, 172
anterior, 157, 158, 173, 174, 175, 179, 186, 196, 198, 307, 312–314, 345–348, 398, 400
posterior, 157, 158, 173, 174, 196, 198, 307, 312, 313, 347, 348, 398
stellate cells of, 47, 193, 194, 197, 345

Cerebellum—*Continued*
superior view of, 191
tectocerebellar fibers, 196
tonsil of, 16, 191, 192, 209, 344
herniation through foramen magnum, 178
trauma to, direct, 37
tumors in, 149, 200, 201, 202, 487, 488–489
uvula of, 16, 189, 190, 191, 192, 206, 344
uvulonodular fissure of, 189, 192
vallecula of, 189
veins of, 455
vermis of, 13, 22, 189, 192, 197, 208, 209, 222, 240, 344. *See also* Vermis, of cerebellum
vestibulocerebellar tract, 196
white matter of, 193, 195–196, 199, 345
Cerebral aqueduct, 14, 16, 18, 24, 41, 190, 206, 213, 215, 216, 217, 224, 228, 239, 241, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 344, 359, 361, 362, 363, 472–473
blockage of, 218, 219
clinical problem on, 41
in hydrocephalus, 219
by tumor, 218, 219
cerebrospinal fluid in, 215, 292
entrance into, 15, 17, 208, 213, 215, 216, 217, 391
Cerebral artery, 290, 294
angiography of, 456–463, 466–467
anterior, 233, 441, 449, 450, 451, 452, 457, 459, 461
area supplied by, 452
central branches of, 449
cortical branches of, 449, 457
occlusion of, 505
areas supplied by, 452
atherosclerosis of, 468, 504
attachment of meninges to, 294
blockage of, 468, 504, 505
cerebrospinal fluid around, 294
covering derived from arachnoid, 290
disorders of. *See* Cerebrovascular disorders
middle, 441, 449–450, 451, 452, 457
area supplied by, 452, 453
Cerebral artery, middle—*Continued*
bifurcation of, 459
central branches of, 450
cortical branches of, 449, 457
left, 453
occlusion of, 505
operculofrontal branch of, 457
right, 453
posterior, 450, 451, 452, 453–455, 457, 459, 461, 463
area supplied by, 452
choroidal branch of, 455
cortical branches of, 455, 504
internal occipital artery branch of, 463
occlusion of, 505
thrombosis of, 490
in subarachnoid space, 10, 436
Cerebral veins
anterior, 455
deep middle, 455
drainage of right hemisphere, 454
external, 455
great, 10, 14, 250, 436, 439, 440–441, 454
bleeding from, in infants, 38
inferior, 441, 442–443
internal, 250, 454, 455
in subarachnoid space, 10, 436
superficial middle, 454, 455
superior, 440, 445, 454, 455
subdural hemorrhage from tearing of, 36, 37, 38
Cerebro-olivocerebellar pathway, 198, 343–344
Cerebroreticulocerebellar pathway, 198, 344, 346
Cerebrospinal fluid, 1, 2, 39, 151, 283, 290–295, 471
absorption of, 292
in hydrocephalus, 296
in arachnoid villi, 160
-blood barrier. *See* Blood-cerebrospinal fluid barrier
-brain interface, 301–303
section of, 302
in cerebral aqueduct, 215, 292
at cerebral artery, 294
circulation of, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295
blockage of, 296, 493
in hydrocephalus, 295
clinical notes on, 295–296
Cerebrospinal fluid—*Continued*
color of, 163, 166
constituents of, 163, 166, 290
formation of, 290–291, 292, 295
choroid plexus in, 160, 292,443
in hydrocephalus, 295
functions of, 290, 295
in hydrocephalus, 295–296
lumbar puncture for examination of, 33, 38, 41, 163, 166, 178, 251, 296, 472, 473, 484–485
at optic nerve, 294
origin and circulation of, 284, 288
pressure of, 33, 163, 166, 290
in protection of spinal cord and brain, 29, 296, 493
at spinal cord, 160
at spinal nerve roots, 294
subarachnoid space filled with, 6, 160, 284, 288, 293, 294, 302, 443, 444, 445
at trigeminal nerve, 294
in ventricular system, 283, 288, 290–295, 302
volume of, 290, 295
in hydrocephalus, 211
Cerebrospinal tract, lateral, 173, 174, 398
Cerebrovascular disorders, 268, 271–272, 273, 464–470, 492, 493, 503–506
aneurysms, 466
angiography in, 453–463, 466–467
arterial lumen blockage in, 465–466
arterial wall diseases in, 465
blood pressure changes in, 464–465
blood viscosity change in, 465
brain tissue changes in, 469, 505
carotid sinus syndrome, 465
cerebral ischemia, 464–466
clinical problems on, 467–470
descending tract interruption in, 340, 496
in heart disease, 465
hypothalamus in, 406
interruption of cerebral circulation, 464–465
intracranial hemorrhage, 466. *See also* Hemorrhage, intracranial

Cerebrovascular disorders—*Continued*
in postural hypotension, 465
in shock, 465
thalamus in, 395
trochlear nerve in, 386, 498
Cerebrum, 3, 18–23, 221–232
arterial supply to, 453
circulation in, interruption of, 464–465
commissures of
anterior, 14, 288
posterior, 226, 228, 244, 246, 286
cortex of, 10, 17, 20, 143, 290, 293, 294, 306, 349, 361, 363, 364, 366, 367, 373, 375, 377, 379, 384, 391, 436
action and resting potentials of, 270
in ascending tract of spinal cord, 260, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312
association areas of, 244, 248–249, 265, 266–267
lesions of, 269
auditory area of, 370, 371, 493
lesions of, 269–270
primary, 263, 266
secondary, 263, 266
cerebellar afferent fibers from, 343–344, 346
clinical notes on, 250, 267–271
clinical problems on, 271–273
answers to, 491–493
as command center, 350
commissural fibers of, 267
corticofugal fibers of, 267
corticohypothalamic fibers of, 397, 402
corticonuclear fibers of, 18, 184, 185, 186, 210, 215, 216, 217, 218, 247, 353
cortico-olivary cerebellar pathway, 346
corticopetal fibers of, 267
corticopontine fibers of, 184, 186, 218
corticopontocerebellar pathway in, 196, 198, 343, 346
corticoreticular cerebellar pathway in, 346
Cerebrum, cortex of—*Continued*
corticorubral fibers in, 247
corticospinal tract in. *See* Corticospinal tract
in descending motor pathway, 322, 326, 328, 331
disorders of, 250
efferent fibers of, 260
entorrhinal areas of, 354
in epilepsy, 84, 271, 280, 281, 493
feedback to and from, 350
frontal eye field in, 263, 264, 358, 492
lesions of, 268
frontal lobe area of, 262–265. *See also* Frontal lobe
function of, 267–268
functional localization of, 263
fusiform nerve cells of, 257, 258
ganglionic layers of, 260, 261
granular layers of, 260, 261
gray matter of, 22, 240
heterotypical areas of, 261
homotypical areas of, 261, 266–267
horizontal nerve cells of, 257, 258
insula of, 22, 233, 237, 240, 241, 266
lateral aspect of, right, 20
layers of, 260–261
lesions of, 268–270, 271–273
Martinotti cells of, 257, 258
mechanisms in, 261–262
microglial cells in, 81
molecular layers of, 260–261
motor area of, 262, 268, 271, 491–492
Broca's area, 263, 264, 268
homunculus of, 264, 324
lesions of, 268
primary, 262, 263
secondary, 262
supplementary, 264
multiform layers of, 260, 261
nerve fibers of, 257–260, 267, 343–344, 346, 353
neurons of, 46, 47, 257, 258, 259, 260
occipital eye field in, 266
occipital lobe area of, 265–266. *See also* Occipital lobe
Cerebrum, cortex of—*Continued*
olfactory areas of, 354, 355
primary, 354
secondary, 354
parietal lobe area of, 265. *See also* Parietal lobe
periamygdaloid areas of, 354
plexiform layers of, 260–261
polymorphic cell layers of, 260, 261
precentral area of, 262–264, 268
lesions of, 268
prefrontal area of, 264–265
lesions of, 268–269
premotor area of, 262, 263
prepiriform areas of, 354
protoplasmic astrocytes in, 76, 77
pyramidal cells of, 46, 47, 257, 258
pyramidal layers of, 260, 261
sensory areas of, 271, 491–492
somesthetic association area of, 265
lesions of, 269
primary, 263, 265
secondary, 263, 265
stellate nerve cells of, 257, 258
structure of, 257–273
variations in, 261
subarachnoid space around, 290
cerebrospinal circulation in, 292
tangential nerve fibers of, 259–260
taste area of, 266
temporal lobe areas of, 266. *See also* Temporal lobe
trauma of, 272
tumors of, 268, 271, 492
vertical chain mechanism of, 272, 492
vestibular area of, 266
visual area of, 356, 357, 358, 382
lesions of, 269, 382
primary, 263, 265–266
secondary, 263, 266, 493
diencephalon of, 221–232. *See also* Diencephalon
falx cerebri, 4, 10, 20, 233, 293, 435, 436, 437, 438, 444

Cerebrum—*Continued*
fasciculus of, longitudinal. *See* Fasciculus, longitudinal
fissures of. *See* Cerebrum, sulci of
fornix of, 14, 221, 222, 225, 229, 230, 236, 275, 277, 401, 402
body of, 224, 241, 242, 246, 276, 286, 289, 390
columns of, 276
anterior, 22, 224, 228, 240, 242, 246, 286
posterior, 242, 243, 246
commissure of, 244, 246, 276
crus of, 276, 277, 278
fimbria of, 222
gyri of, 20, 233–237, 256
cingulate, 14, 224, 236, 286, 394
frontal. *See* Frontal gyrus
lingual, 237
occipitotemporal, 236, 237
orbital, 237, 239
parahippocampal, 223, 236, 237, 239, 275, 276, 277, 278, 289
postcentral, 13, 19, 234, 235
precentral, 13, 19, 234, 235, 264, 440
rectus, 237, 239
temporal. *See* Temporal gyrus
hemispheres of, 233–256
basal nuclei of, 240, 242–244, 251
clinical notes on, 250–256
clinical problems on, 256
answers to, 491
coronal section of, 19, 390, 401, 453
dissection of, 277, 279
dominance of, 267, 270, 468, 505
external capsule of, 244
horizontal section of, 20, 240, 247
inferior surface of, 236–237
internal capsule of. *See* Internal capsule
lateral view of
left, 263
right, 452, 454
medial surface of, 236–237
medial view of
left, 263
right, 236, 238, 249, 276, 452, 454

Cerebrum, hemispheres of—*Continued*
poles of
frontal, 19, 20, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 243, 246, 248, 252, 254
occipital, 19
temporal, 20, 237, 243, 452, 454
subarachnoid space around, 290
cerebrospinal circulation in, 292
superior view of, 19, 234
superolateral surface of, 233–236
telencephalon forming, 221
thalamus in, 225
hemorrhage in, 37, 38, 41, 446–447, 466, 473
in infants, 446–447, 503
horizontal section of, 22, 240, 247
ischemia of, 464–466
lateral ventricles of, 237, 240–242, 250–251. *See also* Lateral ventricles
lobes of, 20, 233–237
clinical notes on, 250
frontal. *See* Frontal lobe
occipital. *See* Occipital lobe
parietal. *See* Parietal lobe
temporal. *See* Temporal lobe
lobules of
paracentral, 14, 236
parietal
inferior, 13, 235
superior, 13, 234, 235, 452
peduncles of, 14, 16, 18, 182, 190, 197, 206, 213, 230, 239, 344, 356
sulci of, 13, 20, 233–237, 238, 256
air in, 253, 255
calcarine, 14, 233, 236, 237, 238, 239, 241, 242, 260
callosal, 236
central, 14, 19, 20, 233, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 256, 291, 392, 452
cingulate, 14, 236, 238
clinical notes on, 250
collateral, 236, 237, 238, 239, 241, 277, 278, 289
frontal, 234, 235, 238
intraparietal, 234, 235, 238

Cerebrum, sulci of—*Continued*
lateral. *See* Lateral sulcus, cerebral
longitudinal, 12, 19, 20, 223, 233, 239, 241, 245
occipitotemporal, 236, 237, 238, 239
olfactory, 237, 239
parieto-occipital, 13, 14, 20, 233, 234, 235, 236, 238, 239, 452
postcentral, 234, 235, 238
precentral, 234, 235, 238
rhinal, 237
temporal, 235, 238
telencephalon of, 5, 221
trauma of. *See* Trauma, of head
tumors of, 268, 271–273, 281, 296, 492, 493
white matter of, 22, 240, 244–249
association fibers of, 244, 248–249, 265, 266–267
commissures of, 244–248, 251
projection fibers of, 244, 249
Cervical ganglion, sympathetic, 359, 438
inferior, 421
middle, 421, 427
superior, 419, 421
trunk of, 420
Cervical rib, 428
Cervical spinal cord, 3, 7, 27, 152, 153, 167, 485
enlargement in, 2, 151, 152, 471
fifth segment of, 377
transverse section of, 154
first segment of, 377
fourth segment of, 377
injuries of, 29
myelogram of, 164–165
second segment of, 364, 377
third segment of, 377
transverse section of, 153, 154
tumors of, 148, 483
Cervical spinal nerves, 23
area of skin innervated by, 139, 140
descending, 380
to dura mater of brain, 438
eighth, 27, 100, 139, 140
fifth, 100, 139, 140
first, 7, 27, 380, 438
fourth, 139, 140

Cervical spinal nerves—*Continued*
second, 9, 139, 140, 380, 438
seventh, 100, 139, 140
sixth, 100, 139, 140
third, 139, 140, 380, 438
Cervical vertebrae and vertebral column
articular process of, 30
atlas, 9, 27, 461, 463
axis, 9, 27
bodies of
joints between, 30, 165
narrowing of space between, 40
cartilaginous joint in, 30
foramen in, 165
transversaria, 461
intervertebral discs in, herniation of, 31
joints in, 30
relationship to spinal segment, 31
seventh, 27
spine of, 30
spondylosis of, 484
transverse process of, 165, 463
in atlas, 9
in axis, 9
in seventh vertebra, 165
in sixth vertebra, 450
vertebral artery in, 463
Chemoreceptors, 115
Chiasma, optic. *See* Optic chiasma
Chiasmatic cistern, 255
Childbirth
analgesia in, 33, 41, 472
injuries during, 446–447, 503
Chin, blow on, cerebral trauma after, 37
Chloramphenicol, at blood-brain barrier, 303
Choline, 414
Cholinergic blocking agents, 69
Cholinesterase, 135, 414
Chorda tympani, 369, 418, 419
Chorea, 337, 341, 497
Choreiform movements, 147
Choroid fissure, 289
Choroid plexus, 14, 16, 22, 171, 236, 240, 278, 390
in blood-cerebrospinal fluid barrier, 301
blood supply of, 250, 283, 287
cerebrospinal fluid produced by, 160, 290–291, 292, 443
ependymal epithelium of, 291
Choroid plexus—*Continued*
epithelial cells of, 301
of fourth ventricle, 190, 205, 206, 208, 209, 210, 211, 224, 284, 286, 287, 288, 292, 344, 399
cerebrospinal fluid formation in, 292
of lateral ventricle, 222, 225, 241, 242, 250–251, 283, 284, 289, 292
cerebrospinal fluid formation in, 292
microscopic structure of, 291
section of villus of, 301
of third ventricle, 221, 224, 230, 250, 283, 284, 286, 289, 292
cerebrospinal fluid formation in, 292
Choroid vein, 455
Choroidal artery, 250, 449, 459
Choroidal fissure, of lateral ventricle, 242
Chromatin granules, fine, in nucleus, 50
Chromatolysis, 48
after axon injury, 105, 106
after section of anterior root of spinal nerve, 105
Chromophobe adenoma, of pituitary, 231
Cilia, 82, 83, 291
Ciliary ganglion, 357, 358, 359, 361, 412, 418, 419, 426
Ciliary muscle, 359
Ciliary nerves
long, 359
short, 357, 358, 359, 361, 418, 426
Cingulate gyrus, 14, 224, 236, 286, 394
Cingulate sulcus, 14, 236, 238
Cingulum, 248
Circadian rhythms, hypothalamic control of, 405, 406
Circulation
of blood, cerebral, interruption of, 464–465
of cerebrospinal fluid. *See* Cerebrospinal fluid, circulation of
Circulus arteriosus of Willis, 449, 451, 455, 464, 467, 503
Cistern(a)
ambiens, 255
cerebellomedullaris, 288, 443
chiasmatic, 255
corpus callosum, 255
interpeduncular, 255, 288, 443
magna, 255
pontine, 255, 288
subarachnoid, 288, 443
Clark's column, 153, 154, 155, 156, 312, 313, 345
Clasp-knife reaction, in descending tract lesions, 336
Claudication, intermittent, sympathectomy in, 430
Claustrum, 22, 240, 241, 243, 244, 390
Clavicle, 165
Cleft, synaptic, 65–66, 70, 476
Climbing fibers, of cerebellum, 193, 196, 199, 200, 202, 343, 345, 488
Clitoris, erection of
autonomic innervation of, 425
after spinal cord injuries, 430
Clostridium botulinum, 134, 136,482
Cocaine, as local anesthetic, 111
Coccygeal spinal nerves, 7, 23
first, 7, 27, 28
Coccyx, 7, 27, 28
Cochlea, 371
spiral ganglion of, 368, 371, 372
Cochlear duct, 372
Cochlear nerve, 368–370, 371, 372
clinical examination of, 385
nucleus of, 176, 184, 187, 368–370, 371
anterior, 175, 176, 184, 368, 371, 400
central connections of, 371
dorsal, 177
posterior, 175, 176, 184, 368, 371, 400
Cog-wheel rigidity, in Parkinson's disease, 339
Colic, gallstone, 501
Collateral eminence, 242, 277, 278
region of, 241
Collateral sulcus or fissure, 236, 237, 238, 239, 241, 242, 277, 278, 289
Colliculus
facial, 15, 17, 181, 183, 184, 205, 207, 208, 365, 367, 368, 391

Colliculus—*Continued*
inferior, 9, 14, 15, 16, 17, 22, 190, 206, 213, 214, 215, 216, 222, 224, 240, 286, 344, 362, 363, 371, 391
brachium of, 213, 214, 393
nucleus of, 18, 370
transverse section at level of, 213–216
superior, 9, 14, 16, 17, 22, 190, 206, 213, 214, 215, 216–218, 222, 224, 239, 240, 241, 286, 315, 325, 344, 357, 358, 359, 360, 361, 391
brachium of, 213, 214
tectobulbar fibers from, 363, 366
tectospinal tract origin in, 325, 326
transverse section at level of, 215, 216–218
Colon, 411
autonomic innervation of, 423
Hirschsprung's disease of, 39, 429, 500
Column(s)
Clark's, 153, 154, 155, 156, 312, 313, 345
of fornix. *See* Cerebrum, fornix of, columns of
of spinal cord
gray. *See* Gray columns of spinal cord
white. *See* White columns of spinal cord
vertebral. *See* Vertebrae and vertebral column
Coma, 270, 273, 493
Commissural fibers, cerebral, 267
Commissures
cerebral, 244–248
anterior, 222, 224, 228, 236, 244, 246, 249, 276, 286, 355
clinical notes on, 251
corpus callosum, 244–246
fornix, 244, 246, 276
habenular, 224, 226, 228, 244, 248
posterior, 14, 222, 224, 226, 228, 244, 246, 286
of spinal cord, 151, 154, 156–157, 288
anterior, 157
Commissures, of spinal cord—*Continued*
posterior, 156
white, anterior, 154, 155
Communicating artery
anterior, 449, 451, 506
posterior, 441, 449, 450, 451, 461, 467, 503–504
Compression, of spinal cord, 162–163
Computerized axial tomography, of ventricles, 251, 296
Concretions, in pineal gland, 226, 227, 231
Conduction of nerve impulse. *See* Nerve(s), impulse conduction
Condyle, of mandible, 463
Cones, and rods, 357
Confluence, of sinuses, 439, 440, 441
Congenital conditions
aneurysms, 466
Arnold-Chiari malformation, 178
Connective tissue
loose, 10, 436
network in subarachnoid space, 302
sheath of peripheral nerve, 89, 95
trabeculae of, fine, 290
Connector neuron, 26, 410
Conscious muscle joint sense, 307, 309, 311, 312
Conscious sensory pathways, 305–312, 316
Consciousness, 270–271
afferent information affecting, 315
proprioceptive information ascending to, 332
stages of, 270–271
Consensual light reflex, 357
autonomic nervous system in, 426
Contracture, muscular
clinical observation of, 147
in lower motor neuron lesions, 336
Contrecoup injury, 36, 41, 473
Conus medullaris, of spinal cord, 2, 6, 7, 28, 151, 152
Convulsions, epileptic, 268, 271
Coordination
centers of, 2
clinical observation of, 147
Cord, spinal. *See* Spinal cord
Cordotomy, for pain relief, 317
Cornea, 360
reflex of, 359, 360
sensory endings in, 135, 480
Corona radiata, 21, 23, 214, 248, 249, 353
in ascending tract of spinal cord, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312
cut surface of, 245
in descending motor pathway, 322, 323, 324
Coronal suture, 255, 461
Corpus (corpora)
callosum, 14, 18, 21, 224, 225, 230, 233, 234, 236, 238, 241, 242, 244–246, 249, 251, 256, 286, 289, 390, 401, 402, 403, 453, 491
body of, 241, 244
superior surface of, 279
cistern of, 255
disorders of, 251
forceps of
major, 242, 245, 246
minor, 244, 245
genu of, 14, 22, 222, 224, 236, 240, 241, 242, 244, 245, 247, 279, 286
indusium griseum covering, 275, 279
radiation of, 244
rostrum of, 14, 224, 236, 242, 244, 286
splenium of, 14, 19, 236, 239, 241, 244, 245, 247, 277
tapetum of, 19, 241, 242, 244
transverse fibers of, 245
cavernosa, 425
spongiosum, 425
striatum, 243–244, 256, 491
arteries to, 455
caudate nucleus in, 243–244
Corpuscles
bulbous, of Krause, 119, 122, 132
Meissner's, 117, 120, 132
Pacinian, 117–119, 121, 132, 480
Correlation centers, 2
Cortex
cerebellar. *See* Cerebellum, cortex of
cerebral. *See* Cerebrum, cortex of
insular, 22, 233, 237, 240, 241, 266
striate, 260

Corticofugal fibers, 267
Corticohypothalamic fibers, 397, 402
Corticonuclear fibers, 18, 210, 215, 216, 217, 218, 247, 353
  bundles of, 184, 185, 186
Cortico-olivary cerebellar pathway, 346
Corticopetal fibers, 267
Corticopontine fibers, 184, 186, 218
Corticopontocerebellar pathway, 196, 198, 343, 346
Corticoreticular cerebellar pathway, 346
Corticorubral fibers, 247
Corticospinal tract, 18, 143, 261, 321–325, 349
  in anterior white column, 158, 159, 323, 324, 325
  in basis pedunculi of midbrain, 323, 324
  fibers of, 144, 210, 215, 216, 217, 218, 247, 332, 349
    bundles of, 184, 185, 186, 187
  functions of, 321
  in lateral white column, 158, 172, 323, 324, 325
  lesions of, 335
    Babinski sign in, 335
    cremasteric reflex in, 335
    fine skilled voluntary movements in, 335
    superficial abdominal reflexes in, 335
  in lower limb, 247
  in pyramid of medulla oblongata, 323, 324
  in trunk, 247
  in upper limb, 247
Costocervical trunk, 450
Cranial fossa, posterior
  cerebellum in, 186, 189, 199
  fourth ventricle in, 210
  medulla oblongata in, 186
  pons in, 186
  raised pressure in, 178
  vertebral artery in, 463
Cranial nerves, 1, 23, 95, 97, 353–387
  abducent. *See* Abducent nerve
  accessory. *See* Accessory nerve
  anatomical organization of, 353
  clinical examination of, 381–385
  clinical notes on, 380–385
Cranial nerves—*Continued*
  clinical problems on, 385–387
    answers to, 497–499
  eighth. *See* Vestibulocochlear nerve
  eleventh. *See* Accessory nerve
  emerging from medulla oblongata, 486
  facial. *See* Facial nerve
  fifth. *See* Trigeminal nerve
  first. *See* Olfactory nerve
  fourth. *See* Trochlear nerve
  glossopharyngeal. *See* Glossopharyngeal nerve
  hypoglossal. *See* Hypoglossal nerve
  ninth. *See* Glossopharyngeal nerve
  nuclei of, 353–387
    in brainstem, 177
    corticonuclear tracts to, 353
    motor, 360
  oculomotor. *See* Oculomotor nerve
  olfactory. *See* Olfactory nerve
  optic. *See* Optic nerve
  pia mater covering, 437
  second. *See* Optic nerve
  sensory ganglia of, 29, 171
  seventh. *See* Facial nerve
  sixth. *See* Abducent nerve
  tenth. *See* Vagus nerve
  third. *See* Oculomotor nerve
  trigeminal. *See* Trigeminal nerve
  trochlear. *See* Trochlear nerve
  twelfth. *See* Hypoglossal nerve
  vagus. *See* Vagus nerve
  vestibulocochlear. *See* Vestibulocochlear nerve
Cranial root, of accessory nerve, 374, 377, 378
  motor nucleus of, 377
Craniosacral outflow, 417
Cremasteric reflex, in corticospinal tract lesions, 335
Cribriform plate, of ethmoid bone, 355
Crossed extensor reflex, 333, 334
Crus
  cerebri, 14, 18, 21, 23, 213, 214, 215, 216, 223, 249, 323, 324, 353, 363
    in Weber's syndrome, 218, 219
  of fornix, 276, 277, 278
Culmen, of cerebellar vermis, 16, 190, 191, 192, 206, 344
Cuneate nucleus, 5, 169, 172, 173, 174, 198, 311, 312, 347, 348, 394, 398
  tubercle of, 5, 15, 17, 169, 170, 208, 209, 391
Cuneocerebellar tract, 196, 198, 311, 312, 314, 348
Cuneus, 14, 236, 237, 239, 452
Cutaneous conditions. *See* Skin
Cutaneous nerve, medial, of arm, 100
Cytoplasm
  of astrocyte, 77
  of axons, 61, 70, 91
  of microglial cell, 81
  of neurons, 51, 52, 53, 57
    organelles in, 50, 51, 55, 56
  of Schwann cell, 89, 91, 92, 93, 94
  structures in, 70, 475

Deafness, 385, 386
  word, 270
Decamethonium, 134, 482
Decerebrate rigidity, 334
Declive, of cerebellar vermis, 16, 190, 191, 192, 206, 344
Decussation of nerve fibers, 322
  in medial lemniscus, 312, 398
    internal structures at level of, 172, 173, 174
  in pyramids, 169, 170, 323, 349, 377, 398
    internal structure at level of, 172, 173, 174
    site of, 324
  in rubrospinal tracts, 215, 217
  sensory, 312
  in superior cerebellar peduncles, 18, 186, 215, 216, 348
  of trochlear nerve, 186, 362
Deep muscles
  of back, 142
  reflexes in descending tract lesions, 336
Defecation, after spinal cord injuries, 429–430
Degeneration of nerves, 104, 107
  in aging, 108
  in autonomic nervous system, 428
  in lower motor neuron lesions, 336

Degeneration of nerves—*Continued*
and muscular atrophy, 108–109
in neurotmesis, 109
retrograde, 103–105, 108
transneuronal, 108, 112
Wallerian, 103, 112, 478
Delta rhythm, 270
Dendrites, 43, 44, 45, 48, 49, 58, 59, 62, 63, 65, 77
longitudinal section of, 58
spines of, 59
axodendritic synapse with, 62, 63, 64
in Purkinje cells, 46, 194
in pyramidal cells, 257
transverse section of, 58
Denervation supersensitivity, of skeletal muscle, 134
Dense bodies, in neurons, 49
Dense lines, of myelinated fibers, 87, 91
Dentate gyrus, 275, 276, 277, 278, 289
Dentate nucleus, 13, 15, 21, 194, 195, 347, 394
dentothalamic pathway from, 198, 348–350
Denticulate ligaments, 4, 7, 9, 152, 160, 167, 485
Dentothalamic pathway, 198, 348–350
Dermatomes
anterior, 139
arrangement of, 148, 482–483
definition of, 139, 145
and muscular activity, 139–149
posterior, 140
Dermis, 116, 118, 121, 122
nerve fibers in, 120
Descending cervical nerve, 380
Descending fibers
to brainstem, 401, 403
to spinal cord, 401, 403
Descending tracts of spinal cord, 158, 321–341
anatomical organization of, 321, 322
in anterior white column, 159
autonomic fibers in, 158–159, 321, 330, 367, 372, 373, 375
cerebrovascular disorders affecting, 340, 496
clinical notes on, 334–339
Descending tracts of spinal cord—*Continued*
clinical problems on, 339–341
answers to, 495–497
corticospinal, 321–325. *See also* Corticospinal tract
anterior, 158, 159, 323, 324, 325
lateral, 158, 172, 323, 324, 325
lesions of, 335
extrapyramidal, 335, 339, 496
first-order neurons in, 321, 322, 353
functions of, 321
from higher centers, 331
in lateral white column, 158–159
lesions of, 335–339
clasp-knife reaction in, 336
muscle tone in, 335
reflexes in, 335, 336
voluntary movements in, 335, 336
in muscle tone, 334, 335
olivospinal, 158, 159, 321, 323, 330, 331
pontine reticulospinal, 325, 326
in posterior white column, 158
pyramidal, 261, 323, 335, 339, 496
in reflex arc, 330–334
reticulospinal, 143, 144, 159, 321, 325, 326, 332, 349
lateral, 158
medullary, 325, 326
rubrospinal, 143, 144, 158, 172, 198, 215, 217, 321, 323, 325, 328, 332, 348, 349
second-order neurons in, 321, 322, 353
tectospinal, 144, 158, 159, 175, 176, 178, 321, 323, 325, 327, 332, 360, 400
third-order neurons in, 321, 322, 353
in thoracic region, 88
vestibulospinal, 143, 144, 158, 159, 172, 198, 321, 323, 325–329, 330, 332, 349, 350, 368, 370
in voluntary movement, 335
in white matter of spinal cord, 158–159
Diabetes insipidus, 406, 500
in hypothalamic dysfunction, 231
Diabetic neuropathy, 497–498
Diaphragm, phrenic nucleus for innervation of, 153
Diaphragma sellae, 227, 438, 439, 441
Diencephalon, 5, 18, 221–232
clinical notes on, 230–231
clinical problems on, 231–232
answers to, 490–491
epithalamus in, 221, 226–227, 231
gross features of, 221–230
hypothalamus in, 221, 227–228, 231. *See also* Hypothalamus
inferior surface of, 221
lateral surface of, 221
medial surface of, 221, 224
subthalamus in, 221, 226, 231
superior surface of, 221
thalamus in, 221–226, 230–231. *See also* Thalamus
third ventricle in, 221, 228–230. *See also* Third ventricle
Digastric muscle
anterior belly of, 365
posterior belly of, 368
facial nerve to, 369
Diisopropylphosphorofluoridate (DPF), 69
Dimethyl tubocurarine, 133, 481–482
Diplegia, 336
Diploë, 10, 436
Diploic veins, 10, 436, 439, 441
Diplopia, 383, 385, 497
Direct light reflex, 357, 426
Disc(s)
intervertebral. *See* Intervertebral disc
Merkel's, 115, 116, 117, 132
optic, 354
Discriminative sense, 307, 309, 312
for touch, pathway for, 307, 309, 311, 312
Dominance, cerebral, 267, 270, 468, 505
Dopamine, 66, 67, 69, 476
Dorsal nucleus, of vagus nerve, 420, 421, 422, 423
Dorsomedial nucleus
of hypothalamus, 225, 228, 229
of thalamus, 389, 390, 392, 397, 401
DPF, as synaptic blocking agent, 69

Drugs, crossing blood-brain barrier, 303
Duct
  cochlear, 372
  of glandular acini, 131
  semicircular, ampullae of. *See also* Semicircular canals or ducts
Dura mater, 293, 294, 302
  of brain, 284, 293, 435–438, 444, 445
    arterial supply of, 438
    diaphragma sellae, 438
    endosteal layer of, 4, 5, 10, 435, 436, 437, 438, 440, 441, 442, 444
    falx cerebri, 4, 10, 20, 233, 293, 435, 436, 437, 438, 444
    at foramen magnum, 437, 438
    meningeal layer of, 4, 10, 290, 435, 436, 437, 438, 440, 441, 442, 444
    nerve supply of, 438
    subdural space, 443
    tentorium cerebelli, 9, 10, 233, 284, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 444
  at optic nerve, 294
  of spinal cord, 2, 28, 34, 151, 152, 159, 284, 294, 437, 438
    extradural space, 159
  at spinal nerve root, 294
  at trigeminal nerve, 294
Dural sheath, of spinal cord, 28, 35
Dural venous sinuses, 438–443
  cavernous, 439, 441, 442, 446, 450, 457, 459, 502
  confluence of, 439, 440, 441
  intercavernous, 439
    anterior, 443
    posterior, 443
  occipital, 438, 440, 441, 454
  petrosal
    inferior, 443
    superior, 439, 441, 443
  sagittal, 293
    inferior, 10, 38, 250, 435, 436, 439, 440, 454
    superior, 10, 284, 293, 435, 436, 438, 439, 442, 454
  sigmoid, 441
  sphenoparietal, 443
Dural venous sinuses—*Continued*
  straight, 10, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 440, 454
  transverse, 9, 435, 437, 438, 439, 441, 454
Dysarthria, in cerebellar dysfunction, 201
Dysautonomia, familial, 40
Dysdiadochokinesis, in cerebellar dysfunction, 201
Dystonia, 337, 341, 497
Dystrophy, adiposogenital, 231

Edinger-Westphal nucleus, 217, 357, 358, 359, 361, 362
Effector endings, 124–132, 480–482
  agents affecting, 133–135
  clinical notes on, 133–135
  innervation of skeletal muscle, 124–128
  internuncial neuron synapse with, 333
  neuromuscular junctions
    in cardiac muscle, 132, 135
    in skeletal muscle, 126–128, 133–135
    in smooth muscle, 128–132, 135
  on secretory cells, 131, 132, 135
Efferent (motor) nerve fibers, 26, 62, 122, 125
  alpha, 151, 324, 332
  of anterior gray column of spinal cord, 105, 151, 360, 399
  of anterior spinal root, 97
  of autonomic nervous system, 411
    parasympathetic, 410–412, 415
    postganglionic, 411, 412
    preganglionic, 409–412
    sympathetic, 409–410, 411, 415
  cerebellar, 193, 195–196, 343, 345, 348–350
  cortical, 260
  descending tract of. *See* Descending tracts of spinal cord
  gamma, 123, 144, 151, 324, 332
  of hippocampus, 278–279
  injury of, 108–109, 134, 136
  lateral group of, 154
Efferent (motor) nerve fibers—*Continued*
  lesions of, 336, 384
  for lower limb neurons, 155
  lower motor neurons of, 47, 88, 143, 144, 307, 321, 323, 326, 327, 328, 331, 332, 339, 353, 495
    lesions of, 336, 384
    multiple synapsing of, 332
    Renshaw cells in inhibition of, 334
    in simple reflex arc, 126, 141
  in motor unit, 140, 141
  nucleus of. *See* Motor nuclei
  roots of. *See* Motor roots
  of thalamus, 394
  of trigeminal nerve, 365
  for trunk muscles, 154, 155
  upper motor neurons of, 47, 321, 339, 495
    facial expression with lesions of, 384
  for upper limb muscle innervation, 154
Ejaculation
  autonomic innervation of, 426
  after spinal cord injuries, 430
Electrical changes, in nerve impulse conduction, 100–103
Electrocorticograms, 270
Electroencephalogram, 270, 273, 493
  alpha rhythm in, 270
  beta rhythm in, 270
  delta rhythm in, 270
Emaciation, in hypothalamic dysfunction, 231
Emboliform nucleus, cerebellar, 194, 195
  globose-emboliform-rubral pathway, 328, 348, 349
Eminence
  collateral, 241, 242, 277, 278
  medial
    of fourth ventricle, 15, 17, 181, 183, 205, 207, 208, 391
    of tuber cinereum, 227–228
Emissary vein, 10, 436, 439
Emotion
  hypothalamus affecting, 405
  limbic system affecting, 279, 280
Encapsulated receptor endings, 117–124

Encapsulated receptor endings —*Continued*
Krause bulbous corpuscles, 119, 122, 132
Meissner's corpuscles, 117, 132
neuromuscular spindles, 119–124, 132
neurotendinous spindles, 124, 125, 132
Pacinian corpuscles, 117–119, 132
Encephalography, of cerebral ventricles, 296
End-organ atrophy, after nerve degeneration, 108–109
Endocrine system, hypothalamus in, 402, 403, 404, 407, 413
Endomysium, 127, 128
Endoneurial spaces, in peripheral nerves, 111
Endoneurial tubes, axons growing along, 107
Endoneurium, 104, 127, 128, 477
capsule continuous with
of Krause bulbous corpuscles, 122
of Meissner's corpuscle, 120
of Pacinian corpuscle, 121
of peripheral nerve, 89, 95, 96, 97
Endoplasmic reticulum, rough, of neurons, 49, 50, 51, 55
Endosteal layer, of dura mater of brain, 4, 5, 10, 435, 436, 437, 438, 440, 441, 442, 444
Endosteum, 437
Endothelial basement membrane, 301
Endothelial cells, 293, 300, 301
fenestrations of, 300, 301
in superior sagittal venous sinus, 293
tight junction around, 300, 301
Endothelium, of blood capillary, 291
Entorrhinal area, of cerebral cortex, 354
Ependyma, 73, 74, 83, 84, 302
of central canal of spinal cord, 82, 157
of choroid plexus, 291
function of cells in, 76
of ventricles, 83, 283, 287, 288, 289, 302
Ependymomas, of fourth ventricle, 211
Epicranial aponeurosis, 10, 436
Epidermis, 116, 118, 120, 121, 122
Epilepsy, 85, 271, 476–477
focal, gliotic scar in, 84
Jacksonian, 268, 492
olfactory aura in, 281, 493
petit mal, 149, 271, 483
temporal lobe, 280, 493
Epinephrine, 66, 415
Epineurium, 437, 477
of peripheral nerve, 89, 95, 97
Epithalamus, 226–227, 231
clinical notes on, 231
habenular nucleus in, 222, 226, 248, 276
pineal gland of, 226–227, 231
Epithelial basement membrane, 301
Epithelial cells, choroidal, 301
Erectile tissue
autonomic innervation of, 425
after spinal cord injuries, 430
Esophageal plexus, 376
Ethmoid bone, cribriform plate of, 355
Exocytosis
in skeletal muscle innervation, 128
in smooth muscle innervation, 130
Expressive aphasia, 268
Extension, paraplegia in, 334
Extensor reflex, crossed, 333, 334
Exteroceptive information, ascending tract conduction of, 305
Exteroreceptors, 115
External capsule, 244
lateral to lentiform nucleus, 248
Extradural space, 159
hemorrhage into, 36, 37, 41, 445, 472, 506
internal vertebral venous plexus in, 159
Extrafusal fibers
muscle, 121, 123
tendon, 125
Extrapyramidal tracts, 335, 339, 496
Eye, 327, 411
autonomic innervation of, 418, 419, 432, 501
examination of, 381
Eye—*Continued*
fields of vision in. *See* Visual fields
iris of, 357, 358, 359, 418, 419, 432, 501
autonomic innervation of, 418, 419
in maintaining balance, 146
movements of, disorders in, 201, 202
reflexes of, 357–359, 426–427
Eyeball, 294, 444
oblique muscle of
inferior, 361
superior, 362, 363
rectus muscle of
inferior, 361
lateral, 365, 366
medial, 358, 361
superior, 361
sagittal section of, 444
Eyelid
autonomic innervation of, 418, 419
levator palpebrae superioris muscle of, 361, 419, 420
ptosis of, 383

Facial artery, 457
Facial canal, 369
Facial colliculus, 15, 17, 181, 183, 184, 205, 207, 208, 365, 367, 368, 391
Facial expression
defects of, 383–384
in lower motor neuron lesions, 384
in upper motor neuron lesions, 384
muscles of, 368
Facial nerve, 9, 10, 181, 184, 360, 367–368, 418, 419, 420, 436
auricular branch of, posterior, 369
buccal branch of
lower, 369
upper, 369
cervical branch of, to platysma, 369
clinical examination of, 383–384
distribution of, 368, 369
mandibular branch of, marginal, 369
nuclei of, 177, 210, 367, 410

Facial nerve, nuclei of—*Continued*
central connections of, 367
lacrimal, 367, 368, 418
motor, 184, 210, 360, 367, 368, 384
parasympathetic, 210, 367, 368, 418
in pons, 181, 186, 187
relationship to abducent nerve nuclei, 210
salivary, superior, 418, 419
salivatory, superior, 210, 367, 368
sensory, 210, 367–368
in tractus solitarius, 210, 367
palsy of, 110, 112, 478–479, 499
to posterior belly of digastric muscle, 368, 369
roots of, 12, 182
motor, 170, 368, 369
sensory, 170, 368, 369
to stylohyoid muscle, 368, 369
temporal branch of, 369
Falx cerebri, 4, 10, 20, 233, 293, 435, 436, 437, 438, 444
junction with tentorium cerebelli, 437
Fascia, superficial, 10, 34, 436
Fasciculation, muscular
clinical observation of, 147
in lower motor neuron lesions, 336
Fasciculus
cuneatus, 154, 157, 158, 172, 173, 174, 307, 309, 311, 312, 398
injury to, 317
in posterior white column, 157, 311, 312
fronto-occipital, 248–249
gracilis, 154, 157, 158, 172, 173, 174, 307, 309, 311, 312, 398
injury to, 317
in posterior white column, 157, 311, 312
longitudinal
inferior, 19, 248
medial, 173, 175, 176, 177, 181, 184, 185, 186, 187, 213, 215, 216, 217, 325, 361, 362, 363, 366, 370, 398, 400
superior, 248
uncinate, 248
Fastigial nucleus, of cerebellum, 194, 195, 350
Fastigial pathway
reticular, 350
vestibular, 349, 350
Female sexual organs, autonomic innervation of, 425
Femoral artery, 427
catheter in, 463
Femoral nerve, 3
Fenestrations, of endothelial cells, 300, 301
Fetus, brain and spinal cord of, 6
Fibroma, of peripheral nerves, 110
Fields of vision, 356. *See also* Visual fields
Film cassette, position of, 253, 255, 457, 459, 461, 463
Filum terminale, 2, 6, 7, 26, 28, 35, 151, 152, 167, 284, 485
Fimbria, of hippocampus, 222, 242, 246, 275, 276, 277, 278, 289
Final common pathway. *See* Efferent (motor) nerve fibers, lower motor neurons of
Fingers, nerve endings in skin of, 117
First-order neurons, 305
in ascending pathway, 353
in descending tracts, 321, 322, 353
Fissures. *See also* Sulcus
of anterior spinal cord, 154, 155
central, 11
of cerebral hemispheres. *See* Cerebrum, sulci of
choroid, 289
collateral, 236, 237, 238, 239, 241, 242, 277, 278, 289
horizontal, of cerebellum, 16, 189, 190, 191, 192, 266, 344
lateral. *See* Lateral sulcus, cerebral
longitudinal, of cerebrum, 19, 20, 223, 233, 241
median. *See* Median fissure
primary, of cerebellum, 16, 189, 190, 191, 192, 206, 344
uvulonodular, of cerebellum, 189, 192
Flaval ligament, 30, 34
Flexion, paraplegia in, 334
Flocculus, of cerebellum, 12, 189, 191, 192, 208
Floor
of fourth ventricle. *See* Fourth ventricle, floor of
of lateral ventricle, 242
of third ventricle, 230
Floor plate, of neural tube, 171, 399
Flower spray endings, of neuromuscular spindles, 122, 123
Fluid, cerebrospinal. *See* Cerebrospinal fluid
Folds
of cerebral hemispheres. *See* Cerebrum, gyri of
junctional, at neuromuscular junctions, 126, 127, 136
of cerebellum, 16, 189, 192, 194, 344
Folia, of cerebellum, 16, 189, 190, 192, 194, 206, 344
Follicle, hair, nerve endings related to, 115–117, 132
Follicle-stimulating hormone, 403, 404
Fontanelles, 473
Food intake, hypothalamus affecting, 405
Foot processes, of astrocytes, 75, 300, 302
Foramen
interventricular, 14, 18, 21, 24, 224, 228, 236, 240, 246, 255, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 292
of Luschka, 24, 205, 210, 284, 285, 287
of Magendie, 16, 24, 205, 208, 209, 210, 284, 285, 287, 288, 344, 489
magnum, 438, 439, 450
accessory nerve fibers in, 377
dura mater at, 437, 438
herniation of medulla and cerebellar tonsils through, 178
margin of, 9, 463
vertebral artery in, 461, 463
of Monro. *See* Foramen, interventricular
ovale, 441
sacral, 28
spinosum, 438

Foramen—*Continued*
transversaria, vertebral artery in, 461
vertebral, 165
Forceps, of corpus callosum
major, 242, 245, 246
minor, 244, 245
Forearm, medial cutaneous nerve of, 100
Forebrain, 5
Form appreciation, testing of, 133
Fornic cerebri. *See* Cerebrum, fornix of
Fossa
cranial. *See* Cranial fossa, posterior
interpeduncular, 18, 213, 214, 215, 216, 217, 223, 224, 286, 359, 361, 363, 390
rhomboid. *See* Fourth ventricle, floor of
Fourth ventricle, 9, 13–14, 24, 169, 171, 205–211, 283, 284, 285, 287, 288, 371, 379, 399, 437
blockage of foramen in hydrocephalus, 211
cavity of, 14, 15, 16, 169, 175, 179, 184, 190, 195, 206, 224, 286, 344, 400
cerebrospinal fluid in, 288
posterior view of, 208
choroid plexus in, 205, 208, 209, 210, 211, 224, 284, 286, 287, 288, 344, 399
cerebrospinal fluid formation in, 292
clinical notes on, 210–211
clinical problems on, 211
answers to, 488–489
facial colliculus in, 15, 205, 207, 208
floor of, 17, 169, 170, 176, 205, 207, 391
lower part of, 209
medial eminence of, 181, 183
medulla oblongata forming, 208
pons forming, 208
structures beneath, 211, 489
sulcus limitans of, 181, 183
floor plate of, 171
gross appearance of, 205–210
hypoglossal triangle of, 15, 208, 210
Fourth ventricle—*Continued*
lateral boundaries of, 205
lateral recess of, 15, 205
medial eminence of, 15, 17, 181, 183, 205, 207, 208, 391
median sulcus of. *See* Median sulcus
medullary striae of, 15, 17, 170, 205, 208
medullary velum of
inferior, 14, 16, 175, 205, 208, 209, 211, 344, 400, 489
superior, 14, 15, 16, 18, 184, 185, 186, 206, 208, 211, 344, 362, 489
posterior wall of, 205
rhomboid fossa of. *See* Fourth ventricle, floor of
roof of, 15, 16, 190, 205, 206, 344
apertures in, 211, 489
cerebrospinal fluid escape through, 292
lateral, 15, 205, 210, 284, 285, 287
median, 15, 16, 190, 205, 206, 208, 209, 210, 284, 285, 287, 288, 344, 489
posterior view of, 15, 209
roof plate in development of, 171
sagittal section of, 288
striae medullaris of, 15, 17, 170, 205, 207, 208
substantia ferruginea of, 181, 183, 205, 207
sulcus limitans of, 15, 17, 169, 171, 181, 183, 205, 207, 208, 391, 399
tela choroidea of, 205, 208
tumors of, 211
vagal triangle of, 15, 208, 210
Fracture
and dislocations of spinal cord
cervical region, 29
lumbar region, 29
thoracic region, 29
of skull, 33, 35
pond, 35
of vertebral column, 29, 340, 496
Free nerve endings, 116, 132
Frey's syndrome, 429
Friedreich's ataxia, 39–40, 497
Fröhlich syndrome, 406–407, 499–500
Frontal bone, 11
orbital plate of, 253, 255
Frontal eye field, 263, 264, 358, 492
lesions of, 268
Frontal gyrus
inferior, 13, 234, 235
medial, 236
middle, 13, 234, 235, 256, 491
superior, 13, 234, 235, 452
Frontal lobe, 4, 11, 12, 20, 42, 198, 223, 229, 233–235, 241, 245, 249, 276, 394, 402, 403, 474
cortex of, 222, 262–265
gyrus of. *See* Frontal gyrus
lesions of, 272–273, 492
lobectomy of, 269
sulcus of, 234, 235, 238
thalamocortical fibers to, 247
Frontal nerve, 365
Frontal pole, cerebral, 19, 20, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 243, 246, 248, 252, 254
Frontal sinus, 442
Fronto-occipital fasciculus, 248–249
Frontopolar artery, 457
Frontopontine fibers, 18, 21, 23, 215, 216, 217, 247
Fundi, ocular, examination of, 381
Fusiform cells, cerebral, 257, 258

Gait, in cerebellar dysfunction, 200, 202
Gallamine, 133, 481–482
Gallstone colic, 501
Gamma fiber, efferent, 123, 144, 151, 324, 332
Ganglion
autonomic. *See* Autonomic nervous system, ganglia of
basal, 20, 240, 242–244, 256, 491
clinical notes on, 251
ciliary, 357, 358, 359, 361, 412, 418, 419, 426
geniculate, 367, 368, 369
on glossopharyngeal nerve, 372, 373, 374
mesenteric, 422
otic, 369, 374, 412, 420
of peripheral nervous system, 1, 29, 97

Ganglion—*Continued*
of posterior root of spinal nerve. *See* Posterior root ganglion, spinal
sacral, posterior root, 35
sensory. *See* Sensory ganglia; Posterior root ganglion, sensory
spinal. *See* Posterior root ganglion, spinal
spiral, of cochlea, 368, 371, 372
sympathetic, 4, 25, 99, 409, 410, 414
cervical, 359, 419, 420, 421, 427, 438
longitudinal section of, 99
lumbar, 427
sacral, 427
trigeminal, 177, 294, 360, 362, 364, 365, 439
vagus nerve
inferior, 373, 375, 376
superior, 375, 376
vestibular, 368, 370, 372
Ganglioneuroma, 68
Ganglionic blocking agents, 69, 70, 413, 414, 476
Ganglionic cells, in vision, 357
Ganglionic layer
of cerebral cortex, 260, 261
of retina, 354
Gap junctions, at neuromuscular junction, 131
Gastrocnemius muscle, innervation of, 146
Gastrointestinal tract
autonomic innervation of, 421–423
after spinal cord injuries, 429–430
Geniculate body
lateral, 214, 221, 224, 225, 356, 357, 360, 382, 392, 393
neurons of, in vision, 357
medial, 213, 214, 225, 370, 371, 392, 393
Geniculate ganglion, 367, 368, 369
Genioglossus muscle, 380
hypoglossal nerve innervation of, 375, 379
Geniohyoid muscle, nerve to, 380
Genital organs
autonomic innervation of, 425–426
in hypothalamic dysfunction, 231
Gennari, stria of, 260
Genu
of corpus callosum, 14, 22, 222, 224, 236, 240, 241, 242, 244, 245, 247, 279, 286
of internal capsule, 22, 240, 247, 249, 353
Glands, 415
adrenal. *See* Suprarenal gland
lacrimal, 368, 411, 418–420
nasal, 368
palatine, 368
parotid, 372, 374, 411, 418, 420
pineal. *See* Pineal body or gland
pituitary. *See* Hypophysis cerebri
salivary
sublingual, 368, 411, 418, 419
submandibular, 368, 411, 418, 419
sebaceous, 118
suprarenal. *See* Suprarenal gland
thyroid, carcinoma of, 40, 471
Glial cells
of pineal body, 226
processes of, 302
Glioblastoma, 84
Glioma, 85, 477
Gliosis, 76, 84, 476
Gliotic scar, 84, 476
Globose-emboliform-rubral pathway, 328, 348, 349
Globose nucleus, 194, 195
Globus pallidus, 22, 23, 225, 240, 241, 244, 331, 390, 401
Parkinson's disease affecting, 338
Glomeruli, synaptic, of olfactory bulb, 354, 355
Glossopharyngeal nerve, 9, 10, 12, 170, 182, 369, 370–372, 373, 375, 387, 420, 436, 499
clinical examination of, 385
distribution of, 374
ganglion on, 372
inferior, 373, 374
superior, 373, 374
lingual branches of, 365, 369, 374, 380, 418
in medulla oblongata, 178
nuclei of, 373, 410, 412
ambiguus, 177
central connections of, 373
motor, 370, 373
parasympathetic, 370–372, 373
Glossopharyngeal nerve, nuclei of—*Continued*
salivary, inferior, 418, 420
salivatory, inferior, 370–372, 373
sensory, 372
of tractus solitarius, 372, 373
pharyngeal branch of, 374
rootlets of, 374
tonsillar branches of, 374
tympanic branch of, 369, 372, 374, 418, 420
Glycogen, in neurons, 54
Golgi apparatus, of neurons, 48, 49, 50, 55, 77, 81
Golgi cells
in cerebellar cortex, 193, 194, 197, 199, 345
type I, 43, 46, 70, 475
type II, 43, 46, 70, 475
Gracilis nucleus, 5, 169, 172, 173, 174, 311, 312, 394, 398
tubercle of, 5, 9, 15, 17, 169, 170, 208, 209, 391
Granular areas, of cerebral cortex, heterotypical, 261
Granular cells
in cerebellar cortex, 193, 199, 345
of olfactory bulb, 354, 355
Granular layer
of cerebellar cortex, 46, 189, 193, 194, 199, 345
of cerebral cortex
external, 260, 261
internal, 260, 261
of dentate gyrus, 277, 278
Granulation, arachnoid. *See* Arachnoid villi, granulations of
Granule cell, of cerebellar cortex, 47
Granules
fine chromatin, in nucleus, 50
lipofuscin, 54, 59, 81
melanin, in neurons, 54
Gray columns of spinal cord
anterior, 2, 8, 25, 48, 52, 54, 62, 151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 156, 171, 174, 177, 399
accessory nucleus in, 156
central group of nerve cells in, 156
degeneration of cells in, 149, 484

Gray columns of spinal cord, anterior—*Continued*
efferent neurons in, 105, 151, 360, 399
lateral group of nerve cells in, 153, 154, 156
in leg muscle innervation, 153
lumbosacral nucleus in, 156
medial group of nerve cells in, 153, 154, 156
motor neurons of, 105, 171, 360, 399
in muscle tone, 146
nerve cell groups in, 151, 156
nervous input affecting, 142–145, 146
phrenic nucleus in, 156
in simple reflex arc, 122, 126, 141
spinal nucleus of accessory nerve spinal root in, 377
in trunk muscle innervation, 153
in upper limb muscle innervation, 153, 154
gray commissure uniting, 151. *See also* Gray commissure of spinal cord
lateral, 25, 151, 152, 153, 154, 156, 410
nerve cell groups in, 153, 154, 156
posterior, 2, 8, 25, 151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 171, 399
nerve cell groups in, 156
nucleus dorsalis in, 153, 154, 156, 312, 313, 345
nucleus proprius in, 156
sensory cells of, 171, 399
substantia gelatinosa group in, 156, 307
visceral afferent nucleus in, 156
Gray commissure of spinal cord, 2, 8, 151, 153, 154, 156–157, 288
anterior, 157, 167, 486
posterior, 156
Gray horn of spinal cord. *See* Gray columns of spinal cord
Gray matter, 1, 39, 471
central, 18, 176, 213, 215, 216, 217, 287
of cerebellum, 189–195
of cerebral cortex, 22, 240
Gray matter—*Continued*
of spinal cord, 2, 7, 8, 151–157, 167, 171, 399, 485
anterior gray column of. *See* Gray columns of spinal cord, anterior
central canal in, 151, 152, 155, 156–157. *See also* Central canal of spinal cord
fibrous astrocytes in, 73
gray commissure in, 2, 8, 151, 153, 154, 156–157, 288
lateral gray column in, 25, 151, 152, 153, 154, 156, 410
posterior gray column in. *See* Gray columns of spinal cord, posterior
structure of, 151
Gray rami communicantes, of spinal nerves, 4, 25, 26, 409, 410
Groove, basilar, 181, 182, 184, 186
Growth hormones, 403
Gyrus (gyri)
of cerebral hemispheres, 233–237. *See also* Cerebrum, gyri of
cingulate, 14, 224, 236, 286, 394
dentate, 275, 276, 277, 278, 289
frontal. *See* Frontal gyrus
lingual, 237
occipitotemporal, 236, 237
orbital, 237, 239
parahippocampal, 223, 236, 237, 239, 275, 276, 277, 278, 289
of parietal lobe, 235
postcentral, 13, 19, 234, 235
precentral, 13, 19, 234, 235, 264, 440
rectus, 237, 239
temporal, 13, 235, 239, 452

Habenula, 17, 391
Habenular commissure, 224, 226, 244, 248, 286
region of, 276
Habenular nucleus, 226, 248
region of, 222, 276
Hair, 118, 119
arrector muscles of, 118
external root sheath of follicle, 119
Hair—*Continued*
nerve endings related to follicles, 115–117, 118, 119, 132, 136, 480
probable function of, 132
nerve plexus around follicle, 118
olfactory, 354, 355
Hand
nerve endings in skin of fingers, 117
thalamic lesions affecting, 230–231, 395
Head
of caudate nucleus, 22, 23, 222, 240, 241, 242, 243, 245, 247
coronal section of upper part of, 10, 436
corticonuclear fibers of, 247
injuries of, 41, 446, 447, 466, 472, 502. *See also* Trauma, of head
right side of, 440
skin of, 10
superior view of, 442
Heart, 376, 411, 415
autonomic innervation of, 420–421, 427–428
diseases of, 465
neuromuscular junctions on muscle of, 132, 135
Hematoma, subdural, 447, 503, 506
Hemianopia, 381
bitemporal, in optic chiasma lesions, 382
crossed homonymous, 269
left temporal, 382
right nasal, 382
quadrantic
inferior, 269
superior, 269
Hemiballismus, 337, 341, 491, 497
Hemiplegia, 336, 340, 386
homolateral, 447, 503
Hemispheres
cerebellar. *See* Cerebellum, hemispheres of
cerebral. *See* Cerebrum, hemispheres of
Hemorrhage
cerebral, 37, 38, 41, 446–447, 466, 473
in infants, 446–447, 503
extradural, 36, 37, 41, 445, 472, 506

Hemorrhage—*Continued*
intracranial, 36, 37, 38, 445–446, 466
in infants, 38, 446, 447
pontine, 187, 188
subarachnoid, 38, 41, 445, 446, 466, 473
subdural, 36, 37, 38, 41, 219, 445–446, 473, 489
Herniation
of intervertebral discs, 29, 31, 40–41, 472
cervical, 31
clinical problems on, 40–41
answers to, 472
lumbar, 31, 147–148, 482
of medulla and cerebellar tonsils, through foramen magnum, 178
of nucleus pulposus, 31, 32
Herpes zoster, 148, 482
spinal cord in, 148
Heterotypical areas, of cerebral cortex, 261
Hexamethonium salts, as blocking agents, 69, 413, 414, 476
Hilus, neurovascular, 124
Hindbrain, 5, 13–14
vesicle formation, 169
Hippocampal formation, 276
Hippocampohypothalamic fibers, 397, 402
Hippocampus, 242, 243, 275, 276, 277, 289, 493
afferent connections of, 278
alveus of, 242, 246, 275, 276, 278
coronal section of, 278
efferent connections of, 278–279
fimbria of, 242, 246, 275, 276, 277
fornix origin in, 221
molecular layer of, 277, 278
pes hippocampus, 275, 277
polymorphic layer of, 277, 278
pyramidal layer of, 277, 278
structure of, 277–279
Hirschsprung's disease, 39, 429, 500
Homotypical areas, of cerebral cortex, 261, 266–267
Homunculus, motor, 324
on precentral gyrus, 264
Horizontal cells, of cerebral cortex, 257, 258
Horizontal fissure, cerebellar, 16, 189, 190, 191, 192, 206, 344
Hormones
adrenocorticotropic, 403, 404
follicle-stimulating, 403, 404
growth, 403
hypothalamic control of, 402, 403, 404, 407, 413
lactogenic, 403
luteinizing, 403, 404
luteotropic, 403, 404
melanocyte-stimulating, 403, 404
oxytocin, 402
prolactin, 403
release-inhibiting, 403, 404
releasing, 403, 404
somatotropic, 403, 404
thyroid-stimulating, 403, 404
thyrotropic, 403
vasopressin, 402
Horn(s)
of lateral ventricle. *See* Lateral ventricle
of spinal cord. *See* Gray columns of spinal cord; White columns of spinal cord
Horner's syndrome, 428, 500
Hunger center, hypothalamic, 405
Hydrocephalus, 180, 219–220, 295–296, 407, 472–473, 486, 489–490, 494, 500
in Arnold-Chiari malformation, 178
cerebral aqueduct blockage in, 219
conditions causing, 211
definition of, 211
lateral ventricle distention in, 250
Hyoglossus muscle, 375, 380
Hyperkalemic paralysis, 135
Hypertension, 432, 470, 502, 506
sympathectomy in, 430
Hyperthermia, with hypothalamic lesions, 406
Hypertonia, 335, 336
Hypogastric plexus, 424, 425, 426
Hypoglossal nerve, 10, 170, 171, 173, 175, 179, 182, 375, 379, 380, 398, 399, 400, 436
clinical examination of, 385
descending branch of, 380
distribution of, 380
Hypoglossal nerve—*Continued*
to genioglossus muscle, 375, 379
in medulla oblongata, 175, 178
nucleus of, 173, 175, 176, 177, 179, 210, 211, 375, 379, 398, 400
central connections of, 379
roots of, 12
Hypoglossal triangle, 15, 17, 170, 208, 210, 391
Hypokalemic paralysis, 135
Hypophyseal portal system, 403, 407, 500
Hypophysectomy, 407
Hypophysis cerebri, 14, 224, 227, 286, 402, 438, 441
anterior lobe of, 441
chromophobe adenoma of, 231
connections with hypothalamus, 401–402
posterior lobe of, 441
Hypoplasia, genital, in hypothalamic dysfunction, 231
Hypotension, postural, 465
Hypothalamohypophyseal tract, 402, 403, 407, 500
Hypothalamus, 18, 221, 227–228, 407, 500
afferent connections of, 397, 401, 402
amygdalohypothalamic fibers in, 397
corticohypothalamic fibers in, 397, 402
hippocampohypothalamic fibers in, 397, 402
olfactory fibers in, 397, 402
sagittal section of brain showing, 402
somatic, 397, 402
tegmental fibers in, 401, 402
thalamohypothalamic fibers in, 401, 402
visceral, 397, 402
autonomic control by, 403–404, 407, 412, 413
and circadian rhythm control, 405, 406
clinical notes on, 231, 405–406
clinical problems on, 406–407
answers to, 499–500
connections of, 397–407
with hypophysis cerebri, 401–402

Hypothalamus—*Continued*
disorders of, 491
dorsomedial nucleus of, 225, 228, 229, 397, 401
efferent connections of, 401, 403
fibers to brainstem and spinal cord, 401, 403
mammillotegmental tract, 401, 403
mammillothalamic tract, 229, 275, 276, 400, 401, 403
sagittal section of brain showing, 403
emotion and behavior affected by, 405
endocrine functions of, 402, 403, 404, 407, 413
and food and water intake regulation, 405, 406
forming inferior wall of third ventricle, 230
forming lateral wall of third ventricle, 228
functions of, 403–405
as hunger center, 405
and hypophyseal portal system, 403, 407
hypothalamohypophyseal tract, 402, 403, 407
inferior surface of brain showing parts of, 399
infundibular nucleus of, 228, 229, 397, 401
infundibulum of, 12, 18, 221, 223, 224, 227–228, 230
lamina terminalis of, 14, 18, 224, 227, 228, 246, 286
lateral nucleus of, 228, 229, 397, 400
large, 397, 401
posterior, 225
tuberal, 228, 229, 397
lesions of, disorders with, 406
in limbic system, 275
mammillary bodies of, 227, 228, 229, 230
medial nuclei of, 228, 229, 397, 400
nuclei of, 228, 229, 367, 373, 375, 394, 397
coronal section of cerebral hemispheres showing, 401
sagittal section of brain showing, 400
optic chiasma of, 227, 230
Hypothalamus—*Continued*
and oxytocin synthesis, 402
paraventricular nucleus of, 228, 229, 397, 401
posterior nucleus of, 228, 229, 397
preoptic area of, 227, 228
preoptic nucleus of, 228, 229, 397
region of, 14, 402
sagittal section of brain showing, 398, 400, 402, 403
as satiety center, 405
sulcus of, 221, 224, 228, 286
supraoptic nucleus of, 228, 229, 397
syndromes of, 231
in temperature regulation, 405, 406
as thirst center, 405, 406, 407
tuber cinereum of, 227–228, 230
tuberomammillary nucleus of, 228, 229, 397, 401
and vasopressin synthesis, 402
ventromedial nucleus of, 228, 397, 401
Hypothermia, with hypothalamic lesions, 406
Hypotonia, 336
in cerebellar dysfunction, 200

Ilium, spine of, 35
Impulse conduction. *See* Nerve, impulse conduction
Incisure, Schmidt-Lanterman, 111, 477
on myelinated nerve fibers, 87, 92, 93
Indusium griseum, 275, 276
of body of corpus callosum, 279
of genu of corpus callosum, 279
lateral longitudinal striae with, 276, 279
medial longitudinal striae with, 276, 279
of splenium of corpus callosum, 279
Infants, intracranial hemorrhage in, 446, 447
Infarctions, of pons, 187
Inferior colliculus. *See* Colliculus, inferior
Infraorbital nerve, 365
Infundibular nucleus, of hypothalamus, 228, 229, 397, 401
Infundibulum, of hypothalamus, 12, 18, 221, 223, 224, 227–228, 230, 239, 286, 439, 441
Injuries. *See* Trauma
Innervation
of muscles
segmental, 139–140, 145–146
skeletal, 124–128
smooth, 130–132
reciprocal, law of, 333, 334
of skin, segmental, 139, 145
Insomnia, with hypothalamic lesions, 406
Insula, of cerebral cortex, 22, 233, 237, 240, 241, 266
Intention tremor, 187, 341, 497
Intercavernous sinus, 439
anterior, 443
posterior, 443
Intercostal nerve, 25
anterior cutaneous branch of, 25
lateral cutaneous branch of, 25
muscular branches of, 25
Internal capsule, 17, 21, 22, 23, 221, 222, 224, 225, 241, 243, 247, 249, 251, 256, 308, 309, 310, 322, 323, 357, 390, 391, 453
acoustic radiation of, 370, 371
anterior limb of, 22, 240, 247, 249
arteries to, 455
auditory radiation of, 266
blood supply of, 468, 505
clinical notes on, 251, 256
genu of, 22, 240, 247, 249, 353
posterior limb of, 22, 240, 247, 249, 324
vascular disorders affecting, 251, 256
Internuncial neurons, 339, 353, 495
synapse with effector neuron, 333
Interoreceptors, 115
Interpeduncular cistern, 255, 288
Interpeduncular fossa, 18, 213, 214, 215, 216, 217, 223, 224, 286, 361, 363, 390
oculomotor nerve in, 359
Intersegmental nerve tracts, 158, 159, 330
in anterior white column, 159
in lateral white column, 159
in posterior white column, 159

Interspinous ligament, 30, 34
Interthalamic connection, 24, 222, 224, 225, 228, 285, 286, 389, 392, 401
Interventricular foramina (of Monro), 14, 18, 21, 24, 224, 228, 236, 240, 246, 255, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 292
  site of, 255
Intervertebral disc, 30
  anulus fibrosus of, 30, 32
  diagrammatic representation of, 32
  herniation of, 29, 31, 40–41, 472
    cervical, 31
    lumbar, 31, 147–148, 482
  lumbar, 28, 30, 31, 34, 147–148, 482
  nucleus pulposus of, 30
    herniation of, 31, 32
  relationship to cauda equina, 30
Intervertebral foramen, 30
Intestines
  autonomic innervation of, 421–423
  small, 411
Intracranial hemorrhage, 36, 37, 38, 445–446, 466
  in infants, 38, 446, 447
Intracranial pressure
  clinical problems on, 41
    answers to, 473
  increase with tumors of posterior cranial fossa, 178
Intracranial tumors, 38, 41, 180, 473
Intrafusal fibers, 125, 136, 480–481
  of neuromuscular spindles, 121, 123, 124
  of neurotendinous spindles, 124, 125
  nuclear bag, 121, 123, 124
  nuclear chain, 121, 123, 124
Intralaminar nuclei, of thalamus, 390, 392, 393
Intrinsic fibers, of cerebellum, 195, 343
Involuntary movements of muscles, 147, 149
Iris
  autonomic innervation of, 418, 419, 432, 501
  constrictor pupillae muscle of, 357, 358, 359
Ischemia, cerebral, 464–466
Isoproterenol, 416
Isthmus, of cingulate gyrus, 237

Jacksonian epilepsy, 268, 492
Joint
  ankle, flexion of, 32
  cartilaginous, 30
  of cervical vertebra, 30
  of lumbar vertebra, 30
  passive movement of, testing of, 133
  synovial, 30
  of thoracic vertebra, 30
Jugular vein, internal, 454
  superior bulb of, 441
Junction
  gap, 131
  tight. *See* Tight junction
Junctional folds
  of motor plate, 126, 127, 136, 481
  of sarcolemma, 130

Kidney, 376, 411, 423
  autonomic innervation of, 423–424
Klumpke's paralysis, 500
Kluver-Bucy syndrome, 280, 493
Knee jerk, 136, 140, 481
Krause, bulbous corpuscles of, 119, 122, 132

Labyrinthine artery, 451, 453
Lacrimal gland, 411, 420
  autonomic innervation of, 418–420
  facial nerve to, 368
Lacrimal nerve, 365, 418, 420
Lacrimal nuclei, of facial nerve, 367, 368, 418
Lacrimatory nucleus, 418, 420
Lactogenic hormone, 403
Lacuna
  lateral, 442
  venous, 439
Lambdoid suture, 253, 255, 463
Lamellae, of Pacinian corpuscle, 121
Lamina
  basal, of peripheral nerve, 93
  medullary, of thalamus
    external, 225, 226, 389, 390
    internal, 225, 226, 389, 390, 392
Lamina—*Continued*
  terminalis, of hypothalamus, 14, 18, 224, 227, 228, 246, 286
Laminectomy, 484
Laryngeal nerve
  external, 376
  internal, 376
  recurrent
    left, 376
    right, 376
  superior, 376
Lateral aperture of fourth ventricle, 15, 205, 210, 284, 285, 287
Lateral lemniscus, 185, 186, 187, 215, 216, 217, 370, 371
  in midbrain, 215, 216, 217
  nucleus of, 370, 371
  in pons, 185, 186, 187
Lateral nerve cell group
  for innervation of leg muscles, 153
  for innervation of upper limb muscles, 153, 154
Lateral nucleus
  of hypothalamus, 228, 229
    large, 397, 401
    posterior, 225
    tuberal, 228, 229, 397
  of thalamus
    dorsal, 389, 390, 392
    posterior, 389, 392
Lateral sulcus, cerebral, 1, 11, 13, 20, 22, 233, 235, 240, 241, 245, 277
  anterior ascending ramus of, 233, 235, 238
  anterior horizontal ramus of, 233, 235, 238
  insula in, 233, 241
  posterior ramus of, 233, 235, 238
Lateral ventricle, 21, 228, 237, 240–242, 246, 247, 256, 283, 284, 390, 401, 453, 491
  anterior horn of, 22, 24, 240, 241, 242, 243, 245, 246, 247, 253, 255, 283, 285
    floor of, 242
    medial wall of, 242
    roof of, 242
    septum pellucidum separating, 250

Lateral ventricle—*Continued*
body of, 24, 240, 241, 242, 243, 253, 255, 283, 285
floor of, 242
medial wall of, 242
roof of, 242
cavity of, 277, 287, 289
coronal section of, 289
choroid plexus of, 222, 225, 241, 242, 250–251, 283, 284, 289
cerebrospinal fluid formation in, 292
choroidal fissure of, 242
clinical investigation of, 251
clinical notes on, 250–251
coronal section of, 287, 289
disorders of, 250
distention in hydrocephalus, 250
exposed from above, 222
inferior horn of, 24, 222, 240, 241, 242, 243, 255, 283, 285, 390
cavity of, 278, 289
floor of, 242
roof of, 242
pneumoencephalography of, 251, 252–255, 256
posterior horn of, 22, 24, 222, 240, 241, 242, 243, 255, 277, 283, 285
bulb of, 242
lateral wall of, 242
medial wall of, 242
roof of, 242
Law of reciprocal innervation, 333, 334
Lead poisoning, 112, 479
Leg. *See* Lower limb
Lemniscus
lateral. *See* Lateral lemniscus
medial. *See* Medial lemniscus
spinal. *See* Spinal lemniscus
trigeminal, 215, 216, 217, 362, 364, 394
Lenticulostriate artery, 459
rupture of, 38
Lentiform nucleus, 17, 21, 22, 23, 198, 214, 240, 241, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 322, 391, 394, 453
claustrum, 22, 240, 241, 243, 244
external capsule lateral to, 248
Lentiform nucleus—*Continued*
globus pallidus, 22, 23, 225, 240, 241, 244, 331, 338, 401
putamen of, 22, 23, 222, 225, 240, 241, 244
Leptomeninges, 445
Lesions. *See* Cerebrovascular disorders; Trauma; Tumors
Lethargy, 270
Leukotomy, frontal, 269
Levator palpebrae superioris muscle, 361, 419, 420
Ligament(um)
denticulum, 4, 7, 9, 152, 160, 167, 485
flavum, 30, 34
interspinous, 30, 34
longitudinal, 30, 34
supraspinous, 30, 34
sutural, 435, 437
Light reflexes, 357, 426
direct, 357, 426
pretectal nucleus ending of, 217
Limb of body
lower. *See* Lower limb
upper. *See* Upper limb
Limb of internal capsule. *See* Internal capsule, posterior limb of
Limbic lobe, 275
Limbic system, 275–281
alveus in, 275, 276
amygdaloid nucleus in, 275
anterior nucleus of thalamus in, 275
clinical notes on, 280
clinical problems on, 280–281
answers to, 493
connecting pathways of, 275–277
fimbria in, 275, 276
fornix in, 375, 376
functions of, 279–280
hippocampal formation in, 275
hypothalamus in, 275
limbic lobe in, 275
mammillothalamic tract in, 275, 276
stria terminalis in, 275, 276–277
Lingual artery, 457
Lingual gyrus, 237
Lingual nerve, 365, 369, 374, 380, 418
Lingula, of cerebellar vermis, 16, 190, 192, 206, 208, 344
Lipid, in neurons, 57
Lipofuscin granules, 54, 59, 81
Lissauer tract, 157, 158, 307, 308, 309, 310
Liver, 376
Lobectomy, frontal, 269
Lobes
frontal. *See* Frontal lobe
limbic, 275
occipital. *See* Occipital lobe
parietal. *See* Parietal lobe
temporal. *See* Temporal lobe
Lobule
biventral, 191, 192
central, 16, 190, 191, 192, 206, 344
paracentral, 14, 236
parietal, 13, 234, 235, 452
quadrangular, 192
semilunar, 191, 192
Lobulus simplex, of cerebellum, 192
Longitudinal bundle
inferior, 241, 245
medial, 360
superior, 248
Longitudinal fasciculus
inferior, 19, 248
medial. *See* Medial longitudinal fasciculus
superior, 248
Longitudinal fissure, of cerebrum, 12, 19, 20, 223, 233, 234, 239, 241, 245
Longitudinal ligament
anterior, 30, 34
posterior, 30, 34
Longitudinal striae
lateral, 275, 276, 279
medial, 245, 275, 276, 279
Lower limb
corticospinal fibers of, 247
innervation of, 153
autonomic innervation of arteries, 426, 427
lateral group of nerve cells in, 153
muscle of, 143
motor neurons for, 155
Lower motor neurons. *See* Efferent (motor) nerve fibers, lower motor neurons of
Lumbar plexus, 3, 26, 427
Lumbar puncture, 166, 251, 296, 484–485
clinical notes on, 33

Lumbar puncture—*Continued*
contraindications for, 38
in intracranial tumors, 41, 178, 473
in spinal cord compression, 163
structures pierced in, 33, 34, 41, 472
Lumbar spinal cord, 3, 7, 27, 152, 153
enlargement of, 2, 151, 152, 471
first segment of, 425, 426
fourth segment of, transverse section of, 155
injuries of, 29
second segment of, 425, 426
transverse section of, 8, 153, 155
Lumbar spinal nerves, 23
area of skin innervated by, 139, 140
fifth, 7, 27, 32, 139, 140
first, 7, 27, 139, 140, 422
fourth, 34, 139, 140
pressure on root of, 32
second, 139, 140, 422
third, 139, 140
Lumbar vertebrae and vertebral column
articular process in, 30
body of, 30
diagrammatic representation of, 32
fifth, 27
first, 27, 28
lower border of, 2, 6, 151, 284
in flexion, 34
intervertebral disc in, 30
herniation of, 31, 147–148, 482
intervertebral foramen in, 30
joints in, 30
laminae of, 34
and lumbar puncture, 33, 34
pedicle of, 32
relationship to spinal segments, 31
sagittal section through, 30, 34
spine of, 34
third, seen from above, 30
Lumbosacral nucleus, 156
Lungs, 411
autonomic innervation of, 421
cancer of, 387, 499
right, 376
Luschka foramen, 24, 205, 210, 284, 285, 287
Luteinizing hormone, 403, 404
Luteotropic hormone, 403, 404
Lymphatics, in peripheral nerves, 111
Lysosomes, of neurons, 54

Macroglial cells, 84, 85, 476
Macrophage, 104
Macula lutea, of retina, 354, 356, 357
examination of, 381
nasal half of, 354, 356
temporal half of, 354, 356
Magendie foramen, 16, 24, 205, 208, 209, 210, 284, 285, 287, 288, 344, 489
Male sexual organs, autonomic innervation of, 425–426
Mammillary bodies, 12, 14, 18, 214, 217, 221, 223, 224, 225, 227, 228, 229, 230, 239, 276, 286, 394
Mammillotegmental tract, 401, 403
Mammillothalamic tract, 229, 275, 276, 400, 401, 403
Mandible, 459
condyle of, 463
neck of, 463
Mandibular nerve, 177, 364, 365, 439, 441
Mantle layer, of neural tube, 171, 399
Marginal layer, of neural tube, 171, 399
Martinotti cells, of cerebral cortex, 257, 258
Mastication, muscles of, 365
Mastoid process, of temporal bone, 459
Mater
arachnoid. *See* Arachnoid mater
dura. *See* Dura mater
pia. *See* Pia mater
Matter
gray. *See* Gray matter
white. *See* White matter
Maxillary artery, 438, 457, 459
Maxillary nerve, 177, 364, 365, 420, 439, 441, 442
Meatus, acoustic, internal, vestibular ganglion in, 368
Medial cutaneous nerve, of arm, 100
Medial eminence
of fourth ventricle, 15, 17, 181, 183, 205, 207, 208, 391
of tuber cinereum, 227–228
Medial lemniscus, 18, 175, 176, 177, 181, 184, 185, 186, 187, 215, 216, 217, 218, 311, 312, 394, 400
in Benedikt's syndrome, 218, 219
decussation of, 173, 174, 398
Medial longitudinal bundle, 360
Medial longitudinal fasciculus, 173, 175, 176, 177, 181, 184, 185, 186, 187, 213, 215, 216, 217, 325, 361, 362, 363, 366, 370, 398, 400
Medial longitudinal stria, 245
Medial nerve cell group
for innervation of neck muscles, 153, 154
for innervation of trunk muscles, 153
Median apertures, of fourth ventricle, 15, 16, 190, 205, 206, 208, 209, 210, 284, 285, 287, 288, 344, 489
Median fissure. *See* Median sulcus
Median nerve, 3, 100, 111, 477
Median septum, posterior, 399
Median sulcus, 5, 12, 15, 17, 170, 171, 181, 183, 205, 207, 208, 391, 399
anterior, 2, 8, 151, 152, 154, 155, 169, 170, 171, 173, 174, 175, 398, 399, 400
posterior, 2, 8, 17, 151, 152, 155, 169, 170, 173, 174, 391, 398
Medulla oblongata, 2, 3, 5, 9, 12, 13, 15, 16, 151, 169–180, 182, 183, 190, 192, 197, 206, 207, 208, 209, 214, 287–288, 315, 322, 326, 344, 347, 364, 366, 372, 373, 375, 377, 378, 379, 394, 420, 421, 423, 437
anterior view of, 170
arcuate fibers of, anterior external, 169, 177
arcuate nuclei in, 175, 176–177, 400
in Arnold-Chiari malformation, 178
arteries to, 453, 455

Medulla oblongata—*Continued*
blood supply of, 178, 179, 453, 455
central canal continuing to, 169
central gray matter in, 176
cerebellar connection of, 169, 170, 196
clinical notes on, 178–179
clinical problems on, 180
answers to, 486
cranial nerve emerging from, 486
cuneate nucleus in. *See* Cuneate nucleus
dorsal vagal nucleus in, 175, 176, 179
forming cavity of fourth ventricle, 169
forming floor of fourth ventricle, 169, 170, 208
functional significance of, 179
gracile nucleus in, 5, 169, 170, 172, 173, 174, 311, 312, 394, 398
gross appearance of, 169
herniation through foramen magnum, 178
hypoglossal nucleus in, 173, 175, 176, 179
hypoglossal triangle of, 15, 170
internal structure of, 169–178, 489
at decussation of lemnisci, 172, 173, 174
inferior to pons, 175, 178
at olives, 172, 175, 176–178, 179
medial lemniscus of. *See* Medial lemniscus
medial longitudinal fasciculus of. *See* Medial longitudinal fasciculus
median fissure of. *See* Median sulcus
median sulcus of. *See* Median sulcus
nucleus ambiguus in, 175, 176, 400
nucleus cuneatus in. *See* Cuneate nucleus
nucleus of tractus solitarius in, 175, 176, 177, 373, 400
olivary nuclei in, 169, 171, 172
olives of, 5, 12, 21, 169, 170, 172, 175, 182, 197, 198, 400

Medulla oblongata—*Continued*
posterior view of, 15, 170
pyramid of, 5, 12, 169, 170, 171, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 179, 182, 197, 323, 335, 379, 398, 399, 400
corticospinal tract in, 323, 324
decussation of, 169, 170, 173, 174, 323, 349, 377, 398
internal structure at level of, 172, 173, 174
site of, 324
reticular formation in, 174, 175, 176, 178
solitary tract of. *See* Tractus solitarius
spinal lemniscus of. *See* Spinal lemniscus
stages in development of, 169, 171
transverse section of, 173, 174, 175, 176, 179
tumor of, 180,.486
in posterior cranial fossa, 178
vagal triangle of, 15, 170
vascular disorders of, 178–179
veins of, 455
vestibular nuclei in, 172, 176
inferior, 175, 176
medial, 175, 176
Medulla of suprarenal gland, 410
autonomic innervation of, 424
Medullary artery, 453
Medullary lamina of thalamus
external, 225, 226, 389, 390
internal, 225, 226, 389, 390, 392
Medullary nuclei, internal, of cerebellum, 225
Medullary reticulospinal tract, 325, 326
Medullary striae
of fourth ventricle, 15, 17, 170, 205, 207, 208
of thalamus, 221, 222, 228, 248, 276
Medullary velum
inferior, 14, 16, 175, 190, 205, 206, 208, 209, 211, 344, 400, 489
superior, 14, 15, 16, 184, 185, 186, 190, 205, 206, 208, 211, 344, 362, 489
Medulloblastoma, 84
in vermis syndrome, 201
Megacolon, 39, 429, 500

Meissner's corpuscles, 117, 132
capsule continuous with endoneurium, 120
flattened cells of, 120
function of, 132
myelinated nerve fibers of, 120
nonmyelinated fibers of, 120
in skin, 120
Meissner plexus, 422
Melanin granules, in neurons, 54
Melanocyte-stimulating hormone, 403, 404
Melatonin, 491
in pineal gland, 226–227
Membrane
action potential of, 57
of astrocyte, 77
axolemma, 61
basement. *See* Basement membrane
of neurons, 49, 51, 57, 59, 70, 475–476
of nucleus of neuron, 49, 50, 51, 55, 56, 58
of oligodendrocytes, 79
postsynaptic, 65–66
presynaptic, 65–66
refractory period of, 57
resting potential of, 100, 102, 111
of Schwann cell, 91
and summation effect of stimuli, 57, 59
Memory, 2
limbic system affecting, 280
Meningeal arteries, 451, 461
hemorrhage from injuries to, 36
middle, 438, 459
anterior branches of, 440, 442, 445
posterior branches of, 440, 442
Meningeal layer of dura mater, 4, 10, 290, 435, 436, 437, 438, 440, 441, 442, 444
Meningeal veins, 438
Meninges
attachment to sclera, 444
of brain, 435–447
of spinal cord, 6, 7, 159–160
Meningiomas, 446, 502
Meningitis
and adhesions in subarachnoid space, 211
blood-brain barrier in, 303, 304

Mental deficiency, diseases causing, 69, 474
Merkel's cell, 117
Merkel's discs, 115, 116, 117
  probable function of, 132
  tactile cell of, 115, 116
Mesaxon formation, 87, 91, 92
  in central nervous system, 90
  in peripheral nerves, 89, 91
Mesencephalic nucleus, of trigeminal nerve, 177, 215, 216, 362, 363, 364
  tract of, 187
Mesencephalon, 213–220. *See also* Midbrain
Mesenteric ganglion
  inferior, 422
  superior, 422
Mesenteric plexus, inferior, 423
Metencephalon. *See* Pons
Methacholine chloride, 135, 482
Microfilaments, of neurons, 49, 54, 58, 62, 65
Microglia, 73, 74, 75, 76, 81, 84
  in cerebral cortex, 81
  cytoplasm of, 81
  function of, 76, 84
  nucleus of, 81
  reaction to injury, 84
Microtubules, of neurons, 49, 54, 58, 62, 65
Microvilli, 83, 291
Micturition, control of. *See* Urinary bladder
Midbrain, 3, 5, 9, 12, 14, 16, 18, 20–21, 23, 183, 190, 206, 207, 213–220, 288, 315, 322, 326, 327, 328, 344, 358, 361, 363, 364, 394, 402, 403, 419
  anterior view of, 214
  arteries of, 455
    occlusion of, 218
  basis pedunculi of. *See* Crus cerebri
  in Benedikt's syndrome, 218, 219
  central gray matter of, 18, 213, 215, 216, 217
  cerebral aqueduct in. *See* Cerebral aqueduct
  cerebral peduncle of, 14, 16, 18, 182, 197, 213, 230, 239, 344, 356
  clinical notes on, 218–219
Midbrain—*Continued*
  clinical problems on, 219–220
    answers to, 489–490
  connection to cerebellum, 196
  corticonuclear fibers in, 18, 215, 216, 217, 218
  corticopontine fibers in, 218
  corticospinal fibers in, 18, 215, 216, 217, 218
  crus cerebri of. *See* Crus cerebri
  cut, 236, 239
  gross appearance of, 213
  inferior colliculus of. *See* Colliculus, inferior
  internal structures of, 18, 213–218
  interpeduncular fossa of, 18, 213, 214, 215, 216, 217, 223, 224, 286, 359, 361, 363
  lateral lemniscus of, 215, 216, 217
  lateral view of, 214
  light reflex ending in, 217
  medial lemniscus of, 18, 215, 216, 217, 218
  medial longitudinal fasciculus of, 213, 215, 216, 217
  perforated substance of, posterior, 18, 213, 214, 223, 228, 230
  red nucleus in, 14, 18, 215, 217, 218, 219
  reticular formation of, 215, 216, 217–218
  spinal lemniscus of, 215, 216, 217
  substantia nigra of, 14, 18, 213, 215, 216, 217, 239, 241, 338, 361, 363, 394
  superior colliculus of. *See* Colliculus, superior
  tectum of, 14, 17, 18, 213, 215, 348, 391
  tegmentum of, 14, 18, 213, 215, 230
  transverse section of
    at inferior colliculus level, 18, 213–216
    at superior colliculus level, 215, 216–218
  trauma of, 218–219
  trigeminal lemniscus of, 215, 216, 217
  trochlear nucleus in, 18, 213, 215, 216
Midbrain—*Continued*
  tumor of, 218, 219, 220
  vascular lesions in, 220, 490
  veins of, 455
  in Weber's syndrome, 218, 219, 490
Middle lobe of cerebellum, posterior, 189, 191, 192
Midline nuclei, 225, 392, 393
  region of, 225
Mitochondria
  of axon(s), 65, 130
  of muscle fiber, 130
  of neurons, 48, 49, 50, 55, 56, 62
Mitral cell, of olfactory bulb, 354, 355
Molecular layer
  of cerebellar cortex, 46, 189, 193, 194, 199, 345
  of cerebral cortex, 260–261
  of hippocampus, 277, 278
Monoplegia, 336
Monosynaptic reflex, 330, 332, 334
Monro interventricular foramen, 14, 18, 21, 24, 224, 228, 236, 240, 246, 255, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 292
Mossy fibers, cerebellar, 193, 196, 199, 200, 202, 343, 345, 488
Motor area of cerebral cortex, 262, 268, 271, 491–492
  homunculus of, 264, 324
  lesions of, 268
  precentral, 262–264, 268
    lesions of, 268
  primary, 262, 263
    lesions of, 268
  secondary, 262
    lesions of, 268
  speech area of Broca, 263, 264
    lesions of, 268
  supplementary, 264
Motor cells, of anterior gray column, 399
Motor efferent nerve fibers. *See* Efferent (motor) nerve fibers
Motor end-plate, 129, 144
  acetylcholinesterase at, 128
  axon in
    cross section of, 130
    terminal, 129
  junctional folds of, 126, 136, 481

Motor end-plate—*Continued*
in motor unit, 141
muscular element of, 126, 127, 136
nerve fibers terminating in, 128, 129
neural element of, 126
of neuromuscular spindles, 123
in simple reflex arc, 126, 141
sole plate of, 126, 127, 136
synaptic cleft of, 136, 481
Motor homunculus
of cerebral cortex, 324
of precentral gyrus, 264
Motor neurons. *See* Efferent (motor) nerve fibers, lower motor neurons of *and* upper motor neurons of
Motor nuclei, of cranial nerves, 360
abducent nerve, 210
accessory nerve cranial root, 377
facial nerve, 184, 210, 360, 367, 368, 384
glossopharyngeal nerve, 370, 373
oculomotor nerve, 359, 361
trigeminal nerve, 98, 184, 185, 362, 364
vagus nerve, 372, 373, 375
Motor roots
of facial nerve, 170, 368, 369
of spinal nerves. *See* Spinal nerves, root(s) of, anterior or motor
of trigeminal nerve, 12, 98, 181, 182, 185, 214
Motor system
clinical syndromes affecting, 337–339
neurotmesis affecting, 109
Motor unit, 125, 136, 140, 481
axon in, 141
components of, 140, 141
motor end-plate in, 141
motor neuron in, 140, 141
muscle fiber bundle in, 141
Mouth, floor of, facial nerve fibers from, 368
Movements
athetosis, 147, 336–337, 341, 497
in cerebellar dysfunction, 200–201
in chorea, 337
Movements—*Continued*
choreiform, 147
corticospinal tract lesions affecting, 335
dystonia, 337, 341, 497
hemiballismus, 337, 341, 491,497
involuntary, 147, 149
Jacksonian epileptic seizures, 268, 492
myoclonus, 147, 337
ocular
in cerebellar dysfunction, 201, 202
nystagmus, 201, 202
in parkinsonism, 336
spasms, 147, 336
in subthalamic lesions, 231
in thalamic lesions, 230–231
in thalamic syndrome, 395
tics, 147
tonic spasm, 147
tremor, 147, 336, 340, 341
voluntary, 335
Mucosal plexus, 412
Mucus, 355
Multiform layer, of cerebral cortex, 260, 261
Multiple sclerosis, 386, 398, 428, 498
sensory loss in, 318
Multipolar neurons, 43, 45
Muscarinic postganglionic nerve endings, 415
Muscle(s), 124, 125, 410
abdominal wall, segmental innervation of, 146
action of, 139–149
arrector pili, 118
atrophy of, 108–109, 136, 482
in lower motor neuron lesions, 336
auricular, facial nerve to, 368
biceps brachii, segmental innervation of, 139, 140, 146
brachioradialis, segmental innervation of, 139, 146
bundle of fibers in, 141
cardiac, 132, 135
in cerebellar dysfunction, 200–201
ciliary, 359
clinical notes on action of, 145–147
clinical observation of action of, 146–147, 148
Muscle(s)—*Continued*
clinical problems on action of, 147–149
answers to, 482–484
constrictor pupillae, of iris, 357, 358, 359
contracture of
clinical observation of, 147
in lower motor neuron lesions, 336
coordination of, clinical observation of, 147
deep, of back, in maintenance of postural curves, 142
degeneration reaction of
in lower motor neuron lesions, 336
in neurotmesis, 109
dermatomes of, 139–149
in descending motor pathway, 322
digastric, 365, 368, 369
endomysium of, 127, 128
enlarged view of fiber, 127
extrafusal fibers of, 121, 123,129
of facial expression, 368
fasciculations of
clinical observation of, 147
in lower motor neuron lesions, 336
feedback to and from, 350
gastrocnemius, segmental innervation of, 146
genioglossus, 375, 379, 380
geniohyoid, innervation of, 380
hyoglossus, 375, 380
intrafusal fibers of, 121, 123, 124, 129
involuntary, 147, 149
joint sense of, 307, 309, 311, 312–314
levator palpebrae superioris, 361, 419, 420
of lower limbs, 143, 155
of mastication, 365
motor end-plate on, 126. *See also* Motor end-plate
motor fibers to, 125
in motor unit, 125, 141
movements of, 147, 149. *See also* Movements
mylohyoid, 365
of neck, 147, 155
neuromuscular spindles of. *See* Neuromuscular spindles

Muscle(s)—*Continued*
oblique, of eyeball
inferior, 361
superior, 362, 363
orbicularis oculi, 360
plantar flexor, segmental innervation of, 146
platysma, 369
power of, clinical observation of, 146–147
pterygoid, medial, 369
quadriceps femoris, segmental innervation of, 146
rectus, of eyeball
inferior, 361
lateral, 365, 366
medial, 358, 361
superior, 361
reflexes of, 139–140, 146
segmental innervation of, 139–140, 145–146
reflexes in tests of, 146
sensory nerve fibers of, 125, 136, 481
signs in nervous system lesions, 336–337
in simple reflex arc, 141
skeletal, 124–128, 133–135, 136, 333, 334. *See also* Skeletal muscle
smooth, 95, 128–132, 133, 415. *See also* Smooth muscle
soleus, segmental innervation of, 146
spasticity of, 147, 268, 335, 336
sphincters
of anal canal, autonomic innervation of, 424
of urinary bladder, autonomic innervation of, 424–425
spindles. *See* Neuromuscular spindles
stapedius, 368
sternocleidomastoid, innervation of, 153, 375, 378
styloglossus, 375, 380
stylohyoid, 368, 369
stylopharyngeus, 370, 374
subclavius, nerve to, 100
tendons of, 125, 132, 139, 140, 141
tensor tympani, 365
tensor veli palatini, 365
tone of, 148, 483
abnormal, 336–337
Muscle(s)—*Continued*
clinical notes on, 146
clinical observation of, 147
definition of, 141
descending tract in, 334, 335
normal, 334
in posture, 142, 146
reflexes in, 141–142, 146, 334
trapezius, 153, 375, 378, 386, 498
triceps brachii, segmental innervation of, 139, 146
of trunk, 143, 153, 154, 155
of upper limbs, 100, 153, 154
voluntary. *See* Voluntary muscle
wasting of, 147, 406
Muscular element, of motor endplate, 126, 127, 136
Musculocutaneous nerve, 100
Myasthenia gravis, 134, 137, 482
Myelencephalon. *See* Medulla oblongata
Myelin, 104
droplets of, 104
formation of, 87–92, 104, 111
in central nervous system, 87, 92, 111, 477–478
mesaxon formation in, 87, 91, 92
in peripheral nervous system, 87–92, 111, 477–478
stages in, cross-sections of, 91
fragmentation of, 107
Myelinated nerve fibers, 87–92, 94
near bulbous corpuscle of Krause, 122
in central nervous system, 90
electrical changes in, 102
longitudinal section of, 91
major dense line of, 87, 91
at Meissner's corpuscle, 120
minor sense line of, 87, 91
to muscles, 125
alpha, motor, 125
gamma, motor, 125
nerve impulse conduction in, 102–103
at neuromuscular spindle, 123
at neurotendinous spindle, 125
near Pacinian corpuscle, 121
of peripheral nerve, 89, 91, 92, 96
group A, 95
group B, 95
Ranvier nodes on, 87, 89, 91, 92, 96
Myelinated nerve fibers—*Continued*
Schmidt-Lanterman incisure on, 87, 92, 93
sheath of, 80, 87, 89, 94, 96, 111, 477
schematic diagram of, 93
transverse section of, 92, 93, 94
Myelography, 163, 164–165
Myenteric plexus, 412, 422
Mylohyoid muscle, 365
Mylohyoid nerve, 365
Myoclonus, 147, 337

Nasal gland, facial nerve to, 368
Nasal septum, 463
Nasociliary nerve, 365
Neck
internal carotid artery in, 450, 457, 459
muscle of, 143
innervation of, 153, 154
soft tissues of, 165
Neocerebellum, 189, 197, 199
Neoplasms. *See* Tumors
Neostigmine, 134
Nerve(s)
afferent. *See* Afferent (sensory) nerve fibers
alveolar, 365
annulospiral endings of, 121–122, 123, 124
anterior white column tracts of, 158, 159, 315, 324, 325, 327, 329, 331
arcuate fibers, 169, 172, 173, 174, 177, 311, 312, 314, 398
of arm, medial cutaneous, 100
ascending tracts of. *See* Ascending nerve tracts of spinal cord
association fibers, 244, 248–249, 267
auricular posterior, 369
auriculotemporal, 365, 420
autonomic. *See* Autonomic nervous system
axillary, 100
band fiber, 103, 104, 112
buccal, 369
bundles of fibers, 117, 119, 124, 128
longitudinal, 245, 248
cardiac, 376, 420, 421
of carotid sinus, 374
celiac. *See* Celiac nerve
cells of. *See* Neuron(s)

Nerve(s)—*Continued*
central. *See* Central nervous system
of cerebellum
afferent, 193, 195, 196, 199–200, 343–348
efferent, 193, 195–196, 343, 345, 348–350
cerebral cortex fibers, 257–260, 267, 343–344, 346, 353
chorda tympani, 369, 418, 419
ciliary, 357, 358, 359, 361, 418, 426
climbing fibers, 193, 196, 199, 200, 202, 343, 345, 488
corticofugal fibers, 267
corticohypothalamic fibers, 397, 402
corticonuclear fibers, 18, 184, 185, 186, 210, 215, 216, 217, 218, 247, 353
corticopetal fibers, 267
corticopontine fibers, 184, 186, 218
corticorubral fibers, 247
corticospinal tract. *See* Corticospinal tract
cranial. *See* Cranial nerves
cuneocerebellar tract, 196, 198, 311, 312, 314, 348
cutaneous, medial, 100
decussation of, 322. *See also* Decussation of nerve fibers
degeneration of, 103–105, 107, 108–109, 112, 336, 428, 479
in dermis, 120
descending tracts of. *See* Descending nerve tracts
drugs affecting endings on. *See* Blocking agents
to dural mater of brain, 438
effector endings of, 124–132, 133–135, 480–482
efferent fibers. *See* Efferent (motor) nerve fibers
endoneurium of connective tissue sheath of, 89, 95, 96, 97, 104, 120, 121, 122, 127, 128, 477
facial. *See* Facial nerve
fasciculus of
cuneatus. *See* Fasciculus, cuneatus
fronto-occipital, 248–249

Nerve(s), fasciculus of—*Continued*
gracilis, 154, 157, 158, 172, 173, 174, 307, 309, 311, 312, 317, 398
longitudinal. *See* Fasciculus, longitudinal
uncinate, 248
femoral, 3
fibers of, 1, 43, 117
fine terminal branches of, 119
flower spray endings of, 122, 123
of forearm, 100
free endings of, 116, 132
frontal, 365
frontopontine fibers, 18, 21, 215, 216, 217, 247
ganglion on. *See* Ganglion
glandular acini endings of, 131, 132
hair follicle endings of, 115–117, 118, 119, 132, 136, 480
impulse conduction
absolute refractory period in, 102, 111
action potential in, 57, 60, 100, 103
anesthetics affecting, 111
electrical changes in, 100–103
in myelinated fibers, 102–103
in nonmyelinated fibers, 102, 103
in peripheral nerves, 99–103
relative refractory period in,102
resting membrane potential in, 100, 102, 111, 478
saltatory, 103, 111, 478
velocity of, 102–103, 111, 478
infraorbital, 365
intercostal, 25
intermediate, 170, 368, 369, 418
intrafusal fibers, 121, 123, 124, 125, 136, 480–481
intrinsic fibers, 195, 343
lacrimal, 365, 418, 420
laryngeal, 376
in lateral white column, 157–159, 313, 315, 324, 328
lesions of, 104, 105–108, 110, 113, 162, 335–339, 381, 382, 384, 479
lingual, 365, 369, 374, 380, 418
Lissauer's tract, 157, 158, 307, 308, 309, 310
of lower limbs, 153, 155, 247, 426, 427

Nerve(s)—*Continued*
mammillotegmental tract, 401, 403
mammillothalamic tract, 229, 275, 276, 400, 401, 403
mandibular, 177, 364, 365, 439, 441
maxillary, 177, 364, 365, 420, 439, 441, 442
medial cutaneous, 100
median, 3, 100, 111, 477
mossy fibers, 193, 196, 199, 200, 202, 343, 345, 488
motor. *See* Efferent (motor) nerve fibers
motor end-plate termination of, 128, 129
in muscular innervation. *See* Muscle(s)
musculocutaneous, 100
myelinated fibers, 80, 87–92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 102–103, 104, 111, 120, 121, 123, 125, 477–478
mylohyoid, 365
nasociliary, 365
neuromuscular spindle endings, 121–122, 123, 124
nonmyelinated fibers, 89, 90, 92–95, 102, 103, 111, 116, 120, 478
nuclear bag fibers, 121, 123, 124
nuclear chain fibers, 121, 123, 124
obturator, 13
oculomotor. *See* Oculomotor nerve
olfactory, 12, 223, 239, 241, 276, 354, 355
olivospinal fibers, 144, 158, 159, 321, 323, 330, 331, 332
ophthalmic, 177, 360, 364, 365, 441, 442
optic, 10, 12, 197, 214, 223, 227, 239, 241, 294, 354–357, 360, 381, 382, 387, 436, 439, 443, 444, 499
optic tract, 12, 21, 214, 221, 223, 227, 239, 249, 278, 356, 357, 360, 381, 382, 387, 401, 444, 499
organization of, 1–42, 471–474
pectoral, 100

Nerve(s)—*Continued*
peripheral, 87–113. *See also* Peripheral nerves or nervous system
petrosal, 369, 372, 374, 418, 420
pharyngeal, 374
phrenic, 3
plexus of. *See* Plexus, nerve
pontocerebellar fibers, 323
posterior white column tracts of, 157, 158, 159, 311, 312, 313
projection fibers, 244, 249
of pterygoid canal, 369, 418, 420
pyramidal tract, 261, 323, 335, 339, 496
radial, 3, 69, 100, 257–259, 474
receptor endings of, 115–124, 125, 132–133, 135–136, 306, 354, 480–482
recurrent, laryngeal, 376
regeneration of, 70, 104, 105–108, 112, 113, 428, 475, 478, 479–480
reticulocerebellar tract, 196
reticulospinal fibers and tract, 143, 144, 158, 159, 321, 325, 326, 328, 332, 349
roots of. *See* Roots
rubrocerebellar fibers, 196
rubrospinal tracts, 143, 144, 158, 172, 323, 325, 328, 332, 348, 349
of scalp, 10, 436
scapular, dorsal, 100
sciatic, 3, 107
sensory. *See* Afferent (sensory) nerve fibers
solitary tract of. *See* Tractus solitarius
spinal. *See* Spinal nerves
spinocerebellar tract. *See* Spinocerebellar tract
spino-olivary tract, 157, 158, 172, 307, 314, 315, 331
spinoreticular tract, 158, 314, 315
spinotectal tract, 157, 158, 172, 307, 314, 315
spinothalamic tract. *See* Spinothalamic tract
splanchnic, 410, 412, 422, 423, 424
subscapular, 100
suprascapular, 100
Nerve(s)—*Continued*
tangential fibers, 259–260
tectobulbar fibers, 351, 363, 366
tectocerebellar fibers, 196
tectonuclear tract, 360
tectospinal fibers and tracts, 144, 158, 159, 175, 176, 178, 321, 323, 325, 327, 332, 360, 400
temporal, 369
temporopontine fibers, 18, 21, 215, 216, 217, 247
thalamocortical fibers, 247
thalamohypothalamic fibers, 401, 402
thoracodorsal, 100
tonsillar, 374
tracts of, 111, 305, 477
ascending. *See* Ascending tracts of spinal cord
descending. *See* Descending tracts of spinal cord
transplantation of, 110
transverse fibers of pons, 12, 182, 184, 185, 186, 196, 198, 210, 343
trigeminal. *See* Trigeminal nerve
trochlear. *See* Trochlear nerve
tympanic, 369, 372, 374, 418, 420
type A fibers, 111, 478
type B fibers, 111, 478
ulnar, 3, 100
to upper limbs, 100, 153, 154, 247, 426, 427
vestibulocerebellar tract, 196
vestibulospinal tract. *See* Vestibulospinal tract
zygomatic, 369, 418, 420
zygomaticotemporal, 418, 420
Nervus intermedius, 170, 368, 369, 418
great petrosal branch of, 418
Neural crest cells, 399
in spinal cord development, 171
Neural element, of motor end-plate, 126
Neural tube
cavity of, 171, 399
in formation of hindbrain vesicle, 169
Neurites, 43, 44, 57, 59, 61, 65–67
axons. *See* Axon(s)
axoplasmic flow in, 61, 70
Neurites—*Continued*
dendrites. *See* Dendrites
synapses of, 61–67. *See also* Synapses
Neuritis, retrobulbar, blindness in, 382
Neuroblastoma, 68, 71, 476
Neuroendocrine system, hypothalamic control of, 413
Neuroepithelial layer, 171, 399
Neurofibrils of neurons, 48, 54, 57
Neuroglia, 5, 39, 67, 73–85, 471, 476
astrocytes, 73, 75, 84. *See also* Astrocytes
clinical notes on, 84
clinical problems on, 84–85
answers to, 476–477
diagrammatic representation of, 74
ependyma, 73, 74, 76, 83, 84
function of, 73–76, 84, 85, 87, 92
interaction with neurons, 73, 76, 84
macroglial cells, 84, 85, 476
microglia, 72, 74, 76, 81, 84. *See also* Microglia
oligodendrocytes. *See* Oligodendrocytes
reactions to neuronal injury, 84
gliosis or astrocytosis, 76, 84
gliotic scar formation, 84
tumors of, 84
Neurohypophysis, 228
Neurolemmomas, of peripheral nerves, 110
Neurologia, 1
Neuroma, after axon injury, 106–107
Neuromuscular blocking agents, 133–135
Neuromuscular junction
agents affecting, 133–135
autonomic, 131
in cardiac muscle, 132, 135
drugs affecting, 135
motor end-plate in. *See* Motor end-plate
between nonmyelinated axon and smooth muscle cell, 95
in skeletal muscle, 126–128, 133–135
acetylcholine release in, 128

Neuromuscular junction, in skeletal muscle—*Continued*
agents affecting, 133–135
axons in, 126, 127
junctional folds of, 126, 127, 136
motor nerve injury affecting, 134, 136
in myasthenia gravis, 134
sarcolemma of, 126, 127
Schwann cells in, 126, 127
synaptic cleft of, 127, 128
in smooth muscle, 95, 128–132, 135
axons in, nonmyelinated, 95, 130, 131
drugs affecting, 135
Schwann cells in, 130, 131
Neuromuscular spindles, 119–124, 132, 144, 332
annulospiral endings of, 121–122, 123, 124
capsule of, 123
in control of voluntary muscle, 122–124
flower spray endings of, 122, 123
function of, 132
gamma motor fibers for innervation of, 123
intrafusal muscle fibers of, 121, 123, 124
nuclear chain, 121, 123, 124
motor end-plates of, 123
myelinated fibers entering, 123
in simple reflex arc, 122, 126, 141
Neuron(s), 1, 39, 43–71, 81, 471
afferent. *See* Afferent (sensory) nerve fibers
axon(s) of, 43, 44, 45, 49, 59, 61. *See also* Axon(s)
axon hillock of, 44, 45, 49, 52, 59
axoplasmic flow of, 61, 70
Barr body in, 44, 70, 475
bipolar, 43, 45
in vision, 357
blocking agents affecting, 68–69. *See also* Blocking agents
cell body of, 43–44, 45, 48, 49, 62, 99
axon injury affecting, 68, 103–105, 106
chromatolysis after axon injury, 105, 106
Neuron(s), cell body of—*Continued*
injury of, 103
process injury affecting, 106
recovery of, 105
cell coat of, 57
cell membrane of, 49
centrosomes in, 54
in cerebellar cortex, 202, 487–488
in cerebral cortex, 46, 47, 257, 258, 260
clinical notes on, 67–69, 103–108
clinical problems on, 69–71
answers to, 474–476
connector, 26, 410
cytoplasm of, 44, 51, 52, 53, 57
organelles of, 50, 51, 55, 56
definition of, 43
degeneration associated with senescence, 108
dendrites of, 43, 44, 45, 48, 49, 58, 59. *See also* Dendrites
dense bodies in, 49
diseases affecting, 67, 68, 69, 474
effector endings of. *See* Effector endings
efferent. *See* Efferent (motor) nerve fibers
first-order. *See* First-order neurons
ganglionic, in vision, 357
glycogen in, 54
Golgi apparatus of, 48, 49, 50, 55, 77, 81
Golgi cells, 193, 194, 197, 199, 345
type I, 43, 46, 70, 475
type II, 43, 46, 70, 475
during hyperpolarization, electrical changes in, 61
injury to, 67–68, 70, 76, 84, 103–108
in central nervous system, 108
and gliotic scar formation, 84
hyperchromatism from, 68
and neuroma formation, 106–107
recovery from, 105–108
and transneuronal degeneration, 108
internuncial, 333, 339, 353, 495
of lateral geniculate body, in vision, 357
Neuron(s)—*Continued*
lipids in, 57
lipofuscin in, 54, 59, 81
lysosomes of, 54
melanin granules in, 54
microfilaments of, 49, 54, 58, 62, 65
microtubules of, 49, 54, 58, 62, 65
mitochondria of, 48, 49, 50, 55, 56, 62
motor. *See* Efferent (motor) nerve fibers
multipolar, 43, 45
neurites of, 43, 44, 57, 59, 61, 65–67
neurofibrils in, 48, 54, 57
neuroglia interaction with, 73, 76, 84
neurotransmitters of. *See* Neurotransmitters
Nissl substance of, 44, 48, 52, 53, 105
nucleolus of, 48, 49, 50, 69, 474–475
nucleus of, 44, 48, 49, 50, 51, 55, 56
membrane of, 49, 50, 51
pore of, 49
plasma membrane of, 49, 51, 57, 58, 59, 70
postsynaptic membranes of, 65–66
presynaptic membranes of, 65–66, 70
processes of, injury of, 103–105, 106
recovery after, 105–108
Renshaw feedback in, 144, 332
ribosomes of, 49, 56
rods and cones of, 357
rough endoplasmic reticulum of, 49, 50, 51, 55
second-order. *See* Second-order neurons
of sensory pathway, 305, 316. *See also* Afferent (sensory) nerve fibers
stimulation of, 57, 59, 60
and action potential, 57
electrical changes in, 60
refractory period in, 57
summation effect in, 57, 59
structure of, 43–44, 48, 54, 57, 59, 67

Neuron(s), structure of—*Continued*
diagrammatic representation of, 49
subsynaptic web of, 66
synapses of, 61–67, 70. *See also* Synapses, ultrastructure of, 65–66
synaptic blocking agents, 68–69
synaptic cleft of, 65–66, 70
synaptic spines of, 65, 70
third-order. *See* Third-order neurons
tumors of, 68, 71
unipolar, 43, 45
varieties of, 43, 47, 67
of visual pathway, 357
Neuropathy, diabetic, 497–498
Neuropil, 48, 62
Neuropraxia, 109, 113, 479
Neurotendinous spindles, 124, 125, 132
function of, 132
intrafusal fibers of, 124, 125
and muscle tone, 141
myelinated nerve entering, 125
nonmyelinated axons in, 125
in simple reflex arc, 126, 141
Neurotmesis, 109–110
and degeneration reaction, 109
motor changes in, 109
motor recovery after, 109
sensory changes in, 109
sensory recovery after, 110
signs of recovery from, 109–110
symptoms of, 109
vasomotor, sudomotor, and trophic changes in, 109
Neurotransmitters, 66–67, 69, 70, 433, 476, 502
acetylcholine, 66, 69, 70, 128, 130, 134, 409, 413, 414, 415, 476
acetylcholinesterase affecting, 66, 128
blocking agents affecting, 68–69, 70
catecholamines, 66
distribution of, 66–67, 69
dopamine, 66, 67, 69, 476
epinephrine, 66, 415
norepinephrine, 66, 67, 69, 130, 132, 415, 476
release of, 66, 69
Neurovascular hilus, 124, 136, 481
Nicotine, as blocking agents, 69, 413, 414
Nissl substance, 44, 48, 52, 53, 105
Nodes
atrioventricular, 420, 421
of Ranvier. *See* Ranvier node
sinoatrial, 420, 421
Nodule, of cerebellar vermis, 15, 16, 190, 191, 192, 206, 344
Nonencapsulated receptors, 115–117, 132
Nonmyelinated nerve fibers, 92–95, 111, 116, 120, 478
in central nervous system, 90, 94–95
electrical changes in, 102
nerve impulse conduction in, 102, 103
in peripheral nervous system, 89, 92–94
group C, 95
Norepinephrine, 66, 67, 69, 130, 132, 415, 476
at blood-brain barrier, 303
Nose, 358
lateral wall of, olfactory nerves on, 355
septum of, 463
Notch, tentorial, 435, 439
Nuclear bag fibers, 121, 123, 124
Nuclear chain fibers, 121, 123, 124
Nucleolus, of neurons, 48, 49, 50, 69, 474–475
Nucleus (nuclei)
of abducent nerve, 177, 181, 184, 186, 187, 210, 366, 367, 368, 370
of accessory nerve, 153, 156, 177, 374–375, 377
accessory parasympathetic, 217, 357, 358, 359, 361, 362
ambiguus, 175, 176, 400
of accessory nerve, 177
of glossopharyngeal nerve, 177
of vagus nerve, 177
amygdaloid, 23, 242, 243, 244, 275, 280
arcuate, 175, 176–177, 400
of astrocyte, 77
basal, 20, 240, 242–244, 251, 256, 491
caudate. *See* Caudate nucleus
Nucleus (nuclei)—*Continued*
cerebellar. *See* Cerebellum, nuclei of
cochlear, 175, 176, 177, 184, 187, 368–370, 371, 400
of cranial nerves, 177, 353–387
cuneatum. *See* Cuneate nucleus
dentate, 13, 15, 21, 194, 195, 347, 348, 394
dorsalis, 153, 154, 155, 156, 312, 313, 345
Edinger-Westphal, 217, 357, 358, 359, 361, 362
emboliform, 194, 195, 348
of ependymal cells, 82
of facial nerve, 177, 181, 184, 186, 210, 360, 367–368, 410, 418, 419
fastigial, 194, 195, 350
fine chromatin granules in, 50
globose, 194, 195
of glossopharyngeal nerve, 177, 370–372, 373, 410, 412
gracilis, 5, 169, 172, 173, 174, 311, 312, 394, 398
habenular, 222, 226, 248, 276
of hypoglossal nerve, 173, 175, 176, 177, 179, 210, 211, 375, 379, 398, 400
hypothalamic, 225, 228, 229, 367, 373, 375, 394, 397, 400, 401
of inferior colliculus, 18, 370
lacrimal, 367, 368, 418
lacrimatory, 418, 420
of lateral lemniscus, 370, 371
lentiform. *See* Lentiform nucleus
lumbosacral, 156
medullary, internal, of cerebellum, 225
membranes of, 49, 50, 51, 55, 56
of microglial cell, 81
midline, 225, 392, 393
motor. *See* Motor nuclei
of neurons, 44, 48, 49, 50, 51, 55, 56
oculomotor, 177, 215, 217, 357, 358, 359, 361, 362, 370, 410
of oligodendrocyte, 90
olivary. *See* Olivary nucleus
of origin of cranial nerves, 353
parasympathetic. *See* Parasympathetic nucleus
phrenic, 153, 156

Nucleus (nuclei)—*Continued*
pontine, 176, 184, 185, 186, 198, 346
pretectal, 217, 357, 358, 361, 426
proprius, 153, 154, 155, 156, 167, 485–486
pulposus, 30
herniation of, 31, 32
red. *See* Red nucleus
salivary, 418, 419, 420
salivatory, 177, 210, 367, 368, 370–372, 373
of Schwann cell, 91, 92, 93, 94
sensory. *See* Sensory nucleus
subthalamic, 226
of termination of cranial nerves, 353
of thalamus. *See* Thalamus, nuclei of
of tractus solitarius, 175, 176, 177, 210, 367, 372, 373, 400
of trapezoid body, posterior, 370, 371
of trigeminal nerve. *See* Trigeminal nerve, nuclei of
trochlear, 18, 177, 213, 215, 216, 362, 363, 370
of vagus nerve. *See* Vagus nerve, nuclei of
vestibular. *See* Vestibular nerve, nuclei of
vestibulocochlear, 172, 176, 186, 187
visceral afferent, 156
Nystagmus, 202, 287
in cerebellar dysfunction, 201, 202

Obesity, in hypothalamic dysfunction, 231, 406
Oblique muscle of eyeball
inferior, 361
superior, 362, 363
Obturator nerve, 3
Occipital artery, 438, 457
internal, 461, 463
Occipital bone, 11, 437, 438
Occipital eye field, 266
Occipital lobe, 10, 12, 20, 233, 234, 236, 276, 394, 402, 403
area of skull occupied by, 437
Occipital lobe—*Continued*
cortex of, 222, 265–266
lingual gyrus of, 237
Occipital pole, 20, 235, 237, 238, 243, 245, 246, 248, 249, 454
Occipital protuberance, external, 255
Occipital sinus, 438, 440, 441, 454
Occipitotemporal gyrus, 237
lateral, 236
medial, 236, 237
Occipitotemporal sulcus, 236, 237, 238, 239
Ocular fundus, examination of, 381
Oculomotor nerve, 10, 12, 16, 190, 197, 206, 214, 215, 223, 224, 239, 286, 344, 359–362, 436, 439, 441, 443
central connections of nuclei of, 361
clinical examination of, 381–383
distribution of, 361
Edinger-Westphal nucleus of, 217, 357, 358, 359, 361, 362
fibers to nuclei of, 370
inferior ramus of, 361
nucleus of, 177, 215, 217, 361, 370, 410
accessory parasympathetic, 358, 359, 361, 362
main, 358, 359, 361
in Weber's syndrome, 218, 219, 490
Olfaction
hypothalamus in, 397, 402
limbic system in, 280
loss of, 381, 385–386, 498
Olfactory areas of cerebral cortex, 354, 355
periamygdaloid, 354
prepiriform, 354
primary, 354
secondary, 354
Olfactory bulb, 12, 223, 239, 276, 354, 355
cells of, 354, 355
connections of, 355
Olfactory cells, 354, 355
connections of, 355
Olfactory hairs, 354, 355
Olfactory nerve, 10, 354, 355, 436
clinical examination of, 381
Olfactory nerve—*Continued*
distribution of, 355
fibers of, 354
Olfactory receptors, 354
Olfactory striae
lateral, 223, 354, 355
medial, 223, 354, 355
Olfactory sulcus, 237, 239
Olfactory tract, 12, 223, 239, 241, 276, 354, 355
Oligodendrocytes, 73, 74, 75, 76, 78, 79, 80, 84, 87, 90, 92
cell membrane of, 79
function of, 76, 84
in myelin formation, 87, 92
nucleus of, 90
process of, 80, 90
reaction to injury, 84
Olivary nucleus, 5, 169, 171, 172, 399
dorsal accessory, 172, 175, 176
inferior, 172, 173, 176, 179, 315, 331, 346, 373, 375, 377, 379, 398, 400
cerebro-olivocerebellar pathway to, 343–344, 346
olivospinal tract origin in, 330, 331
medial accessory, 172, 173, 175, 176, 398, 400
Olive, of medulla oblongata, 5, 12, 21, 169, 170, 172, 175, 182, 197, 198, 400
internal structures at level of, 172, 175, 176–178, 179
spino-olivary tract, 172
Olivocerebellar tract, 196
Olivospinal fibers, 144, 332
Olivospinal tract, 158, 159, 323, 330, 331
in anterior white column, 331
functions of, 321
in lateral white column, 159
Ophthalmic artery, 449, 450, 457
Ophthalmic nerve, 177, 360, 364, 365, 441, 442
Ophthalmic veins, 442
Optic chiasma, 12, 14, 18, 214, 221, 223, 224, 227, 230, 239, 245, 286, 354, 355, 356, 360, 382
lesions of, 381, 382
hemianopia from, 382
midline section of, 387, 499

Optic disc, 354
examination of, 381
Optic nerve, 10, 12, 197, 214, 223, 227, 239, 241, 354–357, 360, 382, 436, 439
arachnoid sheath around, 443, 444
cerebrospinal fluid around, 294
clinical examination of, 381
origin of, 354
section of, 387, 499
total blindness with division of, 381, 382
Optic pathway, 356, 358
lesions of, visual field defects with, 381, 382
Optic radiation, 19, 22, 240, 241, 242, 247, 249, 356, 357, 358, 382
lesions of, 381, 382
hemianopia from, 382
section of, 387, 499
Optic recess, of third ventricle, 227
Optic tract, 12, 21, 214, 221, 223, 227, 239, 249, 278, 356, 357, 360, 382, 401, 441
lesions of, 381, 382
hemianopia from, 382
section of, 387, 499
Orbicularis oculi muscle, 360
Orbital gyri, 237, 239
Orbital plate, of frontal bone, 253, 255
Organelles, cytoplasmic, of neurons, 50, 51, 55, 56
Organization of nervous system, 1–42
clinical notes on, 29–39
clinical problems on, 39–42
answers to, 471–474
Osmoreceptors, supraoptic nucleus as, 402
Osteitis deformans, 386, 498
Osteoarthritis, affecting spinal nerves, 29
Otic ganglion, 369, 374, 412, 420
Outflow
craniosacral, 417
parasympathetic, 432, 501
sympathetic, 432, 501
thoracic, 417
Oxytocin, 402

Pachymeninx, 445
Pacinian corpuscles, 117–119, 480
Pacinian corpuscles—*Continued*
capsule of, continuous with endoneurium, 121
connective tissue capsule of, 121
core of, 121
lamellae of, 121
naked axon of, 121
probable function of, 132
Schwann cell in, 121
in skin, 121
Paget's disease, 386, 498
Pain sensations, 307, 308
clinical problems on, 135, 136
answers to, 480
conduction of, 166, 484
free nerve endings in, 132
lateral spinothalamic tract in, 305–309
loss of
in Brown-Séquard syndrome, 338
in syringomyelia, 318
pathways for, 305–309
referred, 430–431, 432, 501
relief of
cordotomy in, 317
rhizotomy in, 317
in terminal cancer, 319, 495
testing of, 133
visceral, 430–431, 432, 501
Palate, soft, 374
facial nerve fibers from, 368
Palatine artery, ascending, 457
Palatine gland, facial nerve to, 368
Pale cell, process of, 301
Paleocerebellum, 189, 197
Palsy, Bell's, 112, 478–479, 499
nerve grafts in, 110
Papilledema, bilateral, 446, 503
Paracentral lobule, 14, 236
Parahippocampal gyrus, 223, 236, 237, 239, 275, 276, 277, 278, 289
uncus of, 219, 223, 236, 237, 239, 275, 276, 277, 355, 489
Parallel fibers, of cerebellum, 194
Paralysis
diplegia, 336
flaccid, in lower motor neuron lesions, 336
hemiplegia, 336, 340, 386, 447, 503
hypotonic, 338
Klumpke, 500
Paralysis—*Continued*
monoplegia, 336
paraplegia, 334, 336
potassium levels affecting, 135
quadriplegia, 336
severe, in descending tract lesions, 335
spastic, 338
types of, 336
Paraplegia, 336
in extension, 334
in flexion, 334
Parasympathetic nervous system, 1, 409, 410–412, 417
activities of, 1
afferent nerve fibers of, 412
compared to sympathetic system, 417–418
efferent nerve fibers of, 410–412, 415
postganglionic, 411, 412
preganglionic, 410–412
outflow in, 432, 501
preganglionic, 153, 155
preganglionic fibers in, 153, 155, 156, 361, 410–412
in urinary bladder innervation, 429
Parasympathetic nucleus
accessory, of oculomotor nerve, 217, 357, 358, 359, 361, 362
of facial nerve, 367
of glossopharyngeal nerve, 370–372
of oculomotor nerve, 358
of vagus nerve, 373, 375
Paraventricular nucleus, of hypothalamus, 228, 229, 397, 401
Paravertebral ganglia, of sympathetic trunk, 409
Parietal artery, posterior, 457, 459
Parietal bone, 4, 11, 437, 438
anterior inferior portion of, 440
inner table of, 10, 436
outer table of, 10, 436
Parietal lobe, 11, 20, 233, 234, 235, 394
cortical areas in, 265
gyrus of, 235
sulcus of, 234, 235, 238
thalamocortical fibers to, 247

Parietal lobule
  inferior, 13, 235
  superior, 13, 234, 235, 452
Parieto-occipital sulcus, 13, 14, 20, 233, 234, 235, 236, 238, 239, 452
Parkinson's syndrome, 148–149, 336, 483
  clinical problems on, 148–149
    answers to, 483
  motor system in, 338–339
Parotid salivary gland, 374, 411, 420
  autonomic innervation of, 418, 420
  glossopharyngeal nerve fibers to, 372
Pectoral nerve
  lateral, 100
  medial, 100
Pedicle of vertebral arch, 32
Peduncles
  cerebellar. *See* Cerebellum, peduncles of
  cerebral, 14, 16, 18, 182, 190, 197, 206, 213, 230, 239, 344, 356
Pelvic plexuses, 412, 424, 425, 426
Penicillin, at blood-brain barrier, 303
Penis
  ejaculation of
    autonomic innervation of, 426
    after spinal cord injuries, 430
  erection of
    autonomic innervation of, 425
    after spinal cord injuries, 430
Perforated substance
  anterior, 12, 223, 239
    olfactory tract in, 354, 355
  posterior, 18, 213, 214, 223, 228, 230
Perforating arteries, 441
Periamygdaloid area, of cerebral cortex, 354
Pericallosal artery, 457, 459
Pericranium, 10, 436, 437
Perikaryon. *See* Neuron(s), cell body of
Perineurium, of peripheral nerve, 89, 95, 96, 97, 477
Periosteum, 10, 435, 436, 437
Peripheral nerves or nervous system, 1, 23–29
  axon of, 92, 94, 96
Peripheral nerves or nervous system—*Continued*
  basal lamina of, 93
  blood vessels in, 111
  clinical problems on, 111–113
    answers to, 477–480
  conduction in, 99–103
  connective tissue sheaths of, 89, 95
  cranial, 1, 23, 95, 97. *See also* Cranial nerves
  electromicrograph of, 92
  endoneurial spaces in, 111
  endoneurium of, 89, 95, 96, 97
  epineurium of, 89, 95, 97
  fibers of, 87–113
  ganglia in, 1, 29
    sensory, 97. *See also* Posterior root ganglion, spinal
  longitudinal section of, 96
  lymphatics in, 111
  major divisions of, 3, 23–29
  mesaxon in, 89, 91
  myelin formation in, 87–92, 111, 477–478
  myelin sheath of, 89, 91, 96
  myelinated fibers of, 89, 91, 92, 96
    group A, 95
    group B, 95
  nonmyelinated fibers of, 89, 92–94
    group C, 95
  perineurium of, 89, 95, 96, 97
  plexuses of, 99
  Ranvier node on, 89, 91, 96
  regeneration of, 70, 112, 475,478
    factors affecting, 106–107
    process of, 107–108
    rate of, 108
  Schmidt-Lanterman incisure on, 87, 92, 93, 111, 477
  Schwann cells in, 87, 89, 91, 92. *See also* Schwann cells
  spinal, 1, 23, 26, 27, 29, 88, 95–97. *See also* Spinal nerves
  structure of, 89, 97, 111, 477
  synaptic blocking agents affecting, 69
  tissues in, 70, 475
  transverse section of, 92, 96
  trauma of, 109–110
    axon regeneration after, 105, 106–108
Peripheral nerves or nervous system, trauma of—*Continued*
    clinical principles in, 110
    clinical problems on, 111–113, 477–480
  tumors of, 110, 113, 479
Perivascular space, 290
Pes hippocampus, 242, 275, 277
Petit mal epilepsy, 149, 271, 483
Petrosal nerve
  deep, 369, 420
  greater, 369, 420
  lesser, 369, 372, 374, 418
Petrosal sinus
  inferior, 443
  superior, 439, 441, 443
Pharyngeal artery, ascending, 438
Pharyngeal nerve, 374
Phenothiazine, as synaptic blocking agent, 69
Phenoxybenzamine, 135, 416
Phenylbutazone, at blood-brain barrier, 303
Pheochromocytoma, 68
Phrenic nerve, 3
  nucleus of, 153, 156
Physostigmine, 134
Pia mater, 294, 444
  of brain, 4, 5, 10, 290, 293, 294, 302, 436, 441, 443–444, 445
  cells of, 302
  at cerebral artery, 294
  cranial nerve covered with, 437
  at optic nerve, 294
  of spinal cord, 2, 4, 7, 28, 151, 152, 160, 284, 294
  at spinal nerve root, 294
  of tela choroidea, 289, 444
  in ventricular system, 284, 287, 288, 289
Pigment material, in neurons, 54
Pineal body or gland, 14, 17, 22, 222, 224, 226–227, 228, 240, 286, 391
  concretion accumulation in, 226, 227, 231
  functions of, 226–227, 231
  glial cells of, 226
  pinealocytes in, 226, 227
  tumors of, 231
Pineal recess, 228
Pinealocytes, 226, 227
Pinpoint pupils, 187, 188, 487

Pituitary gland. *See* Hypophysis cerebri
Plantar flexor, innervation of, 146
Plantar reflex, superficial, 140
Plasma membrane. *See* Membrane
Plastic rigidity, in Parkinson's disease, 338
Plate
  alar, 169, 171, 399
  basal, 169, 171, 399
  cribriform, of ethmoid bone, 355
  orbital, of frontal bone, 253, 255
Platysma muscle, cervical branch of facial nerve to, 369
Plexiform layer, of cerebral cortex, 260–261
Plexus
  choroid. *See* Choroid plexus
  lymphatic, in peripheral nerves, 111
  nerve
    aortic, 424
    Auerbach, 412, 422
    brachial, 3, 100, 427
    cardiac, 376, 412, 420, 421
    carotid, 359, 369, 441, 442
    celiac, 376, 410
    esophageal, 376
    at hair follicle, 118
    hypogastric, 424, 425, 426
    lumbar, 3, 26, 427
    Meissner, 422
    mesenteric, inferior, 423
    peripheral, 99
    pulmonary, 412, 421
    renal, 410, 423
    tympanic, 369, 372, 374, 420
  venous
    pterygoid, 443
    vertebral, 4, 159
Pneumoencephalogram
  anteroposterior, 252–253
  in clinical studies of lateral ventricle, 251, 252–255
  lateral, 254–255
Pneumography, intracranial, 296
Poles, cerebral
  frontal, 1, 9, 20, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 243, 246, 248, 252, 254
  occipital, 20, 235, 237, 238, 243, 245, 246, 248, 249, 254
  temporal, 20, 237, 243, 452, 454
Polymorphic cell layer
  of cerebral cortex, 260, 261
  of hippocampus, 277, 278
Pons, 3, 5, 12, 13, 14, 16, 98, 170, 181–188, 190, 192, 195, 197, 206, 207, 214, 223, 224, 249, 286, 288, 315, 326, 344, 361, 363, 364, 366, 367, 372, 390, 419, 420
  arteries to, 187, 451, 453, 455, 463
  basal part of, 181
  basilar groove of, 181, 186
  blood supply of, 187, 451, 453, 455, 463
    disorders of, 187, 188
  clinical notes on, 186–187
  clinical problems on, 187–188
    answers to, 486–487
  connection to cerebellum, 196
  coronal section of, trigeminal nerve nuclei in, 364
  corticopontocerebellar pathway, 196, 198, 343
  cut to reveal descending fibers, 21
  as floor of fourth ventricle, 208
  general features of, 186–187
  gross appearance of, 181
  hemorrhage of, 187, 188
  infarctions of, 187
  internal structure of, 181–186
  lateral lemniscus of, 185, 186, 187
  lesions of, 187–188, 486–487
  medial eminence of, 181, 183
  median sulcus of, 15, 181, 183
  medulla oblongata inferior to, 175, 178
  nuclei of, 176, 184, 185, 186, 198, 346
  posterior view of, 15
  structures in, 489
  sulcus limitans of, 181, 183
  tegmentum of, 181
  transverse fibers of, 12, 184, 185, 186, 198, 210, 323, 343
    forming middle cerebellar peduncle, 196
    superficial, 182
  transverse section of, 98
    caudal part, 181–184
    cranial part, 184–186
    rostral part, 186
    at trigeminal nuclei level, 185
  trapezoid body of, 181, 184, 185, 186
Pons—*Continued*
  tumors of, 187, 188
  veins of, 455
Pontine cistern, 255, 288
Pontine reticulospinal tract, 325, 326
Pontocerebellar fibers, transverse, 323
Pore, of nucleus of neuron, 49
Postcentral gyrus, 13, 19, 234, 235
Postcentral sulcus, 234, 235, 238
Posterior commissure, cerebral, 226, 228, 244, 246, 286
Posterior lobe, of cerebellum, 189, 191, 192
Posterior nucleus, hypothalamic, 228, 229, 397
Posterior root ganglion, spinal, 2, 4, 7, 8, 25, 26, 28, 29, 88, 97, 98, 151, 152, 284, 294, 333, 394, 399
  capsular cells of, 99
  first-order neuron cell body in, 305
  formation of afferent sensory neurons in, 171
  nerve cell in, 144
  sacral, 35
  in simple reflex arc, 141
Posterolateral tract of Lissauer, 157, 158, 307, 308, 309, 310
  in lateral white column, 157
Posteromedial nucleus, of thalamus, 362
Postganglionic nerve fibers, 410, 411, 412, 414, 433
  adrenergic, 415
  blocking agents affecting, 416
  muscarinic endings of, 415
  parasympathetic, 411, 412
  pharmacology of endings in, 415–416, 433
  structure of endings in, 413–416
  sympathetic, 410, 411
Postsynaptic membranes of neurons, 65–66
Postural sense, 136, 166, 481, 484
  testing of, 133, 136
Posture, 142–145, 146
  in cerebellar dysfunction, 200
  clinical notes on, 146
  deep muscles of back in, 142
  definition of, 142

Posture—*Continued*
and eyes in maintenance of balance, 146
and hypotension, 465
muscle tone in maintenance of, 142, 146
reflexes in maintenance of, 142, 145, 146
Potassium
blood levels affecting skeletal neuromuscular junctions, 135
hyperkalemic paralysis, 135
hypokalemic periodic paralysis, 135
Power, muscular, clinical observation of, 146–147
Precentral cortical area, 262–264, 268
lesions of, 268
Precentral gyrus, 13, 19, 234, 235, 440
motor homunculus on, 264
Precentral sulcus, 234, 235, 238
Precuneus, 236
Prefrontal area of cerebral cortex, 264–265
lesions of, 268–269
Preganglionic fibers, 409–412, 414, 433
parasympathetic, 361, 410–412
sympathetic, 409–410, 411
Preganglionic outflow
parasympathetic, 153, 155
sympathetic, 153, 154
Premotor cortical area, 262, 263
Preoptic area, of hypothalamus, 227, 228
Preoptic nuclei, hypothalamic, 228, 229, 397
Prepiriform area, of cerebral cortex, 354
Pressure
intracranial, 41, 178
pain from, testing of, 133
sensations of, 307, 309, 310
Pacinian corpuscles in, 132
pathways for, 307, 309, 310
Presynaptic membranes, of neurons, 65–66
Presynaptic vesicles, 63, 65, 66, 70, 130, 476
at neuromuscular junction, 127
Pretectal nucleus, 357, 358, 361, 426
Pretectal nucleus—*Continued*
light reflex ending in, 217
in visual reflexes, 357
Primary fissure, of cerebellum, 16, 189, 190, 191, 192, 206, 344
Procaine
as local anesthetic, 111
as synaptic blocking agent, 69
Process(es)
articular, vertebral, 30
of astrocytes, 302
foot processes, 300, 302
dendritic, of Purkinje cells, 46
of ependymal cells, 82
of glial cells, 302
of neurons, 59, 61, 65–67. *See also* Axon(s); Dendrites
of oligodendrocytes, 90
of pale cell, 301
transverse. *See* Transverse process, of vertebrae
Projection fibers, of cerebral hemispheres, 244, 249
Prolactin, 403
Propranolol, 135, 416
Proprioceptive information
ascending to consciousness in posterior white column, 144, 332
ascending tract conduction of, 305
to cerebellum, 307
Proprioceptive organs, afferent information from, 315
Proprioceptive sensations, loss of, in Brown-Séquard syndrome, 338
Proprioceptors, 115
Prosencephalon, 5
Prostate, 425, 426
Pterygoid canal, nerve of, 369, 418, 420
Pterygoid muscle, nerve to, 369
Pterygoid venous plexus, 443
Pterygopalatine fossa, maxillary artery in, 459
Pterygopalatine ganglia, 412, 418, 420
Ptosis, of eyelid, 383
Pulmonary plexus, 412, 421
anterior, 376
Pulvinar, of thalamus, 17, 18, 214, 221, 222, 225, 357, 389, 391, 392
Pupil
Argyll Robertson, 387, 428–429, 498–499, 501
pinpoint, 187, 188, 487
Pupillae muscle of iris, constrictor, 357, 358, 359
Pupillary skin reflex, 359
Purkinje cells, 47, 189, 193, 196–197, 199, 200, 345
dendritic processes of, 46
dendritic spines on, 194
Putamen, of lentiform nucleus, 22, 23, 222, 225, 240, 241, 244, 390, 401
Parkinson's disease affecting, 338
Pyramid
of cerebellar vermis, 16, 21, 189, 190, 191, 192, 206, 344
of medulla oblongata, 5, 12, 169, 170, 171, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 179, 182, 197, 323, 335, 379, 398, 399, 400
corticospinal tract in, 323, 324
decussation of, 169, 170, 173, 174, 323, 324, 349, 377, 398
internal structures at level of, 172, 173, 174
Pyramidal cells
in cerebral cortex, 46, 47, 257, 258
external, 260, 261
internal, 260, 261
dendritic spines of, 257
of hippocampus, 277, 278
Pyramidal tract, 261, 323, 335, 339, 496
Pyrexia, irregular, in hypothalamic dysfunction, 231

Quadrangular lobule, of cerebellum, 192
Quadriceps femoris muscle, innervation of, 146
Quadriplegia, 336
Queckenstedt sign, 33, 163, 166, 485

Radial nerve, 3, 69, 100, 257–259, 474
Radiation
acoustic, 370, 371
auditory, 247, 266

Radiation—*Continued*
of corpus callosum, 244
optic. *See* Optic radiation
Radicular arteries, 161
anterior, 160, 161, 162
posterior, 160
Radicular vein
anterior, 160
posterior, 160
Radiography
carotid arteriogram
anteroposterior lateral, 458–459, 506
lateral internal, 456–457
direction of x-rays in, 461, 463
position of film cassette in, 253, 255, 457, 459, 461, 463
position of x-rays in, 253, 255, 457, 459
programmed injector of radiopaque solution in,463
of skull, in studies of lateral ventricle, 251, 252–255, 256
of subarachnoid space, 163–165, 167
vertebral arteriogram
anteroposterior, 462–463
lateral, 460–461
of vertebral column, in spinal cord compression, 163
Ramus
inferior, of oculomotor nerve, 361
of lateral sulcus
anterior ascending, 233, 235, 238
anterior horizontal, 233, 235, 238
posterior, 233, 235, 238
of spinal nerves. *See* Spinal nerves, ramus of
Ranvier node, 80, 87, 89, 92, 111, 477
in central nervous system, 90, 92
on myelinated nerve fibers, 87, 89, 91, 92, 96
on peripheral nerves, 89, 91, 96
Raynaud's disease, 39, 500–501
sympathectomy in, 430
Receptor endings, 115–124, 125, 132–133, 135–136, 306, 354, 480–482
clinical notes on, 132–133
clinical problems on, 135–137
answers to, 480–482
Receptor endings—*Continued*
encapsulated, 117–124
Krause bulbous corpuscles, 119, 122, 132
Meissner's corpuscles, 117, 132
neuromuscular spindles, 119–124, 132
neurotendinous spindles, 124, 125, 132
Pacinian corpuscles, 117–119, 132
exteroreceptors, 115
functions of, 132
interoreceptors, 115
baroreceptors, 115
chemoreceptors, 115
proprioceptors, 115
visceroreceptors, 115
nonencapsulated, 115–117
free nerve endings, 115–117, 132
Merkel's discs, 115, 132
related to hair follicles, 115–117, 132
olfactory, 354
sympathetic, 135
agents blocking, 135
alpha, 135
beta, 135
Recess
optic, of third ventricle, 227
pineal, 228
Reciprocal innervation, law of, 333, 334
Rectum, 411
autonomic innervation of, 423
Rectus muscle of eyeball
inferior, 361
lateral, 365, 366
medial, 358, 361
superior, 361
Recurrent laryngeal nerve
left, 376
right, 376
Red blood cell, 300
Red nucleus, 14, 18, 143, 198, 215, 217, 218, 241, 325, 326, 331, 349, 361, 390, 394
in Benedikt's syndrome, 218, 219
cerebellar afferent fibers from, 348
globose-emboliform-rubral pathway to, 348
Red nucleus—*Continued*
rubrospinal tract from, 325, 328, 348
in subthalamus, 226
Referred pain, 430–431, 432, 501
Reflex(es)
abdominal superficial, with corticospinal tract lesions, 335
accommodation, 357–359, 426–427
Achilles tendon, 140
ankle jerk, 140
autonomic nervous system in, 426–428
Bainbridge right atrial, 428
biceps brachii tendon, 139, 140
brachioradialis tendon, 139
cardiovascular, 427–428
corneal, 359, 360
cremasteric, 335
crossed extensor, 333, 334
deep muscle, descending tract lesions affecting, 336
definition of, 330
disorders in cerebellar dysfunction, 201
knee jerk, 136, 140, 481
light
consensual, 357, 426
direct, 357, 426
pretectal nucleus ending of, 217
lower motor neuron lesions affecting, 336
in muscle tone, 141–142, 146, 334
patellar, 136, 140, 481
plantar superficial, 140
in posture maintenance, 142, 144, 145, 146
pupillary skin, 359
spinovisual, 307, 315
to test segmental innervation of muscles, 146
triceps brachii, 139
visual, 357–359, 426–427
body, 359, 360
Reflex arc, 330–334
higher neuronal centers affecting, 334
monosynaptic, 330, 332
in muscle tone, 334
simple, 122, 126, 141–142
structures in, 330

Refractory periods
in nerve conduction
absolute, 102, 111, 478
relative, 102
in plasma membrane of neurons, 57
Regeneration of nerves, 104, 107
in autonomic nervous system, 428
of axons, 104, 105–108
in central nervous system, 105–106, 113, 479–480
in peripheral nerves, 105, 106–108, 112, 475, 478
Relative refractory period, in nerve impulse conduction, 102
Release-inhibiting hormones, 403, 404
Releasing hormones, 403, 404
Renal ganglion, in renal plexus, 423
Renal plexus, 410, 423
Renshaw cells, 67, 69, 144, 332
and lower motor neuron inhibition, 334
Reproductive tract, innervation of, 425–426
Respiratory center, of brainstem, 412
Resting membrane potential, 111, 478
of cerebral cortex, 270
in peripheral nerve impulse conduction, 100, 102, 111, 478
Reticular alerting mechanism, 270
Reticular formation, 143, 198, 346, 349, 400
cerebroreticulocerebellar pathways, 344, 346
fastigial reticular pathway, 350
in medulla oblongata, 174, 175, 176, 178
in midbrain, 215, 216, 217–218
in pons, 184, 185
reticulospinal tract. *See* Reticulospinal fibers and tracts
spinoreticular tract passing to, 315
Reticular nucleus, of thalamus, 392, 393
Reticulocerebellar tract, 196
Reticulospinal fibers and tracts, 143, 144, 159, 325, 326, 332, 349
in anterior white column, 159
Reticulospinal fibers and tracts—*Continued*
functions of, 321
in lateral white column, 158
medullary, 325, 326
pontine, 325, 326
Retina
examination of, 381
ganglionic layer of, 354
macula lutea of, 354, 356, 357, 381
optic nerve origin in, 354, 356
Retrobulbar neuritis, blindness in, 382
Retrograde degeneration, of cell body, 103–105, 108
Rhinal sulci, 237
Rhizotomy, for pain relief, 317
Rhombencephalon, 5, 13–14
Rhomboid fossa. *See* Fourth ventricle, floor of
Rhythms, circadian, hypothalamic control of, 405, 406
Rib
cervical, 428
first, 165
second, 165
tenth, 28
Ribosomes, of neurons, 49, 56
Rigidity, 336
cog-wheel, in Parkinson's disease, 339
decerebrate, 334
plastic, in Parkinson's disease, 338
Rods, and cones, 357
Romberg test, 148
Roof
of fourth ventricle. *See* Fourth ventricle, roof of
of lateral ventricle, 242
of third ventricle, 221, 228–230
Roof plate
of fourth ventricle, 171
of neural tube, 399
Roots
of accessory nerve
cranial, 170, 178, 374, 377, 378
spinal, 9, 12, 170, 173, 197, 374–375, 377, 378, 387, 398, 499
of facial nerve
motor, 170, 368, 369
sensory, 170, 368, 369
Roots—*Continued*
of hair follicle, 119
of hypoglossal nerve, 12
of spinal nerve
motor. *See* Spinal nerves, root(s) of, anterior
sensory. *See* Spinal nerves, root(s) of, posterior ganglion of; Posterior root ganglion, spinal
of trigeminal nerve, 170
motor, 12, 98, 181, 182, 185, 214
sensory, 12, 98, 177, 181, 182, 185, 214, 364
of vagus nerve, 171, 399
Rostrum, of corpus callosum, 14, 224, 236, 242, 244, 286
Rough endoplasmic reticulum, of neurons, 49, 50, 51, 55
Rubrocerebellar fibers, in superior cerebellar peduncle, 196
Rubrospinal tract, 143, 144, 158, 172, 323, 325, 328, 332, 348, 349
cerebellar connections of, 198
decussation of, 215, 217
functions of, 321
in lateral white column, 158, 328

Saccule, 370
vestibular nerve fibers from, 368
Sacral canal, 35
Sacral foramen, 28
Sacral ganglia, posterior root, 35
Sacral plexus, 3, 26, 427
Sacral spinal cord, 3, 7, 27, 152, 153, 412
fourth segment of, 412, 422
second segment of, 412, 422
transverse section of, 155
third segment of, 412, 422
transverse section of, 153, 155
Sacral spinal nerves, 23
fifth, 7, 27
first, 7, 27
area of skin innervated by, 139, 140
motor nerve root of, effects of pressure on, 32
fourth, 424, 425
area of skin innervated by, 140
nerve roots of, 35
second, 424, 425
third, 28, 424, 425

Sacral vertebrae, second, 6, 443
lower border of, 284
Sacrum, 27
cut laminae of, 35
posterior view of, 35
Sagittal suture of skull, 10, 253, 436, 463
Sagittal venous sinus
coronal section of, 293
inferior, 10, 250, 435, 436, 439, 440, 454
bleeding from, in infants, 38
superior, 10, 284, 293, 435, 436, 438, 439, 442, 454
cerebrospinal fluid absorption into, 292
endothelial cells of, 293
Salivary glands
parotid, 372, 374, 411, 420
autonomic innervation of, 418, 420
sublingual, 368, 411
autonomic innervation of, 418, 419
submandibular, 368, 411
autonomic innervation of, 418, 419
Salivary nucleus
inferior, 418, 420
superior, 418, 419
Salivatory nucleus
inferior, 177, 370–372, 373
superior, 177, 210, 367, 368
Saltatory conduction of nerve impulse, 103, 111, 478
Sarcolemma, at skeletal neuromuscular junction, 126, 127
trough of, 126, 127
axon in, 130
Sarcoma, of peripheral nerves, 110
Satellite cells, in sensory and autonomic ganglia, 97, 99, 111, 477
Scalp
layers of, 10, 436
superficial nerves of, 10, 436
superficial vein of, 10, 436
Scapular nerve, dorsal, 100
Scar, gliotic, 84, 476
Schmidt-Lanterman incisure, 87, 92, 93, 111, 477
Schwann cells, 87, 89, 95, 104, 116, 129, 130
basement membrane of, 91
cell membrane of, 91
Schwann cells—*Continued*
covering axons in bulbous corpuscle of Krause, 122
cytoplasm of, 89, 91, 92, 93, 94
in myelin formation, 87, 91, 92
mesaxon formation in, 87, 91
nucleus of, 91, 92, 93, 94
in Pacinian corpuscle, 121
in peripheral nervous system, 87, 89, 91, 92
at skeletal neuromuscular junction, 126, 127
at smooth neuromuscular junction, 130, 131
Sciatic nerve, 3
degeneration and axon regeneration after injury, 107
distal stump of, longitudinal section of, 107
Sciatica, 31
Sclera of eyeball, 294, 444
meninges attached to, 444
Sclerosis
amyotrophic lateral, 149, 484
multiple, 386, 398, 428, 498
sensory loss in, 318
Scopolamine, 69, 135
Scotoma, central, 381
Sebaceous gland, 118
Second-order neurons, 305
of ascending pathway, 353
of descending pathway, 321, 322, 353
Secretory cells, nerve endings on, 131, 132, 135
drugs affecting, 135
Sella turcica, 255
Semicircular canals or ducts, 370
vestibular nerve fibers from, 368
Semicircular ducts, ampullae of, 372
Semilunar lobules, of cerebellar, 191, 192
Semilunar (trigeminal) ganglion, 177, 294, 360, 362, 364, 365, 439
Seminal vesicle, 425, 426
Senescence, and neuronal degeneration, 108
Sensory afferent nerve fibers. *See* Afferent (sensory) nerve fibers
Sensory areas of cortex, 271, 491–492
Sensory cells, of posterior gray column, 171, 399
Sensory ganglia, 97
capsular cells of, 97, 99
of glossopharyngeal nerve
inferior, 373, 374
superior, 373, 374
posterior root. *See* Posterior root ganglia
satellite cells in, 111, 477
structure of, 97
trigeminal, 177, 294, 360, 362, 364, 365, 439
of vagus nerve
inferior, 373, 375, 376
superior, 375, 376
Sensory information
conscious pathways for, 305–312, 315, 316
neurotmesis affecting, 109, 110
unconscious pathways for, 312–314, 316
Sensory loss, in thalamic lesions, 230, 395
Sensory modalities
afferent stimuli, 2
efferent stimuli, 2
examination of, 132–133, 135, 136
histological structures related to, 132, 135
Sensory nucleus
of facial nerve, 210, 367–368
of glossopharyngeal nerve, 372
of trigeminal nerve, 98, 177, 184–185, 187, 360, 362, 364, 394
of vagus nerve, 373–374
visceral, 156
Sensory root
of facial nerve, 170, 368, 369
of spinal nerve. *See* Spinal nerve, roots of, posterior
of trigeminal nerve, 12, 98, 177, 181, 182, 185, 214, 364
of vagus nerve, 171, 399
Septum
nasal, 463
pellucidum, 14, 22, 224, 236, 240, 241, 242, 250, 253, 276, 286, 390
cavity of, 222
posterior median, 8, 171, 399
Serotonin, in pineal gland, 226–227

Sex organs, 411
  autonomic innervation of, 425–426
Sexual disorders, with hypothalamic lesions, 406
Sheath
  dural, of spinal cord, 28, 35
  myelin, of nerve fibers, 80
  of root of hair follicle, 119
Shock
  physical, 465
  psychological, 465
  spinal, 334
Sigmoid sinus, 439, 441, 454
Signs. *See* Tests and signs
Sinoatrial nodes, 420, 421
Sinus
  carotid, 372, 374, 375, 427, 449
  cavernous, 439, 441, 442, 446, 450, 457, 459, 502
  frontal, 442
  intercavernous, 439, 443
  occipital, 438, 440, 441, 454
  petrosal, 439, 441, 443
  sagittal. *See* Sagittal venous sinus
  sigmoid, 439, 441, 454
  sphenoidal, 441, 459
  straight. *See* Straight sinus
  transverse. *See* Transverse sinus
Skeletal muscle
  denervation supersensitivity of, 134
  innervation of, 124–128
    acetylcholine release in, 128
    exocytosis process in, 128
  law of reciprocal innervation in activity of, 333, 334
  motor nerve injury affecting, 134, 136
  motor unit of, 125
  nerve fibers terminating at motor end-plate of, 128
  neuromuscular junctions in, 126–128, 133–135. *See also* Neuromuscular junction
  segmental innervation of, 139–140
Skeleton
  lateral view of, 142
  line of gravity through, 142, 146
Skin, 34, 410, 436
  afferent information from, 315
    to cerebellum, 307
Skin—*Continued*
  dermis layer of, 116, 118, 120, 121, 122
  digital, nerve endings in, 117
  epidermis of, 116, 118, 120, 121, 122
  free nerve endings in, 116
  of head, 10
  Meissner's corpuscle in, 117, 120, 132
  Merkel's discs, 115, 116, 117, 132
  Pacinian corpuscle in. *See* Pacinian corpuscles
  segmental innervation of, 139
    clinical notes on, 145
  sensory innervation of, 148, 482–483
Skull, 41, 165, 463, 473
  accessory nerve fibers entering, 377
  of adult, 35, 41
  area occupied by left cerebellar hemisphere, 437
  area occupied by occipital lobe, 437
  bone of, 437
  of child, 35
  coronal suture of, 255, 461
  fracture of, 33, 35
    pond, 35
  of infants, 41
  inner table of, 253, 255
  interior of, 10, 436
    posterior view of, 437
  lambdoid suture of, 253, 255, 463
  movement of brain in, at impact, 36, 37, 38
  outer table of, 253
  sagittal suture of, 10, 253, 436, 463
  space-occupying lesions in, 38
Sleep, 271, 273, 493
  hypothalamic lesions affecting, 231, 406
Small intestine, 411
Smell. *See* Olfaction
Smooth muscle, 415
  fibers of, 95, 131
  innervation of, 130–132
    acetylcholine release in, 130
    exocytosis in, 130
    norepinephrine release in, 130, 132
Smooth muscle—*Continued*
  neuromuscular junctions in, 128–132, 135. *See also* Neuromuscular junction
Soft palate, 374
  facial nerve fibers from, 368
Sole plate, 126, 127, 136, 481
Soleus muscle, innervation of, 146
Solitary tract. *See* Tractus solitarius
Somatic nervous system
  afferent fibers of hypothalamus, 397, 402
  compared to autonomic system, 410
Somatotropic hormone, 403, 404
Somesthetic association area, cortical, 265
  lesions of, 269
  primary, 263, 265
    lesions of, 269
  secondary, 263, 265
Space
  extradural, 159
  subarachnoid. *See* Subarachnoid space
Spasms, 336
  tonic, 147
Spasticity, 336
  in descending tract lesions, 335
  in motor cortex lesions, 268
Speech disorders
  in cerebellar dysfunction, 201
  dysarthria, 201
  expressive aphasia, 268
Sphenoid bone, coronal section through, 441
Sphenoid sinuses, 441, 459
Sphenoparietal sinus, 443
Sphincter(s)
  of anal canal, 424
  of urinary bladder, 424–425
Spinal artery, 160, 461
  anterior, 160, 161, 451, 463
  posterior, 160, 161, 451
Spinal canal. *See* Vertebral canal
Spinal column. *See* Vertebrae and vertebral column
Spinal cord, 1, 2, 4, 9, 151–167, 198, 347, 378, 394, 437
  adult, 6
  afferent fibers entering, 333
  anatomical features of, 161–162
  arachnoid mater of. *See* Arachnoid mater
  arterial supply of, 160

Spinal cord—*Continued*
ascending tracts of, 158, 305–319. *See also* Ascending tracts of spinal cord
attachment of spinal nerves to, 151, 152. *See also* Spinal nerves
blood supply of, 160, 161–162, 166, 485
central canal of. *See* Central canal of spinal cord
cerebrospinal fluid surrounding, 15, 160, 292
cervical enlargement of, 2, 151, 152, 471
cervical segments of. *See* Cervical spinal cord
clinical notes on, 161–163
clinical problems on, 166–167
answers to, 484–486
coccygeal portion of, 3, 7, 27, 152
columns of
gray. *See* Gray columns of spinal cord
white. *See* White columns of spinal cord
compression of, 162–163, 483
cerebrospinal fluid changes in, 163
clinical signs of, 162–163
extradural causes of, 162
intradural causes of, 162
lumbar puncture in diagnosis of, 163
myelography in diagnosis of, 163
radiography in, 163
tumors causing, 162–163
conus medullaris of, 2, 6, 7, 28, 151, 152
cuneocerebellar tract from, 348
descending fibers to, 401, 403
descending tracts of, 158, 321–341. *See also* Descending tracts of spinal cord
diameter of, 40
dura mater of, 2, 4, 7, 28, 30, 34, 151, 152
dural sheath of, 28, 35
ependymal cells lining, 82
of fetus, 6
gray commissure of, 2, 8, 151, 153, 154, 156–157, 288
anterior, 157, 167, 486
posterior, 156
gray matter of. *See* Gray matter
Spinal cord—*Continued*
hemisection of, 337
in herpes zoster, 148
injuries to, 29, 31, 40, 319, 429–430, 471–472, 494
clinical notes on, 29, 31
clinical problems on, 40–41
answers to, 472
defecation after, 429–430
erection and ejaculation after, 430
urinary bladder after, 39, 429
lateral margin of, 165
lower end of, 27, 284
oblique posterior view of, 28
lower motor neurons in, 47
lumbar enlargement of, 2, 151, 152, 471
lumbar segments of. *See* Lumbar spinal cord
median fissure or sulcus of, 5, 12, 170, 171, 181, 183, 205, 208, 391, 399
anterior, 2, 8, 151, 152, 154, 155, 169, 171, 173, 174, 175, 398, 399, 400
posterior, 2, 8, 151, 152, 155, 169, 170, 173, 174, 391, 398
meninges of, 6, 7, 159–160
motor output of, 88
nerve tracts of, 111, 477
one segment of, 8
pathways to cerebellar, 344–348
pia mater of, 2, 4, 7, 28, 151, 152, 160
posterior aspect of, 7, 27, 152
protective coverings of, 1, 2, 4
relationship of segments to vertebral numbers, 31, 33
sacral segments of, 3, 7, 27, 153, 412. *See also* Sacral spinal cord
sensory input to, 88
spinocerebellar tract
anterior, 345–348
posterior, 347, 348
stages in development of, 169, 171
structure of, 2, 151–159
subarachnoid space around. *See* Subarachnoid space
syphilitic lesion of, 318
terminal ventricle of, 157
termination of, in adult, 151
Spinal cord—*Continued*
thoracic segments of. *See* Thoracic spinal cord
transection of, complete, 337–338
transverse sections of, 153, 160, 307, 323
lumbar, 8, 153, 155
nerve tracts in, 158
thoracic, 7, 26, 98, 153, 154
tumors of, 162–163
venous drainage of, 160, 161
white commissure of, 154, 155, 244–248
white matter of, 2, 7, 8, 40, 151, 157–159, 171, 399, 471. *See also* White matter, of spinal cord
Spinal ganglion. *See* Posterior root ganglion, spinal
Spinal lemniscus, 172, 178, 215, 216, 217, 307, 309, 394
spinothalamic tract in, 308, 310
Spinal nerves, 1, 4, 7, 8, 23, 26, 27, 29, 95–97, 171, 284, 294, 333, 399
attachment to meninges, 294
attachment to spinal cord, 151, 152
cervical, 7, 9, 23, 27, 100, 139, 140, 380, 438. *See also* Cervical spinal nerves
coccygeal, 7, 23, 27, 28
injuries to, 29, 31
in intervertebral foramen, 30
lumbar, 7, 23, 27, 32, 34, 139, 140, 422. *See also* Lumbar spinal nerves
nucleus pulposus exerting pressure on, 32
peripheral, 88
posterior aspect of, 7
ramus of
anterior, 4, 8, 25, 26, 28
gray, 4, 25, 26, 409, 410
posterior, 4, 8, 9, 25, 26, 28
white, 4, 25, 26, 359, 409, 410
relationship with intervertebral foramen and intervertebral disc, 30
root(s) of, 7, 27, 97, 98
anterior or motor, 2, 4, 7, 8, 25, 26, 28, 34, 97, 98, 151, 152, 162, 171, 284, 294, 333, 399, 410

Spinal nerves, root(s) of, anterior or motor—*Continued*
chromatolysis after section of, 105
cerebrospinal fluid around, 294
compression of, 162
diseases affecting, 162
lesions of, 162
nucleus pulposus exerting pressure on, 32
posterior or sensory, 2, 4, 7, 25, 26, 28, 34, 97, 98, 151, 152, 155, 162, 171, 284, 294, 399, 410
cervical, 472
ganglion of. *See* Posterior root ganglion, spinal
longitudinal section of, 99
rhizotomy for pain relief, 317
posterior aspect of, 7
union of, 98
rootlets of
anterior, 8
posterior, 8
sacral, 23. *See also* Sacral spinal nerves
sensory neurons of, 399
sites of emergence of, 165
thoracic, 7, 23, 25, 27, 100, 139, 140, 421, 422, 424. *See also* Thoracic spinal nerves
Spinal nucleus
of accessory nerve, 374–375, 377
of trigeminal nerve, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 184, 187, 364, 372, 373, 375, 398, 400
Spinal reflexes, 330–334
higher neuronal centers affecting, 334
Spinal root, of accessory nerve, 173, 197, 374–375, 377, 378, 398
Spinal shock, 334, 339, 495, 496, 497
Spinal tap. *See* Lumbar puncture
Spinal tract, of trigeminal nerve, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 178, 179, 184, 187, 398, 400
nucleus of, 172, 173, 394
Spinal veins, 160
anterior, 160
posterior, 160
Spindles
neuromuscular. *See* Neuromuscular spindles
neurotendinous. *See* Neurotendinous spindles
tendon. *See* Neurotendinous spindles
Spine(s)
of cervical vertebrae, 30
dendritic. *See* Dendrites, spines of
iliac, 35
of lumbar vertebrae, 34
synaptic, 65, 70
vertebral. *See* Vertebrae and vertebral column
Spinocerebellar tract, 172
anterior, 157, 158, 186, 196, 198, 312–314, 345–348, 398, 400
cerebellar connections of, 196, 198, 345–348
in lateral white column of spinal cord, 157, 313
majority of fibers of, 347
in medulla oblongata, 173, 174, 175, 179
minority of fibers of, 347
as muscle joint sense pathway to cerebellum, 312–314
posterior, 157, 158, 173, 174, 196, 307, 312, 313, 398
cerebellar connection of, 198, 347, 348
in lateral white column, 157
as muscle joint sense pathway to cerebellum, 312, 313
in posterolateral white column, 313
Spino-olivary tract, 158, 172, 307, 314, 315, 331
in anterolateral white column, 315
in lateral white column, 158
Spinoreticular tract, 158, 314, 315
in lateral white column, 158, 315
passing to reticular formation, 315
Spinotectal tract, 157, 158, 172, 307, 314, 315
anterior, 172
in anterolateral white column, 315
lateral, 157, 172
Spinothalamic tract
anterior, 158, 172, 307, 310
Spinothalamic tract, anterior—*Continued*
in contralateral anterolateral white column, 310
injury to, 316–317
as light touch and pressure pathway, 309, 310
lateral, 157, 158, 172, 173, 175, 178, 179, 307, 398, 400
as ascending tract, 157, 305–309
in contralateral white column, 308
cordotomy for pain relief, 317
injury to, 316
as pain and temperature sensation pathway, 305–309
in spinal lemniscus, 308
Spinovisual reflexes, afferent information for, 307, 315
Spiral ganglion, of cochlea, 368, 371, 372
Splanchnic nerves, 410
greater, 410, 422, 423, 424
lesser, 410, 422
lowest, 410
thoracic, 423
pelvic, 412, 423, 424
Spleen, 376
Splenic flexure, 421
Splenium, of corpus callosum, 14, 19, 236, 239, 241, 244, 245, 247, 277
Spondylosis, cervical, 484
Stapedium, nerve to, 369
Stapedius muscle, facial nerve to, 368
Stellate cells
in cerebellar cortex, 47, 193, 194, 197, 345
in cerebral cortex, 257, 258
Stereognosis, testing of, 133
Sternocleidomastoid muscle, accessory nerve to, 153, 375, 378
Stomach, 411
autonomic innervation of, 421–423
Strabismus, internal, in abducent nerve paralysis, 383
Straight sinus, 10, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 440, 454
bleeding from, in infants, 38
Stratum zonale, of thalamus, 225, 226, 389

Stria(e)
of Gennari, 260
longitudinal
lateral, 275, 276, 279
medial, 245, 275, 276, 279
medullaris, 183, 391
of fourth ventricle, 15, 17, 170, 205, 207, 208
thalami, 221, 222, 228, 248, 276
olfactory
lateral, 223, 354, 355
medial, 223, 354, 355
terminalis, 17, 242, 243, 391
in limbic system, 275, 276–277
Striate arteries
lateral, 453
medial, 453
Striate cortex, 260
Striate veins, 455
Stroke, 468, 504–505
Stupor, 270
Styloglossus muscle, 375, 380
Stylohyoid muscle, 368, 369
Styloid process, of temporal bone, 459
Stylopharyngeus muscle, 370, 374
Subarachnoid cisterns, 288, 443
Subarachnoid space, 2, 151, 160, 284, 437, 441, 443, 445
adhesions in, 211, 489
in meningitis, 211
cerebral artery in, 10, 436
at cerebral hemisphere, 290
cerebral vein in, 10, 436
cerebrospinal fluid in, 6, 160, 284, 288, 293, 294, 302, 443, 444, 445
around cerebral cortex, 292
around spinal cord, 292
connective tissue network in, 302
extensions of, 292, 295
cerebrospinal fluid in, 294
perivascular, 302
hemorrhage into, 38, 41, 445, 446, 466, 473
inferior end of, 284
lateral prolongation of, 284
lower limit of, 6, 7, 284
at optic nerve, 444
radiography of, 163–165, 167
radiopaque material in, 163–165
in ventricular system, 288–290
Subclavian artery, 450
Subclavius muscle, nerve to, 100
Subdural space, 443
hematoma in, 447, 503, 506
hemorrhage into, 36, 37, 38, 41, 219, 445–446, 473, 489
Sublingual salivary gland, 411
autonomic innervation of, 418, 419
facial nerve to, 368
Submandibular ganglia, 412, 418
Submandibular salivary gland, 411
autonomic innervation of, 418, 419
facial nerve to, 368
Submucosal plexus, 422
Subscapular nerve
lower, 100
upper, 100
Substance
Nissl, 44, 48, 52, 53, 105
perforated. *See* Perforated substance
Substantia
ferruginea, 181, 183, 205, 207
gelatinosa, 153, 154, 155, 156, 167, 172, 177, 307, 308, 364, 485
nigra, 14, 18, 213, 215, 216, 217, 239, 241, 361, 363, 390, 394
in Parkinson's disease, 338
Subsynaptic web, 66
Subthalamus, 221, 226
clinical notes on, 231
lesions of, 231
nuclei of, 226
Succinylcholine, 134, 482
Sudomotor control, neurotmesis affecting, 109
Sulcus. *See also* Fissures
basilar, of pons, 181, 182, 184, 186
calcarine, 14, 233, 236, 237, 238, 239, 241, 242, 260
callosal, 236
central, 14, 19, 20, 233, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 256, 291, 392, 452
of cerebral hemispheres, 233–237
cingulate, 14, 236, 238
collateral, 236, 237, 238, 239, 241, 242, 277, 278, 289
frontal, 234, 235, 238
hippocampal, 278
Sulcus—*Continued*
hypothalamic, 221, 224, 228, 286
lateral. *See* Lateral sulcus, cerebral
limitans, 15, 17, 169, 171, 181, 183, 205, 207, 208, 391, 399
substantia ferruginea of, 181, 183, 205
median. *See* Median sulcus
occipitotemporal, 236, 237, 238, 239
olfactory, 237, 239
parietal, 234, 235, 238
parieto-occipital, 13, 14, 20, 233, 234, 235, 236, 238, 239, 452
postcentral, 234, 235, 238
precentral, 234, 235, 238
rhinal, 237
temporal, 235, 238, 241
Sulfonamides, at blood-brain barrier, 303
Superior colliculus. *See* Colliculus, superior
Supporting cell, 355
Supraoptic nucleus, hypothalamic, 228, 229, 397
in hormone synthesis, 402
as osmoreceptor, 402
Suprarenal gland, 411, 423
autonomic innervation of, 423, 424
medulla of, 410, 424
Suprascapular nerve, 100
Supraspinous ligament, 30, 34
Sutural ligaments, 435, 437
Sutures of skull
coronal, 255, 461
lambdoid, 253, 255, 463
sagittal, 10, 253, 436, 463
Sweat glands, 415
Sylvian aqueduct. *See* Cerebral aqueduct
Sympathectomy, in arterial disease, 430
Sympathetic nervous system or trunk, 1, 4, 369, 409–410, 416, 432, 501
activities of, 1
afferent fibers of, 410
in anal canal sphincter innervation, 424
cervical part of, 438
cardiac branches of, 420, 421

Sympathetic nervous system or trunk—*Continued*
compared to parasympathetic system, 417–418
connector neuron in, 410
efferent fibers of, 409–410, 411, 415
ganglion of, 4, 25, 99, 409, 410, 414
cervical, 359, 420, 421
longitudinal section of, 99
in gastrointestinal innervation, 422, 423
in heart innervation, 420–421
in kidney innervation, 423
in lung innervation, 421
postganglionic fibers in, 410, 411
preganglionic fibers in, 153, 154, 156, 409–410, 411
in reproductive tract innervation, 425–426
in suprarenal gland innervation, 423, 424
thoracic part of, cardiac branches of, 420, 421
in urinary bladder innervation, 424, 425, 429
Sympathetic plexus, carotid, 359, 369, 441, 442
Sympathetic receptors, 135
Synapses, 61–67, 70, 476
acetylcholine release in, 409, 413, 414, 415
axoaxonic, 61, 64
axodendritic, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65
with dendritic spine, 64
axosomatic, 61, 64
blocking agents affecting, 68–69, 70. *See also* Blocking agents
cleft of, 65–66, 70, 476
at motor end-plate, 136, 481
at skeletal neuromuscular junction, 127, 128
basement membrane in, 127, 128
neurotransmitters in. *See* Neurotransmitters
postsynaptic membrane, 65–66
presynaptic membrane, 65–66
presynaptic vesicles, 63, 65, 66, 70, 130, 476
spine of, 65, 70, 476
subsynaptic web, 66
Synapses—*Continued*
transmission across, 66
ultrastructure of, 65–66
Synaptic glomeruli, of olfactory bulb, 354, 355
Synovial joints, 30
Syphilis
spinal cord lesion in, 318
tabes dorsalis from, 317
Syringomyelia, 135, 318, 387, 428, 480, 494–495, 499
motor system in, 339
sensory losses in, 318

Tabes dorsalis, 136, 148, 480, 483, 495
signs and symptoms of, 317–318
Tactile cell, of Merkel's discs, 115, 116
Tactile discrimination
loss of, in Brown-Séquard syndrome, 338
two-point, 117, 133
Tail, of caudate nucleus, 22, 23, 240, 242, 243, 278
Tangential fibers, of cerebral cortex, 259–260
Tapetum, of corpus callosum, 19, 241, 242, 244
Taste area, of cerebral cortex, 266
Taste buds, atrophy after sensory nerve injury, 109
Taste fibers, 369
Tectobulbar fibers, 361, 363, 366
Tectocerebellar fibers, 196
Tectonuclear tracts, 360
Tectospinal tract, 158, 159, 175, 176, 178, 323, 325, 327, 360, 400
fibers of, 144, 332
functions of, 321
Tectum, of midbrain, 14, 17, 18, 213, 215, 391
cerebellar afferent fibers from, 348
Tegmentum
of cerebral peduncle, 14, 18, 213, 215, 230
fibers of, 401, 402
of pons, 181
Tela choroidea, 250
blood supply of, 250, 283
of fourth ventricle, 205, 208
highly vascular, 287
Tela choroidea—*Continued*
pia mater of, 289, 444
of third ventricle, 221, 228, 230
Telencephalon, 221
Temperature of body
hyperthermia, 406
hypothalamic regulation of, 405, 406
lesions affecting, 406
hypothermia, 406
irregular pyrexia in hypothalamic dysfunction, 231
Temperature sensations, 307, 308
examination of, 133
histological structures related to, 132
loss of
in Brown-Séquard syndrome, 338
in syringomyelia, 318
pathways for, 305–309
spinothalamic tract in, 305–309
Temperopontine fibers, 18, 21, 23, 215, 216, 217, 247
Temporal artery
posterior, 457, 459, 461, 463
superficial, 457, 459
Temporal bone, 11
carotid canal of, 450, 459
mastoid process of, 459
petrous part of, 253, 255, 459
facial nerve branches in, 369
styloid process of, 459
Temporal gyrus
inferior, 13, 235, 239, 452
middle, 13, 235
superior, 13, 235
auditory cortex of, 372
Temporal lobe, 11, 12, 20, 233, 235, 241, 245, 248, 276, 355, 441, 453
cortex of, 222, 266
dysfunction of, 280
in epilepsy, 280, 493
gyri of, 235, 241
hippocampus of, 221
sulcus of, 235, 241
middle, 235, 238
superior, 235, 238
Temporal nerve, 369
Temporal poles, cerebral, 20, 237, 243, 452, 454
Temporopontine fibers, 18, 21, 215, 216, 217, 247
Tendo calcaneus, 140

Tendon
  Achilles, reflex of, 140
  biceps brachii, reflex of, 139, 140
  brachioradialis, reflex of, 139
  extrafusal fibers of, 125
  intrafusal fibers of, 125
  patellar, reflex of, 140
  spindles of. *See* Neurotendinous spindles
  triceps brachii, reflex of, 139
Tensor tympani muscle, 365
Tensor veli palatini muscle, 365
Tentorium cerebelli, 9, 10, 233, 284, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 444
  junction with falx cerebri, 437
  notch of, 435, 439
  superior view of, 439
Terminal ventricles, 157, 283, 284, 288
Tests and signs
  in cerebellar dysfunction, 200–201
  in corticospinal tract lesions, 335
  in cranial nerve examination, 381–385
  for form appreciation, 133
  for light touch, 132–133
  for muscular activity, 146–147, 148
  for pain threshold, 133
  for passive movement of joints, 133
  for posture sensibility, 133, 136
  for pressure pain, 133
  Queckenstedt sign, 33, 163, 166, 485
  Romberg test, 148
  for sensory modalities, 132–133, 135, 136
  in spinal cord compression, 162–163
  for tactile discrimination, two-point, 133
  temperature testing, 133
  Tinel's sign, 110
  for touch localization, 133
  for vibratory sense, 133, 136
Tetanus toxin, 112, 479
  route for ascent of, 111, 112
Tetracyclines, at blood-brain barrier, 303
Tetraethylammonium salts, 69, 413, 476
Thalamic hand, 230–231, 395
Thalamocortical projections, 392
  to frontal lobe, 247
  to parietal lobe, 247
Thalamohypothalamic fibers, 401, 402
Thalamostriate vein, 242, 243, 455
Thalamus, 14, 17, 18, 22, 23, 143, 198, 221–226, 240, 243, 246, 247, 285, 289, 306, 322, 326, 349, 364, 367, 373, 375, 394, 401, 402, 403
  afferent fibers of, 394
  anterior part of, 389
    transverse section through, 225
  arteries of, 455
  clinical notes on, 230–231, 395
  connections of, 389–395
  coronal section showing, 390
  dentothalamic tract, 198, 348–350
  efferent fibers of, 394
  epithalamus, 226–227, 231
  forming lateral wall of third ventricle, 228
  functions of, 230, 393–395
  input from cerebellum, 394
  interthalamic connection, 14, 222, 224, 225, 285, 286, 389, 392, 401
  lateral geniculate body in, 393
  lateral part of, 241, 389
  lesions of, 230–231, 395
    involuntary movements in, 230
    sensory loss in, 230, 395
    thalamic hand with, 230–231, 395
  medial geniculate body in, 393
  medial part of, 241, 389
  medullary lamina of
    external, 225, 226, 389, 390
    internal, 225, 226, 389, 390, 392
  medullary stria of, 221, 222, 228, 248, 276
  nuclei of, 225, 226, 389–393
    anterior, 225, 275, 276, 389, 392
    dorsal tier of, 389
    dorsomedial, 389, 390, 392
    intralaminar, 390–392, 393
    lateral dorsal, 225, 389, 390, 392
    lateral posterior, 389, 392
Thalamus, nuclei of—*Continued*
    midline, 392, 393
    posteromedial, 362
    reticular, 392, 393
    ventral tier of, 389–390
      anterior, 225, 389–390, 392
      lateral, 225, 348
      posterior, 390
      posterolateral, 225, 308, 311, 390, 392
      posteromedial, 225, 390,392
  position in cerebrum, 225
  posterior view of brainstem showing, 391
  pulvinar of, 17, 18, 214, 221, 222, 225, 357, 389, 391, 392
  spinothalamic tract. *See* Spinothalamic tract
  stratum zonale of, 225, 226, 389
  subdivisions of, 224–226, 389–395
  subthalamus, 226, 231
  syndrome of, 230, 395
  thalamocortical projections, 392
Thiopentone, at blood-brain barrier, 303
Third-order neurons, 305
  of ascending pathway, 353
  of descending pathway, 321, 322, 353
Third ventricle, 17, 22, 24, 228–230, 240, 241, 283, 284, 285, 390, 391, 401, 441
  anterior wall of, 228
  cavity of, 14, 222, 224, 225, 286, 287, 289
    coronal section of, 289
    ependymal cells of, 83
  choroid plexus of, 221, 224, 230, 250, 283, 284, 286, 289
    cerebrospinal fluid formation in, 292
  coronal section of, 287, 289
  exposed from above, 24, 222
  floor of, 230
  inferior wall of, 230
  lateral wall of, 228
  optic recess of, 227
  posterior wall of, 228
  roof of, 221, 228–230
  superior wall of, 228–230
  tela choroidea of, 221, 228, 230
Thirst center, hypothalamic, 405, 406, 407

Thoracic outflow, 417
Thoracic spinal cord, 3, 7, 27, 152, 153, 166, 422, 423, 485
  cross-section of, 25
  injuries of, 29
  nerve tracts in, 88
    ascending, 88
    descending, 88
  second segment of, transverse section of, 154
  transverse section of, 7, 26, 98, 153, 154
Thoracic spinal nerves, 23, 25
  area of skin innervated by, 139, 140
  eighth, 139, 140, 422
  eleventh, 422, 424
  fifth, 422
  first, 7, 27, 100, 139, 140
  fourth, 139, 140, 421
  long, 100
  ninth, 422
  second, 139, 140, 421
  sixth, 139, 140, 422
  tenth, 139, 140, 422
  third, 421
  twelfth, 7, 27, 139, 140, 424
Thoracic vertebrae and vertebral column, 496
  articular process of
    inferior, 30
    joint between, 30
    superior, 30
  bodies of, joints between, 30
  carcinomatous deposit in, 40
  cartilaginous joint in, 30
  fifth, collapse of, 40, 472
  first, 27
  joints in, 30
  ninth, fracture of, 496
  relationship to spinal segments, 31
  synovial joint in, 30
  tenth, 28
  third, 165
  twelfth, 27
Thoracodorsal nerve, 100
Thrombosis
  of posterior inferior cerebellar artery, 180, 486
  of right posterior cerebral artery, 490
Thyrocervical trunk, 450
Thyrohyoid muscle, 380
Thyroid artery, superior, 457
Thyroid cartilage, 450
Thyroid gland, carcinoma of, 40, 471
Thyroid-stimulating hormone, 403, 404
Thyrotropic hormone, 403
Tic, 147
Tight junction, 83, 291
  in cerebrospinal fluid-brain interface, 302, 303
  between choroidal epithelial cells, 301
  at endothelial cells, 300, 301
Tinel's sign, 110
Tissues
  in central nervous system, 70, 475
  connective. *See* Connective tissue
  of neck, soft, 165
  in peripheral nervous system, 70, 475
Tomography, computerized axial, for studies of ventricles, 296
Tone of muscles, 141–142, 146, 147, 148, 334, 335, 483
  abnormal, 336–337
Tongue
  anterior two-thirds of, 268
  posterior third of, 374
Tonic spasm, 147
Tonsil, cerebellar, 16, 190, 191, 192, 206, 209, 344
  herniation through foramen magnum, 178
Tonsillar nerve, 374
Touch sense, 307
  discriminative, 311
    pathway for, 307, 309, 311, 312
  histological structures related to, 132
  light, 307, 309, 310
    examination of, 132–133
    pathways for, 307, 309, 310
  localization of, 7, 133
  loss of, in Brown-Séquard syndrome, 338
  testing of two-point discrimination, 133
Toxoplasma gondii, 474
Trabeculae, fine, of connective tissue, 290
Tracts, nerve. *See specific tracts under* Nerve(s)
Tractus solitarius, nucleus of, 175, 176, 177, 373, 400, 427, 428
  of facial nerve, 210, 367
  of glossopharyngeal nerve, 372, 373
  of vagus nerve, 373, 375
Transneuronal degeneration, 112, 478
  anterograde, 108
  retrograde, 108
Transplantation of nerves, 110
Transverse fibers
  of corpus callosum, 245
  of pons, 12, 182, 184, 185, 186, 196, 198, 210, 323, 343
    forming middle cerebellar peduncle, 196
  pontocerebellar, 323
Transverse process, of vertebrae, 4, 9, 165, 450, 463
Transverse sinus, 9, 435, 441, 454
  left, 437, 439
  right, 438, 439
Trapezius muscle, 153, 375, 378, 386, 498
Trapezoid body, 181, 184, 185, 186
  posterior nucleus of, 370, 371
Trauma
  of cauda equina, 432, 501
  cerebrospinal fluid as protection from, 296, 493
  fractures in. *See* Fracture
  of frontal lobe, 272–273, 492
  of head, 41, 446, 447, 466, 472, 502
    and blood-brain barrier, 303
    cerebellar, direct, 37
    cerebral, 272
    clinical notes on, 33, 35–36, 37, 38
    clinical problems on, 41–42
      answers to, 472, 473
    contrecoup injury in, 36
    direct, 37
    due to negative pressure, 36, 37
    and intracranial hemorrhage, 445–446
    mechanisms of, 37
    to midbrain, 218–219
    movements of brain in, 41, 445, 473
    secondary, 37

Trauma—*Continued*
of nerves, 67–68, 70, 76, 84
axonal reaction in, 68
in central nervous system, 108
efferent (motor) fibers, 108–109, 134, 136
peripheral nerves, 109
clinical principles of, 110
clinical problems on, 111–113
answers to, 477–480
and reaction to neuronal injury, 67–68, 84, 103–108
recovery from, 105–108
regeneration after, 104, 107
sciatic nerve, regeneration after, 107
sensory nerves, 109
spinal nerve roots, 162
spinal nerves, 29, 31
clinical notes on, 29, 31, 32
of spinal cord, 29, 40, 319, 340, 429–430, 471–472, 494, 496
in ascending tracts, 316–317
bladder in, 39
of visual pathway, visual field defects in, 381, 382, 387, 499
Tremor, 147, 336, 340, 497
in cerebellar dysfunction, 200
intention, 187, 341, 497
Triangle
hypoglossal, 15, 17, 170, 208, 210, 391
vagal, 15, 17, 170, 208, 210, 391
Triceps brachii muscle, innervation of, 139, 146
Trigeminal ganglion, 177, 294, 360, 362, 364, 365, 439
Trigeminal lemniscus, 215, 216, 217, 362, 364, 394
Trigeminal nerve, 9, 10, 197, 214, 223, 362–365, 436
cerebrospinal fluid around, 294
clinical examination of, 383
distribution of, 365
to dura mater of brain, 438
emerging from pons, 181
ganglion of, 177, 294, 360, 362, 364, 365, 439
mandibular division of, 177, 364, 365, 439, 441
maxillary division of, 177, 364, 365, 420, 439, 441, 442
Trigeminal nerve—*Continued*
motor component of, 365
neuralgia of, 136, 480
nuclei of, 364
in brainstem, 177, 364
central connections of, 364
in medulla oblongata, 173, 174, 175, 176, 178, 179
mesencephalic, 177, 186, 215, 216, 362, 363, 364
motor, 98, 184, 185, 362, 364
in pons, 184, 185, 186, 187, 364
sensory, 98, 177, 184–186, 187, 360, 362, 364, 394
spinal, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 178, 179, 362, 364, 372, 373, 375, 394, 398, 400
ophthalmic division of, 177, 360, 364, 365, 441, 442
roots of, 170
motor, 12, 98, 181, 182, 185, 214
sensory, 12, 98, 177, 181, 182, 185, 214, 364
sensory components of, 362
spinal tract of, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 178, 179, 398, 400
Trochlear nerve, 9, 10, 12, 15, 17, 183, 197, 213, 214, 215, 223, 362, 363, 391, 436, 439, 441, 442
clinical examination of, 381, 383
decussation of, 186, 362
distribution of, 363
lesions of, 498
nucleus of, 18, 177, 213, 215, 216, 362, 363, 370
central connections of, 363
Trunk
of body
corticospinal fibers of, 247
muscles of, 143, 153, 154, 155
sympathetic. *See* Sympathetic nervous system or trunk
vagal, 421–422
Tube(s)
endoneurial, 107
neural, 169, 171, 399
Tuber
of cerebellar vermis, 16, 190, 191, 192, 206, 344
Tuber—*Continued*
cinereum, 12, 14, 18, 214, 221, 223, 239
medial eminence of, 227–228
Tubercle
cuneate, 5, 15, 17, 169, 170, 208, 209, 391
gracile, 5, 9, 15, 17, 169, 170, 208, 209, 391
Tuberomammillary nucleus, hypothalamic, 228, 229, 397, 401
D-Tubocurarine, 133, 481–482
Tufted cells, of olfactory bulb, 354, 355
Tumors
bronchogenic, 387, 499
cerebellar, 200–201, 202
clinical problems on, 149
answers to, 487, 488–489
medulloblastoma in vermis syndrome, 201
cerebral, 271–273, 281, 296, 493
in cervical region of spinal cord, 148, 483
of cranial fossa, posterior, 178
of descending tracts, 335–339
of fourth ventricle, 211
ependymomas, 211
of hypothalamus, 231, 406
intracranial, 38, 41, 180
clinical problems on, 41
answers to, 473
of lower motor neurons, facial expression in, 384
of medulla oblongata, 180, 486
of midbrain, 218, 219, 220, 490
blocking cerebral aqueduct, 218, 219
nerve, regeneration after, 104
of neuroglia, 84
astrocytoma, 84
glioblastoma, 84
glioma, 84
medulloblastoma, 84
of neurons, 68, 71
ganglioneuroma, 68
neuroblastoma, 68
pheochromocytoma, 68
pain relief in terminal carcinoma, 319, 495
of peripheral nerves, 110, 113, 479

Tumors, of peripheral nerves—*Continued*
axon regeneration after, 105, 106–108
benign fibroma, 110
malignant sarcoma, 110
neurolemmoma, 110
pineal, 231
pituitary chromophobe adenoma, 231
of pons, 187, 188, 486–487
astrocytoma, 187
of spinal cord, 162–163
of spinal nerve roots, 162
of subthalamus, 231
of thalamus, 230–231, 395
of thyroid gland, 40, 471
of upper motor neurons, facial expression in, 384
of vertebral body, thoracic, 40
in vertebral canal, clinical problems on, 148
answers to, 483
of visual pathway, visual field defects with, 381, 382, 387, 499
Two-point tactile discrimination, 117, 133
testing of, 133
Tympanic membrane, tensor muscle of, 365
Tympanic nerve, 369, 372, 374, 418, 420
Tympanic plexus, 369, 372, 374,420

Ulnar nerve, 3, 100
Uncinate fasciculus, 248
Unconscious sensory pathways, 312–314, 316
Uncus, 223, 236, 237, 239, 275, 276, 277, 355
herniated, 219, 489
Unipolar neurons, 43, 45
Unmyelinated fibers. *See* Nonmyelinated nerve fibers
Upper limb
arteries of, autonomic innervation of, 426, 427
corticospinal fibers of, 247
medial cutaneous nerve of arm, 100
muscles of, 100, 153, 154
innervation of, 153, 154
Upper motor neurons, 47, 321, 339, 384, 495
Urinary bladder, 411, 424–425, 432, 501
atonic, 429
autonomic innervation of, 424–425, 432
parasympathetic, 429
sympathetic, 429
autonomic reflex of, 429
sensory nerve fibers to, 429
after spinal cord injuries, 39, 429
Utricle, 370, 372
vestibular nerve fibers from, 368
Uvula, of cerebellum, 16, 189, 190, 191, 192, 206, 344
Uvulonodular fissure, of cerebellum, 189, 192

Vagal triangle, 15, 17, 170, 208, 210, 391
Vagal trunks
anterior, 421–422
posterior, 421–422
Vagus nerve, 9, 10, 171, 175, 372–374, 375, 378, 387, 399, 400, 420, 421, 422, 423, 436, 499
cardiac branches of, 376
clinical examination of, 385
distribution of, 376
to dura mater of brain, 438
left, 376
in medulla oblongata, 175, 178, 179
nuclei of, 210, 211, 375, 387, 412, 499
ambiguus, 177
central connections of, 375
motor, 175, 176, 177, 179, 372, 373, 375, 400, 420, 421, 422, 423
parasympathetic, 373, 375
sensory, 373–374
of tractus solitarius, 373, 375
right, 376
celiac branch of, 376
roots of, 12, 170, 182
sensory, 171, 399
sensory ganglion of
inferior, 373, 375, 376
superior, 375, 376
Vallecula, of cerebellum, 189
Vas deferens, autonomic innervation of, 425, 426
Vasoconstriction, from vasopressin, 402
Vasodilator center, of brainstem, 412
Vasomotor control, neurotmesis affecting, 109, 110
Vasopressin, 402
Vasopressor center, of brainstem, 412
Vein(s)
basivertebral, 4
of brain, 455
of cerebellum, 455
cerebral, 10, 14, 36, 37, 38, 250, 436, 439, 440–441, 442–443, 445, 454, 455
diploic, 10, 436, 439, 441
emissary, 10, 436, 439
of medulla oblongata, 455
of midbrain, 455
of pons, 455
radicular, 160
of scalp, 10, 436
spinal, 160
of spinal cord, 160, 161
thalamostriate, 242, 243, 455
vertebral, 4, 30, 159
Velocity, of nerve impulse conduction, 111
Velum
medullary
inferior, 14, 16, 175, 190, 205, 206, 208, 209, 211, 344, 400, 489
superior, 14, 15, 16, 184, 185, 186, 190, 205, 206, 208, 211, 344, 362, 489
palatini, tensor muscle of, 365
Venous lacunae, 439
Venous sinuses, 436
dural, 438–443. *See also* Dural venous sinuses
Ventral nuclei of thalamus, 225, 228, 308, 310, 311, 348, 389–390, 392, 397, 401
Ventricular system of central nervous system, 283–290
cavities of, views of, 24, 285
central canal of spinal cord in. *See* Central canal of spinal cord
cerebral aqueduct in. *See* Cerebral aqueduct
cerebrospinal fluid in. *See* Cerebrospinal fluid
clinical investigation of, 296
clinical notes on, 295–296
clinical problems on, 296
answers to, 493–494

Ventricular system of central nervous system—*Continued*
ependymal surface of, 283, 287, 288, 289, 302
fourth ventricle in. *See* Fourth ventricle
interventricular foramen of Monro in, 14, 18, 21, 24, 224, 228, 236, 240, 246, 255, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 292
lateral ventricles in. *See* Lateral ventricle
medulla oblongata in. *See* Medulla oblongata
subarachnoid space in. *See* Subarachnoid space
terminal ventricle in, 157, 283, 284, 288
third ventricle in. *See* Third ventricle
Ventriculography, 251, 296, 493
Vermis, of cerebellum, 13, 22, 189, 192, 197, 208, 209, 222, 240, 344
culmen of, 16, 190, 191, 192, 206, 344
declive of, 16, 190, 191, 192, 206, 344
lingula of, 16, 190, 192, 206, 208, 344
median, 343
nodule of, 15, 16, 190, 191, 192, 206, 344
pyramid of, 16, 21, 189, 190, 191, 192, 206, 344
superior aspect of, 191
syndrome of, 201
tuber of, 16, 190, 191, 192, 206, 344
Vertebrae and vertebral column, 41, 473
in adult, 6
arch of, 32, 34, 35, 461
articular process of, 30
body of, 4, 30, 40, 165, 472
canal of, 2, 151
cervical. *See* Cervical vertebrae and vertebral column
fetal, 6
fracture of, 29, 340, 396
intervertebral discs. *See* Intervertebral disc
joints in, 30, 165
lumbar. *See* Lumbar vertebrae and vertebral column
Vertebrae and vertebral column—*Continued*
numerical relationship to spinal segments, 31, 33
radiography of, in spinal cord compression, 163
sacral, 6, 284, 443
sagittal section of, 6
spinal cord in, 34, 161
thoracic. *See* Thoracic vertebrae and vertebral column
transverse process of, 4, 9, 165, 450, 463
Vertebral arteries, 9, 438, 450–453
arteriography of
anteroposterior, 462–463
lateral, 460–461
branches of cranial portion of, 451–453
in foramen magnum, 461, 463
in foramen transversaria, 461
left, 450, 451
medullary artery branches of, 453
meningeal branches of, 451, 461
muscular branches of, 461
origin and course of, 450
in posterior cranial fossa, 463
posterior inferior cerebellar artery branch of, 453
right, 450
spinal artery branches of, 461
anterior, 451
posterior, 451
in transverse process of cervical vertebra, 463
Vertebral canal, 2, 151
accessory nerve fibers in, 377
tumor in, clinical problem on, 148
answer to, 483
Vertebral veins, 441
internal, 30
Vertebral venous plexus, internal, 4, 159
Vertigo, in vestibular dysfunction, 384
Vesicle(s)
hindbrain, 169
presynaptic
of axon, 63, 130
of neurons, 66, 70
Vestibular area, 15, 17, 170, 181, 183, 208, 266, 391
Vestibular nerve, 198, 329, 347, 368, 370, 371, 372
Vestibular nerve—*Continued*
cerebellar efferent fibers from, 348
clinical examination of, 384–385
ganglion of, 368, 370, 372
nuclei of, 143, 177, 184, 187, 198, 347, 349, 368, 370
central connections of, 370
inferior, 172, 175, 176, 179, 368, 400
lateral, 172, 175, 176, 325, 329, 330, 350, 368, 370, 400
medial, 172, 175, 176, 179, 181, 368, 400
producing area vestibuli, 181
superior, 176, 368
vestibulospinal tract from, 325, 330, 368, 370
Vestibulocerebellar tract, 196
Vestibulocochlear nerve, 9, 10, 12, 170, 176, 181, 182, 197, 368–370, 436
clinical examination of, 384–385
cochlear nerve, 368. *See also* Cochlear nerve
distribution of, 372
nuclei of, 172, 176, 186, 187
vestibular nerve, 368. *See also* Vestibular nerve
Vestibulospinal tract, 143, 144, 158, 159, 172, 198, 323, 325–329, 330, 332, 349, 350, 368
in anterior white column, 159, 329
functions of, 321
from lateral vestibular nucleus, 325, 330, 368, 370
Vibratory sense, 136, 166, 307, 309, 311, 312, 481, 484
loss in Brown-Séquard syndrome, 338
pathways for, 307, 309, 311, 312
testing of, 133, 136
Villi
arachnoid, 160, 439, 443. *See also* Arachnoid villi
of choroid plexus, section of, 301
Visceral afferent fibers, of hypothalamus, 397, 402
Visceral afferent nucleus, 156
Visceral pain, 430–431, 432, 501
Visceral sensory tracts, 314
Visceroreceptors, 115
Viscosity of blood, change in, 465

Viscus, 26, 410
Vision
  binocular, 357
  and blindness, 381, 382
  clinical problems on, 385–387
    answers to, 497–499
  diplopia, 383, 385
  fields of, 356, 357. *See also* Visual fields
  hemianopia, 381, 382
  neurons involved in, 357
  optic pathway lesions affecting, 381, 382
  pathway for, lesions of, 387
  reflexes of, 357–359, 426–427
    body, 359, 360
  testing of, 381
Visual area, of cerebral cortex, 356, 357, 358, 382
  destruction of, 387, 499
  left, 356
  primary, 263, 265–266
    lesions of, 269
  right, 356
    lesions of, hemianopia from, 382
  secondary, 263, 266, 493
    lesions of, 269
Visual fields, 356, 357
  central scotoma in, 381
  defects of, 385–387
    left, 382
    in optic pathway lesions, 381, 382
    right, 382
  frontal, 263, 264, 358, 492
    lesions of, 268
  occipital, 266
  testing of, 381
Visual reflexes, 357–359, 426–427
  body, 359, 360
Voluntary movement, 335
Voluntary muscle
  atrophy after nerve degeneration, 108–109
  care of, with peripheral nerve injury, 110
  neuromuscular spindle role in control of, 122–124
  neurotmesis affecting, 109

Wallerian degeneration, 103, 112, 478
Wasting of muscles
  clinical observation of, 147
  in hypothalamic diseases, 406
Water intake, hypothalamus affecting, 405, 406
Web, subsynaptic, 66
Weber's syndrome, 218, 219, 490
White columns of spinal cord
  anterior, 2, 8, 25, 152, 153, 154, 157
    corticospinal tract in, 159, 324, 325
    descending nerve tracts in, 159
    intersegmental nerve tract in, 159
    olivospinal tract in, 331
    reticulospinal fibers in, 159
    spinothalamic tract in, 158
    tectospinal tract in, 159, 327
    vestibulospinal tract in, 159, 329
  anterolateral
    spino-olivary tract in, 315
    spinotectal tract in, 315
    spinothalamic tract in, 310
  contralateral spinothalamic tract, 308, 310
  lateral, 2, 8, 25, 152, 153, 154, 157
    corticospinal tract in, 158, 324
    descending nerve tracts in, 158–159
    intersegmental nerve tracts in, 159
    Lissauer tract in, 157
    olivospinal tract in, 158, 159
    reticulospinal tract in, 158
    rubrospinal tract in, 158, 328
    spinocerebellar tract in, 157, 313
    spino-olivary tract in, 158
    spinoreticular tract in, 158, 315
    spinotectal tract in, 157
    spinothalamic tract in, 157
  nerve tracts in, 157–159
    anterior, 158, 159, 315, 324, 325, 327, 329, 331
    arrangement of, 157
    ascending, 157–158. *See also* Ascending tracts of spinal cord
    descending, 158–159. *See also* Descending tracts of spinal cord
    intersegmental, 159
    lateral, 157–159, 313, 315, 324, 328
White columns of spinal cord, nerve tracts in—*Continued*
    posterior, 157–159, 311, 312, 313
  posterior, 2, 8, 25, 152, 153, 154, 157
    ascending proprioceptive information in, 144, 332
    descending nerve tracts in, 158
    fasciculus cuneatus in, 157, 311, 312
    fasciculus gracilis in, 157, 311, 312
    intersegmental nerve tracts in, 159
  posterolateral, spinocerebellar tract in, 313
White commissure of spinal cord, 154, 155, 244–248
White horn of spinal cord. *See* White columns of spinal cord
White matter, 1, 39, 471
  of cerebellum, 193, 195–196, 199, 345
  of cerebral hemispheres, 240, 244–249
    association fibers of, 244, 248–249
    commissures of, 154, 155, 244–248
    projection fibers of, 244, 249
  of spinal cord, 7, 8, 40, 151, 157–159, 171, 399, 471
    anterior columns of. *See* White columns, anterior
    lateral columns of. *See* White columns, lateral
    nerve tracts in columns of, 157–159
    posterior columns of. *See* White columns, posterior
    structure of, 157
White ramus, of spinal nerve, 4, 25, 26, 359, 409, 410
Willis circle, 449, 451, 455, 464, 467, 503
Word deafness, 270

X-rays. *See* Radiography

Yellow ligament, 30

Zonulae occludens, 301
Zygomatic nerve, 369, 418, 420
Zygomaticotemporal nerve, 418, 420